

DSpace 7.x Documentation

DSpace 7.x Documentation

Exported on 02/17/2023

Table of Contents

1	Introduction	27
1.1	Release Notes	28
1.1.1	7.5 Release Notes	28
1.1.1.1	7.5 Acknowledgments.....	31
1.1.2	7.4 Release Notes	32
1.1.2.1	7.4 Acknowledgments.....	33
1.1.3	7.3 Release Notes	34
1.1.3.1	7.3 Acknowledgments.....	37
1.1.4	7.2.1 Release Notes (Backend Only).....	38
1.1.5	7.2 Release Notes	39
1.1.5.1	7.2 Acknowledgments.....	41
1.1.6	7.1.1 Release Notes (Backend Only).....	41
1.1.7	7.1 Release Notes	42
1.1.7.1	7.1 Acknowledgments.....	45
1.1.8	7.0 Release Notes	45
1.1.9	7.0 Configurations Removed	48
1.1.10	7.0 Acknowledgments.....	49
1.1.10.1	Major Contributing Institutions.....	50
1.1.10.2	Financial Contributors	50
1.1.10.3	Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments.....	50
1.1.10.4	Backend / REST API Acknowledgments	51
1.1.10.5	Additional Thanks	52
1.1.11	7.0 Beta 1-5 Release Notes.....	52
1.1.11.1	7.0 Beta 5 Release Notes.....	52
1.1.11.2	7.0 Beta 4 Release Notes.....	54
1.1.11.3	7.0 Beta 3 Release Notes.....	55
1.1.11.4	7.0 Beta 2 Release Notes.....	56
1.1.11.5	7.0 Beta 1 Release Notes.....	57
1.2	Functional Overview	59
1.2.1	Online access to your digital assets	60
1.2.1.1	Full-text search.....	60
1.2.1.2	Navigation	60
1.2.1.3	Supported file types.....	61

1.2.1.4	Optimized for Google Indexing.....	61
1.2.1.5	OpenURL Support	61
1.2.1.6	Support for modern browsers	61
1.2.2	Metadata Management.....	62
1.2.2.1	Metadata.....	62
1.2.2.2	Choice Management and Authority Control	62
1.2.3	Licensing.....	63
1.2.3.1	Collection and Community Licenses.....	64
1.2.3.2	License granted by the submitter to the repository.....	64
1.2.3.3	Creative Commons Support for DSpace Items.....	64
1.2.4	Persistent URLs and Identifiers	64
1.2.4.1	Handles.....	64
1.2.4.2	Bitstream 'Persistent' Identifiers	65
1.2.5	Getting content into DSpace	66
1.2.5.1	The Manual DSpace Submission and Workflow System	66
1.2.5.2	Command line import facilities.....	68
1.2.5.3	Registration for externally hosted files.....	68
1.2.5.4	SWORD Support	68
1.2.6	Getting content out of DSpace	68
1.2.6.1	OAI Support	68
1.2.6.2	Command Line Export Facilities	69
1.2.6.3	Packager Plugins.....	69
1.2.6.4	Crosswalk Plugins	69
1.2.6.5	Supervision and Collaboration.....	70
1.2.7	User Management.....	70
1.2.7.1	User Accounts (E-Person)	70
1.2.7.2	Subscriptions	70
1.2.7.3	Groups	71
1.2.8	Access Control.....	71
1.2.8.1	Authentication	71
1.2.8.2	Authorization.....	71
1.2.9	Usage Metrics	72
1.2.9.1	Item, Collection and Community Usage Statistics.....	72
1.2.9.2	System Statistics	73
1.2.10	Digital Preservation	74

1.2.10.1	Checksum Checker.....	74
1.2.11	System Design	74
1.2.11.1	Data Model	74
1.2.11.2	Amazon S3 Support	76
1.3	Technology Overview	76
1.3.1	DSpace Frontend (UI) Technologies	76
1.3.2	DSpace Backend (REST API) Technologies.....	77
2	Installing DSpace	78
2.1	Installation Overview	78
2.2	Installing the Backend (Server API).....	79
2.2.1	Backend Requirements	79
2.2.1.1	UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows	79
2.2.1.2	Java JDK 11 or 17 (OpenJDK or Oracle JDK)	79
2.2.1.3	Apache Maven 3.3.x or above (Java build tool)	80
2.2.1.4	Apache Ant 1.10.x or later (Java build tool).....	81
2.2.1.5	Relational Database (PostgreSQL or Oracle).....	81
2.2.1.6	Apache Solr 8.x (full-text index/search service)	82
2.2.1.7	Servlet Engine (Apache Tomcat 9, Jetty, Caucho Resin or equivalent)	83
2.2.1.8	(Optional) IP to City Database for Location-based Statistics	84
2.2.1.9	Git (code version control)	84
2.2.2	Backend Installation.....	85
2.3	Installing the Frontend (User Interface).....	93
2.3.1	Frontend Requirements.....	93
2.3.1.1	UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows	94
2.3.1.2	Node.js (v14.x or v16.x)	94
2.3.1.3	Yarn (v1.x)	94
2.3.1.4	PM2 (or another Process Manager for Node.js apps) (optional, but recommended for Production).....	94
2.3.1.5	DSpace 7.x Backend (see above).....	95
2.3.2	Frontend Installation	95
2.4	What Next?.....	102
2.5	Common Installation Issues	103
2.5.1	Troubleshoot an error or find detailed error messages.....	103
2.5.2	User Interface starts to load but then spins (never fully loads).....	103
2.5.3	"500 Service Unavailable" from the User Interface.....	103

2.5.4	"No _links section found at..." error from User Interface	103
2.5.5	"RangeError: Maximum call stack size exceeded"	105
2.5.6	"XMLHttpRequest.. has been blocked by CORS policy" or "CORS error" or "Invalid CORS request"	105
2.5.7	Cannot login from the User Interface with a password that I know is valid	106
2.5.8	"403 Forbidden" error with a message that says "Access is denied. Invalid CSRF Token"	106
2.5.9	Using a Self-Signed SSL Certificate causes the Frontend to not be able to access the Backend	107
2.5.10	My REST API is running under HTTPS, but some of its "link" URLs are switching to HTTP?	108
2.5.11	Solr responds with "Expected mime type application/octet-stream but got text/html" (404 Not Found)	108
2.5.12	Database errors occur when you run ant fresh_install	108
2.6	7.0-7.1 Frontend Installation	109
2.6.1	7.0/7.1 Frontend Requirements	110
2.6.1.1	UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows	110
2.6.1.2	Node.js (v12.x or v14.x)	110
2.6.1.3	Yarn (v1.x)	110
2.6.1.4	PM2 (or another Process Manager for Node.js apps) (optional, but recommended for Production).....	111
2.6.1.5	DSpace 7.x Backend (see above).....	111
2.6.2	7.0/7.1 Frontend Installation	111
3	Upgrading DSpace	116
3.1	Release Notes / Significant Changes.....	117
3.2	Upgrading the Backend (Server API).....	119
3.2.1	Backup your DSpace Backend.....	119
3.2.2	Update Backend Prerequisite Software	120
3.2.3	Upgrading the Backend Steps.....	120
3.3	Upgrading the Frontend (User Interface)	130
3.4	Troubleshooting Upgrade Issues	133
3.4.1	See all "Common Installation Issues"	133
3.4.2	Database migrate errors: "Migration V5.7_2017.04.11__DS-3563_Index_metadatavalue_resource_type_id_column.sql failed" or "Migration V5.7_2017.05.05__DS-3431.sql failed"	133
3.4.3	Database migrate errors because of custom database tables/columns	134
3.4.4	Running "Ignored" Flyway Migrations	134
3.4.5	Manually updating the Metadata Registries	134
3.5	Migrating DSpace to a new server	135
3.5.1	Overview of migration approaches.....	135
3.5.2	Step 1: Install a fresh copy of DSpace	135

3.5.3	Step 2: Prepare your data to copy from the old DSpace to the new one	135
3.5.4	Step 3: Copy over the prepared data and import it into the new DSpace	136
3.5.5	Step 4: Update the database, Start DSpace & Reindex	137
3.5.6	Step 5: Review the Upgrade Instructions and final cleanup	137
4	Using DSpace.....	139
4.1	Authentication and Authorization.....	139
4.1.1	Authentication Plugins	139
4.1.1.1	Stackable Authentication Method(s)	139
4.1.2	Embargo	172
4.1.2.1	What is an Embargo?	172
4.1.2.2	DSpace Embargo Functionality.....	172
4.1.2.3	Configuring and using Embargo in DSpace Submission User Interface	172
4.1.2.4	Technical Specifications.....	174
4.1.2.5	Creating Embargoes via Metadata	175
4.1.2.6	Pre-3.0 Embargo Lifter Commands.....	179
4.1.3	Managing User Accounts	180
4.1.3.1	From the browser.....	181
4.1.3.2	From the command line	181
4.1.3.3	Email Subscriptions	185
4.1.4	Request a Copy.....	186
4.1.4.1	Introduction	187
4.1.4.2	Requesting a copy using the User Interface	187
4.1.4.3	(Optional) Requesting a copy with Help Desk workflow.....	190
4.1.4.4	Email templates	192
4.1.4.5	Configuration parameters	193
4.1.4.6	Selecting Request a Copy strategy.....	194
4.2	CAPTCHA Verification.....	196
4.2.1	Prerequisites	197
4.2.2	How to enable the feature	197
4.3	Configurable Entities	198
4.3.1	Introduction	199
4.3.2	Default Entity Models.....	199
4.3.2.1	Research Entities.....	199
4.3.2.2	Journals.....	199

4.3.3	Enabling Entities	200
4.3.3.1	1. Configure your entity model (optionally)	200
4.3.3.2	2. Import entity model into the database.....	200
4.3.3.3	3. Configure Collections for each Entity type	202
4.3.3.4	4. Configure Submission Forms for each Entity type	203
4.3.3.5	5. Configure Workflow for each Entity type (optionally)	204
4.3.3.6	6. Configure Virtual Metadata to display for related Entities (optionally)	204
4.3.4	Designing your own Entity model	205
4.3.4.1	Thinking about the object model.....	205
4.3.4.2	Configuring the object model.....	205
4.3.4.3	Configuring the metadata fields	205
4.3.4.4	Configuring the item display pages	207
4.3.4.5	Configuring virtual metadata	207
4.3.4.6	Configuring discovery	207
4.3.4.7	Additional Technical Details.....	207
4.3.5	Versioning Support	207
4.3.5.1	Example of the latest status of a relationship (technical details)	207
4.3.5.2	Metadata fields that represent relations	211
4.3.5.3	Configure versioning for an entity type	212
4.4	Curation System.....	213
4.4.1	Tasks	213
4.4.2	Activation.....	214
4.4.3	Task Invocation	214
4.4.3.1	On the command line	214
4.4.3.2	In the admin UI.....	215
4.4.3.3	In workflow.....	217
4.4.3.4	In arbitrary user code.....	218
4.4.4	Asynchronous (Deferred) Operation	218
4.4.5	Task Output and Reporting	219
4.4.5.1	Status Code	219
4.4.5.2	Result String.....	219
4.4.5.3	Reporting Stream.....	219
4.4.6	Task Properties	219
4.4.7	Task Parameters	220
4.4.8	Scripted Tasks	220

4.4.9	Bundled Tasks	222
4.4.9.1	Bitstream Format Profiler Task	222
4.4.9.2	Link Checker Tasks.....	223
4.4.9.3	MetadataWebService Task	223
4.4.9.4	MicrosoftTranslator Task.....	226
4.4.9.5	NoOp Task	227
4.4.9.6	Required Metadata Task	227
4.4.9.7	Virus Scan Task.....	227
4.5	Exporting Content and Metadata	231
4.5.1	Linked (Open) Data	231
4.5.1.1	Introduction	231
4.5.1.2	Linked (Open) Data Support within DSpace.....	233
4.5.2	SWORDv1 Client	247
4.5.2.1	Enabling the SWORD Client	247
4.5.2.2	Configuring the SWORD Client	247
4.5.3	Exchanging Content Between Repositories	249
4.5.3.1	Transferring Content via Export and Import	249
4.5.3.2	Transferring Items using Simple Archive Format	249
4.5.3.3	Transferring Items using OAI-ORE/OAI-PMH Harvester	249
4.5.4	OAI.....	250
4.5.4.1	OAI Interfaces	250
4.5.4.2	OAI-PMH Data Provider 2.0 (Internals).....	260
4.5.4.3	OAI 2.0 Server	263
4.5.5	OpenAIRE4 Guidelines Compliancy	272
4.5.5.1	Loading of Entities and Fields	272
4.5.5.2	OAI interface	273
4.6	Ingesting Content and Metadata.....	275
4.6.1	Ingesting HTML Archives.....	274
4.6.2	SWORDv2 Server	275
4.6.2.1	Enabling SWORD v2 Server	275
4.6.2.2	Configuring SWORD v2 Server	276
4.6.2.3	Deposit to SWORDv2 Server	289
4.6.2.4	Troubleshooting.....	290
4.6.2.5	DSpace Demo 7 Server: Service Documents.....	290
4.6.3	SWORDv1 Server	290

4.6.3.1	Enabling SWORD Server.....	290
4.6.3.2	Configuring SWORD Server.....	290
4.6.3.3	Deposit to SWORD Server	300
4.6.3.4	DSpace Demo 7 Server: Service Documents.....	301
4.6.4	Exporting and Importing Community and Collection Hierarchy.....	301
4.6.4.1	Community and Collection Structure Importer	301
4.6.4.2	Community and Collection Structure Exporter.....	303
4.6.5	Importing Items via basic bibliographic formats (Endnote, BibTex, RIS, CSV, etc) and online services (arXiv, PubMed, CrossRef, CiNii, etc)	303
4.6.5.1	Introduction	303
4.6.5.2	Supported External Sources.....	303
4.6.5.3	Submitting starting from external sources.....	305
4.6.5.4	Submitting starting from bibliographic file	305
4.6.5.5	More Information	305
4.6.6	Registering Bitstreams via Simple Archive Format	306
4.6.6.1	Overview	306
4.6.7	Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format.....	308
4.6.7.1	Item Importer and Exporter.....	308
4.6.8	Importing and Exporting Content via Packages.....	321
4.6.8.1	Package Importer and Exporter	321
4.6.9	Configurable Workflow	327
4.6.9.1	Introduction	327
4.6.9.2	How to Configure your Workflows	327
4.6.9.3	Data Migration.....	328
4.6.9.4	Configuration	329
4.6.9.5	Authorizations.....	335
4.6.9.6	Database.....	335
4.6.9.7	Additional workflow steps/actions and features	337
4.6.10	Submission User Interface.....	338
4.6.10.1	Default Submission Process	339
4.6.10.2	Understanding the Submission Configuration Files	340
4.6.10.3	Reordering/Removing/Adding Submission Steps.....	343
4.6.10.4	Assigning a custom Submission Process to a Collection	343
4.6.10.5	Custom Metadata-entry Steps for Submission.....	344
4.6.10.6	Configuring the File Upload step.....	351

4.6.10.7	Configuring the Item Access Conditions step	354
4.6.10.8	Configuring the Sherpa Romeo step	356
4.6.10.9	Creating new Submission Steps Programmatically.....	357
4.6.10.10	Live Import from external sources	358
4.6.10.11	Simple HTML Fragment Markup.....	367
4.6.10.12	Supervision Orders	367
4.7	Items and Metadata	370
4.7.1	Authority Control of Metadata Values.....	371
4.7.1.1	work in progress.....	371
4.7.1.2	Introduction	371
4.7.1.3	Simple choice management for DSpace submission forms	371
4.7.1.4	Hierarchical Taxonomies and Controlled Vocabularies.....	371
4.7.1.5	Authority Control: Enhancing DSpace metadata fields with Authority Keys.....	373
4.7.1.6	ORCID Authority	374
4.7.2	Batch Metadata Editing	387
4.7.2.1	Batch Metadata Editing Tool.....	387
4.7.2.2	Batch Metadata Editing Configuration	394
4.7.3	DOI Digital Object Identifier.....	396
4.7.3.1	Persistent Identifier	396
4.7.3.2	DOI Registration Agencies	396
4.7.3.3	Adding support for other Registration Agencies	406
4.7.4	Item Level Versioning.....	407
4.7.4.1	What is Item Level Versioning?	407
4.7.4.2	Important warnings	407
4.7.4.3	Enabling Item Level Versioning.....	407
4.7.4.4	Initial Requirements	407
4.7.4.5	User Interface	409
4.7.4.6	Architecture.....	412
4.7.4.7	Configuration	412
4.7.4.8	Identified Challenges & Known Issues	414
4.7.5	Mapping/Linking Items to multiple Collections	415
4.7.5.1	Introduction	416
4.7.5.2	Using the Item Mapper.....	416
4.7.5.3	Implications.....	416
4.7.6	Metadata Recommendations.....	416

4.7.6.1	Recommended Metadata Fields	416
4.7.6.2	Local Fields.....	417
4.7.7	Moving Items	418
4.7.7.1	Moving Items via Web UI.....	418
4.7.7.2	Moving Items via the Batch Metadata Editor.....	418
4.7.8	PDF Citation Cover Page	418
4.7.8.1	Configuration settings for Citation Cover Page.....	419
4.7.9	Updating Items via Simple Archive Format	421
4.7.9.1	Item Update Tool	421
4.8	Managing Community Hierarchy	424
4.8.1	Sub-Community Management	424
4.9	ORCID Integration	426
4.9.1	Overview.....	427
4.9.2	User features	427
4.9.2.1	Login via ORCID.....	427
4.9.2.2	Connect/Disconnect the local profile to ORCID	427
4.9.2.3	Import publications from ORCID.....	430
4.9.3	Configuration	430
4.9.3.1	Enable the integration	430
4.9.3.2	Configure the push of information from DSpace to ORCID	433
4.9.3.3	Configure the import features.....	439
4.9.3.4	Configure the author lookup in submission	441
4.9.4	Troubleshooting & common issues	441
4.9.4.1	I'm having trouble testing the ORCID integration. What should I check?	441
4.9.4.2	I cannot find the ORCID features described by this page in my installation.....	442
4.9.4.3	I'm unable to authenticate via ORCID.....	442
4.9.4.4	I'm having trouble creating test accounts on ORCID to experiment with the features.....	442
4.9.4.5	I have configured my Public ORCID API credentials in DSpace but I get an error attempting to login via ORCID.....	442
4.9.4.6	I don't find my publications looking up for my ORCID iD.....	442
4.9.4.7	I cannot push all my publications, only few or none of them are listed in the queue.....	443
4.9.4.8	Push of publications to ORCID fails.....	443
4.9.4.9	Push of projects to ORCID fails	443
4.10	Researcher Profiles	443
4.10.1	Enable the feature.....	445

4.10.2	Advanced configuration	445
4.10.3	Troubleshooting.....	446
4.10.3.1	I cannot find this feature.....	446
4.10.3.2	The users sees an error when they try to create their profile	446
4.11	Statistics and Metrics	447
4.11.1	SOLR Statistics	447
4.11.1.1	What is exactly being logged ?.....	447
4.11.1.2	Web User Interface Elements	449
4.11.1.3	Architecture	451
4.11.1.4	Configuration settings for Statistics	451
4.11.1.5	Statistics Administration	457
4.11.1.6	Custom Reporting - Querying SOLR Directly	457
4.11.1.7	Managing the City Database File	458
4.11.1.8	SOLR Statistics Maintenance.....	460
4.11.2	DSpace Google Analytics Statistics	471
4.11.2.1	Google Analytics Support	471
4.11.2.2	Google Analytics Reports in DSpace UI.....	473
4.11.3	Exchange usage statistics with IRUS.....	475
4.11.3.1	Introduction	475
4.11.3.2	Prerequisite	475
4.11.3.3	Configuration	475
4.12	User Interface	478
4.12.1	User Interface Configuration	478
4.12.1.1	Overview	479
4.12.1.2	Configuration File Format	479
4.12.1.3	Configuration Override	481
4.12.1.4	Configuration Reference.....	483
4.12.2	User Interface Customization.....	505
4.12.2.1	Angular Overview	506
4.12.2.2	Theme Technologies.....	506
4.12.2.3	Running the UI in Developer Mode.....	507
4.12.2.4	Creating a Custom Theme	507
4.12.2.5	Additional Theming Resources	521
4.12.3	Discovery	522
4.12.3.1	What is DSpace Discovery.....	523

4.12.3.2	Configuration files.....	525
4.12.3.3	General Discovery settings (config/modules/discovery.cfg)	525
4.12.3.4	Browse settings (config/dspace.cfg)	528
4.12.3.5	Modifying the Discovery User Interface (config/spring/api/discovery.xml)	529
4.12.3.6	Discovery Solr Index Maintenance	543
4.12.3.7	Advanced Solr Configuration	544
4.12.4	Multilingual Support	544
4.12.4.1	Multilingual Support on the Backend (REST API).....	544
4.12.4.2	Multilingual Support on the Frontend (UI)	545
4.12.5	IIIF Configuration	547
4.12.5.1	Overview	547
4.12.5.2	Enable IIIF Support on Backend	548
4.12.5.3	Enable/Install the Mirador Viewer on Frontend	552
4.12.5.4	Configure IIIF viewer via Metadata Fields	553
4.12.6	Contextual Help Tooltips.....	555
4.12.6.1	User perspective	555
4.12.6.2	Adding new tooltips	555
5	System Administration	558
5.1	Introduction to DSpace System Administration	558
5.2	AIP Backup and Restore.....	559
5.2.1	Background & Overview	559
5.2.1.1	How does this differ from traditional DSpace Backups? Which Backup route is better?.....	560
5.2.1.2	How does this help backup your DSpace to remote storage or cloud services (like DuraCloud)?	563
5.2.1.3	AIPs are Archival Information Packages	564
5.2.1.4	AIP Structure / Format	564
5.2.2	Running the Code.....	564
5.2.2.1	Exporting AIPs	564
5.2.2.2	Ingesting / Restoring AIPs	565
5.2.2.3	Cleaning up from a failed import	573
5.2.2.4	Performance considerations	574
5.2.2.5	Disable User Interaction for Cron	574
5.2.3	Command Line Reference	574
5.2.3.1	Additional Packager Options.....	577
5.2.4	Configuration in 'dspace.cfg'.....	583
5.2.4.1	AIP Metadata Dissemination Configurations.....	583

5.2.4.2	AIP Ingestion Metadata Crosswalk Configurations	585
5.2.4.3	AIP Ingestion EPerson Configurations	585
5.2.4.4	AIP Configurations To Improve Ingestion Speed while Validating.....	585
5.2.5	Common Issues or Error Messages	586
5.2.6	DSpace AIP Format	587
5.2.6.1	Makeup and Definition of AIPs	588
5.2.6.2	AIP Details: METS Structure.....	590
5.2.6.3	Metadata in METS	594
5.3	Ant targets and options	606
5.3.1	Options	606
5.3.2	Targets.....	608
5.4	Command Line Operations	608
5.4.1	Executing command line operations	608
5.4.2	Available operations	608
5.4.2.1	General use.....	608
5.4.2.2	Legacy statistics	610
5.4.2.3	SOLR Statistics	611
5.4.3	Database Utilities.....	611
5.4.4	Executing streams of commands	613
5.5	Handle.Net Registry Support.....	613
5.5.1	To install your Handle resolver on the host where DSpace runs.....	614
5.5.2	To install a Handle resolver on a separate machine	615
5.5.3	To install a Handle resolver on a separate machine using template handles	616
5.5.4	Updating Existing Handle Prefixes.....	616
5.6	Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content.....	617
5.6.1	MediaFilters: Transforming DSpace Content.....	617
5.6.1.1	Overview	617
5.6.1.2	Available Media Filters	617
5.6.1.3	Enabling/Disabling MediaFilters	629
5.6.1.4	Executing (via Command Line).....	630
5.6.1.5	Creating Custom MediaFilters	631
5.6.1.6	Configuration parameters	633
5.6.2	ImageMagick Media Filters	633
5.6.2.1	ImageMagic Media Filters	633

5.7	Performance Tuning DSpace.....	637
5.7.1	Bare Minimum Requirements.....	638
5.7.2	Performance Tuning the Frontend (UI).....	638
5.7.2.1	Use "cluster mode" of PM2 to avoid Node.js using a single CPU.....	638
5.7.2.2	Give Node.js more memory	639
5.7.3	Performance Tuning the Backend (REST API)	640
5.7.3.1	Give Tomcat More Memory.....	640
5.7.3.2	Give the Command Line Tools More Memory.....	642
5.7.4	Give PostgreSQL Database More Memory	642
5.7.5	Performance Tuning Solr.....	642
5.8	Scheduled Tasks via Cron.....	643
5.8.1	Recommended Cron Settings.....	643
5.9	Search Engine Optimization	647
5.9.1	Ensuring your DSpace is indexed	647
5.9.1.1	Keep your DSpace up to date	647
5.9.1.2	Ensure your DSpace is visible to search engines.....	648
5.9.1.3	Ensure the user interface is using server-side rendering.....	648
5.9.1.4	Ensure the sitemaps feature is enabled.....	649
5.9.1.5	Create a good robots.txt.....	649
5.9.1.6	Ensure Item Metadata appears in the HTML HEAD	652
5.9.1.7	Avoid redirecting file downloads to Item landing pages	652
5.9.1.8	Turn OFF any generation of PDF cover pages.....	653
5.9.1.9	In general, OAI-PMH is not useful to Search Engines	653
5.9.2	Google Scholar Metadata Mappings	653
5.10	Troubleshooting Information.....	655
5.11	Validating CheckSums of Bitstreams	654
5.11.1	Checksum Checker.....	655
5.11.1.1	Checker Execution Mode	656
5.11.1.2	Checker Results Pruning.....	658
5.11.1.3	Checker Reporting	658
5.11.1.4	Cron or Automatic Execution of Checksum Checker	658
5.11.1.5	Automated Checksum Checkers' Results	658
5.11.1.6	Database Query.....	659
6	DSpace Development	662

6.1	Advanced Customisation.....	662
6.1.1	Additions module.....	662
6.1.2	Server Webapp Overlay	662
6.1.3	Rest (Deprecated) Webapp Overlay	663
6.1.4	DSpace Service Manager	663
6.1.4.1	Introduction	663
6.1.4.2	Configuration	663
6.1.4.3	Architectural Overview	665
6.1.4.4	Tutorials.....	665
6.2	REST API	666
6.2.1	Overview.....	666
6.2.2	REST Contract / Documentation	666
6.2.3	REST Configuration.....	666
6.2.3.1	REST Spring Boot Configuration	668
6.2.4	Technical Design	669
6.2.5	DSpace 7 Demo REST-API HAL Browser.....	669
6.3	REST API v6 (deprecated)	669
6.3.1	What is DSpace REST API (v4-v6).....	670
6.3.1.1	Installing the REST API (v4-v6).....	670
6.3.1.2	REST Endpoints.....	670
6.3.1.3	Model - Object data types	679
6.3.2	Introduction to Jersey for developers	681
6.3.3	Configuration for DSpace REST	681
6.3.4	Recording Proxy Access by Tools	681
6.3.5	Additional Information	683
6.3.6	REST Based Quality Control Reports	683
6.3.6.1	Tutorial	683
6.3.6.2	Summary	684
6.3.6.3	API Calls Used in these Reports.....	684
6.3.6.4	Report Screen Shots	684
6.3.6.5	Installation and Configuration	684
6.3.6.6	REST Reports - Collection Report Screenshots with Annotated API Calls	689
6.3.6.7	REST Reports - Metadata Query Screenshots with Annotated API Calls.....	696
6.3.6.8	REST Reports - Summary of API Calls	701
6.4	Curation Tasks.....	703

6.4.1	Writing your own tasks	703
6.4.2	Task Output and Reporting	704
6.4.2.1	Status Code	704
6.4.2.2	Result String	705
6.4.2.3	Reporting Stream.....	705
6.4.2.4	Accessing task output in calling code	705
6.4.3	Task Properties	705
6.4.4	Task Annotations	706
6.4.5	Scripted Tasks	706
6.4.5.1	Interface	706
6.4.6	Curation tasks in Jython	707
6.4.6.1	Setting up scripted tasks in Jython.....	707
6.4.6.2	See also.....	709
6.5	Development Tools Provided by DSpace	709
6.5.1	Date parser tester.....	709
6.6	Services to support Alternative Identifiers	709
6.6.1	Versioning and Identifier Service	710
6.6.1.1	Versioning Service	710
6.6.1.2	Identifier Service	711
6.7	Batch Processing.....	714
6.8	Workflow.....	715
6.8.1	Configuration	715
6.8.1.1	Main workflow configuration	715
6.8.1.2	Workflow actions configuration	718
6.8.2	Authorizations.....	721
6.8.3	Database.....	721
6.8.3.1	cwf_workflowitem	721
6.8.3.2	cwf_collectionrole	722
6.8.3.3	cwf_workflowitemrole.....	722
6.8.3.4	cwf_pooltask.....	722
6.8.3.5	cwf_claimtask	722
6.8.3.6	cwf_in_progress_user.....	723
7	DSpace Reference	724
7.1	Configuration Reference.....	724

7.1.1	General Configuration	726
7.1.1.1	Configuration File Syntax	727
7.1.1.2	Configuration Scheme for Reloading and Overriding	728
7.1.1.3	Why are there multiple copies of some config files?	730
7.1.2	The local.cfg Configuration Properties File	731
7.1.3	The dspace.cfg Configuration Properties File	734
7.1.3.1	Main DSpace Configurations	734
7.1.3.2	General Solr Configuration	736
7.1.3.3	DSpace Database Configuration	737
7.1.3.4	DSpace Email Settings	739
7.1.3.5	File Storage.....	744
7.1.3.6	Logging Configuration	744
7.1.3.7	General Plugin Configuration	747
7.1.3.8	Configuring the Search Engine	747
7.1.3.9	Handle Server Configuration	747
7.1.3.10	Delegation Administration: Authorization System Configuration	748
7.1.3.11	Inheritance of collection default policy (since 7.1)	756
7.1.3.12	Login as feature.....	757
7.1.3.13	Restricted Item Visibility Settings	757
7.1.3.14	Proxy Settings	757
7.1.3.15	Configuring Media Filters.....	759
7.1.3.16	Crosswalk and Packager Plugin Settings.....	762
7.1.3.17	Event System Configuration	767
7.1.3.18	Embargo	770
7.1.3.19	Checksum Checker Settings	771
7.1.3.20	Item Export and Download Settings	772
7.1.3.21	Subscription Emails	773
7.1.3.22	Hiding Metadata.....	774
7.1.3.23	Settings for the Submission Process.....	774
7.1.3.24	Configuring the Sherpa/RoMEO Integration.....	774
7.1.3.25	Configuring Creative Commons License.....	776
7.1.3.26	WEB User Interface Configurations	778
7.1.3.27	Browse Index Configuration	780
7.1.3.28	Links to Other Browse Contexts	788
7.1.3.29	Submission License Substitution Variables.....	789

7.1.3.30	Syndication Feed (RSS) Settings	790
7.1.3.31	OpenSearch Support	793
7.1.3.32	Content Inline Disposition Threshold	796
7.1.3.33	Multi-file HTML Document/Site Settings	796
7.1.3.34	Sitemap Settings	797
7.1.3.35	Authority Control Settings.....	798
7.1.3.36	Configuring Multilingual Support.....	800
7.1.3.37	Upload File Settings	802
7.1.3.38	SFX Server (OpenURL).....	802
7.1.3.39	Controlled Vocabulary Settings	804
7.1.4	Optional or Advanced Configuration Settings.....	805
7.1.4.1	The Metadata Format and Bitstream Format Registries.....	805
7.1.4.2	Configuring Usage Instrumentation Plugins	806
7.1.4.3	Behavior of the workflow system	806
7.1.4.4	Recognizing Web Spiders (Bots, Crawlers, etc.)	806
7.1.5	Command-line Access to Configuration Properties	808
7.2	DSpace Item State Definitions.....	808
7.3	Directories and Files.....	810
7.3.1	Overview	810
7.3.2	Source Directory Layout	810
7.3.3	Installed Directory Layout	812
7.3.4	Contents of Server Web Application	812
7.3.5	Log Files.....	813
7.3.5.1	log4j2.xml File.	814
7.4	Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries.....	814
7.4.1	Default Dublin Core Metadata Registry (DC).....	814
7.4.2	Dublin Core Terms Registry (DCTERMS)	818
7.4.3	Local Metadata Registry (local)	822
7.4.4	Default Bitstream Format Registry.....	822
7.5	Architecture.....	825
7.5.1	Overview	825
7.5.2	Application Layer	826
7.5.2.1	Web User Interface.....	827
7.5.2.2	REST API	827
7.5.2.3	OAI-PMH Data Provider	827

7.5.2.4	RDF / Linked Data Provider.....	827
7.5.2.5	SWORD v1 Service / Server	827
7.5.2.6	SWORD v2 Service / Server	827
7.5.2.7	DSpace Command Line Launcher	827
7.5.3	Business Logic Layer	828
7.5.3.1	Core Classes	829
7.5.3.2	Content Management API.....	832
7.5.3.3	Plugin Service.....	836
7.5.3.4	Workflow System	843
7.5.3.5	Administration Toolkit.....	844
7.5.3.6	E-person/Group Manager	845
7.5.3.7	Authorization.....	845
7.5.3.8	Handle Manager/Handle Plugin	847
7.5.3.9	Search.....	847
7.5.3.10	Browse API.....	848
7.5.3.11	Checksum checker	850
7.5.3.12	OpenSearch Support	850
7.5.3.13	Embargo Support.....	852
7.5.4	DSpace Services Framework	853
7.5.4.1	Architectural Overview	854
7.5.4.2	Basic Usage	855
7.5.4.3	Providers and Plugins	856
7.5.4.4	Core Services	857
7.5.4.5	Examples	858
7.5.4.6	Tutorials.....	858
7.5.5	Storage Layer	859
7.5.5.1	RDBMS / Database Structure	859
7.5.5.2	Bitstream Store	863
7.6	History	870
7.6.1	Changes in 7.x.....	870
7.6.1.1	Changes in DSpace 7.5.....	871
7.6.1.2	Changes in DSpace 7.4.....	871
7.6.1.3	Changes in DSpace 7.3.....	871
7.6.1.4	Changes in DSpace 7.2.....	871
7.6.1.5	Changes in DSpace 7.1.1.....	871

7.6.1.6	Changes in DSpace 7.1.....	871
7.6.1.7	Changes in DSpace 7.0.....	871
7.6.2	Changes in 6.x.....	872
7.6.2.1	Changes in DSpace 6.4.....	872
7.6.2.2	Changes in DSpace 6.3.....	872
7.6.2.3	Changes in DSpace 6.2.....	872
7.6.2.4	Changes in DSpace 6.1.....	872
7.6.2.5	Changes in DSpace 6.0.....	873
7.6.3	Changes in 5.x.....	873
7.6.3.1	Changes in DSpace 5.11.....	873
7.6.3.2	Changes in DSpace 5.10.....	873
7.6.3.3	Changes in DSpace 5.9.....	873
7.6.3.4	Changes in DSpace 5.8.....	873
7.6.3.5	Changes in DSpace 5.7.....	873
7.6.3.6	Changes in DSpace 5.6.....	873
7.6.3.7	Changes in DSpace 5.5.....	873
7.6.3.8	Changes in DSpace 5.4.....	874
7.6.3.9	Changes in DSpace 5.3.....	874
7.6.3.10	Changes in DSpace 5.2.....	874
7.6.3.11	Changes in DSpace 5.1.....	874
7.6.3.12	Changes in DSpace 5.0.....	874
7.6.4	Changes in 4.x.....	874
7.6.4.1	Changes in DSpace 4.10.....	874
7.6.4.2	Changes in DSpace 4.9.....	874
7.6.4.3	Changes in DSpace 4.8.....	874
7.6.4.4	Changes in DSpace 4.7.....	874
7.6.4.5	Changes in DSpace 4.6.....	874
7.6.4.6	Changes in DSpace 4.5.....	874
7.6.4.7	Changes in DSpace 4.4.....	874
7.6.4.8	Changes in DSpace 4.3.....	874
7.6.4.9	Changes in DSpace 4.2.....	874
7.6.4.10	Changes in DSpace 4.1.....	874
7.6.4.11	Changes in DSpace 4.0.....	874
7.6.5	Changes in 3.x.....	875
7.6.5.1	Changes in DSpace 3.6.....	876

7.6.5.2	Changes in DSpace 3.5.....	876
7.6.5.3	Changes in DSpace 3.4.....	876
7.6.5.4	Changes in DSpace 3.3.....	876
7.6.5.5	Changes in DSpace 3.2.....	876
7.6.5.6	Changes in DSpace 3.1.....	876
7.6.5.7	Changes in DSpace 3.0.....	876
7.6.6	Changes in 1.8.x.....	877
7.6.6.1	Changes in DSpace 1.8.3.....	877
7.6.6.2	Changes in DSpace 1.8.2.....	877
7.6.6.3	Changes in DSpace 1.8.1.....	877
7.6.6.4	Changes in DSpace 1.8.0.....	877
7.6.7	Changes in 1.7.x.....	877
7.6.7.1	Changes in DSpace 1.7.3.....	877
7.6.7.2	Changes in DSpace 1.7.2.....	877
7.6.7.3	Changes in DSpace 1.7.1.....	878
7.6.7.4	Changes in DSpace 1.7.0.....	878
7.6.8	Changes in 1.6.x.....	878
7.6.8.1	Changes in DSpace 1.6.2.....	878
7.6.8.2	Changes in DSpace 1.6.1.....	878
7.6.8.3	Changes in DSpace 1.6.0.....	878
7.6.9	Changes in 1.5.x.....	878
7.6.9.1	Changes in DSpace 1.5.2.....	878
7.6.9.2	Changes in DSpace 1.5.1.....	878
7.6.9.3	Changes in DSpace 1.5.0.....	880
7.6.10	Changes in 1.4.x.....	881
7.6.10.1	Changes in DSpace 1.4.1.....	881
7.6.10.2	Changes in DSpace 1.4.0.....	883
7.6.11	Changes in 1.3.x.....	883
7.6.11.1	Changes in DSpace 1.3.2.....	884
7.6.11.2	Changes in DSpace 1.3.1.....	884
7.6.11.3	Changes in DSpace 1.3.0.....	884
7.6.12	Changes in 1.2.x.....	885
7.6.12.1	Changes in DSpace 1.2.2.....	885
7.6.12.2	Changes in DSpace 1.2.1.....	886
7.6.12.3	Changes in DSpace 1.2.0.....	887

7.6.13	Changes in 1.1.x.....	889
7.6.13.1	Changes in DSpace 1.1.1.....	889
7.6.13.2	Changes in DSpace 1.1.....	889
8	Learning DSpace	891
8.1	Pages.....	891
8.1.1	Videos	891
8.1.2	For repository/DSpace administrators	891
8.1.3	For submitters	891
8.1.4	For DSpace users.....	891
8.1.5	Editing Guidelines	891
8.1.6	Transfer images from Google Doc to the Wiki	891
8.2	Community and Collection management	892
8.2.1	Collection Management.....	893
8.2.1.1	Create Collection.....	892
8.2.1.2	Delete Collection	897
8.2.1.3	Edit Collection	900
8.2.1.4	Export Collection.....	921
8.2.2	Community Management.....	926
8.2.2.1	Create a Community	926
8.2.2.2	Delete Community	930
8.2.2.3	Edit Community	933
8.3	Content (Item) management.....	942
8.3.1	Add item	942
8.3.1.1	Target Audience	942
8.3.1.2	Overview	942
8.3.1.3	Item Submission Process.....	945
8.3.2	Delete item	953
8.3.2.1	Target Audience	953
8.3.2.2	Process Overview	953
8.3.2.3	Item Delete Process	953
8.3.3	Edit Item	955
8.3.3.1	Audience.....	955
8.3.3.2	Edit Item Overview.....	955
8.3.3.3	Authorizations (Manage access to an item).....	958

8.3.3.4	Collection Mapper	966
8.3.3.5	Edit Bitstream.....	972
8.3.3.6	Edit Metadata	980
8.3.3.7	Edit Relationship	989
8.3.3.8	Make an Item Private	996
8.3.3.9	Move an Item	1001
8.3.3.10	Reinstate an item	1005
8.3.3.11	Versioned Item	1009
8.3.3.12	Withdraw an item.....	1015
8.3.4	Embargo an item.....	1019
8.3.4.1	Audience.....	1020
8.3.4.2	Embargo an item during the item submission	1020
8.3.4.3	Embargo an item via edit item	1026
8.3.5	Lease an item	1030
8.3.5.1	Audience.....	1031
8.3.5.2	Lease an item during the item submission.....	1031
8.3.5.3	Lease an item via edit item.....	1036
8.4	DSpace 7 Demo Quick Start.....	1040
8.4.1	DSpace 6 Demo (for comparison)	1040
8.5	Management sidebar	1041
8.5.1	New	1042
8.5.1.1	Community.....	1042
8.5.1.2	Collection	1042
8.5.1.3	Add item	1042
8.5.1.4	Process	1042
8.5.2	Edit.....	1042
8.5.2.1	Community.....	1042
8.5.2.2	Collection	1042
8.5.2.3	Item.....	1042
8.5.3	Import.....	1042
8.5.3.1	Metadata.....	1042
8.5.4	Export	1042
8.5.4.1	Metadata.....	1042
8.5.5	Access Control.....	1042
8.5.5.1	People.....	1042

8.5.5.2	Groups	1042
8.5.6	Admin Search	1042
8.5.7	Registries	1043
8.5.7.1	Metadata.....	1043
8.5.7.2	Format	1043
8.5.8	Curation Task	1043
8.5.9	Processes.....	1043
8.5.10	Administer Workflow	1043
8.5.11	Health	1043
8.6	Menus.....	1044
8.6.1	Communities & Collections	1044
8.6.2	All of DSpace.....	1044
8.6.2.1	By Issue Date	1044
8.6.2.2	By Author	1044
8.6.2.3	By Title	1044
8.6.2.4	By Subject.....	1044
8.6.3	Statistics	1044
8.6.4	Search box.....	1045
8.6.5	Language	1045
8.6.6	Log In	1045
8.6.6.1	Profile	1045
8.6.6.2	MyDSpace	1045
8.7	Registry management.....	1046
8.7.1	Metadata Registry Management	1047
8.7.1.1	Audience.....	1047
8.7.1.2	Create Metadata Registry	1047
8.7.1.3	Metadata Registry Management	1052
8.7.1.4	Delete Metadata Schema.....	1055
8.8	Request-a-copy	1060
8.8.1	Scope	1060
8.8.1.1	Use Case	1060
8.8.1.2	Audience.....	1060
8.8.2	Feature description.....	1060
8.8.2.1	Known limitation	1061
8.9	Search - Advanced.....	1061

8.10	Submitter actions	1062
8.11	User management.....	1062
8.11.1	Add or Manage an E-Person.....	1062
8.11.1.1	Audience.....	1062
8.11.1.2	Add E Person – Self Registration	1062
8.11.1.3	Add E Person – Registration by Administrator	1065
8.11.1.4	Update an Eperson	1072
8.11.2	Create or manage a user group	1083
8.11.2.1	Audience.....	1083
8.11.2.2	Add a user group	1083
8.11.2.3	Manage a user group.....	1088

1 Introduction

DSpace is an open source software platform that enables organisations to:

- capture and describe digital material using a submission workflow module, or a variety of programmatic ingest options
- distribute an organisation's digital assets over the web through a search and retrieval system
- preserve digital assets over the long term

This system documentation includes a [functional overview of the system](#)(see page 59), which is a good introduction to the capabilities of the system, and should be readable by non-technical folk. Everyone should read this section first because it introduces some terminology used throughout the rest of the documentation.

For people actually running a DSpace service, there is an [installation guide](#)(see page 78), and sections on [configuration](#)(see page 724) and the [directory structure](#)(see page 810). Support options are available in the [DSpace Support Guide](#)¹.

For those interested in the details of how DSpace works, and those potentially interested in modifying the code for their own purposes, there is a detailed [architecture section](#)(see page 825).

Other good sources of information are:

- The [DSpace Support Guide](#)² lists various places to ask for help, report bugs or security issues, etc.
- The DSpace [REST API contract](#)³ which documents the REST API behavior, etc. If you want source code docs, we also provide JavaDocs for the Java API layer which can be built by running `mvn javadoc:javadoc`
- The [DSpace Wiki](#)⁴ contains stacks of useful information about the DSpace platform and the work people are doing with it. You are strongly encouraged to visit this site and add information about your own work. Useful Wiki areas are:
 - [A list of DSpace resources](#)⁵ (Web sites, mailing lists etc.)
 - [Technical FAQ](#)⁶
 - [Registry of projects using DSpace](#)⁷
 - [Guidelines for contributing back to DSpace](#)⁸
- [www.dspace.org](#)⁹ has announcements and contains useful information about bringing up an instance of DSpace at your organization.
- The [DSpace Community List](#)¹⁰. Join DSpace-Community to ask questions or join discussions about non-technical aspects of building and running a DSpace service. It is open to all DSpace users. Ask questions, share news, and spark discussion about DSpace with people managing other DSpace sites. Watch DSpace-Community for news of software releases, user conferences, and announcements about DSpace.
- The [DSpace Technical List](#)¹¹. DSpace developers & fellow community members help answer installation and technology questions, share information and help each other solve technical problems through the DSpace-Tech mailing list. Post questions or contribute your expertise to other developers working with the system.
- The [DSpace Development List](#)¹². Join Discussions among DSpace Developers. The DSpace-Dev listserv is for DSpace developers working on the DSpace platform to share ideas and discuss code changes to the open source platform. Join other developers to shape the evolution of the DSpace software. The DSpace

1 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Support>

2 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Support>

3 <https://github.com/DSpace/Rest7Contract/blob/main/README.md>

4 <http://wiki.dspace.org/>

5 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceResources>

6 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/TechnicalFAQ>

7 <http://registry.duraspace.org/registry/dspace>

8 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Code+Contribution+Guidelines>

9 <http://www.dspace.org/>

10 <https://groups.google.com/d/forum/dspace-community>

11 <https://groups.google.com/d/forum/dspace-tech>

12 <https://groups.google.com/d/forum/dspace-devel>

community depends on its members to frame functional requirements and high-level architecture, and to facilitate programming, testing, documentation and to the project.

1.1 Release Notes

Upgrade from any past version of DSpace!

[Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) provides an overview of the DSpace 7 installation process and all prerequisite software. You should review this before attempting an upgrade, in order to ensure you are running the required versions of Java, Node, etc.

[Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) provides a guide for upgrading from *any old version* of DSpace to v7. As in the past, your data migrates automatically, no matter which older version you are running. *However, as the old XMLUI and JSPUI user interfaces are no longer supported, you must switch to using the new User Interface.*

- [7.5 Release Notes](#)(see page 28)
 - [7.5 Acknowledgments](#)(see page 31)
- [7.4 Release Notes](#)(see page 32)
 - [7.4 Acknowledgments](#)(see page 33)
- [7.3 Release Notes](#)(see page 34)
 - [7.3 Acknowledgments](#)(see page 37)
- [7.2.1 Release Notes \(Backend Only\)](#)(see page 38)
- [7.2 Release Notes](#)(see page 39)
 - [7.2 Acknowledgments](#)(see page 41)
- [7.1.1 Release Notes \(Backend Only\)](#)(see page 41)
- [7.1 Release Notes](#)(see page 42)
 - [7.1 Acknowledgments](#)(see page 45)
- [7.0 Release Notes](#)(see page 45)
- [7.0 Configurations Removed](#)(see page 48)
- [7.0 Acknowledgments](#)(see page 49)
 - [Major Contributing Institutions](#)(see page 50)
 - [Financial Contributors](#)(see page 50)
 - [Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments](#)(see page 50)
 - [Backend / REST API Acknowledgments](#)(see page 51)
 - [Additional Thanks](#)(see page 52)
- [7.0 Beta 1-5 Release Notes](#)(see page 52)
 - [7.0 Beta 5 Release Notes](#)(see page 52)
 - [7.0 Beta 4 Release Notes](#)(see page 54)
 - [7.0 Beta 3 Release Notes](#)(see page 55)
 - [7.0 Beta 2 Release Notes](#)(see page 56)
 - [7.0 Beta 1 Release Notes](#)(see page 57)

1.1.1 7.5 Release Notes

7.5 is not yet released, but is *coming soon (on Feb 20)*. These release notes are a DRAFT until the 7.5 release is finalized. In the meantime, for new installations or upgrades, please continue to use 7.4 below.

DSpace 7.5 provides new features & bug fixes to the 7.x platform.

New features include:

- **Subscribe to email updates**(see page 185) **from a Community or Collection** (ported from the DSpace-CRIS project, partially donated and developed by 4Science)
 - *NOTE: This feature requires new scheduled cron settings to enable sending of emails. See [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643)*
- **Supervision orders**(see page 367) allow Administrators to assign Group(s) to supervise other user's (in-progress) submissions
- **System wide alerts** which allow you to display a site-wide banner to announce scheduled downtime or maintenance (Login as an Admin and visit the "System-wide Alert" menu option)
- **Ability to disable self-registration or restrict to specific email domains.** See [Authentication by Password](#)(see page 139) documentation for more details.
- **Search interface supports filtering by controlled vocabularies** See the new "vocabularies" option(see page 503) in config.*.yml. By default, only the SRSC vocabulary is available in DSpace, but additional ones may be added as described in [Authority Control of Metadata Values](#)(see page 371)
- **Support for custom Configurable Workflow steps, including "Select Single Reviewer Workflow" and "Score Review Workflow"** (which were in v6.x). See [Additional workflow steps](#)(see page 337) documentation for more details.
- **Ability to add Contextual Help Tooltips**(see page 555) **on any page.** Currently, only a basic example is provided, with more likely to be added in future DSpace releases. In the meantime, additional tooltips may be added manually on a page-by-page basis. See [Contextual Help Tooltips](#)(see page 555) for more details.
- **Basic MediaViewer now supports captioning for audio/video files.** (Donated by *yingjin*) The caption file must be provided alongside the video/audio file. See documentation at [Media Viewer Settings](#)(see page 501)
- **On Item pages, the "Edit Item > Metadata" tab has been redesigned** to allow for easier reordering of metadata values, etc.
- **On Item pages, metadata values can automatically link to "Browse By" results for that value.** (Donated by *The Library Code with the Support of German Institute for Urban Affairs*) The existing "webui.browse.links.<n>" settings in dspace.cfg are now supported in version 7.x. See [Links to Other Browse Contexts](#)(see page 788) section of the Configuration documentation.
- **"Show identifiers" submission allows you to optionally pre-register Handles or DOIs for all new submissions.** (Donated by *The Library Code with support of Technische Universität Hamburg and Technische Informationsbibliothek*)
- **New DataCite plugin for importing metadata from DataCite when starting a new submission.** (Donated by *@johannastaudinger, @floriangantner and @philippumpf*)
- **New "dspace database skip" command** can be used to skip problematic database migrations during upgrade to 7.x. See this [common migration error](#)(see page 0) that has impacted some older DSpace sites during their upgrade to 7.x.

Major bug fixes / improvements include:

- Performance improvements to User Interface
 - Optional page caching (of server-side rendered pages) for bots and/or anonymous users. Page caching for bots is enabled by default, while page caching for anonymous users is disabled. Enabling page caching for anonymous users can drastically speed up your site, but anonymous users may see slightly outdated content. See [Cache Settings - Server Side Rendering\(SSR\)](#)(see page 486) for details.
 - Decreased the initial download size of the UI application. *Between 7.4 and 7.5, we've decreased the initial download from 877KB to ~600KB (gzipped sizes), even while adding new features.*
- Performance improvements for the "metadata-import" and "cleanup" command-line scripts. (*Fixes to "cleanup" donated by Agustina Martinez*)
- Fixed issues with the "Request a Copy"(see page 186) helpdesk strategy, where all requests go to the Helpdesk email to respond. (Donated by *Mark Wood, IUPUI*)
- Number of bitstreams displayed on the Item page is now configurable (see "item > bitstream > pageSize" configuration). (Donated by *Arvo Consultores y Tecnología. S.L*)

- Updated Submission forms "<regex>" tag to use a [common extended regular expression format](#)¹³.
- "Back to Results" button appears on Item pages when browsing/searching and clicking on an Item. This allows you to easily return to your prior browse/search. (*Donated by Michael Spalti*)
- Fixed breadcrumbs to display full object names on hover over (*Donated by eScire*)
- Facet search box on the main search interface can now search all words in a phrase facet value (previously it only searched the first word)
- Fixed issue where homepage hits could trigger 2 views in Google Analytics
- Fixed issues with Syndication Feed buttons on Community/Collection pages (*Donated by Nicholas Woodward*)
- Fixed issue where "Browse By Title" didn't allow you to filter results by multiple words (*Donated by Toni Prieto*)
- Fixed issue where opening a restricted bitstream in a different window or tab did not work properly.
- Fixed issue where items with thousands of bitstreams caused the Item page to load extremely slowly or crash entirely.
- Fixed robots.txt to include fully qualified URLs in Sitemap (necessary for search engine optimization)
- Fixed issue where "Browse By" menus were not working properly for Community/Collection Admins.
- Fixed issue where Collection Admins could not version Items.
- Fixed issue where Group descriptions could not be edited from the Admin UI.
- Fixed issue where sidebar options were displayed for authenticated users with read-only access. Sidebar has been enhanced to check user permissions more carefully.
- Fixed issue where thumbnails were sometimes generated with no permissions, making them not able to be displayed in the UI.
- Fixed issue where submission forms listed Collections in the Collection dropdown in a random order. They are now ordered by Title (*Donated by Arvo Consultores y Tecnología. S.L*)
- Fixed issues where configured Creative Commons jurisdiction was being ignored & locale wasn't returning translated questions (*Donated by Toni Prieto*)
- Fixed issues where OAI Harvesting "last harvested" date wasn't being updated or reported properly. (*Donated by Nicholas Woodward*)
- Fixed issue where title highlighting was not working in search results.
- Fixed issue where an Item could not be deleted if it had a "Request for Copy".
- Allow users to enhance ImageMagick generated PDF thumbnails via a new "density" setting¹⁴ & fixed layout issues with some PDF thumbnails. (*Donated by Alan Orth*)
- CSS variables can now be used in all HTML templates. See <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/pull/1853>
- Accessibility bug fixes for several pages (*Donated by eScire*)
- Support for Node v18 in the User Interface
- Numerous other small bug fixes and dependency updates

New/Updated Language support:

- Brazilian Portugese (Português do Brasil) language updates donated by Lucas Zinato Carraro (lucasz)
- Catalan (Català) language added & donated by Toni Prieto
- French (Français) language updates donated by Pierre Lasou (pilasou)
- German (Deutsch) language updates donated by Sascha Szott (saschaszott)
- Greek (Ελληνικά) language updates donated by LisAtUP
- Kazakh (Қазақ) language updates donated by myrza1
- Polish (Polski) language added & donated by PCG Academia & Michał Dykas (michdyk)
- Spanish (Español) language updates donated by Toni Prieto & Cristian Emanuelle Guzmán Suárez (CrisGuzmanS)
- Ukrainian (Українська) language added & donated by AndrukhivAndriy

¹³ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8563>

¹⁴ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8553>

1.1.1.1 7.5 Acknowledgments

The DSpace application would not exist without the hard work and support of its community. Thank you to the many developers who have worked very hard to deliver all the new features and improvements. We deeply appreciate the financial contributions by those institutions that have contributed to the [DSpace Development Fund](#)¹⁵. Also, thanks to the users who provided input and feedback on the development, those who contributed documentation as well those who participated in the testathons.

Development Acknowledgments

A total of 44 unique individuals contributed to 7.5, with major institutional contributions coming from [4Science](#)¹⁶ and [Atmire](#)¹⁷.

Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments

The following 30 individuals have contributed directly to the new DSpace (Angular) User Interface in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Alexandre Vryghem (alexandrevryghem), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Joost Fock (joost-atmire), Cristian Emanuelle Guzmán Suárez (CrisGuzmanS), nikunj59, yingjin, Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Toni Prieto (toniprieto), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Art Lowel (artlowel), Nicholas Woodward (nwoodward), Sergio Fernández Celorio (sergius02), Lucas Zinato Carraro (lucaszc), Sascha Szott (saschaszott), Michał Dykas (michdyk), Vincenzo Mecca (vins01-4science), Pierre Lasou (pilasou), Max Nuding (hutattedonmyarm), dsteelma-umd, Mykhaylo Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), myrza1, AndrukhivAndriy, LisAtUP, tony

The above contributor lists were determined based on contributions to the "dspace-angular" project in GitHub between 7.4 (after October 6, 2022) and 7.5: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/graphs/contributors?from=2022-10-06&to=2023-02-16&type=c>

Backend / REST API Acknowledgments

The following 26 individuals have contributed directly to the DSpace backend (REST API, Java API, OAI-PMH, etc.) in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Mykhaylo Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), JensRoets-Atmire, Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Vincenzo Mecca (vins01-4science), Nicholas Woodward (nwoodward), Kevin Van de Velde (KevinVdV), Toni Prieto (toniprieto), Adán Román Ruiz (aroman-arvo), Alex (sashashura), Philipp Rumpf (philippumpf), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Alan Orth (alanorth), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Joost Fock (joost-atmire), Pascal-Nicolas Becker (pnbecker), Johanna (johannastaudinger), Hrafn Malmquist (J4bbi), Raf Ponsaerts (Raf-atmire), Andrea Bollini (abollini), Francesco Pio Scognamiglio (francescopioscognamiglio), Christian Scheible (christian-scheible), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Flo (floriangantner)

The above contributor list was determined based on contributions to the "DSpace" project in GitHub between 7.4 (after October 6, 2022) and 7.5: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/graphs/contributors?from=2022-10-06&to=2023-02-16&type=c>

¹⁵ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

¹⁶ <https://www.4science.com/>

¹⁷ <https://www.atmire.com/>

Financial Acknowledgments

We gratefully recognize those institutions who have generously pledged to financially support one or more 7.x releases via the [DSpace Development Fund](#)¹⁸. A list of those funders can be found on the [DSpace Development Fund](#)¹⁹ page.

1.1.2 7.4 Release Notes

DSpace 7.4 is available now!

To try out DSpace 7.4 immediately, see [Try out DSpace 7](#)²⁰. This includes instructions for a quick-install via Docker, as well as information on our [sandbox/demo site for DSpace 7](#)²¹.

To upgrade to DSpace 7.4 from 7.x or any prior version, see [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116).

To install DSpace 7.4 for the first time, see [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78).

- Download DSpace 7.4 Backend: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases/tag/dspace-7.4>
- Download DSpace 7.4 User Interface: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases/tag/dspace-7.4>

DSpace 7.4 provides new features & bug fixes to the 7.x platform.

New and improved features include:

- **Recent Submissions are now listed on the homepage.** (See "[recentSubmissions](#)" options(see page 496)) (donated by [DSpaceDirect](#)²², developed by [DSquare Technologies](#)²³)
- **Batch export (to Zip)**(see page 318) **of Collections or Items** available in the Admin UI
- **Batch import (from Zip)**(see page 316) available in the Admin UI.
- **Thumbnails are now displayed** in all search/browse screens. (See "[showThumbnails](#)" option(see page 494)) (donated by [Michael Spalti, Willamette University](#))
- **Support for Google Captcha**(see page 196) on "New user registration" form. (See "registration.verification.enabled" in `dspace.cfg`) (donated by [4Science](#))
- **Support for Google Analytics 4**(see page 471) ("Universal Analytics" is still also supported)
- **Support for Markdown, HTML and MathJax**(see page 503) in Item abstracts. Support for line breaks in all metadata fields.
- **Support for Remote Handle Resolver**²⁴ now included, allowing for Handle Server to be run remotely.
- **Enhanced support for Amazon S3 as a storage location**(see page 867), including support for IAM Roles.
- **Allow for deletion of old Processes** from the Admin UI. Bulk deletion script (`process-cleaner`) also available.
- **Request a Copy**(see page 186) **can now be sent to multiple recipients** at once (donated by [Mark Wood, IUPUI](#))
- Privacy statement and end user agreement can now be disabled. (See "[info](#)" options(see page 503))
- Add configurations for page sizes to many browse/search pages. (See various "pageSize" options in [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478)) (donated by [Mark Wood, IUPUI, and Mark Cooper, LYRASIS](#))

Major bug fixes / improvements include:

- Fixed issue where "start-handle-server" command line tool wasn't working properly (donated by [Jean-François Morin, Université Laval and Mark Wood, IUPUI](#))

¹⁸ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

¹⁹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

²⁰ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7>

²¹ <https://demo7.dspace.org/>

²² <https://dspacedirect.org>

²³ <https://new.d2t.co/>

²⁴ <https://github.com/DSpace/Remote-Handle-Resolver>

- MyDSpace: Entities are now displayed properly, workflow tasks now refresh after state change
- Submission: After drag & drop of a file, the user goes directly to the submission form. (*donated by Nicolas Boulay, Université Laval*)
- Statistics: fixed issue where file names were sometimes missing or replaced by UUID.
- Thumbnails: restricted thumbnails are now supported and are displayed if you have access.
- Search: admins were seeing private/withdrawn items in normal searches. Those now are only visible in the “Admin Search” page.
- Browse by pages: fixed issue where pagination was not working properly on all browse by pages and diacritics were not working properly in filter boxes
- Curation tasks: the output of the task is now visible from the Admin UI.
- Password authentication security enhancements: user must provide current password when changing their password. Password minimum requirements are now configurable, allowing for you to require users to create more secure passwords (See "[authentication-password.regex-validation.pattern](#)" in `dspace.cfg`(see [page 140](#))
- Shibboleth authentication: Admin menu now reloads automatically after login
- Numerous caching & performance fixes to ensure various pages will now automatically refresh whenever underlying objects change.
- See the 7.4 milestone for [frontend](#)²⁵ and [backend](#)²⁶ for a list of *all changes applied in 7.4*.

New/Updated Language support:

- Finnish (Suomi) language updates donated by Reeta Kuuskoski ([reetagithub](#))
- French (Français) language updates donated by Pierre Lasou ([pilasou](#))
- German (Deutsch) language updates donated by Sascha Szott ([saschaszott](#))
- Greek (Ελληνικά) language added & donated by Kostis Alexandris ([kostisalex](#))
- Hindi (हिंदी) language added & donated by [DSquare Technologies](#)²⁷
- Kazakh (Қазақ) language added & donated by [myrza1](#)
- Brazilian Portuguese (Português do Brasil) updates donated by João Fernandes ([joao-uefrom](#)), Lucas Zinato Carraro ([lucaszc](#)) and Danilo Felicio Jr ([danilofjr](#))
- Spanish (Español) language updates donated by [Arvo Consultores y Tecnología. S.L](#)²⁸
- Swedish (Svenska) language added & donated by Urban Andersson ([jokermanse](#)). Additional updates donated by Reeta Kuuskoski ([reetagithub](#))

1.1.2.1 7.4 Acknowledgments

The DSpace application would not exist without the hard work and support of its community. Thank you to the many developers who have worked very hard to deliver all the new features and improvements. We deeply appreciate the financial contributions by those institutions that have contributed to the [DSpace Development Fund](#)²⁹. Also, thanks to the users who provided input and feedback on the development, those who contributed documentation as well those who participated in the testathons.

Development Acknowledgments

A total of 49 unique individuals contributed to 7.4, with major institutional contributions coming from [4Science](#)³⁰ and [Atmire](#)³¹.

²⁵ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.4>

²⁶ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.4>

²⁷ <https://new.d2t.co/>

²⁸ <https://arvo.es/>

²⁹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

³⁰ <https://www.4science.com/>

³¹ <https://www.atmire.com/>

Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments

The following 39 individuals have contributed directly to the new DSpace (Angular) User Interface in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Lotte Hofstede (LotteHofstede), nikunj59, Peter Wolfersberger (hpwBLN), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Samuel Cambien (samuelcambien), Art Lowel (artlowel), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Alexandre Vryghem (alexandrevryghem), Pierre Lasou (pilasou), Vincenzo Mecca (vins01-4science), myrza1, Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Lucas Zinato Carraro (lucaszc), Abhishek Raval (abhishek2t), GauravD2t, Danilo Felicio Jr (danilofjr), Kostis Alexandris (kostisalex), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Mark Cooper (mark-cooper), Toni Prieto (toniprieto), FelixNicol, João Fernandes (joao-uefrom), dsteelma-umd, Kostas Stamatis (kstamatis), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Sergio Fernández Celorio (sergius02), Urban Andersson (jokermanse), yingjin, Ian van der Linde (lanvdl), Andrea Bollini (abollini), Hardy Pottinger (hardyoyo), Reeta Kuuskoski (reetagithub), Sascha Szott (saschaszott), Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), Nicolas Boulay (nibou230)

The above contributor lists were determined based on contributions to the "dspace-angular" project in GitHub between 7.3 (after June 24, 2022) and 7.4: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/graphs/contributors?from=2022-06-24&to=2022-10-06&type=c>

Backend / REST API Acknowledgments

The following 20 individuals have contributed directly to the DSpace backend (REST API, Java API, OAI-PMH, etc.) in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Michele Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), Luca Giamminonni (LucaGiamminonni), Vincenzo Mecca (vins01-4science), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Francesco Pio Scognamiglio (francescopioscognamiglio), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Philipp Rumpf (philipprumpf), ammanabrolua, Andrea Bollini (abollini), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), eskander17, Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), ballarinie, Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Toni Prieto (toniprieto), Ben Bosman (benbosman), Samuel Cambien (samuelcambien), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), @Jean-François Morin (jeffmorin)

The above contributor list was determined based on contributions to the "DSpace" project in GitHub between 7.3 (after June 24, 2022) and 7.4: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/graphs/contributors?from=2022-06-24&to=2022-10-06&type=c>

Financial Acknowledgments

We gratefully recognize those institutions who have generously pledged to financially support one or more 7.x releases via the [DSpace Development Fund](#)³². A list of those funders can be found on the [DSpace Development Fund](#)³³ page.

1.1.3 7.3 Release Notes

DSpace 7.3 is available now!

To try out DSpace 7.3 immediately, see [Try out DSpace 7.3](#)³⁴. This includes instructions for a quick-install via Docker, as well as information on our [sandbox/demo site for DSpace 7.3](#)³⁵.

To upgrade to DSpace 7.3 from 7.x or any prior version, see [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116).

To install DSpace 7.3 for the first time, see [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78).

- Download DSpace 7.3 Backend: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases/tag/dspace-7.3>

³² <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

³³ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

³⁴ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7>

³⁵ <https://demo7.dspace.org/>

- Download DSpace 7.3 User Interface: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases/tag/dspace-7.3>

DSpace 7.3 provides new features & bug fixes to the 7.x platform.

New and improved features include:

- **ORCID Authentication and synchronization to a DSpace Researcher Profile** (*ported from the DSpace-CRIS project, partially donated and developed by 4Science³⁶*). See [ORCID Integration](#)(see page 426) and [Researcher Profiles](#)(see page 443)
- **Import content directly from 9 new external services** including CrossRef, Scopus, Web of Science, PubMed Europe, CiNii, NASA Astrophysics Data System (ADS), VuFind.org, SciELO.org, and the European Patent Office (EPO) (*ported from the DSpace-CRIS project, partially donated and developed by 4Science³⁷*). See [Importing Items via basic bibliographic formats \(Endnote, BibTex, RIS, CSV, etc\) and online services \(arXiv, PubMed, CrossRef, CiNii, etc\)](#)(see page 303)
- **Configurable Entities now support Item Versioning**. It is now possible to create versions of Entities which automatically retain all relationships. Examples of how versioning works can be found in "[Versioning Support](#)" section of "[Configurable Entities](#)"(see page 207). Also refer to [Item Level Versioning](#)(see page 407) documentation for a general overview of how versioning works in DSpace.
- **Admin "Health" menu provides basic control panel functionality** (*based on 6.x Control Panel*). When logged in as an Administrator, select "Health" from the side menu. You'll see a "Status" tab which provides useful information about the status of the DSpace backend, and an "Info" tab which provides an overview of backend configurations and Java information.
- **Validate a Batch Metadata CSV before applying changes** (*similar to 6.x*). When uploading a CSV for batch updates (using "Import" menu), a new "Validate Only" option is selected by default. When selected, the uploaded CSV will only be validated & you'll receive a report of the detected changes in the CSV. This allows you to verify the changes are correct before applying them. (NOTE: applying the changes requires re-submitting the CSV with the "Validate Only" option deselected)
- **Export search results to a CSV** (*similar to 6.x*). When logged in as an Administrator, after performing a search a new "Export search results as CSV" button appears. Clicking it will export the metadata of all items in your search results to a CSV. This CSV can then be used to perform batch metadata updates (based on the items in your search results).
- **Submission forms support display of SHERPA/RoMEO publisher policies when an ISSN is entered** (*similar to 6.x*). A new "sherpaPolicies" optional submission step exists. When enabled, a new "Sherpa policies" section appears in the form. If a submitter enters an ISSN, then that form section will display publisher policies based on that ISSN. See "[Configuring the Sherpa Romeo step](#)" in the "[Submission User Interface](#)"(see page 356)
- **Submission forms support type-based fields** (*ported from the DSpace-CRIS project by Kim Shepherd of The Library Code³⁸, with support from Technische Universität Berlin³⁹*) (*similar to 6.x*): Based on the selected Type (dc.type), the form may dynamically add/change metadata fields available. See "[Item Type Based Metadata Collection](#)" in [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 347)
- **Preview items during workflow approval** (*similar to 6.x*). When viewing the list of all items under workflow (in "My DSpace" → "Show: Workflow Tasks"), it's now possible to preview each item (before claiming or reviewing) by clicking the View button.
- **Withdrawn items now show a tombstone page** (*similar to 6.x*). When an item is withdrawn, accessing it's homepage as a non-Administrator now brings you to a "tombstone" page which notes that the Item was withdrawn. (Administrative users can see the entire item when they are logged in)

³⁶ <https://4science.it/>

³⁷ <https://4science.it/>

³⁸ <https://www.the-library-code.de/>

³⁹ <https://www.tu.berlin/ub/>

- **RSS/Atom feeds for Site, Community & Collection pages** (Donated by [Atmire](https://www.atmire.com/)⁴⁰) (similar to 6.x). On the homepage, and on every Community or Collection page, a Syndication Feed icon now appears. Clicking it brings you to an Atom feed of the most recent submissions (either sitewide, or specific to that Community/Collection).
- Optionally, **Item "access status" badges (e.g. "open access", "restricted", "metadata only", "embargoed") can be displayed in all Item lists.** (Donated by [Université Laval](https://www.ulaval.ca/)⁴¹) This feature can be enabled via the new "showAccessStatuses" setting in config.*.yml. See [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 0) and <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/1566>
- Optionally, **a welcome email can be sent to all newly registered users** (Donated by [Mark H. Wood](https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~mwood)⁴² of [IUPUI](https://www.iupui.edu/)⁴³). This can be enabled using the new "mail.welcome.enabled" backend configuration in your local.cfg.
- **Oracle Database support has been deprecated.** It will be removed in mid-2023. All sites should plan a migration to PostgreSQL. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8214>
- Migrated text extraction to use Apache Tika. There is now a single "Text Extractor" media filter plugin. See [Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content](#)(see page 617) for more details.

Major bug fixes / improvements include:

- Major frontend performance improvements: initial page load is much quicker. All assets are now zipped/minified. Caching improvements.
- Frontend can be easily run from a subpath (e.g. <https://my.university.edu/dspace>) (Donated by [Harvard University](https://www.harvard.edu/)⁴⁴, developed by [William Welling](https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~wwelling%40library.tamu.edu)⁴⁵)
- "custom" theme was throwing TypeErrors in 7.2. That has been fixed.
- Renamed "private/public" status to be "non-discoverable/discoverable", which is more accurate. This item status just meant the item was not findable/discoverable through DSpace search/browse. It has nothing to do with whether the item is accessible or not accessible anonymously.
- Added "Now Showing..." informational counts to all Browse By pages (similar to in 6.x)
- Changed Browse "jump to" boxes to act as a filter, rather than jumping to a specific page. Updated display to make this clearer.
- Fixed several bugs related to resource policies
 - Couldn't set an end date on a resource policy in some situations
 - Couldn't edit an existing resource policy (previously you had to delete & recreate the policy)
- Fixed bug where resubmitting an Item move could result in Item deletion.
- Fixed several bugs in submission form, including
 - Improved form validation and error display
 - Occasionally, null metadata values were being saved
 - In some scenarios, submissions could be completed without agreeing to license.
 - Fixed bug where Creative Commons step wasn't loading properly when configured
 - Fixed bug where radio buttons were not working properly when submission field was set as a "list" that was not repeatable.
 - Fixed several bugs in bitstream editing form
- Fixed bug with browse by issue date wouldn't work if it encountered an invalid date in the first item. (Donated by [4Science](https://4science.it/)⁴⁶)
- Fixed bug where bitstream edit page wouldn't load if a bitstream's access policies were all deleted.
- Fixed bug where restricted bitstream downloads were not checking a user's "special groups" which may provide them permissions. (Donated by [4Science](https://4science.it/)⁴⁷)
- Frontend has been upgraded to Angular 13.

40 <https://www.atmire.com/>

41 <https://www.ulaval.ca/>

42 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~mwood>

43 <https://www.iupui.edu/>

44 <https://www.harvard.edu/>

45 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~wwelling%40library.tamu.edu>

46 <https://4science.it/>

47 <https://4science.it/>

- Backend has been updated to Spring Boot 2.6
- Numerous other dependency updates
- See the 7.3 milestone for [frontend](#)⁴⁸ and [backend](#)⁴⁹ for a list of *all changes applied in 7.3*.

New/Updated Language support:

- Bengali (বাংলা) language added & donated by Md. Topu Raihan (raihantopu)
- Finnish (Suomi) language updates donated by Reeta Kuuskoski (reetagithub)
- French (Français) language updates donated by Marie-Hélène Vézina (mhvenzina)
- German (Deutsch) language updates donated by Sascha Szott (saschaszott) and louiserumpf and Yannick Paulsen (YPaulsen-TLC) and WolfgangT71
- Turkish (Türkçe) language added & donated by [Istanbul Technical University](#)⁵⁰ IT Office

1.1.3.1 7.3 Acknowledgments

The DSpace application would not exist without the hard work and support of its community. Thank you to the many developers who have worked very hard to deliver all the new features and improvements. We deeply appreciate the financial contributions by those institutions that have contributed to the [DSpace Development Fund](#)⁵¹. Also, thanks to the users who provided input and feedback on the development, those who contributed documentation as well those who participated in the testathons.

Development Acknowledgments

A total of 37 unique individuals contributed to 7.3, with major institutional contributions coming from 4Science and Atmire.

Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments

The following 28 individuals have contributed directly to the new DSpace (Angular) User Interface in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Sascha Szott (saschaszott), Luca Giamminonni (LucaGiamminonni), Alexandre Vryghem (alexandrevryghem), Art Lowel (artlowel), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Lotte Hofstede (LotteHofstede), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Istanbul Technical University IT Office (itudevops), Sufiyan Shaikh (SufiyanShaikhPeerbits), William Welling (wwelling), Michele Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), nikunj59, Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), louiserumpf, Pierre Lasou (pilasou), Marie-Hélène Vézina (mhvenzina), Reeta Kuuskoski (reetagithub), pratik-peerbits, Md. Topu Raihan (raihantopu), Pascal-Nicolas Becker (pnbecker), Rezart Vata (rezartatis)

The above contributor lists were determined based on contributions to the "dspace-angular" project in GitHub between 7.2 (after Feb 3, 2022) and 7.3: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/graphs/contributors?from=2022-02-03&to=2022-06-24&type=c>

Backend / REST API Acknowledgments

The following 20 individuals have contributed directly to the DSpace backend (REST API, Java API, OAI-PMH, etc.) in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Luca Giamminonni (LucaGiamminonni), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Michele Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), ballarinie, Andrea Bollini (abollini), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), Antoine Snyers (antoine-atmire), Ben Bosman (benbosman), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Yana De

⁴⁸ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.3>

⁴⁹ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.3>

⁵⁰ <https://www.itu.edu.tr/>

⁵¹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

Pauw (YanaDePauw), eskander17, Michael Spalti (mspalti), Toni Prieto (toniprieto), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Pascal-Nicolas Becker (pnbecker), Samuel Cambien (samuelcambien)

The above contributor list was determined based on contributions to the "DSpace" project in GitHub between 7.2 (after Feb 3, 2022) and 7.3: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/graphs/contributors?from=2022-02-03&to=2022-06-24&type=c>

Financial Acknowledgments

We gratefully recognize the following institutions who have generously pledged financially to support the 7.3 release via the [DSpace Development Fund](#)⁵².

- Charité - Universitätsmedizin Berlin - Medical Library
- Freie Universität Berlin, Universitätsbibliothek
- Georgia Tech Library
- Humboldt Universität zu Berlin
- Indiana University, Purdue University, Indianapolis (IUPUI)
- Technische Universität Berlin
- Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek Darmstadt
- Universitätsbibliothek Kassel
- Universität Konstanz
- University of Arizona Libraries
- University of Edinburgh
- University of Kansas
- Virginia Tech University Libraries

1.1.4 7.2.1 Release Notes (Backend Only)

All DSpace 7.0, 7.1 or 7.2 sites should ensure the backend is upgraded to 7.2.1 (or later) or manually patched

DSpace 7.0, 7.1 and 7.2 all used a bundled version of the Apache Spring Libraries which are vulnerable to RCE (remote command execution). The CVE-2022-22965 vulnerability is described in more detail at <https://spring.io/blog/2022/03/31/spring-framework-rce-early-announcement>

If you cannot upgrade immediately, other workarounds / alternative fixes are documented in the patch PR at <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8231>

DSpace 7.2.1 only contains an update to the Apache Spring Libraries to ensure DSpace is not vulnerable to CVE-2022-22965. As such, it was only a Backend / REST API release. The DSpace 7.2 Frontend (UI) can be used with the DSpace 7.2.1 Backend.

To ensure your 7.x site is completely secure, perform the following:

1. Upgrade your DSpace backend (REST API) to [version 7.2.1](#)⁵³ immediately. This backend is compatible with the [DSpace Frontend version 7.2](#)⁵⁴ (only)
 - a. If you are unable to perform this upgrade, you may patch your 7.0 or 7.1 site by applying the changes in [PR #8231](#)⁵⁵. Instructions can be found in that PR.

⁵² <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Announcement%3A+DSpace+Development+Fund>

⁵³ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases/tag/dspace-7.2.1>

⁵⁴ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases/tag/dspace-7.2>

⁵⁵ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8231>

2. Optionally, upgrade your Apache Tomcat to version 9.0.62 (which also has extra guards against this vulnerability).
3. Make sure to restart Tomcat after updates have been applied.

At this time, DSpace 6.x and below appear unaffected by CVE-2022-22965, as they all used Java/JDK 8 (or below) which is documented as not impacted. The vulnerability is only possible when using Java/JDK 9 or above.

1.1.5 7.2 Release Notes

DSpace 7.2 is available now!

To try out DSpace 7.2 immediately, see [Try out DSpace 7.2](#)⁵⁶. This includes instructions for a quick-install via Docker, as well as information on our [sandbox/demo site for DSpace 7.2](#)⁵⁷.

To upgrade to DSpace 7.2 from 7.x or any prior version, see [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116).

To install DSpace 7.2 for the first time, see [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78).

- Download DSpace 7.2 Backend: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases/tag/dspace-7.2>
- Download DSpace 7.2 User Interface: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases/tag/dspace-7.2>

DSpace 7.2 provides new features & bug fixes to the 7.x platform.

New and improved features include:

- [Runtime Configuration for the User Interface](#)(see page 478) (*Donated by Harvard University*⁵⁸, *developed by William Welling*⁵⁹): In DSpace 7.0 and 7.1, changes to your [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) required rebuilding the entire UI (which could take 10+ minutes). As of 7.2, *all User Interface configurations are loaded at runtime*. So, to change configurations just requires a quick restart of the User Interface (which usually takes only a few seconds). The configuration format also changed from Typescript to YAML to support this feature. A "yarn env:yaml" migration script is provided to migrate the old format to the new one. See [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) for more details.
- **Add Item Embargoes / Restrictions in the Submission User Interface**(see page 338): A new, optional "itemAccessConditions" step exists in the Submission configuration. Enabling it adds a section which allows you to select access restrictions, embargoes or leases. It also allows you to select whether the Item is discoverable via search/browse. See [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) and [Embargo](#)(see page 172) documentation for details.
- **Feedback Form**: A feedback form is now linked in the footer of every page, as long as a "feedback.recipient" is specified in your local.cfg. This feature allow users to contact the configured "feedback.recipient" from any page in the site.
- **OpenID Connect (OIDC) Authentication Plugin**(see page 139) (*Ported from the DSpace-CRIS project by Hardy Pottinger*⁶⁰ *of California Digital Library*⁶¹, *with support from 4Science*⁶²): DSpace now supports single sign on using [OpenID Connect \(OIDC\)](#)⁶³, which allows it to support authentication through [providers such as Google, Microsoft, Amazon, etc.](#)⁶⁴ For more information on setting this up, see the [Authentication Plugins](#)(see page 139) page.

⁵⁶ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7>

⁵⁷ <https://demo7.dspace.org/>

⁵⁸ <https://www.harvard.edu/>

⁵⁹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~wwelling%40library.tamu.edu>

⁶⁰ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~hardyoyo>

⁶¹ <https://cdlib.org/>

⁶² <https://4science.it/>

⁶³ <https://openid.net/connect/>

⁶⁴ <https://connect2id.com/products/nimbus-oauth-openid-connect-sdk/openid-connect-providers>

- **IIIF Enhancements**(see page 547) (Donated by Michael Spalti⁶⁵ of Willamette University⁶⁶): Includes support for adding IIIF metadata using [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308), editing IIIF bitstream metadata from the User Interface (when editing an existing Bitstream), and a new `./dspace iiif-canvas-dimensions` CLI tool for auto-populating IIIF canvas dimensions in bulk.
- **Running "filter-media" (Mediafilters**(see page 617) **from Processes User Interface.** Administrators can now run the "filter-media" script from the Admin UI ("Processes" menu), in order to immediately update thumbnails, full text indexing, etc. See [Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content](#)(see page 617) for more details about this script.
- **Improved support for custom "Browse By" configurations.** User Interface "Browse by" options are now retrieved dynamically from the REST API, based on the backend's configured browse by indexes (see "webui.browse.index.*" options documented in the [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 780))
- **Backend has added support for JDK 17.** The DSpace backend now supports either JDK 11 or JDK 17.
- **Frontend has been upgraded to Angular 11.**
- **Solr now uses a connection pool by default** (Donated by Mark H. Wood⁶⁷ of IUPUI⁶⁸). See [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 736) for details of new "solr.client.*" configs in `dspace.cfg`.

Major bug fixes include:

- User interface would load indefinitely if the REST API was unavailable. Now, an error page is displayed to let you know the REST API is unresponsive.
- User Interface deployment required the "node_modules" folder to exist, making it more difficult to containerize (e.g. Docker). Now, the UI can be deployed via only the "dist" folder. See <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/1410> (Donated by Harvard University⁶⁹, developed by William Welling⁷⁰)
- Searches with invalid syntax or special characters would load indefinitely. Now an error is displayed if the syntax is invalid in some way.
- On Item page, very long metadata fields or file names would break the page layout
- When an Item had an invalid or empty "dspace.entity.type" metadata field, it was unable to be deleted.
- On Submission page, if you drag & drop a file to start a submission, the Collection selection window sometimes did not load properly.
- On Submission page, sometimes the "Deposit" button would not enable even when all required fields are filled out. "Deposit" button is now always enabled, but it will block submission if required fields are missing.
- On Submission page, fixed several bugs with editing / setting embargoes or access restrictions on uploaded files.
- Statistics were always accessible publicly, even if restricted to Administrators. Statistics now are only accessible to Admins when `usage-statistics.authorization.admin.usage` is set to true in `local.cfg`
- Administrators were not able to reset passwords of other users.
- On Processes page, scripts could not be run without parameters. Additionally, fixed display of dates so they always appear as UTC time
- When both Shibboleth and DSpace password authentication were enabled, users were able to change their password in DSpace in order to bypass Shibboleth.
- On backend, improved indexing performance. (Donated by 4Science⁷¹)
- On backend, improved file download performance to avoid connection leaks when S3 is used as backend storage.

65 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~mspalti>

66 <https://willamette.edu/>

67 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~mwood>

68 <https://www.iupui.edu/>

69 <https://www.harvard.edu/>

70 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~wwelling%40library.tamu.edu>

71 <https://4science.it/>

- Numerous other minor bug fixes or accessibility improvements. See the 7.2 milestone for [frontend](#)⁷² and [backend](#)⁷³ for a list of *all changes applied in 7.2*.

New/Updated Language support:

- Scottish Gaelic (Gàidhlig) user interface support added (*Donated by Donald I Macdonald and Stòrlann Nàiseanta na Gàidhlig*)
- German (Deutsch) user interface support had a syntax error which caused it not to work properly

1.1.5.1 7.2 Acknowledgments

A total of 28 unique individuals contributed to 7.2, with major institutional contributions coming from 4Science and Atmire.

Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments

The following 15 individuals have contributed directly to the new DSpace (Angular) User Interface in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), William Welling (wwelling), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Rezart Vata (rezartatis), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Lotte Hofstede (LotteHofstede), Art Lowel (artlowel), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Hardy Pottinger (hardyoyo), Donald I Macdonald (donaldi), Santiago Tettamanti (santit96)

The above contributor lists were determined based on contributions to the "dspace-angular" project in GitHub between 7.1 (after Oct 28, 2021) and 7.2: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/graphs/contributors?from=2021-10-28&to=2022-02-03&type=c>

Backend / REST API Acknowledgments

The following 23 individuals have contributed directly to the DSpace backend (REST API, Java API, OAI-PMH, etc) in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Michele Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Hardy Pottinger (hardyoyo), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Joost Fock (joost-atmire), Kevin Van de Velde (KevinVdV), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Jose Vicente Ribelles Aguilar (jvribell), Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Luca Giamminonni (LucaGiamminonni), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Ben Bosman (benbosman), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Hrafn Malmquist (J4bbi), Paulo Graça (paulo-graca), Andrea Bollini (abollini), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), William Welling (wwelling), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Samuel Cambien (samuelcambien)

The above contributor list was determined based on contributions to the "DSpace" project in GitHub between 7.1 (after Oct 28, 2021) and 7.2: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/graphs/contributors?from=2021-10-28&to=2022-02-03&type=c>

1.1.6 7.1.1 Release Notes (Backend Only)

All DSpace 7.0 or 7.1 sites should ensure the backend is upgraded to 7.1.1 (or above) or manually patched

⁷² <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.2>

⁷³ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.2>

DSpace 7.0 and 7.1 both used a bundled version of the Apache Log4j Library vulnerable to RCE (remote command execution). The CVE-2021-44228 vulnerability is described in more detail at <https://cve.mitre.org/cgi-bin/cvename.cgi?name=CVE-2021-44228> and https://logging.apache.org/log4j/2.x/security.html#Fixed_in_Log4j_2.15.0

DSpace 7.1.1 only contains an update to the Apache Log4j Library to ensure DSpace is not vulnerable to CVE-2021-44228. As such, it was only a Backend / REST API release. The DSpace 7.1 Frontend (UI) can be used with the DSpace 7.1.1 Backend.

To ensure your 7.x site is completely secure, perform ALL the following:

1. Upgrade your DSpace backend (REST API) to [version 7.1.1](#)⁷⁴ immediately. This backend is compatible with the [DSpace Frontend version 7.1](#)⁷⁵
 - a. If you are unable to perform this upgrade, you may patch your 7.0 or 7.1 site by applying the changes in [PR #8065](#)⁷⁶. Specifically, update your `./pom.xml` to have `<log4j.version>2.15.0</log4j.version>`. Then rebuild & redeploy your backend. Make sure to restart Tomcat.
2. Upgrade to Apache Solr v8.11.1 (or above), to ensure your Solr is patched for CVE-2021-44228
 - a. If you are unable to perform this upgrade, you may patch your current Solr by ensuring that `-Dlog4j2.formatMsgNoLookups=true`` is specified in your ``SOLR_OPTS`` environment variable. For more information, see <https://solr.apache.org/security.html#apache-solr-affected-by-apache-log4j-cve-2021-44228>
3. If you use the [Handle.Net Registry Support](#) (see [page 613](#)) in DSpace 7.x, make sure to restart your Handle Server. This will ensure it is using the new version of log4j as well.

At this time, DSpace 6.x and below appear unaffected by CVE-2021-44228, as they all used log4j v1 exclusively with a default configuration that is not impacted.

Additional log4j patch available for 7.x

Immediately after version 7.1.1 was released, the log4j community announced a secondary, less severe vulnerability ([CVE-2021-45046](#)⁷⁷) which was patched in a log4j v 2.16.0 release. This fix is NOT included in 7.1.1. But, you can immediately apply this secondary patch by applying the changes in <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8070>. This is again a one line change. Simply update your `./pom.xml` to have `<log4j.version>2.16.0</log4j.version>`. Then rebuild & redeploy your backend.

1.1.7 7.1 Release Notes

We highly recommend ALL DSpace 7.0 users upgrade to 7.1

DSpace 7.1 contains a security fix to the backend (REST API) for all sites running 7.0. See [CVE-2021-41189](#)⁷⁸ for details.

DSpace 7.1 is available now!

⁷⁴ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases/tag/dspace-7.1.1>

⁷⁵ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases/tag/dspace-7.1>

⁷⁶ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8065>

⁷⁷ <https://cve.mitre.org/cgi-bin/cvename.cgi?name=CVE-2021-45046>

⁷⁸ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/security/advisories/GHSA-cf2j-vf36-c6w8>

To try out DSpace 7.1 immediately, see [Try out DSpace 7](#)⁷⁹. This includes instructions for a quick-install via Docker, as well as information on our [sandbox/demo site for DSpace 7](#)⁸⁰.

To upgrade to DSpace 7.1 from 7.0 or any prior version, see [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116).

To install DSpace 7.0 for the first time, see [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78).

- Download DSpace 7.1 Backend: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases/tag/dspace-7.1>
- Download DSpace 7.1 User Interface: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases/tag/dspace-7.1>

DSpace 7.1 provides new features, security & bug fixes to the 7.x platform.

New and improved features include:

- [Request a Copy](#)(see page 186) (*Backend donated by Mark H. Wood*⁸¹ of [IUPUI](#)⁸²): Similar to v6.x, users can now ask the original author or submitter (or a help desk email) for an emailed copy of access restricted files. This provides users with a way to privately get copies of restricted files, should the request be approved. A request can be submitted by simply clicking on an access restricted bitstream in the UI. Approval or rejection of the request occurs by clicking the link sent in the request email.
- [Item Versioning](#)(see page 407): Similar to v6.x, administrators or submitters can now create new versions of Items. A new Item version can be created by logging in & clicking the "Create new version" button (next to the "Edit this item" button) on an Item's page. The new version is then created via the normal Item submission form (prepopulated with all existing information). Once created, all versions of an Item are visible on the Item page in the "Version History" section.
 - *Item Versioning is enabled by default, but can be disabled via configuration.*
 - *Entities are not yet supported for Versioning.*
- **Configure Collections to harvest content via OAI-PMH (OAI Harvesting)**(see page 251): Similar to 6.x (XMLUI), on the "Edit Collection" page's "Content Source" tab, there's an option to specify "This collection harvests its content from an external source". When enabled for a Collection, you can configure an external OAI-PMH instance (including another DSpace site) to harvest from. Once configured in the UI, harvesting is completed based on the configured schedule in your backend's local.cfg or oai.cfg.
- [IIIF Support](#)(see page 547) (*Donated by Michael Spalti*⁸³ of [Willamette University](#)⁸⁴, with support & enhancements donated by [4Science](#)⁸⁵): DSpace now supports the International Image Interoperability Framework ([IIIF.io](#)⁸⁶), including an embedded IIIF viewer ([Mirador](#)⁸⁷) in the UI. IIIF support is disabled by default, but can be easily enabled via configuration. Enabling IIIF also requires installing a [IIIF image server](#)⁸⁸ (e.g. [Cantaloupe](#)⁸⁹). For more details, please see the linked documentation.
- **Ability to "extend" other User Interface themes**(see page 518): In your environment.prod.ts, you can now specify that one theme "extends" another. This allows you to inherit all settings from the extended them by default. See the "Extending other Themes" section of the [User Interface Customization](#)(see page 505) documentation.
- **Configure one Entity Type per Collection**(see page 202) (*Ported by 4Science*⁹⁰ from their *DSpace-CRIS* project): When [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) are enabled, in the "Edit Collection" page you can select an Entity Type (e.g. Person, Project, Journal, etc) that Collection will accept. Once configured, this Collection will only accept new Submissions of that Entity Type, and will be one of the *recommended Collections* to Submitters

79 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7>

80 <https://demo7.dspace.org/>

81 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~mwood>

82 <https://www.iupui.edu/>

83 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~mspalti>

84 <https://willamette.edu/>

85 <https://4science.it/>

86 <https://iiif.io/>

87 <https://projectmirador.org/>

88 <https://github.com/IIIF/awesome-iiif#image-servers>

89 <https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/>

90 <https://4science.it/>

whenever they start a new Submission of that Entity Type. See "Configure Collections for each Entity type" section of the [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) documentation.

- **Support for importing Entities & Relationships via the Simple Archive Format**(see page 308) (Donated by [tysonlt](#)⁹¹): This is achieved via a new, optional "relationships" file in the Simple Archive Format directory. See the documentation for more details.
- **Support for importing Project Entities with funding information via the OpenAIRE API** (Donated by [Paulo Graça](#)⁹²): When importing a new "Research Project" Entity, a new "Funding OpenAIRE API" option is available, allowing you to import a Project from the OpenAIRE API complete with all its funding information (Funder, Funder Identifier, Funding Stream and Funding ID). This is implemented via a new external source via [Live Import from external sources](#)(see page 358).
- **Command-line script to help test the connection between your UI and your REST API.** Several people who installed 7.0 early ran into issues configuring the UI and REST API properly. A new "yarn config:check:rest" script has been added to the frontend codebase to help validate the connection with your REST API. It should also provide more descriptive errors (should they occur) which will help us to debug future issues others may encounter. See the "Frontend Installation" instructions (step 4) in [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) for more details.

Security fixes include:

- **[HIGH] CVE-2021-41189**⁹³: In 7.0, a Community or Collection Admin could escalate their permissions to become a full Administrator. A quick fix is also provided for sites running 7.0. (Reported by [Andrea Bollini](#) of [4Science](#))

Major bug fixes include:

- Major performance improvements to UI and REST API
 - In 7.0, several UI pages (Homepage, MyDSpace, Search, etc) would respond slowly if a large number of Communities & Collections existed in the system. Performance has been drastically improved in 7.1.
- In Submission form, the "administrator" Bitstream access condition was fixed. Previously, depending on Collection's "DEFAULT_READ" settings, the "administrator" permission limitation may not have worked properly. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8013>
- In Login form, some special characters in passwords were not accepted. This was the result of an encoding error which is now fixed. See <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/1367>
- In "Edit Item" on "Bitstreams" tab, the upload button was not working properly. This has been fixed. See <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/1286>
- In "Edit Item" on "Relationships" tab, it was difficult to manage Entities with many relationships. This has been improved. See <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/1148>
- Google Analytics reporting has been moved to an asynchronous/batch script to improve performance. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/2248>
- Numerous other minor bug fixes or accessibility improvements. See the 7.1 milestone for [frontend](#)⁹⁴ and [backend](#)⁹⁵ for a list of *all changes applied in 7.1*.

New/Updated Language support:

- German (Deutsch) user interface support was updated (Donated by [The Library Code](#)⁹⁶)
- Spanish (Español) user interface support added (Donated by [Gustavo S. Ferreyro](#)⁹⁷)

91 <https://github.com/tysonlt>

92 https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/~paulo_graca

93 <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/security/advisories/GHSA-cf2j-vf36-c6w8>

94 <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.1>

95 <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.1>

96 <https://www.the-library-code.de/>

97 <https://github.com/gsferryro>

1.1.7.1 7.1 Acknowledgments

A total of 27 unique individuals contributed to 7.1, with major institutional contributions coming from 4Science and Atmire.

Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments

The following 18 individuals have contributed directly to the new DSpace (Angular) User Interface in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Rezart Vata (rezartatis), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Lotte Hofstede (LotteHofstede), Alessandro Martelli (alemarte), Bill Branran (bbranran), Art Lowel (artlowel), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Yannick Paulsen (YPaulsen-TLC), Pascal-Nicolas Becker (pnbecker), Gustavo S Ferreyro (gsferreyro)

The above contributor lists were determined based on contributions to the "dspace-angular" project in GitHub between 7.0 (after July 29, 2021) and 7.1: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/graphs/contributors?from=2021-07-29&to=2021-10-27&type=c>

Backend / REST API Acknowledgments

The following 16 individuals have contributed directly to the DSpace backend (REST API, Java API, OAI-PMH, etc) in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Michele Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Paulo Graça (paulo-graca), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Andrea Bollini (abollini), tysonlt, Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Nicholas Woodward (nwoodward), Alan Orth (alanorth), Davide Negretti (davidenegretti-4science), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Andrew Wood (AndrewZWood), Ben Bosman (benbosman).

The above contributor list was determined based on contributions to the "DSpace" project in GitHub between 7.0 (after July 29, 2021) and 7.1: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/graphs/contributors?from=2021-07-29&to=2021-10-27&type=c>

1.1.8 7.0 Release Notes

Brief videos of some DSpace 7 features are available at <https://duraspace.org/dspace/dspace-7/>

DSpace 7.0 is the largest release in the history of DSpace software. While retaining the "out-of-the-box" aspects DSpace is known for, it represents a major evolution of the platform including:

- **A completely new User Interface (demo site⁹⁸)**. This is the new Javascript-based frontend, built on [Angular.io](https://angular.io)⁹⁹ (with support for SEO provided by Angular Universal). This new interface is also customizable via HTML and CSS (Sass) and Bootstrap. For early theme building tips see [User Interface Customization](#)(see page 505)
- **A completely new, fully featured REST API (demo site¹⁰⁰)**, provided via a single "server" webapp backend. This new backend is not only a REST API, but also still supports OAI-PMH, SWORD (v1 or v2) and RDF. Anything you can do from the User Interface is now also possible in our REST API. See [REST API](#)(see page 666) documentation for more details.

⁹⁸ <https://demo7.dspace.org/>

⁹⁹ <http://Angular.io>

¹⁰⁰ <https://api7.dspace.org/server/>

- **A newly designed search box.** Search from the header of any page (click the magnifying glass). The search results page now features automatic search highlight, expandable & searchable filters, and optional thumbnail-based results (click on the “grid” view).
- **A new MyDSpace area to manage your submissions & reviews,** MyDSpace includes a new drag & drop area to start a new submission, and easily search your workflow tasks or in progress submissions to find what you were working on. (Login, click on your user profile icon, click “MyDSpace”). Find workflow tasks to claim by selecting “All tasks” in the “Show” dropdown.
- **A new configurable submission user interface,** featuring a one-page, drag & drop submission form. This form is completely configurable and can be prepopulated by dragging & dropping a metadata file (e.g. ArXiv, CSV/TSV, Endnote, PubMed, or RIS. etc) or by importing via external APIs (e.g ORCID, PubMed, Sherpa Journals or Sherpa Publishers, etc) ([video¹⁰¹](#)). Local controlled vocabularies are also still supported ([video¹⁰²](#)). See [Submission User Interface](#)([see page 338](#)) for more details.
- **Optional, new Configurable Entities**([see page 198](#)) **feature.** DSpace now supports “entities”, which are DSpace Items of a specific ‘type’ which may have relationships to other entities. These entity types and relationships are configurable, with two examples coming out-of-the-box: a set of Journal hierarchy entities (Journal, Volume, Issue, Publication) and a set of Research entities (Publication, Project, Person, OrgUnit). For more information see [Configurable Entities](#)([see page 198](#)).
- **Dynamic user interface translations** (Click the globe, and select a language). Interested in adding more translations? See [DSpace 7 Translation - Internationalization \(i18n\) - Localization \(l10n\)](#)¹⁰³.
- **A new Admin sidebar.** Login as an Administrator, and an administrative sidebar appears. Features available include:
 - Quickly create or edit objects from anywhere in the system. Either browse to the object first, or search for it using the Admin sidebar.
 - Processes UI ([video¹⁰⁴](#)) allows Administrators to run backend scripts/processes while monitoring their progress & completion. (Login as an Admin, select "Processes" in sidebar)
 - Administrative Search ([video¹⁰⁵](#)) combines retrieval of withdrawn items and private items, together with a series of quick action buttons.
 - Administer Active Workflows ([video¹⁰⁶](#)) allows Administrators to see every submission that is currently in the workflow approval process.
 - Bitstream Editing ([video¹⁰⁷](#)) has a drag-and-drop interface for re-ordering bitstreams and makes adding and editing bitstreams more intuitive.
 - Metadata Editing ([video¹⁰⁸](#)) introduces suggest-as-you-type for field name selection of new metadata.
 - Login As (Impersonate) another account allows Administrators to debug issues that a specific user is seeing, or do some work on behalf of that user. (Login as an Admin, Click "Access Control" in sidebar, Click "People". Search for the user account & edit it. Click the "Impersonate EPerson" button. You will be authenticated as that user until you click "Stop Impersonating EPerson" in the upper right.)
- **Improved GDPR alignment** ([video¹⁰⁹](#))
 - User Agreement required for all authenticated users to read and agree to. (Login for first time, and sample user agreement will display. After agreeing to it, it will not appear again.)
 - Cookie Preferences are now available for all users (anonymous or authenticated). A cookie preference popup appears when first accessing the site. Users are given information on what cookies added by DSpace, including a Privacy Statement which can be used to describe how their data is used.
 - User Accounts can be deleted *even if they've submitted content* in the past.

101 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mGRDl0khzrQ>

102 <https://youtu.be/OfEloXOJK-8>

103 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=117735441>

104 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vcsWkWQONkY>

105 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JV8Rb-9cByo&t=1s>

106 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CjH8VS2WDjE>

107 <https://youtu.be/s1msEKK0f68>

108 <https://youtu.be/6KVB2ugUgjI>

109 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bKqFmb6Ywng>

- **Support for OpenAIREv4 Guidelines for Literature Repositories**¹¹⁰ in OAI-PMH (See the new “openaire4” context in OAI-PMH).
- **Search Engine Optimization:** Tested and approved by the Google Scholar team, DSpace still includes all the SEO features you require: a robots.txt, Sitemaps and Google Scholar "citation" tags.
- **Video/Image Content Streaming** (*Kindly donated by Zoltán Kanász-Nagy*¹¹¹ and *Dániel Péter Sipos*¹¹² of *Qulto*): When enabled, DSpace can now stream videos & view images full screen, using an embedded viewer. (See the "[mediaViewer](#)" [settings in the environment.common.ts](#)¹¹³ to enable.)
- **Basic Usage Statistics** ([video](#)¹¹⁴) are available for the entire site (See "Statistics" menu at top of homepage), or specific Communities, Collections or Items (Click on that same "Statistics" menu after browsing to a specific object)
- Additional features are listed in the Beta release notes below. Also, give it a try on our [demo site](#)¹¹⁵ & see what you discover!

DSpace 7 does not yet include all the features of DSpace 6.x

DSpace 7.0 represents a major evolution of the platform into a new, modern web architecture. This means there are tons of new and redesigned features in 7.0. However, in order to get this release in your hands sooner, DSpace Steering decided to delay some 6.x features for later 7.x releases. So, if you don't see a 6.x feature yet in 7.0, it'll likely be coming soon in a later 7.x release. For a prioritized list of upcoming features see "What features are coming in a later 7.x release?" on our [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)¹¹⁶ page.

Additional major changes to be aware of in the 7.x platform (not an exhaustive list):

- **XMLUI and JSUI are no longer supported or distributed with DSpace.** All users should immediately migrate to and utilize the new [Angular User Interface](#)¹¹⁷. There is no migration path from either the XMLUI or JSUI to the new User interface. However, the new user interface can be themed via HTML and CSS (SCSS).
- **The old REST API ("rest" webapp from DSpace v4.x-6.x) is deprecated and will be removed in v8.x.** The new [REST API](#) (see page 666) (provided in the "server" webapp) replaces all functionality available in the older REST API. If you have tools that rely on the old REST API, you can still (optionally) build & deploy it alongside the "server" webapp via the "-Pdspace-rest" Maven flag. See [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#) (see page 669)
- **The Submission Form configuration has changed.** The "item-submission.xml" file has changed its structure, and the "input-forms.xml" has been replaced by a "submission-forms.xml". See [Submission User Interface](#) (see page 338)
- **ElasticSearch Usage Statistics have been removed.** Please use [SOLR Statistics](#) (see page 447) or [DSpace Google Analytics Statistics](#) (see page 471).
- **The traditional, 3-step Workflow system has been removed in favor of the Configurable Workflow System** (see page 327). For most users, you should see no effect or difference. The default setup for this Configurable Workflow System is identical to the traditional, 3-step workflow ("Approve/Reject", "Approve/Reject/Edit Metadata", "Edit Metadata")
- **The old BTE import framework in favor of Live Import Framework** (see page 358) (features of BTE have been ported to Live Import)
- **Apache Solr is no longer embedded within the DSpace installer.** Solr now MUST be installed as a separate dependency alongside the DSpace backend. See [Installing DSpace](#) (see page 78).
- **A large number of old/obsolete configurations were removed.** "7.0 Configurations Removed" section below.
- See [Upgrading DSpace](#) (see page 116) for more hints on the upgrade from any old version of DSpace to 7.x

110 <https://guidelines.openaire.eu/en/latest/literature/index.html>

111 <https://github.com/kanasznagy/zoltan>

112 <https://github.com/dsipos-dev>

113 <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/environments/environment.common.ts#L273-L276>

114 https://youtu.be/T2g74zs_wmM

115 <https://demo7.dspace.org/>

116 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSpace/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

117 <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/>

Additional Resources

- Video presentations / Workshops from OR2021 (June 2021) showing off many of the new features & configurations of DSpace 7: [DSpace 7 at OR2021](#)¹¹⁸

1.1.9 7.0 Configurations Removed

With the removal of the JSUI and XMLUI, a large number of server-side (backend) configurations were made obsolete and were therefore removed between the 6.x and 7.0 release. Those Configurations removed included:

- Within the `[dspace]/config/` directory, these are the **configuration files which were deleted**:
 - `dc2mods.cfg`
 - `input-forms.xml / dtd` (REPLACED BY `submission-forms.xml`, see [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338))
 - `log4j.properties` (REPLACED BY `log4j2.xml`)
 - `log4j-console.properties` (REPLACED BY `log4j-console.xml`)
 - `log4j-solr.properties` (no replacement as Solr now must be installed separately)
 - `news-side.html`
 - `news-top.html`
 - `news-xmlui.xml`
 - `workflow.xml` (REPLACED BY `./spring/api/workflow.xml`)
 - `xmlui.xconf / dtd`
 - `emails/bte_*` (BTE import framework was removed in favor of [Live Import from external sources](#)(see page 358))
 - `modules/controlpanel.cfg`
 - `modules/elastic-search-statistics.cfg` (Elastic Search support was removed in favor of Solr)
 - `modules/fetchccdata.cfg`
 - `modules/publication-lookup.cfg`
 - `spring/api/bte.xml` (BTE import framework was removed in favor of [Live Import from external sources](#)(see page 358))
 - `spring/oai/*` (OAI is now part of the backend "server webapp" and needs no separate configurations)
 - `spring/xmlui/*`
- Within the `dspace.cfg` main configuration file, the following **settings were removed**:
 - `log.init.config` (replaced by `log4j2.xml`)
 - `webui.submit.blocktheses`
 - `webui.submit.upload.html5`
 - `webui.submission.restrictstep.enableAdvancedForm`
 - `webui.submission.restrictstep.groups`

¹¹⁸ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+at+OR2021>

- `webui.submit.enable-cc`
- `webui.browse.thumbnail.*`
- `webui.item.thumbnail.*`
- `webui.preview.enabled`
- `webui.strengths.show`
- `webui.browse.author-field`
- `webui.browse.author-limit`
- `webui.browse.render-scientific-formulas`
- `recent.submissions.*`
- `webui.collectionhome.*`
- `plugin.sequence.org.dspace.plugin.SiteHomeProcessor`
- `plugin.sequence.org.dspace.plugin.CommunityHomeProcessor`
- `plugin.sequence.org.dspace.plugin.CollectionHomeProcessor`
- `plugin.sequence.org.dspace.plugin.ItemHomeProcessor`
- `plugin.single.org.dspace.app.webui.search.SearchRequestProcessor`
- `plugin.single.org.dspace.app.xmlui.aspect.administrative.mapper.SearchRequestProcessor`
- `plugin.named.org.dspace.app.webui.json.JSONRequest`
- `plugin.single.org.dspace.app.webui.util.StyleSelection`
- `webui.bitstream.order.*`
- `webui.itemdisplay.*`
- `webui.resolver.*`
- `webui.preferred.identifier`
- `webui.identifier.*`
- `webui.mydspace.*`
- `webui.suggest.*`
- `webui.controlledvocabulary.enable`
- `webui.session.invalidate`
- `itemmap.*`
- `jspui.*`
- `xmlui.*`
- `mirage2.*`

A full list of all changes / bug fixes in 7.x is available in the [Changes in 7.x](#)(see page 870) section.

1.1.10 7.0 Acknowledgments

DSpace 7.0 was the largest release in the history of DSpace, with 1,026,797 lines of code changed and 79 unique individuals contributing to either the frontend or backend.

1.1.10.1 Major Contributing Institutions

The following institutions have been major code contributors to the DSpace 7 release (in general)

- [Atmire](https://www.atmire.com/)¹¹⁹ - also hosts/maintains DSpace 7 UI demo at <https://demo7.dspace.org>
- [4Science](https://www.4science.it/)¹²⁰ - also hosts/maintains DSpace 7 REST demo at <https://api7.dspace.org/server/>
- [FCT](https://www.fct.pt/)¹²¹ / [RCAAP](https://www.rcaap.pt/)¹²²

1.1.10.2 Financial Contributors

We gratefully recognize the following institutions who together have generously contributed financially to support the DSpace 7 staged release program (see [DSpace 7 Release Goals](#)¹²³), and individuals who devoted time to fundraising:

- Auburn University
- Cornell University
- Pascal Becker
- Dalhousie University
- Duke University
- ETH Zurich, ETH Library
- Fraunhofer Gesellschaft
- Imperial College London
- Indiana University–Purdue University, Indianapolis
- LYRISIS
- National Library of Finland
- Beate Rajski
- Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Hamburg – Carl von Ossietzky
- Technische Universität Berlin
- Technische Universität Hamburg (TUHH)
- The DSpace-Konsortium Deutschland
- The Helmut-Schmidt-Universität/Universität der Bundeswehr Hamburg
- The Library Code GmbH
- The Ohio State University
- Texas Digital Library
- University of Arizona
- University of Edinburgh
- University of Kansas
- University of Minnesota
- University of Missouri
- University of Toronto
- World Bank
- ZHAW

1.1.10.3 Frontend / User Interface Acknowledgments

The following 55 individuals have contributed directly to the new DSpace (Angular) User Interface in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Lotte

¹¹⁹ <https://www.atmire.com/>

¹²⁰ <https://www.4science.it/>

¹²¹ <https://www.fct.pt/>

¹²² <https://www.rcaap.pt/>

¹²³ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+Release+Goals>

Hofstede (LotteHofstede), Art Lowel (artlowel), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Julius Gruber (Flusspferd123), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), William Welling (wwelling and wellingWilliam), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Alessandro Martelli (alemarte), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Jonas Van Goolen (jonas-atmire), Laura Henze (lhenze), Dániel Péter Sipos (dsipos-dev), Samuel Cambien (samuelcambien), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Matteo Perelli (sourcedump), Bram Luyten (bram-atmire), Ben Bosman (benbosman), Terry Brady (terrywbrady), Raf Ponsaerts (Raf-atmire), Danilo Di Nuzzo (ddinuzzo), Andrea Chiapparelli (andreachiaparelli), Antoine Snyers (antoine-atmire), Corrado Lombardi (corrad82-4s), Courtney Pattison (courtneypattison), Àlex Magaz Graça (rivaldi8), Chris Wilper (cwilper), Christian Scheible (christian-scheible), Andrew Wood (AndrewZWood), Reeta Kuuskoski (reetagithub), Vítor Silvério Rodrigues (vitorsilverio), Alexander Sulfrian (AlexanderS), multje, José Carvalho (josekarvalho), Claudia Jürgen (cjuergeren), fernandaruizm, Ivan Masar (helix84), Paulo Graça (paulo-graca), Philip Vissenaekens (PhilipVis), Nagy Akos (akoscomp), Kevin Van de Velde (KevinVdV), Sascha Szott (saschaszott), Mohamed Mohideen Abdul Rasheed (mohideen), David Cavrenne (davidatmire), Hardy Pottinger (hardyoyo), Luca Giamminonni (LucaGiamminonni), Mateus Mercer (MatMercer), Denijs Balodis (Denijsb), Pascal-Nicolas Becker (pnbecker), Mikus Zarins (MixonZ), marciofoz, Andrea Bollini (abollini), Martin Walk (MW3000).

Out of the above list, the following individuals contributed a translation of the new interface (ordered alphabetically by language): Ivan Masar (Czech), Marina Muilwijk (Dutch), Reeta Kuuskoski (Finnish), David Cavrenne (French), Claudia Jürgen and Sasha Szott (German), Nagy Akos and Transylvanian Museum Society (Hungarian), Mikus Zarins (Latvian), Vítor Silvério Rodrigues and marciofoz (Brazilian Portuguese), José Carvalho (Portuguese) and Maria Fernanda Ruiz (Spanish).

The above contributor lists were determined based on historical contributions to the "dspace-angular" project in GitHub until 7.0: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/graphs/contributors?from=2016-11-27&to=2021-07-29&type=c>

1.1.10.4 Backend / REST API Acknowledgments

The following 55 individuals have contributed directly to the DSpace backend (REST API, Java API, OAI-PMH, etc) in this release (*ordered by number of GitHub commits*): Raf Ponsaerts (Raf-atmire), Tim Donohue (tdonohue), Andrea Bollini (abollini), Michele Boychuk (Micheleboychuk), Mark Wood (mwoodiupui), Marie Verdonck (MarieVerdonck), Ben Bosman (benbosman), Luigi Andrea Pascarelli (lap82), Terry Brady (terrywbrady), Tom Desair (tomdesair), Yana De Pauw (YanaDePauw), Chris Wilper (cwilper), Peter Nijs (peter-atmire), Kevin Van de Velde (KevinVdV), Bruno Roemers (bruno-atmire), Giuseppe Digilio (atarix83), Pasquale Cavallo (pasqualecvl), Jelle Pelgrims (jpelgrims-atmire), Andrew Wood (AndrewZWood), Samuel Cambien (samuelcambien), Antoine Snyers (antoine-atmire), Kim Shepherd (kshepherd), Yury Bondarenko (ybnd), Michael Spalti (mspalti), Alessandro Martelli (alemarte), Oliver Goldschmidt (olli-gold), Jonas Van Goolen (jonas-atmire), Kristof De Langhe (Atmire-Kristof), Alexander Sulfrian (AlexanderS), Patrick Trottier (PTrottier), Pablo Prieto (ppmdo), Hardy Pottinger (hardyoyo), Pascal-Nicolas Becker (pnbecker), William Tantzen (tantz001), Paulo Graça (paulo-graca), Luca Giamminonni (LucaGiamminonni), Ivan Masar (helix84), Hrafn Malmquist (J4bbi), Ian Little (ilittle-cnri), Anis Moubarik (anis-moubarik), Claudia Jürgen (cjuergeren), Alan Orth (alanorth), xuejiangtao, Danilo Di Nuzzo (ddinuzzo), James Creel (jcreel), Marsa Haoua (marsaoua), Philip Vissenaekens (PhilipVis), Miika Nurminen (minurmin), Bram Luyten (bram-atmire), Christian Scheible (christian-scheible), Nicholas Woodward (nwoodward), József Marton (jmarton), Mohamed Mohideen Abdul Rasheed (mohideen), Saiful Amin (saiful-semantic), Àlex Magaz Graça (rivaldi8)

The above contributor list was determined based on contributions to the "DSpace" project in GitHub between 6.0 (after Oct 24, 2016) and 7.0: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/graphs/contributors?from=2016-10-24&to=2021-07-29&type=c> Therefore this list may include individuals who contributed to later 6.x releases, but *only if their bug fix was also applied to 7.0*.

1.1.10.5 Additional Thanks

Additional thanks to our [DSpace Leadership Group](#)¹²⁴ and [DSpace Steering Group](#)¹²⁵ for their ongoing DSpace support and advice. Thanks also to [LYRISIS](#)¹²⁶ for your leadership, collaboration & support in helping to speed up the development process of DSpace 7.

Thanks also to the various developer & community Working Groups who have worked diligently to help make DSpace 7 a reality. These include:

- [DSpace 7 Working Group](#)¹²⁷ - This is the team behind the code
- [DSpace 7 Entities Working Group](#)¹²⁸ - This team designed & implemented [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198)
- [DSpace 7 Marketing Working Group](#)¹²⁹ - This team did all our DSpace 7 marketing, press releases & announcements.
- [DSpace Community Advisory Team](#)¹³⁰ (DCAT) - This team helped organize/lead the [DSpace 7.0 Testathon](#)¹³¹ (to bang on the system to find any last bugs), and they also provided us with advice on features, etc.

We apologize to any contributor accidentally left off this list. DSpace has such a large, active development community that we sometimes lose track of all our contributors. Acknowledgments to those left off will be made in future releases.

1.1.11 7.0 Beta 1-5 Release Notes

DSpace 7.0 was developed via a series of Beta releases from 2020-21. The release notes for each Beta are retained here for reference.

1.1.11.1 7.0 Beta 5 Release Notes

Released April 2021

Included in Beta 5

- **Support for custom theme(s) in UI & accessibility cleanup of base theme.** See early information at [DSpace UI Design principles and guidelines](#)¹³² and the "themes" section of the [environment.common.ts](#)¹³³
 - Updated the "base" theme (default Bootstrap look & feel) for consistency and better accessibility. (Additional accessibility analysis will be performed during Testathon)
 - Added a simple "dspace" theme (this is the new default theme, and primarily shows an example of customizing color scheme & homepage)
 - Added a "custom" theme folder with all necessary files. These files can be directly modified to create a completely custom theme.
- **Major performance improvements to UI** by making better use of caching & smart reloading
- **Video/Image Content Streaming** (*Kindly donated by Zoltán Kanász-Nagy*¹³⁴ and *Dániel Péter Sipos*¹³⁵ of *Qulto*): When enabled, DSpace can now stream videos & view images full screen, using an embedded viewer.

¹²⁴ <https://duraspace.org/dspace/community/leadership-group/>

¹²⁵ <https://duraspace.org/dspace/community/dspace-steering-group/>

¹²⁶ <https://www.lyrasis.org/>

¹²⁷ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+Working+Group>

¹²⁸ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+Entities+Working+Group>

¹²⁹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+Marketing+Working+Group>

¹³⁰ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/cmytg/DSpace+Community+Advisory+Team>

¹³¹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Testathon+Page>

¹³² <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+UI+Design+principles+and+guidelines>

¹³³ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/environments/environment.common.ts#L230-L267>

¹³⁴ <https://github.com/kanasznagy/zoltan>

¹³⁵ <https://github.com/dsipos-dev>

- See the new "[mediaViewer](#)" settings in the `environment.common.ts`¹³⁶ to enable. [S](#)¹³⁷ ample screenshots of the feature can also be found at <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/885>
- New Administrative Features
 - Add ability to modify Community/Collection resource policies (i.e. permissions). Edit a Community or Collection and look at the "Authorizations" tab.
 - Add ability to edit/delete user Groups.
 - Add private/withdrawn item badges for Administrators to quickly see which Items are private or withdrawn. These are viewable throughout the browse/search when logged in as an Administrative user.
- Configurable Entities Improvements
 - Entities now report their Entity type in the URL path (e.g. Person entities use URL path `/entities/person/[uuid]` and Publication entities use the URL path `/entities/publication/[uuid]`)
 - Each Entity type now has a custom Submission form.
 - These can be most easily seen in the Demo site. Submitting to the "[People](#)" collection¹³⁸ uses the "Person" Entity Form. Submitting to the "[Articles](#)" collection¹³⁹ uses the "Publication" Entity Form. The full list of Entity-specific Collection submission mappings can be found in the [example in item-submission.xml](#)¹⁴⁰ (this example is enabled on our Demo Site)
 - General performance improvements for Entities. Introduction of "[tilted](#)" relationships¹⁴¹ for Configurable Entities that may have hundreds or thousands of relationships.
- Improvements to Upgrade process
 - Added a new [Submission form migration script](#)¹⁴² to help DSpace 5/6 institutions migrate their old Submission configuration files to the new/updated format for v7.
- Security fixes
 - Added [CSRF \(Cross-Site Request Forgery\)](#)¹⁴³ protection to REST API. UI (and any other clients) now must be *trusted* to login to the REST API.
 - Improved permissions checks/validation in UI for Administrator, Community/Collection Administrator and Submitter roles.
 - Fixed several other security issues auto-reported by [LGTM](#)¹⁴⁴
- Many bug fixes
 - Fixed issue where mapped items were not appearing
 - Fixed issue where Handles were not redirecting
 - Fixed issues with Sherpa and ORCID integrations
 - Fixed several small issues with OpenAIRE v4 support in OAI-PMH
 - Fixed many bugs in MyDSpace and Submission UI
 - Fixed several bugs in CSV import/export process.
 - Fixes to search/browse pagination & breadcrumb trail
 - Improved performance of Browse by Community/Collection hierarchy
 - LDAP Authentication support is working again
- Many dependency upgrades
 - Upgrade UI to Angular v10
 - Upgrade UI to Node v12 or v14 support
 - Upgrade Backend to Solr v8 support
 - Upgrade to ORCID v3 support

¹³⁶ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/environments/environment.common.ts#L273-L276>

¹³⁷ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/pull/888>

¹³⁸ <https://demo7.dspace.org/collections/9398affe-a977-4992-9a1d-6f00908a259f>

¹³⁹ <https://demo7.dspace.org/collections/282164f5-d325-4740-8dd1-fa4d6d3e7200>

¹⁴⁰ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace/config/item-submission.xml#L23-L49>

¹⁴¹ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/3134>

¹⁴² <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/3076>

¹⁴³ <https://owasp.org/www-community/attacks/csrf>

¹⁴⁴ <https://lgtm.com/>

- Upgrade to SHERPA v2 support
- Removal of obsolete features
 - Removal of the old BTE framework in favor of [Live Import Framework](#)(see page 358) (features of BTE have been ported to Live Import)
 - Removal of Traditional/Basic workflow in favor of [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327) (default workflow is still the same as in DSpace 6)

Changelog

- All User Interface changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.0beta5>
- All Backend changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.0beta5>

1.1.11.2 7.0 Beta 4 Release Notes

Released October 2020

Included in Beta 4

- **Live Import framework** ([video](#)¹⁴⁵) support has been added to the Submission Form (and REST API `/api/integration/externalsources` endpoint)
 - Search an external site for works to import (From your MyDSpace page, click the "Import metadata from external source" button in upper right). Currently supports Library of Congress Names, ORCID, PubMed, Sherpa Journals or Sherpa Publishers.
 - Drag and drop a bibliographic file into Submission form or MyDSpace page to prepopulate metadata. Supported formats include ArXiv, CSV (or TSV), Endnote, PubMed, or RIS.
- **Controlled Vocabulary support** ([video](#)¹⁴⁶) in Submission Form. Depending on the field configuration, this can include autocomplete of known terms (see default "Subject Keywords" field), dropdown support (see default "Type" field) and hierarchical tree views
 - Includes support for Controlled Vocab, Authority Control and "Value-Pairs" (from submission configs)
- **Curation Tasks** are now supported via the Admin UI and the Processes UI. (Login as an Admin, select "Curation Tasks")
- **Import / Export metadata from/to CSV** (i.e. [Batch Metadata Editing](#)¹⁴⁷) is now available from the Admin UI. (Login as an Admin, select "Export" > "Metadata", select "Import" > "Metadata")
- **Basic Usage Statistics** ([video](#)¹⁴⁸) are available for the entire site (See "Statistics" menu at top of homepage), or specific Communities, Collections or Items (Click on that same "Statistics" menu after browsing to a specific object).
 - Support for exchanging usage data to [IRUS](#)¹⁴⁹ was added. See new "irus-statistics.cfg" and [DS-626](#)¹⁵⁰
- Improved GDPR Alignment ([video](#)¹⁵¹)
 - **User Agreement** required for all authenticated users to read and agree to. (Login for first time, and sample user agreement will display. After agreeing to it, it will not appear again.)
 - **Cookie Preferences** are now available for all users (anonymous or authenticated). A cookie preference popup appears when first accessing the site. Users are given information on what cookies added by DSpace, including a **Privacy Statement** which can be used to describe how their data is used.
 - User Accounts can be deleted *even if they've submitted content* in the past.

145 <https://youtu.be/irL7RO1HhFU>

146 <https://youtu.be/OfEloXJK-8>

147 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC6x/Batch+Metadata+Editing>

148 https://youtu.be/T2g74zs_wmM

149 <https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/>

150 <https://jira.lyrasis.org/browse/DS-626>

151 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bKqFmb6Ywng>

- When a user is deleted, their past submissions are kept but the submitter field is set to empty (null).
- Users cannot be deleted if they are the only member of a workflow approval group. Admins must either delete that group first, or assign another member to the group. This ensures Workflows are kept even if a user account needs to be deleted.
- **Language preferences** are now kept for all users (anonymous or logged in). By default, DSpace will try to use your browser's preferred language (if found in Accept-Language header and a translation in that language exists). Users can override it by either saving a preferred language in their user profile, or by manually selecting a different language from the globe icon (upper right).
- **IP-based authorization** lets you restrict (or provide access to) objects based on the user's IP address. This uses the same "authentication-ip.cfg" configuration as DSpace 6, allowing you to map IP ranges to specific DSpace Groups. Users within that IP range are added to the mapped DSpace Group for the remainder of their session.
- **Search Engine Optimization:** Addition of robots.txt, Sitemaps and Google Scholar "citation" tags. These optimizations are being tested by the Google Scholar team and may be improved further in the upcoming beta 5 release.
 - For improved SEO, Sitemaps are now enabled by default and automatically update once per day.
- Security Fixes and Dependency upgrades
 - Enhancements to new `/api/authz/features` endpoint in REST API to provide additional feature-specific permission checks
 - Flyway¹⁵² database engine was upgraded to version 6.5.5
 - Indexing enhancements (some objects were being indexed twice, see [PR#2960](#)¹⁵³)
 - Fixes to Shibboleth login
 - Additional bug fixes to both UI and REST API

Changelog

- All User Interface changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.0beta4>
- All Backend changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.0beta4>

1.1.11.3 7.0 Beta 3 Release Notes

Released July 2020

Included in Beta 3

- **Processes Admin UI** ([video](#)¹⁵⁴) allows Administrators to run backend scripts/processes while monitoring their progress & completion. (Login as an Admin, select "Processes" in sidebar)
 - Currently supported processes include "index-discovery" (reindex site), "metadata-export" (batch metadata editing CSV export), and "metadata-import" (batch metadata editing CSV import).
- **Manage Account Profile** allows logged in users to update their name, language or password. (Login, click on the account icon, and select "Profile")
- **New User Registration** ([video](#)¹⁵⁵) and password reset on the Login Screen
- **Login As (Impersonate)** another account allows Administrators to debug issues that a specific user is seeing, or do some work on behalf of that user. (Login as an Admin, Click "Access Control" in sidebar, Click "People". Search for the user account & edit it. Click the "Impersonate EPerson" button. You will be authenticated as that user until you click "Stop Impersonating EPerson" in the upper right.)

¹⁵² <https://flywaydb.org/>

¹⁵³ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/2960>

¹⁵⁴ <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vcsWkQONkY>

¹⁵⁵ <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=C2k8vn1rWNE>

- Requires "webui.user.assumelogin=true" to be set in your local.cfg on backend. Also be aware that you can only "impersonate" a user who is *not* a member of the Administrator group.
- **Manage Authorization Policies** of an Item allows Administrators to directly change/update the access policies of an Item, its Bundles or Bitstreams. (Login as an Admin, Click "Edit" → "Item" in sidebar, and search for the Item. Click the "Authorization.." button on its "Status" tab.
- **Manage Item Templates** of a Collection allows Administrators to create/manage template metadata that all new Items will start with when submitted to that Collection. (Login as an Admin, Click "Edit" → "Collection" in sidebar and search for the Collection. Click the "Add" button under "Template Item" to get started.)
 - NOTE: unfortunately there's a known bug that while you can create these templates, the submission process is not yet using them. See <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/748>
- **Administer Active Workflows** ([video](#)¹⁵⁶) allows Administrators to see every submission that is currently in the workflow approval process. From there, they have the option to delete Items (if they are no longer needed), or send them back to the workflow pool (to allow another user to review them). (Login as an Admin, Click "Administer Workflow" in sidebar)
- **CC License** step allows your users to select a Creative Commons License as part of their submission. Once enabled in the "item-submission.xml" (on the backend) it appears as part of the submission form.
- **Angular CLI** compatibility was added to the User Interface. This allows developers to easily update the User Interface using standard Angular commandline tools. More information (including tutorials) is available at <https://cli.angular.io/>
- English, Latvian, Dutch, German, French, Portuguese, Spanish and Finnish language catalogs
- Numerous bugs were fixed based on early user testing. (*Thanks to all who've tested Beta 1 or Beta 2 and reported your feedback!*) Some bugs fixed include:
 - Login/Logout session fixes (including compatibility with Firefox and Safari browsers)
 - Improved Community/Collection tree browsing performance
 - Fixes to editing Communities, Collections and Items. This includes improved drag & drop reordering of bitstreams in an Item.
 - Improved performance of Collection dropdown in submission
 - Ability to download restricted bitstreams (previously these would error out)
 - Authorization & security improvements in both REST API and UI
- Upgraded all REST API dependencies (Spring, Spring Boot, HAL Browser) and enhanced our automated testing via additional Integration Tests.
- *All features previous mentioned in 7.0 Beta 2 Release Notes(see page 56) and 7.0 Beta 1 Release Notes(see page 57) below*

Learn More: New videos are available highlighting features of the MyDSpace area:

- Manage Submissions in MyDSpace ([video](#)¹⁵⁷)
- Manage Tasks in MyDSpace ([video](#)¹⁵⁸)

Changelog

- All User Interface changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.0beta3>
- All Backend changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues?q=is%3Aclosed+milestone%3A7.0beta3>

1.1.11.4 7.0 Beta 2 Release Notes

Released April 2020

Included in Beta 2

¹⁵⁶ <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CjH8VS2WDjE>

¹⁵⁷ <https://youtu.be/uM1q6W6k6lY>

¹⁵⁸ <https://youtu.be/R0v1WNFDbml>

- **Administrative Search** ([video](#)¹⁵⁹) combines retrieval of withdrawn items and private items, together with a series of quick action buttons.
- **EPeople, Groups and Roles** can now be viewed, created and updated.
 - Manage Groups (Login as an Admin → Access Control → Groups)
 - Manage EPeople (Login as an Admin → Access Control → EPeople)
 - Manage Community/Collection Roles (Login as an Admin → Edit Community/Collection → Assign Roles). Note: this feature is Admin-only in beta 2, but will be extended to Community/Collection Admins in beta 3.
- **Bitstream Editing** ([video](#)¹⁶⁰) has a drag-and-drop interface for re-ordering bitstreams and makes adding and editing bitstreams more intuitive.
- **Metadata Editing** ([video](#)¹⁶¹) introduces suggest-as-you-type for field name selection of new metadata.
- **Update Profile / Change Password** (Login → Select user menu in upper right → Profile)
- **Shibboleth Authentication**¹⁶²
- **Viewing Item Version History** (requires upgrading from a 6.x site that includes [Item Versioning](#)¹⁶³)
- Collection and Community ([video](#)¹⁶⁴) creation and edit pages.
- English, Latvian, Dutch, German, French, Portuguese and Spanish language catalogs
- Security and authorization improvements, including REST API support hiding specific metadata fields (metadata.hide property) and upgrades of different software packages on which DSpace 7 depends.
- *All features previous mentioned in 7.0 Beta 1 Release Notes(see page 57) below*

A full list of all changes / bug fixes in 7.x is available in the [Changes in 7.x\(see page 870\)](#) section.

1.1.11.5 7.0 Beta 1 Release Notes

Released March 2020

New features to look for

- **A completely new User Interface** ([demo site](#)¹⁶⁵). This is the new Javascript-based frontend, built on [Angular.io](#)¹⁶⁶ (with support for SEO provided by Angular Universal). This new interface is also via HTML and CSS (SCSS). For early theme building training, see the “Getting Started with DSpace 7 Workshop” from the North American User Group meeting: [slides](#)¹⁶⁷ or [video recording](#)¹⁶⁸.
- **A completely new, fully featured REST API** ([demo site](#)¹⁶⁹), provided via a single "server" webapp backend. This new backend is not only a REST API, but also still supports OAI-PMH, SWORD (v1 or v2) and RDF. See the REST API's documentation / contract at <https://github.com/DSpace/Rest7Contract/blob/master/README.md>
- **A newly designed search box**. Search from the header of any page (click the magnifying glass). The search results page now features automatic search highlight, expandable & searchable filters, and optional thumbnail-based results (click on the “grid” view).
- **A new MyDSpace area**, including a new, one-page, drag & drop submission form, a new workflow approval process, and searchable past submissions. (Login, click on your user profile icon, click “MyDSpace”). Find workflow tasks to claim by selecting “All tasks” in the “Show” dropdown.

159 <https://youtu.be/XoYStblyZWY>

160 <https://youtu.be/s1msEKK0f68>

161 <https://youtu.be/6KVB2ugUgjl>

162 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+Shibboleth+Configuration>

163 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC6x/Item+Level+Versioning>

164 <https://youtu.be/wnrUOHR55WA>

165 <https://dspace7-demo.atmire.com/>

166 <http://Angular.io>

167 <https://tinyurl.com/na-dsug2019-dspace7>

168 https://umn.zoom.us/recording/play/Mk3gWE1AGEErGg6fLaZ_u-rg_8pEC7MWu_2uWa5l8Q03fKM7ra9sm1-MntSRtNti?startTime=1569247043000

169 <https://dspace7.4science.cloud/server/>

- **Dynamic user interface translations** (Click the globe, and select a language). Anyone interested in adding more translations? See [DSpace 7 Translation - Internationalization \(i18n\) - Localization \(l10n\)](#)¹⁷⁰.
- **A new Admin sidebar.** Login as an Administrator, and an administrative sidebar appears. Use this to create a new Community/Collection/Item, edit existing ones, and manage registries. (NOTE: A number of Administrative tools are still missing or greyed out. They will be coming in future Beta releases.)
- Optional, new [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) **feature.** DSpace now supports “entities”, which are DSpace Items of a specific ‘type’ which may have relationships to other entities. These entity types and relationships are configurable, with two examples coming out-of-the-box: a set of Journal hierarchy entities (Journal, Volume, Issue, Publication) and a set of Research entities (Publication, Project, Person, OrgUnit). For more information see “The Power of Configurable Entities” from OR2019: [slides](#)¹⁷¹ or [video recording](#)¹⁷². Additionally, a test data set featuring both out-of-the-box examples can be used when [trying out DSpace 7 via Docker](#)¹⁷³. Early documentation is available at [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198).
- **Support for OpenAIREv4 Guidelines for Literature Repositories**¹⁷⁴ in OAI-PMH (See the new “openaire4” context in OAI-PMH).

Additional major changes to be aware of in the 7.x platform (not an exhaustive list):

- **XMLUI and JSPUI are no longer supported or distributed with DSpace.** All users should immediately migrate to and utilize the new [Angular User Interface](#)¹⁷⁵. There is no migration path from either the XMLUI or JSPUI to the new User interface. However, the new user interface can be themed via HTML and CSS (SCSS).
- **The old REST API ("rest" webapp from DSpace v4.x-6.x) is deprecated and will be removed in v8.x.** The new REST API (provided in the "server" webapp) replaces all functionality available in the older REST API. If you have tools that rely on the old REST API, you can still (optionally) build & deploy it alongside the "server" webapp via the "-PdSPACE-rest" Maven flag.
- **The Submission Form configuration has changed.** The "item-submission.xml" file has changed its structure, and the "input-forms.xml" has been replaced by a "submission-forms.xml". For early documentation see [Configuration changes in the submission process](#)¹⁷⁶
- **ElasticSearch Usage Statistics have been removed.** Please use [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) or [DSpace Google Analytics Statistics](#)(see page 471).
- **The traditional, 3-step Workflow system has been removed in favor of the Configurable Workflow System**(see page 327). For most users, you should see no effect or difference. The default setup for this Configurable Workflow System is identical to the traditional, 3-step workflow ("Approve/Reject", "Approve/Reject/Edit Metadata", "Edit Metadata")
- **Apache Solr is no longer embedded within the DSpace installer (and has been upgraded to Solr v7).** Solr now MUST be installed as a separate dependency alongside the DSpace backend. See [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78).
- **Some command-line tools/scripts are enabled in the new REST API** (e.g. index-discovery): See new Scripts endpoint: <https://github.com/DSpace/Rest7Contract/blob/master/scripts-endpoint.md>
- **DSpace now has a single, backend "server" webapp to deploy in Tomcat (or similar).** In DSpace 6.x and below, different machine interfaces (OAI-PMH, SWORD v1 or v2, RDF, REST API) were provided via separate deployable webapps. Now, all those interfaces along with the new REST API are in a single, "server" webapp built on [Spring Boot](#)¹⁷⁷. You can now control which interfaces are enabled, and what path they appear on via configuration (e.g. "oai.enabled=true" and "oai.path=oai"). See <https://jira.lyrasis.org/browse/DS-4257>
- **Configuration**(see page 724) **has been upgraded to Apache Commons Configuration version 2.** For most users, you should see no effect or difference. *No DSpace configuration files were modified during this upgrade*

170 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/viewpage.action?pagelId=117735441>

171 <https://www.slideshare.net/Atmire/dspace-7-the-power-of-configurable-entities>

172 <https://lecture2go.uni-hamburg.de/l2go/-/get/v/24831>

173 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7#TryoutDSpace7-InstallviaDocker>

174 <https://guidelines.openaire.eu/en/latest/literature/index.html>

175 <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/>

176 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Configuration+changes+in+the+submission+process>

177 <https://spring.io/projects/spring-boot>

and no configurations or settings were renamed or changed. However, if you locally modified or customized the `[dspace]/config/config-definition.xml` (DSpace's Apache Commons Configuration settings), you will need to ensure those modifications are compatible with Apache Commons Configuration version 2. See the Apache Commons Configuration's [configuration definition file reference](#)¹⁷⁸ for more details.

- **Handle Server has been upgraded to version 9.x** : <https://jira.lyrasis.org/browse/DS-4205>
- **DSpace now has sample Docker images (configurations)** which can be used to try out DSpace quickly. See [Try out DSpace 7](#)¹⁷⁹ ("Install via Docker" section).

1.2 Functional Overview

The following sections describe the various functional aspects of the DSpace system.

- [Online access to your digital assets](#)(see page 60)
 - [Full-text search](#)(see page 60)
 - [Navigation](#)(see page 60)
 - [Supported file types](#)(see page 61)
 - [Optimized for Google Indexing](#)(see page 61)
 - [OpenURL Support](#)(see page 61)
 - [Support for modern browsers](#)(see page 61)
- [Metadata Management](#)(see page 62)
 - [Metadata](#)(see page 62)
 - [Choice Management and Authority Control](#)(see page 62)
- [Licensing](#)(see page 63)
 - [Collection and Community Licenses](#)(see page 64)
 - [License granted by the submitter to the repository](#)(see page 64)
 - [Creative Commons Support for DSpace Items](#)(see page 64)
- [Persistent URLs and Identifiers](#)(see page 64)
 - [Handles](#)(see page 64)
 - [Bitstream 'Persistent' Identifiers](#)(see page 65)
- [Getting content into DSpace](#)(see page 66)
 - [The Manual DSpace Submission and Workflow System](#)(see page 66)
 - [Workflow Steps](#)(see page 67)
 - [Submission Workflow in DSpace](#)(see page 67)
 - [Command line import facilities](#)(see page 68)
 - [Registration for externally hosted files](#)(see page 68)
 - [SWORD Support](#)(see page 68)
- [Getting content out of DSpace](#)(see page 68)
 - [OAI Support](#)(see page 68)
 - [Command Line Export Facilities](#)(see page 69)
 - [Packager Plugins](#)(see page 69)
 - [Crosswalk Plugins](#)(see page 69)
 - [Supervision and Collaboration](#)(see page 70)
- [User Management](#)(see page 70)
 - [User Accounts \(E-Person\)](#)(see page 70)
 - [Subscriptions](#)(see page 70)
 - [Groups](#)(see page 71)
- [Access Control](#)(see page 71)

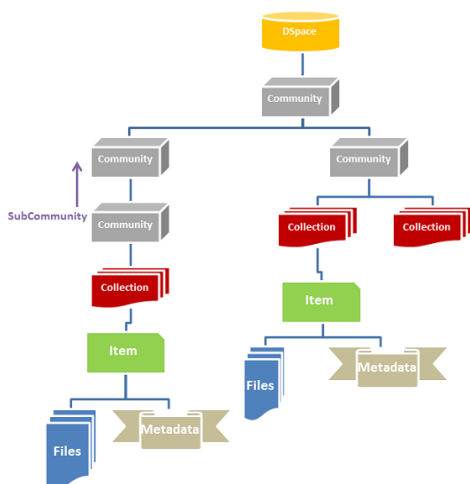
¹⁷⁸ https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration_definition_file_reference

¹⁷⁹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7>

- [Authentication](#)(see page 71)
- [Authorization](#)(see page 71)
- [Usage Metrics](#)(see page 72)
 - [Item, Collection and Community Usage Statistics](#)(see page 72)
 - [System Statistics](#)(see page 73)
- [Digital Preservation](#)(see page 74)
 - [Checksum Checker](#)(see page 74)
- [System Design](#)(see page 74)
 - [Data Model](#)(see page 74)
 - [Amazon S3 Support](#)(see page 76)

1.2.1 Online access to your digital assets

The online presentation of your content in an organized tree of Communities and Collections is a main feature of DSpace. Users can access pages for individual items, these are metadata descriptions together with files available for download. The structure is summarised in this diagram (click to see the image at full size).



1.2.1.1 Full-text search

DSpace can process uploaded text based contents for full-text searching. This means that not only the metadata you provide for a given file will be searchable, but all of its contents will be indexed as well. This allows users to search for specific keywords that only appear in the actual content and not in the provided description.

1.2.1.2 Navigation

DSpace allows users to find their way to relevant content in a number of ways, including:

- **Searching** for one or more keywords in metadata or extracted full-text
- **Faceted browsing** through any field provided in the item description.
- Through **external reference**, such as a Handle
- By clicking on Community and Collection titles to explore their contents

Another important mechanism for discovery in DSpace is the browse. This is the process whereby the user views a particular index, such as the title index, and navigates around it in search of interesting items. The browse subsystem provides a simple API for achieving this by allowing a caller to specify an index, and a subsection of that

index. The browse subsystem then discloses the portion of the index of interest. Indices that may be browsed are item title, item issue date, item author, and subject terms. Additionally, the browse can be limited to items within a particular collection or community.

For more information on Search/Browse functionality in DSpace, see [Discovery](#)(see page 522).

1.2.1.3 Supported file types

DSpace can accommodate any type of uploaded file. While DSpace is most known for hosting text based materials including scholarly communication and electronic theses and dissertations (ETDs), there are many stakeholders in the community who use DSpace for multimedia, data and learning objects. While some restrictions apply, DSpace can even serve as a store for [HTML Archives](#)(see page 274).

Files that have been uploaded to DSpace are often referred to as "Bitstreams". The reason for this is mainly historic and tracks back to the technical implementation. After ingestion, files in DSpace are stored on the file system as a stream of bits without the file extension.

By default, DSpace only recognizes specific file types, as defined in its Bitstream Format Registry. The default [Bitstream Format Registry](#)(see page 814) recognizes many common file formats, but it can be enhanced at your local institution via the Admin User Interface.

1.2.1.4 Optimized for Google Indexing

The DSpace community fosters a close relation with Google to ensure optimal indexing of DSpace content, primarily in the Google Search and Google Scholar products. For the purpose of Google Scholar indexing, DSpace added specific metadata in the page head tags facilitating indexing in Scholar. More information can be retrieved on the [Google Scholar Metadata Mappings page](#)(see page 653). Popular DSpace repositories often generate over 60% of their visits from Google pages.

1.2.1.5 OpenURL Support

DSpace supports the [OpenURL protocol](#)¹⁸⁰ in a rather simple fashion. If your institution has an [SFX server](#)¹⁸¹, DSpace will display an OpenURL link on every item page, automatically using the Dublin Core metadata. Additionally, DSpace can respond to incoming OpenURLs. Presently it simply passes the information in the OpenURL to the search subsystem. A list of results is then displayed, which usually gives the relevant item (if it is in DSpace) at the top of the list.

1.2.1.6 Support for modern browsers

The DSpace developer community aims to rely on modern web standards and well tested libraries where possible. As a rule of thumb, users can expect that the DSpace web interfaces work on modern web browsers. DSpace developers routinely test new interface developments on recent versions of Firefox, Safari, Chrome and Microsoft Edge. Because of fast moving, automatic, incremental updates to these browsers, support is no longer targeted at specific versions of these browsers. (Please note that we do not recommend or support using Internet Explorer as it is considered "end of life" by Microsoft.)

¹⁸⁰ <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OpenURL>

¹⁸¹ <http://www.exlibrisgroup.com/category/SFXOverview>

1.2.2 Metadata Management

1.2.2.1 Metadata

Broadly speaking, DSpace holds three sorts of metadata about archived content:

- **Descriptive Metadata:** DSpace can support multiple flat metadata schemas for describing an item. A qualified Dublin Core metadata schema loosely based on the [Library Application Profile](#)¹⁸² set of elements and qualifiers is provided by default. This default schema is described in more detail in [Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries](#)(see page 814). However, you can configure multiple schemas and select metadata fields from a mix of configured schemas to describe your items. Other descriptive metadata about items (e.g. metadata described in a hierarchical schema) may be held in serialized bitstreams.
- **Administrative Metadata:** This includes preservation metadata, provenance and authorization policy data. Most of this is held within DSpace's relational DBMS schema. Provenance metadata (prose) is stored in Dublin Core records. Additionally, some other administrative metadata (for example, bitstream byte sizes and MIME types) is replicated in Dublin Core records so that it is easily accessible outside of DSpace.
- **Structural Metadata:** This includes information about how to present an item, or bitstreams within an item, to an end-user, and the relationships between constituent parts of the item. As an example, consider a thesis consisting of a number of TIFF images, each depicting a single page of the thesis. Structural metadata would include the fact that each image is a single page, and the ordering of the TIFF images/pages. Structural metadata in DSpace is currently fairly basic; within an item, bitstreams can be arranged into separate bundles as described above. A bundle may also optionally have a *primary bitstream*. This is currently used by the HTML support to indicate which bitstream in the bundle is the first HTML file to send to a browser. In addition to some basic technical metadata, a bitstream also has a 'sequence ID' that uniquely identifies it within an item. This is used to produce a 'persistent' bitstream identifier for each bitstream. Additional structural metadata can be stored in serialized bitstreams, but DSpace does not currently understand this natively.

1.2.2.2 Choice Management and Authority Control

This is a configurable framework that lets you define plug-in classes to control the choice of values for specified DSpace metadata fields. It also lets you configure fields to include "authority" values along with the textual metadata value. The choice-control system includes a user interface in both the Configurable Submission UI and the Admin UI (edit Item pages) that assists the user in choosing metadata values.

Introduction and Motivation

Definitions

Choice Management

This is a mechanism that generates a list of choices for a value to be entered in a given metadata field. Depending on your implementation, the exact choice list might be determined by a proposed value or query, or it could be a fixed list that is the same for every query. It may also be closed (limited to choices produced internally) or open, allowing the user-supplied query to be included as a choice.

Authority Control

This works in addition to choice management to supply an authority key along with the chosen value, which is also assigned to the Item's metadata field entry. Any authority-controlled field is also inherently choice-controlled.

About Authority Control

182 <http://www.dublincore.org/documents/library-application-profile/>

The advantages we seek from an authority controlled metadata field are:

1. **There is a simple and positive way to test whether two values are identical**, by comparing authority keys.
 - Comparing plain text values can give false positive results e.g. when two different people have a name that is written the same.
 - It can also give false negative results when the same name is written different ways, e.g. "J. Smith" vs. "John Smith".
2. **Help in entering correct metadata values.** The submission and admin UIs may call on the authority to check a proposed value and list possible matches to help the user select one.
3. **Improved interoperability.** By sharing a name authority with another application, your DSpace can interoperate more cleanly with other applications.
 - For example, a DSpace institutional repository sharing a naming authority with the campus social network would let the social network construct a list of all DSpace Items matching the shared author identifier, rather than by error-prone name matching.
 - When the name authority is shared with a campus directory, DSpace can look up the email address of an author to send automatic email about works of theirs submitted by a third party. That author does not have to be an EPerson.
4. Authority keys are normally invisible in the public web UIs. They are only seen by administrators editing metadata. The value of an authority key is not expected to be meaningful to an end-user or site visitor.

Authority control is different from the controlled vocabulary of keywords already implemented in the submission UI:

1. **Authorities are external to DSpace.** The source of authority control is typically an external database or network resource.
 - Plug-in architecture makes it easy to integrate new authorities without modifying any core code.
2. This authority proposal impacts all phases of metadata management.
 - The keyword vocabularies are only for the submission UI.
 - Authority control is asserted everywhere metadata values are changed, including unattended/batch submission, SWORD package submission, and the administrative UI.

Some Terminology

Authority	An authority is a source of fixed values for a given domain, each unique value identified by a key.
.	For example, the OCLC LC Name Authority Service.
Authority Record	The information associated with one of the values in an authority; may include alternate spellings and equivalent forms of the value, etc.
Authority Key	An opaque, hopefully persistent, identifier corresponding to exactly one record in the authority.

1.2.3 Licensing

DSpace offers support for licenses on different levels

1.2.3.1 Collection and Community Licenses

Each community and collection in the hierarchy of a DSpace repository can contain its own license terms. This allows an institution to use the repository both for collections where certain rights are reserved and others from which the content may be accessed and distributed more freely.

1.2.3.2 License granted by the submitter to the repository

At the end of the manual submission process, the submitter is asked to grant the repository service an appropriate distribution license. This license can be easily customized on a per collection basis. In its most common form, the submitter grants to the repository service a non-exclusive distribution license, meaning that he officially gives the repository service the right to share his or her work with the world.

1.2.3.3 Creative Commons Support for DSpace Items

DSpace provides support for Creative Commons licenses to be attached to items in the repository. They represent an alternative to traditional copyright. To learn more about Creative Commons, visit [their website](#)¹⁸³. Support for license selection is controlled by a site-wide configuration option, and since license selection involves interaction with the Creative Commons website, additional parameters may be configured to work with a proxy server. If the option is enabled, users may select a Creative Commons license during the submission process, or select to don't assign a Creative Commons license at all. If a selection is made, metadata and a copy of the license in the RDF format is stored along with the item in the repository. There is also an indication - text and a Creative Commons icon - in the item display page of the web user interface when an item is licensed under Creative Commons. The RDF license is embedded in the html page of the item to allow machine understanding of the licensing terms. For specifics of how to configure and use Creative Commons licenses, [see the configuration section](#)(see page 776).

1.2.4 Persistent URLs and Identifiers

1.2.4.1 Handles

Researchers require a stable point of reference for their works. The simple evolution from sharing of citations to emailing of URLs broke when Web users learned that sites can disappear or be reconfigured without notice, and that their bookmark files containing critical links to research results couldn't be trusted in the long term. To help solve this problem, a core DSpace feature is the creation of a persistent identifier for every item, collection and community stored in DSpace. To persist identifiers, DSpace requires a storage- and location- independent mechanism for creating and maintaining identifiers. DSpace uses the [CNRI Handle System](#)¹⁸⁴ for creating these identifiers. The rest of this section assumes a basic familiarity with the Handle system.

DSpace uses Handles primarily as a means of assigning globally unique identifiers to objects. Each site running DSpace needs to obtain a unique Handle 'prefix' from CNRI, so we know that if we create identifiers with that prefix, they won't clash with identifiers created elsewhere.

Presently, Handles are assigned to communities, collections, and items. Bundles and bitstreams are not assigned Handles, since over time, the way in which an item is encoded as bits may change, in order to allow access with future technologies and devices. Older versions may be moved to off-line storage as a new standard becomes de facto. Since it's usually the *item* that is being preserved, rather than the particular bit encoding, it only makes sense

¹⁸³ <http://creativecommons.org/>

¹⁸⁴ <http://www.handle.net/>

to persistently identify and allow access to the item, and allow users to access the appropriate bit encoding from there.

Of course, it may be that a particular bit encoding of a file is explicitly being preserved; in this case, the bitstream could be the only one in the item, and the item's Handle would then essentially refer just to that bitstream. The same bitstream can also be included in other items, and thus would be citable as part of a greater item, or individually.

The Handle system also features a global resolution infrastructure; that is, an end-user can enter a Handle into any service (e.g. Web page) that can resolve Handles, and the end-user will be directed to the object (in the case of DSpace, community, collection or item) identified by that Handle. In order to take advantage of this feature of the Handle system, a DSpace site must also run a 'Handle server' that can accept and resolve incoming resolution requests. All the code for this is included in the DSpace source code bundle.

Handles can be written in two forms:

```
hdl:1721.123/4567
http://hdl.handle.net/1721.123/4567
```

The above represent the same Handle. The first is possibly more convenient to use only as an identifier; however, by using the second form, any Web browser becomes capable of resolving Handles. An end-user need only access this form of the Handle as they would any other URL. It is possible to enable some browsers to resolve the first form of Handle as if they were standard URLs using [CNRI's Handle Resolver plug-in](#)¹⁸⁵, but since the first form can always be simply derived from the second, DSpace displays Handles in the second form, so that it is more useful for end-users.

It is important to note that DSpace uses the CNRI Handle infrastructure only at the 'site' level. For example, in the above example, the DSpace site has been assigned the prefix '1721.123'. It is still the responsibility of the DSpace site to maintain the association between a full Handle (including the '4567' local part) and the community, collection or item in question.

1.2.4.2 Bitstream 'Persistent' Identifiers

Similar to handles for DSpace items, bitstreams also have 'Persistent' identifiers. They are more volatile than Handles, since if the content is moved to a different server or organization, they will no longer work (hence the quotes around 'persistent'). However, they are more easily persisted than the simple URLs based on database primary key previously used. This means that external systems can more reliably refer to specific bitstreams stored in a DSpace instance.

Each bitstream has a sequence ID, unique within an item. This sequence ID is used to create a persistent ID, of the form:

dspace url/bitstream/handle/sequence ID/filename

For example:

```
https://dspace.myu.edu/bitstream/123.456/789/24/foo.html
```

The above refers to the bitstream with sequence ID 24 in the item with the Handle [hdl:123.456/789](#)¹⁸⁶. The *foo.html* is really just there as a hint to browsers: Although DSpace will provide the appropriate MIME type, some browsers only function correctly if the file has an expected extension.

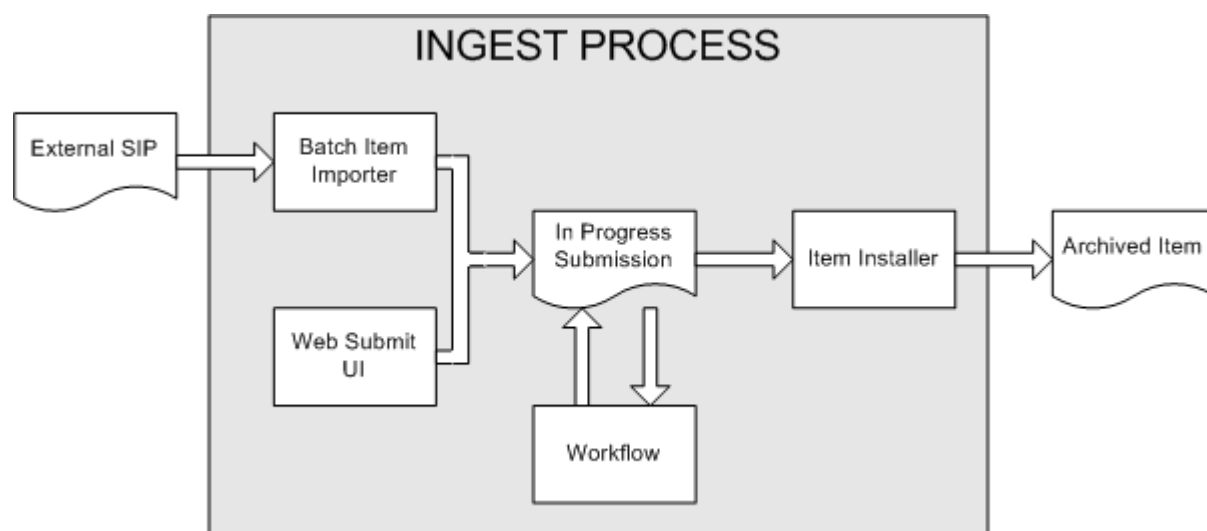
¹⁸⁵ <http://www.handle.net/resolver/index.html>

¹⁸⁶ <http://hdl:123.456>

1.2.5 Getting content into DSpace

1.2.5.1 The Manual DSpace Submission and Workflow System

Rather than being a single subsystem, ingesting is a process that spans several. Below is a simple illustration of the current ingesting process in DSpace.



DSpace Ingest Process

The batch item importer is an application, which turns an external SIP (an XML metadata document with some content files) into an "in progress submission" object. The Web submission UI is similarly used by an end-user to assemble an "in progress submission" object.

Depending on the policy of the collection to which the submission is targeted, a workflow process may be started. This typically allows one or more human reviewers or 'gatekeepers' to check over the submission and ensure it is suitable for inclusion in the collection.

When the Batch Ingester or Submission UI completes the InProgressSubmission object, and invokes the next stage of ingest (be that workflow or item installation), a provenance message is added to the Dublin Core which includes the filenames and checksums of the content of the submission. Likewise, each time a workflow changes state (e.g. a reviewer accepts the submission), a similar provenance statement is added. This allows us to track how the item has changed since a user submitted it.

Once any workflow process is successfully and positively completed, the InProgressSubmission object is consumed by an "item installer", that converts the InProgressSubmission into a fully blown archived item in DSpace. The item installer:

- Assigns an accession date
- Adds a "date.available" value to the Dublin Core metadata record of the item
- Adds an issue date if none already present
- Adds a provenance message (including bitstream checksums)
- Assigns a Handle persistent identifier
- Adds the item to the target collection, and adds appropriate authorization policies
- Adds the new item to the search and browse index

Workflow Steps

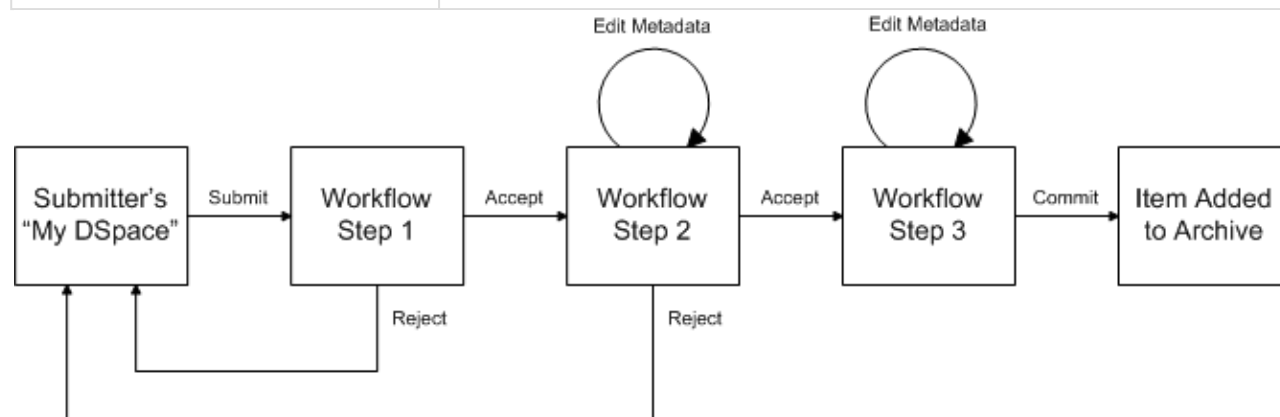
By default, a collection's workflow may have up to three steps. Each collection may have an associated e-person group for performing each step; if no group is associated with a certain step, that step is skipped. If a collection has no e-person groups associated with any step, submissions to that collection are installed straight into the main archive. Keep in mind, however, that this is only the **default** behavior, and the workflow process can be configured/customized easily, see [Configurable Workflow](#) (see page 327).

In other words, the default sequence is this: The collection receives a submission. If the collection has a group assigned for workflow step 1, that step is invoked, and the group is notified. Otherwise, workflow step 1 is skipped. Likewise, workflow steps 2 and 3 are performed if and only if the collection has a group assigned to those steps.

When a step is invoked, the submission is put into the 'task pool' of the step's associated group. One member of that group takes the task from the pool, and it is then removed from the task pool, to avoid the situation where several people in the group may be performing the same task without realizing it.

The member of the group who has taken the task from the pool may then perform one of three actions:

Workflow Step	Possible actions
1	Can accept submission for inclusion, or reject submission.
2	Can edit metadata provided by the user with the submission, but cannot change the submitted files. Can accept submission for inclusion, or reject submission.
3	Can edit metadata provided by the user with the submission, but cannot change the submitted files. Must then commit to archive; may not reject submission.



Submission Workflow in DSpace

If a submission is rejected, the reason (entered by the workflow participant) is e-mailed to the submitter, and it is returned to the submitter's 'My DSpace' page. The submitter can then make any necessary modifications and re-submit, whereupon the process starts again.

If a submission is 'accepted', it is passed to the next step in the workflow. If there are no more workflow steps with associated groups, the submission is installed in the main archive.

One last possibility is that a workflow can be 'aborted' by a DSpace site administrator. This is accomplished using the Administration UI.

1.2.5.2 Command line import facilities

DSpace includes batch tools to import items in a simple directory structure, where the Dublin Core metadata is stored in an XML file. This may be used as the basis for moving content between DSpace and other systems. For more information see [Item Importer and Exporter](#)(see page 0).

DSpace also includes various package importer tools, which support many common content packaging formats like METS. For more information see [Package Importer and Exporter](#)(see page 0). Additionally, DSpace can import/export Archival Information Packages (AIPs), see [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559).

1.2.5.3 Registration for externally hosted files

Registration is an alternate means of incorporating items, their metadata, and their bitstreams into DSpace by taking advantage of the bitstreams already being in accessible computer storage. An example might be that there is a repository for existing digital assets. Rather than using the normal interactive ingest process or the batch import to furnish DSpace the metadata and to upload bitstreams, registration provides DSpace the metadata and the location of the bitstreams. DSpace uses a variation of the import tool to accomplish registration.

1.2.5.4 SWORD Support

SWORD (Simple Web-service Offering Repository Deposit) is a protocol that allows the remote deposit of items into repositories. SWORD was further developed in SWORD version 2 to add the ability to retrieve, update, or delete deposits. DSpace supports the SWORD protocol via the 'sword' web application and SWord v2 via the swordv2 web application. The specification and further information can be found at <http://swordapp.org>¹⁸⁷. See also [SWORDv1 Server](#)(see page 290) and [SWORDv2 Server](#)(see page 275).

1.2.6 Getting content out of DSpace

1.2.6.1 OAI Support

The [Open Archives Initiative](#)¹⁸⁸ has developed a [protocol for metadata harvesting](#)¹⁸⁹. This allows sites to programmatically retrieve or 'harvest' the metadata from several sources, and offer services using that metadata, such as indexing or linking services. Such a service could allow users to access information from a large number of sites from one place.

DSpace exposes the Dublin Core metadata for items that are publicly (anonymously) accessible. Additionally, the collection structure is also exposed via the OAI protocol's 'sets' mechanism. OCLC's open source [OAI Cat](#)¹⁹⁰ framework is used to provide this functionality.

You can also configure the OAI service to make use of any crosswalk plugin to offer additional metadata formats, such as MODS.

¹⁸⁷ <http://swordapp.org/>

¹⁸⁸ <http://www.openarchives.org/>

¹⁸⁹ <http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/openarchivesprotocol.html>

¹⁹⁰ <http://www.oclc.org/research/software/oai/cat.shtm>

DSpace's OAI service does support the exposing of deletion information for withdrawn items, but not for items that are 'expunged' (see above). DSpace also supports OAI-PMH resumption tokens. See [OAI\(see page 250\)](#) for more information.

1.2.6.2 Command Line Export Facilities

DSpace includes batch tools to export items in a simple directory structure, where the Dublin Core metadata is stored in an XML file. This may be used as the basis for moving content between DSpace and other systems. For more information see [Item Importer and Exporter\(see page 0\)](#).

DSpace also includes various package exporter tools, which support many common content packaging formats like METS. For more information see [Package Importer and Exporter\(see page 0\)](#). Additionally, DSpace can import/export Archival Information Packages (AIPs), see [AIP Backup and Restore\(see page 559\)](#).

1.2.6.3 Packager Plugins

Packagers are software modules that translate between DSpace Item objects and a self-contained external representation, or "package". A *Package Ingestor* interprets, or *ingests*, the package and creates an Item. A *Package Disseminator* writes out the contents of an Item in the package format.

A package is typically an archive file such as a Zip or "tar" file, including a *manifest* document which contains metadata and a description of the package contents. The [IMS Content Package¹⁹¹](#) is a typical packaging standard. A package might also be a single document or media file that contains its own metadata, such as a PDF document with embedded descriptive metadata.

Package ingesters and package disseminators are each a type of named plugin (see [Plugin Manager\(see page 0\)](#)), so it is easy to add new packagers specific to the needs of your site. You do not have to supply both an ingester and disseminator for each format; it is perfectly acceptable to just implement one of them.

Most packager plugins call upon [Crosswalk Plugins\(see page 69\)](#) to translate the metadata between DSpace's object model and the package format.

More information about calling Packagers to ingest or disseminate content can be found in the [Package Importer and Exporter\(see page 0\)](#) section of the System Administration documentation.

1.2.6.4 Crosswalk Plugins

Crosswalks are software modules that translate between DSpace object metadata and a specific external representation. An *Ingestion Crosswalk* interprets the external format and crosswalks it to DSpace's internal data structure, while a *Dissemination Crosswalk* does the opposite.

For example, a MODS ingestion crosswalk translates descriptive metadata from the MODS format to the metadata fields on a DSpace Item. A MODS dissemination crosswalk generates a MODS document from the metadata on a DSpace Item.

Crosswalk plugins are named plugins (see [Plugin Manager\(see page 0\)](#)), so it is easy to add new crosswalks. You do not have to supply both an ingester and disseminator for each format; it is perfectly acceptable to just implement one of them.

There is also a special pair of crosswalk plugins which use XSL stylesheets to translate the external metadata to or from an internal DSpace format. You can add and modify XSLT crosswalks simply by editing the DSpace configuration and the stylesheets, which are stored in files in the DSpace installation directory.

The Packager plugins and OAH-PMH server make use of crosswalk plugins.

¹⁹¹ <http://www.imsglobal.org/content/packaging/>

1.2.6.5 Supervision and Collaboration

In order to facilitate, as a primary objective, the opportunity for thesis authors to be supervised in the preparation of their e-theses, a supervision order system exists to bind groups of other users (thesis supervisors) to an item in someone's pre-submission workspace. The bound group can have system policies associated with it that allow different levels of interaction with the student's item; a small set of default policy groups are provided:

- Full editorial control
- View item contents

Once the default set has been applied, a system administrator may modify them as they would any other policy set in DSpace

This functionality could also be used in situations where researchers wish to collaborate on a particular submission, although there is no particular collaborative workspace functionality.

See [Supervision Orders](#)(see page 367) for more details.

1.2.7 User Management

Although many of DSpace's functions such as document discovery and retrieval can be used anonymously, some features (and perhaps some documents) are only available to certain "privileged" users. E-People and Groups are the way DSpace identifies application users for the purpose of granting privileges. This identity is bound to a session of a DSpace application such as the Web UI or one of the command-line batch programs. Both E-People and Groups are granted privileges by the authorization system described below.

1.2.7.1 User Accounts (E-Person)

DSpace holds the following information about each e-person:

- E-mail address
- First and last names
- Whether the user is able to log in to the system via the Web UI, and whether they must use an X509 certificate to do so;
- A password (encrypted), if appropriate
- A list of collections for which the e-person wishes to be notified of new items
- Whether the e-person 'self-registered' with the system; that is, whether the system created the e-person record automatically as a result of the end-user independently registering with the system, as opposed to the e-person record being generated from the institution's personnel database, for example.
- The network ID for the corresponding LDAP record, if LDAP authentication is used for this E-Person.

1.2.7.2 Subscriptions

Not yet been implemented. This listed in Tier 3 (see #6 in Tier 3): [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)¹⁹²

As noted above, end-users (e-people) may 'subscribe' to collections in order to be alerted when new items appear in those collections. Each day, end-users who are subscribed to one or more collections will receive an e-mail giving brief details of all new items that appeared in any of those collections the previous day. If no new items appeared in

¹⁹² <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status#DSpaceRelease7.0Status-Tier3:MediumPriority>

any of the subscribed collections, no e-mail is sent. Users can unsubscribe themselves at any time. RSS feeds of new items are also available for collections and communities.

1.2.7.3 Groups

Groups are another kind of entity that can be granted permissions in the authorization system. A group is usually an explicit list of E-People; anyone identified as one of those E-People also gains the privileges granted to the group.

However, an application session can be assigned membership in a group *without* being identified as an E-Person. For example, some sites use this feature to identify users of a local network so they can read restricted materials not open to the whole world. Sessions originating from the local network are given membership in the "LocalUsers" group and gain the corresponding privileges.

Administrators can also use groups as "roles" to manage the granting of privileges more efficiently.

1.2.8 Access Control

1.2.8.1 Authentication

Authentication is when an application session positively identifies itself as belonging to an E-Person and/or Group. In DSpace, it is implemented by a mechanism called *Stackable Authentication*: the DSpace configuration declares a "stack" of authentication methods. An application (like the Web UI) calls on the Authentication Manager, which tries each of these methods in turn to identify the E-Person to which the session belongs, as well as any extra Groups. The E-Person authentication methods are tried in turn until one succeeds. Every authenticator in the stack is given a chance to assign extra Groups. This mechanism offers the following advantages:

- Separates authentication from the Web user interface so the same authentication methods are used for other applications such as non-interactive Web Services
- Improved modularity: The authentication methods are all independent of each other. Custom authentication methods can be "stacked" on top of the default DSpace username/password method.
- Cleaner support for "implicit" authentication where username is found in the environment of a Web request, e.g. in an X.509 client certificate.

For more information see [Authentication Plugins](#)(see page 139)

1.2.8.2 Authorization

DSpace's authorization system is based on associating actions with objects and the lists of EPeople who can perform them. The associations are called Resource Policies, and the lists of EPeople are called Groups. There are two built-in groups: 'Administrators', who can do anything in a site, and 'Anonymous', which is a list that contains all users. Assigning a policy for an action on an object to anonymous means giving everyone permission to do that action. (For example, most objects in DSpace sites have a policy of 'anonymous' READ.) Permissions must be explicit - lack of an explicit permission results in the default policy of 'deny'. Permissions also do not 'commute'; for example, if an e-person has READ permission on an item, they might not necessarily have READ permission on the bundles and bitstreams in that item. Currently Collections, Communities and Items are discoverable in the browse and search systems regardless of READ authorization.

The following actions are possible:

Collection

ADD/REMOVE	add or remove items (ADD = permission to submit items)
------------	--

DEFAULT_ITEM_READ	inherited as READ by all submitted items
DEFAULT_BITSTREAM_READ	inherited as READ by Bitstreams of all submitted items. Note: only affects Bitstreams of an item at the time it is initially submitted. If a Bitstream is added later, it does <i>not</i> get the same default read policy.
COLLECTION_ADMIN	collection admins can edit items in a collection, withdraw items, map other items into this collection.

Item

ADD/REMOVE	add or remove bundles
READ	can view item (item metadata is always viewable)
WRITE	can modify item

Bundle

ADD/REMOVE	add or remove bitstreams to a bundle
------------	--------------------------------------

Bitstream

READ	view bitstream
WRITE	modify bitstream

Note that there is no 'DELETE' action. In order to 'delete' an object (e.g. an item) from the archive, one must have REMOVE permission on all objects (in this case, collection) that contain it. The 'orphaned' item is automatically deleted.

Policies can apply to individual e-people or groups of e-people.

1.2.9 Usage Metrics

DSpace is equipped with SOLR based infrastructure to log and display pageviews and file downloads.

1.2.9.1 Item, Collection and Community Usage Statistics

Usage statistics can be retrieved from individual item, collection and community pages. These Usage Statistics pages show:

- Total page visits (all time)
- Total Visits per Month
- File Downloads (all time)*
- Top Country Views (all time)
- Top City Views (all time)

*File Downloads information is only displayed for item-level statistics. Note that downloads from separate bitstreams are also recorded and represented separately. DSpace is able to capture and store File Download information, even when the bitstream was downloaded from a direct link on an external website.

Total Visits	
	Views
DSUG 2009	790

Total Visits Per Month							
	August 2009	September 2009	October 2009	November 2009	December 2009	January 2010	February 2010
DSUG 2009	0	0	491	82	151	59	7

1.2.9.2 System Statistics

Various statistical reports about the contents and use of your system can be automatically generated by the system. These are generated by analyzing DSpace's log files. Statistics can be broken down monthly.

The report includes following sections

- A customizable general overview of activities in the archive, by default including:
 - Number of items archived
 - Number of bitstream views
 - Number of item page views
 - Number of collection page views
 - Number of community page views
 - Number of user logins
 - Number of searches performed
 - Number of license rejections
 - Number of OAI Requests
- Customizable summary of archive contents
- Broken-down list of item viewings
- A full break-down of all performed actions
- User logins
- Most popular searches
- Log Level Information
- Processing information!stats_genrl_overview.png!

The results of statistical analysis can be presented on a by-month and an in-total report, and are available via the user interface. The reports can also either be made public or restricted to administrator access only.

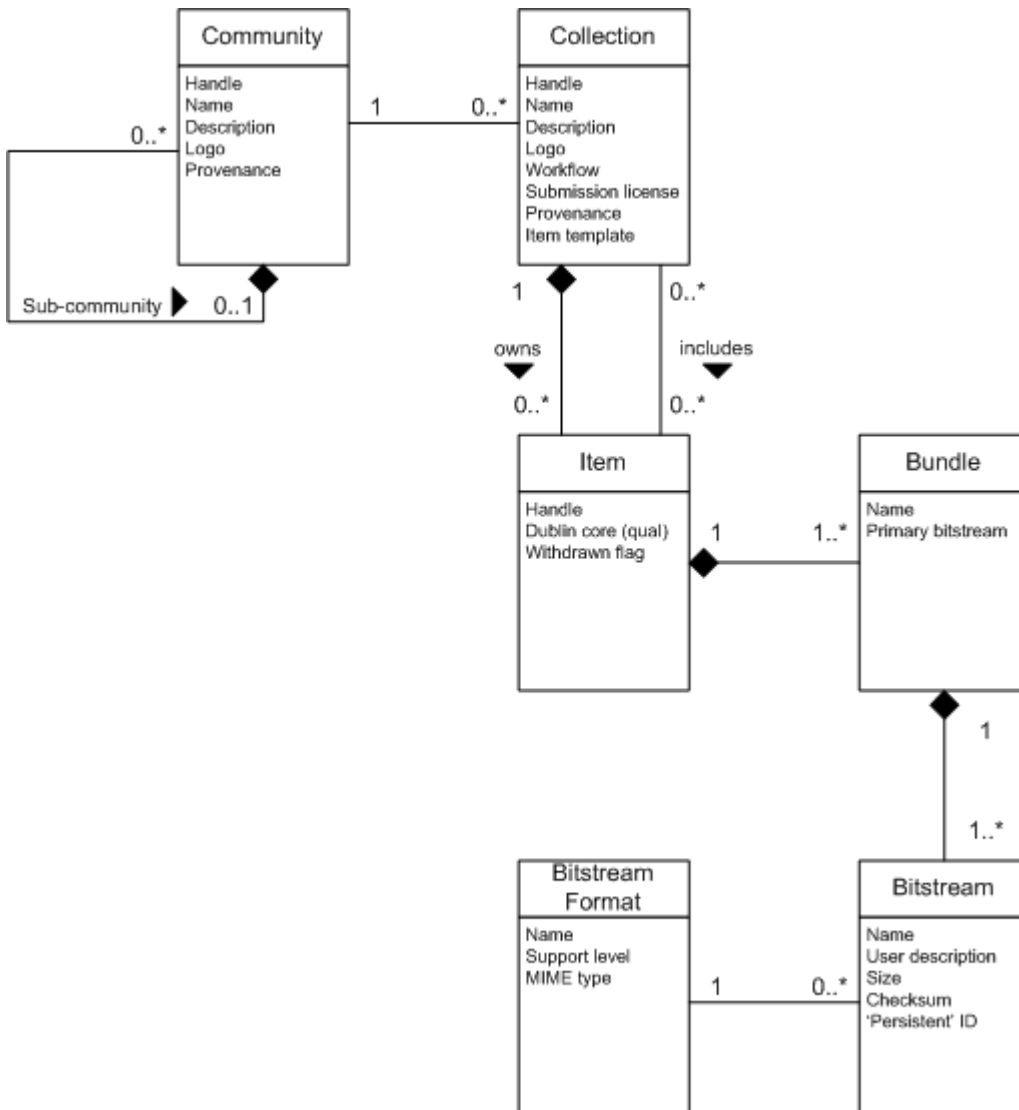
1.2.10 Digital Preservation

1.2.10.1 Checksum Checker

The purpose of the checker is to verify that the content in a DSpace repository has not become corrupted or been tampered with. The functionality can be invoked on an ad-hoc basis from the command line, or configured via cron or similar. Options exist to support large repositories that cannot be entirely checked in one run of the tool. The tool is extensible to new reporting and checking priority approaches.

1.2.11 System Design

1.2.11.1 Data Model



Data Model Diagram

The way data is organized in DSpace is intended to reflect the structure of the organization using the DSpace system. Each DSpace site is divided into *communities*, which can be further divided into *sub-communities* reflecting the typical university structure of college, department, research center, or laboratory.

Communities contain *collections*, which are groupings of related content. A collection may appear in more than one community.

Each collection is composed of *items*, which are the basic archival elements of the archive. Each item is owned by one collection. Additionally, an item may appear in additional collections; however every item has one and only one owning collection.

Items are further subdivided into named *bundles of bitstreams*. Bitstreams are, as the name suggests, streams of bits, usually ordinary computer files. Bitstreams that are somehow closely related, for example HTML files and images that compose a single HTML document, are organized into bundles.

In practice, most items tend to have these named bundles:

- *ORIGINAL* – the bundle with the original, deposited bitstreams
- *THUMBNAILS* – thumbnails of any image bitstreams
- *TEXT* – extracted full-text from bitstreams in ORIGINAL, for indexing
- *LICENSE* – contains the deposit license that the submitter granted the host organization; in other words, specifies the rights that the hosting organization have
- *CC_LICENSE* – contains the distribution license, if any (a [icenummons](http://creativecommons.org/)¹⁹³ license) associated with the item. This license specifies what end users downloading the content can do with the content

Each bitstream is associated with one *Bitstream Format*. Because preservation services may be an important aspect of the DSpace service, it is important to capture the specific formats of files that users submit. In DSpace, a bitstream format is a unique and consistent way to refer to a particular file format. An integral part of a bitstream format is an either implicit or explicit notion of how material in that format can be interpreted. For example, the interpretation for bitstreams encoded in the JPEG standard for still image compression is defined explicitly in the Standard ISO/IEC 10918-1. The interpretation of bitstreams in Microsoft Word 2000 format is defined implicitly, through reference to the Microsoft Word 2000 application. Bitstream formats can be more specific than MIME types or file suffixes. For example, *application/ms-word* and *.doc* span multiple versions of the Microsoft Word application, each of which produces bitstreams with presumably different characteristics.

Each bitstream format additionally has a *support level*, indicating how well the hosting institution is likely to be able to preserve content in the format in the future. There are three possible support levels that bitstream formats may be assigned by the hosting institution. The host institution should determine the exact meaning of each support level, after careful consideration of costs and requirements. MIT Libraries' interpretation is shown below:

Supported	The format is recognized, and the hosting institution is confident it can make bitstreams of this format usable in the future, using whatever combination of techniques (such as migration, emulation, etc.) is appropriate given the context of need.
Known	The format is recognized, and the hosting institution will promise to preserve the bitstream as-is, and allow it to be retrieved. The hosting institution will attempt to obtain enough information to enable the format to be upgraded to the 'supported' level.

¹⁹³ <http://www.creativecommons.org/>

Unsupported	The format is unrecognized, but the hosting institution will undertake to preserve the bitstream as-is and allow it to be retrieved.
--------------------	--

Each item has one qualified Dublin Core metadata record. Other metadata might be stored in an item as a serialized bitstream, but we store Dublin Core for every item for interoperability and ease of discovery. The Dublin Core may be entered by end-users as they submit content, or it might be derived from other metadata as part of an ingest process.

Items can be removed from DSpace in one of two ways: They may be 'withdrawn', which means they remain in the archive but are completely hidden from view. In this case, if an end-user attempts to access the withdrawn item, they are presented with a 'tombstone,' that indicates the item has been removed. For whatever reason, an item may also be 'expunged' if necessary, in which case all traces of it are removed from the archive.

Object	Example
Community	Laboratory of Computer Science; Oceanographic Research Center
Collection	LCS Technical Reports; ORC Statistical Data Sets
Item	A technical report; a data set with accompanying description; a video recording of a lecture
Bundle	A group of HTML and image bitstreams making up an HTML document
Bitstream	A single HTML file; a single image file; a source code file
Bitstream Format	Microsoft Word version 6.0; JPEG encoded image format

1.2.11.2 Amazon S3 Support

DSpace offers two means for storing bitstreams. The first is in the file system on the server. The second is using Amazon S3. For more information, see [Storage Layer](#)(see page 859)

1.3 Technology Overview

DSpace open source software is free to use, and community supported.

DSpace consists of both a frontend (User Interface) and a backend (REST API & other machine interfaces). A brief overview of the technologies used for each is provided below.

1.3.1 DSpace Frontend (UI) Technologies

The DSpace Frontend provides the [User Interface](#)(see page 478) which allows people to interact with DSpace. It requires a DSpace backend, and cannot be run standalone.

The DSpace Frontend is built on the [Angular](#)¹⁹⁴ platform, written in the [Typescript](#)¹⁹⁵ language. It uses [Bootstrap](#)¹⁹⁶ & HTML5 for theming/styling & strives for WCAG 2.1 AA alignment. The frontend also uses [Angular Universal](#)¹⁹⁷ for "server-side rendering", which allows it to function even when Javascript is unavailable in the browser.

More information on installing the DSpace Frontend can be found in the [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) guide.

1.3.2 DSpace Backend (REST API) Technologies

The DSpace Backend provides the [REST API](#)(see page 666), which is required by the DSpace Frontend. It also provides additional machine interfaces for interacting with data in DSpace, such as [OAI-PMH](#)(see page 250), [SWORDv2 Server](#)(see page 275), [SWORDv1 Server](#)(see page 290) and various command-line (CLI) tools. The DSpace backend can be run standalone, but it doesn't provide a user friendly web interface (which is why the DSpace frontend is recommended).

The DSpace Backend is built on [Spring Boot](#)¹⁹⁸, written in Java. The REST API portion of the backend is built on Spring Technologies, including [Spring REST](#)¹⁹⁹, [Spring HATEOAS](#)²⁰⁰, and aligns with [Spring Data REST](#)²⁰¹. The REST API uses the [Spring Data REST Hal Browser](#)²⁰² as a basic web interface for exploring the REST API.

The DSpace Backend requires a relational database (usually [PostgreSQL](#)²⁰³), used to store all the metadata and relationships between objects. All files uploaded into DSpace are stored on the filesystem (any operating system is supported). [Apache Solr](#)²⁰⁴ is also required, and is used to index all objects for searching/browsing.

More information on installing the DSpace Backend can be found in the [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) guide. More information on the REST API specifically can be found in our [REST Contract](#)²⁰⁵.

194 <https://angular.io/>

195 <https://www.typescriptlang.org/>

196 <https://getbootstrap.com/>

197 <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

198 <https://spring.io/projects/spring-boot>

199 <https://spring.io/guides/tutorials/rest/>

200 <https://spring.io/projects/spring-hateoas>

201 <https://spring.io/projects/spring-data-rest>

202 https://docs.spring.io/spring-data/rest/docs/current/reference/html/#_the_hal_browser

203 <https://www.postgresql.org/>

204 <https://solr.apache.org/>

205 <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/README.md>

2 Installing DSpace

- [Installation Overview](#)(see page 78)
- [Installing the Backend \(Server API\)](#)(see page 79)
 - [Backend Requirements](#)(see page 79)
 - [Backend Installation](#)(see page 85)
- [Installing the Frontend \(User Interface\)](#)(see page 93)
 - [Frontend Requirements](#)(see page 93)
 - [Frontend Installation](#)(see page 95)
- [What Next?](#)(see page 102)
- [Common Installation Issues](#)(see page 103)
 - [Troubleshoot an error or find detailed error messages](#)(see page 103)
 - [User Interface starts to load but then spins \(never fully loads\)](#)(see page 103)
 - ["500 Service Unavailable" from the User Interface](#)(see page 103)
 - ["No _links section found at..." error from User Interface](#)(see page 103)
 - ["RangeError: Maximum call stack size exceeded"](#)(see page 105)
 - ["XMLHttpRequest.. has been blocked by CORS policy" or "CORS error" or "Invalid CORS request"](#)(see page 105)
 - [Cannot login from the User Interface with a password that I know is valid](#)(see page 106)
 - ["403 Forbidden" error with a message that says "Access is denied. Invalid CSRF Token"](#)(see page 106)
 - [Using a Self-Signed SSL Certificate causes the Frontend to not be able to access the Backend](#)(see page 107)
 - [My REST API is running under HTTPS, but some of its "link" URLs are switching to HTTP?](#)(see page 108)
 - [Solr responds with "Expected mime type application/octet-stream but got text/html" \(404 Not Found\)](#)(see page 108)
 - [Database errors occur when you run ant fresh_install](#)(see page 108)

2.1 Installation Overview

Try out DSpace 7 before you install

If you'd like to quickly try out DSpace 7 before a full installation, see [Try out DSpace 7](#)²⁰⁶ for instructions on a quick install via Docker.

As of version 7 (and above), the DSpace application is split into a "frontend" (User Interface) and a "backend" (Server API). Most institutions will want to install BOTH. However, you can decide whether to run them on the same machine or separate machines.

- The DSpace Frontend consists of a User Interface built on [Angular.io](#)²⁰⁷. It is a Node.js web application, i.e. once it is built/compiled, it only require Node.js to run. It cannot be run "standalone", as it *requires* a valid DSpace Backend to function. The frontend provides all user-facing functionality.
- The DSpace Backend consists of a Server API ("server" webapp), built on [Spring Boot](#)²⁰⁸. It is a Java web application. It can be run standalone, however it has no user interface. The backend provides all machine-based interfaces, including the REST API, OAI-PMH, SWORD (v1 and v2) and RDF.

We recommend installing the Backend **first**, as the Frontend requires a valid Backend to run properly.

²⁰⁶ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Try+out+DSpace+7>

²⁰⁷ <https://angular.io/>

²⁰⁸ <https://spring.io/projects/spring-boot>

2.2 Installing the Backend (Server API)

2.2.1 Backend Requirements

- [UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows](#)(see page 79)
- [Java JDK 11 or 17 \(OpenJDK or Oracle JDK\)](#)(see page 79)
- [Apache Maven 3.3.x or above \(Java build tool\)](#)(see page 80)
 - [Configuring a Maven Proxy](#)(see page 80)
- [Apache Ant 1.10.x or later \(Java build tool\)](#)(see page 81)
- [Relational Database \(PostgreSQL or Oracle\)](#)(see page 81)
 - [PostgreSQL 11.x, 12.x or 13.x \(with pgcrypto installed\)](#)(see page 81)
 - [Oracle 12.2 or later \(DEPRECATED\)](#)(see page 82)
- [Apache Solr 8.x \(full-text index/search service\)](#)(see page 82)
- [Servlet Engine \(Apache Tomcat 9, Jetty, Caucho Resin or equivalent\)](#)(see page 83)
- [\(Optional\) IP to City Database for Location-based Statistics](#)(see page 84)
- [Git \(code version control\)](#)(see page 84)

2.2.1.1 UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows

- UNIX-like operating system (Linux, HP/UX, Mac OSX, etc.) : Many distributions of Linux/Unix come with some of the dependencies below pre-installed or easily installed via updates. You should consult your particular distribution's documentation or local system administrators to determine what is already available.
- Microsoft Windows: While DSpace can be run on Windows servers, most institutions tend to run it on a UNIX-like operating system.

2.2.1.2 Java JDK 11 or 17 (OpenJDK or Oracle JDK)

JDK17 support was first available in DSpace 7.2. DSpace 7.1 or 7.0 only supported JDK 11.

- OpenJDK download and installation instructions can be found here <http://openjdk.java.net/install/>. Most operating systems provide an easy path to install OpenJDK. Just be sure to install the full JDK (development kit), and not the JRE (which is often the default example).
- Oracle's Java can be downloaded from the following location: <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html>. Make sure to download the appropriate version of the Java SE JDK.

Make sure to install the JDK and not just the JRE

DSpace requires the full JDK (Java Development Kit) be installed, rather than just the JRE (Java Runtime Environment). So, please be sure that you are installing the full JDK and not just the JRE.

Only JDK11 and JDK 17 are fully supported

Older versions of Java are unsupported. This includes JDK v7-10.

Newer versions of Java may work (e.g. JDK v12-16), but we do not recommend running them in Production. We highly recommend running only Java LTS (Long Term Support) releases in Production, as non-LTS releases may not receive ongoing security fixes. As of this DSpace release, JDK11 and JDK 17 are the two most recent Java LTS releases. As soon as the next Java LTS release is available, we will analyze it for compatibility with this release of DSpace. For more information on Java releases, see the Java roadmaps for [Oracle](#)²⁰⁹ and/or [OpenJDK](#)²¹⁰.

2.2.1.3 Apache Maven 3.3.x or above (Java build tool)

We recommend using the most recent version of Maven that you can, as newer releases may include performance improvements and security updates. Maven 3.8.x and 3.6.x are known to work well.

Maven is necessary in the first stage of the build process to assemble the installation package for your DSpace instance. It gives you the flexibility to customize DSpace using the existing Maven projects found in the `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules` directory or by adding in your own Maven project to build the installation package for DSpace, and apply any custom interface "overlay" changes.

Maven can be downloaded from <http://maven.apache.org/download.html> It is also provided via many operating system package managers.

Configuring a Maven Proxy

You can configure a proxy to use for some or all of your HTTP requests in Maven. The username and password are only required if your proxy requires basic authentication (note that later releases may support storing your passwords in a secured keystore, in the meantime, please ensure your `settings.xml` file (usually `/${user.home}/.m2/settings.xml`) is secured with permissions appropriate for your operating system).

Example:

```
<settings>
.
.
<proxies>
  <proxy>
    <active>true</active>
    <protocol>http</protocol>
    <host>proxy.somewhere.com</host>
    <port>8080</port>
    <username>proxyuser</username>
    <password>somepassword</password>
    <nonProxyHosts>www.google.com|*.somewhere.com</nonProxyHosts>
  </proxy>
</proxies>
.
.
</settings>
```

²⁰⁹ <https://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/java-se-support-roadmap.html>

²¹⁰ <https://adoptopenjdk.net/support.html#roadmap>

2.2.1.4 Apache Ant 1.10.x or later (Java build tool)

While Apache Ant recommends using v1.10.x for Java 11, we've also had some success with recent versions of 1.9.x (specifically v1.9.15 seems to work fine with Java 11). That said, earlier versions of v1.9.x are not compatible with Java 11.

Apache Ant is required for the second stage of the build process (deploying/installing the application). First, Maven is used to construct the installer (`[dspace-source]/dspace/target/dspace-installer`), after which Ant is used to install/deploy DSpace to the installation directory.

Ant can be downloaded from the following location: <http://ant.apache.org>²¹¹ It is also provided via many operating system package managers.

2.2.1.5 Relational Database (PostgreSQL or Oracle)

PostgreSQL 11.x, 12.x or 13.x (with pgcrypto installed)

- PostgreSQL can be downloaded from <http://www.postgresql.org/>. It is also provided via many operating system package managers.
 - If the version of Postgres provided by your package manager is outdated, you may wish to use one of the official PostgreSQL provided repositories:
 - Linux users can select their OS of choice for detailed instructions on using the official PostgreSQL apt or yum repository: <http://www.postgresql.org/download/linux/>
 - Windows users will need to use the windows installer: <http://www.postgresql.org/download/windows/>
 - Mac OSX users can choose their preferred installation method: <http://www.postgresql.org/download/macosx/>
- Install the [pgcrypto extension](#).²¹² It will also need to be enabled on your DSpace Database (see Installation instructions below for more info). The pgcrypto extension allows DSpace to create UUIDs (universally unique identifiers) for all objects in DSpace, which means that (internal) object identifiers are now globally unique and no longer tied to database sequences.
 - On most Linux operating systems (Ubuntu, Debian, RedHat), this extension is provided in the "postgresql-contrib" package in your package manager. So, ensure you've installed "postgresql-contrib".
 - On Windows, this extension should be provided automatically by the installer (check your "[PostgreSQL]/share/extension" folder for files starting with "pgcrypto")
- Unicode (specifically UTF-8) support must be enabled (but this is enabled by default).
- Once installed, you need to enable TCP/IP connections (DSpace uses JDBC):
 - In `postgresql.conf` : uncomment the line starting: `listen_addresses = 'localhost'` . This is the default, in recent PostgreSQL releases, but you should at least check it.
 - Then tighten up security a bit by editing `pg_hba.conf` and adding this line:

```
host dspace dspace 127.0.0.1 255.255.255.255 md5
```

²¹¹ <http://ant.apache.org/>

²¹² <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/static/pgcrypto.html>

This should appear *before* any lines matching `all` databases, because the first matching rule governs.

- Then restart PostgreSQL.

Oracle 12.2 or later (DEPRECATED)

Oracle will no longer be supported in 2023

Oracle support has been deprecated in DSpace. It will no longer be supported as of June/July 2023. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8214>

We highly recommend all users install DSpace on PostgreSQL (see above)

- Details on acquiring Oracle can be downloaded from the following location: <http://www.oracle.com/database/>. You will need to create a database for DSpace. Make sure that the character set is one of the Unicode character sets. DSpace uses UTF-8 natively, and it is suggested that the Oracle database use the same character set. You will also need to create a user account for DSpace (e.g. `dspace`) and ensure that it has permissions to add and remove tables in the database. Refer to the Quick Installation for more details.
 - **NOTE:** If the database server is not on the same machine as DSpace, you must install the Oracle client to the DSpace server and point `tnsnames.ora` and `listener.ora` files to the database the Oracle server.

2.2.1.6 Apache Solr 8.x (full-text index/search service)

Solr 8.11.1 or above is recommended as all prior 8.x releases are vulnerable to CVE-2021-44228 (log4j critical vulnerability). If you must use a prior version of 8.x, make sure to add `"-Dlog4j2.formatMsgNoLookups=true"` to your SOLR_OPTS environment variable, see <https://solr.apache.org/security.html#apache-solr-affected-by-apache-log4j-cve-2021-44228>

Solr 9 is not yet fully supported, but can be used provided that you make minor modification to the out-of-the-box `"search/conf/solrconfig.xml"` that comes with DSpace 7. See [this below comment](#)²¹³ for details.

Make sure to install Solr with Authentication disabled (which is the default). DSpace does not yet support authentication to Solr (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/3169>). Instead, we recommend placing Solr behind a firewall and/or ensuring port 8983 (which Solr runs on) is not available for public/anonymous access on the web. Solr only needs to be accessible to requests from the DSpace backend.

Solr can be obtained at [the Apache Software Foundation site for Lucene and Solr](#)²¹⁴. You may wish to read portions of [the quick-start tutorial](#)²¹⁵ to make yourself familiar with Solr's layout and operation. Unpack a Solr .tgz or .zip archive in a place where you keep software that is not handled by your operating system's package management tools, and arrange to have it running whenever DSpace is running. You should ensure that Solr's index directories will have plenty of room to grow. You should also ensure that port 8983 is not in use by something else, or configure Solr to use a different port.

²¹³ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC7x/Installing+DSpace?focusedCommentId=246284451#comment-246284451>

²¹⁴ <https://lucene.apache.org/solr>

²¹⁵ http://lucene.apache.org/solr/guide/7_7/solr-tutorial.html

If you are looking for a good place to put Solr, consider `/opt` or `/usr/local`. You can simply unpack Solr in one place and use it. Or you can configure Solr to keep its indexes elsewhere, if you need to – see the Solr documentation for how to do this.

It is not necessary to dedicate a Solr instance to DSpace, if you already have one and want to use it. Simply copy DSpace's cores to a place where they will be discovered by Solr. See below.

2.2.1.7 Servlet Engine (Apache Tomcat 9, Jetty, Caucho Resin or equivalent)

Only Tomcat 9 is supported at this time. Tomcat 10 results in a display issue in the backend's Hal Browser. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8173> for more details

- **Apache Tomcat 9.** Tomcat can be downloaded from the following location: <http://tomcat.apache.org>²¹⁶. It is also provided via many operating system package managers.
 - *The Tomcat owner* (i.e. the user that Tomcat runs as) **must have read/write access** to the DSpace installation directory (i.e. `[dSPACE]`). There are a few common ways this may be achieved:
 - One option is to specifically give the Tomcat user (often named "tomcat") ownership of the `[dSPACE]` directories, for example:

```
# Change [dSPACE] and all subfolders to be owned by "tomcat"
chown -R tomcat:tomcat [dSPACE]
```

- Another option is to have Tomcat itself *run as* a new user named "dSPACE" (see installation instructions below). Some operating systems make modifying the Tomcat "run as" user easily modifiable via an environment variable named `TOMCAT_USER`. This option may be more desirable if you have multiple Tomcat instances running, and you do not want all of them to run under the same Tomcat owner.
- *On Debian systems*, you may also need to modify or override the "tomcat.service" file to specify the DSpace installation directory in the list of `ReadWritePaths`. For example:

```
# Replace [dSPACE] with the full path of your DSpace install
ReadWritePaths=[dSPACE]
```

- You need to ensure that Tomcat a) has enough memory to run DSpace, and b) uses UTF-8 as its default file encoding for international character support. So ensure in your startup scripts (etc) that the following environment variable is set: `JAVA_OPTS="-Xmx512M -Xms64M -Dfile.encoding=UTF-8"`
- **Modifications in `[tomcat]/conf/server.xml`**: You also need to alter Tomcat's default configuration to support searching and browsing of multi-byte UTF-8 correctly. You need to add a configuration option to the `<Connector>` element in `[tomcat]/conf/server.xml`: `URIEncoding="UTF-8"` e.g. if you're using the default Tomcat config, it should read:

```
<!-- Define a non-SSL HTTP/1.1 Connector on port 8080 -->
<Connector port="8080"
  minSpareThreads="25"
  enableLookups="false"
  redirectPort="8443"
```

²¹⁶ <http://tomcat.apache.org/whichversion.html>

```
connectionTimeout="20000"
disableUploadTimeout="true"
URIEncoding="UTF-8"/>
```

You may change the port from 8080 by editing it in the file above, and by setting the variable `CONNECTOR_PORT` in `server.xml`. You should set the `URIEncoding` even if you are running Tomcat behind a proxy (Apache HTTPD, Nginx, etc.) via AJP.

- **Jetty or Caucho Resin**

- DSpace 7 has not been tested with Jetty or Caucho Resin, after the switch to Java 11
- Older versions of DSpace were able to run on a Tomcat-equivalent servlet Engine, such as Jetty (<https://www.eclipse.org/jetty/>) or Caucho Resin (<http://www.caucho.com/>). If you choose to use a different servlet container, please ensure that it supports Servlet Spec 3.1 (or above).
- Jetty and Resin are configured for correct handling of UTF-8 by default.

2.2.1.8 (Optional) IP to City Database for Location-based Statistics

Optionally, if you wish to record the geographic locations of clients in DSpace usage statistics records, you will need to install (and regularly update) one of the following:

- Either, a copy of [MaxMind's GeoLite City database](#)²¹⁷ (in MMDB format)
 - NOTE: Installing MaxMind GeoLite2 is *free*. However, you **must** sign up for a (free) MaxMind account in order to obtain a license key to use the GeoLite2 database.
 - You may download GeoLite2 directly from MaxMind, or many Linux distributions provide the `geoipupdate` tool directly via their package manager. You will still need to configure your license key prior to usage.
 - Once the "GeoLite2-City.mmdb" database file is installed on your system, you will need to configure its location as the value of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in your `local.cfg` configuration file.
 - See the "Managing the City Database File" section of [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) for more information about using a City Database with DSpace.
- Or, you can alternatively use/install [DB-IP's City Lite database](#)²¹⁸ (in MMDB format)
 - This database is also free to use, but does **not** require an account to download.
 - Once the "dbip-city-lite.mmdb" database file is installed on your system, you will need to configure its location as the value of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in your `local.cfg` configuration file.
 - See the "Managing the City Database File" section of [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) for more information about using a City Database with DSpace.

2.2.1.9 Git (code version control)

Currently, there is a known bug in DSpace where a third-party Maven Module expects `git` to be available (in order to support the `./dspace version` commandline tool). We are working on a solution within this ticket: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/6772>

For the time being, you can work around this problem by installing Git locally: <https://git-scm.com/downloads>

²¹⁷ <https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoip2/geolite2/>

²¹⁸ <https://db-ip.com/db/download/ip-to-city-lite>

2.2.2 Backend Installation

1. Install all the [Backend Requirements](#)(see [page 79](#)) listed above.
2. **Create a DSpace operating system user (optional)** . As noted in the prerequisites above, Tomcat (or Jetty, etc) **must run as** an operating system user account that has full read/write access to the DSpace installation directory (i.e. `[dspace]`). Either you must ensure the Tomcat owner also owns `[dspace]` , OR you can create a new "dspace" user account, and ensure that Tomcat also runs as that account:

```
useradd -m dspace
```

The choice that makes the most sense for you will probably depend on how you installed your servlet container (Tomcat/Jetty/etc). If you installed it from source, you will need to create a user account to run it, and that account can be named anything, e.g. 'dspace'. If you used your operating system's package manager to install the container, then a user account should have been created as part of that process and it will be much easier to use that account than to try to change it.

3. **Download** the [latest DSpace release](#)²¹⁹ from the DSpace GitHub Repository. You can choose to either download the zip or tar.gz file provided by GitHub, or you can use "git" to checkout the appropriate tag (e.g. `dspace-7.2`) or branch.
4. **Unpack the DSpace software**. After downloading the software, based on the compression file format, choose one of the following methods to unpack your software:
 - a. **Zip file**. If you downloaded `dspace-7.2.zip` do the following:

```
unzip dspace-7.2.zip
```

- b. **.gz file**. If you downloaded `dspace-7.2.tar.gz` do the following:

```
gunzip -c dspace-7.2.tar.gz | tar -xf -
```

For ease of reference, we will refer to the location of this unzipped version of the DSpace release as `[dspace-source]` in the remainder of these instructions. After unpacking the file, the user may wish to change the ownership of the `dspace-7.x` folder to the "dspace" user. (And you may need to change the group).

5. Database Setup

- **PostgreSQL:**
 - Create a `dspace` database user (this user can have any name, but we'll assume you name it "dspace"). This is entirely separate from the `dspace` operating-system user created above:

```
createuser --username=postgres --no-superuser --pwprompt dspace
```

You will be prompted (twice) for a password for the new `dspace` user. Then you'll be prompted for the password of the PostgreSQL superuser (`postgres`).

²¹⁹ <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases>

- Create a `dspace` database, owned by the `dspace` PostgreSQL user. Similar to the previous step, this can only be done by a "superuser" account in PostgreSQL (e.g. `postgres`):

```
createdb --username=postgres --owner=dspace --encoding=UNICODE
dspace
```

You will be prompted for the password of the PostgreSQL superuser (`postgres`).

- Finally, you MUST enable the `pgcrypto` extension²²⁰ on your new `dspace` database. Again, this can only be enabled by a "superuser" account (e.g. `postgres`)

```
# Login to the database as a superuser, and enable the pgcrypto
extension on this database
psql --username=postgres dspace -c "CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto;"
```

The "CREATE EXTENSION" command should return with no result if it succeeds. If it fails or throws an error, it is likely you are missing the required `pgcrypto` extension (see [Database Prerequisites](#)²²¹ above).

- **Alternative method: How to enable `pgcrypto` via a separate database schema.** While the above method of enabling `pgcrypto` is perfectly fine for the majority of users, there may be some scenarios where a database administrator would prefer to install extensions into a database schema that is *separate from* the DSpace tables. Developers also may wish to install `pgcrypto` into a separate schema if they plan to "clean" (recreate) their development database frequently. Keeping extensions in a separate schema from the DSpace tables will ensure developers would NOT have to continually re-enable the extension each time you run a "`./dspace database clean`". If you wish to install `pgcrypto` in a separate schema here's how to do that:

```
# Login to the database as a superuser
psql --username=postgres dspace
# Create a new schema in this database named "extensions" (or
whatever you want to name it)
CREATE SCHEMA extensions;
# Enable this extension in this new schema
CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto SCHEMA extensions;
# Grant rights to call functions in the extensions schema to
your dspace user
GRANT USAGE ON SCHEMA extensions TO dspace;

# Append "extensions" on the current session's
"search_path" (if it doesn't already exist in search_path)
# The "search_path" config is the list of schemas that
Postgres will use
```

²²⁰ <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/static/pgcrypto.html>

²²¹ [https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC6x/Installing+DSpace#InstallingDSpace-RelationalDatabase:\(PostgreSQLorOracle\)](https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC6x/Installing+DSpace#InstallingDSpace-RelationalDatabase:(PostgreSQLorOracle))

```

SELECT set_config('search_path',current_setting('search_path')
|| ',extensions',false) WHERE current_setting('search_path') !
~ '^(|,)extensions(,|$)';
# Verify the current session's "search_path" and make sure it's
correct
SHOW search_path;
# Now, update the "dspace" Database to use the same
"search_path" (for all future sessions) as we've set for this
current session (i.e. via set_config() above)
ALTER DATABASE dspace SET search_path FROM CURRENT;

```

- **Oracle:**

- Setting up DSpace to use Oracle is a bit different now. You will need still need to get a copy of the Oracle JDBC driver, but instead of copying it into a lib directory you will need to install it into your local Maven repository. (You'll need to download it first from this location: <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/jdbc-112010-090769.html>.) Run the following command (all on one line):

```

mvn install:install-file
-Dfile=ojdbc6.jar
-DgroupId=com.oracle
-DartifactId=ojdbc6
-Dversion=11.2.0.4.0
-Dpackaging=jar
-DgeneratePom=true

```

- You need to compile DSpace with an Oracle driver (ojdbc6.jar) corresponding to your Oracle version - update the version in `[dspace-source]/pom.xml` E.g.:

```

<dependency>
  <groupId>com.oracle</groupId>
  <artifactId>ojdbc6</artifactId>
  <version>11.2.0.4.0</version>
</dependency>

```

- Create a database for DSpace. Make sure that the character set is one of the Unicode character sets. DSpace uses UTF-8 natively, and it is required that the Oracle database use the same character set. Create a user account for DSpace (e.g. `dspace`) and ensure that it has permissions to add and remove tables in the database.
- NOTE: You will need to ensure the proper `db.*` settings are specified in your `local.cfg` file (see next step), as the defaults for all of these settings assuming a PostgreSQL database backend.

```

db.url = jdbc:oracle:thin:@host:port/SID
# e.g. db.url = jdbc:oracle:thin:@//localhost:1521/xe
# NOTE: in db.url, SID is the SID of your database defined in
tnsnames.ora
# the default Oracle port is 1521
# You may also use a full SID definition, e.g.

```

```
# db.url =
jdbc:oracle:thin:@(description=(address_list=(address=(protocol=TCP)
(host=localhost)(port=1521)))(connect_data=(service_name=DSPACE)))

# Oracle driver and dialect
db.driver = oracle.jdbc.OracleDriver
db.dialect = org.hibernate.dialect.Oracle10gDialect

# Specify DB username, password and schema to use
db.username =
db.password =
db.schema = ${db.username}
# For Oracle, schema is equivalent to the username of your database
account,
# so this may be set to ${db.username} in most scenarios
```

- Later, during the Maven build step, don't forget to specify `mvn -Ddb.name222=oracle package`

6. **Initial Configuration (local.cfg):** Create your own `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg` configuration file. You may wish to simply copy the provided `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg.EXAMPLE`. This `local.cfg` file can be used to store *any* configuration changes that you wish to make which are local to your installation (see [local.cfg configuration file](#) (see page 731) documentation). ANY setting may be copied into this `local.cfg` file from the `dspace.cfg` or any other `*.cfg` file in order to override the default setting (see note below). For the initial installation of DSpace, there are some key settings you'll likely want to override. Those are provided in the `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg.EXAMPLE`. (NOTE: Settings followed with an asterisk (*) are highly recommended, while all others are optional during initial installation and may be customized at a later time.)

- `dspace.dir*` - must be set to the `[dspace]` (installation) directory (NOTE: On Windows be sure to use forward slashes for the directory path! For example: " C : /dspace " is a valid path for Windows.)
- `dspace.server.url*` - complete URL of this DSpace backend (including port and any subpath). **Do not end with '/'**. For example: `http://localhost:8080/server`
- `dspace.ui.url*` - complete URL of the DSpace frontend (including port and any subpath). REQUIRED for the REST API to fully trust requests from the DSpace frontend. **Do not end with '/'**. For example: `http://localhost:4000`
- `dspace.name` - Human-readable, "proper" name of your server, e.g. "My Digital Library".
- `solr.server*` - complete URL of the Solr server. DSpace makes use of Solr²²³ for indexing purposes. `http://localhost:8983/solr` unless you changed the port or installed Solr on some other host.
- `default.language` - Default language for all metadata values (defaults to "en_US")
- `db.url*` - The full JDBC URL to your database (examples are provided in the `local.cfg.EXAMPLE`)
- `db.driver*` - Which database driver to use, based on whether you are using PostgreSQL or Oracle

²²² <http://Ddb.name>

²²³ <http://lucene.apache.org/solr/>

- `db.dialect*` – Which database dialect to use, based on whether you are using PostgreSQL or Oracle
- `db.username*` – the database username used in the previous step.
- `db.password*` – the database password used in the previous step.
- `db.schema*` – the database schema to use (examples are provided in the `local.cfg.EXAMPLE`)
- `mail.server` – fully-qualified domain name of your outgoing mail server.
- `mail.from.address` – the "From:" address to put on email sent by DSpace.
- `feedback.recipient` – mailbox for feedback mail.
- `mail.admin` – mailbox for DSpace site administrator.
- `alert.recipient` – mailbox for server errors/alerts (not essential but very useful!)
- `registration.notify` – mailbox for emails when new users register (optional)

Your `local.cfg` file can override ANY settings from other `*.cfg` files in DSpace

The provided `local.cfg.EXAMPLE` only includes a small subset of the configuration settings available with DSpace. It provides a good starting point for your own `local.cfg` file.

However, you should be aware that ANY configuration can now be copied into your `local.cfg` to override the default settings. This includes ANY of the settings/configurations in:

- The primary `dspace.cfg` file (`[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg`)
- Any of the module configuration files (`[dspace]/config/modules/*.cfg` files)
- Any of the Spring Boot settings (`[dspace-src]/dspace-server-webapp/src/main/resources/application.properties`)

Individual settings may also be commented out or removed in your `local.cfg`, in order to re-enable default settings.

See the [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724) section for more details.

7. **DSpace Directory:** Create the directory for the DSpace backend installation (i.e. `[dspace]`). As *root* (or a user with appropriate permissions), run:

```
mkdir [dspace]
chown dspace [dspace]
```

(Assuming the `dspace` UNIX username.)

8. **Build the Installation Package:** As the `dspace` UNIX user, generate the DSpace installation package.

```
cd [dspace-source]
mvn package
```

Building with Oracle Database Support

Without any extra arguments, the DSpace installation package is initialized for PostgreSQL. If you want to use Oracle instead, you should build the DSpace installation package as follows:

```
mvn -Ddb.name224=oracle package
```

9. **Install DSpace Backend:** As the *dspace* UNIX user, install DSpace to `[dspace]` :

```
cd [dspace-source]/dspace/target/dspace-installer
ant fresh_install
```

To see a complete list of build targets, run: `ant help` *The most likely thing to go wrong here is the test of your database connection. See the [Common Installation Issues](#)(see page 103) Section below for more details.*

10. **Initialize your Database:** While this step is optional (as the DSpace database should auto-initialize itself on first startup), it's always good to verify one last time that your database connection is working properly. To initialize the database run:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace database migrate
```

- a. After running this script, it's a good idea to run `./dspace database info` to check that your database has been fully initialized. A fully initialized database should list the state of all migrations as either "Success" or "Out of Order". If any migrations have failed or are still listed as "Pending", then you need to check your "dspace.log" for possible "ERROR" messages. If any errors appeared, you will need to resolve them before continuing.
11. **Deploy Server web application:** The DSpace backend consists of a single "server" webapp (in `[dspace]/webapps/server`). You need to deploy this webapp into your Servlet Container (e.g. Tomcat). Generally, there are two options (or techniques) which you could use...either configure Tomcat to find the DSpace "server" webapp, or copy the "server" webapp into Tomcat's own webapps folder.
- *Technique A.* Tell your Tomcat/Jetty/Resin installation where to find your DSpace web application(s). As an example, in the directory `[tomcat]/conf/Catalina/localhost` you could add files similar to the following (but replace `[dspace]` with your installation location):

DEFINE A CONTEXT PATH FOR DSpace Server webapp: server.xml

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<Context
  docBase="[dspace]/webapps/server"/>
```

The name of the file (not including the suffix ".xml") will be the name of the context, so for example `server.xml` defines the context at `http://host:8080/server` . To define the

²²⁴ <http://Ddb.name>

root context (`http://host:8080/`), name that context's file `ROOT.xml` . Optionally, you can also choose to install the old, deprecated "rest" webapp if you

- *Technique B*. Simple and complete. You copy only (or all) of the DSpace Web application(s) you wish to use from the `[dspace]/webapps` directory to the appropriate directory in your Tomcat/Jetty/Resin installation. For example:

```
cp -R [dspace]/webapps/* [tomcat]/webapps (This will copy all the web applications to Tomcat).
```

```
cp -R [dspace]/webapps/server [tomcat]/webapps (This will copy only the Server web application to Tomcat.)
```

To define the *root context* (`http://host:8080/`), name that context's directory `ROOT` .

12. **Optionally, also install the deprecated DSpace 6.x REST API web application.** If you previously used the DSpace 6.x REST API, for backwards compatibility the old, deprecated "rest" webapp is still available to install (in `[dspace]/webapps/rest`). It is NOT used by the DSpace frontend. So, most users should skip this step.
13. **Copy Solr cores:** DSpace installation creates a set of four empty Solr cores already configured.
 - a. Copy them from `[dspace]/solr` to the place where your Solr instance will discover them. For example:

```
# [solr] is the location where Solr is installed.
# NOTE: On Debian systems the configsets may be under /var/solr/data/
# configsets
cp -R [dspace]/solr/* [solr]/server/solr/configsets

# Make sure everything is owned by the system user who owns Solr
# Usually this is a 'solr' user account
# See https://solr.apache.org/guide/8_1/taking-solr-to-
# production.html#create-the-solr-user
chown -R solr:solr [solr]/server/solr/configsets
```

- b. Start (or re-start) Solr. For example:

```
[solr]/bin/solr restart
```

- c. You can check the status of Solr and your new DSpace cores by using its administrative web interface. Browse to `#{solr.server}` (e.g. `http://localhost:8983/solr/`) to see if Solr is running well, then look at the cores by selecting (on the left) Core Admin or using the Core Selector drop list.
 - i. For example, to test that your "search" core is setup properly, try accessing the URL `#{solr.server}/search/select` . It should run an empty query against the "search" core, returning an empty JSON result. If it returns an error, then that means your "search" core is missing or not installed properly.
14. **Create an Administrator Account:** Create an initial administrator account from the command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace create-administrator
```

15. **Initial Startup!** Now the moment of truth! Start up (or restart) Tomcat/Jetty/Resin.
 - a. *REST API Interface* - (e.g.) <http://dspace.myu.edu:8080/server/>
 - b. *OAI-PMH Interface* - (e.g.) <http://dspace.myu.edu:8080/server/oai/request?verb=Identify>
 - c. For an example of what the default backend looks like, visit the Demo Backend [Edit](#)²²⁵ d: <https://api7.dspace.org/server/>
16. **Setup scheduled tasks for behind-the-scenes processes:** For all features of DSpace to work properly, there are some scheduled tasks you MUST setup to run on a regular basis. Some examples are tasks that help create thumbnails (for images), do full-text indexing (of textual content) and send out subscription emails. See the [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643) for more details.
17. **Production Installation (adding HTTPS support):** *Running the DSpace Backend on HTTP & port 8080 is only usable for local development environments (where you are running the UI and REST API from the same machine, and only accessing them via localhost URLs).* **If you want to run DSpace in Production, you MUST run the backend with HTTPS support** (otherwise logins will not work outside of your local domain).
 - a. For HTTPS support, we recommend installing either [Apache HTTPD](#)²²⁶ or [Nginx](#)²²⁷, configuring SSL at that level, and proxying all requests to your Tomcat installation. Keep in mind, if you want to host both the DSpace Backend and Frontend on the same server, you can use one installation of Apache HTTPD or Nginx to manage HTTPS/SSL and proxy to both.
 - b. These instructions are specific to Apache HTTPD, but a similar setup can be achieved with Nginx
 - i. Install [Apache HTTPD](#)²²⁸, e.g. `sudo apt install apache2`
 - ii. Install the [mod_proxy](#)²²⁹ and [mod_proxy_ajp](#)²³⁰ modules, e.g. `sudo a2enmod proxy;`
`sudo a2enmod proxy_ajp`
 1. Alternatively, you can choose to use [mod_proxy_http](#)²³¹ to create an http proxy. A separate example is commented out below
 - iii. For `mod_proxy_ajp` to communicate with Tomcat, you'll need to enable Tomcat's AJP connector in your Tomcat's `server.xml`:


```
<Connector protocol="AJP/1.3" port="8009" redirectPort="8443"
  URIEncoding="UTF-8" />
```
 - iv. Restart Apache to enable these modules
 - v. Obtain an SSL certificate for HTTPS support. If you don't have one yet, you can use Let's Encrypt (for free) using the "certbot" tool: <https://certbot.eff.org/>
 - vi. Now, setup a new VirtualHost for your site (using HTTPS / port 443) which proxies all requests to Tomcat's AJP connector (running on port 8009)


```
<VirtualHost _default_:443>
  # Add your domain here. We've added "my.dspace.edu" as an
  example
  ServerName my.dspace.edu
  .. setup your host how you want, including log settings...
  .. setup your host how you want, including log settings...
```

²²⁵ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/resumedraft.action?draftId=183076538&draftShareId=cb7659c8-f0ca-4af7-a58a-4c9dcbf6fa9a>

²²⁶ <https://httpd.apache.org/>

²²⁷ <https://www.nginx.com/>

²²⁸ <https://httpd.apache.org/>

²²⁹ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy.html

²³⁰ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy_ajp.html

²³¹ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy_http.html

```

SSLEngine on
SSLCertificateFile [full-path-to-PEM-cert]
SSLCertificateKeyFile [full-path-to-cert-KEY]
# LetsEncrypt certificates (and possibly others) may require a
chain file be specified
# in order for the UI / Node.js to validate the HTTPS
connection.
#SSLCertificateChainFile [full-path-to-chain-file]

# Proxy all HTTPS requests to "/server" from Apache to Tomcat
via AJP connector
ProxyPass /server ajp://localhost:8009/server
ProxyPassReverse /server ajp://localhost:8009/server

# If you would rather use mod_proxy_http as an http proxy to
port 8080
# then use these settings instead
#ProxyPass /server http://localhost:8080/server
#ProxyPassReverse /server http://localhost:8080/server
# When using mod_proxy_http, you need to also ensure the X-
Forwarded-Proto header is sent
# to tell DSpace it is behind HTTPS, otherwise some URLs may
continue to use HTTP
# (requires installing/enabling mod_headers)
#RequestHeader set X-Forwarded-Proto https
</VirtualHost>

```

- c. After switching to HTTPS, make sure to go back and update the URLs (primarily `dspace.server.url`) in your `local.cfg` to match the new URL of your backend (REST API). This will require briefly rebooting Tomcat.

2.3 Installing the Frontend (User Interface)

Below instructions are specific to 7.2 (or later)

The Frontend Instructions below are specific to 7.2 or later. For Frontend Installation instructions for 7.0 or 7.1, see [7.0-7.1 Frontend Installation](#)(see page 109)

2.3.1 Frontend Requirements

- [UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows](#)(see page 94)
- [Node.js \(v14.x or v16.x\)](#)(see page 94)
- [Yarn \(v1.x\)](#)(see page 94)
- [PM2 \(or another Process Manager for Node.js apps\) \(optional, but recommended for Production\)](#)(see page 94)
- [DSpace 7.x Backend](#) (see above)(see page 95)

2.3.1.1 UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows

- UNIX-like operating system (Linux, HP/UX, Mac OSX, etc.) : Many distributions of Linux/Unix come with some of the dependencies below pre-installed or easily installed via updates. You should consult your particular distribution's documentation or local system administrators to determine what is already available.
- Microsoft Windows: While DSpace can be run on Windows servers, most institutions tend to run it on a UNIX-like operating system.

2.3.1.2 Node.js (v14.x or v16.x)

- Node.js can be found at <https://nodejs.org/>. It may be available through your Linux distribution's package manager. We recommend running a [Long Term Support \(LTS\) version](#)²³² (even numbered releases). Non-LTS versions (odd numbered releases) are not recommended.
- Node.js is a Javascript runtime that also provides [npm](#)²³³ (Node Package Manager). It is used to both build and run the frontend.
- *NOTE:* Node v12 also will work. However, that version is now [end-of-life](#)²³⁴. We recommend updating to Node 14 or 16.

2.3.1.3 Yarn (v1.x)

- Yarn v1.x is available at <https://classic.yarnpkg.com/>. It can usually be install via NPM (or through your Linux distribution's package manager). *We do NOT currently support Yarn v2.*

```
# You may need to run this command using "sudo" if you don't have proper
privileges
npm install --global yarn
```

- Yarn is used to build the frontend.

2.3.1.4 PM2 (or another Process Manager for Node.js apps) (*optional, but recommended for Production*)

- In Production scenarios, we *highly recommend* starting/stopping the User Interface using a Node.js process manager. There are several available, but our current favorite is [PM2](#)²³⁵. The rest of this installation guide assumes you are using PM2.
- [PM2](#)²³⁶ is very easily installed via NPM

```
# You may need to run this command using "sudo" if you don't have proper
privileges
npm install --global pm2
```

²³² <https://nodejs.org/en/about/releases/>

²³³ <https://www.npmjs.com/>

²³⁴ <https://nodejs.org/en/about/releases/>

²³⁵ <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/>

²³⁶ <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/>

2.3.1.5 DSpace 7.x Backend (see above)

- The DSpace User Interface (Frontend) cannot function without an installed DSpace Backend. Follow the instructions above.
- The Frontend and Backend *do not need to be installed on the same machine/server*. They may be installed on separate machines as long as the two machines can connect to one another via HTTP or HTTPS.

2.3.2 Frontend Installation

Below instructions are specific to 7.2 (or later)

The Frontend Instructions below are specific to 7.2 or later. For Frontend Installation instructions for 7.0 or 7.1, see [7.0-7.1 Frontend Installation](#) (see page 109)

1. **Download Code (to [dspace-angular]):** Download the [latest dspace-angular release](#)²³⁷ from the DSpace GitHub repository. You can choose to either download the zip or tar.gz file provided by GitHub, or you can use "git" to checkout the appropriate tag (e.g. `dspace-7.2`) or branch.
 - a. NOTE: For the rest of these instructions, we'll refer to the source code location as `[dspace-angular]`.
2. **Install Dependencies:** Install all required local dependencies by running the following from within the unzipped `[dspace-angular]` directory

```
# change directory to our repo
cd [dspace-angular]

# install the local dependencies
yarn install

# NOTE: Some dependencies occasionally get overly strict over exact versions of
Node & Yarn.
# If you are running a supported version of Node & Yarn, but see a message like
# `The engine "node" is incompatible with this module.`, you can disregard it
using this flag:
# yarn install --ignore-engines
```

3. **Build/Compile:** Build the User Interface for Production. This builds source code (under `[dspace-angular]/src/`) to create a compiled version of the User Interface in the `[dspace-angular] / dist` folder. This `/dist` folder is what we will deploy & run to start the UI.

```
yarn build:prod
```

²³⁷ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases>

- a. You only need to rebuild the UI application if you change source code (under `[dspace-angular]/src/`). Simply changing the configurations (e.g. `config.prod.yml`, see below) do not require a rebuild, but only require restarting the UI.
4. **Deployment (to `[dspace-ui-deploy]`):** *(Only recommended for Production setups)* Choose/Create a directory on your server where you wish to run the compiled User Interface. We'll call this `[dspace-ui-deploy]`.

`[dspace-ui-deploy]` vs `[dspace-angular]`

`[dspace-angular]` is the directory where you've downloaded and built the UI source code (per the instructions above). For deployment/running the UI, we recommend creating an entirely separate `[dspace-ui-deploy]` directory. This keeps your running, production User Interface separate from your source code directory and also minimizes downtime when rebuilding your UI. You may even choose to deploy to a `[dspace-ui-deploy]` directory on a different server (and copy the `/dist` directory over via FTP or similar).

If you are installing the UI for the first time, or just want a simple setup, you can choose to have `[dspace-ui-deploy]` and `[dspace-angular]` be the *same directory*. This would mean you don't have to copy your `/dist` folder to another location. However, the downside is that your running site will become unresponsive whenever you do a re-build/re-compile (i.e. rerun "yarn build:prod") as this build process will first delete the `[dspace-angular]/dist` directory before rebuilding it.

- a. Copy the entire `[dspace-angular] /dist/` folder to this location. For example:

```
cp -r [dspace-angular]/dist [dspace-ui-deploy]
```

- b. **WARNING:** At this time, you **MUST** copy the entire "dist" folder and make sure **NOT** to rename it. Therefore, the directory structure should look like this:

Contents of `[dspace-ui-deploy]` folder

```
[dspace-ui-deploy]
  /dist
    /browser (compiled client-side code)
    /server  (compiled server-side code, including "main.js")
  /config   (Optionally created in the "Configuration" step below)
    /config.prod.yml (Optionally created in the "Configuration" step below)
```

- c. **NOTE:** the OS account which runs the UI via Node.js (see below) **MUST** have write privileges to the `[dspace-ui-deploy]` directory (because on startup, the runtime configuration is written to `[dspace-ui-deploy]/dist/browser/assets/config.json`)
5. **Configuration:** You have two options for [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478), Environment Variables or YAML-based configuration (`config.prod.yml`). Choose one!

- a. *YAML configuration:* Create a "config.prod.yml" at `[dspace-ui-deploy]/config/config.prod.yml`. You may wish to use the `[dspace-angular]/config/config.example.yml` as a starting point. This `config.prod.yml` file can be used to override any of the default configurations listed in the `config.example.yml` (in that same directory). *At a minimum* this file MUST include a "rest" section (and may also include a "ui" section), similar to the following (keep in mind, you only need to include settings that you need to modify).

Example config.prod.yml

```
# The "ui" section defines where you want Node.js to run/respond. It often
is a *localhost* (non-public) URL, especially if you are using a Proxy.
# In this example, we are setting up our UI to just use localhost, port
4000.
# This is a common setup for when you want to use Apache or Nginx to
handle HTTPS and proxy requests to Node on port 4000
ui:
  ssl: false
  host: localhost
  port: 4000
  nameSpace: /

# This example is valid if your Backend is publicly available at https://
api.mydspace.edu/server/
# The REST settings MUST correspond to the primary/public URL of the
backend. Usually, this means they must be kept in sync
# with the value of "dspace.server.url" in the backend's local.cfg
rest:
  ssl: true
  host: api.mydspace.edu
  port: 443
  nameSpace: /server
```

- b. *Environment variables:* Every configuration in the UI may be specified via an Environment Variable. See [Configuration Override](#) (see page 481) in the [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478) documentation for more details. For example, the below environment variables provide the same setup as the `config.prod.yml` example above.

Example Environment Variables

```
# All environment variables MUST
# (1) be prefixed with "DSPACE_"
# (2) use underscores as separators (no dots allowed), and
# (3) use all uppercase

# "ui" section
DSPACE_UI_SSL = false
DSPACE_UI_HOST = localhost
```

```

DSPACE_UI_PORT = 4000
DSPACE_UI_NAMESPACE = /

# "rest" section
DSPACE_REST_SSL = true
DSPACE_REST_HOST = api.mydspace.edu
DSPACE_REST_PORT = 443
DSPACE_REST_NAMESPACE = /server

```

- i. NOTE: When using PM2, some may find it easier to use Environment variables, as it allows you to specify DSpace UI configs within your PM2 configuration. See PM2 instructions below.
- c. Configuration Hints:
 - i. See the [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) documentation for a list of all available configurations.
 - ii. In the "ui" section above, you may wish to start with "ssl: false" and "port: 4000" just to be certain that everything else is working properly **before** adding HTTPS support. KEEP IN MIND, we highly recommend always using HTTPS for Production. (See section on HTTPS below)
 - iii. (Optionally) *Test the connection to your REST API from the UI from the command-line*. This is not required, but it can sometimes help you discover immediate configuration issues if the test fails.
 1. If you are using YAML configs, copy your config.prod.yml back into your source code folder at `[dspace-angular]/config/config.prod.yml`
 2. From `[dspace-angular]`, run `yarn test:rest` This script will attempt a basic Node.js connection to the REST API that is configured in your "config.prod.yml" file and validate the response.
 3. A successful connection should return a 200 Response and all JSON validation checks should return "true"
 4. If you receive a connection error or different response code, you MUST fix your REST API before the UI will be able to work. See also the "[Common Installation Issues](#)(see page 103)" below. If you receive an SSL error, see "[Using a Self-Signed SSL Certificate causes the Frontend to not be able to access the Backend](#)(see page 107)"
6. **Start up the User Interface:** The compiled User Interface only requires [Node.js](#)²³⁸ to run. However, most users may want to use [PM2](#)²³⁹ (or a similar Node.js process manager) in Production to provide easier logging and restart tools.
 - a. *Quick Start:* To quickly startup / test the User Interface, you can just use Node.js. This is only recommended for quickly testing the UI is working, as no logs are available.

```

# You MUST start the UI from within the deployment directory
cd [dspace-ui-deploy]

# Run the "server/main.js" file to startup the User Interface
node ./dist/server/main.js

# Stop the UI by killing it via Ctrl+C

```

- b. *Run via PM2:* Using PM2 (or a different Node.js process manager) is highly recommended for Production scenarios. Here's an example of a Production setup of PM2.

²³⁸ <https://nodejs.org/en/>

²³⁹ <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/>

- i. First you need to create a PM2 JSON configuration file which will run the User Interface. This file can be named anything & placed where ever you like, but you may want to save it to your deployment directory (e.g. `[dspace-ui-deploy]/dspace-ui.json`).

dspace-ui.json

```
{
  "apps": [
    {
      "name": "dspace-ui",
      "cwd": "/full/path/to/dspace-ui-deploy",
      "script": "dist/server/main.js",
      "instances": "max",
      "exec_mode": "cluster",
      "env": {
        "NODE_ENV": "production"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

1. NOTE: The "cwd" setting MUST correspond to your `[dspace-ui-deploy]` folder path.
2. NOTE #2: The "exec_mode" and "instances" settings are optional but highly recommended. Setting "exec_mode" to "cluster" enable's PM2's [cluster mode](#)²⁴⁰. This will provide better performance in production as it allows PM2 to scale your site across multiple CPUs. The "instances" setting tells PM2 how many CPUs to scale across ("max" means all CPUs, but you can also specify a number.)
3. NOTE #3: If you wanted to configure your UI using Environment Variables, specify those Environment Variables under the "env" section. For example:

Configuration via Environment Variables

```
"env": {
  "NODE_ENV": "production",
  "DSPACE_REST_SSL": "true",
  "DSPACE_REST_HOST": "api7.dspace.org",
  "DSPACE_REST_PORT": "443",
  "DSPACE_REST_NAMESPACE": "/server"
}
```

4. NOTE #4: If you are using Windows, there are two other rules to keep in mind in this JSON configuration. First, *all paths must include double backslashes* (e.g. "C:\\dspace-ui-deploy"). Second, "cluster" mode is *required*. Here's an example configuration for Windows:

²⁴⁰ <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/docs/usage/cluster-mode/>

dspace-ui.json (for Windows)

```
{
  "apps": [
    {
      "name": "dspace-ui",
      "cwd": "C:\\full\\path\\to\\dspace-ui-deploy",
      "script": "dist\\server\\main.js",
      "instances": "max",
      "exec_mode": "cluster",
      "env": {
        "NODE_ENV": "production"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

- ii. Now, start the application using PM2 using the configuration file you created in the previous step

```
# In this example, we are assuming the config is named "dspace-
ui.json"
pm2 start dspace-ui.json

# To see the logs, you'd run
# pm2 logs

# To stop it, you'd run
# pm2 stop dspace-ui.json

# If you need to change your PM2 configs, delete the old config and
restart
# pm2 delete dspace-ui.json
```

- iii. For more PM2 commands see <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/docs/usage/quick-start/>
- iv. HINT: You may also want to install/configure [pm2-logrotate](#)²⁴¹ to ensure that PM2's log folder doesn't fill up over time.
- v. *Did PM2 not work or throw an immediate error?* It's likely that something in your UI installation or configuration is incorrect. Check the PM2 logs ("pm2 logs") first for errors. If the problem is not obvious, try to see if you can run the UI using the "Quick Start" method (using just Node.js) instead. Once "Quick Start" is working, try PM2 again.

7. **Test it out:** At this point, the User Interface should be available at the URL you configured!
- For an example of what the default frontend looks like, visit the Demo Frontend: <https://demo7.dspace.org/>
 - If the UI fails to start or throws errors, it's likely a configuration issue. See [Commons Installation Issues](#)(see page 103) below for common error messages you may see and how to resolve them.
 - If you have an especially difficult issue to debug, you may wish to *stop* PM2. Instead, try running the UI via the "Quick Start" method (using just Node.js). This command might provide a more specific error message to you, if PM2 is not giving enough information back.

²⁴¹ <https://github.com/keymetrics/pm2-logrotate>

8. Add HTTPS support:

- For HTTPS (port 443) support, you have two options
- a. *(Recommended)* Install either [Apache HTTPD](#)²⁴² or [Nginx](#)²⁴³ to act as a "proxy" for the frontend (and backend). This allows you to manage HTTPS (SSL certificates) in either Apache HTTPD or Nginx, and proxy all requests to the frontend (running on port 4000) and backend (running on port 8080). This is our current recommended approach. These instructions are specific to Apache, but a similar setup can be achieved with Nginx.
 - i. If you already have Apache / Nginx installed for the backend, you can use the same Apache / Nginx. You can also choose to install a separate one (either approach is fine).
 1. Install [Apache HTTPD](#)²⁴⁴, e.g. `sudo apt install apache2`
 2. Install the [mod_proxy](#)²⁴⁵ and [mod_proxy_http](#)²⁴⁶ modules, e.g. `sudo a2enmod proxy; sudo a2enmod proxy_http`
 3. Restart Apache to enable
 4. Obtain an SSL certificate for HTTPS support. If you don't have one yet, you can use Let's Encrypt (for free) using the "certbot" tool: <https://certbot.eff.org/>
 - ii. Now, setup a new [VirtualHost](#)²⁴⁷ for your UI site (preferably using HTTPS / port 443) which proxies all requests to PM2 running on port 4000.

```
<VirtualHost _default_:443>
    # Add your domain here. We've added "my.dspace.edu" as an
    example
    ServerName my.dspace.edu
    .. setup your host how you want, including log settings...

    # These SSL settings are identical to those for the backend
    installation (see above)
    # If you already have the backend running HTTPS, just add the
new Proxy settings below.
    SSLEngine on
    SSLCertificateFile [full-path-to-PEM-cert]
    SSLCertificateKeyFile [full-path-to-cert-KEY]
    # LetsEncrypt certificates (and possibly others) may require a
    chain file be specified
    # in order for the UI / Node.js to validate the HTTPS
    connection.
    #SSLCertificateChainFile [full-path-to-chain-file]

    # These Proxy settings are for the backend. They are described
    in the backend installation (see above)
    # If you already have the backend running HTTPS, just append the
new Proxy settings below.
    # Proxy all HTTPS requests to "/server" from Apache to Tomcat
    via AJP connector
    # (In this example: https://my.dspace.edu/server/ will display
    the REST API)
```

²⁴² <https://httpd.apache.org/>

²⁴³ <https://www.nginx.com/>

²⁴⁴ <https://httpd.apache.org/>

²⁴⁵ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy.html

²⁴⁶ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy_http.html

²⁴⁷ <https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.4/vhosts/name-based.html>

```

ProxyPass /server ajp://localhost:8009/server
ProxyPassReverse /server ajp://localhost:8009/server

# Proxy all HTTPS requests from Apache to PM2 on localhost, port
4000
# NOTE that this proxy URL must match the "ui" settings in your
config.prod.yml
# (In this example: https://my.dspace.edu/ will display the User
Interface)
ProxyPass / http://localhost:4000/
ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:4000/
</VirtualHost>

```

- iii. HINT#1: Because you are using a proxy for HTTPS support, in your [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478), your "ui" settings will still have "ssl: false" and "port: 4000". This is perfectly OK!
 - iv. HINT#2: to force the UI to connect to the backend using HTTPS, you should verify your "rest" settings in your [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478) **match** the "dspace.server.url" in your backend's "local.cfg" and both use the HTTPS URL. So, if your backend (REST API) is proxied to <https://my.dspace.edu/server/>, both those settings should specify that HTTPS URL.
 - v. HINT#3: to force the backend to recognize the HTTPS UI, make sure to update your "dspace.ui.url" in your backend's "local.cfg" is updated to use the new HTTPS UI URL (e.g. <https://my.dspace.edu>).
- b. (Alternatively) You can use the basic HTTPS support built into our UI and Node server. (This may currently be better for non-Production environments as it has not been well tested)
- i. Create a `[dspace-ui-deploy]/config/ssl/` folder and add a `key.pem` and `cert.pem` to that folder (they must have those exact names)
 - ii. In your [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478), go back and update the following:
 1. Set "ui > ssl" to true
 2. Update "ui > port" to be 443
 - a. In order to run Node/PM2 on port 443, you also will likely need to provide node with special permissions, like [in this example](#)²⁴⁸.
 - iii. Restart the UI
 - iv. Keep in mind, while this setup is simple, you may not have the same level of detailed, Production logs as you would with Apache HTTPD or Nginx

2.4 What Next?

After a successful installation, you may want to take a closer look at

- [User Interface Customization](#) (see page 505): Documentation on customizing the User Interface with your own branding / theme(s)
- [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478): Additional configurations available in the User Interface.
- [Submission User Interface](#) (see page 338): Options to configure/customize the default Submission (deposit) process
- [Configurable Workflow](#) (see page 327): Options to configure/customize the default Workflow approval process
- [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#) (see page 643) : Several DSpace features **require** that a command-line script is run regularly via cron.
- [Configuration Reference](#) (see page 724) : Details on the configuration options available to the Backend

²⁴⁸ <https://levelup.gitconnected.com/tws-004-how-to-configure-nodejs-to-use-port-443-86f1ca801c5f>

- [Handle Server installation](#)(see page 613): Optionally, you may wish to enable persistent URLs for your DSpace site using CRNI's Handle.Net Registry
- [Statistics and Metrics](#)(see page 447): Optionally, you may wish to configuration one (or more) Statistics options within DSpace, including [Google Analytics](#)(see page 471) and (internal) [Solr Statistics](#)(see page 447)
- [Multilingual Support](#)(see page 544): Optionally, you may wish to enable multilingual support in your DSpace site.
- [Using DSpace](#)(see page 139) : Various other pages which describe usage and additional configurations related to other DSpace features.
- [System Administration](#)(see page 558): Various other pages which describe additional backend installation options/configurations.

If you've run into installation problems, you may want to...

- Visit the [Troubleshoot an error](#)²⁴⁹ guide for tips on locating the cause of the error
- Review [Commons Installation Issues](#)(see page 103) (see below)
- Ask for [Support](#)²⁵⁰ via one of the support options documented on that page

2.5 Common Installation Issues

2.5.1 Troubleshoot an error or find detailed error messages

See the [Troubleshoot an error](#)²⁵¹ guide, look for the section on "DSpace 7.x". This will provide you hints on locating error messages both in the User Interface (frontend) and in the REST API (backend)

2.5.2 User Interface starts to load but then spins (never fully loads)

Chances are your User Interface (UI) is throwing an error or receiving an unexpected response from the REST API backend. Since the UI is Javascript based, it runs entirely in your browser. That means the error it's hitting is most easily viewed in your browser (and in fact the error may never appear in log files).

See the [Troubleshoot an error](#)²⁵² page, look for the section on "DSpace 7.x". It has a guide for locating UI error messages in your browser's Developer Tools.

2.5.3 "500 Service Unavailable" from the User Interface

This error is saying that the frontend is working, but it is unable to communicate with your backend. It's the same as the "[No _links section found at...](#)" error(see page 0) described in the next section. Please follow the troubleshooting details in that section.

2.5.4 "No _links section found at..." error from User Interface

When starting up the User Interface for the first time, you may see an error that looks similar to this...

²⁴⁹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

²⁵⁰ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Support>

²⁵¹ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

²⁵² <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

```
No _links section found at [rest-api-url]
ERROR Error: undefined doesn't contain the link sites
      at MapSubscriber.project
```

This error means that the UI is unable to contact the REST API listed at `[rest-api-url]` and/or the response from that `[rest-api-url]` is unexpected (as it doesn't contain the "_links" to the endpoints available at that REST API). A valid DSpace `[rest-api-url]` will respond with JSON similar to our demo API at <https://api7.dspace.org/server/api>

First, *test the connection to your REST API from the UI from the command-line.*

1. In DSpace 7.1, this could be tested by running `yarn config:check:rest`. This script will attempt a basic Node.js connection to the REST API that is configured in your "environment.prod.ts" file and validate the response.
2. In DSpace 7.2 (and above), this is instead tested by running `yarn test:rest`. This script will attempt a basic Node.js connection to the REST API that is configured in your "[dspace-angular]/config/config.prod.yml" file and validate the response. (NOTE: you will need to copy your config.prod.yml to [dspace-angular]/config/ for this script to find it!)
3. A successful connection should return a 200 Response and all JSON validation checks should return "true".
4. If you receive a connection error or different response code, you MUST fix your REST API before the UI will be able to work (see additional hints below for likely causes).

Oftentimes, this issue is caused by one of the following scenarios:

- *A possible configuration issue* in the frontend or backend.
 - Check the "rest" section of your `config.*.yml` (or `environment.*.ts` for 7.1 or 7.0) configuration file for the User Interface. That configuration section defines which REST API the UI will attempt to use. If the settings do NOT map to a valid DSpace REST API, then you will see this "No _links section found.." error.
 - Check the "dspace.ui.url" configuration of your backend & verify it corresponds to the public URL of the User Interface (i.e. the exact same URL you use in your browser)
- *A possible SSL certificate issue.* This issue may also appear if the REST API's SSL Certificate is either *untrusted* (by the frontend) or *expired*.
 - If you are using a [Let's Encrypt](#)²⁵³ style certificate, you may need to modify your backend's Apache settings to also provide a Chain File as follows:

```
# For example: /etc/letsencrypt/live/[domain]/cert.pem
SSLCertificateFile [full-path-to-PEM-cert]
# For example: /etc/letsencrypt/live/[domain]/privkey.pem
SSLCertificateKeyFile [full-path-to-cert-KEY]
# For example: /etc/letsencrypt/live/[domain]/chain.pem
SSLCertificateChainFile [full-path-to-chain-file]
```

- Per the [Apache docs](#)²⁵⁴, you can also use the SSLCertificateFile setting to specify intermediate CA certificates along with the main cert.
- For self-signed certs, see also "[Using a Self-Signed SSL Certificate causes the Frontend to not be able to access the Backend](#)(see page 107)" common issue listed below.

²⁵³ <https://letsencrypt.org/>

²⁵⁴ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.4/mod/mod_ssl.html#sslcertificatechainfile

- *Something blocking access to the REST API.* This may be a proxy issue, a firewall issue, or something else generally blocking the port (e.g. port 443 for SSL).
 - Verify that you can access the REST API from the machine where Node.js is running (i.e. your UI is running). For example try a simple "wget" or "curl" to verify the REST API is returning expected JSON similar to our demo API at <https://api7.dspace.org/server/api>

```
# Attempt to access the REST API via HTTPS from command-line on the
machine where Node.js is running.
# If this fails or throws a SSL cert error, you must fix it.
wget https://[rest.host]/server/api
```

- **In most production scenarios, your REST API should be publicly accessible on the web**, unless you are guaranteed that all your DSpace users will access the site behind a VPN or similar. So, this "No_links section found" error may also occur if you are accessing the UI from a client computer/web browser which is *unable to access the REST API*.

If none of the above suggestions helped, you may want to look closer at the request logs in your browser (using browser's Dev Tools) and server-side logs, to be sure that the requests from your UI are going where you expect, and see if they appear also on the backend. Tips for finding these logs can be found in the "DSpace 7.x" section of our [Troubleshoot an error](#)²⁵⁵ guide.

2.5.5 "RangeError: Maximum call stack size exceeded"

When starting up the User Interface for the first time, you may see an error that looks similar to this...

```
ERROR RangeError: Maximum call stack size exceeded
```

This error means that the UI is trying to contact your REST API, but is having issues doing so (possibly because either a proxy or an HTTP → HTTPS redirect is causing issues or a redirect loop).

Double check your " `dspace.server.url` " setting in your `local.cfg` on the backend. Is it the same URL you use in your browser to access the backend? Keep in mind the mode (http vs https), domain, port, and subpath(s) all must match, and it *must not end in a trailing slash*.

Also double check the "rest" section of your `config.*.yml` (or `environment.*.ts` for 7.1 or 7.0) configuration file for the User Interface. Make sure it's also pointing to the exact same URL as that " `dspace.server.url` " setting. Again, check the mode, domain, port and paths all match exactly.

2.5.6 "XMLHttpRequest.. has been blocked by CORS policy" or "CORS error" or "Invalid CORS request"

If you are seeing a CORS error in your browser, this means that you are accessing the REST API via an "untrusted" client application. To fix this error, you must change your REST API / Backend configuration to trust the application.

²⁵⁵ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

- By default, the DSpace REST API / Backend will only trust the application at `dspace.ui.url`. Therefore, you should first verify that your `dspace.ui.url` setting (in your `local.cfg`) exactly matches the *primary URL* of your User Interface (i.e. the URL you see in the browser). This must be an exact match: mode (http vs https), domain, port, and subpath(s) all must match.
- If you need to trust *additional* client applications / URLs, those MUST be added to the `rest.cors.allowed-origins` configuration. See [REST API](#) (see page 666) for details on this configuration.
- Also, check your Tomcat (or servlet container) log files. If Tomcat throws a syntax or other major error, it may return an error response that triggers a CORS error. In this scenario, the CORS error is only a side effect of a larger error.

If you modify either of the above settings, you will need to restart Tomcat for the changes to take effect.

2.5.7 Cannot login from the User Interface with a password that I know is valid

If you cannot login via the user interface with a valid password, you should check to see what underlying error is being returned by the REST API. The easiest way to do this is by using your web browser's Dev Tools as described in our [Troubleshoot an error](#)²⁵⁶ guide (see the "Try this first" section for DSpace 7).

If the password is valid, more than likely you'll see the underlying error is "[403 Forbidden](#)" error with a message that says "[Access is denied. Invalid CSRF Token](#)" (see page 0) (see hints on solving this in the very next section)

2.5.8 "403 Forbidden" error with a message that says "Access is denied. Invalid CSRF Token"

First, double check that you are seeing that exact error message. A `403 Forbidden` error may be thrown in a variety of scenarios. For example, a 403 may be thrown if a page requires a login, if you have entered an invalid username or password, or even sometimes when there is a CORS error (see previous installation issue for how to solve that).

If you are seeing the message "Invalid CSRF Token" message (especially on every login), this is usually the result of a configuration / setup issue.

Here's some things you should double check:

1. If your site had been working, and this error seems random, it is possibly that `DSPACE-XSRF-COOKIE` cookie in your browser just got "out of sync" (this can occur if you are logging into the REST API and UI separately in the same browser).
 - a. Logout and login & try the same action again. If it works this time, then that cookie was just "out of sync". If it fails a second time, then there is a likely configuration issue...see suggestions below.
2. **Make sure your backend is running HTTPS!** This is the most common cause of this error. The only scenario where you can run the backend in HTTP is when both the frontend & backend URLs are "localhost"-based URLs.
 - a. The reason for this HTTPS requirement is that most modern browsers will automatically block cross-domain cookies when using HTTP. Cross-domain cookies are *required* for successful authentication. The only *exception* is when both the frontend and backend are using localhost URLs (as in that scenario the cookies no longer need to be sent cross-domain). A more technical description of this behavior is in the sub-bullets below.

²⁵⁶ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

- i. If the REST API Backend is running HTTP, then it will always send the required `DSPACE-XSRF-COOKIE` cookie with a value of `SameSite=Lax`. This setting means that the cookie will *not* be sent (by your browser) to any other domains. Effectively, this will block all logins from any domain that is not the same as the REST API (as this cookie will not be sent back to the REST API as required for CSRF validation). In other words, running the REST API on HTTP is only possible if the User Interface is running on the exact same domain. For example, running both on 'localhost' with HTTP is a common development setup, and this will work fine.
 - ii. In order to allow for cross-domain logins, you MUST enable HTTPS on the REST API. This will result in the `DSPACE-XSRF-COOKIE` cookie being set to `SameSite=None; Secure`. This setting means the cookie will be sent cross domain, but only for HTTPS requests. It also allows the user interface (or other client applications) to be on any domain, provided that the domain is trusted by CORS (see `rest.cors.allowed-origins` setting in REST API (see page 666))
3. Verify that your User Interface's "rest" section matches the value of `dspace.server.url` configuration on the Backend. This simply ensures your UI is sending requests to the correct REST API. Also pay close attention that both specify HTTPS when necessary (see previous bullet).
 4. Verify that your `dspace.server.url` configuration on the Backend matches the primary URL of the REST API (i.e. the URL you see in the browser). This must be an exact match: mode (http vs https), domain, port, and subpath(s) all must match, and it *must not end in a trailing slash* (e.g. "https://api7.dspace.org/server" is valid, but "https://api7.dspace.org/server/" may cause problems).
 5. Verify that your `dspace.ui.url` configuration on the Backend matches the primary URL of your User Interface (i.e. the URL you see in the browser). This must be an exact match: mode (http vs https), domain, port, and subpath(s) all must match, and it *must not end in a trailing slash* (e.g. "https://demo7.dspace.org" is valid, but "https://demo7.dspace.org/" may cause problems).
 6. Verify that nothing (e.g. a proxy) is blocking Cookies and HTTP Headers from being passed between the UI and REST API. DSpace's CSRF protection relies on the client (User Interface) being able to return both a valid `DSPACE-XSRF-COOKIE` cookie and a matching `X-XSRF-TOKEN` header back to the REST API for validation. See our REST Contract for more details <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/csrf-tokens.md>
 7. If you are running a custom application, or accessing the REST API from the command-line (or other third party tool like [Postman](https://www.postman.com/)²⁵⁷), you MUST ensure you are sending the CSRF token on every modifying request. See our REST Contract for more details <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/csrf-tokens.md>

For additional information on how DSpace's CSRF Protection works, see our REST Contract at <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/csrf-tokens.md>

2.5.9 Using a Self-Signed SSL Certificate causes the Frontend to not be able to access the Backend

If you setup the backend to use HTTPS with a self-signed SSL certificate, then Node.js (which the frontend runs on) may not "trust" that certificate by default. This will result in the Frontend not being able to make requests to the Backend.

One possible workaround (untested as of yet) is to try setting the `NODE_EXTRA_CA_CERTS` environment variable²⁵⁸ (which tells Node.js to trust additional CA certificates).

²⁵⁷ <https://www.postman.com/>

²⁵⁸ https://nodejs.org/api/cli.html#cli_node_extra_ca_certs_file

Another option is to avoid using a self-signed SSL certificate. Instead, create a real, issued SSL certificate using something like [Let's Encrypt](https://letsencrypt.org/)²⁵⁹ (or similar free services)

2.5.10 My REST API is running under HTTPS, but some of its "link" URLs are switching to HTTP?

This scenario may occur when you are running the REST API behind an HTTP proxy (e.g. Apache HTTPD's `mod_proxy_http`, Nginx's `proxy_pass` or any other proxy that is forwarding from HTTPS to HTTP).

The fix is to ensure the DSpace REST API is sent the `X-Forwarded-Proto` header (by your proxying service), telling it that the forwarded protocol is HTTPS

```
X-Forwarded-Proto: https
```

In general, when running behind a proxy, the DSpace REST API depends on accurate X-Forwarded-* headers to be sent by that proxy.

2.5.11 Solr responds with "Expected mime type application/octet-stream but got text/html" (404 Not Found)

This error occurs when Solr is either not initialized properly, or your DSpace backend is unable to find/communicate with Solr. Here's a few things you should double check:

1. Verify that Solr is running and/or check for errors in its logs. Try to restart it (usually via a command like `[solr]/bin/solr restart`), and verify it's accessible via `wget` or a web browser (usually at a URL like `http://localhost:8983/solr`)
2. Verify that your `solr.server` setting (in `local.cfg`) is correct for your Solr installation. This should correspond to the main URL of your Solr site (usually something like `http://localhost:8983/solr`). If you use `wget` or a browser from the machine running your DSpace backend, you should get a response from that URL (it should return the Solr Admin UI).
3. Verify that the required DSpace Solr cores have been properly installed/configured (per installation instructions above). When properly installed, you should be able to get a response from them. For example, the URL `${solr.server}/search/select` should run an empty query against the "search" core, returning an empty JSON result.
4. If Solr is running & you are sure `solr.server` is set properly, double check that nothing else could be blocking the DSpace backend from accessing Solr. For instance, if Solr is on a separate machine, verify that there is no firewall or proxy that could be blocking access between the DSpace backend machine and the Solr machine.

2.5.12 Database errors occur when you run `ant fresh_install`

There are two common errors that occur.

- If your error looks like this:

²⁵⁹ <https://letsencrypt.org/>

```
[java] 2004-03-25 15:17:07,730 INFO
        org.dspace.storage.rdbms.InitializeDatabase @ Initializing Database
[java] 2004-03-25 15:17:08,816 FATAL
        org.dspace.storage.rdbms.InitializeDatabase @ Caught exception:
[java] org.postgresql.util.PSQLException: Connection refused. Check
        that the hostname and port are correct and that the postmaster is
        accepting TCP/IP connections.
[java]     at
        org.postgresql.jdbc1.AbstractJdbc1Connection.openConnection(AbstractJd
bc1Connection.java:204)
[java]     at org.postgresql.Driver.connect(Driver.java:139)
```

it usually means you haven't yet added the relevant configuration parameter to your PostgreSQL configuration (see above), or perhaps you haven't restarted PostgreSQL after making the change. Also, make sure that the *db.username* and *db.password* properties are correctly set in *[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg*. An easy way to check that your DB is working OK over TCP/IP is to try this on the command line:

```
psql -U dspace -W -h localhost
```

Enter the *dspace* database password, and you should be dropped into the psql tool with a *dspace=>* prompt.

- Another common error looks like this:

```
[java] 2004-03-25 16:37:16,757 INFO
        org.dspace.storage.rdbms.InitializeDatabase @ Initializing Database
[java] 2004-03-25 16:37:17,139 WARN
        org.dspace.storage.rdbms.DatabaseManager @ Exception initializing DB
        pool
[java] java.lang.ClassNotFoundException: org.postgresql.Driver
[java]     at java.net.URLClassLoader$1.run(URLClassLoader.java:198)
[java]     at java.security.AccessController.doPrivileged(Native
        Method)
[java]     at
        java.net.URLClassLoader.findClass(URLClassLoader.java:186)
```

This means that the PostgreSQL JDBC driver is not present in *[dspace]/lib*. See above.

2.6 7.0-7.1 Frontend Installation

Frontend (UI) Installation Guide for 7.0 or 7.1 ONLY

In DSpace 7.0 and 7.1, the Frontend installation required configuring your UI before you could build the UI. This required a slightly different installation process, and this installation process required a full rebuild whenever configurations changed. The configuration file and several scripts also had different names. This page provides a guide for those who are still on 7.0 or 7.1.

This guide will not work for 7.2!

If you are running DSpace 7.2 (and later), you MUST instead following the new Frontend Installation process documented at [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 95). The new Frontend Installation instructions are easier and also allow you to rebuild/redeploy with minimal downtime.

- [7.0/7.1 Frontend Requirements](#)(see page 110)
- [7.0/7.1 Frontend Installation](#)(see page 111)

2.6.1 7.0/7.1 Frontend Requirements

- [UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows](#)(see page 110)
- [Node.js \(v12.x or v14.x\)](#)(see page 110)
- [Yarn \(v1.x\)](#)(see page 110)
- [PM2 \(or another Process Manager for Node.js apps\) \(optional, but recommended for Production\)](#)(see page 111)
- [DSpace 7.x Backend \(see above\)](#)(see page 111)

2.6.1.1 UNIX-like OS or Microsoft Windows

- UNIX-like operating system (Linux, HP/UX, Mac OSX, etc.) : Many distributions of Linux/Unix come with some of the dependencies below pre-installed or easily installed via updates. You should consult your particular distribution's documentation or local system administrators to determine what is already available.
- Microsoft Windows: While DSpace can be run on Windows servers, most institutions tend to run it on a UNIX-like operating system.

2.6.1.2 Node.js (v12.x or v14.x)

- Node.js can be found at <https://nodejs.org/>. It may be available through your Linux distribution's package manager. We recommend running a [Long Term Support \(LTS\) version](#)²⁶⁰ (even numbered releases). Non-LTS versions (odd numbered releases) are not recommended.
- Node.js is a Javascript runtime that also provides [npm](#)²⁶¹ (Node Package Manager). It is used to both build and run the frontend.

2.6.1.3 Yarn (v1.x)

- Yarn v1.x is available at <https://classic.yarnpkg.com/>. It can usually be install via NPM (or through your Linux distribution's package manager). *We do NOT currently support Yarn v2.*

```
# You may need to run this command using "sudo" if you don't have proper
privileges
npm install --global yarn
```

- Yarn is used to build/install the frontend.

²⁶⁰ <https://nodejs.org/en/about/releases/>

²⁶¹ <https://www.npmjs.com/>

2.6.1.4 PM2 (or another Process Manager for Node.js apps) (*optional, but recommended for Production*)

- In Production scenarios, we *highly recommend* starting/stopping the User Interface using a Node.js process manager. There are several available, but our current favorite is [PM2](#)²⁶². The rest of this installation guide assumes you are using PM2.
- [PM2](#)²⁶³ is very easily installed via NPM

```
# You may need to run this command using "sudo" if you don't have proper
privileges
npm install --global pm2
```

2.6.1.5 DSpace 7.x Backend (see above)

- The DSpace User Interface (Frontend) cannot function without an installed DSpace Backend. Follow the instructions above.
- The Frontend and Backend *do not need to be installed on the same machine/server*. They may be installed on separate machines as long as the two machines can connect to one another via HTTP or HTTPS.

2.6.2 7.0/7.1 Frontend Installation

1. First, install all the [Frontend Requirements](#)(see page 110) above & verify the backend/REST API is publicly accessible.
2. Download the [latest dspace-angular release](#)²⁶⁴ from the DSpace GitHub repository. You can choose to either download the zip or tar.gz file provided by GitHub, or you can use "git" to checkout the appropriate tag (e.g. `dspace-7.0` or `dspace-7.1`) or branch.
3. Install all necessary local dependencies by running the following from within the unzipped "dspace-angular" directory

```
# change directory to our repo
cd dspace-angular

# install the local dependencies
yarn install
```

4. Create a Production Configuration file at `[dspace-angular]/src/environments/environment.prod.ts`. You may wish to use the `environment.common.ts` as a starting point. This `environment.prod.ts` file can be used to override any of the default configurations listed in the `environment.common.ts` (in that same directory). *At a minimum* this file MUST include a "rest" section (and may also include a "ui" section), similar to the following (keep in mind, you only need to include settings that you need to modify).

²⁶² <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/>

²⁶³ <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/>

²⁶⁴ <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases>

Syntax for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.prod.ts)

```

export const environment = {
  // The "ui" section defines where you want Node.js to run/respond. It often
  // is a *localhost* (non-public) URL, especially if you are using a Proxy.
  // In this example, we are setting up our UI to just use localhost, port
  // 4000.
  // This is a common setup for when you want to use Apache or Nginx to handle
  // HTTPS and proxy requests to Node on port 4000
  ui: {
    ssl: false,
    host: 'localhost',
    port: 4000,
    // NOTE: Space is capitalized because 'namespace' is a reserved string in
    // TypeScript
    namespace: '/'
  },
  // This example is valid if your Backend is publicly available at https://
  // api.mydspace.edu/server/
  // The REST settings MUST correspond to the primary URL of the backend.
  // Usually, this means they must be kept in sync
  // with the value of "dspace.server.url" in the backend's local.cfg
  rest: {
    ssl: true,
    host: 'api.mydspace.edu',
    port: 443,
    // NOTE: Space is capitalized because 'namespace' is a reserved string in
    // TypeScript
    namespace: '/server'
  }
};

```

- a. (Optionally) *Test the connection to your REST API from the UI from the command-line.* This is not required, but it can sometimes help you discover immediate configuration issues if the test fails.
 - i. In DSpace 7.1, this could be tested by running `yarn config:check:rest`. This script will attempt a basic Node.js connection to the REST API that is configured in your "environment.prod.ts" file and validate the response.
 - ii. A successful connection should return a 200 Response and all JSON validation checks should return "true"
 - iii. If you receive a connection error or different response code, you MUST fix your REST API before the UI will be able to work. See also the [Commons Installation Issues](#)(see page 103). If you receive an SSL error, see "[Using a Self-Signed SSL Certificate causes the Frontend to not be able to access the Backend](#)(see page 107)"
- b. **HINT #1:** In the "ui" section above, you may wish to start with "ssl: false" and "port: 4000" just to be certain that everything else is working properly. With those settings, you can quickly test your UI by running `yarn start` and trying to access it via `http://[mydspace.edu265]:4000/` from your web browser. **KEEP IN MIND**, we highly recommend always using HTTPS for Production.

²⁶⁵ <http://mydspace.edu>

- c. HINT #2: If Node throws an error saying "listen EADDRNOTAVAIL: address not available", try setting the "host" to "0.0.0.0" or "localhost". Usually that error is a sign that the "host" is not recognized.
 - d. If there are other settings you know you need to modify in the sample `environment.common.ts` configuration file you can also copy them into this same file.
5. Build the User Interface for Production. This uses your `environment.common.ts` and the source code to create a compiled version of the UI in the `[dspace-angular]/dist` folder

```
yarn run build:prod
```

- a. In 7.1 or 7.0: anytime you change/update your `environment.prod.ts`, then you will need to *rebuild* the UI application (i.e. rerun this "yarn run build:prod" command).
6. Assuming you are using [PM2](#)²⁶⁶, create a JSON configuration file describing how to run our UI application. This need NOT be in the same directory as the dspace-angular codebase itself (in fact you may want to put the parent directory or another location). Keep in mind the "cwd" setting (on line 5) must be the full path to your `[dspace-angular]` folder.

dspace-angular.json

```
{
  "apps": [
    {
      "name": "dspace-angular",
      "cwd": "/home/dspace/dspace-angular",
      "script": "yarn",
      "args": "run serve:ssr",
      "interpreter": "none"
    }
  ]
}
```

- a. *Not using PM2?* That's OK. The key command that your process manager should run is `yarn run serve:ssr`. This is the command that starts the app (after it was built using `yarn run build:prod`)
- b. *Using Windows?* This "dspace-angular.json" file needs to have a slightly different structure on Windows. First, *all paths must include double backslashes* (e.g. `C:\\dspace-angular`). Second, "cluster" mode is required. Finally, because of a [known issue in PM2](#)²⁶⁷, you must point the "script" at the "npm/node_modules/yarn/bin/yarn.js" file directly. So, here's how this configuration looks on Windows platforms:

dspace-angular.json (For Windows only)

```
{
```

²⁶⁶ <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/>

²⁶⁷ <https://github.com/Unitech/pm2/issues/2037>

```

    "apps": [
      {
        "name": "dspace-angular",
        "cwd": "C:\\path\\to\\dspace-angular",
        "script": "C:\\path\\to\\npm\\node_modules\\yarn\\bin\\yarn.js",
        "args": "run serve:ssr",
        "interpreter": "none",
        "exec_mode": "cluster"
      }
    ]
  }

```

7. Now, start the application using PM2 using the configuration file you created in the previous step

```

# In this example, we are assuming the config is named "dspace-angular.json"
pm2 start dspace-angular.json

# To see the logs, you'd run
# pm2 logs

# To stop it, you'd run
# pm2 stop dspace-angular.json

```

- a. For more PM2 commands see <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/docs/usage/quick-start/>
 - b. HINT: You may also want to install/configure [pm2-logrotate](#)²⁶⁸ to ensure that PM2's log folder doesn't fill up over time.
 - c. *Did PM2 not work or throw an immediate error?* It's likely that something in your UI installation or configuration is incorrect. Check the PM2 logs ("pm2 logs") first for errors. If the problem is not obvious, try to see if you can run the UI using "yarn start" (this builds & starts the app in one step). Once you successfully get the UI running via "yarn start", you should be able to go back to using PM2 successfully.
8. At this point, the User Interface should be available at the URL you configured in your `environment.prod.ts`
- a. For an example of what the default frontend looks like, visit the Demo Frontend: <https://demo7.dspace.org/>
 - b. If the UI fails to start or throws errors, it's likely a configuration issue. See [Commons Installation Issues](#)(see page 103) for common error messages you may see and how to resolve them.
 - c. If you have an especially difficult issue to debug, you may wish to *stop* PM2. Instead, try running the UI via `yarn start` (which is a simple build & deploy process for the UI). This command might provide a more specific error message to you, if PM2 is not giving enough information back.
9. For HTTPS (port 443) support, you have two options
- a. (Recommended) You can install either [Apache HTTPD](#)²⁶⁹ or [Nginx](#)²⁷⁰, configuring SSL at that level, and proxy requests to PM2 (on port 4000). This is our current recommended approach. Plus, as a bonus, if you want to host the UI and Backend on the same server, you can use just one Apache HTTPD (or Nginx) to proxy to both. These instructions are specific to Apache.
 - i. Install [Apache HTTPD](#)²⁷¹, e.g. `sudo apt install apache2`

²⁶⁸ <https://github.com/keymetrics/pm2-logrotate>

²⁶⁹ <https://httpd.apache.org/>

²⁷⁰ <https://www.nginx.com/>

²⁷¹ <https://httpd.apache.org/>

- ii. Install the `mod_proxy`²⁷² and `mod_proxy_http`²⁷³ modules, e.g. `sudo a2enmod proxy; sudo a2enmod proxy_http`
- iii. Restart Apache to enable
- iv. Now, setup a new VirtualHost for your site (preferably using HTTPS / port 443) which proxies all requests to PM2 running on port 4000.

```
<VirtualHost _default_:443>
  .. setup your host how you want, including log settings...

  SSLEngine on
  SSLCertificateFile [full-path-to-PEM-cert]
  SSLCertificateKeyFile [full-path-to-cert-KEY]

  # Proxy all HTTPS requests from Apache to PM2 on port 4000
  # NOTE that this proxy URL must match the "ui" settings in your
  config.prod.yml
  ProxyPass / http://localhost:4000/
  ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:4000/
</VirtualHost>
```

- b. (Alternatively) You can use the basic HTTPS support built into `dspace-angular` node server. (This may currently be better for non-Production environments as it has not been well tested)
 - i. Create a `[dspace-angular]/config/ssl/` folder and add a `key.pem` and `cert.pem` to that folder (they must have those exact names)
 - ii. Enable "ui.ssl" (set to true)
 - iii. Update your "ui.port" to be 443
 1. In order to run Node/PM2 on port 443, you also will likely need to provide node with special permissions, like [in this example](#)²⁷⁴.
 - iv. Rebuild and then restart the app in PM2
 - v. Keep in mind, while this setup is simple, you may not have the same level of detailed, Production logs as you would with Apache HTTPD or Nginx
10. Additional UI configurations are described in [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478). A guide to customizing the look and feel or branding via a Theme is also available in [User Interface Customization](#)(see page 505)

²⁷² https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy.html

²⁷³ https://httpd.apache.org/docs/current/mod/mod_proxy_http.html

²⁷⁴ <https://levelup.gitconnected.com/tws-004-how-to-configure-nodejs-to-use-port-443-86f1ca801c5f>

3 Upgrading DSpace

These instructions are valid for any of the following upgrade paths:

- *Upgrading ANY prior version (1.x.x, 3.x, 4.x, 5.x, 6.x or 7.x) of DSpace to DSpace 7.x (latest version)*

For more information about new features or major changes in previous releases of DSpace, please refer to following:

- [Releases](#)²⁷⁵ - Provides links to release notes for all prior releases of DSpace
- [Version History](#)(see page 870) - Provides detailed listing of all changes in all prior releases of DSpace

Upgrading database structure/data is now automated!

The underlying DSpace database structure changes and data migrations are now AUTOMATED (using [FlywayDB](#)²⁷⁶). This means that you no longer need to manually run SQL scripts. Instead, the first time you run DSpace, it will auto-update your database structure (as needed) and migrate all your data to be compatible with the installed version of DSpace. This allows you to concentrate your upgrade efforts on customizing your site without having to worry about migrating your data!

For example, if you were running DSpace 1.4, and you wish to upgrade to DSpace 5, you can follow the simplified instructions below. As soon as you point your DSpace 5 installation against the older DSpace 1.4-compatible database, your database tables (and data) will automatically be migrated to be compatible with DSpace 5.

See below for a specific note on troubleshooting "ignored" migrations (a rare circumstance, but known to happen if you upgrade from DSpace 5 to a later version of DSpace).

Please refrain from customizing the DSpace database tables. It will complicate your next upgrade!

With the addition of our automated database upgrades, *we highly recommend AGAINST customizing the DSpace database tables/structure or backporting any features that change the DSpace tables/structure.*

Doing so will often cause the automated database upgrade process to fail (and therefore will complicate your next upgrade).

If you must add features requiring new database tables/structure, we recommend creating new tables (instead of modifying existing ones), as that is usually much less disruptive to our automated database upgrade.

Test Your Upgrade Process

In order to minimize downtime, it is always recommended to first perform a DSpace upgrade using a Development or Test server. You should note any problems you may have encountered (and also how to resolve them) before attempting to upgrade your Production server. It also gives you a chance to "practice" at the upgrade. Practice makes perfect, and minimizes problems and downtime. Additionally, if you are using a version control system, such as git, to manage your locally developed features or modifications, then you can do all of your upgrades in your local version control system on your Development server and commit the changes. That way your Production server can just checkout your well tested and upgraded code.

²⁷⁵ <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Releases>

²⁷⁶ <https://flywaydb.org/>

In the notes below `[dspace]` refers to the install directory for your existing DSpace installation, and `[dspace-source]` to the source directory for DSpace. Whenever you see these path references, be sure to replace them with the actual path names on your local system.

- [Release Notes / Significant Changes](#)(see page 117)
- [Upgrading the Backend \(Server API\)](#)(see page 119)
 - [Backup your DSpace Backend](#)(see page 119)
 - [Update Backend Prerequisite Software](#)(see page 120)
 - [Upgrading the Backend Steps](#)(see page 120)
- [Upgrading the Frontend \(User Interface\)](#)(see page 130)
- [Troubleshooting Upgrade Issues](#)(see page 133)
 - [See all "Common Installation Issues"](#)(see page 133)
 - [Database migrate errors: "Migration V5.7_2017.04.11__DS-3563_Index_metadatavalue_resource_type_id_column.sql failed" or "Migration V5.7_2017.05.05__DS-3431.sql failed"](#)(see page 133)
 - [Database migrate errors because of custom database tables/columns](#)(see page 134)
 - [Running "Ignored" Flyway Migrations](#)(see page 134)
 - [Manually updating the Metadata Registries](#)(see page 134)

3.1 Release Notes / Significant Changes

DSpace 7.5 added some new features and many improvements and bug fixes. See the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) for all the details. These major features are most likely to impact your upgrade:

- [Subscribe to email updates](#)(see page 185) **from a Community or Collection** - This REQUIRES enabling a new "subscription-send" [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643).
- **New "dspace database skip" command** - Useful tool for some sites upgrading from 6.x or below *if* they encounter this [common migration error](#)(see page 0)
- **User interface now provides page caching for better performance** - Sites which have encountered slower UI performance may wish to use the new settings in [Cache Settings - Server Side Rendering\(SSR\)](#)(see page 486)
- **User interface now requires Node.js 16 or 18.** While it may work for other versions, it's best to no longer use Node.js 14, as it goes EOL in April 2023

DSpace 7.4 added some new features and many improvements and bug fixes. See the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) for all the details. These major features are most likely to impact your upgrade:

- **Recent Submissions are now listed on the homepage.** (See "recentSubmissions" options(see page 496))
- **Thumbnails are now displayed** in all search/browse screens. (See "showThumbnails" option(see page 494))

DSpace 7.3 added many new features and improvements. See the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) for all the details. These major features are most likely to impact your upgrade:

- **Oracle Database support has been deprecated.** It will be removed in mid-2023 (likely in the 7.6 release, which is tentative for June 2023). All sites should plan to migrate to PostgreSQL. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8214>
- **ORCID Authentication and synchronization to a DSpace Researcher Profile** now exists (requires first enabling [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198)). See [ORCID Integration](#)(see page 426) and [Researcher Profiles](#)(see page 443)
- **Admin "Health" menu provides basic control panel functionality** (based on 6.x Control Panel). When logged in as an Administrator, select "Health" from the side menu. You'll see a "Status" tab which provides

useful information about the status of the DSpace backend, and an "Info" tab which provides an overview of backend configurations and Java information.

- **Media Filter updates to use Apache Tika.** There is now a single "Text Extractor" media filter which you should use (see updated settings in `dspace.cfg` and [Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content](#)(see page 617) for more details).

DSpace 7.2 made some major changes to the User Interface build process, including a new configuration file format. See the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) for all the details. These major features are most likely to impact your upgrade:

- **New Configuration for User Interface to support Runtime Configuration:** *In the User Interface, the "environment.*.ts" configuration files have been replaced with a new "config.*.yml" file.* A migration script is provided which can migrate your UI configurations from the old format to the new one. More information on that migration is available in the [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 479) documentation.
- **Submission Process now supports Item Embargoes / access restrictions.** It is disabled by default, but can be easily enabled by uncommenting (or adding) the "itemAccessConditions" step in your `item-submission.xml` on the backend. See [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) and [Embargo](#)(see page 172) for more details.
- **Feedback Form** now exists. It is enabled by default in the UI's footer as long as you set a "feedback.recipient" in your `local.cfg` on the backend.
- **OpenID Connect (OIDC) Authentication Plugin** now exists. See the [Authentication Plugins](#)(see page 139) page for how to enable it.
- **Improved support for custom "Browse By" configurations.** If you had previously configured custom "Browse by" types in your UI configuration file, those settings can be removed. The "Browse by" types are now read dynamically from the REST API based on configured indexes. See [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 494) for more details.

DSpace 7.1 primarily added new features and bug fixes on top of 7.0. See the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) for all the details. A few key changes to be aware of:

- **New Collection "Entity Type" Configuration:** If you were using [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) in 7.0, the Entity Type to Collection "mapping" has been moved to the Collection's "Edit Metadata" screen as a new "Entity Type" dropdown. This formalizes the recommended mapping between a Collection and an Entity Type (so we highly recommend each Entity Type be stored in its own Collection). See the "Configure Collections for each Entity type" section of the [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) documentation for more details.

DSpace 7.0 features some significant changes which you may wish to be aware of before beginning your upgrade:

- **XMLUI and JSPUI are no longer supported or distributed with DSpace.** All users should install and utilize the new Angular User Interface. See the "Installing the Frontend (User Interface)" instructions in [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78)
- **The old REST API ("rest" webapp from DSpace v4.x-6.x) is deprecated and will be removed in v8.x.** The new [REST API](#)(see page 666) (provided in the "server" webapp) replaces all functionality available in the older REST API. If you have tools that rely on the old REST API, you can still (optionally) build & deploy it alongside the "server" webapp via the "-PdSPACE-REST" Maven flag. See [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#)(see page 669)
- **Solr must be installed separately** due to changes in the packaging of recent Solr releases. The indexes have been reconfigured and must be rebuilt. See below.
- **GeoIP location database must be installed separately** due to changes in Maxmind's terms and conditions. MaxMind has changed the [terms and procedure](#)²⁷⁷ for obtaining and using its GeoLite2 location database. Consequently, DSpace no longer automatically downloads the database during installation or update, and the DSpace-specific database update tool has been removed. If you wish to (continue to) record client location data in [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447), you will need to make new arrangements. See below.

²⁷⁷ <https://blog.maxmind.com/2019/12/18/significant-changes-to-accessing-and-using-geolite2-databases/>

- **The Submission Form configuration has changed.** The "item-submission.xml" file has changed its structure, and the "input-forms.xml" has been replaced by a "submission-forms.xml". See [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338)
- **The traditional, 3-step Workflow system has been removed in favor of the Configurable Workflow System**(see page 327). For most users, you should see no effect or difference. The default setup for this Configurable Workflow System is identical to the traditional, 3-step workflow ("Approve/Reject", "Approve/Reject/Edit Metadata", "Edit Metadata")
- **The old BTE import framework in favor of Live Import Framework**(see page 358) (features of BTE have been ported to Live Import)
- **ElasticSearch Usage Statistics have been removed.** Please use [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) or [DSpace Google Analytics Statistics](#)(see page 471).
- **Configuration**(see page 724) **has been upgraded to Apache Commons Configuration version 2.** For most users, you should see no effect or difference. *No DSpace configuration files were modified during this upgrade and no configurations or settings were renamed or changed.* However, if you locally modified or customized the `[dspace]/config/config-definition.xml` (DSpace's Apache Commons Configuration settings), you will need to ensure those modifications are compatible with Apache Commons Configuration version 2. See the Apache Commons Configuration's [configuration definition file reference](#)²⁷⁸ for more details.
- **Handle server has been updated to v9.3.** Most users will see no effect or difference, however a minor change to the Handle Server configuration is necessary, see below.
- **Many backend prerequisites have been upgraded to avoid "end of life" versions.** Therefore, pay very close attention to the required prerequisites listed below.
- **A large number of old/obsolete configurations were removed.** "7.0 Configurations Removed" section in the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28).

3.2 Upgrading the Backend (Server API)

3.2.1 Backup your DSpace Backend

Before you start your upgrade, it is strongly recommended that you create a backup of your DSpace content. Backups are easy to recover from; a botched install/upgrade is very difficult if not impossible to recover from. The DSpace specific things to backup are: configs, source code modifications, database, and assetstore. On your server that runs DSpace, you might additionally consider checking on your cron/scheduled tasks, servlet container, and database.

Make a complete backup of your system, including:

- Database: Make a snapshot/dump of the database. For the PostgreSQL database use Postgres' `pg_dump`²⁷⁹ command. For example:

```
pg_dump -U [database-user] -f [backup-file-location] [database-name]
```

- Assetstore: Backup the directory (`[dspace]/assetstore` by default, and any other assetstores configured in `[dspace]/config/spring/api/bitstore.xml`)
- Configuration: Backup the entire directory content of `[dspace]/config`.

²⁷⁸ https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration_definition_file_reference

²⁷⁹ <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.4/static/app-pgdump.html>

- Customizations: If you have custom code, such as themes, modifications, or custom scripts, you will want to back them up to a safe location.
- Statistics data: what to back up depends on what you were using before: the options are the default [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447), or the legacy statistics. Legacy stats utilizes the `dspace.log` files, while SOLR Statistics stores data in `[dspace]/solr/statistics`. A simple copy of the logs or the Solr core directory tree should give you a point of recovery, should something go wrong in the update process. We can't stress this enough: your users depend on these statistics more than you realize. You need a backup.
- Authority data: stored in `[dspace]/solr/authority`. As with the statistics data, making a copy of the directory tree should enable recovery from errors.

3.2.2 Update Backend Prerequisite Software

DSpace 7.x requires the following versions of prerequisite software:

- **Updated:** Java 11 (Oracle or OpenJDK)
- **Updated:** Apache Maven 3.3.x or above
- **Updated:** Apache Ant 1.10.x or above
- Database
 - **Updated:** PostgreSQL 11.x, 12.x or 13.x (with pgcrypto installed), OR
 - **Deprecated:** Oracle 10g or above (Oracle support is deprecated, see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8214>)
- **Updated:** Tomcat 9.x
- **New:** Solr 8.x. See [Installing new Solr cores when upgrading from DSpace 6.x or below](#)(see page 127).
- **New:** (optional) IP to City Database for location-based Statistics (either [MaxMind's GeoLite City Database](#)²⁸⁰ or [DB-IP's City Lite Database](#)²⁸¹). See [Set up IP to City Database](#)(see page 128).

Refer to the [Backend Requirements section of "Installing DSpace"](#) (see page 79) for more details around configuring and installing these prerequisites.

3.2.3 Upgrading the Backend Steps

Migration guide also available

If during the upgrade you are migrating your DSpace backend to a new server/machine, see [Migrating DSpace to a new server](#)(see page 135) guide for hints/tips.

1. **Download** the [latest DSpace release](#)²⁸² from the DSpace GitHub Repository. You can choose to either download the zip or tar.gz file provided by GitHub, or you can use "git" to checkout the appropriate tag (e.g. `dspace-7.2`) or branch.
 - a. Unpack it using "unzip" or "gunzip". If you have an older version of DSpace installed on this same server, you may wish to unpack it to a different location than that release. This will ensure no files are accidentally overwritten during the unpacking process, and allow you to compare configs side by side.
 - b. For ease of reference, we will refer to the location of this unzipped version of the DSpace release as `[dspace-source]` in the remainder of these instructions.
2. **If upgrading from 6.x or below, a few extra steps are required before you install DSpace 7.x.** *If you are upgrading from a previous version of 7.x, skip this and move along.*

²⁸⁰ <https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoip2/geolite2/>

²⁸¹ <https://db-ip.com/db/download/ip-to-city-lite>

²⁸² <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/releases>

- a. **Ensure that your database is compatible:** Starting with DSpace 6.x, there are new database requirements for DSpace (refer to the [Backend Requirements section of "Installing DSpace"](#) (see page 79) for full details).

i. *PostgreSQL databases:* PostgreSQL 9.4 or above is required and the "pgcrypto" extension must be installed.

1. Notes on installing pgcrypto

a. On most Linux operating systems (Ubuntu, Debian, RedHat), this extension is provided in the "postgresql-contrib" package in your package manager. So, ensure you've installed "postgresql-contrib".

b. On Windows, this extension should be provided automatically by the installer (check your "[PostgreSQL]/share/extension" folder for files starting with "pgcrypto")

2. Enabling pgcrypto on your DSpace database. (Additional options/notes in the [Installation Documentation](#)(see page 78))

```
# Login to your "dspace" database as a superuser
psql --username=postgres dspace
# Enable the pgcrypto extension on this database
CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto;
```

ii. *Oracle databases:* Oracle support has been deprecated in DSpace. It will no longer be supported as of June/July 2023. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8214> for more details.

- b. **From your old version of DSpace, dump your authority and statistics Solr cores.** (Only necessary if you want to keep both your authority records and/or [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447))

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace solr-export-statistics -i authority
[dspace]/bin/dspace solr-export-statistics -i statistics
```

The dumps will be written to the directory `[dspace]/solr-export`. *This may take a long time and require quite a lot of storage.* In particular, the statistics core is likely to be huge, perhaps double the size of the content of `solr/statistics/data`. You should ensure that you have sufficient free storage.

This is not the same as the disaster-recovery backup that was done above. These dumps will be reloaded into new, reconfigured cores [later](#)(see page 127).

If you are **sharding** your statistics data, you will need to dump each shard separately. The index names for prior years will be `statistics-YYYY` (for example: `statistics-2017` `statistics-2018` etc.) The current year's statistics shard is named `statistics` and you should dump that one too.

Unfortunately, the "solr-export-statistics" script was not created until DSpace 5.x. Therefore, you will not be able to upgrade statistics from 4.x or below *unless you first upgrade to either 5.x or 6.x.* This upgrade could be done in a test environment, just to allow you to export your statistics (so they can be reimported into 7.x below). But, there's unfortunately no direct way to migrate 4.x (or 3.x or 1.x.x) Solr Statistics into 7.x.

- c. **Move your old Solr cores to a safe location** in case of trouble with the upgrade procedure. If you leave them in place, you will get a mixture of old and new files that the new Solr will refuse to load.

- d. **(If upgrading from 5.x or below) Replace your old build.properties file with a local.cfg:** As of DSpace 6.0, the `build.properties` configuration file has been replaced by an enhanced `local.cfg` configuration file. Therefore, any old `build.properties` file (or similar `[dspace-source]/*.properties` files) WILL BE IGNORED. Instead, you should create a new `local.cfg` file, based on the provided `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg.EXAMPLE` and use it to specify all of your locally customized DSpace configurations. This new `local.cfg` can be used to override ANY setting in any other configuration file (`dspace.cfg` or `modules/*.cfg`). To override a default setting, simply copy the configuration into your `local.cfg` and change its value(s). For much more information on the features of `local.cfg`, see the [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724) documentation and the [local.cfg Configuration File](#)(see page 731) section on that page.

```
cd [dspace-source]
cp dspace/config/local.cfg.EXAMPLE local.cfg

# Then edit the local.cfg, specifying (at a minimum) your basic DSpace
configuration settings.
# Optionally, you may copy any settings from other *.cfg configuration
files into your local.cfg to override them.
# After building DSpace, this local.cfg will be copied to [dspace]/config/
local.cfg, where it will also be used at runtime.
```

3. **Build DSpace Backend.** Run the following commands to compile DSpace :

```
cd [dspace-source]
mvn -U clean package
```

The above command will re-compile the DSpace source code and build its "installer". You will find the result in `[dspace-source]/dspace/target/dspace-installer`

Defaults to PostgreSQL settings

Without any extra arguments, the DSpace installation package is initialized for PostgreSQL. If you use Oracle instead, you should build the DSpace installation package as follows:

```
mvn -Ddb.name283=oracle -U clean package
```

4. **Stop Tomcat (or servlet container).** Take down your servlet container.
- For Tomcat, use the `$CATALINA_HOME/shutdown.sh` script. (Many Unix-based installations will have a startup/shutdown script in the `/etc/init.d` or `/etc/rc.d` directories.)
5. **Update your DSpace Configurations.** Depending on the version of DSpace you are upgrading from, not all steps are required.
- If you are upgrading from a prior version of DSpace 7.x,** you will need to perform the following steps.

²⁸³ <http://ddb.name/>

- i. As of DSpace 7.3, the "db.dialect" configuration has changed from "org.dspace.storage.rdbms.hibernate.postgres.DSpacePostgreSQL82Dialect" to "org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQL94Dialect". Therefore, MAKE SURE that your dspace.cfg or local.cfg has this setting:

```
db.dialect = org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQL94Dialect
```

- ii. You may wish to review the [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) for details about new features. There may be new configurations you may wish to tweak to enable/disable those features.
 - iii. *Make sure your existing 7.x local.cfg is in the source directory* (e.g. `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg`). That way your existing 7.x configuration gets reinstalled alongside the new version of DSpace.
- b. **If you are upgrading from DSpace 6.x or below, you will need to perform these steps.**
- i. **Review your customized configurations (recommended to be in local.cfg):** As mentioned above, we recommend any local configuration changes be placed in a [local.cfg Configuration File](#)(see page 731). With any major upgrade some configurations may have changed. Therefore, it is recommended to review all configuration changes that exist in the `config` directory, and its subdirectories, concentrating on configurations you previously customized in your local.cfg. See also the [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724).
 - ii. **Remove obsolete configurations.** With the removal of the JSUI and XMLUI, a large number of server-side (backend) configurations were made obsolete and were therefore removed between the 6.x and 7.0 release. A full list can be found in the [Release Notes](#)(see page 48).
 - iii. **Remove BTE Spring configuration:** If it exists, remove the `[dspace]/config/spring/api/bte.xml` Spring Configuration. This file is no longer needed as the BTE framework was removed in favor of [Live Import from external sources](#)(see page 358).
 - iv. **Migrate or recreate your Submission configuration.** As of DSpace 7, the submission configuration has changed. The format of the "item-submission.xml" file has been updated, and the older "input-forms.xml" has been replaced by a new "submission-forms.xml". You can choose to either start fresh with the new v7 configuration files, or you can use the steps below to migrate your old configurations into the new format. See the [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) for more information
 1. First, create a temporary folder to copy your old v6 configurations into

```
# Example of creating a [dspace]/config/temp folder for this
migration
# You must replace [dspace] with the full path of your DSpace
7 installation.
cd [dspace]/config
mkdir temp
```

2. Copy your old (v5 or v6) "item-submission.xml" and "input-forms.xml" into that temporary folder
3. Run the command-line migration script to migrate them to v7 configuration files

```
# This example uses [dspace] as a placeholder for all paths.
# Replace it with either the absolute or relative path of
these files
```

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace submission-forms-migrate -s [dspace]/
config/temp/item-submission.xml -f [dspace]/config/temp/input-
forms.xml
```

4. The result will be two files. These are valid v7 configurations based on your original submission configuration files.
 - a. `[dspace]/config/item-submission.xml.migrated`
 - b. `[dspace]/config/submission-forms.xml.migrated`
5. These `*.migrated` files have *no inline comments*, so you may want to edit them further before installing them (by removing the `.migrated` suffix). Alternatively, you may choose to copy sections of the `*.migrated` files into the default configurations in the `[dspace]/config/` folder, therefore retaining the inline comments in those default files.
- v. **City IP Database file for Solr Statistics has been renamed.** The old `[dspace]/config/GeoLiteCity.dat` file is no longer maintained by its provider. You can delete it. The new file is named `GeoLite2-City.mmdb` by default. If you have configured a different name and/or location for this file, you should check the setting of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in `[dspace]/config/modules/usage-statistics.cfg` (and perhaps move your custom setting to `local.cfg`).
- vi. **tm-extractors media filtering (WordFilter) no longer exists:** the `PoiWordFilter` plugin now fulfills this function. If you still have `WordFilter` configured, remove from `dspace.cfg` and/or `local.cfg` all lines referencing `org.dspace.app.mediafilter.WordFilter` and uncomment all lines referencing `org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PoiWordFilter`.
- vii. **Re-configure Solr URLs:** change the value of `solr.server` to point at your new Solr external service. It will probably become something like `solr.server = https://localhost:8983/solr`. Solr only needs to be accessible to the DSpace backend, and should not be publicly available on the web. It can either be run on localhost or via a hostname (if run on a separate server from the backend). Also review the values of
 1. `discovery.search.server`
 2. `oai.solr.url`
 3. `solr.authority.server`
 4. `solr-statistics.server`
- viii. **Sitemaps are now automatically generated/updated:** A new `sitemap.cron` setting exists in the `dspace.cfg` which controls when Sitemaps are generated. By default they are enabled to update once per day, for optimal SEO. See [Search Engine Optimization](#) (see page 647) docs for more detail
 1. Because of this change, if you had a system cron job which ran `./dspace generate-sitemaps`, this system cron job can be removed in favor of the new `sitemap.cron` setting.
- c. **If you are upgrading from DSpace 5.x or below,** there are a few additional configuration changes to be aware of.

- i. **Search/Browse requires Discovery:** As of DSpace 6, only [Discovery](#)(see page 522) (Apache Solr) is supported for search/browse. Support for Legacy Search (using Apache Lucene) and Legacy Browse (using database tables) has been removed, along with all their configurations.
 - ii. **XPDF media filtering no longer exists:** XPDF media filtering, deprecated in DSpace 5, has been removed. If you used this, you will need to reconfigure using the remaining [alternatives](#)(see page 617) (e.g. PDF Text Extractor and/or ImageMagick PDF Thumbnail Generator).
6. **Update DSpace Installation.** Update the DSpace installation directory with the new code and libraries. Issue the following commands:

```
cd [dspace-source]/dspace/target/dspace-installer
ant update
```

7. **Upgrade your database** (required for all upgrades). The DSpace code will automatically upgrade your database (from any prior version of DSpace). By default, this database upgrade occurs automatically when you restart Tomcat (or your servlet container). However, if you have a large repository or are upgrading across multiple versions of DSpace at once, you may wish to manually perform the upgrade (as it could take some time, anywhere from 5-15 minutes for large sites).
- a. (Optional) If desired, you can optionally verify which migrations have not yet been run on your database. You can use this to double check that DSpace is recognizing your database version appropriately

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace database info

# If you are upgrading from 5.x or later, then this will list all
migrations
#   which were previously run, along with any which are "PENDING" or
"IGNORED"
#   that need to be run to upgrade your database.
# If you are upgrading from 4.x or earlier, this will attempt to detect
which
#   version of DSpace you are upgrading from. Look for a line at the
bottom
#   that says something like:
#   "Your database looks to be compatible with DSpace version ___"
```

- b. (Optional) In some rare scenarios, if your database's "sequences" are outdated, inconsistent or incorrect, a database migration error may occur (in your DSpace logs). While this is seemingly a rare occurrence, you may choose to run the "update-sequences" command PRIOR to upgrading your database. If your database sequences are inconsistent or incorrect, this "update-sequences" command will auto-correct them (otherwise, it will do nothing).

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace database update-sequences

# NOTE: In DSpace 6 or below, this script had to be run via psql from
[dspace]/etc/postgres/update-sequences.sql
# For example: psql -U [database-user] -f [dspace]/etc/postgres/update-
sequences.sql [database-name]
#
```

```
# If you still have this script under [dspace]/etc/, you can remove that
entire [dspace]/etc/ folder, as it's no longer needed in DSpace 7 or
above.
```

- c. (REQUIRED) Then, you can upgrade your DSpace database to the latest version of DSpace. (NOTE: check the DSpace log, `[dspace]/log/dspace.log.[date]`, for any output from this command)

```
# If upgrading from DSpace 6.x or below
[dspace]/bin/dspace database migrate ignored

# If upgrading from an earlier version of DSpace 7.x
[dspace]/bin/dspace database migrate
```

If you are upgrading from DSpace 6.x or below be sure you include the "ignored" parameter!

There are database changes which were previously optional but now are mandatory (specifically [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327) database changes).

- d. *If the database upgrade process fails or throws errors*, then look at the "Troubleshooting Upgrade Issues" section below for possible tips/hints.
- e. More information on the "database" command can be found in [Database Utilities](#)(see page 611) documentation.

By default, your site will be automatically reindexed after a database upgrade

If any database migrations are run (even during minor release upgrades), then by default DSpace will automatically reindex all content in your site. This process is run automatically in order to ensure that any database-level changes are also immediately updated within the search/browse interfaces. See the notes below under "**Restart Tomcat (servlet container)**" for more information. However, you may choose to **skip automatic reindexing**. Some sites choose to run the reindex process manually in order to better control when/how it runs.

To disable automatic reindexing, set `discovery.autoReindex = false` in `config/local.cfg` or `config/modules/discovery.cfg`.

As you have disabled automatic reindexing, make sure to manually reindex your site by running `[dspace]/bin/dspace index-discovery -b` (*This must be run after restarting Tomcat*)

*WARNING: It is not recommended to skip automatic reindexing, unless you will **manually reindex** at a later time, or have verified that a reindex is not necessary. Forgetting to reindex your site after an upgrade may result in unexpected errors or instabilities.*

8. **Deploy Server web application:** The DSpace backend consists of a single "server" webapp (in `[dspace]/webapps/server`). You need to deploy this webapp into your Servlet Container (e.g. Tomcat). Generally, there are two options (or techniques) which you could use...either configure Tomcat to find the DSpace "server" webapp, or copy the "server" webapp into Tomcat's own webapps folder. For more information & example commands, see the [Installation Guide](#)(see page 78)
- a. Optionally, you may also install the deprecated DSpace 6.x REST API web application ("rest" webapp). If you previously used the [DSpace 6.x REST API](#)(see page 669), for backwards compatibility the old, deprecated "rest" webapp is still available to install (in `[dspace]/webapps/rest`). It is NOT used by the DSpace UI/frontend. *So, most users should skip this step.*
9. **If upgrading from a previous version of 7.x**, a few extra steps may be required before starting Tomcat.
- a. **Update your Solr schema definition(s)**

- i. If you are upgrading from 7.0 to a later version of 7.x, you will need to update your 'search' Solr schema definition with the new version (in 7.1 a new "search.entitytype" field was added to this schema).
 1. Copy the updated schema.xml to your Solr 'search' core, e.g.

```
# The destination directory may differ per OS.
# Just replace the existing 'search' core "schema.xml" with
the new one.
cp [dSPACE]/solr/search/conf/schema.xml /var/solr/data/search/
conf/
```

2. Restart Solr

```
[solr]/bin/solr restart
```

3. Reindex your site

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE index-discovery -b
```

10. **If upgrading from 6.x or below**, a few extra steps are required to before starting Tomcat. If you are upgrading from a previous version of 7.x, skip this and move along.

- a. **Install new Solr cores and rebuild your indexes.** (Required when upgrading from 6.x or below. This may be done after starting Tomcat, but is required for DSpace 7.x to function properly.)

- i. Copy the new, empty Solr cores to your new Solr instance.

```
cp -R [dSPACE]/solr/* [solr]/server/solr/configsets
chown -R solr:solr [solr]/server/solr/configsets
```

- ii. Start Solr, or restart it if it is running, so that these new cores are loaded.

```
[solr]/bin/solr restart
```

- iii. You can check the status of Solr and your new DSpace cores by using its administrative web interface. Browse to `#{solr.server}` (e.g. <http://localhost:8983/solr/>) to see if Solr is running well, then look at the cores by selecting (on the left) Core Admin or using the Core Selector drop list.

1. For example, to test that your "search" core is setup properly, try accessing the URL `#{solr.server}/search/select`. It should run an empty query against the "search" core, returning an empty JSON result. If it returns an error, then that means your "search" core is missing or not installed properly.

- iv. Load `authority` and `statistics` from the `dumps`(see page 121) that you made earlier (not the disaster-recovery backup).

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE solr-import-statistics -i authority
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE solr-import-statistics -i statistics
```

This could take quite some time.

If you had sharded your statistics, you will need to load the dump of each shard separately. As when dumping, the index names will be `... statistics-2017 statistics-2018 statistics`.

- v. For Statistics shards only, upgrade legacy DSpace Object Identifiers (pre-6.4 statistics) to UUID Identifiers.

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE solr-upgrade-statistics-6x -i statistics
```

Again If you had sharded your statistics, you will need to run this for each shard separately. See also [SOLR Statistics Maintenance](#)(see page 465)

- vi. Rebuild the `oai` and `search` cores.

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE oai import
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE index-discovery -b
```

If you have a great deal of content, this could take a long time.

- b. **Update Handle Server Configuration.** *(Required when upgrading from 6.x or below)* Because we've updated to Handle Server v9, if you are using the built-in Handle server (most installations do), you'll need to add the follow to the end of the `server_config` section of your `[dSPACE]/handle-server/config.dct` file (the only new line is the "enable_txn_queue" line)

```
"case_sensitive" = "no"
"storage_type" = "CUSTOM"
"storage_class" = "org.dSPACE.handle.HandlePlugin"
"enable_txn_queue" = "no"
```

- i. Alternatively, you could re-run the `./dSPACE make-handle-config` script, which is in charge of updating this `config.dct` file.
- c. **(Optional) Set up IP to City database for location-based statistics.** If you wish to (continue to) record the geographic origin of client activity, you will need to install *(and regularly update)* one of the following:
 - i. Either, a copy of [MaxMind's GeoLite City database](#)²⁸⁴ (in MMDB format)
 - NOTE: Installing MaxMind GeoLite2 is *free*. However, you **must** sign up for a (free) MaxMind account in order to obtain a license key to use the GeoLite2 database.
 - You may download GeoLite2 directly from MaxMind, or many Linux distributions provide the `geoipupdate` tool directly via their package manager. You will still need to configure your license key prior to usage.
 - Once the "GeoLite2-City.mmdb" database file is installed on your system, you will need to configure its location as the value of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in your `local.cfg` configuration file .
 - You can discard any old GeoLiteCity.dat database(s) found in the `config/` directory (if they exist).

284 <https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoip2/geolite2/>

- See the "Managing the City Database File" section of [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) for more information about using a City Database with DSpace.
 - ii. Or, you can alternatively use/install [DB-IP's City Lite database](#)²⁸⁵ (in MMDB format)
 - This database is also free to use, but does **not** require an account to download.
 - Once the "dbip-city-lite.mmdb" database file is installed on your system, you will need to configure its location as the value of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in your `local.cfg` configuration file.
 - See the "Managing the City Database File" section of [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) for more information about using a City Database with DSpace.
 - d. **Check your cron / Task Scheduler jobs.** In recent versions of DSpace, some of the scripts names have changed.
 - i. Check the [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643) documentation for details. If you have been using the `dspace stats-util --optimize` tool, it is no longer recommended and you should stop.
 - ii. WINDOWS NOTE: If you are running the Handle Server on a Windows machine, a new `[dspace]/bin/start-handle-server.bat` script is available to more easily startup your Handle Server.
11. **Restart Tomcat (servlet container).** Now restart your servlet container (Tomcat/Jetty/Resin) and test out the upgrade.
- a. **Upgrade of database:** If you didn't manually upgrade your database in the previous step, then your database will be automatically upgraded to the latest version. This may take some time (seconds to minutes), depending on the size of your repository, etc. Check the DSpace log (`[dspace]/log/dspace.log.[date]`) for information on its status.
12. **Reindexing of all content for search/browse:** If your database was just upgraded (either manually or automatically), all the content in your DSpace will be automatically re-indexed for searching/browsing. As the process can take some time (minutes to hours, depending on the size of your repository), it is performed in the background; meanwhile, DSpace can be used as the index is gradually filled. *But, keep in mind that not all content will be visible until the indexing process is completed.* Again, check the DSpace log (`[dspace]/log/dspace.log.[date]`) for information on its status.
- a. *If you wish to skip automatic reindexing, please see the Note above under the "Upgrade your Database" step.*
 - b. *When upgrading from 7.0/7.1/7.2 to 7.3, it is REQUIRED to reindex your content.* If reindexing does not occur automatically, or you disabled it, then run `./dspace index-discovery -b` to reindex your site.
- ```
Manually reindex all content
./dspace index-discovery -b
```
13. **Review / Update your scheduled tasks (e.g. cron jobs).** For all features of DSpace to work properly, there are some scheduled tasks you MUST setup to run on a regular basis. Some examples are tasks that help create thumbnails (for images), do full-text indexing (of textual content) and send out subscription emails. See the [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643) for more details.
- a. *When upgrading to 7.5 (or later)* , you will want to make sure the new "subscription-send" task is added to your existing scheduled tasks (in cron or similar). This new task is in charge of sending [Email Subscriptions](#)(see page 185) for any users who have subscribed to updates. (NOTE: "subscription-send" *replaces* the older "sub-daily" task from 6.x or below). See the [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643) for more details.
14. **Install or Upgrade the new User Interface (see below)**

285 <https://db-ip.com/db/download/ip-to-city-lite>

### 3.3 Upgrading the Frontend (User Interface)

1. **If upgrading from 6.x or below, install the new User Interface per the [Installing DSpace](#) (see page 78) guide.** The JSPUI and XMLUI are no longer supported and cannot work with the DSpace 7 backend. You will need to install the new (Angular.io) User Interface.
  - a. JSPUI or XMLUI based themes cannot be migrated. That said, since the new Angular UI also uses Bootstrap, you may be able to borrow some basic CSS from your old themes. But any HTML-level changes will need to be reimplemented in the new UI.
2. **If upgrading from a prior version of 7.x,** upgrading just requires installing the latest version of the User Interface code
  - a. **Upgrade Node.js if necessary**
    - i. *If upgrading to 7.5,* we highly recommend using either Node.js 16 or 18 as Node.js 14 will enter EOL (end of life) as of 30 April 2023.
  - b. **Download the latest [dspace-angular](#) release<sup>286</sup> from the DSpace GitHub repository.** You can choose to either download the zip or tar.gz file provided by GitHub, or you can use "git" to checkout the appropriate tag (e.g. `dspace-7.2`) or branch.
    - i. If you've cloned or copied this code into your own GitHub or GitLab repository, you may wish to simply pull the latest tagged code into your codebase using Git. That will allow you to more easily address any "code conflicts" between your local changes and the new version of DSpace (if any are found).
    - ii. NOTE: For the rest of these instructions, we'll refer to the source code location as `[dspace-angular]`.
  - c. **Install any updated local dependencies** using Yarn in the `[dspace-angular]` source code directory:

```
change directory to our repo
cd [dspace-angular]

install/update the local dependencies
yarn install
```

- d. **Build the latest User Interface code for Production:** This rebuilds the latest code into the `[dspace-angular]/dist` directory

```
yarn build:prod
```

- e. **If upgrading from 7.0 or 7.1, read the updated [Installation documentation](#) (see page 95).** As of 7.2, we now recommend deploying the compiled User Interface (in `[dspace-angular]/dist`) to a different directory (which we refer to as `[dspace-ui-deploy]`) in order to keep your running UI separate from the source code. While it's still possible to run the UI using "yarn start" or "yarn run serve:ssr" (both of which use `[dspace-angular]/dist`), that older approach will mean that your site goes down / becomes unavailable anytime you rebuild (`yarn build:prod`). To solve this issue:

<sup>286</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/releases>

- i. Create a separate `[dspace-ui-deploy]` location as described in the Installation documentation.
  - ii. Copy the `[dspace-angular]/dist` folder to that location, as described in the Installation documentation.
  - iii. Update your PM2 configuration or local startup scripts to use Node.js instead of Yarn. Again, see the Installation documentation.
- f. **If upgrading from 7.0 or 7.1, migrate your UI Configurations to YAML.** In 7.2, the format of the UI configuration file changed from Typescript to YAML to support runtime configuration. This means that the older `./src/environment/environment.*.ts` configuration files have all been replaced by corresponding `./config/config.*.yaml` configuration files (e.g. `environment.prod.ts` → `config.prod.yaml`).
- i. Either, manually move your "environment.prod.ts" configurations into a new `./config/config.prod.yaml` file, using the `./config/config.example.yaml` as a guide, along with the [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) documentation.
  - ii. OR, you can migrate your configurations using the provided "yarn env:yaml" migration script. For detailed instructions, see the [Migrate environment file to YAML](#)(see page 479) second of the [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) documentation.
- g. **(Optional) Review Configuration changes** to see if you wish to update any new configurations
- i. In 7.1, we added the ability to "extend" themes in the "themes" section. See the [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) documentation for details.
  - ii. In 7.2, themes now support optional "headTags" which can be used to customize favicons per theme (see [User Interface Customization](#)(see page 505)). Additionally, "browseBy > types" configurations were removed, as they are now dynamically retrieved from the REST API (see [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478)).
  - iii. In 7.3, you can optionally enable Item Access labels in the UI to display the status of an Item as a badge (e.g. "open access", "restricted", "metadata only" or "embargoed"). See [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478)
  - iv. In 7.4, many new user interface configurations were added. See [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) and [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) for details.
  - v. In 7.5, a new "Server Side Rendering" page caching option was added which can drastically speed up the initial response of your site. Other new settings also were added. See [Release Notes](#)(see page 28) and [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) for details.
- h. **Update your theme (if necessary)**, if you've created a custom theme in "src/themes" (or modified the existing "custom" or "dspace" themes in that location). Pay close attention to the following...
- i. In 7.3, a new "eager-theme.module.ts" and "lazy-theme.module.ts" has been added to both the "custom" and "dspace" themes to improve performance. Make sure to copy those to your custom theme. Additionally, this new "eager-theme.module.ts" for your theme MUST be imported/enabled in "src/themes/eager-themes.module.ts". For example, for a local theme under "src/theme/my-theme":

#### src/themes/eager-themes.module.ts

```
import { EagerThemeModule as MyThemeEagerThemeModule } from './my-theme/eager-theme.module';
...
@NgModule({
 imports: [
 MyThemeEagerThemeModule,
],
})
```

```
})
```

- ii. Additional minor changes may have been made. It's usually best to look for changes to whichever theme you started from. If you started your theme from the "custom" theme, look for any new changes made under "/src/themes/custom". If you started your theme from the "dspace" theme, look for any new changes made under "/src/themes/dspace".
  1. Using a tool like "git diff" from the commandline is often an easy way to see changes that occurred only in that directory.

```
Example which will show all the changes to "src/themes/
dspace" (and all subfolders)
between dspace-7.4 (tag) and dspace-7.5 (tag)
git diff dspace-7.4 dspace-7.5 -- src/themes/dspace/
```

- iii. For the "custom" theme, the largest changes are often:
    1. New themeable components (subdirectories) may be added under "src/themes/custom/app", allowing you the ability to now change the look & feel of those components.
    2. The "src/themes/custom/theme.module.ts" file will likely have minor updates. This file registers any new themeable components (in the " `const DECLARATIONS` " section), and also registers new Modules, i.e. new UI features, (in the " `@NgModule` " → "imports" section). Make sure those sections are updated in your copy of this file!
    3. Sometimes, new styles may be added in the "styles" folder, or new imports to "styles/theme.scss"
    4. If you have locally customized the styles or look & feel of any component, you should also verify that the component itself (in src/app) hasn't had updates.
  - iv. For the "dspace" theme, the largest changes are often:
    1. Existing customized components (subdirectories) under "src/themes/dspace/app/" may have minor updates, if improvements were made to that component.
    2. The "src/themes/custom/theme.module.ts" file will likely have minor updates. This file registers any new themeable components (in the " `const DECLARATIONS` " section), and also registers new Modules, i.e. new UI features, (in the " `@NgModule` " → "imports" section). Make sure those sections are updated in your copy of this file!
    3. Sometimes, new styles may be added in the "styles" folder, or new imports to "styles/theme.scss"
    4. If you have locally customized the styles or look & feel of any additional component, you should also verify that the component itself (in src/app) hasn't had updates.
- i. **Restart the User Interface.**
    - i. If you are using PM2 as described in the [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) instructions, you'd stop it and then start it back up as follows

```
Stop the running UI
pm2 stop dspace-ui.json

If you had to update your PM2 configs, you may need to delete your
old configuration from PM2
pm2 delete dspace-ui.json

Start it back up
```

```
pm2 start dspace-ui.json
```

- ii. If you are using a different approach, you simply need to *stop the running UI*, and re-run:

```
First stop the running UI process by killing it (or similar)

You MUST restart the UI from within the deployment directory
See Installation Instructions for more info on this directory
cd [dspace-ui-deploy]

Then restart the UI via Node.js
node ./dist/server/main.js
```

- j. **Verify the UI and REST API are both working properly.**
- i. If you hit errors, see the "Troubleshooting Upgrade Issues" section below. Additionally, check the "Common Installation Issues" section of the [Installing DSpace](#) (see page 78) documentation for other common misconfiguration or setup issues.

## 3.4 Troubleshooting Upgrade Issues

### 3.4.1 See all "Common Installation Issues"

At times the upgrade process may involve configuration changes which could result in one of our "Common Installation Issue" error messages. So, make sure to check that section of the [Installing DSpace](#) (see page 78) documentation, especially if you find your UI is no longer connecting to your REST API.

### 3.4.2 Database migrate errors: "Migration

V5.7\_2017.04.11\_\_DS-3563\_Index\_metadatavalue\_resource\_type\_id\_column.sql failed" or "Migration V5.7\_2017.05.05\_\_DS-3431.sql failed"

If you are upgrading to DSpace 7.x and receive *either* of the two following errors after running `./dspace database migrate ignored`:

```
Migration V5.7_2017.04.11__DS-3563_Index_metadatavalue_resource_type_id_column.sql
failed
```

[or]

```
Migration V5.7_2017.05.05__DS-3431.sql failed
```

This just means your database never ran those older migrations during a past upgrade from 5.x → 6.x (or similar).

Luckily, though, these migrations are both obsolete in DSpace 7.x (and later). This means *you can skip these migration safely*.

As of DSpace 7.5, a new `./dspace database skip` command is provided to easily skip one (or both) of these failing migrations as follows:

```
If you need to skip
"V5.7_2017.04.11__DS-3563_Index_metadatavalue_resource_type_id_column.sql", run this:
./dspace database skip "5.7.2017.04.11"

If you need to skip "V5.7_2017.05.05__DS-3431.sql", run this:
./dspace database skip "5.7.2017.05.05"
```

For more information on the `./dspace database skip` command see [Database Utilities](#)(see page 611).

### 3.4.3 Database migrate errors because of custom database tables/columns

If you have modified your database structure directly (or installed custom plugins which do so), then it is possible a `./dspace database migrate` will fail if it encounters an unexpected database structure. In this scenario, you may need to do some manual migrations before the automatic migrations will succeed. The general process would be something like this:

1. Revert back to your current DSpace database
2. Manually upgrade just your database **past** the failing migration. For example, if you are current using DSpace 1.5 and the "V1.6" migration is failing, you may need to first manually upgrade your database to 1.6 compatibility. This may involve either referencing the upgrade documentation for that older version of DSpace, or running the appropriate SQL script from under `[dspace-src]/dspace-api/src/main/resources/org/dspace/storage/rdbms/sqlmigration/`
3. Then, re-run the migration process from that point forward (i.e. re-run `./dspace database migrate`)

### 3.4.4 Running "Ignored" Flyway Migrations

During some upgrades, a Flyway database migration will be "ignored." One known instance of this is documented in <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/6762>. If you are upgrading from DSpace 5.x to a later version of DSpace, the migration put in place to address <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/1128> will be "ignored" because it is not necessary. There is a special command you can run which will un-flag this migration as "ignored."

```
dspace database migrate ignored
```

### 3.4.5 Manually updating the Metadata Registries

The database migration (`./dspace database migrate`) should *automatically trigger* your metadata/file registries to be updated (based on the config files in `[dspace]/config/registries/`). However, if this update was NOT triggered, you can also manually run these registry updates (they will not harm existing registry contents) as follows:

```
cd [dspace]/bin/
./dspace registry-loader -metadata ../config/registries/dcterms-types.xml
./dspace registry-loader -metadata ../config/registries/dublin-core-types.xml
./dspace registry-loader -metadata ../config/registries/eperson-types.xml
./dspace registry-loader -metadata ../config/registries/local-types.xml
./dspace registry-loader -metadata ../config/registries/sword-metadata.xml
```

```
./dspace registry-loader -metadata ../config/registries/workflow-types.xml
```

## 3.5 Migrating DSpace to a new server

These instructions are meant as a general guideline to how you can migrate your DSpace site/data to a new server while also [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) to the latest release. Keep in mind that you **MUST** also review the [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) and [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) guides when performing a migration (e.g. you must ensure you have correct dependencies installed and you must ensure you perform all upgrade steps).

### 3.5.1 Overview of migration approaches

There are two main approaches to migrating your DSpace to a new server.

1. Install a fresh copy of DSpace & migrate the database/files into it - This is the approach documented on this page. It is the recommended approach as it ensures zero data loss. However, it does involve more steps to complete the migration.
2. Install a fresh copy of DSpace & use the [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) - This is an alternative approach where you can use the AIP export tools to export AIPs from your old site, and then import them into the new site. While this also works, keep in mind that not all DSpace data can be exported to AIPs, so you will lose some data during this migration (namely any submissions not yet completed or still in workflow approval will be lost, see the [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) documentation for more details on what data is currently missing from AIPs).

### 3.5.2 Step 1: Install a fresh copy of DSpace

On your new server, follow the [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78) instructions and install a fresh (empty) copy of the latest version of DSpace. **BEFORE PROCEEDING**, ensure that this fresh copy of DSpace is correctly installed and shows no errors when you startup the site. (The site will obviously appear empty though, and that's OK)

You can also use this time to get your basic configurations setup properly for both the backend (local.cfg) and the frontend (config.prod.yml).

### 3.5.3 Step 2: Prepare your data to copy from the old DSpace to the new one

There are three main areas of data you need to migrate in order to ensure no data loss.

#### Perform these steps on the *old server*

1. First, you should STOP tomcat on the new server. These steps require the site to be down.
2. The database data - Make sure to export the database data from your old DSpace site using a tool like "[pg\\_dump](#)<sup>287</sup>" (for PostgreSQL). If you use "pg\_dump", you'll end up with a large SQL file which contains all the data from your old database.

```
Example of using pg_dump to export a database to an output file
pg_dump -U [db_username] [db_name] > [output_file.sql]
```

<sup>287</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/backup-dump.html>

3. The "assetstore" folder - This folder is in your DSpace installation directory and it contains all the files stored in your DSpace. You will need **all the contents** of this folder (including all subdirectories), so you could choose to zip it up or you could copy it over directly.
4. The Solr data (*optional*) - Both DSpace authority and statistics are stored in Solr. If you want to keep these, you will want to export them from the old Solr and move them over. Use the "solr-export-statistics" tool provided with DSpace: see "[Export SOLR Statistics](#)" in the [Solr Statistics Maintenance guide](#)(see page 463). (*Requires Solr to be running*)

### 3.5.4 Step 3: Copy over the prepared data and import it into the new DSpace

Copy the data you've prepared in Step 2 over to the new server.

Now, you'll import this data into your new installation of DSpace (created in Step 1).

**Perform these steps on the new server.**

1. First, you must STOP Tomcat on the new server.
2. The database data - Before you can import the data, you must delete the new, empty database.
  - a. Delete/Clean the new, empty database (created in step 1) as you will have empty tables created during the installation. The easiest way to achieve this is to run the `./dspace database clean` command. Keep in mind it requires temporarily enabling it via `db.cleanDisabled=false` in your `local.cfg`. (After the "clean" command succeeds, make sure to remove this configuration.)

```
Delete everything in your database
Requires temporarily setting "db.cleanDisabled=false" in your local.cfg
./dspace database clean
```

- i. Alternatively, PostgreSQL users could delete the entire database (using [dropdb command](#)<sup>288</sup>, e.g. `dropdb -U [db_username] [db_name]`) and recreate it based on the "Database Setup" instructions in [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78).
- b. Import the database dump you created in Step 2 (above), which will recreate this database with all your old data in it. For Postgres, you can use the `psql`<sup>289</sup> command.

```
Example of using psql to import data from a SQL file into a database
psql -U [db_username] [db_name] < [output_file.sql]
```

(NOTICE the direction of the angle character... in this command you are telling Postgres to execute all the commands contained in your "output\_file.sql", which will cause it to recreate all the database data in your new database.)

3. The "assetstore" folder - Delete the **empty** assetstore folder on the new server. Copy the entire assetstore folder (and all subdirectories) from the old server to the new one. In the end, you should have a several subdirectory hierarchies (containing your files) under the `[dspace]/assetstore/` folder on the new server.
4. The Solr data (*optional*) - If you exported the statistics or authority data in Step 2, then you can import this data from the exported files using the "solr-import-statistics" tool provided with DSpace, see "[Import SOLR Statistics](#)" in the [Solr Statistics Maintenance guide](#)(see page 464). (*Requires Solr to be running*)

<sup>288</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/app-dropdb.html>

<sup>289</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/app-psql.html>



### 3.5.5 Step 4: Update the database, Start DSpace & Reindex

Now that all the data is copied over, you need to ensure it's updated and reindexed properly (for the new version of DSpace).

**Perform these steps on the *new server*.**

1. Migrate/Upgrade the database to the latest version - Now that your old data is migrated, you **MUST** ensure it's using the latest database updates based on the new DSpace you've installed. Review the database steps in [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) and follow the instructions there.

```
Migrate your old data to the latest DSpace version
WARNING: You must review the Upgrading DSpace docs to see if there are any
additional database steps listed there!
./dspace database migrate ignored
```

NOTE: You should check the logs (dspace.log) for errors. Additional steps may be documented in the [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) guide.

2. Start Tomcat. This will bring your new DSpace back up, with the migrated data in place. Check the backend logs (dspace.log and Tomcat log) to ensure no errors occur on startup.
3. Reindex all content - This will ensure all search/browse functionality works in the DSpace site. Optionally, if you use OAI-PMH, you will want to reindex content into there as well.

```
Reindex all your content in DSpace
./dspace index-discovery -b

(Optionally) also reindex everything into OAI-PMH endpoint
./dspace oai import
```

NOTE: Until this command completes (it may take a while for large sites), you will not be able to fully browse/search the content from the User Interface. To check the progress of the reindex, check your dspace.log file.

### 3.5.6 Step 5: Review the Upgrade Instructions and final cleanup

If you've changed the version of DSpace you are running, you should review the [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) guide for instructions related to necessary configuration changes or other necessary updates. You should perform any upgrade steps that you have NOT yet performed above (keep in mind you already should have upgraded your database, and reindexed your content).

At this time, you also may wish to review your configurations on your *old* DSpace site, and see if there are any configurations that you wish to copy over into your new DSpace site. This step is optional, as you can also choose to start "fresh" with a new local.cfg file.

FINALLY, test the new site and verify that all the content, user accounts, etc. have moved over successfully. If you encounter any issues, see our [Troubleshoot an error](#)<sup>290</sup> guide for hints/tips on finding the underlying error message & reporting it to [Support](#)<sup>291</sup> lists/channels. Also make sure to check our list of [Common Installation Issues](#)(see page 103) in the Installing DSpace guide.

<sup>290</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

<sup>291</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Support>

## 4 Using DSpace

This page offers access to all aspects of the documentation relevant to using DSpace after it has been properly installed or upgraded. These pages assume that DSpace is functioning properly. Please refer to the section on [System Administration](#) (see page 558) if you are looking for information on diagnosing DSpace issues and measures you can take to restore your DSpace to a state in which it functions properly.

### 4.1 Authentication and Authorization

- [Authentication Plugins](#) (see page 139)
- [Embargo](#) (see page 172)
- [Managing User Accounts](#) (see page 180)
- [Request a Copy](#) (see page 186)

#### 4.1.1 Authentication Plugins

- [Stackable Authentication Method\(s\)](#) (see page 139)
  - [Authentication by Password](#) (see page 139)
    - [Enabling Authentication by Password](#) (see page 139)
    - [Configuring Authentication by Password](#) (see page 140)
  - [Open ID Connect \(OIDC\) Authentication](#) (see page 143)
    - [Enabling OIDC Authentication](#) (see page 143)
    - [Configuring OIDC Authentication](#) (see page 144)
      - [Sample/Test OIDC Configuration](#) (see page 147)
  - [Shibboleth Authentication](#) (see page 148)
    - [Enabling Shibboleth Authentication](#) (see page 148)
    - [Configuring Shibboleth Authentication](#) (see page 148)
      - [Apache "mod\\_shib" Configuration \(required\)](#) (see page 148)
      - [Sample shibboleth2.xml Configuration](#) (see page 152)
      - [Sample attribute-map.xml Configuration \(for samltest.id\)](#) (see page 153)
      - [DSpace Shibboleth Configuration Options](#) (see page 154)
  - [LDAP Authentication](#) (see page 160)
    - [Introduction to LDAP specific terminology](#) (see page 160)
    - [Enabling LDAP Authentication](#) (see page 160)
    - [Configuring LDAP Authentication](#) (see page 160)
    - [Debugging LDAP connection and configuration](#) (see page 166)
    - [Enabling Hierarchical LDAP Authentication](#) (see page 167)
    - [Configuring Hierarchical LDAP Authentication](#) (see page 167)
  - [IP Authentication](#) (see page 169)
    - [Enabling IP Authentication](#) (see page 169)
    - [Configuring IP Authentication](#) (see page 170)
  - [X.509 Certificate Authentication](#) (see page 170)
    - [Enabling X.509 Certificate Authentication](#) (see page 170)
    - [Configuring X.509 Certificate Authentication](#) (see page 171)
  - [Example of a Custom Authentication Method](#) (see page 171)

#### 4.1.1.1 Stackable Authentication Method(s)

Since many institutions and organizations have existing authentication systems, DSpace has been designed to allow these to be easily integrated into an existing authentication infrastructure. It keeps a series, or "stack", of *authentication methods*, so each one can be tried in turn. This makes it easy to add new authentication methods or rearrange the order without changing any existing code. You can also share authentication code with other sites.

|                            |                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg</code>                                                                  |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod</code>                                                |
| Example Value:             | <pre>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication</pre> |

The configuration property `plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod` defines the authentication stack. It is a comma-separated list of class names. Each of these classes implements a different `authentication method`, or way of determining the identity of the user. They are invoked in the order specified until one succeeds.

Existing Authentication Methods include

- [Authentication by Password](#)(see page 139) (class: `org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication`) (DEFAULT)
- [Shibboleth Authentication](#)(see page 148) (class: `org.dspace.authenticate.ShibAuthentication`)
- [LDAP Authentication](#)(see page 160) (class: `org.dspace.authenticate.LDAPAuthentication`)
- [IP Address based Authentication](#)(see page 169) (class: `org.dspace.authenticate.IPAAuthentication`)
- [X.509 Certificate Authentication](#)(see page 170) (class: `org.dspace.authenticate.X509Authentication`)

An authentication method is a class that implements the interface `org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod`. It `authenticates` a user by evaluating the *credentials* (e.g. username and password) he or she presents and checking that they are valid.

#### Authentication by Password

##### Enabling Authentication by Password

By default, this authentication method is enabled in DSpace.

However, to enable Authentication by Password, you must ensure the `org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication` class is listed as one of the `AuthenticationMethods` in the following configuration:

|                            |                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg</code>                                                                  |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod</code>                                                |
| Example Value:             | <pre>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication</pre> |

### Configuring Authentication by Password

The default method `org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication` has the following properties:

- Use of inbuilt e-mail address/password-based log-in. This is achieved by sending login information to the `"/api/authn/login"` endpoint<sup>292</sup> of the REST API, in order to obtain a JSON Web Token. This JSON Web token must be sent on every later request which requires authentication.
- Users can register themselves (i.e. add themselves as e-people without needing approval from the administrators), and can set their own passwords when they do this
- Users are not members of any special (dynamic) e-person groups
- You can restrict the domains from which new users are able to register. To enable this feature, uncomment the following line from `dspace.cfg`: `authentication.password.domain.valid = example.com`

Example options might be `'@example.com'` to restrict registration to users with addresses ending in `@example.com`, or `'@example.com, .ac.uk'` to restrict registration to users with addresses ending in `@example.com` or with addresses in the `.ac.uk` domain.

A full list of all available Password Authentication Configurations:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-password.cfg</code>                                                                                                |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>user.registration</code>                                                                                                                                  |
| Example Value:             | <code>user.registration = false</code>                                                                                                                          |
| Informational Note:        | This option allows you to disable all self-registration. When set to "false", no one will be able to register new accounts with your system. Default is "true". |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-password.domain.valid</code>                                                                                                               |

<sup>292</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/authentication.md>

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-password.domain.value = @mit.edu, .ac.uk</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Informational Note: | This option allows you to limit self-registration to email addresses ending in a particular domain value. The above example would limit self-registration to individuals with "@mit.edu" email addresses and all ".ac.uk" email addresses. (This setting only works when <code>user.registration=true</code> )                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-password.login.specialgroup</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-password.login.specialgroup = My DSpace Group</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Informational Note: | This option allows you to automatically add all password authenticated user sessions to a specific DSpace Group (the group must exist in DSpace) for the remainder of their logged in session.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-password.digestAlgorithm</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-password.digestAlgorithm = SHA-512</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Informational Note: | This option specifies the hashing algorithm to be used in converting plain-text passwords to more secure password digests. The example value is the default. You may select any digest algorithm available through <code>java.security.MessageDigest</code> on your system. At least MD2, MD5, SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512 should be available, but you may have installed others. Most sites will not need to adjust this. |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-password.regex-validation.pattern</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-password.regex-validation.pattern = ^.{8\,}\$</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Informational Note:</p> | <p>This option specifies a regular expression which all new passwords MUST validate against. By default, DSpace just requires a new password to be 8 or more characters (see above example value). However, sites can modify this regex in order to require more robust passwords of all users. One example of a complex rule is:</p> <pre>authentication-password.regex-validation.pattern = ^ (?= . * ? [ a - z ] ) ( ? = . * ? [ A - Z ] ) ( ? = \ \ S * ? [ 0 - 9 ] ) ( ? = \ \ S * ? [ ! ? \$ @ # \$ % ^ &amp; + = ] ) . { 8 \ , 15 } \$</pre> <p>This example requires all users to adopt a more complex password:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>(?= . * ? [ a - z ] )</code> - the password must contain at least one lowercase character</li> <li>• <code>(?= . * ? [ A - Z ] )</code> - the password must contain at least one uppercase character</li> <li>• <code>(?= \ \ S * ? [ 0 - 9 ] )</code> - the password must contain at least one numeric character</li> <li>• <code>(?= \ \ S * ? [ ! ? \$ @ # \$ % ^ &amp; + = ] )</code> - the password must contain at least one of the following special character: <code>!?\$@#%^&amp;+=</code></li> <li>• <code>. { 8 \ , 15 }</code> - the password must be at least 8 and at most 15 characters long (NOTE: the <code>"\"</code> is required to escape the comma, which is a special character)</li> </ul> |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## Open ID Connect (OIDC) Authentication

Open ID Connect (OIDC) Authentication is only available in DSpace 7.2 or above.

### Enabling OIDC Authentication

To enable OIDC Authentication, you must ensure the `org.dspace.authenticate.OidcAuthentication` class is listed as one of the `AuthenticationMethods` in the following configuration:

|                            |                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg</code>                                      |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>plugin.sequence.org<sup>293</sup><br/>.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod</code> |

<sup>293</sup> <http://plugin.sequence.org/>

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Example Value:             | <pre>plugin.sequence.org<sup>294</sup> .dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.OidcAuthentication</pre> <p>(NOTE: This setting may be repeated to support multiple AuthenticationMethods)</p> <p>(WARNING: it's easy to miss, the "camel case" for <code>OidcAuthentication</code> might catch you off guard. It's important to <i>not</i> use <code>OIDCAuthentication</code> in this line, because that class does not exist. <i>Case matters.</i></p> |

### Configuring OIDC Authentication

[OpenID Connect](#)<sup>295</sup> is an identity layer on top of the OAuth 2.0 protocol. It allows Clients to verify the identity of the End-User based on the authentication performed by an Authorization Server, as well as to obtain basic profile information about the End-User in an interoperable and REST-like manner. There are many [server implementations](#)<sup>296</sup> of OpenID Connect, including [Keycloak](#)<sup>297</sup> and [AWS Cognito](#)<sup>298</sup>.

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-oidc.cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.auth-server-url</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.auth-server-url = https://auth.example.com</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Informational Note:        | (Optional) The root URL of the OpenID Connect server. This is optional, as it's only used to fill out each of the "-endpoint" configs below (see below). So, for some setups, it may be easier to configure the "-endpoint" configs directly INSTEAD OF the "auth-server-url" and "auth-server-realm" |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.auth-server-realm</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.auth-server-realm = dspace-realm</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

<sup>294</sup> <http://plugin.sequence.org>

<sup>295</sup> <https://openid.net/connect/>

<sup>296</sup> <https://openid.net/developers/certified/#OPServices>

<sup>297</sup> <https://www.keycloak.org/>

<sup>298</sup> <https://aws.amazon.com/cognito/>

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-oidc.cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Informational Note:        | (Optional) The realm to authenticate against on the OpenID Connect server. This is optional, as it's only used to fill out each of the "-endpoint" configs below (see below). So, for some setups, it may be easier to configure the "-endpoint" configs directly INSTEAD OF the "auth-server-url" and "auth-server-realm"              |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.token-endpoint</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.token-endpoint = \${authentication-oidc.auth-server-url}/auth/realms/\${authentication-oidc.auth-server-realm}/protocol/openid-connect/token</code>                                                                                                                                                           |
| Informational Note:        | (Required) The URL of the OIDC Token endpoint. This defaults to using the configured "auth-server-url" and "auth-server-realm" to determine the likely OIDC path for this endpoint (see example above for the default value). However, if that default path is incorrect, you may choose to hardcode the correct URL in this field.     |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.authorize-endpoint</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.authorize-endpoint = \${authentication-oidc.auth-server-url}/auth/realms/\${authentication-oidc.auth-server-realm}/protocol/openid-connect/auth</code>                                                                                                                                                        |
| Informational Note:        | (Required) The URL of the OIDC Authorize endpoint. This defaults to using the configured "auth-server-url" and "auth-server-realm" to determine the likely OIDC path for this endpoint (see example above for the default value). However, if that default path is incorrect, you may choose to hardcode the correct URL in this field. |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info-endpoint</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info-endpoint = \${authentication-oidc.auth-server-url}/auth/realms/\${authentication-oidc.auth-server-realm}/protocol/openid-connect/userinfo</code>                                                                                                                                                    |
| Informational Note:        | (Required) The URL of the OIDC Userinfo endpoint. This defaults to using the configured "auth-server-url" and "auth-server-realm" to determine the likely OIDC path for this endpoint (see example above for the default value). However, if that default path is incorrect, you may choose to hardcode the correct URL in this field.  |



|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-oidc.cfg</code>                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.client-id</code>                                                                                                                                        |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.client-id = our-dspace</code>                                                                                                                           |
| Informational Note:        | (Required) The registered OIDC client id for our DSpace server's use. No default value.                                                                                           |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.client-secret</code>                                                                                                                                    |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.client-secret = some-sort-of-hash</code>                                                                                                                |
| Informational Note:        | (Required) The registered OIDC client secret for our DSpace server's use. No default value.                                                                                       |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.redirect-url</code>                                                                                                                                     |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.redirect-url = \${dspace.server.url}/api/authn/oid</code>                                                                                               |
| Informational Note:        | The URL users will be redirected to after a successful login. The example above is the default value, and it usually does not need to be updated.                                 |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.scopes</code>                                                                                                                                           |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.scopes = openid,email,profile</code>                                                                                                                    |
| Informational Note:        | The <a href="https://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1_0.html#ScopeClaims">scopes</a> <sup>299</sup> to request from the OIDC server. The example above is the default value |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.can-self-register</code>                                                                                                                                |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.can-self-register = true</code>                                                                                                                         |

<sup>299</sup> [https://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1\\_0.html#ScopeClaims](https://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1_0.html#ScopeClaims)

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-oidc.cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Informational Note:        | Specify if the user can self register using OIDC (true false). If not specified, true is assumed. If this is set to false, then only users with an existing EPerson in DSpace will be able to authenticate through OIDC. When set to true, an EPerson will be automatically created for each person who successfully authenticates through OIDC. |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info.email</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info.email = email</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Informational Note:        | Specify the attribute present in the user info json related to the user's email. The default value is "email"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info.first-name</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info.first-name = given_name</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Informational Note:        | Specify the attribute present in the user info json related to the user's first/given name. The default value is "given_name"                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info.last-name</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-oidc.user-info.last-name = family_name</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Informational Note:        | Specify the attribute present in the user info json related to the user's last/family name. The default value is "family_name"                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

#### Sample/Test OIDC Configuration

One way to easily test OIDC Authentication is to use the PhantAuth test site at <https://www.phantauth.net/>. This site allows you to create a random OIDC client & a random OIDC user to authenticate as. So, it can be used to verify that DSpace's OIDC authentication is working in your system, but obviously is only meant for development/testing purposes.

To configure DSpace to use PhantAuth for authentication just requires the following updates to your local.cfg:

| <b>local.cfg updates for PhantAuth</b> |
|----------------------------------------|
| <code># Enable OIDC</code>             |

```

plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.OidcAuthentication

Settings for OIDC authentication
Based on instructions at https://www.phantauth.net/doc/integration
authentication-oidc.authorize-endpoint = https://phantauth.net/auth/authorize
authentication-oidc.token-endpoint = https://phantauth.net/auth/token
authentication-oidc.user-info-endpoint = https://phantauth.net/auth/userinfo

Obtain a random client-id and client-secret via https://phantauth.net/client
Find the "client_id" and "client_secret" returned, and place those values in these
next two configs.
authentication-oidc.client-id =
authentication-oidc.client-secret =

Because PhantAuth uses random users, you MUST ensure self registration is enabled
(This is the default setting though, which is why it's commented out)
authentication-oidc.can-self-register = true

```

## Shibboleth Authentication

### Enabling Shibboleth Authentication

To enable Shibboleth Authentication, you must ensure the

`org.dspace.authenticate.ShibAuthentication` class is listed as one of the `AuthenticationMethods` in the following configuration:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | [dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Property:</b>           | plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Example Value:</b>      | <pre> plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.ShibAuthentication </pre> <p>(NOTE: This setting may be repeated to support multiple <code>AuthenticationMethods</code>)</p> |

### Configuring Shibboleth Authentication

Shibboleth is a distributed authentication system for securely authenticating users and passing attributes about the user from one or more identity providers. In the Shibboleth terminology DSpace is a Service Provider which receives authentication information and then based upon that provides a service to the user. To use Shibboleth, DSpace *requires* that you use Apache installed with the `mod_shib` module acting as a proxy for all HTTP requests for your servlet container (typically Tomcat). DSpace will receive authentication information from the `mod_shib` module through HTTP headers.

Before DSpace will work with Shibboleth, you **must** have the following:

1. An Apache web server with the "mod\_shib" module installed. As mentioned, this mod\_shib module acts as a proxy for all HTTP requests for your servlet container (typically Tomcat). Any requests to DSpace that require authentication via Shibboleth should be redirected to 'shibd' (the shibboleth daemon) by this "mod\_shib" module. Details on installing/configuring mod\_shib in Apache are available at: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPApacheConfig> We also have a sample Apache + mod\_shib configuration provided below.
2. An external Shibboleth IdP (Identity Provider). Using mod\_shib, DSpace will only act as a Shibboleth SP (Service Provider). The actual Shibboleth Authentication & Identity information must be provided by an external IdP. If you are using Shibboleth at your institution already, then there already should be a Shibboleth IdP available. More information about Shibboleth IdPs versus SPs is available at: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/UnderstandingShibboleth>

For more information on installing and configuring a Shibboleth Service Provider see: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/Installation>

#### **Note about Shibboleth Active vs Lazy Sessions:**

When configuring your Shibboleth Service Provider there are two Shibboleth paradigms you may use: Active or Lazy Sessions. Active sessions is where the mod\_shib module is configured to protect an entire URL space. No one will be able to access that URL without first authenticating with Shibboleth. Using this method you will need to configure shibboleth to protect the URL: "/shibboleth-login". The alternative, Lazy Session does not protect any specific URL. Instead Apache will allow access to any URL, and when the application wants to it may initiate an authenticated session.

The Lazy Session method is preferable for most DSpace installations, as you usually want to provide public access to (most) DSpace content, while restricting access to only particular areas (e.g. administration UI/tools, private Items, etc.). When Active Sessions are enabled your *entire* DSpace site will be access restricted. In other words, when using Active Sessions, Shibboleth will require everyone to first authenticate before they can access any part of your repository (which essentially results in a "dark archive", as anonymous access will not be allowed).

#### **Apache "mod\_shib" Configuration (required)**

As mentioned above, you must have Apache with the "mod\_shib" module installed in order for DSpace to be able to act as a Shibboleth Service Provider (SP). The mod\_shib module acts as a proxy for all HTTP requests for your servlet container (typically Tomcat). Any requests to DSpace that require authentication via Shibboleth should be redirected to 'shibd' (the shibboleth daemon) by this "mod\_shib" module. Details on installing/configuring mod\_shib in Apache are available at: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPApacheConfig> General information about installing/configuring Shibboleth Service Providers (SPs) can be found at: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/Installation>

A few extra notes/hints when configuring mod\_shib & Apache:

- In Debian based environments, "mod\_shib" tends to be in a package named something like "libapache2-mod-shib2"
- The Shibboleth setting "ShibUseHeaders" is no longer required to be set to "On", as DSpace will correctly utilize attributes instead of headers.
  - When "ShibUseHeaders" is set to "Off" (which is recommended in the [mod\\_shib documentation](#)<sup>300</sup>), proper configuration of Apache to pass attributes to Tomcat (via either mod\_jk or mod\_proxy) can be a bit tricky, SWITCH has [some great documentation](#)<sup>301</sup> on exactly what you need to do. We will eventually paraphrase/summarize this documentation here, but for now, the SWITCH page will have to do.
- When initially setting up Apache & mod\_shib, <https://samltest.id/> provides a great testing ground for your configurations. This site provides a sample/demo Shibboleth IdP (as well as a sample Shibboleth SP) which

<sup>300</sup> <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPApacheConfig#NativeSPApacheConfig-AuthConfigOptions>

<sup>301</sup> <https://www.switch.ch/de/aai/support/serviceproviders/sp-access-rules.html#javaapplications>

you can test against. It acts as a "sandbox" to get your configurations working properly, before you point DSpace at your production Shibboleth IdP.

- You also may wish to review the Shibboleth setup in our "[dspace-shibboleth](#)" [Docker setup](#)<sup>302</sup> which the development team uses for testing (and it uses <https://samltest.id> as the IdP). It may provide you with good examples/hints on getting everything setup. However, keep in mind this code has not been tested in Production scenarios.

Below, we have provided a sample Apache configuration. However, as every institution has their own specific Apache setup/configuration, it is highly likely that you will need to tweak this configuration in order to get it working properly. Again, see the official `mod_shib` documentation for much more detail about each of these settings: <https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPApacheConfig> These configurations are meant to be added to an Apache `<VirtualHost>` which acts as a proxy to your Tomcat (or other servlet container) running DSpace. More information on Apache `VirtualHost` settings can be found at: <https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.2/vhosts/>

```
SAMPLE MOD_SHIB CONFIGURATION FOR APACHE2 (it may require local modifications
based on your Apache setup) ####
While this sample VirtualHost is for HTTPS requests (recommended for Shibboleth,
obviously),
you may also need/want to create one for HTTP (*:80)
<VirtualHost *:443>
 ...
 # PLEASE NOTE: We have omitted many Apache settings (ServerName, LogLevel,
SSLCertificateFile, etc)
 # which you may need/want to add to your VirtualHost

 # As long as Shibboleth module is installed, enable all Shibboleth/mod_shib
related settings
 <IfModule mod_shib>
 # Shibboleth recommends turning on UseCanonicalName
 # See "Prepping Apache" in https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/NativeSPApacheConfig
 UseCanonicalName On

 # Most DSpace instances will want to use Shibboleth "Lazy Session", which
ensures that users
 # can access DSpace without first authenticating via Shibboleth.
 # This section turns on Shibboleth "Lazy Session". Also ensures that once they
have authenticated
 # (by accessing /Shibboleth.sso/Login path), then their Shib session is kept
alive
 <Location />
 AuthType shibboleth
 ShibRequireSession Off
 require shibboleth
 # If your "shibboleth2.xml" file specifies an <ApplicationOverride> setting
for your
 # DSpace Service Provider, then you may need to tell Apache which "id" to
redirect Shib requests to.
```

<sup>302</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/main/dspace/src/main/docker/dspace-shibboleth>

```

 # Just uncomment this and change the value "my-dspace-id" to the associated
 @id attribute value.
 #ShibRequestSetting applicationId my-dspace-id
 </Location>

 # If a user attempts to access the DSpace shibboleth endpoint, force them to
 authenticate via Shib.
 <Location "/server/api/authn/shibboleth">
 Order deny,allow
 Allow from all
 AuthType shibboleth
 ShibRequireSession On
 # Please note that setting ShibUseHeaders to "On" is a potential security
 risk.
 # You may wish to set it to "Off". See the mod_shib docs for details about
 this setting:
 # https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/
 NativeSPApacheConfig#NativeSPApacheConfig-AuthConfigOptions
 # Here's a good guide to configuring Apache + Tomcat when this setting is
 "Off":
 # https://www.switch.ch/de/aai/support/serviceproviders/sp-access-
 rules.html#javaapplications
 ShibUseHeaders On
 Require shibboleth
 </Location>

 # If a user attempts to access the DSpace login endpoint, ensure Shibboleth is
 supported but other auth methods can be too.
 <Location "/server/api/authn/login">
 Order deny,allow
 Allow from all
 AuthType shibboleth
 # For DSpace, this is required to be off otherwise the available auth
 methods will be not visible
 ShibRequireSession Off
 # Please note that setting ShibUseHeaders to "On" is a potential security
 risk.
 # You may wish to set it to "Off". See the mod_shib docs for details about
 this setting:
 # https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/
 NativeSPApacheConfig#NativeSPApacheConfig-AuthConfigOptions
 # Here's a good guide to configuring Apache + Tomcat when this setting is
 "Off":
 # https://www.switch.ch/de/aai/support/serviceproviders/sp-access-
 rules.html#javaapplications
 ShibUseHeaders On
 </Location>

 # Ensure /Shibboleth.sso path (in Apache) can be accessed
 # By default it may be inaccessible if your Apache security is tight.
 <Location "/Shibboleth.sso">
 Order deny,allow
 Allow from all

```

```

 # Also ensure Shibboleth/mod_shib responds to this path
 SetHandler shib
</Location>

 # Finally, you may need to ensure requests to /Shibboleth.sso are NOT
 redirected
 # to Tomcat (as they need to be handled by mod_shib instead).
 # NOTE: THIS SETTING IS LIKELY ONLY NEEDED IF YOU ARE USING mod_proxy TO
 REDIRECT
 # ALL REQUESTS TO TOMCAT (e.g. ProxyPass /server ajp://localhost:8009/server)
 ProxyPass /Shibboleth.sso !
</IfModule>

...

You will likely need Proxy settings to ensure Apache is proxying requests to
Tomcat for the DSpace REST API
The below is just an example of proxying for REST API only. It requires
installing & enabling "mod_proxy" and "mod_proxy_ajp"
Proxy / Forwarding Settings
<Proxy *>
 AddDefaultCharset Off
 Order allow,deny
 Allow from all
</Proxy>

Proxy all requests to /server to Tomcat via AJP
ProxyPass /server ajp://localhost:8009/server
ProxyPassReverse /server ajp://localhost:8009/server

Optionally, also proxy Angular UI (if on same server). This requires
"mod_proxy_http"
#ProxyPass / http://localhost:4000/
#ProxyPassReverse / http://localhost:4000/
</VirtualHost>

```

### Sample shibboleth2.xml Configuration

In addition, here's a sample "ApplicationOverride" configuration for "shibboleth2.xml". This particular "ApplicationOverride" is configured to use the Test IdP provided by <https://samltest.id/> and is just meant as an example. In order to enable it for testing purposes, you **must** specify `ShibRequestSetting applicationId samltest` in your Apache `mod_shib` configuration (see above). An additional, more detailed example is provided in our "dspace-shibboleth" Docker configurations at <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace/src/main/docker/dspace-shibboleth/shibboleth2.xml>

```

<!-- *** Sample Shibboleth Settings for https://samltest.id/ *** -->
<!-- This provides a simple sample of how you could configure -->
<!-- shibboleth2.xml for DSpace sites. -->
<!-- TO ENABLE: You'd need to specify "applicationId" as "samltest" in -->
<!-- your mod_shib settings, e.g. -->

```

```

<!-- <Location /> -->
<!-- ... -->
<!-- ShibRequestSetting applicationId samltest -->
<!-- </Location> -->
<ApplicationOverride id="samltest" entityID="http://[myspace.edu]/
shibboleth" REMOTE_USER="eppn persistent-id targeted-id">

 <!-- We'll use a TEST IdP, hosted by the awesome https://samltest.id/
testing service. -->
 <!-- See also: https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/
NativeSPServiceSSO -->
 <!-- DSPACE 7 requires Shibboleth to use "SameSite=None" property for its
Cookies -->
 <Sessions lifetime="28800" timeout="3600" checkAddress="false"
relayState="ss:mem" handlerSSL="true" cookieProps="; path=/; SameSite=None; secure;
HttpOnly">
 <SSO entityID="https://samltest.id/saml/idp">
 SAML2 SAML1
 </SSO>
 </Sessions>

 <!-- Loads and trusts a metadata file that describes the IdP and how to
communicate with it. -->
 <!-- By default, metadata is retrieved from the TEST IdP at https://
samltest.id/ -->
 <!-- and is cached in a local file named "samltest-metadata.xml". -->
 <!-- See also: https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/
NativeSPMetadataProvider -->
 <MetadataProvider type="XML" uri="https://samltest.id/saml/idp"
 backingFilePath="samltest-metadata.xml" reloadInterval="180
000"/>
</ApplicationOverride>

```

### Sample attribute-map.xml Configuration (for samltest.id)

In order to use the above example for <https://samltest.id/>, you may also need to modify your attribute-map.xml to support their attributes. Again, a more complete example is in our "dspace-shibboleth" Docker configurations at <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace/src/main/docker/dspace-shibboleth/attribute-map.xml>

```

<Attributes xmlns="urn:mace:shibboleth:2.0:attribute-map" xmlns:xsi="http://
www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
 <!-- Custom Attributes specific to samltest.id -->
 <Attribute name="urn:oid:0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.1" id="uid"/>
 <Attribute name="urn:oid:0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.3" id="mail"/>
 <Attribute name="urn:oid:2.5.4.4" id="sn"/>
 <Attribute name="urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113730.3.1.241" id="displayName"/>
 <Attribute name="urn:oid:2.5.4.20" id="telephoneNumber"/>
 <Attribute name="urn:oid:2.5.4.42" id="givenName"/>
 <Attribute name="https://samltest.id/attributes/role" id="role"/>

 ...

```



```

 <!-- In addition to the attribute mapping, DSpace expects the following
 Shibboleth Headers to be set:
 - SHIB-NETID
 - SHIB-MAIL
 - SHIB-GIVENNAME
 - SHIB-SURNAME
 These are set by mapping the respective IdP attribute (left hand side) to
 the header attribute (right hand side).
-->
<Attribute name="urn:oid:0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.1" id="SHIB-NETID"/>
<Attribute name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:uid" id="SHIB-NETID"/>

<Attribute name="urn:oid:0.9.2342.19200300.100.1.3" id="SHIB-MAIL"/>
<Attribute name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:mail" id="SHIB-MAIL"/>

<Attribute name="urn:oid:2.5.4.42" id="SHIB-GIVENNAME"/>
<Attribute name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:givenName" id="SHIB-GIVENNAME"/>

<Attribute name="urn:oid:2.5.4.4" id="SHIB-SURNAME"/>
<Attribute name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:sn" id="SHIB-SURNAME"/>

</Attributes>

```

## DSpace Shibboleth Configuration Options

### Authentication Methods:

DSpace supports authentication using NetID, or email address. A user's NetID is a unique identifier from the IdP that identifies a particular user. The NetID can be of almost any form such as a unique integer, string, or with Shibboleth 2.0 you can use "targeted ids". You will need to coordinate with your shibboleth federation or identity provider. There are three ways to supply identity information to DSpace:

#### 1) NetID from Shibboleth Header (**best**)

The NetID-based method is superior because users may change their email address with the identity provider. When this happens DSpace will not be able to associate their new address with their old account.

#### 2) Email address from Shibboleth Header (**okay**)

In the case where a NetID header is not available or not found DSpace will fall back to identifying a user based-upon their email address.

#### 3) Tomcat's Remote User (**worst**)

In the event that neither Shibboleth headers are found then as a last resort DSpace will look at Tomcat's remote user field. This is the least attractive option because Tomcat has no way to supply additional attributes about a user. Because of this the autoregister option is not supported if this method is used.

### Identity Scheme Migration Strategies:

If you are currently using Email based authentication (either 1 or 2) and want to upgrade to NetID based authentication then there is an easy path. Simply enable shibboleth to pass the NetID attribute and set the netid-header below to the correct value. When a user attempts to log in to DSpace first DSpace will look for an EPerson

with the passed NetID, however when this fails DSpace will fall back to email based authentication. Then DSpace will update the user's EPerson account record to set their NetID so all future authentications for this user will be based upon NetID. One thing to note is that DSpace will prevent an account from switching NetIDs. If an account already has a NetID set and then they try and authenticate with a different NetID the authentication will fail.

### EPerson Metadata:

One of the primary benefits of using Shibboleth based authentication is receiving additional attributes about users such as their names, telephone numbers, and possibly their academic department or graduation semester if desired. DSpace treats the first and last name attributes differently because they (along with email address) are the three pieces of minimal information required to create a new user account. For both first and last name supply direct mappings to the Shibboleth headers. In addition to the first and last name DSpace supports other metadata fields such as phone, or really anything you want to store on an eperson object. Beyond the phone field, which is accessible in the user's profile screen, none of these additional metadata fields will be used by DSpace out-of-the box. However if you develop any local modification you may access these attributes from the EPerson object. The Vireo ETD workflow system utilizes this to aid students when submitting an ETD.

### Role-based Groups:

DSpace is able to place users into pre-defined groups based upon values received from Shibboleth. Using this option you can place all faculty members into a DSpace group when the correct affiliation's attribute is provided. When DSpace does this they are considered 'special groups', these are really groups but the user's membership within these groups is not recorded in the database. Each time a user authenticates they are automatically placed within the pre-defined DSpace group, so if the user loses their affiliation then the next time they login they will no longer be in the group.

Depending upon the shibboleth attributed use in the role-header it may be scoped. Scoped is shibboleth terminology for identifying where an attribute originated from. For example a students affiliation may be encoded as "student@tamu.edu". The part after the @ sign is the scope, and the preceding value is the value. You may use the whole value or only the value or scope. Using this you could generate a role for students and one institution different than students at another institution. Or if you turn on ignore-scope you could ignore the institution and place all students into one group.

The values extracted (a user may have multiple roles) will be used to look up which groups to place the user into. The groups are defined as "authentication-shibboleth.role.<role-name>" which is a comma separated list of DSpace groups.

#### Having issues getting Safari working?

In addition to the below settings, you may need to ensure your Shibboleth IdP is *trusted* by the DSpace backend by adding it to your `rest.cors.allowed-origins` configuration. *This is required for Safari web browsers to work with DSpace's Shibboleth plugin.*

For example, if your IdP is <https://samltest.id/>, then you need to append that URL to the comma-separated list of "allowed-origins" like:

```
rest.cors.allowed-origins = ${dspace.ui.url}, https://samltest.id
```

More information on this configuration can be found in the [REST API](#) (see page 666) documentation.

#### Configuration File:

```
[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-shibboleth.cfg
```

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lazysession</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lazysession = true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Informational Note: | Whether to use lazy sessions or active sessions. For more DSpace instances, you will likely want to use lazy sessions. Active sessions will force <b>every</b> user to authenticate via Shibboleth before they can access your DSpace (essentially resulting in a "dark archive"). |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lazysession.loginurl</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lazysession.loginurl = /<br/>Shibboleth.sso/Login</code>                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Informational Note: | The url to start a shibboleth session (only for lazy sessions). Generally this setting will be "/Shibboleth.sso/Login"                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lazysession.secure</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lazysession.secure = true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Informational Note: | Force HTTPS when authenticating (only for lazy sessions). Generally this is recommended to be "true".                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.netid-header</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.netid-header = SHIB-NETID</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Informational Note: | The HTTP header where shibboleth will supply a user's NetID. This HTTP header should be specified as an Attribute within your Shibboleth "attribute-map.xml" configuration file.                                                                                                   |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.email-header</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.email-header = SHIB-MAIL</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Informational Note: | The HTTP header where the shibboleth will supply a user's email address. This HTTP header should be specified as an Attribute within your Shibboleth "attribute-map.xml" configuration file.                                                                                       |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.email-use-tomcat-remote-user</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.email-use-tomcat-remote-user = false</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Informational Note: | Used when a netid or email headers are not available should Shibboleth authentication fall back to using Tomcat's remote user feature? Generally this is not recommended. See the "Authentication Methods" section above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.reconvert.attributes</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Example Value       | <code>authentication-shibboleth.reconvert.attributes = false</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Informational Note: | Shibboleth attributes are by default UTF-8 encoded. Some servlet container automatically converts the attributes from ISO-8859-1 (latin-1) to UTF-8. As the attributes already were UTF-8 encoded it may be necessary to reconvert them. If you set this property true, DSpace converts all shibboleth attributes retrieved from the servlet container from UTF-8 to ISO-8859-1 and uses the result as if it were UTF-8. This procedure restores the shibboleth attributes if the servlet container wrongly converted them from ISO-8859-1 to UTF-8. Set this true, if you notice character encoding problems within shibboleth attributes. |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.autoregister</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.autoregister = true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Informational Note: | Should we allow new users to be registered automatically?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.sword.compatibility</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.sword.compatibility = false</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Informational Note: | <p>SWORD compatibility will allow this authentication method to work when using SWORD. SWORD relies on username and password based authentication and is entirely incapable of supporting shibboleth. This option allows you to authenticate username and passwords for SWORD sessions with out adding another authentication method onto the stack. You will need to ensure that a user has a password. One way to do that is to create the user via the create-administrator command line command and then edit their permissions.</p> <p>WARNING: If you enable this option while ALSO having "PasswordAuthentication" enabled, then you should ensure that "PasswordAuthentication" is listed prior to "ShibAuthentication" in your authentication.cfg file. Otherwise, ShibAuthentication will be used to authenticate all of your users INSTEAD OF PasswordAuthentication.</p> |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.firstname-header</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.firstname-header = SHIB_GIVENNAME</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Informational Note: | The HTTP header where the shibboleth will supply a user's given name. This HTTP header should be specified as an Attribute within your Shibboleth "attribute-map.xml" configuration file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lastname-header</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.lastname-header = SHIB_SN</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Informational Note: | The HTTP header where the shibboleth will supply a user's surname. This HTTP header should be specified as an Attribute within your Shibboleth "attribute-map.xml" configuration file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.eperson.metadata</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Example Value:      | <pre>authentication-shibboleth.eperson.metadata = \   SHIB-telephone =&gt; phone, \   SHIB-cn =&gt; cn</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Informational Note: | Additional user attributes mapping, multiple attributes may be stored for each user. The left side is the Shibboleth-based metadata Header and the right side is the eperson metadata field to map the attribute to.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

|                     |                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.eperson.metadata.autocreate</code>                                |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.eperson.metadata.autocreate = true</code>                         |
| Informational Note: | If the eperson metadata field is not found, should it be automatically created?                   |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role-header</code>                                                |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role-header = SHIB_SCOPED_AFFILIATION</code>                      |
| Informational Note: | The shibboleth header to do role-based mappings (see section on roll based mapping section above) |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role-header.ignore-scope</code>                                   |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role-header.ignore-scope = true</code>                            |
| Informational Note: | Weather to ignore the attribute's scope (everything after the @ sign for scoped attributes)       |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role-header.ignore-value</code>                                   |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role-header.ignore-value = false</code>                           |
| Informational Note: | Weather to ignore the attribute's value (everything before the @ sign for scoped attributes)      |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-shibboleth.role.[affiliation-attribute]</code>                               |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Example Value:      | <pre>authentication-shibboleth.role.faculty = Faculty, Member authentication-shibboleth.role.staff = Staff, Member authentication-shibboleth.role.student = Students, Member</pre> |
| Informational Note: | Mapping of affiliation values to DSpace groups. See the "Role-based Groups" section above for more info.                                                                           |

## LDAP Authentication

### Introduction to LDAP specific terminology

If you are unfamiliar with LDAP, the following introduction to some of its terminology might come in handy:

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/18756688/what-are-cn-ou-dc-in-an-ldap-search>

### Enabling LDAP Authentication

To enable LDAP Authentication, you must ensure the `org.dspace.authenticate.LDAPAuthentication` class is listed as one of the AuthenticationMethods in the following configuration:

|                            |                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg</code>                                                              |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod</code>                                            |
| Example Value:             | <pre>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.LDAPAuthentication</pre> |

### Configuring LDAP Authentication

If LDAP is enabled, then new users will be able to register by entering their username and password without being sent the registration token. If users do not have a username and password, then they can still register and login with just their email address the same way they do now.

If you want to give any special privileges to LDAP users, create a stackable authentication method to automatically put people who have a netid into a special group. You might also want to give certain email addresses special privileges. Refer to the [Custom Authentication Code section](#) (see page 171) below for more information about how to do this.

**Ensure required commas are escaped in LDAP configuration**

**NOTE:** As of DSpace 6, commas (,) are now a special character in the [Configuration](#) (see page 724) system. As some LDAP configuration may contain commas, you must be careful to escape any required commas by adding a backslash (\) before each comma, e.g. "\,". The configuration reference for authentication-ldap.cfg has been updated below with additional examples.

Here is an explanation of each of the different LDAP configuration parameters:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-ldap.cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-ldap.enable</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-ldap.enable = false</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Informational Note:        | This setting will enable or disable LDAP authentication in DSpace. With the setting off, users will be required to register and login with their email address. With this setting on, users will be able to login and register with their LDAP user ids and passwords.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-ldap.autoregister</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-ldap.autoregister = true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Informational Note:        | This will turn LDAP autoregistration on or off. With this on, a new EPerson object will be created for any user who successfully authenticates against the LDAP server when they first login. With this setting off, the user must first register to get an EPerson object by entering their ldap username and password and filling out the forms.                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-ldap.provider_url</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-ldap.provider_url = ldap://<br/>ldap.myu.edu/o=myu.edu\,ou=mydept</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Informational Note:        | This is the url to your institution's LDAP server. You may or may not need the /o=myu.edu part at the end. Your server may also require the ldaps:// protocol. (This field has no default value)<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> As of DSpace 6, commas (,) are now a special character in the <a href="#">Configuration</a> (see page 724) system. Therefore, be careful to escape any required commas in this configuration by adding a backslash (\) before each comma, e.g. "\," |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-ldap.starttls</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.starttls = false</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Informational Note: | <p>Should we issue StartTLS after establishing TCP connection in order to initiate an encrypted connection?<br/> Note: This (TLS) is different from LDAPS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TLS is a tunnel for plain LDAP and is typically recognized on the same port (standard LDAP port: 389)</li> <li>• LDAPS is a separate protocol, deprecated in favor of the standard TLS method. (standard LDAPS port: 636)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.id_field</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.id_field = uid</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Explanation:        | This is the unique identifier field in the LDAP directory where the username is stored. (This field has no default value)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.object_context</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.object_context = ou=people\,o=myu.edu</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Informational Note: | <p>This is the LDAP object context to use when authenticating the user. By default, DSpace will use this value to create the user's DN in order to attempt to authenticate them. It is appended to the <i>id_field</i> and username. For example <code>uid=username\,ou=people\,o=myu.edu</code>. You will need to modify this to match your LDAP configuration. (This field has no default value)</p> <p>If your users do NOT all exist under a single "object_context" in LDAP, then you should ignore this setting and INSTEAD use the <a href="#">Hierarchical LDAP Authentication settings below</a>(see page 167) (especially see " <code>search.user</code> " or " <code>search.anonymous</code> ")</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> As of DSpace 6, commas (,) are now a special character in the <a href="#">Configuration</a> (see page 724)system. Therefore, be careful to escape any required commas in this configuration by adding a backslash (\) before each comma, e.g. "\,"</p> |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.search_context</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.search_context = ou=people</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Informational Note: | <p>This is the search context used when looking up a user's LDAP object to retrieve their data for autoregistering. With <code>autoregister=true</code>, when a user authenticates without an EPerson object we search the LDAP directory to get their name (<code>id_field</code>) and email address (<code>email_field</code>) so that we can create one for them. So after we have authenticated against <code>uid=username,ou=people,o=byu.edu</code> we now search in <code>ou=people</code> for filtering on <code>[uid=username]</code>. Often the <code>search_context</code> is the same as the <code>object_context</code> parameter. But again this depends on your LDAP server configuration. (This field has no default value, and it MUST be specified when either <code>search.anonymous=true</code> or <code>search.user</code> is specified)</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> As of DSpace 6, commas (,) are now a special character in the <a href="#">Configuration</a> (see <a href="#">page 724</a>) system. Therefore, be careful to escape any required commas in this configuration by adding a backslash (\) before each comma, e.g. "\,"</p> |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.email_field</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.email_field = mail</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Informational Note: | <p>This is the LDAP object field where the user's email address is stored. "mail" is the most common for LDAP servers. (This field has no default value)</p> <p>If the "email_field" is unspecified, or the user has no email address in LDAP, his/her username (<code>id_field</code> value) will be saved as the email in DSpace (or appended to <code>netid_email_domain</code>, when specified)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.netid_email_domain</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.netid_email_domain =<br/>@example.com<sup>303</sup></code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Informational Note: | <p>If your LDAP server does not hold an email address for a user (i.e. no <code>email_field</code>), you can use the following field to specify your email domain. This value is appended to the netid (<code>id_field</code>) in order to make an email address (which is then stored in the DSpace EPerson). For example, a netid of 'user' and <code>netid_email_domain</code> as</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

---

303 <http://example.com>

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     | <p><a href="http://example.com">@example.com</a><sup>304</sup> would set the email of the user to be <a href="mailto:user@example.com">user@example.com</a><sup>305</sup></p> <p><i>Please note:</i> this field will only be used if "email_field" is unspecified OR the user in question has no email address stored in LDAP. If both "email_field" and "netid_email_domain" are unspecified, then the "id_field" will be used as the email address.</p> |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.surname_field</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.surname_field = sn</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Informational Note: | This is the LDAP object field where the user's last name is stored. "sn" is the most common for LDAP servers. If the field is not found the field will be left blank in the new eperson object. (This field has no default value)                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.givenname_field</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.givenname_field = givenName</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Informational Note: | This is the LDAP object field where the user's given names are stored. I'm not sure how common the givenName field is in different LDAP instances. If the field is not found the field will be left blank in the new eperson object. (This field has no default value)                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.phone_field</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.phone_field = telephoneNumber</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Informational Note: | This is the field where the user's phone number is stored in the LDAP directory. If the field is not found the field will be left blank in the new eperson object. (This field has no default value)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.login.specialgroup</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

---

304 <http://example.com>

305 <mailto:user@example.com>

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.login.specialgroup = group-name</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Informational Note: | <p>If specified, all user sessions successfully logged in via LDAP will automatically become members of this DSpace Group (for the remainder of their current, logged in session). This DSpace Group <b>must</b> already exist (it will not be automatically created).</p> <p>This is useful if you want a DSpace Group made up of all internal authenticated users. This DSpace Group can then be used to bestow special permissions on any users who have authenticated via LDAP (e.g. you could allow anyone authenticated via LDAP to view special, on campus only collections or similar)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>login.groupmap.*</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example Value:      | <pre>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.1 = ou=Students:ALL_STUDENTS authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.2 = ou=Employees:ALL_EMPLOYEES authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.3 = ou=Faculty:ALL_FACULTY</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Informational Note: | <p>The left part of the value (before the ":") must correspond to a portion of a user's DN (unless " <code>login.group.attribute</code> " is specified..please see below). The right part of the value corresponds to the name of an existing DSpace group.</p> <p>For example, if the authenticated user's DN in LDAP is in the following form:</p> <pre>cn=jdoe,OU=Students,OU=Users,dc=example,dc=edu</pre> <p>that user would get assigned to the ALL_STUDENTS DSpace group for the remainder of their current session.</p> <p>However, if that same user later graduates and is employed by the university, their DN in LDAP may change to:</p> <pre>cn=jdoe,OU=Employees,OU=Users,dc=example,dc=edu</pre> <p>Upon logging into DSpace after that DN change, the authenticated user would now be assigned to the ALL_EMPLOYEES DSpace group for the remainder of their current session.</p> <p><i>Note:</i> This option can be used independently from the <code>login.specialgroup</code> option, which will put all LDAP users into a single DSpace group. Both options may be used together.</p> |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.attribute</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.attribute = group</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Informational Note: | <p>The value of the "<code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.attribute</code>" should specify the name of a single LDAP attribute. If this property is uncommented, it changes the meaning of the left part of "<code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.*</code>" (see above) as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the authenticated user has this LDAP attribute, look up the value of this LDAP attribute in the left part (before the ":") of the <code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.*</code> value</li> <li>• If that LDAP value is found in any "<code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.*</code>" field, assign this authenticated user to the DSpace Group specified by the right part (after the ":") of the <code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.*</code> value.</li> </ul> <p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.attribute = group</code></li> <li>• <code>authentication-ldap.login.groupmap.1 = mathematics:Mathematics_Group</code></li> </ul> <p>The above would ensure that any authenticated users where their LDAP "group" attribute equals "mathematics" would be added to the DSpace Group named "Mathematics_Group" for the remainder of their current session. However, if that same user logged in later with a new LDAP "group" value of "computer science", he/she would no longer be a member of the "Mathematics_Group" in DSpace.</p> |

### Debugging LDAP connection and configuration

As every LDAP is different, configuring your DSpace to communicate with your LDAP can sometimes be a challenge. We recommend using third-party LDAP tools to test your LDAP connection / username / password, and perform sample searches to better understand what information is being returned from your local LDAP. This will help ensure that LDAP configuration goes more smoothly.

One example of such an LDAP tool is the `ldapsearch`<sup>306</sup> commandline tool available in most Linux operating systems (e.g. in Debian / Ubuntu it's available in the "ldap-utils" package). Below are some example `ldapsearch` commands that can be used to determine (and/or debug) specific configurations in your `authentication-`

<sup>306</sup> <https://linux.die.net/man/1/ldapsearch>

`ldap.cfg`. In the below examples, we've used the names of specific DSpace configurations as placeholders (in square brackets).

```
Basic anonymous connection (for VERBOSE, add -v)
ldapsearch -x -H [provider_url]

Debug a connection error (add -d-1)
If you are connecting to an LDAPS URL and see connection errors (e.g. "peer cert
untrusted or revoked")
then see below note about "SSL Connection Errors"
ldapsearch -x -H [provider_url] -d-1

Attempt to connect to [provider_url] as [search.user] (will prompt for
search.user's password)
This doesn't actually perform a query, just ensures that authentication is working
NOTE: "search.user" is USUALLY either the full user DN (e.g.
"cn=dspaceadmin,ou=people,o=myu.edu")
or "DOMAIN\USERNAME" (e.g. "MYU\DSpaceUser"). The latter is more likely with
Windows Active Directory
ldapsearch -x -H [provider_url] -D [search.user] -W

Attempt to list the first 100 users in a given [search_context], returning the "cn",
"mail" and "sn" fields for each
ldapsearch -x -H [provider_url] -D [search.user] -W -b [search_context] -z 100 cn
mail sn

Attempt to find the first 100 users whose [id_field] starts with the letter "t",
returning the [id_field], "cn", "mail" and "sn" fields for each
ldapsearch -x -H [provider_url] -D [search.user] -W -b [search_context] -z 100 -s sub
"([id_field]=t*)" [id_field] cn mail sn
```

*SSL Connection Errors:* If you are using `ldapsearch` with an LDAPS connection (secure connection), you may receive "peer cert untrusted or revoked" errors if the LDAP SSL certificate is self-signed. You can temporarily tell LDAP to accept any security certificate by setting `TLS_REQCERT allow` in your `ldapsearch`'s `ldap.conf` file. *Be sure to remove this setting however after you are done testing!*

```
FOR TESTING ONLY! This setting disables the check for a valid LDAP Server security
certificate,
which is considered a security issue for production LDAP setups. Setting this to
"allow" tells
the LDAP client to accept any security certificates that it cannot verify or
validate.
TLS_REQCERT allow
```

More information on this SSL workaround can be found at:

- <http://www.bind9.net/manual/openldap/2.3/tls.html>
- <http://muzso.hu/2012/03/29/how-to-configure-ssl-aka.-ldaps-for-libnss-ldap-auth-client-config-in-ubuntu>

### Enabling Hierarchical LDAP Authentication

Please note, that DSpace doesn't contain the `LDAPHierarchicalAuthentication` class anymore. This functionality is now supported by `LDAPAuthentication`, which uses the same configuration options.

If your users are spread out across a hierarchical tree on your LDAP server, you may wish to have DSpace search for the user name in your tree. Here's how it works:

1. DSpace gets the user name from the login form
2. DSpace binds to LDAP as an administrative user with right to search in DNs (LDAP may be configured to allow anonymous users to search)
3. DSpace searches for the user name as within DNs (username is a part of full DN)
4. DSpace binds with the found full DN and password from login form
5. DSpace logs user in if LDAP reports successful authentication; refuses login otherwise

### Configuring Hierarchical LDAP Authentication

Hierarchical LDAP Authentication shares all the above standard [LDAP configurations](#)(see page 160), but has some additional settings.

You can optionally specify the search scope. If anonymous access is not enabled on your LDAP server, you will need to specify the full DN and password of a user that is allowed to bind in order to search for the users.

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-ldap.cfg</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>authentication-ldap.search_scope</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Example Value:             | <code>authentication-ldap.search_scope = 2</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Informational Note:        | <p>This is the search scope value for the LDAP search during autoregistering ( <code>autoregister=true</code> ). This will depend on your LDAP server setup, and is only really necessary if your users are spread out across a hierarchical tree on your LDAP server. This value must be one of the following integers corresponding to the following values:</p> <pre>object scope : 0 one level scope : 1 subtree scope : 2</pre> <p>Please note that " <code>search_context</code> " in the LDAP configurations must also be specified.</p> |

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.search.anonymous</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.search.anonymous = true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Informational Note: | If true, DSpace will anonymously search LDAP (in the " <code>search_context</code> ") for the DN of the user trying to login to DSpace. This setting is "false" by default. By default, DSpace will either use " <code>search.user</code> " to authenticate for the LDAP search (if <code>search.user</code> is specified), or will use the " <code>object_context</code> " value to create the user's DN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Property:</b>    | <code>authentication-ldap.search.user</code><br><code>authentication-ldap.search.password</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Example Value:      | <code>authentication-ldap.search.user =</code><br><code>cn=admin\,ou=people\,o=myu.edu</code><br><code>authentication-ldap.search.password = password</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Informational Note: | The full DN and password of a user allowed to connect to the LDAP server and search (in the " <code>search_context</code> ") for the DN of the user trying to login. By default, if unspecified, DSpace will either search LDAP anonymously for the user's DN (when <code>search.anonymous=true</code> ), or will use the " <code>object_context</code> " value to create the user's DN.<br><br><b>NOTE:</b> As of DSpace 6, commas (,) are now a special character in the <a href="#">Configuration (see page 724)</a> system. Therefore, be careful to escape any required commas in this configuration by adding a backslash (\) before each comma, e.g. "\", |

## IP Authentication

### Enabling IP Authentication

To enable IP Authentication, you must ensure the `org.dspace.authenticate.IPAuthentication` class is listed as one of the `AuthenticationMethods` in the following configuration:

|                            |                                                                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg</code>                   |
| <b>Property:</b>           | <code>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod</code> |



Example Value:

```
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.IPAAuthentication
```

### Configuring IP Authentication

**Configuration File:**

```
[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-
ip.cfg
```

Once enabled, you are then able to map DSpace groups to IP addresses in `authentication-ip.cfg` by setting `ip.GROUPNAME = iprange[, iprange ...]`, e.g:

```
authentication-ip.MY_UNIVERSITY = 10.1.2.3, \ # Full IP
13.5, \ # Partial IP
11.3.4.5/24, \ # with CIDR
12.7.8.9/255.255.128.0, \ # with netmask
2001:18e8::32 # IPv6 too
```

Negative matches can be set by prepending the entry with a '-'. For example if you want to include all of a class B network except for users of a contained class c network, you could use: 111.222,-111.222.333.

#### Notes:

- If the Groupname contains blanks you must escape the spaces, e.g. "Department\ of\ Statistics"
- If your DSpace installation is hidden behind a web proxy, remember to set the `useProxies` configuration option within the 'Logging' section of `dspace.cfg` to use the IP address of the user rather than the IP address of the proxy server.

### X.509 Certificate Authentication

#### Enabling X.509 Certificate Authentication

The X.509 authentication method uses an X.509 certificate sent by the client to establish his/her identity. It requires the client to have a personal Web certificate installed on their browser (or other client software) which is issued by a Certifying Authority (CA) recognized by the web server.

1. See the [HTTPS installation instructions](#) (see page 139) to configure your Web server. If you are using HTTPS with Tomcat, note that the `<Connector>` tag *must* include the attribute `clientAuth="true"` so the server requests a personal Web certificate from the client.
2. Add the `org.dspace.authenticate.X509Authentication` plugin `first` to the list of stackable authentication methods in the value of the configuration key `plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod`

**Configuratio  
n File:**

```
[dspace]/config/modules/authentication.cfg
```

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Property:</b> | <code>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod</code>                                                                                                                                                          |
| Example Value:   | <pre>plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.X509Authentication plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod = org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication</pre> |

### Configuring X.509 Certificate Authentication

|                            |                                                              |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Configuration File:</b> | <code>[dspace]/config/modules/authentication-x509.cfg</code> |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|

1. You must also configure DSpace with the same CA certificates as the web server, so it can accept and interpret the clients' certificates. It can share the same keystore file as the web server, or a separate one, or a CA certificate in a file by itself. Configure it by *one* of these methods, either the Java keystore

```
authentication-x509.keystore.path = path to Java keystore file
authentication-x509.keystore.password = password to access the keystore
```

...or the separate CA certificate file (in PEM or DER format):

```
authentication-x509.ca.cert = path to certificate file for CA whose client
certs to accept.
```

2. Choose whether to enable auto-registration: If you want users who authenticate successfully to be automatically registered as new E-Persons if they are not already, set the `autoregister` configuration property to `true`. This lets you automatically accept all users with valid personal certificates. The default is `false`.

TODO: document the remaining authentication-x509.\* properties

### Example of a Custom Authentication Method

Also included in the source is an implementation of an authentication method used at MIT, *edu.mit.dspace.MITSpecialGroup*. This does not actually authenticate a user, it *only* adds the current user session to a special (dynamic) group called 'MIT Users' (which must be present in the system!). This allows us to create authorization policies for MIT users without having to manually maintain membership of the MIT users group.

By keeping this code in a separate method, we can customize the authentication process for MIT by simply adding it to the stack in the DSpace configuration. None of the code has to be touched.

You can create your own custom authentication method and add it to the stack. Use the most similar existing method as a model, e.g. `org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication` for an "explicit"

method (with credentials entered interactively) or `org.dspace.authenticate.X509Authentication` for an implicit method.

## 4.1.2 Embargo

- [What is an Embargo?\(see page 172\)](#)
- [DSpace Embargo Functionality\(see page 172\)](#)
  - [Managing Embargoes on existing Items\(see page 172\)](#)
- [Configuring and using Embargo in DSpace Submission User Interface\(see page 172\)](#)
  - [Enabling Item-level Embargo\(see page 172\)](#)
  - [Configuring Embargo / Access Restriction options\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [Private/Public \(or Non-Discoverable/Discoverable\) Item\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [Pre-3.0 Embargo Migration Routine\(see page 174\)](#)
- [Technical Specifications\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [Introduction\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [ResourcePolicy\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [Item\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [Item.inheritCollectionDefaultPolicies\(Collection c\)\(see page 174\)](#)
  - [AuthorizeService\(see page 175\)](#)
  - [Withdraw Item\(see page 175\)](#)
  - [Reinstate Item\(see page 175\)](#)
  - [Pre-DSpace 3.0 Embargo Compatibility\(see page 175\)](#)
- [Creating Embargoes via Metadata\(see page 175\)](#)
  - [Introduction\(see page 175\)](#)
  - [Setting Embargo terms via metadata\(see page 175\)](#)
    - [Terms assignment\(see page 177\)](#)
    - [Terms interpretation/imposition\(see page 177\)](#)
    - [Embargo period\(see page 177\)](#)
  - [Configuration of metadata fields\(see page 177\)](#)
  - [Operation\(see page 178\)](#)
  - [Extending embargo functionality\(see page 179\)](#)
    - [Setter\(see page 179\)](#)
    - [Lifter\(see page 179\)](#)

### 4.1.2.1 What is an Embargo?

An embargo is a temporary access restriction placed on metadata or bitstreams (i.e. files). Its scope or duration may vary, but the fact that it eventually expires is what distinguishes it from other content restrictions. For example, it is not unusual for content destined for DSpace to come with permanent restrictions on use or access based on license-driven or other IP-based requirements that limit access to institutionally affiliated users. Restrictions such as these are imposed and managed using standard administrative tools in DSpace, typically by attaching specific access policies (aka "resource policies") to Items, Collections, Bitstreams, etc.

Embargo functionality was originally introduced as part of DSpace 1.6, enabling embargoes on the level of items that applied to all bitstreams included in the item. Since DSpace 3.0, this functionality has been extended to the Submission User Interface, enabling embargoes on the level of individual bitstreams.

#### 4.1.2.2 DSpace Embargo Functionality

Embargoes can be applied per *item* (including metadata) and per *bitstream* (i.e. file). The *item* level embargo will be the default for every *bitstream*, although it could be customized at *bitstream* level.

When an embargo is set on either an item level or a bitstream level, a new ResourcePolicy (i.e. access policy) is added to the corresponding Item or Bitstream. **This ResourcePolicy will automatically control the lifting of the embargo (when the embargo date passes).** An embargo lift date is generally stored as the "start date" of such a policy. Essentially, this means that the access rights defined in the policy do not get applied until *after that date passes* (and prior to that date, the access rights will default to Admin only).

*The scheduled, manual "embargo-lifter" commands (used prior to DSpace 3) are no longer necessary and not recommended to run.*

##### Managing Embargoes on existing Items

Administrators are able to change the lift date of any embargo by editing the authorization policy (ResourcePolicy) on the object. These authorization policies can be managed from the Edit Item screen by clicking on "Authorizations".

- To add an embargo, edit the appropriate policy and set a "start date". To add an full Item embargo (including metadata), edit the Item policy. To embargo individual bitstreams, edit the appropriate Bitstream policy.
- To remove an embargo, edit the appropriate policy, and clear out the "start date".
- To change an embargo, edit the appropriate policy, and change the "start date" to a new date.

Changes to the embargo should take effect immediately. However, as Administrators have full access to embargoed items, you may need to log out first. After logging out, you will be subject to the embargo.

#### 4.1.2.3 Configuring and using Embargo in DSpace Submission User Interface

##### Available in DSpace 7.2 and above

In DSpace 7.2 and above, both Item-level embargoes and bitstream (file) level embargoes are supported in the Submission user interface.

In DSpace 7.1 and 7.0, the Submission user interface only supported embargoes on specified bitstreams (files). However, item-level embargoes could be added after submissions were accepted using the "Manage Embargoes on existing Items" approach described above.

##### Enabling Item-level Embargo

While Bitstream-level embargoes are enabled by default, Item-level embargoes currently are not. However, enabling them is easy. Simply update your `item-submission.xml` to include this tag in your `<submission-process>`:

```
<submission-process name="traditional">
 ...

 <!-- This step enables embargoes and other access restrictions at the Item level
-->
 <step id="itemAccessConditions"/>
```

```
</submission-process>
```

After making this update, you will need to restart your backend (REST API) for the changes to take effect.

### Configuring Embargo / Access Restriction options

Starting in DSpace 7, embargo (and lease) settings are configurable via a Spring Bean configuration file `[dspace]/config/spring/api/access-conditions.xml`

For detailed information on configuring your Embargo options (and other related options like lease or restrict to a particular group of users), see the [Submission User Interface](#) (see page 338) documentation. Specifically these two sections:

- For Bitstream embargo / access options, see the section on "*Configuring the File Upload step*" of the [Submission User Interface](#) (see page 351)
- For Item embargo / access options, see the section on "*Configuring the Item Access Conditions step*" of the [Submission User Interface](#) (see page 354)

### Private/Public (or Non-Discoverable/Discoverable) Item

It is also possible to adjust the Private/Public (or Non-Discoverable/Discoverable) state of an item after it has been archived in the repository. This can be achieved from either the "Admin Search" (`/admin/search`), or from the "Status" tab under "Edit Item".

Private (or non-Discoverable) items are not retrievable through the DSpace search, browse or Discovery indexes. However, they are accessible via a direct link. It is possible to create a publicly accessible, non-discoverable item...in which case it can only be shared via a direct link. But, once anyone has that link, it is available anonymously.

Therefore, an "Admin Search" option is provided, which allows you to search across all items, including private or withdrawn items. You can also filter your results to display only private items.

### Pre-3.0 Embargo Migration Routine

If you have just upgraded from a DSpace 1.x.x version, any embargoes that are currently "in effect" will need to be migrated into ResourcePolicies. Prior to 3.0, embargoes in DSpace were managed entirely in metadata fields (and required running a scheduled "embargo-lifter" command). However, DSpace now stores all embargo information directly on ResourcePolicies (i.e. "access policies"). These ResourcePolicies automatically "lift" an embargo after the embargo date passes.

In order to migrate old embargoes into ResourcePolicies, a migration routine has been developed. **Please note that this migration routine should only need to be run ONCE** (immediately after an upgrade from 1.x.x to a more recent version of DSpace). After that point, any newly defined embargoes will automatically be stored on ResourcePolicies.

To execute it, run the following command:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace migrate-embargo -a
```

#### 4.1.2.4 Technical Specifications

##### Introduction

The following sections illustrate the technical changes that have been made to the *back-end* to add the new *Advanced Embargo* functionality.

##### ResourcePolicy

When an embargo is set at *item* level or *bitstream* level, a new *ResourcePolicy* will be added.

Three new attributes have been introduced in the *ResourcePolicy* class:

- *rpname*: resource policy name
- *rptype*: resource policy type
- *rpdescription*: resource policy description

While *rpname* and *rpdescription* are fields manageable by users, the *rptype* is managed by DSpace itself. It represents a type that a resource policy can assume, among the following:

- TYPE\_SUBMISSION: all the policies added automatically during the submission process
- TYPE\_WORKFLOW: all the policies added automatically during the workflow stage
- TYPE\_CUSTOM: all the custom policies added by users
- TYPE\_INHERITED: all the policies inherited from the enclosing object (for Item, a Collection; for Bitstream, an Item).

Here is an example of all information contained in a single policy record:

```
policy_id: 4847
resource_type_id: 2
resource_id: 89
action_id: 0
eperson_id:
epersongroup_id: 0
start_date: 2013-01-01
end_date:
rpname: Embargo Policy
rpdescription: Embargoed through 2012
rptype: TYPE_CUSTOM
```

##### Item

To manage **Private/Public** state a new *boolean* attribute has been added to the Item:

- *isDiscoverable*

When an Item is private, the attribute will assume the value **false**.

##### Item.inheritCollectionDefaultPolicies(Collection c)

This method has been adjusted to leave custom policies, added by the users, in place and add the default collection policies only if there are no custom policies.

## AuthorizeService

Some methods have been changed on *AuthorizeService* to manage the new fields and some convenience methods have been introduced:

```
public static List<ResourcePolicy> findPoliciesByDSOAndType(Context c, DSpaceObject
o, String type);
public static void removeAllPoliciesByDSOAndTypeNotEqualsTo(Context c, DSpaceObject
o, String type);
public static boolean isAnIdenticalPolicyAlreadyInPlace(Context c, DSpaceObject o,
ResourcePolicy rp);
public static ResourcePolicy createOrModifyPolicy(ResourcePolicy policy, Context
context, String name, int idGroup, EPerson ePerson, Date embargoDate, int action,
String reason, DSpaceObject dso);
```

## Withdraw Item

The feature to withdraw an item from the repository has been modified to keep all the custom policies in place.

## Reinstate Item

The feature to reinstate an item in the repository has been modified to preserve existing custom policies.

## Pre-DSpace 3.0 Embargo Compatibility

The Pre-DSpace 3.0 embargo functionality (see below) has been modified to adjust the policies setter and lifter. These classes now also set the dates within the policy objects themselves in addition to setting the date in the item metadata.

### 4.1.2.5 Creating Embargoes via Metadata

#### Introduction

Prior to DSpace 3.0, all DSpace embargoes were stored as metadata. While embargoes are no longer stored permanently in metadata fields (they are now stored on ResourcePolicies, i.e. access policies), embargoes *can still be initialized via metadata fields*.

This ability to create/initialize embargoes via metadata is extremely powerful if you wish to submit embargoed content via electronic means (such as [Importing Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308), [SWORDv1](#)(see page 290), [SWORDv2](#)(see page 275), etc).

#### Setting Embargo terms via metadata

Functionally, the embargo system allows you to attach "terms" to an item before it is placed into the repository, which express how the embargo should be applied. What do we mean by "terms" here? They are really any expression that the system is capable of turning into (1) the time the embargo expires, and (2) a concrete set of access restrictions. Some examples:

"2020-09-12" - an absolute date (i.e. the date embargo will be lifted)

"6 months" - a time relative to when the item is accessioned

"forever" - an indefinite, or open-ended embargo

"local only until 2015" - both a time and an exception (public has no access until 2015, local users OK immediately)  
 "Nature Publishing Group standard" - look-up to a policy somewhere (typically 6 months)

These terms are interpreted by the embargo system to yield a specific date on which the embargo can be removed (or "lifted"), and a specific set of access policies. Obviously, some terms are easier to interpret than others (the absolute date really requires none at all), and the default embargo logic understands only the most basic terms (the first and third examples above). But as we will see below, the embargo system provides you with the ability to add your own interpreters to cope with any terms expressions you wish to have. This date that is the result of the interpretation is stored with the item. The embargo system detects when that date has passed, and removes the embargo ("lifts it"), so the item bitstreams become available. Here is a more detailed life-cycle for an embargoed item:

#### Terms assignment

The first step in placing an embargo on an item is to attach (assign) "terms" to it. If these terms are missing, no embargo will be imposed. As we will see below, terms are carried in a configurable DSpace metadata field, so assigning terms just means assigning a value to a metadata field. This can be done in a web submission user interface form, in a SWORD deposit package, a batch import, etc. - anywhere metadata is passed to DSpace. The terms are not immediately acted upon, and may be revised, corrected, removed, etc, up until the next stage of the life-cycle. Thus a submitter could enter one value, and a collection editor replace it, and only the last value will be used. Since metadata fields are multivalued, theoretically there can be multiple terms values, but in the default implementation only one is recognized.

#### Terms interpretation/imposition

In DSpace terminology, when an Item has exited the last of any workflow steps (or if none have been defined for it), it is said to be "installed" into the repository. At this precise time, the interpretation of the terms occurs, and a computed "lift date" is assigned, and recorded as part of the ResourcePolicy (aka policy) of the Item. Once the lift date has been assigned to the ResourcePolicy, the metadata field which defined the embargo is **cleared**. From that point forward, all embargo information is controlled/defined by the ResourcePolicy.

It is important to understand that this interpretation happens only once, (just like the installation). Therefore, **updating/changing an embargo cannot be done via metadata fields**. Instead, all embargo updates must be made to the ResourcePolicies themselves (e.g. ResourcePolicies can be managed from the Admin UI in the Edit Item screens).

Also note that since these policy changes occur before installation, there is no time during which embargoed content is "exposed" (accessible by non-administrators). The terms interpretation and imposition together are called "setting" the embargo, and the component that performs them both is called the embargo "setter".

#### Embargo period

After an embargoed item has been installed, the policy restrictions remain in effect until the embargo date passes. Once the embargo date passes, the policy restrictions are automatically lifted. An embargo lift date is generally stored as the "start date" of a policy. Essentially, this means that the policy does not get applied until after that date passes (and prior to that date, the object defaults to Admin only access).

Administrators are able to change the lift date of the embargo by editing the policy (ResourcePolicy). These policies can be managed from the Edit Item screens.

#### Configuration of metadata fields

DSpace embargoes utilize standard metadata fields to hold both the "terms" and the "lift date". Which fields you use are configurable, and no specific metadata element is dedicated or pre-defined for use in embargo. Rather, you



must specify exactly what field you want the embargo system to examine when it needs to find the terms or assign the lift date.

The properties that specify these assignments live in `dspace.cfg`:

```
DC metadata field to hold the user-supplied embargo terms
embargo.field.terms = SCHEMA.ELEMENT.QUALIFIER

DC metadata field to hold computed "lift date" of embargo
embargo.field.lift = SCHEMA.ELEMENT.QUALIFIER
```

You replace the placeholder values with real metadata field names. If you only need the "default" embargo behavior - which essentially accepts only absolute dates as "terms" - this is the only configuration required, except as noted below.

There is also a property for the special date of "forever":

```
string in terms field to indicate indefinite embargo
embargo.terms.open = forever
```

which you may change to suit linguistic or other preference.

You are free to use existing metadata fields, or create new fields. If you choose the latter, you must understand that the embargo system does **not** create or configure these fields: i.e. you must follow all the standard documented procedures for actually creating them (i.e. adding them to the metadata registry, or to display templates, etc) - this does not happen automatically. Likewise, if you want the field for "terms" to appear in submission screens and workflows, you must follow the documented procedure for configurable submission (basically, this means adding the field to `submission-forms.xml`). The flexibility of metadata configuration makes it easy for you to restrict embargoes to specific collections, since configurable submission can be defined per collection.

Key recommendations:

1. Use a local metadata schema. Breaking compliance with the standard Dublin Core in the default metadata registry can create a problem for the portability of data to/from of your repository.
2. If using existing metadata fields, avoid any that are automatically managed by DSpace. For example, fields like "date.issued" or "date.accessioned" are normally automatically assigned, and thus must not be recruited for embargo use.
3. Do not place the field for "lift date" in submission screens. This can potentially confuse submitters because they may feel that they can directly assign values to it. As noted in the life-cycle above, this is erroneous: the lift date gets assigned by the embargo system based on the terms. Any pre-existing value will be overwritten. But see next recommendation for an exception.
4. As the life-cycle discussion above makes clear, after the terms are applied, that field is no longer actionable in the embargo system. Conversely, the "lift date" field is not actionable **until** the application. Thus you may want to consider configuring both the "terms" and "lift date" to use the same metadata field. In this way, during workflow you would see only the terms, and after item installation, only the lift date. If you wish the metadata to retain the terms for any reason, use 2 distinct fields instead.

## Operation

After the fields defined for terms and lift date have been assigned in `dspace.cfg`, and created and configured wherever they will be used, you can begin to embargo items simply by entering data (dates, if using the default setter) in the terms field. They will automatically be embargoed as they exit workflow, and that the computed lift date will be stored on the ResourcePolicy

## Extending embargo functionality

The embargo system supplies a default "interpreter/imposition" class (the "Setter").

### Setter

The default setter recognizes only two expressions of terms: either a literal, non-relative date in the fixed format "yyyy-mm-dd" (known as ISO 8601), or a special string used for open-ended embargo (the default configured value for this is "forever", but this can be changed in `dspace.cfg` to "toujours", "unendlich", etc). It will perform a minimal sanity check that the date is not in the past. Similarly, the default setter will only remove all read policies as noted above, rather than applying more nuanced rules (e.g allow access to certain IP groups, deny the rest). Fortunately, the setter class itself is configurable and you can "plug in" any behavior you like, provided it is written in java and conforms to the setter interface. The `dspace.cfg` property:

```
implementation of embargo setter plugin - replace with local implementation if
 applicable
plugin.single.org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoSetter =
org.dspace.embargo.DefaultEmbargoSetter
```

controls which setter to use.

### Lifter

**DEPRECATED:** The Lifter is no longer used in the DSpace API, and is not recommended to utilize. Embargo lift dates are now stored on ResourcePolicies and, as such, are "lifted" automatically when the embargo date passes. Manually running a "lifter" may bypass this automatic functionality and result in unexpected results.

The default lifter behavior as described above - essentially applying the collection policy rules to the item - might also not be sufficient for all purposes. It also can be replaced with another class:

```
implementation of embargo lifter plugin - - replace with local implementation if
 applicable
plugin.single.org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoLifter =
org.dspace.embargo.DefaultEmbargoLifter
```

#### 4.1.2.6 Pre-3.0 Embargo Lifter Commands

##### **DEPRECATED - Not recommended to use**

The old "embargo-lifter" command is no longer necessary to run. All Embargoes in DSpace are now stored on ResourcePolicies and are lifted automatically after the lift date passed. See [Embargo](#) (see page 172) documentation for more information.

Continuing to run the "embargo-lifter" is not recommended and this feature will be removed entirely in a future DSpace release.

If you have implemented the pre DSpace 3.0 [Embargo](#)(see page 172) feature, you will need to run it periodically to check for Items with expired embargoes and lift them.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace embargo-lifter</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoManager</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms):	Description
<code>-c</code> or <code>--check</code>	ONLY check the state of embargoed Items, do NOT lift any embargoes
<code>-i</code> or <code>--identifier</code>	Process ONLY this handle identifier(s), which must be an Item. Can be repeated.
<code>-l</code> or <code>--lift</code>	Only lift embargoes, do NOT check the state of any embargoed items.
<code>-n</code> or <code>--dryrun</code>	Do no change anything in the data model, print message instead.
<code>-v</code> or <code>--verbose</code>	Print a line describing the action taken for each embargoed item found.
<code>-q</code> or <code>--quiet</code>	No output except upon error.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Display brief help screen.

You must run the Embargo Lifter task periodically to check for items with expired embargoes and lift them from being embargoed. For example, to check the status, at the CLI:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace embargo-lifter -c
```

To lift the actual embargoes on those items that meet the time criteria, at the CLI:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace embargo-lifter -l
```

### 4.1.3 Managing User Accounts

When a user registers an account for the purpose of subscribing to change notices, submitting content, or the like, DSpace creates an EPerson record in the database. Administrators can manipulate these records in several ways.

#### 4.1.3.1 From the browser

- Login as an Administrator
- Sidemenu "Access Control" → "People"
- Browse or search for the account you wish to modify or delete.

To modify user permissions / group memberships:

- Login as an Administrator
- Sidemenu "Access Control" → "Groups"
- Edit the Group
- Search for the EPerson & add/remove them from that group.

To debug issues for a specific user, it's possible to login as (or "impersonate") that user account

- On the backend, first you MUST enable the "assumelogin" feature. This feature is disabled by default. Update this setting in your local.cfg or dspace.cfg

```
Required to use "Impersonate EPerson" feature
When enabled, a full Administrator can impersonate any other non-
Administrative user
webui.user.assumelogin = true
```

- Then, from the user interface, login as an Administrator
- Sidemenu "Access Control" → "People"
- Browse or search for the account you wish to login as
- Edit that User, and click the "Impersonate EPerson" button.
- You are now logged in as that user. You'll see an Impersonate icon/button in the header.
- You are able to temporarily manage any activities as that user.
- Once your are done, click the "Stop impersonating EPerson".
- Optionally, you may wish to disable this feature again in your local.cfg by setting the above configuration to "false" or commenting it out.

#### 4.1.3.2 From the command line

The `user` command

The `dspace user` command adds, lists, modifies, and deletes EPerson records.

To create a new user account:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace user --add --email jquser@example.com -g John -s User --password
hiddensecret
[dspace]/bin/dspace user --add --netid jquser --telephone 555-555-1234 --password
hiddensecret
```

One of the options `--email` or `--netid` is required to name the record. The complete options are:

-a	--add	required
-m	--email	email address
-n	--netid	"netid" (a username in an external system such as a directory – see Authentication Methods for details)
-p	--password	a password for the account. Required.
-g	--givenname	First or given name
-s	--surname	Last or surname
-t	--telephone	Telephone number
-l	--language	Preferred language
-c	--requireCertificate	Certificate required? See <a href="#">X.509 Authentication</a> (see page 139) for details.

To list accounts:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace user --list
```

This simply lists some characteristics of each EPerson.

short	long	meaning
-L	--list	required

To modify an account:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace user --modify -m george@example.com
```

short	long	meaning
-M	--modify	required
-m	--email	identify the account by email address

short	long	meaning
-n	--netid	identify the account by netid
-g	--givenname	First or given name
-s	--surname	Last or surname
-t	--telephone	telephone number
-l	--language	preferred language
-c	--requireCertificate	certificate required?
-C	--canLogIn	is the account enabled or disabled?
-i	--newEmail	set or change email address
-l	--newNetid	set or change netid

To delete an account:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace user --delete -n martha
```

short	long	meaning
-d	--delete	required
-m	--email	identify the account by email address
-n	--netid	identify the account by netid

### The Groomer

This tool inspects all user accounts for several conditions.

short	long	meaning
-a	--aging	find accounts not logged in since a given date

short	long	meaning
-u	--unsalted	find accounts not using salted password hashes
-b	--before	date cutoff for --aging
-d	--delete	delete disused accounts (used with --aging)

Find accounts with unsalted passwords

Earlier versions of DSpace used an "unsalted hash" method to protect user passwords. Recent versions use a salted hash. You can find accounts which have never been converted to salted hashing:

#### Discovering accounts with unsalted password hashes

```
[DSpace]/bin/dsrun org.dspace.eperson.Groomer -u
```

The output is a list of email addresses for matching accounts.

Find (and perhaps delete) disused accounts

You can list accounts which have not logged on since a given date:

#### Discovering disused accounts

```
[DSpace]/bin/dsrun org.dspace.eperson.Groomer -a -b 07/20/1969
```

The output is a tab-separated-value table of the EPerson ID, last login date, email address, netid, and full name for each matching account.

You can also have the tool delete matching accounts:

#### Deleting disused accounts

```
[DSpace]/bin/dsrun org.dspace.eperson.Groomer -a -b 07/20/1969 -d
```

### 4.1.3.3 Email Subscriptions

- [Introduction](#)
- [Adding new subscriptions](#)
- [Managing your subscriptions](#)
- [Enable sending out emails](#)

#### Introduction

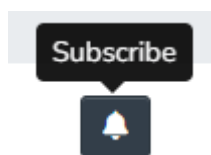
This feature is available in 7.5 or later.

Registered users can subscribe to communities or collections in DSpace. After subscribing, users will receive a regular email containing the new and modified items in the communities/collections they are subscribed to.

#### Adding new subscriptions

Adding new email subscriptions is only available to users who are logged in.

In the User interface, browse to the Community or Collection you wish to subscribe to, and click on the Subscribe button.



After clicking that button, you'll see a popup window which allows you to select the frequency of subscription you'd like.

## Subscriptions ×

---

**Publications** Community

Content:  Daily  
 Weekly  
 Monthly

---

Close Submit

Currently, three frequency options are available:

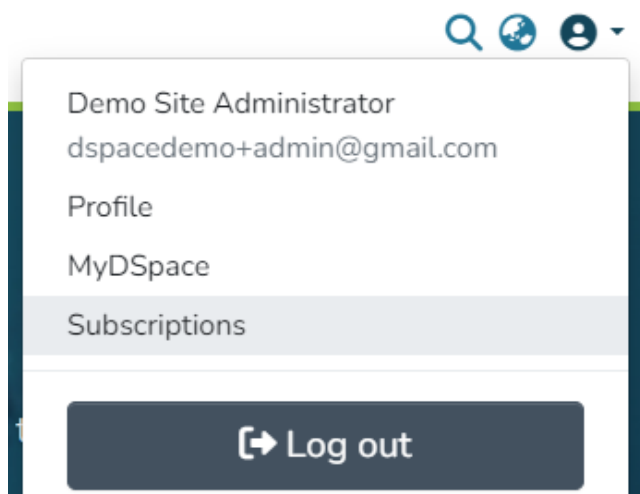
- **Daily:** Receive a daily email of Items under the Community/Collection which have been updated in the last day.



- **Weekly:** Receive a weekly email of Items under the Community/Collection which have been updated in the last week.
- **Monthly:** Receive a monthly email of Items under the Community/Collection which have been updated in the last month.

### Managing your subscriptions

To manage your subscriptions, visit your "Subscriptions" page under your user profile:



From this page, you are able to see all your current Community/Collection subscriptions. You can choose to edit or delete any in the list.

### Enable sending out emails

#### Run "subscription-send" to enable

NOTE: Until you enable the "subscription-send" script, users will not receive the email updates for their subscriptions. It is HIGHLY RECOMMENDED to enable this script via [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643). See sample settings on that page.

To send out the subscription emails you MUST invoke the **subscription-send** script from the DSpace command-line or Processes UI. It is advised to setup this script as a [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643). See sample settings on that page.

```
Example of running subscription-send to send out all "Daily" subscription emails
./dspace subscription-send -f D
```

This script requires the "-f" (--frequency) parameter with a value of "D" (Daily), "W" (Weekly), or "M" (Monthly). Keep in mind, you will want to schedule it to run on a Daily, Weekly and Monthly basis to send the appropriate emails.

## 4.1.4 Request a Copy

- [Introduction](#)(see page 187)

- [Requesting a copy using the User Interface](#)(see page 187)
- [\(Optional\) Requesting a copy with Help Desk workflow](#)(see page 190)
- [Email templates](#)(see page 192)
- [Configuration parameters](#)(see page 193)
- [Selecting Request a Copy strategy](#)(see page 194)
  - [Configure who gets request via a metadata field](#)(see page 195)
  - [Configure all requests to go to a helpdesk email](#)(see page 195)
  - [Configure all requests to go to the administrators of a Collection](#)(see page 196)
  - [Combine multiple strategies](#)(see page 196)

#### 4.1.4.1 Introduction

##### **Supported in 7.1 or above**

Request a Copy was not available in DSpace 7.0. It was restored in DSpace 7.1. See [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>307</sup>

The request a copy functionality was added to DSpace as a measure to facilitate access in those cases when uploaded content can not be openly shared with the entire world immediately after submission into DSpace. It gives users an efficient way to request access to the original submitter of the item, who can approve this access with the click of a button. This practice complies with most applicable policies as the submitter interacts directly with the requester on a case by case basis.

#### 4.1.4.2 Requesting a copy using the User Interface

Users can request a copy by clicking the file thumbnail or the name of a file that the user is restricted from viewing.

---

<sup>307</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

## Lorem Ipsum 6

**No Thumbnail Available**

**URI**  
<http://hdl.handle.net/123456789/8>

**Collections**  
Nonsense

i Full item page

**Files**

🔒 lorem-ipsium-folded.txt (446 B)

**Date**  
2021

**Authors**  
Wood, Mark

The request form asks the user for his or her name, email address and message where the reason for requesting access can be entered.

### Request a copy of the file

Enter the following information to request a copy for the following item: [Lorem Ipsum 6](#)

Requesting the following file: lorem-ipsium-folded.txt

**Name \***

**Your e-mail address \***

This email address is used for sending the file.

**Files**

All files (of this item) in restricted access

Only the requested file

**Message**

← Back
Request copy

After clicking "Request copy" at the bottom of this form, the original submitter of the item will receive an email containing the details of the request. The email also contains a link with a token that brings the original submitter to a page where he or she can either grant or reject access. If the original submitter can not evaluate the request, he or she can forward this email to the right person, who can use the link containing the token without having to log into DSpace.

## Document copy request

If you are one of the authors of the document [Lorem Ipsum 6](#), then please use one of the options below to respond to the user's request.

After choosing an option, you will be presented with a suggested email reply which you may edit.

Send copy
Don't send copy

Each of these buttons registers the choice of the submitter, displaying the following form in which an additional reason for granting or rejecting the access can be added.

## Grant document copy request

This message will be sent to the applicant of the request. The requested document(s) will be attached.

Subject

Request copy of document

Message

Dear Mark Wood,  
In response to your request I have the pleasure to send you in attachment a copy of the file(s) concerning the document: "<http://hdl.handle.net/123456789/8>" (Lorem Ipsum 6), of which I am an author.

Best regards,  
Mark Wood <[mwood@iupui.edu](mailto:mwood@iupui.edu)>

You may use this occasion to reconsider the access restrictions on the document, to avoid having to respond to these requests. If you'd like to ask the repository administrators to remove these restrictions, please check the box below.

Change to open access

← Back
Send

After hitting send, the contents of this form will be sent together with the associated files to the email address of the requester. In case the access is rejected, only the reason will be sent to the requester.

While responding positively to a request for copy, the person who approved may also ask the repository administrator to alter the access rights of the item, allowing unrestricted open access to everyone, by checking "Change to open access".

#### 4.1.4.3 (Optional) Requesting a copy with Help Desk workflow

Not yet implemented in DSpace 7. At this time there is a known bug with the HelpDesk strategy/workflow described at <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8304> which blocks users from approving/rejecting these requests via the HelpDesk workflow.

(Optional) Request Item with HelpDesk intermediary, is steered towards having your Repository Support staff act as a helpdesk that receives all incoming RequestItem requests, and then processes them. This adds the options of "Initial Reply to Requestor" to let the requestor know that their request is being worked on, and an option "Author Permission Request" which allows the helpdesk to email the author of the document, as not all documents are deposited by the author, or the author will need to be tracked down by a support staff, as DSpace might not have their current email address.

### Document copy request

IF YOU ARE THE AUTHOR (OR AN AUTHOR) OF DOCUMENT "Test item with closed access document" use the buttons to answer the user's request.

This repository will propose an appropriate model reply, which you may edit.

**Initial reply to requester**

**Author permission request**

**Send copy**

**Don't send copy**

Initial Reply to Requester

## Document copy request

Initial communication with the requester, to let them know their request is being processed.

**To:****Subject:****Message:**

Dear Jane Doe,

Thanks for your interest! Since the author owns the copyright for this work, I will contact the author and ask permission to send you a copy. I'll let you know as soon as I hear from the author.

Thanks!

Help Desk <dspace-help@myu.edu>

Author permission request, includes information about the original request (requester name, requester email, requester's reason for requesting). The author/submitter's name and email address will be pre-populated in the form from the submitter, but the email address and author name are editable, as the submitter's of content to DSpace aren't always the author.

## Document copy request

This is the text to be sent to the applicant (together with the document).

**To:****Subject:****Message:**

Dear ,

DSpace has an archived digitized copy of your work, "Test item with closed access document". The digital version is here:

<http://hdl.handle.net/123456789/1999>

It is not accessible to the public. We have received a request for access to work from someone who does not have access to it. Since you own the copyright to your work, we need your permission to grant the requester access. If you grant access, I will email the requester a digital copy.

Please let me know whether you approve or deny this request.

Requested by: Jane Doe <jane@dspace.org>

Message: I would like access to this document as I am doing research in this field at DSpace University.

Thank you!

Help Desk <dspace-help@myu.edu>

**Back**

**Send**

### 4.1.4.4 Email templates

Most of the email templates used by Request a Copy are treated just like other email templates in DSpace. The templates can be found in the /config/emails directory and can be altered just by changing the contents and restarting tomcat.

<b>request_item.admin</b>	template for the message that will be sent to the administrator of the repository, after the original submitter requests to have the permissions changed for this item.
<b>request_item.author</b>	template for the message that will be sent to the original submitter of an item with the request for copy.

The templates for emails that the requester receives, that could have been customized by the approver in the aforementioned dialog are not managed as separate email template files. These defaults are stored in the Messages.properties file under the keys

<b>itemRequest.response.body.approve</b>	Default message for informing the requester of the approval
<b>itemRequest.response.body.reject</b>	Default message for informing the requester of the rejection
<b>itemRequest.response.body.contactAuthor</b>	Default message for the helpdesk to contact the author
<b>itemRequest.response.body.contactRequester</b>	Default message for the helpdesk to contact the requester

#### 4.1.4.5 Configuration parameters

Request a copy is enabled by default. These configuration parameters in dspace.cfg relate to Request a Copy:

Property:	<code>request.item.type</code>
Example Value	<code>request.item.type = all</code>
Informational Note	This parameter manages who can file a request for an item. The parameter is optional. When it is empty or commented out, request a copy is disabled across the entire repository. When set to <b>all</b> , any user can file a request for a copy. When set to <b>logged</b> , only registered users can file a request for copy.
Property:	<code>mail.helpdesk</code>
Example Value	<code>mail.helpdesk = foo@bar.com</code>



Informational Note	<p>The email address assigned to this parameter will receive the emails both for granting or rejecting request a copy requests, as well as requests to change item policies.</p> <p>This parameter is optional. If it is empty or commented out, it will default to <code>mail.admin</code>.</p> <p><i>WARNING:</i> This setting is only utilized if the <code>RequestItemHelpdeskStrategy</code> bean is enabled in <code>[dspace]/config/spring/api/requestitem.xml</code> (see below)</p>
Property:	<code>request.item.helpdesk.override</code>
Example Value	<code>request.item.helpdesk.override = true</code>
Informational Note	<p>Should all Request Copy emails go to the <code>mail.helpdesk</code> instead of the item submitter? Default is <code>false</code>, which sends Item Requests to the item submitter.</p> <p><i>WARNING:</i> This setting is only utilized if the <code>RequestItemHelpdeskStrategy</code> bean is enabled in <code>[dspace]/config/spring/api/requestitem.xml</code> (see below)</p>

#### 4.1.4.6 Selecting Request a Copy strategy

The process that DSpace uses to determine who is the recipient of the Item Request is configurable in this Spring file: `[dspace]/config/spring/api/requestitem.xml`

##### **New in DSpace 7**

The strategy is selected using a Spring `<alias`  
`alias='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemAuthorExtractor'`  
`name='theStrategyClass' />`. Previously this was done by moving the  
`RequestItemAuthorExtractor` `id` to the selected `<bean>` definition.

Configure who gets request via a metadata field

By default the `RequestItemMetadataStrategy` is enabled, but falls back to the Item Submitter eperson's name and email. You can configure the `RequestItemMetadataStrategy` to load the author's name and email address if you set that information into an item metadata field. For example:

```
<alias alias='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemAuthorExtractor'
 name='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemMetadataStrategy' />

<bean class="org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemMetadataStrategy"
 id="org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemMetadataStrategy"
 autowireCandidate="true">
 <!--
 Uncomment these properties if you want lookup in metadata the email and the name of
 the author to contact for request copy.
 If you don't configure that or if the requested item doesn't have these metadata
 the submitter data are used as fail over

 <property name="emailMetadata" value="schema.element.qualifier" />
 <property name="fullNameMatadata" value="schema.element.qualifier" />

 -->
</bean>
```

Configure this as follows:

1. Create a metadata field which you'd like to use to store this email address (and optionally a second metadata field for the full name).
  - a. Hint: You may wish to add this metadata field to your "metadata.hide.\*" settings in local.cfg in order to ensure this metadata field is hidden from normal users & is only visible to Administrative users. That way this email address will NOT appear in Item display pages (except to Administrators)
2. Uncomment the "emailMetadata" setting above, and configure its "value" to use the new metadata field.
3. Edit the Item(s) which you wish to use this field. Add the new metadata field to those items, given it a value of the email address which will *receive* the request for copy. By default, if an Item does NOT have this metadata field, the request for copy will still go to the Item's submitter.

Configure all requests to go to a helpdesk email

At this time, all users who wish to respond to a request to the helpdesk email *must first login* to DSpace. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8636>

Another common request strategy is the use a single Helpdesk email address to receive all of these requests (see corresponding helpdesk configs in dspace.cfg above). If you wish to use the Helpdesk Strategy, you must first comment out the default `RequestItemMetadataStrategy` , bean and uncomment this bean:

```
<alias alias='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemAuthorExtractor'
 name='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemHelpdeskStrategy' />
```

```
<!-- HelpDesk to instead get RequestItem emails-->
<bean class="org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemHelpdeskStrategy"
 id="org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemHelpdeskStrategy"
 autowireCandidate="true"/>
```

Configure all requests to go to the administrators of a Collection

This strategy sends mail to all of the members of the administrators group for the collection which owns the item.

```
<alias alias='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemAuthorExtractor'
 name='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CollectionAdministratorsRequestItemStrategy' />
>

<bean class='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CollectionAdministratorsRequestItemStrategy'
 id='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CollectionAdministratorsRequestItemStrategy'
 autowireCandidate='true' />
```

Combine multiple strategies

This strategy combines the results of other strategies into a single list of email recipients. Pass the strategy a single constructor argument, being a list of the strategy beans whose output should be combined.

In the following example, email will be sent to the address(es) found in the configured metadata fields (or to the submitter if none), *and* to the owning collection's administrators.

```
<alias alias='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemAuthorExtractor'
 name='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CombiningRequestItemStrategy' />

<bean class='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CombiningRequestItemStrategy'
 id='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CombiningRequestItemStrategy'
 autowireCandidate='true'>
 <constructor-arg>
 <description>A list of references to RequestItemAuthorExtractor beans</description>
 <list>
 <ref bean='org.dspace.app.requestitem.RequestItemMetadataStrategy' />
 <ref
bean='org.dspace.app.requestitem.CollectionAdministratorsRequestItemStrategy' />
 </list>
 </constructor-arg>
</bean>
```

## 4.2 CAPTCHA Verification

This feature is available starting from DSpace 7.4

This feature, when enabled, offers a powerful additional layer of protection against possible unwanted behaviors like massive registrations performed by bots using random or stolen email addresses. Feature can be enabled or disabled by decision of DSpace instance administrator, and is based on **Google reCAPTCHA**.

reCAPTCHA supported versions are v2 with both invisible (<https://developers.google.com/recaptcha/docs/invisible>) and checkbox (<https://developers.google.com/recaptcha/docs/display>) verification modes, and v3 (<https://developers.google.com/recaptcha/docs/v3>)

### 4.2.1 Prerequisites

Before enabling the feature, a valid site and secret pair should be obtained from Google reCAPTCHA system, by registering the DSpace application on which verification will be set on reCAPTCHA admin panel (<https://www.google.com/recaptcha/admin>)

### 4.2.2 How to enable the feature

Once site and secret are available, following property, set in configuration files (dspace.cfg or local.cfg) enables the CAPTCHA verification

```
registration.verification.enabled = true
```

Whereas, in case **v2** of Google reCAPTCHA is to be enabled, these properties, in configuration files, must be set

```
google.recaptcha.version = v2
google.recaptcha.mode = <invisible or checkbox depending on which mode is wanted>
google.recaptcha.key.site = <your site here>
google.recaptcha.key.secret = <your secret here>
```

In case **v3** of Google reCAPTCHA is to be enabled, properties to be set are:

```
google.recaptcha.version = v3
google.recaptcha.key.site = <your site here>
google.recaptcha.key.secret = <your secret here>
google.recaptcha.site-verify = https://www.google.com/recaptcha/api/siteverify
google.recaptcha.key.threshold = <score threshold>
google.recaptcha.mode = invisible
```

`google.recaptcha.key.threshold` property is related to reCAPTCHA verification logic. v3 assigns to each request made against verification APIs, in this case by DSpace system during registration process. reCAPTCHA v3 returns a score (1.0 is very likely a good interaction, 0.0 is very likely a bot). By default a good threshold could be 0.5. For further information, see [https://developers.google.com/recaptcha/docs/v3#interpreting\\_the\\_score](https://developers.google.com/recaptcha/docs/v3#interpreting_the_score)


Once feature is enabled, the user registration will actually be performed if and only if the CAPTCHA token, passed in registration payload, is verified during registration process itself and is considered valid. Each registration request, even if made using DSpace REST APIs must have a captcha token in its header.

## New user registration

Register an account to subscribe to collections for email updates, and submit new items to DSpace.

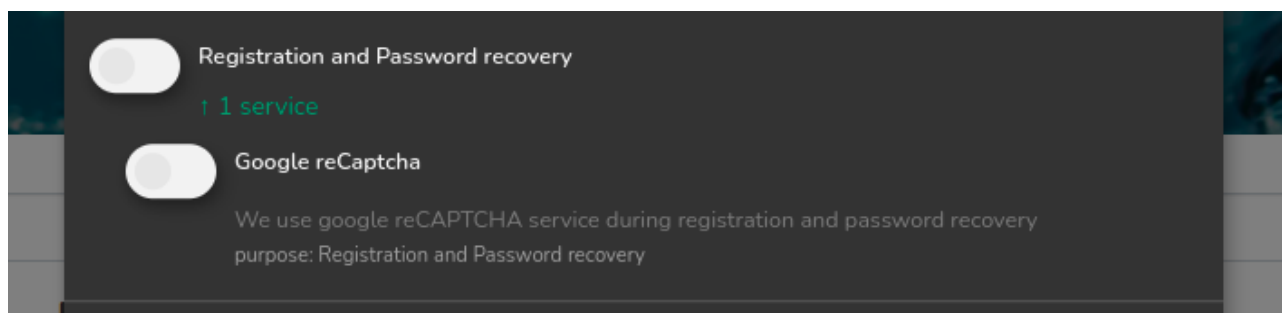
Email Address \*

This address will be verified and used as your login name.

 I'm not a robot  reCAPTCHA  
Privacy - Terms

Register

A new type of cookie has been added to DSpace cookie set, "Registration and Password Recovery". This cookie is proposed only when CAPTCHA verification is enabled.



This cookie option must be enabled by users before registering, otherwise they won't be able to perform a registration

Email Address \*

This address will be verified and used as your login name.

In order to register you must accept the **Registration and Password recovery** (Google reCaptcha) cookies.

[Open cookie settings](#)

Register

## 4.3 Configurable Entities

- [Introduction](#)(see page 199)
- [Default Entity Models](#)(see page 199)
  - [Research Entities](#)(see page 199)
  - [Journals](#)(see page 199)
- [Enabling Entities](#)(see page 200)

- 1. Configure your entity model (optionally)(see page 200)
- 2. Import entity model into the database(see page 200)
- 3. Configure Collections for each Entity type(see page 202)
- 4. Configure Submission Forms for each Entity type(see page 203)
- 5. Configure Workflow for each Entity type (optionally)(see page 204)
- 6. Configure Virtual Metadata to display for related Entities (optionally)(see page 204)
- Designing your own Entity model(see page 205)
  - Thinking about the object model(see page 205)
  - Configuring the object model(see page 205)
  - Configuring the metadata fields(see page 205)
  - Configuring the item display pages(see page 207)
  - Configuring virtual metadata(see page 207)
  - Configuring discovery(see page 207)
  - Additional Technical Details(see page 207)
- Versioning Support(see page 207)
  - Example of the latest status of a relationship (technical details)(see page 207)
  - Metadata fields that represent relations(see page 211)
  - Configure versioning for an entity type(see page 212)

### 4.3.1 Introduction

DSpace users have expressed the need for DSpace to be able to provide more support for different types of digital objects related to open access publications, such as authors/author profiles, data sets etc. Configurable Entities are designed to meet that need.

In DSpace, **an Entity is a special type of Item which often has Relationships to other Entities**. Breaking it down with more details...

- **Entity:** Every Entity is an Item.
  - This means they must belong to a Collection, just like a normal Item. (Community & Collection objects are unchanged and unaffected by Entities.)
  - Normal Items are still the "default" Item, and they are unchanged. So, not every Item is an Entity.
  - Because Entities are all Items, they are immediately usable in submission/workflow process, batch import/export, OAI-PMH, etc.
- **Entity (or Item) Type:** Entities all have a "dspace.entity.type" metadata field which defines their Entity/Item "type". For example, this type may be "Person", "Project", "Publication", "Journal", etc. It's highly visible within the User Interface as a label.
- **Relationships:** Based on that "type", an Entity may be related to other Entities via a Relationship. One Entity type may support several relationship types at once. Examples of relationship types include "isPersonOfProject" or "isPublicationOfAuthor". These relationship types are named based on the Entity "type" (as you can likely tell). Relationships also appear on Entities as metadata using the "relation" schema.
- **Virtual Metadata:** Entities of different types may also have customized visualizations in the User Interface. These visualizations may also dynamically pull in metadata from related Entities. For example, a Publication entity may be displayed in the User Interface with an author name dynamically pulled in from a related Person entity. The metadata "appears" as though it is part of the Entity you are viewing, but it is dynamically pulled via the Relationship.

Entities and their Relationships are also completely configurable. DSpace provides some sample models out of the box, which you can use directly or adapt as needed.

The Entity model also has similarities with the [Portland Common Data Model \(PCDM\)](#)<sup>308</sup>, with an Entity roughly mapping to a "pcdm:Object" and existing Communities and Collections roughly mapping to a "pcdm:Collection". However, at this time DSpace Entities concentrate more on building a graph structure of relationships, instead of a tree structure.

## 4.3.2 Default Entity Models

DSpace currently comes with the following Entity models, both of which are defined in `[dspace]/config/entities/relationship-types.xml`. These Entity models are not used by default, but may be enabled as described below.

### 4.3.2.1 Research Entities

Research Entities include Person, OrgUnit, Project and Publication. They allow you to create author profiles (Person) in DSpace, and relate those people to their department(s) (OrgUnit), grant project(s) (Project) and works (Publication).



- Each publication can link to projects, people and org units
- Each person can link to projects, publications and org units
- Each project can link to publications, people and org units
- Each org units can link to projects, people and publications

### 4.3.2.2 Journals

Journal Entities include Journal, Journal Volume, Journal Issue and Publication (article). They allow you to represent a Journal hierarchy more easily within DSpace, starting at the overall Journal, consisting of multiple Volumes, and each Volume containing multiple Issues. Issues then link to all articles (Publication) which were a part of that journal issue.

NOTE: that this model includes the same "Publication" entity as the Research Entities model described above. This Entity overlap allows you to link an article (Publication) both to its author (Person) as well as the Journal Issue it appeared in.

---

<sup>308</sup> <https://github.com/duraspace/pcdm/wiki>

### 4.3.3 Enabling Entities

By default, Entities are not used in DSpace. But, as described above several models are available out-of-the-box that may be optionally enabled.

Keep in mind, there are a few DSpace import/export features that do not yet support Entities in DSpace 7.0. These will be coming in future 7.x releases. See [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>309</sup> for prioritization information, etc.

- [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) does not fully support entity types or relationships. In other words, Entities are only represented as normal Items in AIPs
- [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)<sup>310</sup> does not fully support entity types or relationships. In other words, Entities are only represented as normal Items in SAF. (Note: early work to bring this support is already begun in <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/3322>)
- [SWORDv1 Server](#)(see page 290) and [SWORDv2 Server](#)(see page 275) does not yet support Entity or relationship creation.

#### 4.3.3.1 1. Configure your entity model (optionally)

As described above, DSpace provides two default entity models defined in `[dspace]/config/entities/relationship-types.xml`. These models may be used as-is, or modified.

You can also design your own model from scratch (see "Designing your own model" section below). So, feel free to start by modifying `relationship-types.xml`, or creating your own model based on the `relationship-types.dtd`.

#### 4.3.3.2 2. Import entity model into the database

In order to enable a defined entity model, it MUST be imported into the DSpace database This is achieved by using the "initialize-entities" script. The example below will import the "out-of-the-box" entity models into your DSpace installation

```
The -f command requires a full path to an Entities model configuration file.
[dspace]/bin/dspace initialize-entities -f [dspace]/config/entities/relationship-
types.xml
```

If an Entity (of same type name) already exists, it will be updated with any new relationships defined in `relationship-types.xml`

If an Entity (of same type name) doesn't exist, the new Entity type will be created along with its relationships defined in `relationship-types.xml`

Once imported into the Database, the overall structure is as follows:

- All valid Entity Types are stored in the "entity\_type" database table.
- All Relationship type definitions are stored in the "relationship\_type" database table
- All Relationships between entities get stored in the "relationship" table.

<sup>309</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSpace/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

<sup>310</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC6x/Importing+and+Exporting+Items+via+Simple+Archive+Format>



- Entities themselves are stored alongside Items in the 'item' table. Every Entity must have a "dspace.entity.type" metadata field whose value is a valid Entity Type (from the "entity\_type" table).

Keep in mind, your currently enabled Entity model is defined in your database, and NOT in the "relationship-types.xml". Anytime you want to update your data model, you'd update/create a configuration (like relationship-types.xml) and re-run the "initialize-entities" command.

### 4.3.3.3 3. Configure Collections for each Entity type

Because all Entities are Items, they MUST belong to a Collection. Therefore, the *recommended way* to create a different submission forms per Entity type (e.g. Person, Project, Journal, Publication, etc) is to *ensure you create a Collection for each Entity Type* (as each Collection can have a custom Submission Form).

1. Create at least one Collection for each Entity Type needing a custom Submission form. For example, a Collection for "Person" entities, and a separate one for "Publication" entities.
2. Edit the Collection. On the "Edit Metadata" page, use the "Entity Type" dropdown to select the Entity Type for this Collection.
  - a. This "Entity Type" selection will ensure that every Item submitted to this collection is automatically assigned that Entity type. So, it ties this Collection to that type of Entity (i.e. *no other type of Entity can be submitted to this Collection*).
    - i. *NOTE: Entity Type is currently not modifiable after being set.* This is because changing the Entity type may result in odd behavior (or errors) with in-progress submissions (as they will continue to use the old Entity Type). If you really need to modify the Entity Type, you can do so by changing the "dspace.entity.type" metadata value on the Collection object. At this time, changing that metadata field would need to be done at the database level.
    - b. *NOTE: In 7.0, this "Entity Type" dropdown did not exist. In that release, you have to create a "Template Item" from that page. In the Template Item, add a single metadata field "dspace.entity.type". Give it a value matching the Entity type (e.g. Publication, Person, Project, OrgUnit, Journal, JournalVolume, JournalIssue). This value IS CASE SENSITIVE and it MUST match the Entity type name defined in relationship-types.xml*
      - i. As of 7.1 (or above), if you previously created a Template Item in 7.0, the "dspace.entity.type" field value will be migrated to the "Entity Type" dropdown automatically (via a database migration).
3. In the Edit Collection page, switch to the "Assign Roles" tab and create a "Submitters" group. Add any people who should be allowed to submit/create this new Entity type.
  - a. If you only want Administrators to create this Entity type, you can skip this step. Administrators can submit to any Collection.
4. If you want to hide this Collection, you can choose to only make it visible to that same Submitters group (or Administrators). This does NOT hide the Entities from search or browse, but it will hide the Collection itself.
  - a. In the Edit Collection page, switch to the "Authorizations" tab.
  - b. Add a new Authorization of TYPE\_CUSTOM, restricting "READ" to the Submitters group created above (or Administrators if there is no Submitters group). You can also add multiple READ policies as needed. WARNING: The Submitters group MUST have READ privileges to be able to submit/create new Entities.
  - c. Remove the default READ policy giving Anonymous permissions.
  - d. Assuming you want the Entities to still be publicly available, make sure the DEFAULT\_ITEM\_READ policy is set to "Anonymous"!

Obviously, how you organize your Entity Types into Collections is up to you. You can create a single Collection for all Entities of that type (e.g. an "Author Profiles" collection could be where all "Person" Entities are submitted/stored). Or, you could create many Collections for each Entity Type (e.g. each Department in your University may have it's own Community, and underneath have a "Staff Profiles" Collection where all "Person" Entities for that department are submitted/stored). A few example structures are shown below.

Example Structure based on the departments:

- Department of Architecture
  - Building Technology Program
  - Theses - Department of Architecture
- Department of Biology
  - Theses - Biology
- People
- Projects

OR

- Department of Architecture
  - Building Technology Program
  - Theses - Department of Architecture
  - People in Department of Architecture
  - Projects in Department of Architecture
- Department of Biology
  - Theses - Biology
  - People in Department of Biology
  - Projects in Department of Biology

Example Structure based on the publication type:

- Books
  - Book Chapter
  - Edited Volume
  - Monograph
- Theses
  - Bachelor Thesis
  - Doctoral Thesis
  - Habilitation Thesis
  - Master Thesis
- People
- Projects

#### 4.3.3.4 4. Configure Submission Forms for each Entity type

You should have already created Entity-specific Collections in the previous step. Now, we just need to map those Collections to Submission processes specific to each Entity.

On the backend, you will now need to modify the `[dspace]/config/item-submission.xml` to "map" this Collection (or Collections) to the submission process for this Entity type.

- DSpace comes with sample submission forms for each Entity type.
  - The sample `<submission-process>` is defined in `item-submission.xml` and named based on the Entity type (e.g. Publication, Person, Project, etc).

- The metadata fields captured for each Entity are defined in a custom step in `submission-forms.xml`, and named in the format "[entityType]Step" (where the entity type is camelcased). For example: "publicationStep", "personStep", "projectStep".
- Optionally, modify those sample submission forms. See [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) for hints/tips on customizing the `item-submission.xml` or `submission-forms.xml` files
- Now, in `item-submission.xml`, map your Collection's handle (findable on the Collection homepage) to the submission form you want it to use. In the below example, we've mapped a single Collection to each of the out-of-the-box Entity types.

```
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/5" submission-name="Publication"/>
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/6" submission-name="Person"/>
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/7" submission-name="Project"/>
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/8" submission-name="OrgUnit"/>
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/28" submission-name="Journal"/>
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/29" submission-name="JournalVolume"/>
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/30" submission-name="JournalIssue"/>
```

Once your modifications to the submission process are complete, you will need to quickly reboot Tomcat (or your servlet container) to reload the current settings.

#### 4.3.3.5 5. Configure Workflow for each Entity type (optionally)

The DSpace workflow can be used for reviewing all objects in the Object Model since these objects are all Items, and separate collections can be used. The workflow used for e.g. a Person Object can be configured to be identical to a publication, different from a publication, or use no workflow at all.

See [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327) for more information on configuring workflows per Collection.

#### 4.3.3.6 6. Configure Virtual Metadata to display for related Entities (optionally)

"Virtual Metadata" is metadata that is dynamically determined (at the time of access) based on an Entity's relationship to other Entities. A basic example is displaying a Person Entity's name in the "dc.contributor.author" field of a related Publication Entity. That "dc.contributor.author" field doesn't actually exist on the Publication, but is dynamically added as "virtual metadata" simply because the Publication is linked to the Person (via a relationship).

Virtual Metadata is configurable for all Entities and all relationships. DSpace comes with default settings for its default Entity model, and those can be found in `[dspace]/config/spring/api/virtual-metadata.xml`. In that Spring Bean configuration file, you'll find a map of each relationship type to a metadata field & its value. Here's a summary of how it works:

- The "org.dspace.content.virtual.VirtualMetadataPopulator" bean maps every Relationship type (from `relationship-types.xml`) to a `<util:map>` definition (of a given ID) also in the `virtual-metadata.xml`

```
<!-- For example, the isAuthorOfPublication relationship is linked to a map of
ID "isAuthorOfPublicationMap" -->
```

```
<entry key="isAuthorOfPublication" value-ref="isAuthorOfPublicationMap"/>
```

- That `<util:map>` definition defines which DSpace metadata field will store the virtual metadata. It also links to the bean which will dynamically define the value of this metadata field.

```
<!-- In this example, isAuthorOfPublication will be displayed in the
"dc.contributor.author" field -->
<!-- The *value* of that field will be defined by the
"publicationAuthor_author" bean -->
<util:map id="isAuthorOfPublicationMap">
 <entry key="dc.contributor.author" value-ref="publicationAuthor_author"/>
</util:map>
```

- A bean of that ID then defines the value of the field, based on the related Entity. In this example, these fields are pulled from the related Person entity and concatenated. If the Person has "person.familyName=Jones" and "person.givenName=Jane", then the value of "dc.contributor.author" on the related Publication will be dynamically set to "Jones, Jane".

```
<bean class="org.dspace.content.virtual.Concatenate" id="publicationAuthor_au
hor">
 <property name="fields">
 <util:list>
 <value>person.familyName</value>
 <value>person.givenName</value>
 <value>organization.legalName</value>
 </util:list>
 </property>
 <property name="separator">
 <value>, </value>
 </property>
 <property name="useForPlace" value="true"/>
 <property name="populateWithNameVariant" value="true"/>
</bean>
```

If the default Virtual Metadata looks good to you, no changes are needed. If you make any changes, be sure to restart Tomcat to update the bean definitions.

## 4.3.4 Designing your own Entity model

When using a different entities model, the new model has to be configured and loaded into your repository

### 4.3.4.1 Thinking about the object model

First step: identify the entity types

- Which types of objects would you want to create items for: e.g. Person, Publication, JournalVolume
- Be careful not to confuse a type with a relationship. A Person is a type, an author is a relationship between the publication and the person

Second step: identify the relationship types

- Which relationship types would you want to create between the entity items from the previous step: e.g. `isAuthorOfPublication`, `isEditorOfPublication`, `isProjectOfPublication`, `isOrgUnitOfPerson`, `isJournalIssueOfPublication`
- Multiple relationships between the same 2 types can be created: `isAuthorOfPublication`, `isEditorOfPublication`
- Relationships are automatically bidirectional, so no need to worry about whether you want to display the authors in a publication or the publications of an author

Third step: visualize your model

- By creating a drawing of your model, you'll be able to quickly verify whether anything is missing



#### 4.3.4.2 Configuring the object model

Configure the model in `relationship-types.xml`

- Similar to the default [relationship-types.xml](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace/config/entities/relationship-types.xml)<sup>311</sup>, configure a relationship type per connection between 2 entity types
- Include the 2 entity type names which are being connected.
- Determine a clear and unambiguous name for the relation in both directions
- Optionally: determine the cardinality (min/max occurrences) for the relationships
- Optionally: determine default behavior for copying metadata if the relationship is deleted

#### 4.3.4.3 Configuring the metadata fields

Determining the metadata fields to use

- Dublin Core works for publications, but not for a Person, JournalVolume, ...
- There are many standards which can be easily configured: [schema.org](http://schema.org)<sup>312</sup>, eurocris, datacite, ...
- Pick a schema which suits your needs

Configure the submission forms

- Add a form in [submission-forms.xml](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace/config/submission-forms.xml)<sup>313</sup> for each entity type, containing the relevant metadata fields
- See also [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) documentation.

<sup>311</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace/config/entities/relationship-types.xml>

<sup>312</sup> <http://schema.org>

<sup>313</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace/config/submission-forms.xml>

- [Configure which relationships to create](#)<sup>314</sup>

#### 4.3.4.4 Configuring the item display pages

- The metadata configuration is not specific to configurable entities.
- Similar to other customizations to the item display pages, configure in Angular which metadata fields to display and their label. A template per entity type can be created
- The relationship display is similar to the metadata configuration
- Similar to the metadata configuration: configure in Angular which relationship to display and their label

#### 4.3.4.5 Configuring virtual metadata

- The isAuthorOfPublication relationship can be displayed for the Publication item as dc.contributor.author
- The isOrgUnitOfPerson relationship can be displayed for the Person item as organization.legalName
- This can be configured in [virtual-metadata.xml](#)<sup>315</sup>

#### 4.3.4.6 Configuring discovery

- Configure the discovery facets, filters, sort options, ...
- The facets for a Person can be job title, organization, project, ...
- The filters for a Person can be person.familyName, person.givenName, ...

#### 4.3.4.7 Additional Technical Details

The original Entities design document is available in Google Docs at: <https://docs.google.com/document/d/1wEmHirFzrY3qgGtRr2YBQwGOvH1luTVGmxDIdnqvwxM/edit>

We are working on pulling that information into this Wiki space as a final home, but currently some technical details exist only in that document.

A talk on Configurable Entities was also presented at [DSpace 7 at OR2021](#)<sup>316</sup>

### 4.3.5 Versioning Support

DSpace entities **fully support versioning**. For the most part, this works like any other item. For example, when creating a new version of an item, a new item is created and all metadata values of the preceding item are copied over to the new item. Special care was taken to version relationships between entities.

#### 4.3.5.1 Example of the latest status of a relationship (technical details)

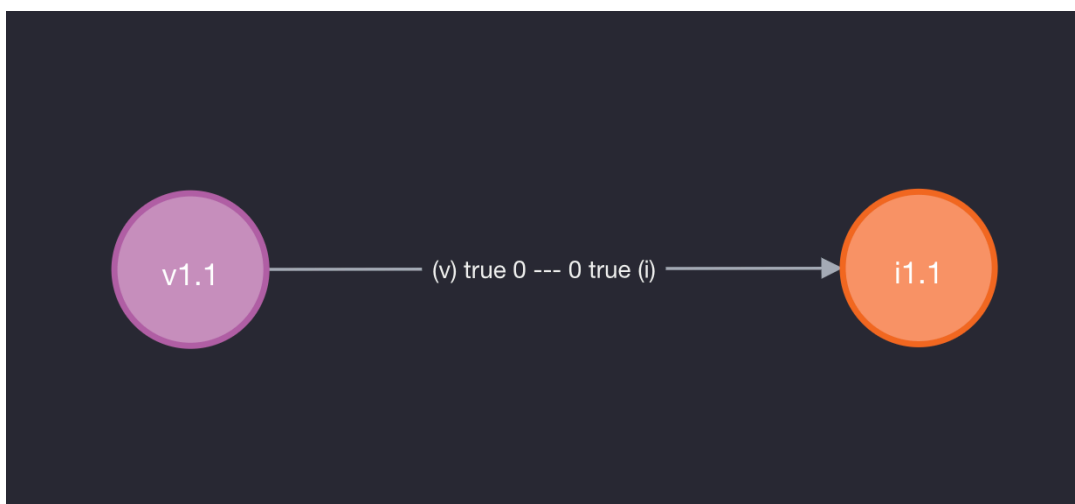
To understand how versioning between entities with relationships works, let's walk through the following example:

---

<sup>314</sup> [https://docs.google.com/document/d/1X0XsppZYOTptbmq7yXwmu7FbMAfLxxOCONbw0\\_rl7jY/edit#heading=h.5bu9shx0j942](https://docs.google.com/document/d/1X0XsppZYOTptbmq7yXwmu7FbMAfLxxOCONbw0_rl7jY/edit#heading=h.5bu9shx0j942)

<sup>315</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace/config/spring/api/virtual-metadata.xml>

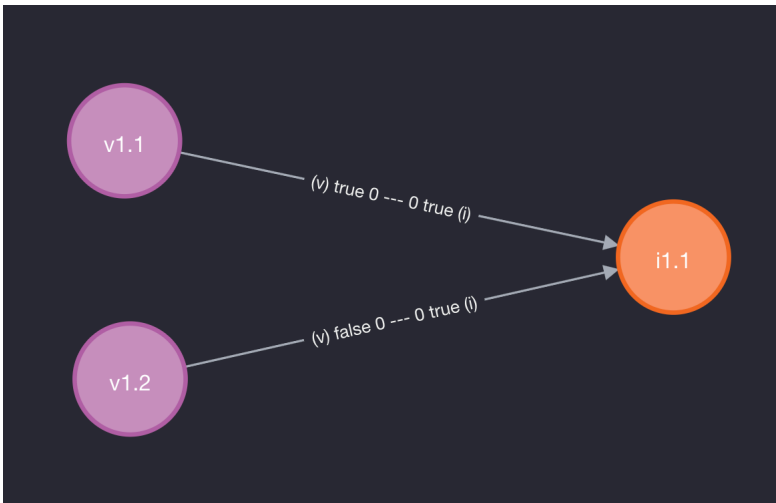
<sup>316</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+at+OR2021>



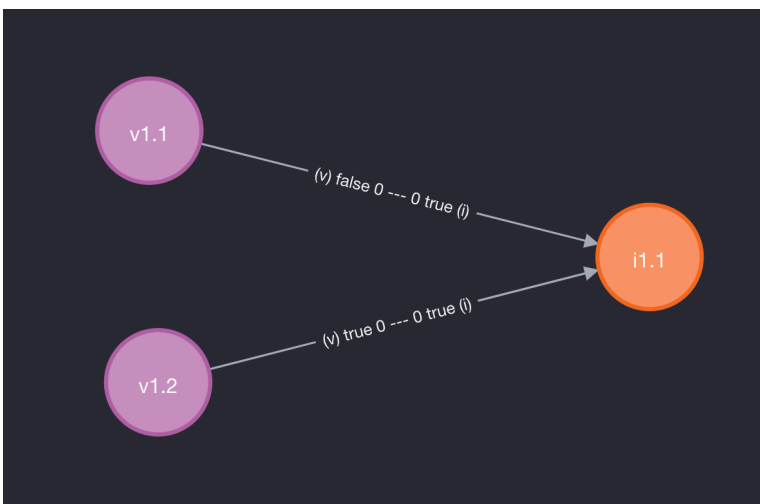
Consider Volume 1.1 (left side) and Issue 1.1 (right side). Both are archived and both are the first version. Note that on the arrow, representing the relation between the volume and the issue, two booleans and two numbers are indicated.

- The boolean on side `(v)` is true if and only if volume 1.1 is the latest version that is relevant to issue 1 (even though it may be possible that volume 1.2, the second version of volume 1, exists). This means that on the item page of issue 1.1, a link to the item page of volume 1.1 should be displayed. It also means that searching for (the uuid of) issue 1.1 should yield volume 1.1.
- The boolean on side `(i)` is true if and only if issue 1.1 is the latest version that is relevant to volume 1.1 (even though it may be possible that issue 1.1, the second version of issue 1, exists). This means that on the item page of volume 1.1, a link to the item page of issue 1.1 should be displayed. It also means that searching for (the uuid of) volume 1.1 should yield issue 1.1.
- The number on side `(v)` indicates the place at which the virtual metadata representing this relationship (if any) will appear on volume 1.1. E.g. using the out-of-the-box configuration in `virtual-metadata.xml`, metadata field `publicationissue.issueNumber` of issue 1.1 would appear as metadata field `publicationissue.issueNumber` on volume 1.1 on place 0 (i.e. as the first metadata value).
- The number on side `(i)` indicates the place at which the virtual metadata representing this relationship (if any) will appear on issue 1.1. E.g. using the out-of-the-box configuration in `virtual-metadata.xml`, metadata field `publicationvolume.volumeNumber` of volume 1.1 would appear as metadata field `publicationvolume.volumeNumber` on issue 1.1 on place 0 (i.e. as the first metadata value).

With the groundwork out of the way, let's see what happens when we create a new version of volume 1.1. The new version is not yet archived, because it still has to be edited in the submission UI.



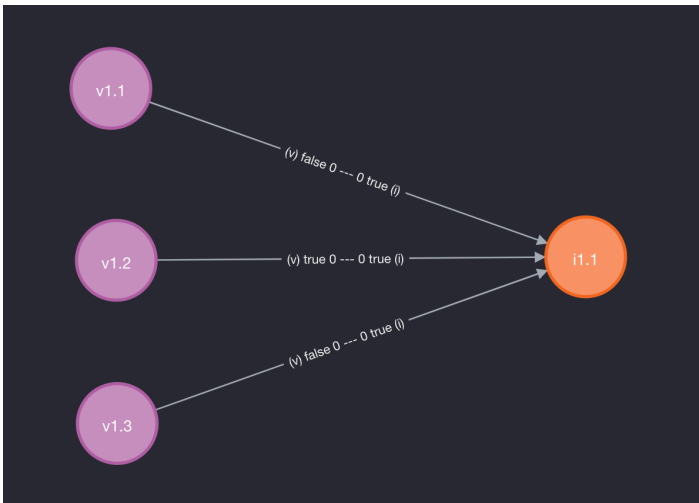
At this moment, when viewing the item page of issue 1.1, the user should only see volume 1.1 (as volume 1.2 is not yet archived). When viewing the item page of volume 1.1, nothing has changed: only a link to issue 1.1 will appear. When viewing the item page of volume 1.2 (e.g. as an admin), a link to issue 1.1 will appear as well.



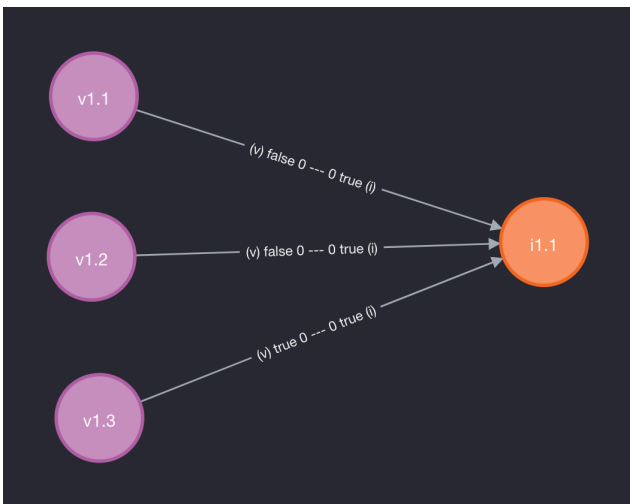
As soon as volume 1.2 is deposited (archived), the "latest status" of both volume 1.1 and volume 1.2 are updated. When viewing the item page of issue 1.1, volume 1.2 should be visible. When viewing the item pages of the volumes, nothing has changed.

Let's create another version of the volume (not archived):

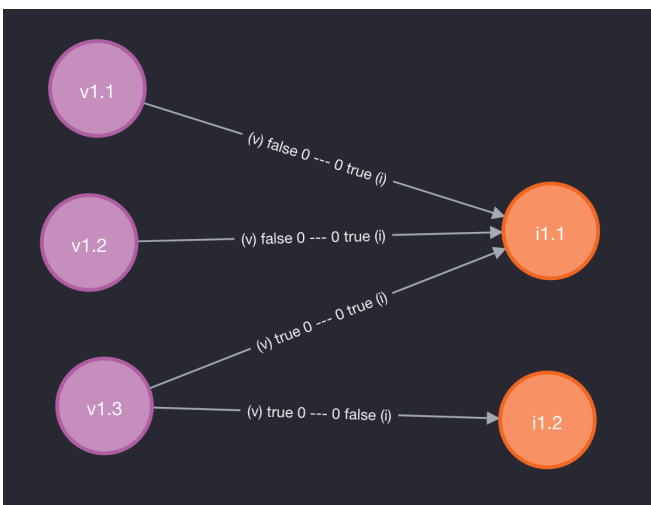




And after archiving volume 1.3:



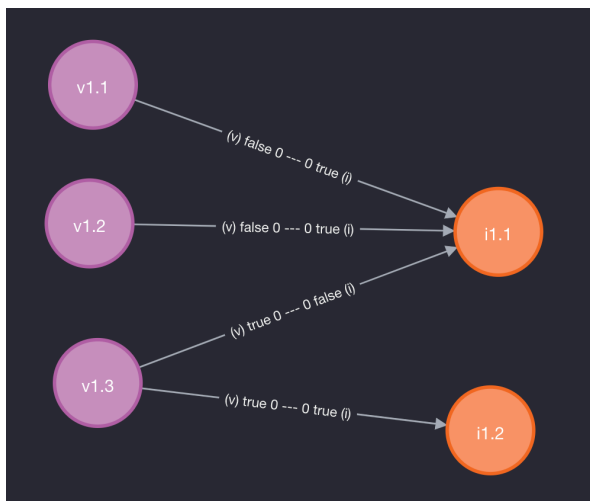
What happens if we create a new version of issue 1.1?



Only the relationship with volume 1.3 is copied. For issue 1.1, no relationship was displayed with volume 1.1 and 1.2. (The relationships still exist in the database, but are not visible in the UI.). For volume 1.1, a relationship to issue 1.1 remains present, but it should not be updated to issue 1.2. For issue 1.2, these relationships are longer relevant, so they are not copied.

On the item pages of volume 1.1, volume 1.2 and volume 1.3, you should see issue 1.1 (as 1.2 is not archived yet)

Because issue 1.2 is not yet archived, all volumes are still pointing to issue 1.1. Let's archive it:



Now on the item pages of volume 1.1 and volume 1.2, you should see issue 1.1; it's the latest issue at the time that those volumes were superseded by volume 1.3. On the item page of volume 1.3, you'll see issue 1.3. On the item page of issue 1.1 you'll still see volume 1.3 as well.

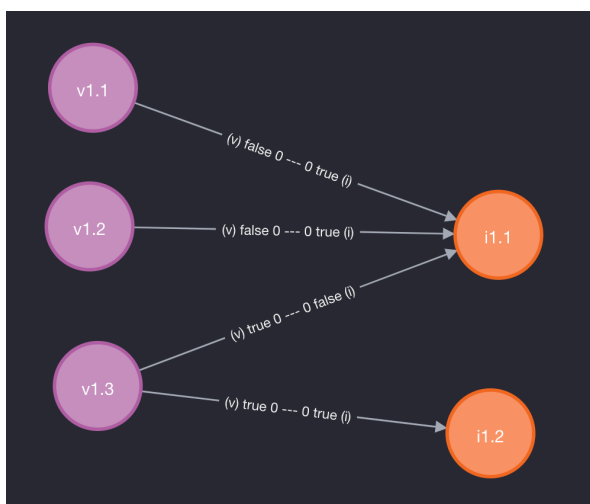
#### 4.3.5.2 Metadata fields that represent relations

If you have a closer look at items with relationships, you'll notice two categories of metadata fields that are controlled by DSpace:

- `relation.*` fields, for example `relation.isIssueOfJournalVolume` on volume items
- `relation.*.latestForDiscovery` fields, for example `relation.isIssueOfJournalVolume.latestForDiscovery` on volume items

Metadata fields of the first category (`relation.*`) contain all uuids of related items that the current item can see. I.e. a relationship has to exist between the current item and the other item, and the other item needs to have "latest status" for that specific relationship.

As an example take the following state of the previous section:



Item issue 1.1 will contain metadata field `relation.isJournalVolumeOfIssue` with as value the uuid of volume 1.3. Volume 1.1 and 1.2 are not included because they don't have "latest status" on the relevant relationships.

Metadata fields of the second category ( `relation.*.latestForDiscovery` ) contain all uuids of the items for which the current item is visible. I.e. a relationship has to exist between the current item and the other item, and the current item needs to have "latest status" for that specific relationship. These fields are particularly important for indexing and search, because they allow to us to surface all the items that a particular item is referring to.

Continuing on the example above, issue 1.1 will have metadata field `relation.isJournalVolumeOfIssue.latestForDiscovery` containing the uuids of volume 1.1 and 1.2.

With issue 1.1 containing volume 1.1 and 1.2 in `relation.isJournalVolumeOfIssue.latestForDiscovery` , a search on the volume 1.1 page for all issues containing volume 1.1 will display issue 1.1 thanks to this setup.

#### 4.3.5.3 Configure versioning for an entity type

DSpace contains a bunch of example entity types that support versioning out of the box. What follows is an overview of the requirements to make entity versioning work.

1. when introducing a relationship type, make sure to add four new metadata fields to `config/registries/relationship-formats.xml` .E.g. `relation.isAuthorOfPublication` , `relation.isAuthorOfPublication.latestForDiscovery` , `relation.isPublicationOfAuthor` and `relation.isPublicationOfAuthor.latestForDiscovery`
2. when introducing an entity type, filter items on `latestVersion:true` in `discovery.xml` . This will be the default search, which ensures older versions are not shown
  - If you want to show all related items, including older versions, you can create another discovery config without `latestVersion:true` . This should be used for item pages displaying the related items to the current item using the discovery search.

- The entity types configured out-of-the-box have discovery config `<entity-type>` and discovery config `<entity-type>Relationships` for that purpose.

Note that versioning support is enabled by default, but can be turned off by setting `versioning.enabled = false` in `versioning.cfg` or `local.cfg`. For more details on item versioning, see: <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC7x/Item+Level+Versioning>(see page 407).

## 4.4 Curation System

DSpace supports running curation tasks, which are described in this section. DSpace includes several useful tasks out-of-the-box, but the system also is designed to allow new tasks to be added between releases, both general purpose tasks that come from the community, and [locally written](#)(see page 703) and deployed tasks.

- [Tasks](#)(see page 213)
- [Activation](#)(see page 214)
- [Task Invocation](#)(see page 214)
  - [On the command line](#)(see page 214)
  - [In the admin UI](#)(see page 215)
  - [In workflow](#)(see page 217)
  - [In arbitrary user code](#)(see page 218)
- [Asynchronous \(Deferred\) Operation](#)(see page 218)
- [Task Output and Reporting](#)(see page 219)
  - [Status Code](#)(see page 219)
  - [Result String](#)(see page 219)
  - [Reporting Stream](#)(see page 219)
- [Task Properties](#)(see page 219)
- [Task Parameters](#)(see page 220)
- [Scripted Tasks](#)(see page 220)

### 4.4.1 Tasks

The goal of the curation system ("CS") is to provide a simple, extensible way to manage routine content operations on a repository. These operations are known to CS as "tasks", and they can operate on any `DSpaceObject` (i.e. subclasses of `DSpaceObject`) - which means the entire Site, Communities, Collections, and Items - viz. core data model objects. Tasks may elect to work on only one type of DSpace object - typically an Item - and in this case they may simply ignore other data types (tasks have the ability to "skip" objects for any reason). The DSpace core distribution will provide a number of useful tasks, but the system is designed to encourage local extension - tasks can be written for any purpose, and placed in any java package. This gives DSpace sites the ability to customize the behavior of their repository without having to alter - and therefore manage synchronization with - the DSpace source code. What sorts of activities are appropriate for tasks?

Some examples:

- apply a virus scan to item bitstreams (this will be our example below)
- profile a collection based on format types - good for identifying format migrations
- ensure a given set of metadata fields are present in every item, or even that they have particular values
- call a network service to enhance/replace/normalize an item's metadata or content
- ensure all item bitstreams are readable and their checksums agree with the ingest values

Since tasks have access to, and can modify, DSpace content, performing tasks is considered an administrative function to be available only to knowledgeable collection editors, repository administrators, sysadmins, etc. No tasks are exposed in the public interfaces.

## 4.4.2 Activation

For CS to run a task, the code for the task must of course be included with other deployed code (to `[dspace]/lib`, WAR, etc) but it must also be declared and given a name. This is done via a configuration property in `[dspace]/config/modules/curate.cfg` as follows:

```
Task Class implementations
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.NoOpCurationTask = noop
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask = org.dspace.ctask.general.ProfileFormats
= profileformats
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.RequiredMetadata = requiredmetadata
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask = org.dspace.ctask.general.ClamScan =
vscan
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.MicrosoftTranslator = translate
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.MetadataValueLinkChecker = checklinks
```

For each activated task, a key-value pair is added. The key is the fully qualified class name and the value is the *taskname* used elsewhere to configure the use of the task, as will be seen below. Note that the `curate.cfg` configuration file, while in the config directory, is located under "modules". The intent is that tasks, as well as any configuration they require, will be optional "add-ons" to the basic system configuration. Adding or removing tasks has no impact on `dspace.cfg`.

For many tasks, this activation configuration is all that will be required to use it. But for others, the task needs specific configuration itself. A concrete example is described below, but note that these task-specific configuration property files also reside in `[dspace]/config/modules`

## 4.4.3 Task Invocation

Tasks are invoked using CS framework classes that manage a few details (to be described below), and this invocation can occur wherever needed, but CS offers great versatility "out of the box":

### 4.4.3.1 On the command line

A simple tool "CurationCli" provides access to CS via the command line. This tool bears the name "curate" in the DSpace launcher. For example, to perform a virus check on collection "4":

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace curate -t vscan -i 123456789/4
```

The complete list of options:

option	meaning
-t taskname	name of task to perform.
-T filename	name of file containing a list of tasknames to be performed.
-e epersonID	(required) email address or netid of the E-Person performing the task
-i identifier	ID of object to curate. May be (1) a Handle, (2) a workflow ID, or (3) 'all' to operate on the whole repository.
-q queue	name of queue to process. -i and -q are mutually exclusive.
-l limit	maximum number of objects in Context cache. If absent, unlimited objects may be added.
-s scope	declare a scope for database transactions. Scope must be: (1) 'open' (default value), (2) 'curation' or (3) 'object'.
-v	emit verbose output
-r filename	emit reporting to the named file. '-r -' writes reporting to standard out. If not specified, report is discarded silently.
-p name=value	set a runtime task parameter <code>name</code> to the value <code>value</code> . May be repeated as needed. See "Task parameters" below.

As with other command-line tools, these invocations could be placed in a cron table and run on a fixed schedule, or run on demand by an administrator.

#### 4.4.3.2 In the admin UI

In the UI, there are several ways to execute configured Curation Tasks:

1. **From the "Curate" tab/button that appears on each "Edit Community/Collection/Item" page:** this tab allows an Administrator, Community Administrator or Collection Administrator to run a Curation Task on that particular Community, Collection or Item. When running a task on a Community or Collection, that task will also execute on all its child objects, unless the Task itself states otherwise (e.g. running a task on a Collection will also run it across all Items within that Collection).
  - NOTE: Community Administrators and Collection Administrators can only run Curation Tasks on the Community or Collection which they administer, along with any child objects of that Community or Collection. For example, a Collection Administrator can run a task on that specific Collection, or on any of the Items within that Collection.
  - NOTE: The "Curate" tab on the Item page hasn't been created yet. It is possible though to run a Curation Task on an Item from the "Curation Task" menu in the Admin Sidebar... you'd just need to add in an Item Handle. - 2022-08-17

2. **From the Administrator's "Curation Tasks" page:** This option is only available to DSpace Administrators, and appears in the Administrative side-menu. This page allows an Administrator to run a Curation Task across a single object, or all objects within the entire DSpace site.
- In order to run a task from this interface, you must enter in the handle for the DSpace object. To run a task site-wide, you can use the handle: `[your-handle-prefix]/0`

Each of the above pages exposes a drop-down list of configured tasks, with a button to 'perform' the task, or queue it for later operation (see section below). Not all activated tasks need appear in the Curate tab - you filter them by means of a configuration property. This property also permits you to assign to the task a more user-friendly name than the PluginManager *taskname*. The property resides in `[dspace]/config/modules/curate.cfg`:

```
curate.ui.tasknames = profileformats = Profile Bitstream Formats
curate.ui.tasknames = requiredmetadata = Check for Required Metadata
```

When a task is selected from the drop-down list and performed, the tab displays both a phrase interpreting the "status code" of the task execution, and the "result" message if any has been defined. When the task has been queued, an acknowledgement appears instead. You may configure the words used for status codes in `curate.cfg` (for clarity, language localization, etc):

```
curate.ui.statusmessages = -3 = Unknown Task
curate.ui.statusmessages = -2 = No Status Set
curate.ui.statusmessages = -1 = Error
curate.ui.statusmessages = 0 = Success
curate.ui.statusmessages = 1 = Fail
curate.ui.statusmessages = 2 = Skip
curate.ui.statusmessages = other = Invalid Status
```

Report output from tasks run in this way is collected by configuring a Reporter plugin. You must have exactly one Reporter configured. The default is to use the FileReporter, which writes a single report of the output of all tasks in the run over all of the selected objects, to a file in the reports directory (configured as `report.dir`). See

`[DSpace]/config/modules/submission-configuration.cfg` for the value of `plugin.single.org317.dspace.curate.Reporter`. Other Reporter implementations are provided, or you may supply your own.

As the number of tasks configured for a system grows, a simple drop-down list of **all** tasks may become too cluttered or large. DSpace 1.8+ provides a way to address this issue, known as *task groups*. A task group is a simple collection of tasks that the Admin UI will display in a separate drop-down list. You may define as many or as few groups as you please. If no groups are defined, then all tasks that are listed in the *ui.tasknames* property will appear in a single drop-down list. If at least *one* group is defined, then the admin UI will display **two** drop-down lists. The first is the list of task groups, and the second is the list of task names associated with the selected group. A few key points to keep in mind when setting up task groups:

- a task can appear in more than one group if desired
- tasks that belong to no group are *invisible* to the admin UI (but of course available in other contexts of use)

The configuration of groups follows the same simple pattern as tasks, using properties in `[dspace]/config/modules/curate.cfg`. The group is assigned a simple logical name, but also a localizable name that appears in the UI. For example:

---

<sup>317</sup> <http://plugin.single.org>

```
ui.taskgroups contains the list of defined groups, together with a pretty name for
 UI display
curate.ui.taskgroups = replication = Backup and Restoration Tasks
curate.ui.taskgroups = integrity = Metadata Integrity Tasks
.....
each group membership list is a separate property, whose value is comma-separated
list of logical task names
curate.ui.taskgroup.integrity = profileformats, requiredmetadata
....
```

#### 4.4.3.3 In workflow

CS provides the ability to attach any number of tasks to standard DSpace workflows. Using a configuration file `[dspace]/config/workflow-curation.xml`, you can declaratively (without coding) wire tasks to any step in a workflow. An example:

```
<taskset-map>
 <mapping collection-handle="default" taskset="cautious" />
</taskset-map>
<tasksets>
 <taskset name="cautious">
 <flowstep name="step1">
 <task name="vscan">
 <workflow>reject</workflow>
 <notify on="fail">$flowgroup</notify>
 <notify on="fail">$colladmin</notify>
 <notify on="error">$siteadmin</notify>
 </task>
 </flowstep>
 </taskset>
</tasksets>
```

This markup would cause a virus scan to occur during step one of workflow for any collection, and automatically reject any submissions with infected files. It would further notify (via email) both the reviewers (step 1 group), and the collection administrators, if either of these are defined. If it could not perform the scan, the site administrator would be notified.

The notifications use the same procedures that other workflow notifications do - namely email. There is a new email template defined for curation task use: `[dspace]/config/emails/flowtask_notify`. This may be language-localized or otherwise modified like any other email template.

Tasks wired in this way are normally performed as soon as the workflow step is entered, and the outcome action (defined by the 'workflow' element) immediately follows. It is also possible to delay the performance of the task - which will ensure a responsive system - by queuing the task instead of directly performing it:



```
...
 <taskset name="cautious">
 <flowstep name="step1" queue="workflow">
 ...
```

This attribute (which must always follow the "name" attribute in the flowstep element), will cause all tasks associated with the step to be placed on the queue named "workflow" (or any queue you wish to use, of course), and further has the effect of **suspending** the workflow. When the queue is emptied (meaning all tasks in it performed), then the workflow is restarted. Each workflow step may be separately configured,

Like configurable submission, you can assign these task rules per collection, as well as having a default for any collection.

As with task invocation from the administrative UI, workflow tasks need to have a Reporter configured in `submission-configuration.cfg`.

#### 4.4.3.4 In arbitrary user code

If these pre-defined ways are not sufficient, you can of course manage curation directly in your code. You would use the CS helper classes. For example:

```
Collection coll = (Collection)HandleManager.resolveToObject(context, "123456789/4");
Curator curator = new Curator();
curator.setReporter(System.out);
curator.addTask("vscan").curate(coll);
System.out.println("Result: " + curator.getResult("vscan"));
```

would do approximately what the command line invocation did. the method "curate" just performs all the tasks configured (you can add multiple tasks to a curator).

The above directs report output to standard out. Any class which implements Appendable may be set as the reporter class.

#### 4.4.4 Asynchronous (Deferred) Operation

Because some tasks may consume a fair amount of time, it may not be desirable to run them in an interactive context. CS provides a simple API and means to defer task execution, by a queuing system. Thus, using the previous example:

```
Curator curator = new Curator();
curator.addTask("vscan").queue(context, "monthly", "123456789/4");
```

would place a request on a named queue "monthly" to virus scan the collection. To read (and process) the queue, we could for example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace curate -q monthly
```

use the command-line tool, but we could also read the queue programmatically. Any number of queues can be defined and used as needed.

In the administrative UI curation "widget", there is the ability to both perform a task, but also place it on a queue for later processing.

## 4.4.5 Task Output and Reporting

Few assumptions are made by CS about what the 'outcome' of a task may be (if any) - it could e.g. produce a report to a temporary file, it could modify DSpace content silently, etc. But the CS runtime does provide a few pieces of information whenever a task is performed:

### 4.4.5.1 Status Code

This was mentioned above. This is returned to CS whenever a task is called. The complete list of values:

```
-3 NOTASK - CS could not find the requested task
-2 UNSET - task did not return a status code because it has not yet run
-1 ERROR - task could not be performed
 0 SUCCESS - task performed successfully
 1 FAIL - task performed, but failed
 2 SKIP - task not performed due to object not being eligible
```

In the administrative UI, this code is translated into the word or phrase configured by the *ui.statusmessages* property (discussed above) for display.

### 4.4.5.2 Result String

The task may define a string indicating details of the outcome. This result is displayed, in the "curation widget" described above:

```
"Virus 12312 detected on Bitstream 4 of 1234567789/3"
```

CS does not interpret or assign result strings, the task does it. A task may not assign a result, but the "best practice" for tasks is to assign one whenever possible.

### 4.4.5.3 Reporting Stream

For very fine-grained information, a task may write to a *reporting* stream. This stream may be sent to a file or to standard out, when running a task from the command line. Tasks run from the administrative UI or a workflow use a configured Reporter class to collect report output. Your own code may collect the report using any implementation of the Appendable interface. Unlike the result string, there is no limit to the amount of data that may be pushed to this stream.

## 4.4.6 Task Properties

DSpace 1.8 introduces a new "idiom" for tasks that require configuration data. It is available to any task whose implementation extends `AbstractCurationTask`, but is completely optional. There are a number of

problems that task properties are designed to solve, but to make the discussion concrete we will start with a particular one: the problem of hard-coded configuration file names. A task that relies on configuration data will typically encode a fixed reference to a configuration file name. For example, the virus scan task reads a file called " `clamav.cfg` ", which lives in `[dspace]/config/modules` . It could look up its configuration properties in the ordinary way. But tasks are supposed to be written by anyone in the community and shared around (without prior coordination), so if another task uses the same configuration file name, there is a name **collision** here that can't be easily fixed, since the reference is hard-coded in each task. In this case, if we wanted to use both at a given site, we would have to alter the source of one of them - which introduces needless code localization and maintenance.

Task properties gives us a simple solution. Here is how it works: suppose that both colliding tasks instead use the task properties facility instead of ordinary configuration lookup. For example, each asks for the property `clamav.service.host` . At runtime, the curation system **resolves** this request to a set of configuration properties, and it uses the *name the task has been configured as* as the prefix of the properties. So, for example, if both were installed (in, say, `curate.cfg` ) as:

```
org.dspace.ctask.general.ClamAv = vscan,
org.community.ctask.ConflictTask = virusscan,
....
```

then the task property `foo` will resolve to the property named `vscan.foo` when called from ClamAv task, but `virusscan.foo` when called from ConflictTask's code. Note that the " `vscan` " etc are locally assigned names, so we can always prevent the "collisions" mentioned, and we make the tasks much more portable, since we remove the "hard-coding" of config names.

Another use of task properties is to support multiple task profiles. Suppose we have a task that we want to operate in one of two modes. A good example would be a mediafilter task that produces a thumbnail. We can either create one if it doesn't exist, or run with "-force" which will create one regardless. Suppose this behavior was controlled by a property in a config file. If we configured the task as "thumbnail", then we would have in (perhaps) `[dspace]/config/modules/thumbnail.cfg` :

```
...other properties...
thumbnail.thumbnail.maxheight = 80
thumbnail.thumbnail.maxwidth = 80
thumbnail.forceupdate=false
```

The thumbnail generating task code would then resolve "forcedupdate" to see whether filtering should be forced.

But an obvious use-case would be to want to run force mode **and** non-force mode from the admin UI on different occasions. To do this, one would have to stop Tomcat, change the property value in the config file, and restart, etc. However, we can use task properties to elegantly rescue us here. All we need to do is go into the `config/modules` directory, and create a new file perhaps called: `thumbnail.force.cfg` . In this file, we put the properties:

```
thumbnail.force.thumbnail.maxheight = 80
thumbnail.force.thumbnail.maxwidth = 80
thumbnail.force.forceupdate=true
```

Then we add a new task (really just a new name, no new code) in `curate.cfg`:

```
org.dspace.ctask.general.ThumbnailTask = thumbnail
org.dspace.ctask.general.ThumbnailTask = thumbnail.force
```

Consider what happens: when we perform the task " `thumbnail` " (using `taskProperties`), it uses the `thumbnail.*` properties and operates in "non-force" profile (since the value is false), but when we run the task " `thumbnail.force` " the curation system uses the `thumbnail.force.*` properties. Notice that we did all this via local configuration - we have not had to touch the source code at all to obtain as many "profiles" as we would like.

See Task Properties in [Curation Tasks](#)(see page 703) for details of how properties are resolved in task code.

#### 4.4.7 Task Parameters

New in DSpace 7, you can pass parameters to a task at invocation time. These runtime parameters will be presented to the task as if they were task properties (see above) and, if present, will override the value of identically-named properties. Example:

##### Task parameters

```
bin/dspace curate -t reticulate -i 123456789/36 -p foreground=red -p background=green
```

#### 4.4.8 Scripted Tasks

The procedure to set up curation tasks in Jython is described on a separate page: [Curation tasks in Jython](#)(see page 707)

DSpace 1.8 includes limited (and somewhat experimental) support for deploying and running tasks written in languages other than Java. Since version 6, Java has provided a standard way (API) to invoke so-called scripting or dynamic language code that runs on the java virtual machine (JVM). Scripted tasks are those written in a language accessible from this API. The exact number of supported languages will vary over time, and the degree of maturity of each language, or suitability of the language for curation tasks will also vary significantly. However, preliminary work indicates that Ruby (using the JRuby runtime) and Groovy may prove viable task languages.

Support for scripted tasks does **not** include any DSpace pre-installation of the scripting language itself - this must be done according to the instructions provided by the language maintainers, and typically only requires a few additional jars on the DSpace classpath. Once one or more languages have been installed into the DSpace deployment, task support is fairly straightforward. One new property must be defined in `[dspace]/config/modules/curate.cfg`:

```
curate.script.dir = ${dspace.dir}/scripts
```

This merely defines the directory location (usually relative to the deployment base) where task script files should be kept. This directory will contain a "catalog" of scripted tasks named `task.catalog` that contains information needed to run scripted tasks. Each task has a 'descriptor' property with value syntax:

```
<engine>|<relFilePath>|<implClassCtor>
```

An example property for a link checking task written in Ruby might be:

```
linkchecker = ruby|rubytask.rb|LinkChecker.new
```

This descriptor means that a "ruby" script engine will be created, a script file named "rubytask.rb" in the directory `<script.dir>` will be loaded and the resolver will expect an evaluation of "LinkChecker.new" will provide a correct implementation object. Note that the task must be configured in all other ways just like java tasks (in `ui.tasknames`, `ui.taskgroups`, etc).

Script files may embed their descriptors to facilitate deployment. To accomplish this, a script must include the descriptor string with syntax:

```
$td=<descriptor> somewhere on a comment line. For example:
```

```
My descriptor $td=ruby|rubytask.rb|LinkChecker.new
```

For reasons of portability, the `<relFilePath>` component may be omitted in this context. Thus, "`$td=ruby||LinkChecker.new`" will be expanded to a descriptor with the name of the embedding file.

## 4.4.9 Bundled Tasks

DSpace bundles a small number of tasks of general applicability. Those that do not require configuration (or have usable default values) are activated by default to demonstrate the use of the curation system. They may be deactivated by means of configuration, if desired, without affecting system integrity. Those that require configuration may be enabled (activated) by means editing DSpace configuration files. Each task is briefly described in this section.

All bundled tasks are in the package `org.dspace.ctask.general`. So, for example, to activate the no-operation task, which is implemented in the class `NoOpCurationTask`, one would configure:

```
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.NoOpCurationTask = noop
```

### 4.4.9.1 Bitstream Format Profiler Task

The task with the taskname 'formatprofiler' (in the admin UI it is labeled "Profile Bitstream Formats") examines all the bitstreams in an item and produces a table ("profile") which is assigned to the result string. It is activated by default, and is configured to display in the administrative UI. The result string has the layout:

```
10 (K) Portable Network Graphics
5 (S) Plain Text
```

where the left column is the count of bitstreams of the named format and the letter in parentheses is an abbreviation of the repository-assigned support level for that format:

```
U Unsupported
K Known
S Supported
```

The profiler will operate on any DSpace object. If the object is an item, then only that item's bitstreams are profiled; if a collection, all the bitstreams of all the items; if a community, all the items of all the collections of the community.

#### 4.4.9.2 Link Checker Tasks

Two link checker tasks, `BasicLinkChecker` and `MetadataValueLinkChecker`, can be used to check for broken or unresolvable links appearing in item metadata.

This task is intended as a prototype / example for developers and administrators who are new to the curation system.

These tasks are not configurable.

##### Basic Link Checker

`BasicLinkChecker` iterates over all metadata fields ending in "uri" (eg. `dc.relation.uri`, `dc.identifier.uri`, `dc.source.uri` ...), attempts a GET to the value of the field, and checks for a 200 OK response. Results are reported in a simple "one row per link" format.

##### Metadata Value Link Checker

`MetadataValueLinkChecker` parses all metadata fields for valid HTTP URLs, attempts a GET to those URLs, and checks for a 200 OK response. Results are reported in a simple "one row per link" format.

#### 4.4.9.3 MetadataWebService Task

DSpace item metadata can contain any number of identifiers or other field values that participate in networked information systems. For example, an item may include a DOI which is a controlled identifier in the DOI registry. Many web services exist to leverage these values, by using them as 'keys' to retrieve other useful data. In the DOI case for example, CrossRef provides many services that given a DOI will return author lists, citations, etc. The `MetadataWebService` task enables the use of such services, and allows you to obtain and (optionally) add to DSpace metadata the results of any web service call to any service provider. You simply need to describe what service you want to call, and what to do with the results. Using the task code ( `[taskcode]` ), you can create as many distinct tasks as you have services you want to call.

Each task description lives in a configuration file in 'config/modules' (or in your `local.cfg`), and is a simple properties file, like all other DSpace configuration files (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)). All of the settings associated with a given task should be prepended with the task name (as assigned in `config/modules/curate.cfg`).

For example, if the task name is `issn2pubname` in `curate.cfg`, then all settings should start with "`issn2pubname.`" Your settings can either be set in your `local.cfg`, or in a new configuration file which is included (`include = path/to/new/file.cfg`) into either your `local.cfg` or the `dspace.cfg`. See the [Configuration Reference](#) (see page 724) for examples of including configuration files, or modifying your `local.cfg`

There are a few required properties you must configure for any service, and for certain services, a few additional ones. An example will illustrate best.

### ISSN to Publisher Name

Suppose items (holding journal articles) include 'dc.identifier.issn' when available. We might also want to catalog the publisher name (in 'dc.publisher'). The cataloger could look up the name given the ISSN in various sources, but this 'research' is tedious, costly and error-prone. There are many good quality, free web services that can furnish this information. So we will configure a `MetadataWebService` task to call a service, and then automatically assign the publisher name to the item metadata. As noted above, all that is needed is a description of the service, and what to do with the results. Create a new file in 'config/modules' called 'issn2pubname.cfg' (or whatever is mnemonically useful to you). The first property in this file describes the service in a 'template'. The template is just the URL to call the web service, with parameters to substitute values in. Here we will use the 'Sherpa/Romeo' service:

```
[taskcode].template=http://www.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/api29.php?issn={dc.identifier.issn}
```

When the task runs, it will replace '{dc.identifier.issn}' with the value of that field in the item, If the field has multiple values, the first one will be used. As a web service, the call to the above URL will return an XML document containing information (including the publisher name) about that ISSN. We need to describe what to do with this response document, i.e. what elements we want to extract, and what to do with the extracted content. This description is encoded in a property called the 'datamap'. Using the example service above we might have:

```
[taskcode].datamap=//publisher/name=>dc.publisher,//romeocolor
```

Each separate instruction is separated by a comma, so there are 2 instructions in this map. The first instruction essentially says: find the XML element 'publisher name' and assign the value or values of this element to the 'dc.publisher' field of the item. The second instruction says: find the XML element 'romeocolor', but do not add it to the DSpace item metadata - simply add it to the task result string (so that it can be seen by the person running the task). You can have as many instructions as you like in a datamap, which means that you can retrieve multiple values from a single web service call. A little more formally, each instruction consists of one to three parts. The first (mandatory) part identifies the desired data in the response document. The syntax (here '//publisher/name') is an XPath 1.0 expression, which is the standard language for navigating XML trees. If the value is to be assigned to the DSpace item metadata, then 2 other parts are needed. The first is the 'mapping symbol' (here '=>'), which is used to determine how the assignment should be made. There are 3 possible mapping symbols, shown here with their meanings:

```
'->' mapping will add to any existing value(s) in the item field
'=>' mapping will replace any existing value(s) in the item field
'~>' mapping will add *only if* item field has no existing value(s)
```

The third part (here 'dc.publisher') is simply the name of the metadata field to be updated. These two mandatory properties (template and datamap) are sufficient to describe a large number of web services. All that is required to

enable this task is to edit ' `config/modules/curate.cfg` ' (or your `local.cfg` ), and add ' `issn2pubname` ' to the list of tasks:

```
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.MetadataWebService = issn2pubname
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.MetadataWebService = doi2crossref
```

If you wish the task to be available in the Admin UI, see the [Invocation from the Admin UI](#) (see page 0) documentation (above) about how to configure it. The remaining sections describe some more specialized needs using the MetadataWebService task.

### HTTP Headers

For some web services, protocol and other information is expressed not in the service URL, but in HTTP headers. Examples might be HTTP basic auth tokens, or requests for a particular media type response. In these cases, simply add a property to the configuration file (our example was 'issn2pubname.cfg') containing all headers you wish to transmit to the service:

```
[taskcode].headers=Accept: application/xml | | Cache-Control: no-cache
```

You can specify any number of headers, just separate them with a 'double-pipe' (' | | '). Ensure that any commas in values are escaped (with backslash comma, i.e. ' \, ').

### Transformations

One potential problem with the simple parameter substitutions performed by the task is that the service might expect a different format or expression of a value than the way it is stored in the item metadata. For example, a DOI service might expect a bare prefix/suffix notation ('10.000/12345'), whereas the DSpace metadata field might have a URI representation ('<http://dx.doi.org/10.000/12345>'). (see page 223) In these cases one can declare a 'transformation' of a value in the template. For example:

```
[taskcode].template=http://www.crossref.org/openurl/?id={doi:dc.relation.isversionof}
&format=unixref
```

The 'doi:' prepended to the metadata field name declares that the value of the 'dc.relation.isversionof' field should be *transformed* before the substitution into the template using a transformation named 'doi'. The transformation is itself defined in the same configuration file as follows:

```
[taskcode].transform.doi=match 10. trunc 60
```

This would be read as: exclude the value string up to the occurrence of '10.', then truncate any characters after length 60. You may define as many transformations as you want in any task, although generally 1 or 2 will suffice. The keywords 'match', 'trunc', etc are names of 'functions' to be applied (in the order entered). The currently available functions are:



```
'cut' <number> = remove number leading characters
'trunc' <number> = remove trailing characters after number length
'match' <pattern> = start match at pattern
'text' <characters> = append literal characters (enclose in ' ' when whitespace
needed)
```

When the task is run, if the transformation results in an invalid state (e.g. cutting more characters than there are in the value), the un-transformed value will be used and the condition will be logged. Transformations may also be applied to values returned from the web service. That is, one can apply the transformation to a value before assigning it to a metadata field. In this case, the declaration occurs in the datamap property, not the template:

```
[taskcode].datamap=//publisher/name=>shorten:dc.publisher,//romeocolor
```

Here the task will apply the 'shorten' transformation (which must be defined in the same config file) before assigning the value to 'dc.publisher'.

#### Result String Programatic Use

Normally a task result string appears in a window in the admin UI after it has been invoked. The MetadataWebService task will concatenate all the values declared in the 'datamap' property and place them in the result string using the format: 'name:value name:value' for as many values as declared. In the example above we would get a string like 'publisher: Nature romeocolor: green'. This format is fine for simple display purposes, but can be tricky if the values contain spaces. You can override the space separator using an optional property 'separator' (put in the config file, with all other properties). If you use:

```
[taskcode].separator=| |
```

for example, it becomes easy to parse the result string and preserve spaces in the values. This use of the result string can be very powerful, since you are essentially creating a map of returned values, which can then be used to populate a user interface, or any other way you wish to exploit the data (drive a workflow, etc).

#### Limits and Use

A few limitations should be noted. First, since the response parsing utilizes XPath, the service can only operate on XML, (not JSON) response documents. Most web services can provide either, so this should not be a major obstacle. The MetadataWebService can be used in many ways: showing an admin a value in the result string in a UI, run in a batch to update a set of items, etc. One excellent configuration is to wire these tasks into submission workflow, so that 'automatic cataloging' of many fields can be performed on ingest.

#### 4.4.9.4 MicrosoftTranslator Task

Microsoft Translator uses the Microsoft Translate API to translate metadata values from one source language into one or more target languages.

This task can be configured to process particular fields, and use a default language if no authoritative language for an item can be found. Bing API v2 key is needed.

MicrosoftTranslator extends the more generic AbstractTranslator. This now seems wasteful, but a GoogleTranslator had also been written to extend AbstractTranslator. Unfortunately, Google has announced they are

decommissioning free Translate API service, so this task hasn't been included in DSpace's general set of curation tasks.

Translated fields are added in addition to any existing fields, with the target language code in the 'language' column. This means that running a task multiple times over one item with the same configuration could result in duplicate metadata.

This task is intended as a prototype / example for developers and administrators who are new to the curation system.

### Configure Microsoft Translator

An example configuration file can be found in `[dspace]/config/modules/translator.cfg`.

```
#-----#
#-----TRANSLATOR CURATION TASK CONFIGURATIONS-----#
#-----#
Configuration properties used solely by MicrosoftTranslator
Curation Task (uses Microsoft Translation API v2)
#-----#
Translation field settings
##
Authoritative language field
This will be read to determine the original language an item was submitted in
Default: dc.language
translator.field.language = dc.language

Metadata fields you wish to have translated
translator.field.targets = dc.description.abstract, dc.title, dc.type

Translation language settings
##
If the language field configured in translate.field.language is not present
in the record, set translate.language.default to a default source language
or leave blank to use autodetection
translator.language.default = en

Target languages for translation
translator.language.targets = de, fr

Translation API settings
##
Your Bing API v2 key and/or Google "Simple API Access" Key
(note to Google users: your v1 API key will not work with Translate v2,
you will need to visit https://code.google.com/apis/console and activate
a Simple API Access key)
##
You do not need to enter a key for both services.
translator.api.key.microsoft = YOUR_MICROSOFT_API_KEY_GOES_HERE
translator.api.key.google = YOUR_GOOGLE_API_KEY_GOES_HERE
```

#### 4.4.9.5 NoOp Task

This task does absolutely nothing. It is intended as a starting point for developers and administrators wishing to learn more about the curation system.

#### 4.4.9.6 Required Metadata Task

The " `requiredmetadata` " task examines item metadata and determines whether fields that the web submission ( `input-forms.xml` ) marks as required are present. It sets the result string to indicate either that all required fields are present, or constructs a list of metadata elements that are required but missing. When the task is performed on an item, it will display the result for that item. When performed on a collection or community, the task be performed on each item, and will display the *last* item result. If all items in the community or collection have all required fields, that will be the last in the collection. If the task fails for any item (i.e. the item lacks all required fields), the process is halted. This way the results for the 'failed' items are not lost.

#### 4.4.9.7 Virus Scan Task

The " `vscan` " task performs a virus scan on the bitstreams of items using the ClamAV software product.

Clam AntiVirus is an open source (GPL) anti-virus toolkit for UNIX. A port for Windows is also available. The virus scanning curation task interacts with the ClamAV virus scanning service to scan the bitstreams contained in items, reporting on infection(s). Like other curation tasks, it can be run against a container or item, in the GUI or from the command line. It should be installed according to the documentation at <http://www.clamav.net><sup>318</sup>. It should not be installed in the dspace installation directory. You may install it on the same machine as your dspace installation, or on another machine which has been configured properly.

Setup the service from the ClamAV documentation.

This plugin requires a ClamAV daemon installed and configured for TCP sockets. Instructions for installing ClamAV ([http://<sup>319</sup>www.clamav.net/doc/latest/<sup>320</sup>clamdoc<sup>321</sup>.pdf<sup>322</sup>](http://www.clamav.net/doc/latest/clamdoc.pdf))

NOTICE: The following directions assume there is a properly installed and configured clamav daemon. Refer to links above for more information about ClamAV.

The Clam anti-virus database must be updated regularly to maintain the most current level of anti-virus protection. Please refer to the ClamAV documentation for instructions about maintaining the anti-virus database.

#### DSpace Configuration

In `[dspace]/config/modules/curate.cfg` , activate the task:

- Add the plugin to the list of curation tasks.

```
Task Class implementations
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.NoOpCurationTask = noop
```

<sup>318</sup> <http://www.clamav.net/>

<sup>319</sup> <http://www.clamav.net/doc/latest/clamdoc.pdf>

<sup>320</sup> <http://www.clamav.net/doc/latest/clamdoc.pdf>

<sup>321</sup> <http://www.clamav.net/doc/latest/clamdoc.pdf>

<sup>322</sup> <http://www.clamav.net/doc/latest/clamdoc.pdf>

```

plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask = org.dspace.ctask.general.ProfileFormats
= profileformats
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.RequiredMetadata = requiredmetadata
This is the ClamAV scanner plugin
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask = org.dspace.ctask.general.ClamScan =
vscan
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.MicrosoftTranslator = translate
plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask =
org.dspace.ctask.general.MetadataValueLinkChecker = checklinks

```

- Optionally, add the vscan friendly name to the configuration to enable it in the administrative it in the administrative user interface.

```

curate.ui.tasknames = profileformats = Profile Bitstream Formats
curate.ui.tasknames = requiredmetadata = Check for Required Metadata
curate.ui.tasknames = checklinks = Check Links in Metadata
Enable ClamAV from UI
curate.ui.tasknames = vscan = Virus Scan

```

- In `[dspace]/config/modules`, edit configuration file `clamav.cfg`:

```

clamav.service.host = 127.0.0.1
Change if not running on the same host as your DSpace installation.
clamav.service.port = 3310
Change if not using standard ClamAV port
clamav.socket.timeout = 120
Change if longer timeout needed
clamav.scan.failfast = false
Change only if items have large numbers of bitstreams

```

- Finally, if desired virus scanning can be enabled as part of the submission process upload file step. In `[dspace]/config/modules`, edit configuration file `submission-curation.cfg`:

### NOT YET SUPPORTED IN 7.0

```

submission-curation.virus-scan = true

```

#### Task Operation from the Administrative user interface

Curation tasks can be run against container and item dspace objects by e-persons with administrative privileges. A curation tab will appear in the administrative ui after logging into DSpace:

1. Click on the curation tab.
2. Select the option configured in `ui.tasknames` above.
3. Select Perform.

Task Operation from the Item Submission user interface

If desired virus scanning can be enabled as part of the submission process upload file step. In `[dspace]/config/modules`, edit configuration file `submission-curation.cfg`:

```
NOT YET SUPPORTED IN 7.0

submission-curation.virus-scan = true
```

Task Operation from the curation command line client

To output the results to the console:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace curate -t vscan -i <handle of container or item dso> -r -
```

Or capture the results in a file:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace curate -t vscan -i <handle of container or item dso> -r - > /
<path...>/<name>
```

Table 1 – Virus Scan Results Table

GUI (Interactive Mode)	FailFast	Expectation
Container	T	Stop on 1 <sup>st</sup> Infected Bitstream
Container	F	Stop on 1 <sup>st</sup> Infected Item
Item	T	Stop on 1 <sup>st</sup> Infected Bitstream
Item	F	Scan all bitstreams
<b>Command Line</b>		
Container	T	Report on 1 <sup>st</sup> infected bitstream within an item/ Scan all contained Items

Container	F	Report on all infected bitstreams/Scan all contained Items
Item	T	Report on 1 <sup>st</sup> infected bitstream
Item	F	Report on all infected bitstreams

## 4.5 Exporting Content and Metadata

General top level page to group all DSpace facilities for exporting content and metadata.

- [Linked \(Open\) Data](#)(see page 231)
- [SWORDv1 Client](#)(see page 247)
- [Exchanging Content Between Repositories](#)(see page 249)
- [OAI](#)(see page 250)
- [OpenAIRE4 Guidelines Compliancy](#)(see page 272)

### 4.5.1 Linked (Open) Data

- [Introduction](#)(see page 231)
  - [Exchanging repository contents](#)(see page 231)
  - [Terminology](#)(see page 232)
- [Linked \(Open\) Data Support within DSpace](#)(see page 233)
  - [Architecture / Concept](#)(see page 233)
  - [Install a Triple Store](#)(see page 234)
  - [Default configuration and what you should change](#)(see page 235)
  - [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 235)
    - [\[dspace-source\]/dspace/config/modules/rdf.cfg](#)(see page 236)
    - [\[dspace-source\]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-\\*.ttl](#)(see page 245)
    - [\[dspace-source\]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/metadata-rdf-mapping.ttl](#)(see page 246)
    - [\[dspace-source\]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/fuseki-assembler.ttl](#)(see page 246)
    - [\[dspace-source\]/dspace/config/spring/api/rdf.xml](#)(see page 246)
  - [Maintenance](#)(see page 247)

#### 4.5.1.1 Introduction

##### Exchanging repository contents

Most sites on the Internet are oriented towards human consumption. While HTML may be a good format for presenting information to humans, it is not a good format to export data in a way easy for a computer to work with. Like most software for building repositories, DSpace supports [OAI-PMH](#)(see page 250) as an interface to expose the stored metadata. While OAI-PMH is well known in the field of repositories, it is rarely known elsewhere (e.g. [Google retired its support for OAI-PMH in 2008](#)<sup>323</sup>). The Semantic Web is a generic approach to publish data on the Internet together with information about its semantics. Its application is not limited to repositories or libraries and it has a

<sup>323</sup> <http://googlewebmastercentral.blogspot.de/2008/04/retiring-support-for-oai-pmh-in.html>

growing user base. [RDF](http://www.w3.org/standards/techs/rdf#w3c_all)<sup>324</sup> and [SPARQL](http://www.w3.org/TR/sparql11-query/)<sup>325</sup> are W3C-released standards for publishing structured data on the web in a machine-readable way. The data stored in repositories is particularly suited for use in the Semantic Web, as the metadata are already available. It doesn't have to be generated or entered manually for publication as Linked Data. For most repositories, at least for Open Access repositories, it is quite important to share their stored content. Linked Data is a rather big chance for repositories to present their content in a way that can easily be accessed, interlinked and (re)used.

## Terminology

We don't want to give a full introduction into the Semantic Web and its technologies here as this can be easily found in many places on the web. Nevertheless, we want to give a short glossary of the terms used most often in this context to make the following documentation more readable.

<b>Semantic Web</b>	The term "Semantic Web" refers to the part of the Internet containing Linked Data. Just like the World Wide Web, the Semantic Web is also woven together by links among the data.
<b>Linked Data</b> <b>Linked Open Data</b>	Data in RDF, following the <a href="http://www.w3.org/DesignIssues/LinkedData.html">Linked Data Principles</a> <sup>326</sup> are called Linked Data. The Linked Data Principles describe the expected behavior of data publishers who shall ensure that the published data are easy to find, easy to retrieve, can be linked easily and link to other data as well.  Linked Open Data is Linked Data published under an open license. There is no technical difference between Linked Data and Linked Open Data (often abbreviated as LOD). It is only a question of the license used to publish it.
<b>RDF</b> <b>RDF/XML</b> <b>Turtle</b> <b>N-Triples</b> <b>N3-Notation</b>	RDF is an acronym for Resource Description Framework, a metadata model. Don't think of RDF as a format, as it is a model. Nevertheless, there are different formats to serialize data following RDF. RDF/XML, Turtle, N-Triples and N3-Notation are probably the most well-known formats to serialize data in RDF. While RDF/XML uses XML, Turtle, N-Triples and N3-Notation don't and they are easier for humans to read and write. When we use RDF in DSpace configuration files, we currently prefer Turtle (but the code should be able to deal with any serialization).
<b>Triple Store</b>	A triple store is a database to natively store data following the RDF model. Just as you have to provide a relational database for DSpace, you have to provide a Triple Store for DSpace if you want to use the LOD support.
<b>SPARQL</b>	The SPARQL Protocol and RDF Query Language is a family of protocols to query triple stores. Since version 1.1, SPARQL can be used to manipulate triple stores as well, to store, delete or update data in triple stores. DSpace uses SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol and SPARQL 1.1 Query Language to communicate with the Triple Store. The SPARQL 1.1 Query Language is often referred to simply as SPARQL, so expect the SPARQL 1.1 Query Language if no other specific protocol out of the SPARQL family is explicitly specified.

324 [http://www.w3.org/standards/techs/rdf#w3c\\_all](http://www.w3.org/standards/techs/rdf#w3c_all)

325 <http://www.w3.org/TR/sparql11-query/>

326 <http://www.w3.org/DesignIssues/LinkedData.html>

**SPARQL endpoint**

A SPARQL endpoint is a SPARQL interface of a triple store. Since SPARQL 1.1, a SPARQL endpoint can be either read-only, allowing only to query the stored data; or readable and writable, allowing to modify the stored data as well. When talking about a SPARQL endpoint without specifying which SPARQL protocol is used, an endpoint supporting SPARQL 1.1 Query Language is meant.

#### 4.5.1.2 Linked (Open) Data Support within DSpace

Starting with DSpace 5.0, DSpace provides support for publishing stored contents in form of Linked (Open) Data.

##### Architecture / Concept

To publish content stored in DSpace as Linked (Open) Data, the data have to be converted into RDF. The conversion into RDF has to be configurable as different DSpace instances may use different metadata schemata, different persistent identifiers (DOI, Handle, ...) and so on. Depending on the content to convert, configuration and other parameters, conversion may be time-intensive and impact performance. Content of repositories is much more often read than created, deleted or changed because the main goal of repositories is to safely store their contents. For this reason, the content stored within DSpace is converted and stored in a triple store immediately after it is created or updated. The triple store serves as a cache and provides a SPARQL endpoint to make the converted data accessible using SPARQL. The conversion is triggered automatically by the DSpace event system and can be started manually using the command line interface – both cases are documented below. There is no need to backup the triple store, as all data stored in the triple store can be recreated from the contents stored elsewhere in DSpace (in the assetstore(s) and the database). Beside the SPARQL endpoint, the data should be published as RDF serialization as well. With `dspace-rdf` DSpace offers a module that loads converted data from the triple store and provides it as an RDF serialization. It currently supports RDF/XML, Turtle and N-Triples.

Repositories use Persistent Identifiers to make content citable and to address content. Following the Linked Data Principles, DSpace uses a Persistent Identifier in the form of HTTP(S) URIs, converting a Handle to `http://hdl.handle.net/<handle>` and a DOI to `http://dx.doi.org/<doi>`. Altogether, DSpace Linked Data support spans all three Layers: the storage layer with a triple store, the business logic with classes to convert stored contents into RDF, and the application layer with a module to publish RDF serializations. Just like DSpace allows you to choose Oracle or Postgresql as the relational database, you may choose between different triple stores. The only requirements are that the triple store must support SPARQL 1.1 Query Language and SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol which DSpace uses to store, update, delete and load converted data in/out of the triple store and uses the triple store to provide the data over a SPARQL endpoint.

##### **Store public data only in the triple store!**

The triple store should contain only data that are public, because the DSpace access restrictions won't affect the SPARQL endpoint. For this reason, DSpace converts only archived, discoverable (non-private) Items, Collections and Communities which are readable for anonymous users. Please consider this while configuring and/or extending DSpace Linked Data support.

The [org.dspace.rdf.conversion](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion)<sup>327</sup> package contains the classes used to convert the repository content to RDF. The conversion itself is done by plugins. The [org.dspace.rdf.conversion.ConverterPlugin](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion/ConverterPlugin.java)<sup>328</sup> interface is really simple, so

<sup>327</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion>

<sup>328</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion/ConverterPlugin.java>



take a look at it you if can program in Java and want to extend the conversion. The only thing important is that plugins must only create RDF that can be made publicly available, as the triple store provides it using a sparql endpoint for which the DSpace access restrictions do not apply. Plugins converting metadata should check whether a specific metadata field needs to be protected or not (see [org.dspace.app.util.MetadataExposure](#)<sup>329</sup> on how to check that). The [MetadataConverterPlugin](#)<sup>330</sup> is heavily configurable (see below) and is used to convert the metadata of Items. The [StaticDSOConverterPlugin](#)<sup>331</sup> can be used to add static RDF Triples (see below). The [SimpleDSORelationsConverterPlugin](#)<sup>332</sup> creates links between items and collections, collections and communities, subcommunities and their parents, and between top-level communities and the information representing the repository itself.

As different repositories uses different persistent identifiers to address their content, different algorithms to create URIs used within the converted data can be implemented. Currently HTTP(S) URIs of the repository (called local URIs), Handles and DOIs can be used. See the configuration part of this document for further information. If you want to add another algorithm, take a look at the [org.dspace.rdf.storage.URIGenerator](#)<sup>333</sup> interface.

### Install a Triple Store

In addition to a normal DSpace installation you have to install a triple store. You can use any triple store that supports SPARQL 1.1 Query Language and SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol. If you do not have one yet, you can use Apache Fuseki. Download Fuseki from its [official download page](#)<sup>334</sup> and unpack the downloaded archive. The archive contains several scripts to start Fuseki. Use the start script appropriate to the OS of your choice with the options '--localhost --config=<dspace-install>/config/modules/rdf/fuseki-assembly.ttl'. Instead of changing to the directory into which you unpacked Fuseki, you may set the variable FUSEKI\_HOME. If you're using Linux and bash, you unpacked Fuseki to /usr/local/jena-fuseki-1.0.1 and you installed DSpace to [dspace-install], this would look like this:

```
export FUSEKI_HOME=/usr/local/jena-fuseki-1.0.1 ; $FUSEKI_HOME/fuseki-server --
localhost --config [dspace-install]/config/modules/rdf/fuseki-assembly.ttl
```

Fuseki's archive contains a script to start Fuseki automatically at startup as well.

Make Fuseki connect to localhost only, by using the argument --localhost when launching if you use the configuration provided with DSpace! The configuration contains a writeable SPARQL endpoint that allows any connection to change/delete the content of your triple store.

Use Apache mod proxy, mod rewrite or any other appropriate web server/proxy to make localhost:3030/dspace/sparql readable from the internet. Use the address under which it is accessible as the address of your public sparql endpoint (see the property public.sparql.endpoint in the [configuration reference](#)(see [page 235](#)) below.).

The configuration provided within DSpace makes it store the files for the triple store under [dspace-install]/triplestore. Using this configuration, Fuseki provides three SPARQL endpoints: two read-only endpoints and one that can be used to change the data of the triple store. **You should not use this configuration if you let Fuseki connect to the internet directly** as it would make it possible for anyone to delete, change or add information to

<sup>329</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/app/util/MetadataExposure.java>

<sup>330</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion/MetadataConverterPlugin.java>

<sup>331</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion/StaticDSOConverterPlugin.java>

<sup>332</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/conversion/SimpleDSORelationsConverterPlugin.java>

<sup>333</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/rdf/storage/URIGenerator.java>

<sup>334</sup> [http://jena.apache.org/documentation/serving\\_data/index.html#download-fuseki](http://jena.apache.org/documentation/serving_data/index.html#download-fuseki)

the triple store. The option `--localhost` tells Fuseki to listen only on the loopback device. You can use Apache `mod_proxy` or any other web or proxy server to make the read-only SPARQL endpoint accessible from the internet. With the configuration described, Fuseki listens to the port 3030 using HTTP. Using the address `http://localhost:3030/` you can connect to the Fuseki Web UI. `http://localhost:3030/dspace/data` addresses a writeable SPARQL 1.1 HTTP Graph Store Protocol endpoint, and `http://localhost:3030/dspace/get` a read-only one. Under `http://localhost:3030/dspace/sparql` a read-only SPARQL 1.1 Query Language endpoint can be found. **The first one of these endpoints must be not accessible by the internet**, while the last one should be accessible publicly.

Default configuration and what you should change

First, you'll want to ensure the Linked Data endpoint is enabled/configured. In your `local.cfg`, add `rdf.enabled = true`. You can optionally change its path by setting `rdf.path` (it defaults to "rdf" which means the Linked Data endpoint is available at `[dspace.server.url]/rdf/` (where `dspace.server.url` is also specified in your `local.cfg`))

In the file `[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg` you should look for the property `event.dispatcher.default.consumers` and add `rdf` there. Adding `rdf` there makes DSpace update the triple store automatically as the publicly available content of the repository changes.

As the Linked Data support of DSpace is highly configurable this section gives a short list of things you probably want to configure before using it. Below you can find more information on what is possible to configure.

In the file `[dspace]/config/modules/rdf.cfg` you want to configure the address of the public sparql endpoint and the address of the writable endpoint DSpace use to connect to the triple store (the properties `rdf.public.sparql.endpoint`, `rdf.storage.graphstore.endpoint`). In the same file you want to configure the URL that addresses the `dspace-rdf` module which is depending on where you deployed it (property `rdf.contextPath`) and switch content negotiation on (set property `rdf.contentNegotiation.enable = true`).

In the file `[dspace]/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-general.ttl` you should change the links to the Web UI of the repository and the public readable SPARQL endpoint. The URL of the public SPARQL endpoint should point to a URL that is proxied by a webserver to the Triple Store. See the section [Install a Triple Store](#) (see page 234) above for further information.

In the file `[dspace]/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-site.ttl` you may add any triples that should be added to the description of the repository itself.

If you want to change the way the metadata fields are converted, take a look into the file `[dspace]/config/modules/rdf/metadata-rdf-mapping.ttl`. This is also the place to add information on how to map metadata fields that you added to DSpace. There is already a quite acceptable default configuration for the metadata fields which DSpace supports out of the box. If you want to use some specific prefixes in RDF serializations that support prefixes, you have to edit `[dspace]onfig/modules/rdf/metadata-prefixes.ttl`.

## Configuration Reference

There are several configuration files to configure DSpace's LOD support. The main configuration file can be found under `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf.cfg`. Within DSpace we use Spring to define

which classes to load. For DSpace's LOD support this is done within `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/spring/api/rdf.xml`. All other configuration files are positioned in the directory `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/`. Configurations in `rdf.cfg` can be modified directly, or overridden via your `local.cfg` config file (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)). You'll have to configure where to find and how to connect to the triple store. You may configure how to generate URIs to be used within the generated Linked Data and how to convert the contents stored in DSpace into RDF. We will guide you through the configuration file by file.

`[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf.cfg`

Property:	<code>rdf.enabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.enabled = true</code>
Informational Note:	Defines whether the RDF endpoint is enabled or disabled (disabled by default). If enabled, the RDF endpoint is available at <code>\${dspace.server.url}/\${rdf.path}</code> . Changing this value requires rebooting your servlet container (e.g. Tomcat)
Property:	<code>rdf.path</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.path = rdf</code>
Informational Note:	Defines the path of the RDF endpoint, if enabled. For example, a value of "rdf" (the default) means the RDF interface/endpoint is available at <code>\${dspace.server.url}/rdf</code> (e.g. if " <code>dspace.server.url = http://localhost:8080/server</code> ", then it'd be available at " <code>http://localhost:8080/server/rdf</code> ". Changing this value requires rebooting your servlet container (e.g. Tomcat)

Property:	<code>rdf.contentNegotiation.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.contentNegotiation.enable = true</code>
Informational Note:	Defines whether content negotiation should be activated. Set this true, if you use Linked Data support.
Property:	<code>rdf.contextPath</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.contextPath = \${dspace.baseUrl}/rdf</code>
Informational Note:	The content negotiation needs to know where to refer if anyone asks for RDF serializations of content stored within DSpace. This property sets the URL where the <code>dspace-rdf</code> module can be reached on the Internet (depending on how you deployed it).
Property:	<code>rdf.public.sparql.endpoint</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.public.sparql.endpoint = http://\${dspace.baseUrl}/sparql</code>

Informational Note:	Address of the read-only public SPARQL endpoint supporting SPARQL 1.1 Query Language.
Property:	<code>rdf.storage.graphstore.endpoint</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.storage.graphstore.endpoint = http://localhost:3030/dspace/data</code>
Informational Note:	Address of a writable SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol endpoint. This address is used to create, update and delete converted data in the triple store. If you use Fuseki with the configuration provided as part of DSpace 5, you can leave this as it is. If you use another Triple Store or configure Fuseki on your own, change this property to point to a writeable SPARQL endpoint supporting the SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol.
Property:	<code>rdf.storage.graphstore.authentication</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.storage.graphstore.authentication = no</code>
Informational Note:	Defines whether to use HTTP Basic authentication to connect to the writable SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol endpoint.
Properties:	<code>rdf.storage.graphstore.login</code> <code>rdf.storage.graphstore.password</code>

Example Values:	<pre> rdf.storage.graphstore.login = dspace rdf.storage.graphstore.password = ecapsd </pre>
Informational Note:	Credentials for the HTTP Basic authentication if it is necessary to connect to the writable SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol endpoint.
Property:	<code>rdf.storage.sparql.endpoint</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.storage.sparql.endpoint = http://localhost:3030/dspace/sparql</code>
Informational Note:	Besides a writable SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol endpoint, DSpace needs a SPARQL 1.1 Query Language endpoint, which can be read-only. This property allows you to set an address to be used to connect to such a SPARQL endpoint. If you leave this property empty the property <code>{rdf.public.sparql.endpoint}</code> will be used instead.
Properties:	<pre> rdf.storage.sparql.authentication rdf.storage.sparql.login rdf.storage.sparql.password </pre>
Example Values:	<pre> rdf.storage.sparql.authentication = yes rdf.storage.sparql.login = dspace rdf.storage.sparql.password = ecapsd </pre>
Informational Note:	As for the SPARQL 1.1 Graph Store HTTP Protocol you can configure DSpace to use HTTP Basic authentication to authenticate against the (read-only) SPARQL 1.1 Query Language endpoint.

Property:	rdf.converter.DSOtypes
Example Value:	rdf.converter.DSOtypes = SITE, COMMUNITY, COLLECTION, ITEM
Informational Note:	Define which kind of DSpaceObjects should be converted. Bundles and Bitstreams will be converted as part of the Item they belong to. Don't add EPersons here unless you really know what you are doing. All converted data is stored in the triple store that provides a publicly readable SPARQL endpoint. So all data converted into RDF is exposed publicly. Every DSO type you add here must have an HTTP URI to be referenced in the generated RDF, which is another reason not to add EPersons here currently.
<b>The following properties configure the StaticDSOConverterPlugin.</b>	
Properties:	rdf.constant.data.GENERAL rdf.constant.data.COLLECTION rdf.constant.data.COMMUNITY rdf.constant.data.ITEM rdf.constant.data.SITE
Example Values:	rdf.constant.data.GENERAL = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-general.ttl rdf.constant.data.COLLECTION = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-collection.ttl rdf.constant.data.COMMUNITY = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-community.ttl rdf.constant.data.ITEM = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-item.ttl rdf.constant.data.SITE = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-site.ttl
Informational Note:	<p>These properties define files to read static data from. These data should be in RDF, and by default Turtle is used as serialization. The data in the file referenced by the property <code>\${rdf.constant.data.GENERAL}</code> will be included in every Entity that is converted to RDF. E.g. it can be used to point to the address of the public readable SPARQL endpoint or may contain the name of the institution running DSpace.</p> <p>The other properties define files that will be included if a DSpace Object of the specified type (collection, community, item or site) is converted. This makes it possible to add static content to every Item, every Collection, ...</p>
<b>The following properties configure the MetadataConverterPlugin.</b>	
Property:	rdf.metadata.mappings

Example Value:	<code>rdf.metadata.mappings = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/metadata-rdf-mapping.ttl</code>
Informational Note:	Defines the file that contains the mappings for the MetadataConverterPlugin. See below the description of the configuration file <code>[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/metadata-rdf-mapping.ttl</code> .
Property:	<code>rdf.metadata.schema</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.metadata.schema = file://\${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/metadata-rdf-schema.ttl</code>
Informational Note:	Configures the URL used to load the RDF Schema of the DSpace Metadata RDF mapping Vocabulary. Using a <code>file://</code> URI makes it possible to convert DSpace content without having an internet connection. The version of the schema has to be the right one for the used code. In DSpace 5.0 we use the version 0.2.0. This Schema can be found here as well: <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace-metadata-mapping/0.2.0">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace-metadata-mapping/0.2.0</a> . The newest version of the Schema can be found here: <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace-metadata-mapping/">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace-metadata-mapping/</a> <sup>335</sup> .
Property:	<code>rdf.metadata.prefixes</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.metadata.prefixes = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/metadata-prefixes.ttl</code>
Informational Note:	If you want to use prefixes in RDF serializations that support prefixes, you can define these prefixes in the file referenced by this property.

<sup>335</sup> <http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace-metadata-mapping/0.2.0>



<b>The following properties configure the SimpleDSORelationsConverterPlugin</b>	
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.prefixes</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.prefixes = \${dspace.dir}/config/modules/rdf/simple-relations-prefixes.ttl</code>
Informational Note:	If you want to use prefixes in RDF serializations that support prefixes, you can define these prefixes in the file referenced by this property.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.site2community</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.site2community = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart">http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart</a>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasCommunity">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasCommunity</a></code>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from the data representing the whole repository to the top level communities. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.community2site</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.community2site = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf">http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf</a>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isPartOfRepository">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isPartOfRepository</a></code>

Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from the top level communities to the data representing the whole repository. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.community2subcommunity</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.community2subcommunity = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart">http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart</a>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasSubcommunity">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasSubcommunity</a></code>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from communities to their subcommunities. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.subcommunity2community</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.subcommunity2community = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf">http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf</a>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isSubcommunityOf">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isSubcommunityOf</a></code>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from subcommunities to the communities they belong to. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.community2collection</code>

Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.community2collection = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart">http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart</a>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasCollection">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasCollection</a></code>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from communities to their collections. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.collection2community</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.collection2community = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf">http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf</a>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isPartOfCommunity">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isPartOfCommunity</a></code>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from collections to the communities they belong to. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.collection2item</code>
Example Value:	<code>rdf.simplerelations.collection2item = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart">http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart</a><sup>336</sup>, <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasItem">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasItem</a></code>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from collections to their items. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.

<sup>336</sup> <http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart,%5C%22%20data-mce-href=>

Property:	rdf.simplerelations.item2collection
Example Value:	rdf.simplerelations.item2collection = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf">http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf</a> <sup>337</sup> , <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isPartOfCollection">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#isPartOfCollection</a>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from items to the collections they belong to. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.
Property:	rdf.simplerelations.item2bitstream
Example Value:	rdf.simplerelations.item2bitstream = <a href="http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart">http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart</a> <sup>338</sup> , <a href="http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasBitstream">http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace/0.1.0#hasBitstream</a>
Informational Note:	Defines the predicates used to link from item to their bitstreams. Defining multiple predicates separated by commas will result in multiple triples.

[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-\*.ttl

As described in the documentation of the configuration file [dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf.cfg, the constant-data-\*.ttl files can be used to add static RDF to the converted data. The data are written in Turtle, but if you change the file suffix (and the path to find the files in rdf.cfg) you can use any other RDF serialization you like to. You can use this, for example, to add a link to the public readable SPARQL endpoint, add a link to the repository homepage, or add a triple to every community or collection defining it as an entity of a specific type like a `bibo:collection`. The content of the file [dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-general.ttl will be added to every DSpaceObject that is converted. The content of the file [dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-community.ttl to every community, the content of the file [dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-collection.ttl to every collection and the content of the file [dspace-source]/dspace/

<sup>337</sup> <http://purl.org/dc/terms/isPartOf>,

<sup>338</sup> <http://purl.org/dc/terms/hasPart>,%5C%22%20data-mce-href=

config/modules/rdf/constant-data-item.ttl to every Item. You can use the file [dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/constant-data-site.ttl to specify data representing the whole repository.

[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/metadata-rdf-mapping.ttl

This file should contain several metadata mappings. A metadata mapping defines how to map a specific metadata field within DSpace to a triple that will be added to the converted data. The MetadataConverterPlugin uses these metadata mappings to convert the metadata of a item into RDF. For every metadata field and value it looks if any of the specified mappings matches. If one does, the plugin creates the specified triple and adds it to the converted data. In the file you'll find a lot of examples on how to define such a mapping.

For every mapping a metadata field name has to be specified, e.g. dc.title, dc.identifier.uri. In addition you can specify a condition that is matched against the field's value. The condition is specified as a regular expression (using the syntax of the java class java.util.regex.Pattern). If a condition is defined, the mapping will be used only on fields those values which are matched by the regex defined as condition.

The triple to create by a mapping is specified using reified RDF statements. The [DSpace Metadata RDF Mapping Vocabulary](#)<sup>339</sup> defines some placeholders that can be used. The most important placeholder is dm:DSpaceObjectIRI which is replaced by the URI used to identify the entity being converted to RDF. That means if a specific Item is converted the URI used to address this Item in RDF will be used instead of dm:DSpaceObjectIRI. There are three placeholders that allow reuse of the value of a meta data field. dm:DSpaceValue will be replace by the value as it is. dm:LiteralGenerator allows one to specify a regex and replacement string for it (see the syntax of the java classes java.util.regex.Pattern and java.util.regex.Matcher) and creates a Literal out of the field value using the regex and the replacement string. dm:ResourceGenerator does the same as dm:LiteralGenerator but it generates a HTTP(S) URI that is used in place. So you can use the resource generator to generate URIs containing modified field values (e.g. to link to classifications). If you know regular expressions and turtle, the syntax should be quite self explanatory.

[dspace-source]/dspace/config/modules/rdf/fuseki-assembler.ttl

This is a configuration for the triple store Fuseki of the Apache Jena project. You can find more information on the configuration it provides in the section [Install a Triple Store](#)(see page 234) above.

[dspace-source]/dspace/config/spring/api/rdf.xml

This file defines which classes are loaded by DSpace to provide the RDF functionality. There are two things you might want to change: the class that is responsible to generate the URIs to be used within the converted data, and the list of Plugins used during conversion. To change the class responsible for the URIs, change the following line:

```
<property name="generator" ref="org.dspace.rdf.storage.LocalURIGenerator"/>
```

This line defines how URIs should be generated, to be used within the converted data. The LocalURIGenerator generates URIs using the \${dspace.url} property. The HandleURIGenerator uses handles in form of HTTP URLs. It uses the property \${handle.canonical.prefix} to convert handles into HTTPS URLs. The class org.dspace.rdf.storage.DOIURIGenerator uses DOIs in the form of HTTP URLs if possible, or local URIs if there are no DOIs. It uses the DOI resolver "<http://dx.doi.org>" to convert DOIs into HTTP URLs. The class org.dspace.rdf.storage.DOIHandleGenerator does the same but uses Handles as fallback if no DOI exists. The fallbacks are necessary as DOIs are currently used for Items only and not for Communities or Collections.

All plugins that are instantiated within the configuration file will automatically be used during the conversion. Per default the list looks like the following:

<sup>339</sup> <http://digital-repositories.org/ontologies/dspace-metadata-mapping/>

```

<!-- configure all plugins the converter should use. If you don't want to
 use a plugin, remove it here. -->
 <bean id="org.dspace.rdf.conversion.SimpleDSORelationsConverterPlugin" class="org
.dspace.rdf.conversion.SimpleDSORelationsConverterPlugin"/>
 <bean id="org.dspace.rdf.conversion.MetadataConverterPlugin" class="org.dspace.r
df.conversion.MetadataConverterPlugin"/>
 <bean id="org.dspace.rdf.conversion.StaticDSOConverterPlugin" class="org.dspace.r
df.conversion.StaticDSOConverterPlugin"/>

```

You can remove plugins if you don't want them. If you develop a new conversion plugin, you want to add its class to this list.

## Maintenance

As described [above](#) (see [page 235](#)) you should add `rdf` to the property

`event.dispatcher.default.consumers` and in `dspace.cfg`. This configures DSpace to automatically update the triple store every time the publicly available content of the repository is changed. Nevertheless there is a command line tool that gives you the possibility to update the content of the triple store. As the triple store is used as a cache only, you can delete its content and reindex it every time you think it is necessary or helpful. The command line tool can be started by the following command which will show its online help:

```
[dspace-install]/bin/dspace rdfizer --help
```

The online help should give you all necessary information. There are commands to delete one specific entity; to delete all information stored in the triple store; to convert one item, one collection or community (including all subcommunities, collections and items) or to convert the complete content of your repository. If you start using the Linked Open Data support on a repository that already contains content, you should run `[dspace-install]/bin/dspace rdfizer --convert-all` once.

Every time content of DSpace is converted or Linked Data is requested, DSpace will try to connect to the triple store. So ensure that it is running (as you do with e.g. your servlet container or relational database).

## 4.5.2 SWORDv1 Client

The embedded SWORD Client allows a user (currently restricted to an administrator) to copy an item to a SWORD server. This allows your DSpace installation to deposit items into another SWORD-compliant repository (including another DSpace install).

### **DSpace 7.0 does not yet support**

The SWORDv1 Client is not available in DSpace 7.0. It may be restored in a later 7.x release, see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>340</sup>

- [Enabling the SWORD Client](#) (see [page 247](#))
- [Configuring the SWORD Client](#) (see [page 247](#))

<sup>340</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

#### 4.5.2.1 Enabling the SWORD Client

The SWORDv1 Client is not available in DSpace 7.0. It may be restored in a later 7.x release, see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>341</sup>

#### 4.5.2.2 Configuring the SWORD Client

All the relevant configuration can be found in `sword-client.cfg`. These may be overridden in your `local.cfg` config (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)).

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-client.cfg</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-client.targets</code>
Example value:	<pre> sword-client.targets = http://localhost:8080/sword/ servicedocument, \     http://client.swordapp.org/client/ servicedocument, \     http://dspace.swordapp.org/sword/servicedocument, \     http://sword.eprints.org/sword-app/ servicedocument, \     http://sword.intralibrary.com/IntraLibrary- Deposit/service, \     http://fedora.swordapp.org/sword-fedora/ servicedocument </pre>
Informational note:	List of remote SWORD servers. Used to build the drop-down list of selectable SWORD targets.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-client.file-types</code>
Example value:	<code>sword-client.file-types = application/zip</code>
Informational note:	List of file types from which the user can select. If a type is not supported by the remote server it will not appear in the drop-down list.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-client.package-formats</code>

<sup>341</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

Example value:	<pre> sword-client.package-formats = http://purl.org/net/ sword-types/METSDataSourceSIP </pre>
Informational note:	List of package formats from which the user can select. If a format is not supported by the remote server it will not appear in the drop-down list.

### 4.5.3 Exchanging Content Between Repositories

- [Transferring Content via Export and Import](#)(see page 249)
  - [Transferring Communities, Collections, or Items using Packages](#)(see page 249)
- [Transferring Items using Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 249)
- [Transferring Items using OAI-ORE/OAI-PMH Harvester](#)(see page 249)

#### 4.5.3.1 Transferring Content via Export and Import

To migrate content from one DSpace to another, you can export content from the Source DSpace and import it into the Destination DSpace.

##### Transferring Communities, Collections, or Items using Packages

You may transfer any DSpace content (Communities, Collections or Items) from one DSpace to another by utilizing the [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) tool. This tool allows you to export content into a series of Archival Information Packages (AIPs). These AIPs can be used to restore content (from a backup) or move/migrate content to another DSpace installation.

For more information see [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559).

#### 4.5.3.2 Transferring Items using Simple Archive Format

Where items are to be moved between DSpace instances (for example from a test DSpace into a production DSpace) the [Item Exporter and Item Importer](#)(see page 308) can be used.

First, you should export the DSpace Item(s) into the Simple Archive Format, as detailed at: [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308). Be sure to use the --migrate option, which removes fields that would be duplicated on import. Then import the resulting files into the other instance.

#### 4.5.3.3 Transferring Items using OAI-ORE/OAI-PMH Harvester

OAI Harvesting is not available in DSpace 7.0. It is scheduled to be restored in a later 7.x release (currently 7.1), see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>342</sup>

You may also choose to enable the OAI-ORE Harvester. This OAI-ORE Harvester allows one DSpace installation to harvest Items (via OAI-ORE) from another DSpace Installation (or any other system supporting OAI-ORE). Items are

<sup>342</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>



harvested from a remote DSpace Collection into a local DSpace Collection. Harvesting can also be scheduled to run automatically (or by demand).

See [OAI - Harvesting from another DSpace](#)(see page 251)

## 4.5.4 OAI

### 4.5.4.1 OAI Interfaces

- [OAI-PMH Server](#)(see page 250)
  - [OAI-PMH Server Activation](#)(see page 250)
  - [OAI-PMH Server Maintenance](#)(see page 251)
- [OAI-PMH / OAI-ORE Harvester \(Client\)](#)(see page 251)
  - [Harvesting from another DSpace](#)(see page 251)
  - [OAI-PMH / OAI-ORE Harvester Configuration](#)(see page 251)
  - [Setting up a harvest to import content into a collection](#)(see page 257)
    - [Using the "harvest" script](#)(see page 257)
      - [Examples of harvesting a collection through CLI commands](#)(see page 258)
    - [Setting up a harvest content source from the UI](#)(see page 258)
- [DSpace 7 Demo - OAI-PMH](#)(see page 260)

#### OAI-PMH Server

In the following sections and subpages, you will learn how to configure OAI-PMH server and activate additional OAI-PMH crosswalks. The user is also referred to [OAI-PMH Data Provider](#)(see page 827) for greater depth details of the program.

The OAI-PMH Interface may be used by other systems to harvest metadata records from your DSpace.

#### OAI-PMH Server Activation

DSpace's OAI-PMH server is enabled by default. However, you can choose to enable/disable it in your local.cfg using these configurations:

```
Enable (true) or disable (false) OAI-PMH server
oai.enabled = true

When enabled, OAI-PMH server is available at this path
oai.path = oai
```

If you modify either of these configuration, you must restart your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).

- You can test that it is working by sending a request to: `[dspace.server.url]/[oai.path]/request?verb=Identify` (e.g. `http://localhost:8080/server/oai/request?verb=Identify`)
- The response should look similar to the response from the DSpace 7 Demo Server: <https://api7.dspace.org/server/oai/request?verb=Identify>

If you're using a recent browser, you should see a HTML page describing your repository. What you're getting from the server is in fact an XML file with a link to an XSLT stylesheet that renders this HTML in your browser (client-side). Any browser that cannot interpret XSLT will display pure XML. The default stylesheet is located in `[dspace-`

`source]/dspace-oai/src/main/resources/static/style.xsl` and can be changed by configuring the `stylesheet` attribute of the `Configuration` element in `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml`.

#### Relevant Links

- [OAI 2.0 Server](#)(see page 263) - basic information needed to configure and use the OAI Server in DSpace
- [OAI-PMH Data Provider 2.0 \(Internals\)](#)(see page 260) - information on how it's implemented
- <http://www.openarchives.org/pmh/> - information on the OAI-PMH protocol and its usage (not DSpace-specific)

#### OAI-PMH Server Maintenance

After activating the OAI-PMH server, you need to also ensure its index is updated on a regular basis. Currently, this doesn't happen automatically within DSpace. Instead, you must schedule the `[dspace.dir]/bin/dspace oai import` commandline tool to run on a regular basis (usually at least nightly, but you could schedule it more frequently).

Here's an example cron that can be used to schedule an OAI-PMH reindex on a nightly basis (for a full list of recommended DSpace cron tasks see [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)<sup>343</sup>):

```
Update the OAI-PMH index with the newest content (and re-optimize that index) at
midnight every day
NOTE: ONLY NECESSARY IF YOU ARE RUNNING OAI-PMH
(This ensures new content is available via OAI-PMH and ensures the OAI-PMH index is
optimized for better performance)
0 0 * * * [dspace.dir]/bin/dspace oai import -o > /dev/null
```

More information about the `dspace oai` commandline tool can be found in the [OAI Manager](#)(see page 264) documentation.

#### OAI-PMH / OAI-ORE Harvester (Client)

This section describes the parameters used in configuring the OAI-ORE / OAI-ORE harvester. This harvester can be used to harvest content (bitstreams and metadata) into DSpace from an external OAI-PMH or OAI-ORE server.

#### Supported in 7.1 or above

OAI Harvesting was not available in DSpace 7.0. It was restored in DSpace 7.1. See [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>344</sup>

#### Harvesting from another DSpace

If you are harvesting content (bitstreams and metadata) **from** an external DSpace installation via OAI-PMH & OAI-ORE, you first should verify that the external DSpace installation allows for OAI-ORE harvesting.

<sup>343</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC5x/Scheduled+Tasks+via+Cron>

<sup>344</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

If the external DSpace is running v6.x or below, it must be running both the OAI-PMH interface and the XMLUI interface to support harvesting content from it via OAI-ORE.

If the external DSpace is running v7.x or above, it just needs to be running the OAI-PMH interface.

You can verify that OAI-ORE harvesting option is enabled by following these steps:

1. First, check to see if the external DSpace reports that it will support harvesting ORE via the OAI-PMH interface. Send the following request to the DSpace's OAI-PMH interface: `http://[full-URL-to-OAI-PMH]/request?verb=ListRecords&metadataPrefix=ore`
  - The response should be an XML document containing ORE, similar to the response from the DSpace Demo Server: <http://demo.dspace.org/oai/request?verb=ListRecords&metadataPrefix=ore>
2. For 6.x or below, you can verify that the XMLUI interface supports OAI-ORE (it should, as long as it's a current version of DSpace). First, find a valid Item Handle. Then, send the following request to the DSpace's XMLUI interface: `http://[full-URL-to-XMLUI]/metadata/handle/[item-handle]/ore.xml`
  - The response should be an OAI-ORE (XML) document which describes that specific Item. It should look similar to the response from the DSpace Demo Server: <http://demo.dspace.org/xmlui/metadata/handle/10673/3/ore.xml>

#### OAI-PMH / OAI-ORE Harvester Configuration

There are many possible configuration options for the OAI harvester. Most of these are contained in the `[dspace]/config/modules/oai.cfg` file (unless otherwise noted below). They may be updated there or overridden in your `local.cfg` config file (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)).

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/oai.cfg</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.eperson</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.eperson = admin@myu.edu</code>
Informational Note:	The EPerson under whose authorization automatic harvesting will be performed. This field does not have a default value and must be specified in order to use the harvest scheduling system. This will most likely be the DSpace admin account created during installation.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.url = \${dspace.server.url}/\${oai.path}</code>

Informational Note:	The base url of the OAI-PMH disseminator webapp (i.e. do not include the / request on the end). This is necessary in order to mint URIs for ORE Resource Maps. The default value of <code>\${dspace.baseUrL}/oai</code> will work for a typical installation, but should be changed if appropriate. Please note that <code>dspace.baseUrL</code> is defined in your <code>dspace.cfg</code> configuration file.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.ore.authoritative.source</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.ore.authoritative.source = oai</code>
Informational Note:	<p>The webapp responsible for minting the URIs for ORE Resource Maps. If using oai, the <code>oai.url</code> config value must be set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When set to 'oai', all URIs in ORE Resource Maps will be relative to the OAI-PMH URL (configured by <code>oai.url</code> above)</li> <li>• The URIs generated for ORE ReMs follow the following convention for either setting: <code>http://\[base-URL\]/metadata/handle/\[item-handle\]/ore.xml</code></li> </ul>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.autoStart</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.autoStart = false</code>
Informational Note:	Determines whether the harvest scheduler process starts up automatically when DSpace webapp is redeployed.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.metadataformats.PluginName</code>
Example Value:	<pre>oai.harvester.metadataformats.PluginName = \ http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/, Simple Dublin Core</pre>

Informational Note:	<p>This field can be repeated and serves as a link between the metadata formats supported by the local repository and those supported by the remote OAI-PMH provider. It follows the form</p> <pre>oai.harvester.metadataformats.PluginName = NamespaceURI,Optional Display Name</pre> <p>The pluginName designates the metadata schemas that the harvester "knows" the local DSpace repository can support. Consequently, the PluginName must correspond to a previously declared ingestion crosswalk. The namespace value is used during negotiation with the remote OAI-PMH provider, matching it against a list returned by the ListMetadataFormats request, and resolving it to whatever metadataPrefix the remote provider has assigned to that namespace. Finally, the optional display name is the string that will be displayed to the user when setting up a collection for harvesting. If omitted, the PluginName:NamespaceURI combo will be displayed instead.</p>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.oreSerializationFormat.OREPrefix</code>
Example Value:	<pre>oai.harvester.oreSerializationFormat.OREPrefix = \ http://www.w3.org/2005/Atom</pre>
Informational Note:	<p>This field works in much the same way as</p> <pre>oai.harvester.metadataformats.PluginName</pre> <p>. The <code>OREPrefix</code> must correspond to a declared ingestion crosswalk, while the Namespace must be supported by the target OAI-PMH provider when harvesting content.</p>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.timePadding</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.timePadding = 120</code>
Informational Note:	<p>Amount of time subtracted from the from argument of the PMH request to account for the time taken to negotiate a connection. Measured in seconds. Default value is 120.</p>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.harvestFrequency</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.harvestFrequency = 720</code>

Informational Note:	How frequently the harvest scheduler checks the remote provider for updates. Should always be longer than <i>timePadding</i> . Measured in minutes. Default value is 720.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.minHeartbeat</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.minHeartbeat = 30</code>
Informational Note:	The heartbeat is the frequency at which the harvest scheduler queries the local database to determine if any collections are due for a harvest cycle (based on the <i>harvestFrequency</i> ) value. The scheduler is optimized to then sleep until the next collection is actually ready to be harvested. The <i>minHeartbeat</i> and <i>maxHeartbeat</i> are the lower and upper bounds on this timeframe. Measured in seconds. Default value is 30.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.maxHeartbeat</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.maxHeartbeat = 3600</code>
Informational Note:	The heartbeat is the frequency at which the harvest scheduler queries the local database to determine if any collections are due for a harvest cycle (based on the <i>harvestFrequency</i> ) value. The scheduler is optimized to then sleep until the next collection is actually ready to be harvested. The <i>minHeartbeat</i> and <i>maxHeartbeat</i> are the lower and upper bounds on this timeframe. Measured in seconds. Default value is 3600 (1 hour).
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.maxThreads</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.maxThreads = 3</code>
Informational Note:	How many harvest process threads the scheduler can spool up at once. Default value is 3.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.threadTimeout</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.threadTimeout = 24</code>
Informational Note:	How much time passes before a harvest thread is terminated. The termination process waits for the current item to complete ingest and saves progress made up to that point. Measured in hours. Default value is 24.

<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.unknownField</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.unknownField = fail   add   ignore</code>
Informational Note:	You have three (3) choices. When a harvest process completes for a single item and it has been passed through ingestion crosswalks for ORE and its chosen descriptive metadata format, it might end up with DIM values that have not been defined in the local repository. This setting determines what should be done in the case where those DIM values belong to an already declared schema. <i>Fail</i> will terminate the harvesting task and generate an error. <b>Ignore</b> will quietly omit the unknown fields. <b>Add</b> will add the missing field to the local repository's metadata registry. Default value: <b>fail</b> .
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.unknownSchema</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.unknownSchema = fail   add   ignore</code>
Informational Note:	When a harvest process completes for a single item and it has been passed through ingestion crosswalks for ORE and its chosen descriptive metadata format, it might end up with DIM values that have not been defined in the local repository. This setting determines what should be done in the case where those DIM values belong to an unknown schema. <b>Fail</b> will terminate the harvesting task and generate an error. <b>Ignore</b> will quietly omit the unknown fields. <b>Add</b> will add the missing schema to the local repository's metadata registry, using the schema name as the prefix and "unknown" as the namespace. Default value: <b>fail</b> .
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.acceptedHandleServer</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.acceptedHandleServer = \ hdl.handle.net, handle.test.edu</code>
Informational Note:	A harvest process will attempt to scan the metadata of the incoming items (identifier.uri field, to be exact) to see if it looks like a handle. If so, it matches the pattern against the values of this parameter. If there is a match the new item is assigned the handle from the metadata value instead of minting a new one. Default value: <i>hdl.handle.net</i> .
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.harvester.rejectedHandlePrefix</code>

Example Value:	<code>oai.harvester.rejectedHandlePrefix = 123456789, myeduHandle</code>
Informational Note:	Pattern to reject as an invalid handle prefix (known test string, for example) when attempting to find the handle of harvested items. If there is a match with this config parameter, a new handle will be minted instead. Default value: <code>123456789</code> .

### Setting up a harvest to import content into a collection

There are two options to set up a collection for harvesting. One is by using the DSpace scripts "harvest", the other is by setting up the content source of a collection through the UI.

#### Using the "harvest" script

The harvest script can be called from both the CLI and REST API by calling "harvest". It uses the parameters as defined in the following table.

Short option	Long option	Argument	Explanation
-p	--purge	<i>[none]</i>	Delete all the items in the collection provided with the <code>-c</code> parameter.
-r	--run	<i>[none]</i>	Run the standard harvesting procedure for the collection provided with the <code>-c</code> parameter.
-g	--ping	<i>[none]</i>	Verify that the server provided through the <code>-a</code> parameter and the set provided through the <code>-i</code> parameter can be resolved and work.
-s	--setup	<i>[none]</i>	Set the collection provided with the <code>-c</code> parameter up for harvesting. The server will need to be provided through the <code>-a</code> parameter, and the oai set id needs to be provided by the <code>-i</code> parameter.
-S	--start	<i>[none]</i>	Start the harvest loop for all collections.
-R	--reset	<i>[none]</i>	Reset the harvest status on all collections.



Short option	Long option	Argument	Explanation
-P	--purgeCollections	[none]	Purge all harvestable collections.
-o	--reimport	[none]	Reimport all items the items in the collection provided by the <code>-c</code> parameter. This is the equivalent of running both the <code>-p</code> and the <code>-r</code> command for the provided collection.
-c	--collection	[id-or-handle]	The harvesting collection (handle or id)
-t	--type	[type-code]	The type of harvesting: 0 for no harvesting, 1 for metadata only, 2 for metadata and bitstream references (requires ORE support), 3 for metadata and bitstreams (requires ORE support)
-a	--address	[url]	The address of the OAI-PMH server to be harvested
-i	--oai_set_id	[set-id]	The id of the PMH set representing the harvested collection. In case all sets need to be harvested the value "all" should be provided.
-m	--metadata_format	[format]	The name of the desired metadata format for harvesting, resolved to namespace and crosswalk in the dspace.cfg
-h	--help	[none]	Print the help message
-e	--eperson	[email]	<b>(CLI ONLY)</b> The eperson that performs the harvest. When the command is used from the REST API, the currently logged in user will be used.

Examples of harvesting a collection through CLI commands

1. Verify whether the harvester source can be reached

```
dspace/bin/dspace -g -a https://harvest.source.org -i harvest-set
```

Replace `https://harvest.source.org` with the source you want to use, the `harvest-set` with the set/sets you want to harvest or `all` in case you want to harvest all sets.

### 2. Set up a collection for harvesting

```
dspace/bin/dspace harvest -s -c 123456789/123 -a https://harvest.source.org -i harvest-set -m dc -t 1
```

Replace the `123456789/123` with your collection, `https://harvest.source.org` with the source you want to use, the `harvest-set` with the set/sets you want to harvest or `all` in case you want to harvest all sets. The `-m` parameter indicated the metadata format to be used and the `-t` parameter indicates the harvest type to be used. When the value `0` is used for `-t`, harvesting will be disabled.

### 3. Run the harvest for the set up collection

```
dspace/bin/dspace harvest -r -c 123456789/123 -e harvest-user@dspace.org
```

Replace the `123456789/123` with your collection, the `harvest-user@dspace.org`<sup>345</sup> with an existing user in DSpace that has sufficient rights to perform the ingestion.

#### Setting up a harvest content source from the UI

A collection can be configured to retrieve its content from an external source. This can be done from the "Edit Collection" UI by using the following steps.

#### 1. Configure the collection to harvest its content from an external source

Navigate to the "Edit collection" > "Content Source" tab. Tick the checkbox "This collection harvests its content from an external source".

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Collection' interface. At the top right is a red button 'Delete this collection'. Below it are tabs: 'Edit Metadata', 'Assign Roles', 'Content Source' (selected), 'Curate', 'Authorizations', and 'Item Mapper'. Under the 'Content Source' tab, the title 'Content Source' is followed by 'Discard' and 'Save' buttons. A checkbox labeled 'This collection harvests its content from an external source' is currently unchecked. At the bottom right is a 'Back' button.

#### 2. Configure the harvest source

Once the checkbox has been ticked, the OAI provider, set id and metadata format can be configured. An example of the configuration can be found in the image below.

<sup>345</sup> <mailto:harvest-user@dspace.org>

Edit Collection Delete this collection

[Edit Metadata](#)
[Assign Roles](#)
[Content Source](#)
[Curate](#)
[Authorizations](#)
[Item Mapper](#)

**Content Source** Discard Save

This collection harvests its content from an external source

Configure an external source

OAI Provider \*

OAI specific set id Metadata Format

Qualified Dublin Core

Content being harvested

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Harvest metadata only	<input type="checkbox"/> Harvest metadata and references to bitstreams (requires ORE support)	<input type="checkbox"/> Harvest metadata and bitstreams (requires ORE support)
-----------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Discard Save

**Harvest Controls**

Harvest status:  
 Harvest start time: N/A  
 Last time harvested: N/A  
 Harvest info: N/A

[← Back](#)

When all sets need to be harvested, the field can be left empty.

The server configuration will be tested upon clicking the "Save" button.

### 3. Start the harvest

Click the "Import Now" button to start the import. When the import has started, the button will indicate that the import is in progress, however, there is no need to remain on this page as the harvest will continue to run after leaving this page.

Edit Collection Delete this collection

[Edit Metadata](#)
[Assign Roles](#)
[Content Source](#)
[Curate](#)
[Authorizations](#)
[Item Mapper](#)

**Content Source** Discard Save

This collection harvests its content from an external source

Configure an external source

OAI Provider \*

OAI specific set id Metadata Format

Qualified Dublin Core

Content being harvested

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Harvest metadata only	<input type="checkbox"/> Harvest metadata and references to bitstreams (requires ORE support)	<input type="checkbox"/> Harvest metadata and bitstreams (requires ORE support)
-----------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Discard Save

**Harvest Controls**

Harvest status: READY  
 Harvest start time: 2021-10-29T14:13:58.201+00:00  
 Last time harvested: Harvest from https://demo.dspace.org/oai/request successful  
 Harvest info: N/A

[← Back](#)

If the current server configuration needs to be retested at a later point, the "Test configuration" button can be used. To fully reset the collection by purging all items and starting a reimport, click the "Reset and reimport" button.

#### DSpace 7 Demo - OAI-PMH

- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/oai/request?verb=Identify>

#### 4.5.4.2 OAI-PMH Data Provider 2.0 (Internals)

- [OAI-PMH Data Provider 2.0 \(Internals\)](#)(see page 261)
- [Sets](#)(see page 261)

- [Unique Identifier](#)(see page 261)
- [Access control](#)(see page 261)
- [Modification Date \(OAI Date Stamp\)](#)(see page 261)
- ["About" Information](#)(see page 261)
- [Deletions](#)(see page 261)
- [Flow Control \(Resumption Tokens\)](#)(see page 263)

### OAI-PMH Data Provider 2.0 (Internals)

The DSpace platform supports the [Open Archives Initiative Protocol for Metadata Harvesting](#)<sup>346</sup> (OAI-PMH) version 2.0 as a data provider. This is accomplished using the [XOAI](#)<sup>347</sup> OAI-PMH Java Toolkit.

The DSpace build process builds a single backend webapp, which optionally includes an OAI-PMH endpoint (when `oai.enabled=true`) In a typical configuration, this endpoint is deployed at `${dspace.server.url}/oai` (configured by "oai.path"), containing request, driver and openaire contexts, for example:

```
http://dspace.myu.edu/server/oai/request?verb=Identify
```

The "base URL" of this DSpace deployment would be:

```
http://dspace.myu.edu/server/oai/request
```

But one could also provide the Driver or OpenAIRE contexts:

```
http://dspace.myu.edu/server/oai/driver
http://dspace.myu.edu/server/oai/openaire
```

It is this URL that should be registered with [www.openarchives.org](http://www.openarchives.org)<sup>348</sup>.

DSpace provides implementations of the XOAI data sources interfaces.

### Sets

OAI-PMH allows repositories to expose an hierarchy of sets in which records may be placed. A record can be in zero or more sets.

DSpace exposes collections and communities as sets.

Each community and collection has a corresponding OAI set, discoverable by harvesters via the ListSets verb. The setSpec is based on the community/collection handle, with the "/" converted to underscore to form a legal setSpec. The setSpec is prefixed by "com\_" or "col\_" for communities and collections, respectively (this is a change in set names in DSpace 3.0 / OAI 2.0). For example:

```
col_1721.1_1234
```

Naturally enough, the community/collection name is also the name of the corresponding set.

<sup>346</sup> <http://www.openarchives.org/>

<sup>347</sup> <https://github.com/lyncode/xoai>

<sup>348</sup> <http://www.openarchives.org/>

## Unique Identifier

Every item in OAI-PMH data repository must have a unique identifier, which must conform to the URI syntax. As of DSpace 1.2, Handles are not used; this is because in OAI-PMH, the OAI identifier identifies the *metadata record* associated with the *resource*. The *resource* is the DSpace item, whose *resource identifier* is the Handle. In practical terms, using the Handle for the OAI identifier may cause problems in the future if DSpace instances share items with the same Handles; the OAI metadata record identifiers should be different as the different DSpace instances would need to be harvested separately and may have different metadata for the item.

The OAI identifiers that DSpace uses are of the form:

```
oai:PREFIX:handle
```

For example:

```
oai:dspace.myu.edu:123456789/345
```

If you wish to use a different scheme, this can easily be changed by editing the value of `identifier.prefix` at `[dspace]/config/modules/oai.cfg` file.

## Access control

OAI provides no authentication/authorisation details, although these could be implemented using standard HTTP methods. It is assumed that all access will be anonymous for the time being.

A question is, "is all metadata public?" Presently the answer to this is yes; all metadata is exposed via OAI-PMH, even if the item has restricted access policies. The reasoning behind this is that people who do actually have permission to read a restricted item should still be able to use OAI-based services to discover the content. But, exposed data could be changed by changing the XSLT defined at `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/metadataFormats`.

## Modification Date (OAI Date Stamp)

OAI-PMH harvesters need to know when a record has been created, changed or deleted. DSpace keeps track of a "last modified" date for each item in the system, and this date is used for the OAI-PMH date stamp. This means that any changes to the metadata (e.g. admins correcting a field, or a withdrawal) will be exposed to harvesters.

## "About" Information

As part of each record given out to a harvester, there is an optional, repeatable "about" section which can be filled out in any (XML-schema conformant) way. Common uses are for provenance and rights information, and there are schemas in use by OAI communities for this. Presently DSpace does not provide any of this information, but XOAI core library allows its definition. This requires to dive into code and perform some changes.

## Deletions

As DSpace supports two forms of deletions (withdrawals or permanent expunging), this has an impact on how OAI-PMH exposes deletions. During a permanent deletion (expunge), DSpace no longer retains any information about the deleted object. Therefore, permanent deletions "disappear" from OAI-PMH, as DSpace no longer has any

information about the object. This is considered a "[transient](#)" approach to deletion based on OAI-PMH definitions<sup>349</sup>.

When an item is withdrawn in DSpace, the item still exists but it hidden from public view. Withdrawn items will report a "<header status='deleted'>" in OAI-PMH when a GetRecord request is made for a withdrawn item (however, they are NOT shown in an OAI-PMH "ListRecords" request by default). Keep in mind that the OAI-PMH index does NOT update automatically, so withdrawn items will not show this "deleted" status until "./dspace oai import" is next run.

Once an item has been withdrawn, OAI-PMH harvests of the date range in which the withdrawal occurred will find the "deleted" record header. Harvests of a date range prior to the withdrawal will *not* find the record, despite the fact that the record did exist at that time. As an example of this, consider an item that was created on 2002-05-02 and withdrawn on 2002-10-06. A request to harvest the month 2002-10 will yield the "record deleted" header. However, a harvest of the month 2002-05 will not yield the original record.

#### Flow Control (Resumption Tokens)

An OAI data provider can prevent any performance impact caused by harvesting by forcing a harvester to receive data in time-separated chunks. If the data provider receives a request for a lot of data, it can send part of the data with a resumption token. The harvester can then return later with the resumption token and continue.

DSpace supports resumption tokens for "ListRecords", "ListIdentifiers" and "ListSets" OAI-PMH requests.

Each OAI-PMH ListRecords request will return at most 100 records (by default) but it could be configured in the `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml` file.

When a resumption token is issued, the optional *completeListSize* and *cursor* attributes are included. OAI 2.0 resumption tokens are persistent, so *expirationDate* of the resumption token is undefined, they do not expire.

Resumption tokens contain all the state information required to continue a request and it is encoded in Base64.

#### 4.5.4.3 OAI 2.0 Server

- [Introduction](#)(see page 264)
  - [What is OAI 2.0?](#)(see page 264)
  - [Why OAI 2.0?](#)(see page 264)
  - [Concepts \(XOAI Core Library\)](#)(see page 264)
- [OAI 2.0](#)(see page 264)
  - [Indexing OAI content](#)(see page 264)
    - [OAI Manager](#)(see page 264)
    - [Scheduled Tasks](#)(see page 266)
  - [Client-side stylesheet](#)(see page 266)
  - [Metadata Formats](#)(see page 266)
  - [Encoding problems](#)(see page 267)
- [Configuration](#)(see page 267)
  - [Basic Configuration](#)(see page 267)
  - [Advanced Configuration](#)(see page 269)
    - [General options](#)(see page 269)
    - [Add/Remove Metadata Formats](#)(see page 269)
    - [Add/Remove Metadata Fields](#)(see page 270)
- [Driver/OpenAIRE compliance](#)(see page 271)
  - [Driver Compliance](#)(see page 271)

---

349 <https://www.openarchives.org/OAI/openarchivesprotocol.html#deletion>

- [OpenAIRE compliance](#)(see page 271)
- [Sanity check your OAI interface with the OAI Validator](#)(see page 273)

## Introduction

[Open Archives Initiative Protocol for Metadata Harvesting](#)<sup>350</sup> is a low-barrier mechanism for repository interoperability. Data Providers are repositories that expose structured metadata via OAI-PMH. Service Providers then make OAI-PMH service requests to harvest that metadata. OAI-PMH is a set of six verbs or services that are invoked within HTTP.

## What is OAI 2.0?

OAI 2.0 is a Java implementation of an OAI-PMH data provider interface (originally developed by Lyncode) that uses [XOAI, an OAI-PMH Java Library](#)<sup>351</sup>.

## Why OAI 2.0?

Projects like [OpenAIRE](#)<sup>352</sup> have specific metadata requirements (to the published content through the OAI-PMH interface). As the OAI-PMH protocol doesn't establish any frame to these specifics, OAI 2.0 can, in a simple way, have more than one instance of an OAI interface (feature provided by the XOAI core library) so one could define an interface for each project. That is the main purpose, although, OAI 2.0 allows much more than that.

## Concepts (XOAI Core Library)

To understand how XOAI works, one must understand the concept of Filter, Transformer and Context. With a Filter it is possible to select information from the data source. A Transformer allows one to make some changes in the metadata before showing it in the OAI interface. XOAI also adds a new concept to the OAI-PMH basic specification, the concept of context. A context is identified in the URL:

```
http://www.example.com/oai/<context>
```

Contexts could be seen as virtual distinct OAI interfaces, so with this one could have things like:

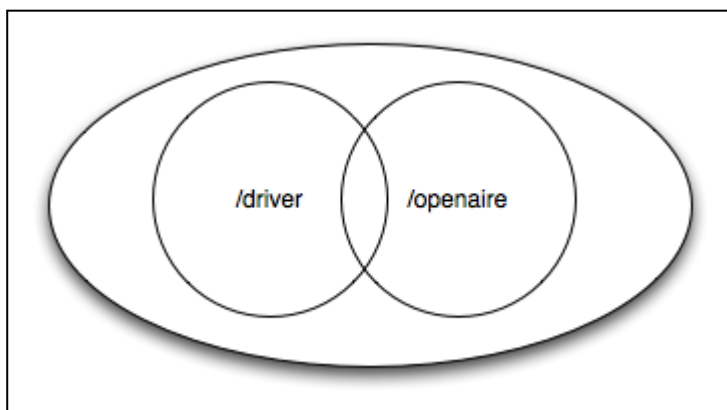
- <http://www.example.com/oai/request>
- <http://www.example.com/oai/driver>
- <http://www.example.com/oai/openaire>

With this ingredients it is possible to build a robust solution that fulfills all requirements of *Driver*, *OpenAIRE* and also other project-specific requirements. As shown in Figure 1, with contexts one could select a subset of all available items in the data source. So when entering the *OpenAIRE* context, all OAI-PMH request will be restricted to that subset of items.

<sup>350</sup> <http://www.openarchives.org/pmh/>

<sup>351</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/xoai>

<sup>352</sup> <http://www.openaire.eu/>



At this stage, contexts could be seen as sets (also defined in the basic OAI-PMH protocol). The magic of XOAI happens when one needs specific metadata format to be shown in each context. Metadata requirements by *Driver* slightly differ from the *OpenAIRE* ones. So for each context one must define its specific transformer. So, contexts could be seen as an extension to the concept of sets.

To implement an OAI interface from the XOAI core library, one just needs to implement the datasource interface.

#### OAI 2.0

OAI 2.0 is deployed as a part of the DSpace server (backend) webapp. OAI 2.0 has a configurable data source, by default it will not query the DSpace SQL database at the time of the OAI-PMH request. Instead, it keeps the required metadata in its Solr index (currently in a separate "oai" Solr core) and serves it from there. It's also possible to set OAI 2.0 to only use the database for querying purposes if necessary, but this decreases performance significantly. Furthermore, it caches the requests, so doing the same query repeatedly is very fast. In addition to that it also compiles DSpace items to make uncached responses much faster.

Details about OAI 2.0 internals can be found [here](#)<sup>353</sup>.

The OAI 2.0 Server only uses Solr for its indexing. The previous capability to use Database indexing has been removed.

#### Indexing OAI content

OAI 2.0 uses Solr for all indexing of content.

The Solr index can be updated at your convenience, depending on how fresh you need the information to be. Typically, the administrator sets up a nightly cron job to update the Solr index from the SQL database.

#### OAI Manager

OAI manager is a utility that allows one to do certain administrative operations with OAI. You can call it from the command line using the dspace launcher:

#### Syntax

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace oai <action> [parameters]
```

#### Actions

- `import` Imports DSpace items into OAI Solr index (also cleans OAI cache)
- `clean-cache` Cleans the OAI cache

<sup>353</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=32478690>



## Parameters

- -o *Optimize index after indexing (no longer recommended)*
- -c *Clears the Solr index before indexing (it will import all items again)*
- -v *Verbose output*
- -h *Shows an help text*

## Scheduled Tasks

In order to refresh the OAI Solr index, it is required to run the `[dspace]/bin/dspace oai import` command periodically. You can add the following task to your crontab:

```
0 3 * * * [dspace]/bin/dspace oai import
```

Note that `[dspace]` should be replaced by the correct value, that is, the value defined in `dspace.cfg` parameter `dspace.dir`.

## Client-side stylesheet

The OAI-PMH response is an XML file. While OAI-PMH is primarily used by harvesting tools and usually not directly by humans, sometimes it can be useful to look at the OAI-PMH requests directly - usually when setting it up for the first time or to verify any changes you make. For these cases, XOAI provides an XSLT stylesheet to transform the response XML to a nice looking, human-readable and interactive HTML. The stylesheet is linked from the XML response and the transformation takes place in the user's browser (this requires a recent browser, older browsers will only display the XML directly). Most automated tools are interested only in the XML file itself and will not perform the transformation. If you want, you can change which stylesheet will be used by placing it into the `[dspace]/webapps/oai/static` directory (or into the `[dspace-src]/dspace-xoai/dspace-xoai-webapp/src/main/webapp/static` after which you have to rebuild DSpace), modifying the "stylesheet" attribute of the "Configuration" element in `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml` and restarting your servlet container.

## Metadata Formats

By default OAI 2.0 provides 12 metadata formats within the `/request` context:

1. OAI\_DC
2. DIDL
3. DIM
4. ETDMS
5. METS
6. MODS
7. OAI-ORE
8. QDC
9. RDF
10. MARC
11. UKETD\_DC
12. XOAI

At `/driver` context it provides:

1. OAI\_DC
2. DIDL
3. METS

And at /openaire context it provides:

1. OAI\_DC
2. METS

### Encoding problems

There are two main potential sources of encoding problems:

- a) The servlet connector port has to use the correct encoding. E.g. for Tomcat, this would be `<Connector port="8080" . . . URIEncoding="UTF-8" />`, where the port attribute specifies port of the connector that DSpace is configured to access Solr on (this is usually 8080, 80 or in case of AJP 8009).
- b) System locale of the dspace command line script that is used to do the oai import. Make sure the user account launching the script (usually from cron) has the correct locale set (e.g. en\_US.UTF-8). Also make sure the locale is actually present on your system.

### Configuration

#### Basic Configuration

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/oai.cfg</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.enabled</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>oai.enabled = true (default)</code>
<b>Information Note:</b>	Allows you to enable or disable the OAI module/endpoint
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.path</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>oai.path = oai (default)</code>
<b>Information Note:</b>	Allows you to specify the path where the OAI module will be deployed. This path is relative to the <code>dspace.server.url</code> . So, for example, if <code>"dspace.server.url=http://localhost:8080/server"</code> , then by default the OAI module is available at <code>http://localhost:8080/server/oai/</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>oai.storage</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>oai.storage = solr</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/oai.cfg</code>
Information Note:	This allows to choose the OAI data source between solr and database. ONLY "solr" is supported at this time.
Property:	<code>oai.solr.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.solr.url = \${solr.server}/oai</code>
Informational Note:	Solr Server location
Property:	<code>oai.identifier.prefix</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.identifier.prefix = \${dspace.hostname}</code>
Informational Note:	OAI persistent identifier prefix. Format - oai:PREFIX:HANDLE
Property:	<code>oai.config.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.config.dir = \${dspace.dir}/config/crosswalks/oai</code>
Informational Note:	Configuration directory, used by XOAI (core library). Contains xoai.xml, metadata format XSLTs and transformer XSLTs.
Property:	<code>oai.cache.enabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.cache.enabled = true</code>
Informational Note:	Whether to enable the OAI cache. Default is true (for better performance).
Property:	<code>oai.cache.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>oai.cache.dir = \${dspace.dir}/var/oai</code>
Informational Note:	Directory to store runtime generated files (for caching purposes).

## Advanced Configuration

OAI 2.0 allows you to configure following advanced options:

- Contexts
- Transformers
- Metadata Formats
- Filters
- Sets

It's an XML file commonly located at: **[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml**

### General options

These options influence the OAI interface globally. "per page" means per request, next page (if there is one) can be requested using resumptionToken provided in current page.

- indentation [boolean] - whether the output XML should be indented to make it human-readable
- maxListIdentifiersSize [integer] - how many identifiers to show per page (verb=ListIdentifiers)
- maxListRecordsSize [integer] - how many records to show per page (verb=ListRecords)
- maxListSetsSize [integer] - how many sets to show per page (verb=ListSets)
- stylesheet [relative file path] - an xsl stylesheet used by client's web browser to transform the output XML into human-readable HTML

Their location and default values are shown in the following fragment:

```
<Configuration xmlns="http://www.lyncode.com/XOAIConfiguration"
 indentation="false"
 maxListIdentifiersSize="100"
 maxListRecordsSize="100"
 maxListSetsSize="100"
 stylesheet="static/style.xsl">
```

### Add/Remove Metadata Formats

Each context could have its own metadata formats. So to add/remove metadata formats to/from it, just need add/remove its reference within xoai.xml, for example, imagine one need to remove the XOAI schema from:

```
<Context baseurl="request">
 <Format refid="oaidc" />
 <Format refid="mets" />
 <Format refid="xoai" />
 <Format refid="didl" />
 <Format refid="dim" />
 <Format refid="ore" />
 <Format refid="rdf" />
 <Format refid="etdms" />
 <Format refid="mods" />
 <Format refid="qdc" />
 <Format refid="marc" />
 <Format refid="uketd_dc" />
</Context>
```

Then one would have:

```
<Context baseurl="request">
 <Format refid="oaidc" />
 <Format refid="mets" />
 <Format refid="didl" />
 <Format refid="dim" />
 <Format refid="ore" />
 <Format refid="rdf" />
 <Format refid="etdms" />
 <Format refid="mods" />
 <Format refid="qdc" />
 <Format refid="marc" />
 <Format refid="uketd_dc" />
</Context>
```

It is also possible to create new metadata format by creating a specific XSLT for it. All already defined XSLT for DSpace can be found in the **[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/metadataFormats** directory. So after producing a new one, add the following information (location marked using brackets) inside the *<Formats>* element in *[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml*:

```
<Format id="[IDENTIFIER]">
 <Prefix>[PREFIX]</Prefix>
 <XSLT>metadataFormats/[XSLT]</XSLT>
 <Namespace>[NAMESPACE]</Namespace>
 <SchemaLocation>[SCHEMA_LOCATION]</SchemaLocation>
</Format>
```

where:

Parameter	Description
IDENTIFIER	The identifier used within context configurations to reference this specific format, must be unique within all Metadata Formats available.
PREFIX	The prefix used in OAI interface (metadataPrefix=PREFIX).
XSLT	The name of the XSLT file within <b>[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/metadataFormats</b> directory
NAMESPACE	XML Default Namespace of the created Schema
SCHEMA_LOCATION	URI Location of the XSD of the created Schema

**NOTE:** Changes in *[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml* requires reloading/restarting the servlet container.

#### Add/Remove Metadata Fields

The internal DSpace fields (Dublin Core) are exposed in the internal XOAI format (xml). All other metadata formats exposed via OAI are mapped from this XOAI format using XSLT (xoai.xsl itself is just an identity transformation).

These XSLT stylesheets are found in the `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/metadataFormats` directory. So e.g. `oai_dc.xsl` is a transformation from the XOAI format to the `oai_dc` format (unqualified Dublin Core).

Therefore exposing any DSpace metadata field in any OAI format is just a matter of modifying the corresponding output format stylesheet (This assumes the general knowledge of how XSLT works. For a tutorial, see e.g. <http://www.w3schools.com/xsl/>).

For example, if you have a DC field "local.note.librarian" that you want to expose in `oai_dc` as `<dc:note>` (please note that this is not a valid DC field and thus breaks compatibility), then edit `oai_dc.xsl` and add the following lines just above the closing tag `</oai_dc:dc>`:

```
<xsl:for-each select="doc:metadata/doc:element[@name='local']/
doc:element[@name='note']/doc:element/doc:field[@name='librarian']">
 <dc:note><xsl:value-of select="." /></dc:note>
</xsl:for-each>
```

If you need to add/remove metadata fields, you're changing the output format. Therefore it is recommended to [create a new metadata format](#) (see page 0) as a copy of the one you want to modify. This way the old format will remain available along with the new one and any upgrades to the original format during DSpace upgrades will not overwrite your customizations. If you need the format to have the same name as the original format (e.g. the default `oai_dc` format), you can create a new [context](#)<sup>354</sup> in `xoai.xsl` containing your modified format with the original name, which will be available as `/oai/context-name`.

**NOTE:** Please, keep in mind that the OAI provider caches the transformed output, so you have to run `[dspace]/bin/dspace oai clean-cache` after any `.xsl` modification and reload the OAI page for the changes to take effect. When adding/removing metadata formats, making changes in `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/oai/xoai.xml` requires reloading/restarting the servlet container.

## Driver/OpenAIRE compliance

The default OAI 2.0 installation provides two new contexts. They are:

- [Driver](#)<sup>355</sup> context, which only exposes Driver compliant items;
- [OpenAIRE](#)<sup>356</sup> context, which only exposes OpenAIRE compliant items;

However, in order to be exposed DSpace items must be compliant with Driver/OpenAIRE guide-lines.

## Driver Compliance

DRIVER Guidelines for Repository Managers and Administrators on how to expose digital scientific resources using OAI-PMH and Dublin Core Metadata, creating interoperability by homogenizing the repository output. The OAI-PMH `driver` set is based on DRIVER Guidelines 2.0.

This set is used to expose items of the repository that are available for open access. It's not necessary for all the items of the repository to be available for open access.

### What specific metadata values are expected?

<sup>354</sup> [http://wiki.duraspace.org/#OAI2.0Server-Concepts\(XOAICoreLibrary\)](http://wiki.duraspace.org/#OAI2.0Server-Concepts(XOAICoreLibrary))

<sup>355</sup> <http://www.driver-support.eu/>

<sup>356</sup> <http://www.openaire.eu/>

To have items in this set, you must configure your `input-forms.xml` file in order to comply with the DRIVER Guidelines:

- Must have a publication date - `dc.date.issued` (already configured in DSpace items)
- `dc.language` must use [ISO639-3](#)<sup>357</sup>
- the value of `dc.type` must be one of the [16 types named in the guidelines](#)<sup>358</sup>

### How do you easily add those metadata values?

As DRIVER guidelines use Dublin Core, all the needed items are already registered in DSpace. You just need to configure the deposit process.

OpenAIRE compliance

For OpenAIRE v4 compliance, see [OpenAIRE4 Guidelines Compliancy](#)(see page 272)

The OpenAIRE Guidelines 2.0 provide the OpenAIRE compatibility to repositories and aggregators. By implementing these Guidelines, repository managers are facilitating the authors who deposit their publications in the repository in complying with the EC Open Access requirements. For developers of repository platforms, the Guidelines provide guidance to add supportive functionalities for authors of EC-funded research in future versions.

The name of the set in OAI-PMH is "ec\_fundedresources" and will expose the items of the repository that comply with these guidelines. These guidelines are based on top of DRIVER guidelines. See [version 2.0 of the Guidelines](#)<sup>359</sup>.

See the [Application Profile of OpenAIRE](#)<sup>360</sup>.

### What specific metadata values are expected?

These are the OpenAIRE metadata values only, to check these and driver metadata values check page 11 of the OpenAIRE guidelines 2.0.

- `dc:relation` with the project ID (see p.8)
- `dc:rights` with the access rights information from vocabulary (possible values [here](#)<sup>361</sup>)

Optionally:

- `dc:date` with the embargo end date (recommended for embargoed items)

1	<code>&lt;dc:date&gt;info:eu-repo/date/embargoEnd/2011-05-12&lt;dc:date&gt;</code>
---	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### How do you easily add those metadata values?

- Have a `dc:relation` field in `input-forms.xml` with a list of the projects. You can also use the [OpenAIRE Authority Control Addon](#)<sup>362</sup> to facilitate the process of finding the project.
- Just use a combo-box for `dc:rights` to input the 4 options:
  - `info:eu-repo/semantics/closedAccess`
  - `info:eu-repo/semantics/embargoedAccess`
  - `info:eu-repo/semantics/restrictedAccess`
  - `info:eu-repo/semantics/openAccess`

<sup>357</sup> <http://www-01.sil.org/iso639-3/codes.asp>

<sup>358</sup> [http://guidelines.readthedocs.org/en/latest/literature/field\\_publicationtype.html](http://guidelines.readthedocs.org/en/latest/literature/field_publicationtype.html)

<sup>359</sup> <https://guidelines.openaire.eu/en/latest/>

<sup>360</sup> [http://colab.mpg.de/mediawiki/ESciDoc\\_Application\\_Profile\\_OpenAIRE](http://colab.mpg.de/mediawiki/ESciDoc_Application_Profile_OpenAIRE)

<sup>361</sup> <http://wiki.surf.nl/display/standards/info-eu-repo/#info-eu-repo-AccessRights>

<sup>362</sup> <http://projecto.rcaap.pt/index.php/lang-pt/consultar-recursos-de-apoio/remository?func=fileinfo&id=354>

- Use an input-box for dc:date to insert the embargo end date

#### Relevant Links

- OAI 2.0 is a standard part of DSpace 3.0
- Download & Install OAI 2.0 for DSpace 1.8.x: <http://www.lyncode.com/dspace/addons/xoai/>

Sanity check your OAI interface with the OAI Validator

There is a very useful validator for OAI interfaces available at <http://validator.oaipmh.com>, we urge you to use this validator to confirm your OAI interface is in fact usable.

## 4.5.5 OpenAIRE4 Guidelines Compliancy

### 4.5.5.1 Loading of Entities and Fields

OpenAIRE4 features depends on Entities the entities feature on DSpace 7 and it's based on a set of configurations. In order to have your repository compliant with OpenAIRE4 guidelines you need to follow some steps:

The default submission-forms.xml file configures the form fields that allow the creation of the specific OpenAIRE entities and their relationships. In order to use those forms you need to configure your item-submission.xml and add these to the `<submission-map>` :

#### item-submission.xml

```
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/2" submission-name="openAIREPublicationSubmission" />
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/3" submission-name="openAIREPersonSubmission" />
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/5" submission-name="openAIREProjectSubmission" />
<name-map collection-handle="123456789/4" submission-name="openAIREOrganizationSubmission" />
```

Please note that my `collection-handle="123456789/4"` will be different in your system and it refers to the collection that will gather a specific Entity type like Publications, Persons, Projects or Organizations.

To load OpenAIRE Entities model you must firstly run the following:

#### loading openaire entity-relationships model

```
[/dspace]/bin/dspace initialize-entities -f [/dspace]/config/entities/openaire4-relationships.xml
```



and load the required metadata fields

#### loading openaire registries

```
[/dspace]/bin/dspace registry-loader -metadata [/dspace]/config/registries/openaire4-
types.xml
```

After those steps your repository will have the required fields and entities for the compliancy.

#### 4.5.5.2 OAI interface

As decided in our Entities meeting ([2019-11-19 DSpace 7 Entities WG Meeting](#)<sup>363</sup>), the XOAI Default Context should only display Publications or non Entity Items. For OpenAIRE4 it will also be considered only Publications as the main Entity to be processed and all the related ones will be loaded in the process.

OpenAIRE4 is accessible in a specific OAI context through the URL:

```
http://[dspace-server-url]/oai/openaire4?
verb=ListRecords&metadataPrefix=oai_openaire364
```

in order to use it, you must first ensure you have the oai.cfg setting uncommented:

```
oai.enabled = true
```

(NOTE: you may need to restart your tomcat service)

If you need to display additional metadata at the oai\_openaire metadata format, you could rename the file:

```
[/dspace/]config/spring/api/virtual-metadata.xml.openaire
```

and replace it with the existing one:

```
[/dspace/]config/spring/api/virtual-metadata.xml
```

Please note if you do this you should restart your tomcat service container.

This additional virtual metadata will enable to represent something like this in this XML in the oai\_openaire metadata format, where you have, for instance, author identifiers:

#### oai datacite:creators example

```
<datacite:creators>
 <datacite:creator>
 <datacite:creatorName>Evans, R.J.</datacite:creatorName>
```

<sup>363</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/2019-11-19+DSpace+7+Entities+WG+Meeting>

<sup>364</sup> [http://host/server/oai/openaire4?verb=ListRecords&metadataPrefix=oai\\_openaire](http://host/server/oai/openaire4?verb=ListRecords&metadataPrefix=oai_openaire)

```
<datacite:affiliation>Institute of Science and Technology</datacite:affiliation>
<datacite:nameIdentifier nameIdentifierScheme="ORCID" schemeURI="http://orcid.org">
1234-1234-1234-1234 </datacite:nameIdentifier>
</datacite:creator>
</datacite:creators>
```

Then you may need to run the OAI import from the command line with the cleaning cache parameter to reload all data to OAI:

```
[/dSPACE/]/bin/dSPACE oai import -c
```

## 4.6 Ingesting Content and Metadata

This is a new top level page grouping all documentation concerning all different ways to ingest content and metadata into DSpace

- [Ingesting HTML Archives](#)(see page 274)
- [SWORDv2 Server](#)(see page 275)
- [SWORDv1 Server](#)(see page 290)
- [Exporting and Importing Community and Collection Hierarchy](#)(see page 301)
- [Importing Items via basic bibliographic formats \(Endnote, BibTex, RIS, CSV, etc\) and online services \(arXiv, PubMed, CrossRef, CiNii, etc\)](#)(see page 303)
- [Registering Bitstreams via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 306)
- [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308)
- [Importing and Exporting Content via Packages](#)(see page 321)
- [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327)
- [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338)

The section on [Batch Metadata Editing](#)(see page 387) also contains information on how to add items through spreadsheet ingest.

### 4.6.1 Ingesting HTML Archives

**Not yet supported in DSpace 7.** See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8635>

For the most part, at present DSpace simply supports uploading and downloading of bitstreams as-is. This is fine for the majority of commonly-used file formats – for example PDFs, Microsoft Word documents, spreadsheets and so forth. HTML documents (Web sites and Web pages) are far more complicated, and this has important ramifications when it comes to digital preservation:

- Web pages tend to consist of several files – one or more HTML files that contain references to each other, and stylesheets and image files that are referenced by the HTML files.
- Web pages also link to or include content from other sites, often imperceptibly to the end-user. Thus, in a few year's time, when someone views the preserved Web site, they will probably find that many links are now broken or refer to other sites than are now out of context. In fact, it may be unclear to an end-user when they are viewing content stored in DSpace and when they are seeing content included from another site, or have navigated to a page that is not stored in DSpace. This problem can manifest when a submitter uploads some HTML content. For example, the HTML document may include an image from an external Web site, or even their local hard drive. When the submitter views the HTML in DSpace, their browser is able to use the reference in the HTML to retrieve the appropriate image, and so to the submitter, the whole HTML document appears to have been deposited correctly. However, later on, when another user tries to view that HTML,

their browser might not be able to retrieve the included image since it may have been removed from the external server. Hence the HTML will seem broken.

- Often Web pages are produced dynamically by software running on the Web server, and represent the state of a changing database underneath it.

Dealing with these issues is the topic of much active research. Currently, DSpace bites off a small, tractable chunk of this problem. DSpace can store and provide on-line browsing capability for *self-contained, non-dynamic* HTML documents. DSpace allows relative links between HTML documents stored together in a single item to work. In practical terms, this means:

- No dynamic content (CGI scripts and so forth)
- All links to preserved content must be *relative links*, that do not refer to 'parents' above the 'root' of the HTML document/site:
  - *diagram.gif* is OK
  - *image/foo.gif* is OK
  - *../index.html* is only OK in a file that is at least a directory deep in the HTML document/site hierarchy
  - */stylesheet.css* is not OK (the link will break)
  - <http://somedomain.com/content.html> is not OK (the link will continue to link to the external site which may change or disappear)
- Any 'absolute links' (e.g. <http://somedomain.com/content.html>) are stored 'as is', and will continue to link to the external content (as opposed to relative links, which will link to the copy of the content stored in DSpace.) Thus, over time, the content referred to by the absolute link may change or disappear.

## 4.6.2 SWORDv2 Server

SWORD (Simple Web-service Offering Repository Deposit) is a protocol that allows the remote deposit of items into repositories. DSpace implements the SWORD protocol via the 'sword' web application. The specification and further information can be found at <http://swordapp.org/>.

SWORD is based on the Atom Publish Protocol and allows service documents to be requested which describe the structure of the repository, and packages to be deposited.

- [Enabling SWORD v2 Server](#)(see page 275)
- [Configuring SWORD v2 Server](#)(see page 276)
- [Deposit to SWORDv2 Server](#)(see page 289)
  - [Other example SWORDv2 commands](#)(see page 290)
- [Troubleshooting](#)(see page 290)
  - [Missing expression of encoding in XML header](#)(see page 290)
- [DSpace Demo 7 Server: Service Documents](#)(see page 290)

### 4.6.2.1 Enabling SWORD v2 Server

To enable DSpace's SWORD v2 server, set the following in your local.cfg:

```

swordv2-server.enabled = true
Optionally, if you wish to change its path
swordv2-server.path = swordv2

```

Keep in mind, modifying these settings will require restarting your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).

Once enabled, the SWORDv2 module will be available at `${dspace.server.url}/${swordv2-server.path}`. For example, if `"dspace.server.url=http://localhost:8080/server"`, then (by default) it will be available at `http://localhost:8080/server/swordv2/`

#### 4.6.2.2 Configuring SWORD v2 Server

These are the SWORD (v2) configurations. They may be edited directly or overridden in your `local.cfg` config (see [Configuration Reference](#)<sup>365</sup>).

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/swordv2-server.cfg</code>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.enabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.enabled = true (default is false)</code>
Informational Note:	Whether SWORDv2 module is enabled or disabled (disabled by default). Modifying this setting will require restarting your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.path</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.path = swordv2</code>
Informational Note:	When enabled, this is the subpath where the SWORDv2 module is deployed. This path is relative to <code>\${dspace.server.url}</code> . Modifying this setting will require restarting your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.url = \${dspace.server.url}/\${swordv2-server.path}</code>
Informational Note:	The base url of the SWORD 2.0 system. This defaults to <code>\${dspace.server.url}/\${swordv2-server.path}</code>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.collection.url</code>

<sup>365</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC6x/Configuration+Reference>

Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.collection.url = http:// www.myu.ac.uk/swordv2/collection</code>
Informational Note:	The base URL of the SWORD collection. This is the URL from which DSpace will construct the deposit location URLs for collections. This defaults to <code>\${dSPACE.server.url}/\${swordv2-server.path}/collection</code>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.servicedocument.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.servicedocument.url = http:// www.myu.ac.uk/swordv2/servicedocument</code>
Informational Note:	The service document URL of the SWORD collection. The base URL of the SWORD service document. This is the URL from which DSpace will construct the service document location urls for the site, and for individual collections. This defaults to <code>\${dSPACE.server.url}/\${swordv2-server.path}/servicedocument</code>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.accept-packaging.collection</code>
Example Value:	<pre> swordv2-server.accept- packaging.collection.METSDSpaceSIP = http://purl.org/ net/sword/package/METSDSpaceSIP swordv2-server.accept-packaging.collection.SimpleZip = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/SimpleZip swordv2-server.accept-packaging.collection.Binary = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/Binary </pre>
Informational Note:	<p>The accept packaging properties, along with their associated quality values where appropriate.</p> <p>Package format information</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">METSDSpaceSIP<sup>366</sup></a>: zipfile containing mets.xml file describing the resources packed together with it in the root of the zipfile.</li> <li>• Binary: Binary resource that should be taken in as-is, not unpacked</li> <li>• SimpleZip: Zip file that should be unpacked and each file in the zip should be ingested separately. No metadata provided/ingested.</li> </ul>

<sup>366</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceMETSSIPProfile>

Property:	<code>swordv2-server.accept-packaging.item</code>
Example Value:	<pre> swordv2-server.accept-packaging.item.METSDSpaceSIP = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/METSDSpaceSIP swordv2-server.accept-packaging.item.SimpleZip = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/SimpleZip swordv2-server.accept-packaging.item.Binary = http:// purl.org/net/sword/package/Binary </pre>
Informational Note:	<p>The accept packaging properties for items. It is possible to configure this for specific collections by adding the handle of the collection to the setting, for example <code>swordv2-server.accept-packaging.collection.[handle].METSDSpaceSIP = <a href="http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDSpaceSIP">http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDSpaceSIP</a></code></p> <p>Package format information</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">METSDSpaceSIP</a><sup>367</sup>: zipfile containing mets.xml file describing the resources packed together with it in the root of the zipfile.</li> <li>• Binary: Binary resource that should be taken in as-is, not unpacked</li> <li>• SimpleZip: Zip file that should be unpacked and each file in the zip should be ingested separately. No metadata provided/ingested.</li> </ul>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.accepts</code>
Example Value:	<pre> swordv2-server.accepts = application/zip, image/jpeg </pre>
Informational Note:	A comma-separated list of MIME types that SWORD will accept. To accept all mimetypes, the value can be set to <code>"*/*"</code>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.expose-communities</code>
Example Value:	<pre> swordv2-server.expose-communities = <b>false</b> </pre>
Informational Note:	Whether or not the server should expose a list of all the communities to a service document request. As deposits can only be made into a collection, it is recommended to leave this set to false.

<sup>367</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceMETSSIPProfile>

Property:	<code>swordv2-server.max-upload-size</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.max-upload-size = 0</code>
Informational Note:	<p>The maximum upload size of a package through the SWORD interface (measured in bytes). This will be the combined size of all the files, metadata, and manifest file in a package - this is different to the maximum size of a single bitstream.</p> <p>If this is set to 0, no maximum file size will be enforced.</p>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.keep-original-package</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.keep-original-package = true</code>
Informational Note:	<p>Should DSpace store a copy of the original SWORD deposit package?</p> <p>This will cause the deposit process to be slightly slower and for more disk to be used, however original files will be preserved. It is recommended to leave this option enabled.</p>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.bundle.name</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.bundle.name = SWORD</code>
Informational Note:	<p>The bundle name that SWORD should store incoming packages within if <code>swordv2-server.keep-original-package</code> is set to true.</p>
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.bundle.deleted</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.bundle.deleted = DELETED</code>

Informational Note:	The bundle name that SWORD should use to store deleted bitstreams if <code>swordv2-server.versions.keep</code> is set to true. This will be used in the case that individual files are updated or removed via SWORD. If the entire Media Resource (files in the ORIGINAL bundle) is removed this will be backed up in its entirety in a bundle of its own
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.keep-package-on-fail</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.keep-package-on-fail = false</code>
Informational Note:	In the event of package ingest failure, provide an option to store the package on the file system. The default is false. The location can be set using the <code>swordv2-server.failed-package-dir</code> setting.
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.failed-package-dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.failed-package-dir = /dspace/upload</code>
Informational Note:	If <code>swordv2-server.keep-package-on-fail</code> is set to true, this is the location where the package would be stored.
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.on-behalf-of.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.on-behalf-of.enable = true</code>
Informational Note:	Should DSpace accept mediated deposits? See the SWORD specification for a detailed explanation of deposit On-Behalf-Of another user.
Property:	<code>swordv2-server.on-behalf-of.update.mediators</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.on-behalf-of.update.mediators = admin@myspace.edu, mediator@myspace.edu</code>



Informational Note:	Which user accounts are allowed to do updates on items which already exist in DSpace, on-behalf-of other users?  If this is left blank, or omitted, then all accounts can mediate updates to items, which could be a security risk, as there is no implicit checking that the authenticated user is a "legitimate" mediator
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.verbose-description.receipt.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.verbose-description.receipt.enable = false</code>
Informational Note:	Should the deposit receipt include a verbose description of the deposit? For use by developers - recommend to set to "false" for production systems
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.verbose-description.error.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.verbose-description.error.enable = true</code>
Informational Note:	should the error document include a verbose description of the error? For use by developers, although you may also wish to leave this set to "true" for production systems
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.error.alternate.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.error.alternate.url = <a href="http://myspace.edu/contact">http://myspace.edu/contact</a><sup>368</sup></code>
Informational Note:	The error document can contain an alternate url, which the client can use to follow up any issues. For example, this could point to the Contact-Us page
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.error.alternate.content-type</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.error.alternate.content-type = text/html</code>

---

<sup>368</sup> <http://localhost:8080/xmlui/contact>

Informational Note:	The <code>swordv2-server.error.alternate.url</code> may have an associated content type, such as <code>text/html</code> if it points to a web page. This is used to indicate to the client what content type it can expect if it follows that url.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.generator.url</code>
Example Value:	<pre>swordv2-server.generator.url = http://www.dspace.org/ns/sword/2.0/</pre>
Informational Note:	The URL which identifies DSpace as the software that is providing the SWORD interface.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.generator.version</code>
Example Value:	<pre>swordv2-server.generator.version = 2.0</pre>
Informational Note:	The version of the SWORD interface.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.auth-type</code>
Example Value:	<pre>swordv2-server.auth-type = Basic</pre>
Informational Note:	Which form of authentication to use. Normally this is set to <code>Basic</code> in order to use HTTP Basic.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.upload.tempdir</code>
Example Value:	<pre>swordv2-server.upload.tempd = /dspace/upload</pre>
Informational Note:	The location where uploaded files and packages are stored while being processed.

<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.updated.field</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.updated.field = dc.date.updated</code>
Informational Note:	The metadata field in which to store the updated date for items deposited via SWORD.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.slug.field</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.slug.field = dc.identifier.slug</code>
Informational Note:	The metadata field in which to store the value of the slug header if it is supplied.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.author.field</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.author.field = dc.contributor.author</code>
Informational Note:	The metadata field in which to store the value of the atom entry author if it is supplied.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.title.field</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.title.field = dc.title</code>
Informational Note:	The metadata field in which to store the value of the atom entry title if it is supplied.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.disseminate-packaging</code>

Example Value:	<pre> swordv2-server.disseminate-packaging.METSDSpaceSIP = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/METSDSpaceSIP swordv2-server.disseminate-packaging.SimpleZip = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/SimpleZip </pre>
Informational Note:	Supported packaging formats for the dissemination of packages.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.statement.bundles</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.statement.bundles = ORIGINAL, SWORD, LICENSE</code>
Informational Note:	Which bundles should the Statement include in its list of aggregated resources? The Statement will automatically mark any bitstreams which are in the bundle identified by the <code>#{bundle.name}</code> property, provided that bundle is also listed here (i.e. if you want Original Deposits to be listed in the Statement then you should add the SWORD bundle to this list)
<b>Property:</b>	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.sword2.WorkflowManager</code>
Example Value:	<pre> plugin.single.org.dspace.sword2.WorkflowManager = org.dspace.sword2.WorkflowManagerDefault </pre>
Informational Note:	Which workflow manager to use.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.workflowmanagerdefault.always-update-metadata</code>
Example Value	<code>swordv2-server.workflowmanagerdefault.always-update-metadata = true</code>
Informational Note	Should the WorkflowManagerDefault plugin allow updates to the item's metadata to take place on items which are in states other than the workspace (e.g. in the workflow, archive, or withdrawn) ?
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.workflowmanagerdefault.file-replace.enable</code>

Example Value	<code>swordv2-server.workflowmanagerdefault.file-replace.enable = false</code>
Informational Note	<p>Should the server allow PUT to individual files?</p> <p>If this is enabled, then DSpace may be used with the DepositMO SWORD extensions, BUT the caveat is that DSpace does not formally support Bitstream replace, so this is equivalent to a DELETE and then a POST, which violates the RESTfulness of the server. The resulting file DOES NOT have the same identifier as the file it was replacing. As such it is STRONGLY RECOMMENDED to leave this option turned off unless working explicitly with DepositMO enabled client environments</p>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.mets-ingester.package-ingester</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.mets-ingester.package-ingester = METS</code>
Informational Note:	Which package ingester to use for METS packages.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.restore-mode.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.restore-mode.enable = false</code>
Informational Note:	Should the SWORD server enable restore-mode when ingesting new packages. If this is enabled the item will be treated as a previously deleted item from the repository. If the item has previously been assigned a handle then that same handle will be restored to activity.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.simpledc.*</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.simpledc.abstract = dc.description.abstractsimpledc.date = dc.datesimpledc.rights = dc.rights</code>
Informational Note:	Configuration of metadata field mapping used by the SimpleDCEntryIngester, SimpleDCEntryDisseminator and FeedContentDisseminator

<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.atom.*</code>
Example Value	<code>swordv2-server.atom.author = dc.contributor.author</code>
Informational Note:	Configuration of metadata field mapping used by the SimpleDCEntityIngestor, SimpleDCEntityDisseminator and FeedContentDisseminator
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.metadata.replaceable</code>
Example Value	<code>swordv2-server.metadata.replaceable = dc.description.abstract, dc.rights, dc.title.alternative, dc.identifier.citation</code>
Informational Note	Used by SimpleDCEntityIngestor: Which metadata fields can be replaced during a PUT to the Item of an Atom Entry document? Fields listed here are the ones which will be removed when a new PUT comes through (irrespective of whether there is a new incoming value to replace them)
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.multipart.entry-first</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.multipart.entry-first = false</code>
Informational Note:	The order of precedence for importing multipart content. If this is set to <code>true</code> then metadata in the package will override metadata in the atom entry, otherwise the metadata in the atom entry will override that from the package.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.workflow.notify</code>
Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.workflow.notify = true</code>
Informational Note:	If the workflow gets started (the collection being deposited into has a workflow configured), should a notification get sent?
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.versions.keep</code>

Example Value:	<code>swordv2-server.versions.keep = true</code>
Informational Note:	When content is replaced, should the old version be kept? This creates a copy of the ORIGINAL bundle with the name V_YYYY-MM-DD.X where YYYY-MM-DD is the date the copy was created, and X is an integer from 0 upwards.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.state.*</code>
Example Value:	<pre> swordv2-server.state.workspace.uri = http:// dspace.org/state/inprogress swordv2-server.state.workspace.description = The item is in the user workspace swordv2-server.state.workflow.uri = http:// dspace.org/state/inreview swordv2-server.state.workflow.description = The item is undergoing review prior to acceptance in the archive </pre>
Informational Note:	Pairs of states (URI and description) than items can be in. Typical states are <code>workspace</code> , <code>workflow</code> , <code>archive</code> , and <code>withdrawn</code> .
<b>Property:</b>	<code>swordv2-server.workspace.url-template</code>
Example Value	<code>swordv2-server.workspace.url-template = http://myspace.edu/workspaceitems/#wsid#/edit</code>
Informational Note	URL template for links to items in the workspace (items in the archive will use the handle). The <code>#wsid#</code> url parameter will be replaced with the workspace id of the item. The example above shows how to construct this URL for the UI.

Other configuration options exist that define the mapping between mime types, ingesters, and disseminators. A typical configuration looks like this:

```

plugin.named.org.dspace.sword2.SwordContentIngester = \
 org.dspace.sword2.SimpleZipContentIngester = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/
SimpleZip, \

```

```

org.dspace.sword2.SwordMETSIngester = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/
METSDataSourceSIP, \
org.dspace.sword2.BinaryContentIngester = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/Binary

plugin.single.org.dspace.sword2.SwordEntryIngester = \
org.dspace.sword2.SimpleDCEntryIngester

plugin.single.org.dspace.sword2.SwordEntryDisseminator = \
org.dspace.sword2.SimpleDCEntryDisseminator

note that we replace ";" with "_" as ";" is not permitted in the PluginManager
names
plugin.named.org.dspace.sword2.SwordContentDisseminator = \
org.dspace.sword2.SimpleZipContentDisseminator = http://purl.org/net/sword/package/
SimpleZip, \
org.dspace.sword2.FeedContentDisseminator = application/atom+xml, \
org.dspace.sword2.FeedContentDisseminator = application/atom+xml_type_feed

note that we replace ";" with "_" as ";" is not permitted in the PluginManager
names
plugin.named.org.dspace.sword2.SwordStatementDisseminator = \
org.dspace.sword2.AtomStatementDisseminator = atom, \
org.dspace.sword2.OreStatementDisseminator = rdf, \
org.dspace.sword2.AtomStatementDisseminator = application/atom+xml_type_feed, \
org.dspace.sword2.OreStatementDisseminator = application/rdf+xml

```

#### 4.6.2.3 Deposit to SWORDv2 Server

If you'd like to deposit content to your repository via the installed SWORD Server, you'll need to select a SWORD Client to do so.

- Some SWORDv2 Clients are available at <http://swordapp.org/sword-v2/>
- It's possible to simply deposit a valid SWORDv2 Zip package via common Linux commandline tools (e.g. curl). For example:

```

Deposit a SWORD Zip package named "sword-package.zip" into a DSpace
Collection (Handle 123456789/2) as user "test@dspace.org"
(Please note that you WILL need to obviously modify the Collection location,
user/password and name of the SWORD package)

curl -i --data-binary "@sword-package.zip" -H "Content-Disposition:attachment;
filename=sword-package.zip" -H "Content-Type:application/zip" -H
"Packaging:http://purl.org/net/sword/package/METSDataSourceSIP" -u test@dspace.org:
[password] -X POST http://[dspace.url]/swordv2/collection/123456789/2

Template 'curl' command:
#curl -i --data-binary "[zip-package-name]" -H "Content-
Disposition:attachment; filename=[zip-package-name]" -H "Content-
Type:application/zip" -H "Packaging:http://purl.org/net/sword/package/
METSDataSourceSIP" -u [user]:[password] -X POST http://[dspace.url]/swordv2/
collection/[collection-handle]

```



NOTE: `-H "Packaging: http://purl.org/net/sword/package/METSDSpaceSIP "` is required for SWORDv2 and `-H "X-Packaging: http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDSpaceSIP "` is required for SWORD. X-Packaging/Packaging and the URLs are different.

- A sample SWORD Zip package (which works for both SWORDv1 or SWORDv2) is available in the codebase at <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/main/dspace-sword/example>. Look for the file named `example.zip`

Other example SWORDv2 commands

```
Example of retrieving Item information via "edit-media" path in ATOM format (can be
run on any item within DSpace, but requires authentication)
NOTE: Accept header is required, and must be a format supported by a
SwordContentDisseminator plugin (see configuration above)
curl -i -H "Accept:application/atom+xml" -u test@dspace.org:[password] -X GET http://
[dspace.url]/swordv2/edit-media/[internal-item-identifier]
```

#### 4.6.2.4 Troubleshooting

Missing expression of encoding in XML header

If your SWORD Deposit requests are unsuccessful, please check that the XML in your initial metadata deposit correctly specifies the encoding.

If you use:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
```

DSpace will default to UTF-32.

So to successfully deposit an XML in UTF-8, make sure you use:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
```

#### 4.6.2.5 DSpace Demo 7 Server: Service Documents

In DSpace 7, the SWORD interfaces are on the backend, so the correct URLs are

- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/sword/servicedocument>
- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/swordv2/servicedocument>

### 4.6.3 SWORDv1 Server

SWORD (Simple Web-service Offering Repository Deposit) is a protocol that allows the remote deposit of items into repositories. DSpace implements the SWORD protocol via the 'sword' web application. The version of SWORD v1 currently supported by DSpace is 1.3. The specification and further information can be found at <http://swordapp.org>.

SWORD is based on the Atom Publish Protocol and allows service documents to be requested which describe the structure of the repository, and packages to be deposited.

- [Enabling SWORD Server](#)(see page 290)
- [Configuring SWORD Server](#)(see page 290)
- [Deposit to SWORD Server](#)(see page 300)
- [DSpace Demo 7 Server: Service Documents](#)(see page 301)

#### 4.6.3.1 Enabling SWORD Server

To enable DSpace's SWORD v1 server, set the following in your local.cfg:

```

sword-server.enabled = true
Optionally, if you wish to change its path
sword-server.path = sword

```

Keep in mind, modifying these settings will require restarting your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).

Once enabled, the SWORD v1 module will be available at `${dspace.server.url}/${sword-server.path}`. For example, if "dspace.server.url=<http://localhost:8080/server>", then (by default) it will be available at <http://localhost:8080/server/sword/>

#### 4.6.3.2 Configuring SWORD Server

These are the SWORD (v1) configurations. They may be edited directly or overridden in your local.cfg config (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)).

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.enabled</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.enabled = true (default is false)</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	Whether SWORDv1 module is enabled or disabled (disabled by default). Modifying this setting will require restarting your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.path</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.path = sword</code>
Informational Note:	When enabled, this is the subpath where the SWORDv1 module is deployed. This path is relative to <code>{dspace.server.url}</code> . Modifying this setting will require restarting your Servlet Container (usually Tomcat).
Property:	<code>sword-server.mets-ingester.package-ingester</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.mets-ingester.package-ingester = METS</code>
Informational Note:	<p>The property key tell the SWORD METS implementation which package ingester to use to install deposited content. This should refer to one of the classes configured for:</p> <pre>plugin.named.org.dspace.content.packager.PackageIngester</pre> <p>The value of <code>sword.mets-ingester.package-ingester</code> tells the system which named plugin for this interface should be used to ingest SWORD METS packages.</p>
Properties:	<code>mets.default.ingest.crosswalk.EPDCX</code> <code>mets.default.ingest.crosswalk.*</code> (NOTE: These configs are in the <code>dspace.cfg</code> file as they are used by many interfaces)
Example Value:	<code>mets.submission.crosswalk.EPDCX = EPDCX</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	<p>Define the metadata types which can be accepted/handled by SWORD during ingest of a package. Currently, EPDCX (EPrints DC XML) is the recommended default metadata format, but others are supported. An example of an EPDCX SWORD package can be found at <code>[dspace-src]/dspace-sword/example/example.zip</code>.</p> <p>Additional metadata types can be added to this list by just defining new configurations. For example, you can map a new "mdtype" MYFORMAT to a custom crosswalk named MYFORMAT:</p> <pre>mets.submission.crosswalk.MYFORMAT = MYFORMAT</pre> <p>You'd also want to map your new custom crosswalk to a stylesheet using the next configuration (<code>crosswalk.submission.*.stylesheet</code>).</p>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>crosswalk.submission.EPDCX.stylesheet</code> (NOTE: This configuration is in the <code>dspace.cfg</code> file)
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>crosswalk.submission.EPDCX.stylesheet = crosswalks/sword-swap-ingest.xsl</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	<p>Define the stylesheet which will be used by the self-named XSLTIngestionCrosswalk class when asked to load the SWORD configuration (as specified above). This will use the specified stylesheet to crosswalk the incoming SWAP metadata to the DIM format for ingestion.</p> <p>Additional crosswalk types can be added to this list by just defining new configurations. For example, you can map a custom crosswalk named MYFORMAT to use a specific "my-crosswalk.xsl" stylesheet:</p> <pre>crosswalk.submission.MYFORMAT.stylesheet = crosswalks/my-crosswalk.xsl</pre> <p>Keep in mind, you'll need to also ensure MYFORMAT crosswalk is defined by the previous configuration (<code>mets.submission.crosswalk.*</code>).</p>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.deposit.url</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.deposit.url = http://www.myu.ac.uk/sword/deposit</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	The base URL of the SWORD deposit. This is the URL from which DSpace will construct the deposit location URLs for collections. The default is <code>\${dspace.server.url}/\${sword-server.path}/deposit</code> . In the event that you are not deploying DSpace as the ROOT application in the servlet container, this will generate incorrect URLs, and you should override the functionality by specifying in full as shown in the example value.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.servicedocument.url</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<pre>sword-server.servicedocument.url = http://www.myu.ac.uk/sword/ servicedocument</pre>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	The base URL of the SWORD service document. This is the URL from which DSpace will construct the service document location URLs for the site, and for individual collections. The default is <code>\${dspace.server.url}/\${sword-server.path}/servicedocument</code> . In the event that you are not deploying DSpace as the ROOT application in the servlet container, this will generate incorrect URLs, and you should override the functionality by specifying in full as shown in the example value.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.media-link.url</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<pre>sword-server.media-link.url = http://www.myu.ac.uk/sword/media-link</pre>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	The base URL of the SWORD media links. This is the URL which DSpace will use to construct the media link URLs for items which are deposited via sword. The default is <code>\${dspace.server.url}/\${sword-server.path}/media-link</code> . In the event that you are not deploying DSpace as the ROOT application in the servlet container, this will generate incorrect URLs, and you should override the functionality by specifying in full as shown in the example value.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.generator.url</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.generator.url = http://www.dspace.org/ns/sword/1.3.1</code>
Informational Note:	<p>The URL which identifies the SWORD software which provides the sword interface. This is the URL which DSpace will use to fill out the atom:generator element of its atom documents. The default is: <code>http://www.dspace.org/ns/sword/1.3.1</code></p> <p>If you have modified your SWORD software, you should change this URI to identify your own version. If you are using the standard 'dspace-sword' module you will not, in general, need to change this setting.</p>
Property:	<code>sword-server.updated.field</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.updated.field = dc.date.updated</code>
Informational Note:	The metadata field in which to store the updated date for items deposited via SWORD.
Property:	<code>sword-server.slug.field</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.slug.field = dc.identifier.slug</code>
Informational Note:	The metadata field in which to store the value of the slug header if it is supplied.
Properties:	<code>sword-server.accept-packaging.METSDSpaceSIP.identifier</code> <code>sword-server.accept-packaging.METSDSpaceSIP.q</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
Example Value:	<pre> sword-server.accept-packaging.METSDSpaceSIP.identifier = http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDSpaceSIP sword-server.accept-packaging.METSDSpaceSIP.q = 1.0 </pre>
Informational Note:	The accept packaging properties, along with their associated quality values where appropriate. This is a Global Setting; these will be used on all DSpace collections
Property:	<code>sword-server.accepts</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.accepts = application/zip, foo/bar</code>
Informational Note:	A comma separated list of MIME types that SWORD will accept.
Properties:	<pre> sword-server.accept-packaging.[handle].METSDSpaceSIP.identifier sword-server.accept-packaging.[handle].METSDSpaceSIP.q </pre>
Example Value:	<pre> sword-server.accept-packaging.[handle].METSDSpaceSIP.identifier = http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDSpaceSIP sword-server.accept-packaging.[handle].METSDSpaceSIP.q = 1.0 </pre>
Informational Note:	Collection Specific settings: these will be used on the collections with the given handles.

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.expose-items</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.expose-items = false</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	Should the server offer up items in collections as sword deposit targets. This will be effected by placing a URI in the collection description which will list all the allowed items for the depositing user in that collection on request. <b>NOTE:</b> this will require an implementation of deposit onto items, which will not be forthcoming for a short while.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.expose-communities</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.expose-communities = false</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	Should the server offer as the default the list of all Communities to a Service Document request. If false, the server will offer the list of all collections, which is the default and recommended behavior at this stage. <b>NOTE:</b> a service document for Communities will not offer any viable deposit targets, and the client will need to request the list of Collections in the target before deposit can continue.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.max-upload-size</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.max-upload-size = 0</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	The maximum upload size of a package through the sword interface, in bytes. This will be the combined size of all the files, the metadata and any manifest data. It is NOT the same as the maximum size set for an individual file upload through the user interface. If not set, or set to 0, the sword service will default to no limit.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.keep-original-package</code>



<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.keep-original-package = true</code>
Informational Note:	Whether or not DSpace should store a copy of the original sword deposit package. <b>NOTE:</b> this will cause the deposit process to run slightly slower, and will accelerate the rate at which the repository consumes disk space. BUT, it will also mean that the deposited packages are recoverable in their original form. It is strongly recommended, therefore, to leave this option turned on. When set to "true", this requires that the configuration option <code>upload.temp.dir</code> (in <code>dspace.cfg</code> ) is set to a valid location.
Property:	<code>sword-server.bundle.name</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.bundle.name = SWORD</code>
Informational Note:	The bundle name that SWORD should store incoming packages under if <code>sword.keep-original-package</code> is set to true. The default is "SWORD" if not value is set
Properties:	<code>sword-server.keep-package-on-fail</code> <code>sword-server.failed-package.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>sword-server.keep-package-on-fail=true</code> <code>sword-server.failed-package.dir=\${dspace.dir}/upload</code>
Informational Note:	In the event of package ingest failure, provide an option to store the package on the file system. The default is false.
Property:	<code>sword-server.identify-version</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.identify-version = true</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	Should the server identify the sword version in a deposit response. It is recommended to leave this unchanged.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.on-behalf-of.enable</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.on-behalf-of.enable = true</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	Should mediated deposit via sword be supported. If enabled, this will allow users to deposit content packages on behalf of other users.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>sword-server.restore-mode.enable</code>
<b>Example Value:</b>	<code>sword-server.restore-mode.enable = true</code>
<b>Informational Note:</b>	Should the sword server enable restore-mode when ingesting new packages. If this is enabled the item will be treated as a previously deleted item from the repository. If the item had previously been assigned a handle then that same handle will be restored to activity. If that item had not been previously assign a handle, then a new handle will be assigned.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>plugin.named.org.dspace.sword.SWORDingester</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/sword-server.cfg</code>
Example Value:	<pre> plugin.named.org.dspace.sword.SWORDIngester = \   org.dspace.sword.SWORDMETSIngester = http://purl.org/net/sword-types/ METSDDSpaceSIP \   org.dspace.sword.SimpleFileIngester = SimpleFileIngester </pre>
Informational Note:	<p>Configure the plugins to process incoming packages. The form of this configuration is as per the Plugin Manager's Named Plugin documentation: <code>plugin.named.[interface] = [implementation] = [package format identifier]</code> (see <code>dspace.cfg</code>). Package ingesters should implement the <code>SWORDIngester</code> interface, and will be loaded when a package of the format specified above in: <code>sword-server.accept-packaging.[package format].identifier = [package format identifier]</code> is received. In the event that this is a simple file deposit, with no package format, then the class named by "SimpleFileIngester" will be loaded and executed where appropriate. This case will only occur when a single file is being deposited into an existing DSpace Item.</p>

#### 4.6.3.3 Deposit to SWORD Server

If you'd like to deposit content to your repository via the installed SWORD Server, you'll need to select a SWORD Client to do so.

- A variety of SWORDv1 Clients (in various languages/tools) are available off of <http://swordapp.org/sword-v1/>
- DSpace also comes with an optional [SWORDv1 Client](#) (see page 247) which can be enabled to deposit content from one DSpace to another.
- An example SWORDv1 ZIP package is available in the DSpace Codebase at: [https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/dspace-5\\_x/dspace-sword/example](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/dspace-5_x/dspace-sword/example)
- Finally, it's also possible to simply deposit a valid SWORD Zip package via common Linux commandline tools (e.g. curl). For example:

```

Deposit a SWORD Zip package named "sword-package.zip" into a DSpace
Collection (Handle 123456789/2) as user "test@dspace.org"
(Please note that you WILL need to obviously modify the Collection location,
user/password and name of the SWORD package)

curl -i --data-binary "@sword-package.zip" -H "Content-
Disposition:filename=sword-package.zip" -H "Content-Type:application/zip" -H
"X-Packaging:http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDDSpaceSIP" -u test@dspace.org:
[password] http://[dspace.url]/sword/deposit/123456789/2

Template 'curl' command:

```

```
#curl -i --data-binary "@[zip-package-name]" -H "Content-
Disposition:filename=[zip-package-name]" -H "Content-Type:application/zip" -H
"X-Packaging:http://purl.org/net/sword-types/METSDSpaceSIP" -u [user]:
[password] http://[dspace.url]/sword/deposit/[collection-handle]
```

#### 4.6.3.4 DSpace Demo 7 Server: Service Documents

In DSpace 7, the SWORD interfaces are on the backend, so the correct URLs are

- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/sword/servicedocument>
- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/swordv2/servicedocument>

### 4.6.4 Exporting and Importing Community and Collection Hierarchy

- [Community and Collection Structure Importer](#)(see page 301)
  - [Usage](#)(see page 301)
  - [XML Import Format](#)(see page 301)
- [Community and Collection Structure Exporter](#)(see page 303)
  - [Usage](#)(see page 303)

#### 4.6.4.1 Community and Collection Structure Importer

This Command-Line tool gives you the ability to import a community and collection structure directory from a source XML file.

##### Usage

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace structure-builder</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.administer.StructBuilder</code>
Argument: short and long (if available) forms:	Description of the argument
<code>-f</code>	Source xml file. The presence of this argument engages import mode.
<code>-o</code>	Output xml file. <b>Required.</b> A copy of the input augmented with the Handles assigned to each new Community or Collection.
<code>-e</code>	Email of DSpace Administrator. <b>Required.</b>

##### XML Import Format

The administrator need to build the source xml document in the following format:

```

<import_structure>
 <community>
 <name>Community Name</name>
 <description>Descriptive text</description>
 <intro>Introductory text</intro>
 <copyright>Special copyright notice</copyright>
 <sidebar>Sidebar text</sidebar>
 <community>
 <name>Sub Community Name</name>
 <community> ...[ad infinitum]...
 </community>
 </community>
 <collection>
 <name>Collection Name</name>
 <description>Descriptive text</description>
 <intro>Introductory text</intro>
 <copyright>Special copyright notice</copyright>
 <sidebar>Sidebar text</sidebar>
 <license>Special licence</license>
 <provenance>Provenance information</provenance>
 </collection>
</import_structure>

```

The resulting output document will be as follows:

```

<import_structure>
 <community identifier="123456789/1">
 <name>Community Name</name>
 <description>Descriptive text</description>
 <intro>Introductory text</intro>
 <copyright>Special copyright notice</copyright>
 <sidebar>Sidebar text</sidebar>
 <community identifier="123456789/2">
 <name>Sub Community Name</name>
 <community identifier="123456789/3"> ...[ad infinitum]...
 </community>
 <collection identifier="123456789/4">
 <name>Collection Name</name>
 <description>Descriptive text</description>
 <intro>Introductory text</intro>
 <copyright>Special copyright notice</copyright>
 <sidebar>Sidebar text</sidebar>
 <license>Special licence</license>
 <provenance>Provenance information</provenance>
 </collection>
</import_structure>

```

This command-line tool gives you the ability to import a community and collection structure directly from a source XML file. It is executed as follows:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace structure-builder -f /path/to/source.xml -o path/to/output.xml -e admin@user.com
```

This will examine the contents of *source.xml*, import the structure into DSpace while logged in as the supplied administrator, and then output the same structure to the output file, but including the handle for each imported community and collection as an attribute.

#### 4.6.4.2 Community and Collection Structure Exporter

This command-line tool writes the current Community and Collection structure into an XML document in the format which is read by the importer. See above for format details.

##### Usage

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace structure-builder [-h] [-?] -x -e <eperson> -o <output>
```

Argument: short and long (if available) forms:	Description of the argument
-x, --export	Export the current structure as XML. The presence of this argument engages export mode.
-e, --eperson <i>email or netid</i>	User who is manipulating the repository's structure. <b>Required.</b> This user's rights determine access to communities and collections.
-o, --output <i>file path</i>	The exported structure is written here. <b>Required.</b>
-h or -?	Help

#### 4.6.5 Importing Items via basic bibliographic formats (Endnote, BibTex, RIS, CSV, etc) and online services (arXiv, PubMed, CrossRef, CiNii, etc)

- [Introduction](#)(see page 303)
- [Supported External Sources](#)(see page 303)
- [Submitting starting from external sources](#)(see page 305)
- [Submitting starting from bibliographic file](#)(see page 305)
- [More Information](#)(see page 305)

In DSpace 7.0, the Biblio-Transformation-Engine (BTE) was removed in favor of [Live Import from external sources](#)(see page 358). All online services and bibliographic formats previously supported by BTE have been moved or are being moved to the External Sources framework.

#### 4.6.5.1 Introduction

This documentation explains the features and the usage of the importer framework. The importer framework is built into both the [REST API](#)(see page 666) and [User Interface](#)(see page 478). Currently supported formats include:

- Drag & drop of Endnote, BibTex, RIS, TSV, CSV, arXiv, PubMed. From the MyDSpace page, dragging & dropping one of these files will start a new submission, extracting the metadata from the file.
- Import via ORCID, PubMed, Sherpa Journals, Sherpa Publishers. From the MyDSpace page, you can select to start a new submission by searching an external source.

#### 4.6.5.2 Supported External Sources

DSpace supports importing metadata from a variety of online services. Some of these services can ONLY support out-of-the-box [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198).

Supported online services are all configured on the backend in the [dspace]/config/spring/api/external-services.xml file. To disable a service, simply comment it out in that file.

Online providers available out of the box include:

- [NASA Astrophysics Data System \(ADS\)](#)<sup>369</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "ads.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg. *REQUIRES an API key to function, signup at <https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/help/api>*
- [arXiv](#)<sup>370</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities).
- [CiNii](#)<sup>371</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "cinii.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg. *REQUIRES an API key to function, signup at <https://support.nii.ac.jp/en/cinii/api/developer>*
- [CrossRef](#)<sup>372</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "crossref.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg
- [European Patent Office \(EPO\)](#)<sup>373</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "epo.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg. *REQUIRES an API key to function, signup at <https://developers.epo.org/>*
- [ORCID](#)<sup>374</sup>
  - ORCID author lookup (Only supported for creating new "Person" Entities). Can be configured via "orcid.\*" settings in orcid.cfg.
  - ORCID publication lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Allows you to lookup a publication based on an author's ORCID. Can be configured via "orcid.\*" settings in orcid.cfg.
- PubMed
  - Search PubMed (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "pubmed.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg
  - Search PubMed Europe (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "pubmedeurope.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg

369 <https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/>

370 <https://arxiv.org/>

371 <https://cir.nii.ac.jp/>

372 <https://www.crossref.org/>

373 <https://www.epo.org/>

374 <https://orcid.org/>

- [SciELO](https://scielo.org/)<sup>375</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "scielo.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg.
- [Scopus](https://www.scopus.com/)<sup>376</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "scopus.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg. *REQUIRES an API key to function, signup at <https://dev.elsevier.com>*
- [Sherpa Romeo](https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/)<sup>377</sup>
  - Sherpa Journals by ISSN (Only supported for creating new "Journal" Entities)
  - Sherpa Journals (Only supported for creating new "Journal" Entities) - supports looking up a Journal by title
  - Sherpa Publishers (Only supported for creating new "OrgUnit" Entities)
- [VuFind](https://vufind.org/)<sup>378</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "vufind.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg
- [Web of Science](https://developer.clarivate.com/apis/wos/)<sup>379</sup> lookup (Supported for creating new Items, or "Publication" Entities). Can be configured via "wos.\*" settings in external-providers.cfg. *REQUIRES an API key to function, signup at <https://developer.clarivate.com/apis/wos/>*

#### 4.6.5.3 Submitting starting from external sources

1. From the MyDSpace page a new submission can be started not only using the submission form but also automatically populating metadata, importing them from several online services.
2. After choosing the external source to import from and inserting a term in search bar, the system will show the list of matching results.
3. When selecting an item, the system will display the metadata to be imported, according to the configured mapping.
4. Clicking on "Start submission" the system will display the submission forms filled with the imported metadata.

#### 4.6.5.4 Submitting starting from bibliographic file

1. From the MyDSpace page, drag & drop the bibliographic file (e.g. bibtex, endnote, etc) onto the file dropbox
2. Select the collection to submit to
3. Submission will be created, with the metadata parsed out of that bibliographic file. The bibliographic file will also be attached as a Bitstream (in case some fields could not be successfully parsed). You can choose to keep it or delete it.

<sup>375</sup> <https://scielo.org/>

<sup>376</sup> <https://www.scopus.com/>

<sup>377</sup> <https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/>

<sup>378</sup> <https://vufind.org/>

<sup>379</sup> <https://www.webofscience.com>



#### 4.6.5.5 More Information

More information on configuring metadata mappings for various import formats / services can be found in the [Live Import from external sources](#)(see page 358) documentation. See the "Editing Metadata Mapping" section.

### 4.6.6 Registering Bitstreams via Simple Archive Format

- [Overview](#)(see page 306)
  - [Accessible Storage](#)(see page 306)
  - [Registering Items Using the Item Importer](#)(see page 306)
  - [Internal Identification and Retrieval of Registered Items](#)(see page 306)
  - [Exporting Registered Items](#)(see page 307)
  - [Deleting Registered Items](#)(see page 307)

#### **Registering is not Importing**

The procedures below will **not import** the actual bitstreams into DSpace. They will merely inform DSpace of an existing location where these Bitstreams can be found. Please refer to [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308) for information on importing metadata and bitstreams.

#### 4.6.6.1 Overview

Registration is an alternate means of incorporating items, their metadata, and their bitstreams into DSpace by taking advantage of the bitstreams already being in storage accessible to DSpace. An example might be that there is a repository for existing digital assets. Rather than using the normal interactive ingest process or the batch import to furnish DSpace the metadata and to upload bitstreams, registration provides DSpace the metadata and the location of the bitstreams. DSpace uses a variation of the import tool to accomplish registration.

##### Accessible Storage

To register an item its bitstreams must reside on storage accessible to DSpace and therefore referenced by an asset store number in *dspace.cfg*. The configuration file *dspace.cfg* establishes one or more asset stores through the use of an integer asset store number. This number relates to a directory in the DSpace host's file system or a set of SRB account parameters. This asset store number is described in The *dspace.cfg* Configuration Properties File section and in the *dspace.cfg* file itself. The asset store number(s) used for registered items should generally not be the value of the *assetstore.incoming* property since it is unlikely that you will want to mix the bitstreams of normally ingested and imported items and registered items.

##### Registering Items Using the Item Importer

DSpace uses the same [import tool](#)(see page 308) that is used for batch import except that several variations are employed to support registration. The discussion that follows assumes familiarity with the import tool.

The [DSpace Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308) for registration does not include the actual content files (bitstreams) being registered. The format is however a directory full of items to be registered, with a subdirectory per item. Each item directory contains a file for the item's descriptive metadata (*dublin\_core.xml*) and a file listing the item's content files (*contents*), but not the actual content files themselves.

The *dublin\_core.xml* file for item registration is exactly the same as for regular item import.

The *contents* file, like that for regular item import, lists the item's content files, one content file per line, but each line has the one of the following formats:

```
-r -s n -f filepath
-r -s n -f filepath\tbundle:bundlename
-r -s n -f filepath\tbundle:bundlename\tpermissions: -[r|w] 'group name'
-r -s n -f filepath\tbundle:bundlename\tpermissions: -[r|w] 'group name'\tdescriptio
n: some text
```

where

- `-r` indicates this is a file to be registered
  - `-s n` indicates the asset store number (*n*)
  - `-f filepath` indicates the path and name of the content file to be registered (filepath)
  - `\t` is a tab character
  - `bundle:bundlename` is an optional bundle name
  - `permissions: -[r|w] 'group name'` is an optional read or write permission that can be attached to the bitstream
  - `description: some text` is an optional description field to add to the file
- The bundle, that is everything after the filepath, is optional and is normally not used.

The command line for registration is just like the one for regular import:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import -a -e joe@user.com -c collectionID -s items_dir -m mapfile
```

(or by using the long form)

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import --add --eperson=joe@user.com --collection=collectionID --
source=items_dir --map=mapfile
```

The `--workflow` and `--test` flags will function as described in [Importing Items](#)(see page 0).

The `--delete` flag will function as described in [Importing Items](#) but the registered content files will not be removed from storage. See [Deleting Registered Items](#).

The `--replace` flag will function as described in [Importing Items](#) but care should be taken to consider different cases and implications. With old items and new items being registered or ingested normally, there are four combinations or cases to consider. Foremost, an old registered item deleted from DSpace using `--replace` will not be removed from the storage. See [Deleting Registered Items](#). where is resides. A new item added to DSpace using `--replace` will be ingested normally or will be registered depending on whether or not it is marked in the *contents* files with the `-r`.

#### Internal Identification and Retrieval of Registered Items

Once an item has been registered, superficially it is indistinguishable from items ingested interactively or by batch import. But internally there are some differences:

First, the randomly generated internal ID is not used because DSpace does not control the file path and name of the bitstream. Instead, the file path and name are that specified in the *contents* file.

Second, the *store\_number* column of the bitstream database row contains the asset store number specified in the *contents* file.

Third, the *internal\_id* column of the bitstream database row contains a leading flag ( `-R` ) followed by the registered file path and name. For example, `-Rfilepath` where *filepath* is the file path and name relative to the asset store corresponding to the asset store number. The asset store could be traditional storage in the DSpace server's file system or an SRB account.

Fourth, an MD5 checksum is calculated by reading the registered file if it is in local storage.

Registered items and their bitstreams can be retrieved transparently just like normally ingested items.

### Exporting Registered Items

Registered items may be exported as described in Exporting Items. If so, the export directory will contain actual copies of the files being exported but the lines in the contents file will flag the files as registered. This means that if DSpace items are "round tripped" (see [Transferring Items Between DSpace Instances](#)(see page 0)) using the exporter and importer, the registered files in the export directory will again registered in DSpace instead of being uploaded and ingested normally.

### Deleting Registered Items

If a registered item is deleted from DSpace, (either interactively or by using the `--delete` or `--replace` flags described in [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308)) the item will disappear from DSpace but its registered content files will remain in place just as they were prior to registration. Bitstreams not registered but added by DSpace as part of registration, such as `license.txt` files, will be deleted.

## 4.6.7 Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format

- [Item Importer and Exporter](#)(see page 308)
  - [DSpace Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308)
    - [dublin\\_core.xml or metadata\\_\[prefix\].xml](#)(see page 308)
    - [contents file](#)(see page 310)
    - [relationships file](#)(see page 311)
  - [Configuring metadata\\_\[prefix\].xml for a Different Schema](#)(see page 312)
  - [Importing Items](#)(see page 313)
    - [Adding Items to a Collection from a directory](#)(see page 314)
    - [Adding Items to a Collection from a zipfile](#)(see page 314)
    - [Replacing Items in a Collection](#)(see page 315)
    - [Deleting or Unimporting Items in a Collection](#)(see page 315)
    - [Other Options](#)(see page 315)
    - [UI Batch Import](#)(see page 316)
  - [Exporting Items](#)(see page 317)
    - [UI Batch Import](#)(see page 318)

### 4.6.7.1 Item Importer and Exporter

DSpace has a set of command line tools for importing and exporting items in batches, using the DSpace Simple Archive Format. Apart from the offered functionality, these tools serve as an example for users who aim to implement their own item importer.

#### DSpace Simple Archive Format

The basic concept behind the DSpace's Simple Archive Format is to create an archive, which is a directory containing one subdirectory per item. Each item directory contains a file for the item's descriptive metadata, and the files that make up the item.

```
archive_directory/
 item_000/
 dublin_core.xml -- qualified Dublin Core metadata for metadata fields
 belonging to the 'dc' schema.
 metadata_[prefix].xml -- metadata in another schema. The prefix is the
 name of the schema as registered with the metadata registry.
 contents -- text file containing one line per filename.
 collections -- (Optional) text file that contains the handles of
 the collections the item will belong to. Each handle in a row.
 -- Collection in first line will be the owning
 collection.
 relationships -- (Optional) If importing Entities, you can specify
 one or more relationships to create on import
 file_1.doc -- files to be added as bitstreams to the item.
 file_2.pdf
 item_001/
 dublin_core.xml
 contents
 file_1.png
 ...
```

dublin\_core.xml or metadata\_[prefix].xml

The `dublin_core.xml` or `metadata_[prefix].xml` file has the following format, where each metadata element has its own entry within a `<dcvalue>` tagset. There are currently three tag attributes available in the `<dcvalue>` tagset:

- `element` - the Dublin Core element
- `qualifier` - the element's qualifier
- `language` - (optional) ISO language code for element

```
<dublin_core>
 <dcvalue element="title" qualifier="none">A Tale of Two Cities</dcvalue>
 <dcvalue element="date" qualifier="issued">1990</dcvalue>
```

```
<dcvalue element="title" qualifier="alternative" language="fr">J'aime les
Printemps</dcvalue>
</dublin_core>
```

(Note the optional language tag attribute which notifies the system that the optional title is in French.)

Every metadata field used, must be registered via the metadata registry of the DSpace instance first. See [Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries](#)(see page 814).

### Recommended Metadata

It is recommended to minimally provide "dc.title" and, where applicable, "dc.date.issued". Obviously you can (and should) provide much more detailed metadata about the Item. For more information see: [Metadata Recommendations](#)(see page 416).

contents file

The `contents` file simply enumerates, one file per line, the bitstream file names. See the following example:

```
file_1.doc
file_2.pdf
license
```

Please notice that the `license` is optional, and if you wish to have one included, you can place the file in the `.../item_001/` directory, for example.

The bitstream name may optionally be followed by any of the following:

- `\tbundle:BUNDLENAME`
- `\tpermissions:PERMISSIONS`
- `\tdescription:DESCRIPTION`
- `\tprimary:true`

Where '\t' is the tab character.

'BUNDLENAME' is the name of the bundle to which the bitstream should be added. Without specifying the bundle, items will go into the default bundle, ORIGINAL.

'PERMISSIONS' is text with the following format: `-[r|w] 'group name'`

'DESCRIPTION' is text of the files description.

Primary is used to specify the primary bitstream.

### Supported in 7.2 or above for 'import' only

The IIIF metadata feature was added in 7.2 and is only supported on *import* ('add' mode) of an SAF package.

For IIIF enabled items, the bitstream name may optionally be followed by any of the following:

- `\tiiiif-label:IIIFLABEL`
- `\tiiiif-toc:IIIFTOC`
- `\tiiiif-width:IIIFWIDTH`
- `\tiiiif-height:IIIFHEIGHT`

Where:

'IIIFLABEL' is the label that will be used for the image in the viewer.

'IIIFTOC' is the label that will be used for a table of contents entry in the viewer.

'IIIFWIDTH' is the image width that will be used for the IIIF canvas.

'IIIFHEIGHT' is the image height that will be used for the IIIF canvas.

relationships file

**Supported in 7.1 or above for 'import' only.**

This feature was added in 7.1. Currently the 'relationships' file is only supported on *import* ('add' mode) of an SAF package. See note at bottom of this section about using the "metadata\_relation.xml" if you wish to export & update relationships.

The optional `relationships` file enumerates the relationships of this Entity to other Entities (either already in the system, or also specified in your SAF import batch). This allows entities to be linked to new or existing entities during import. Entities can be linked to other entities in this import set by referring to their import subfolder name. Because relationships can only be created for Entities, it can only be used when importing [Configurable Entities](#) (see [page 198](#)).

Each line in the file contains a relationship type key and an item identifier in the following format:

```
relation.<relation_key> <handle|uuid|folderName:import_item_folder|
schema.element[.qualifier]:value>
```

The `import_item_folder` should refer the folder name of another item in this import batch. Example:

```
relation.isAuthorOfPublication 5dace143-1238-4b4f-affb-ed559f9254bb
relation.isAuthorOfPublication 123456789/1123
relation.isOrgUnitOfPublication folderName:item_001
relation.isProjectOfPublication project.identifier.id:123
relation.isProjectOfPublication project.identifier.name:A Name with Spaces
```

During initial import, new items are stored in a map keyed by the item folder name. Once the initial import is complete, a second pass checks for a 'relationships' manifest file in each folder and creates a relationship of the specified type to the specified item.

**Don't forget Entities require a "dspace.entity.type" metadata field**

Remember, if you are creating *new* Entities via an SAF package, those Entities MUST specify a "dspace.entity.type" metadata field. Because this metadata field is in the "dspace" schema, it MUST be specified in a "metadata\_dspace.xml", similar to:

#### metadata\_dspace.xml

```
<dublin_core schema="dspace">
 <dcvalue element="entity" qualifier="type">Publication</dcvalue>
</dublin_core>
```

#### Relationships to existing Entities can also be created via metadata\_relation.xml

If you already know the UUID of an existing Entity that you want to relate to, you can also create/update the "metadata\_relation.xml" file to add/update the relationship, similar to:

#### metadata\_relation.xml

```
<dublin_core schema="relation">
 <dcvalue element="isAuthorOfPublication">5dace143-1238-4b4f-affb-
ed559f9254bb</dcvalue>
</dublin_core>
```

The "relationships" file is primarily for creating relationships between Entities in the *same import batch*. Of course, you can also choose to use the "relationships" file to create new relationships to existing Entities instead of creating/updating the "metadata\_relation.xml" file. The main advantage of the "metadata\_relation.xml" file is that it is used both on export and import, while the "relationships" file is only used on import at this time.

#### Configuring metadata\_[prefix].xml for a Different Schema

It is possible to use other Schema such as EAD, VRA Core, etc. Make sure you have defined the new schema in the DSpace Metadata Schema Registry.

1. Create a separate file for the other schema named metadata\_[prefix].xml, where the [prefix] is replaced with the schema's prefix.
2. Inside the xml file use the same Dublin Core *syntax*, but on the <dublin\_core> element include the attribute schema=[prefix].
3. Here is an example for ETD metadata, which would be in the file metadata\_etd.xml :

```
<dublin_core schema="etd">
 <dcvalue element="degree" qualifier="department">Computer Science</
dcvalue>
 <dcvalue element="degree" qualifier="level">Masters</dcvalue>
 <dcvalue element="degree" qualifier="grantor">Michigan Institute of
Technology</dcvalue>
</dublin_core>
```

## Importing Items

Before running the item importer over items previously exported from a DSpace instance, please first refer to [Transferring Items Between DSpace Instances](#).

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace import</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemimport.ItemImport</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms:	Description
<code>-a or --add</code>	Add items to DSpace ‡
<code>-r or --replace</code>	Replace items listed in mapfile ‡
<code>-d or --delete</code>	Delete items listed in mapfile ‡
<code>-s or --source</code>	Source of the items (directory)
<code>-c or --collection</code>	Destination Collection by its Handle or database ID
<code>-m or --mapfile</code>	Where the mapfile for items can be found (name and directory)
<code>-e or --eperson</code>	Email of eperson doing the importing
<code>-w or --workflow</code>	Send submission through collection's workflow
<code>-n or --notify</code>	Kicks off the email alerting of the item(s) has(have) been imported
<code>-t or --test</code>	Test run, do not actually import items
<code>-p or --template</code>	Apply the collection template
<code>-R or --resume</code>	Resume a failed import (Used on Add only)



<code>-h or --help</code>	Command help
<code>-z or --zip</code>	Name of zipfile

‡ These are mutually exclusive.

The item importer is able to batch import unlimited numbers of items for a particular collection using a very simple CLI command and 'arguments'.

### Adding Items to a Collection from a directory

To add items to a collection, you gather the following information:

- eperson
  - Collection ID (either Handle (e.g. 123456789/14) or UUID)
  - Source directory where the items reside
  - Mapfile. Since you don't have one, you need to determine where it will be (e.g. /Import/Col\_14/mapfile)
- At the command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import --add --eperson=joe@user.com --collection=CollectionID --source=items_dir --mapfile=mapfile
```

or by using the short form:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import -a -e joe@user.com -c CollectionID -s items_dir -m mapfile
```

The above command would cycle through the archive directory's items, import them, and then generate a map file which stores the mapping of item directories to item handles. **SAVE THIS MAP FILE.** You can use it for replacing or deleting (unimporting) the mapped items.

**Testing.** You can add `--test` (or `-t`) to the command to simulate the entire import process without actually doing the import. This is extremely useful for verifying your import files before doing the actual import.

### Adding Items to a Collection from a zipfile

To add items to a collection, you gather the following information:

- eperson
  - Collection ID (either Handle (e.g. 123456789/14) or Database ID (e.g. 2))
  - Source directory where your zipfile containing the items resides
  - Zipfile
  - Mapfile. Since you don't have one, you need to determine where it will be (e.g. /Import/Col\_14/mapfile)
- At the command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import --add --eperson=joe@user.com --collection=CollectionID --source=zipfile_dir --zip=filename.zip --mapfile=mapfile
```

or by using the short form:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import -a -e joe@user.com -c CollectionID -s zipfile_dir -z
filename.zip -m mapfile
```

The above command would unpack the zipfile, cycle through the archive directory's items, import them, and then generate a map file which stores the mapping of item directories to item handles. **SAVE THIS MAP FILE.** You can use it for replacing or deleting (unimporting) the mapped items.

**Testing.** You can add `--test` (or `-t`) to the command to simulate the entire import process without actually doing the import. This is extremely useful for verifying your import files before doing the actual import.

### Replacing Items in a Collection

Replacing existing items is relatively easy. Remember that mapfile you saved above? Now you will use it. The command (in short form):

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import -r -e joe@user.com -c collectionID -s items_dir -m mapfile
```

Long form:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import --replace --eperson=joe@user.com --collection=collectionID
--source=items_dir --mapfile=mapfile
```

If you wish to replace content using a Zipfile, that's also possible. The command is similar. But, in this situation "-" refers to the directory of the zip file, and "-z" gives the name of the zipfile:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import -r -e joe@user.com -c collectionID -s zipfile_dir -z
filename.zip -m mapfile
```

### Deleting or Unimporting Items in a Collection

You are able to unimport or delete items provided you have the mapfile. Remember that mapfile you saved above? The command is (in short form):

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import -e joe@user.com -d -m mapfile
```

In long form:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace import --eperson=joe@user.com --delete --mapfile mapfile
```

### Other Options

- **Workflow.** The importer usually bypasses any workflow assigned to a collection. But add the `--workflow` (`-w`) argument will route the imported items through the workflow system.

- **Templates.** If you have templates that have constant data and you wish to apply that data during batch importing, add the `--template (-p)` argument.
- **Resume.** If, during importing, you have an error and the import is aborted, you can use the `--resume (-R)` flag to resume the import where you left off after you fix the error.
- **Specifying the owning collection on a per-item basis from the command line administration tool**  
If you omit the `-c` flag, which is otherwise mandatory, the ItemImporter searches for a file named "collections" in each item directory. This file should contain a list of collections, one per line, specified either by their handle, or by their internal db id. The ItemImporter then will put the item in each of the specified collections. The owning collection is the collection specified in the first line of the collections file. If both the `-c` flag is specified and the collections file exists in the item directory, the ItemImporter will ignore the collections file and will put the item in the collection specified on the command line. Since the collections file can differ between item directories, this gives you more fine-grained control of the process of batch adding items to collections.

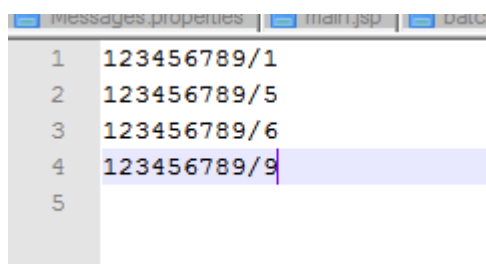
## UI Batch Import

Available in DSpace 7.4 and above.

Batch import can also take place via the Administrator's UI. The steps to follow are:

### A. Prepare the data

1. Items, i.e. the metadata and their bitstreams, must be in the Simple Archive Format described earlier in this chapter. Thus, for each item there must be a separate directory that contains the corresponding files of the specific item.
2. Moreover, in each item directory, there can be another file that describes the collection or the collections that this item will be added to. The name of this file must be "collections" and it is optional. It has the following format:



```

1 123456789/1
2 123456789/5
3 123456789/6
4 123456789/9
5

```

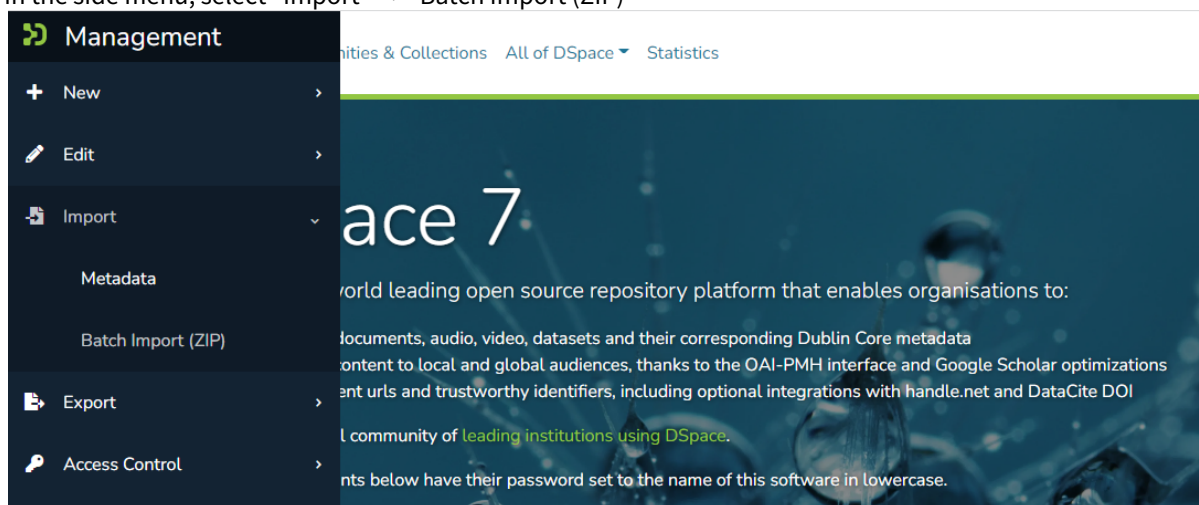
Each line contains the handle of the collection. The collection in the first line is the owning collection while the rest are the other collections that the item should belong to.

3. Compress the item directories into a ZIP file. Please note that you need to zip the actual item directories and not just the directory that contains the item directories. Thus, the final zip file must directly contain the item directories.

### B. Import the items via the UI

1. Login as an Administrator.

- In the side menu, select "Import" → "Batch Import (ZIP)"



- From the "Import Batch" page:
  - Select the Collection you are importing into.
  - Drag & drop the ZIP file into the drop box (or browse to it on your filesystem).
  - Choose whether you want to "Validate Only" or not.
    - When selected, DSpace will **test** the batch import process, but no content will be batch imported. This allows you to validate the results of the import process before doing the import.
    - When deselected, DSpace will do the batch import.

## Import Batch

Select the Collection to import into. Then, drop or browse to a Simple Archive Format (SAF) zip file that includes the Items to import

Select Collection

Validate Only  
When selected, the uploaded ZIP will be validated. You will receive a report of detected changes, but no changes will be saved.

Drop a batch ZIP to import , or [browse](#)

Back Proceed

- Clicking "Proceed" will start the Batch Import. This creates a new "Process" which begins the upload of the batch. *Depending on the size of the batch, this process may take some time to complete.* You can refresh to page to see the current status, or go back to the list of processes ("Processes" menu in sidebar) to check on its status. Once the process is COMPLETED, you will see a log of the results and a mapfile (which can be used to make later updates).
- All prior imports will be listed in the "Processes" menu, until their corresponding process entry is deleted. Once you are satisfied with the import and have no need to see the logs or mapfile, you may wish to delete that process entry in order to free up storage space (as your uploaded ZIP will be retained in DSpace until the process is deleted). A "process-cleaner" script can also be started from the "Processes" page which can be used to bulk delete old processes.

It is also possible to start an "import" directly from the "Processes" menu. This allows you to specify additional options/flags which are normally only available to the command-line "import" tool (see documentation above).

## Exporting Items

The item exporter can export a single item or a collection of items, and creates a DSpace simple archive in [the aforementioned format](#)<sup>380</sup> for each exported item. The items are exported in a sequential order in which they are retrieved from the database. As a consequence, the sequence numbers of the item subdirectories (item\_000, item\_001) are not related to DSpace handle or item IDs.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace export</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.ItemExport</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms:	Description
<code>-t</code> or <code>--type</code>	Type of export. <i>COLLECTION</i> will inform the program you want the whole collection. <i>ITEM</i> will be only the specific item. (You will actually key in the keywords in all caps. See examples below.)
<code>-i</code> or <code>--id</code>	The ID or Handle of the Collection or Item to export.
<code>-d</code> or <code>--dest</code>	The destination path where you want the file of items to be placed.
<code>-n</code> or <code>--number</code>	Sequence number to begin with. Whatever number you give, this will be the name of the first directory created for your export. The layout of the export directory is the same as the layout used for import.
<code>-m</code> or <code>--migrate</code>	Export the item/collection for migration. This will remove the handle and any other metadata that will be re-created in the new instance of DSpace.
<code>-x</code> or <code>--exclude-bitstreams</code>	Do not export bitstreams. See the usage scenario below.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Brief Help.

### Exporting a Collection

The CLI command to export the items of a collection:

<sup>380</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC4x/Importing+and+Exporting+Items+via+Simple+Archive+Format#ImportingandExportingItemsviaSimpleArchiveFormat-DSpaceSimpleArchiveFormat>

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace export --type=COLLECTION --id=collectionID_or_handle --dest=/
path/to/destination --number=seq_num
```

Short form:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace export -t COLLECTION -i collectionID_or_handle -d /path/to/
destination -n seq_num
```

The keyword *COLLECTION* means that you intend to export an entire collection. The ID can either be the database ID or the handle. The exporter will begin numbering the simple archives with the sequence number that you supply.

### Exporting a Single Item

To export a single item use the keyword *ITEM* and give the item ID as an argument:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace export --type=ITEM --id=itemID_or_handle --dest=/path/to/
destination --number=seq_num
```

Short form:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace export -t ITEM -i itemID_or_handle -d /path/to/destination -n
seq_num
```

Each exported item will have an additional file in its directory, named "handle". This will contain the handle that was assigned to the item, and this file will be read by the importer so that items exported and then imported to another machine will retain the item's original handle.

### The `-m` Argument

Using the `-m` argument will export the item/collection and also perform the migration step. It will perform the same process that the next section [Exchanging Content Between Repositories](#) (see page 249) performs. We recommend that section to be read in conjunction with this flag being used.

### The `-x` Argument

Using the `-x` argument will do the standard export except for the bitstreams which will not be exported. If you have full SAF without bitstreams and you have the bitstreams archive (which might have been imported into DSpace earlier) somewhere near, you could [symlink](#)<sup>381</sup> original archive files into SAF directories and have an exported collection which almost doesn't occupy any space but otherwise is identical to the exported collection (i.e. could be imported into DSpace). In case of huge collections `-x` mode might be substantially faster than full export.

### UI Batch Import

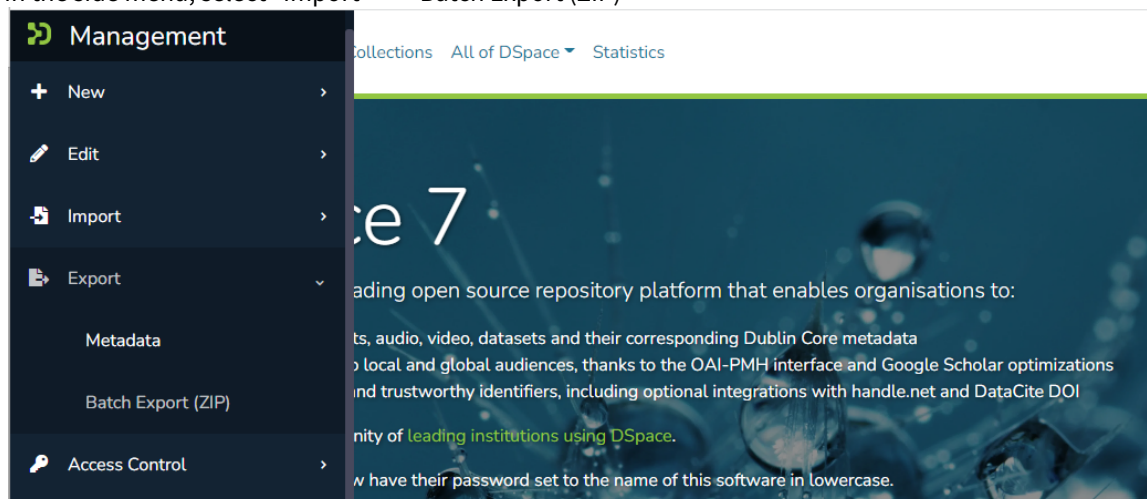
Available in DSpace 7.4 and above.

<sup>381</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Symbolic\\_link](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Symbolic_link)

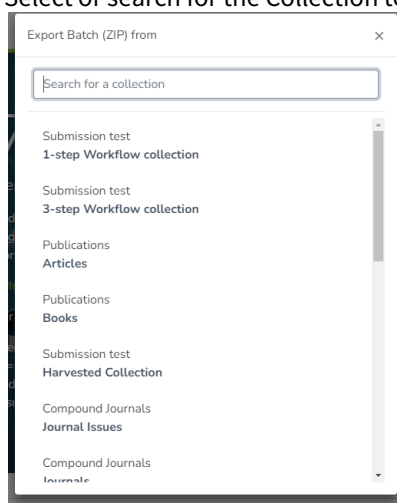
Batch export can also take place via the Administrator's UI. The default file size upload limit is 512MB, and is being configured in the [spring boot application.properties file](#)<sup>382</sup>.

The steps to follow are:

1. Login as an Administrator.
2. In the side menu, select "Import" → "Batch Export (ZIP)"



3. Select or search for the Collection to export from:



4. Clicking "Export" will start the Batch Export. This creates a new "Process" which begins export process. *Depending on the size of the export, this process may take some time to complete.* You can refresh to page to see the current status, or go back to the list of processes ("Processes" menu in sidebar) to check on its status. Once the process is COMPLETED, you will see a log of the results and an exported ZIP file which you can download for the results.
5. All prior exports will be listed in the "Processes" menu, until their corresponding process entry is deleted. Once you are satisfied with the export and have downloaded the ZIP, you may wish to delete that process entry in order to free up storage space (as your exported ZIP will be retained in DSpace until the process is deleted). A "process-cleaner" script can also be started from the "Processes" page which can be used to bulk delete old processes.

<sup>382</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace-server-webapp/src/main/resources/application.properties#L125-L132>

It is also possible to start an "export" directly from the "Processes" menu. This allows you to specify additional options/flags which are normally only available from the command-line "export" tool (see documentation above). It also allows you to export a single Item.

## 4.6.8 Importing and Exporting Content via Packages

- [Package Importer and Exporter](#)(see page 321)
  - [Supported Package Formats](#)(see page 321)
  - [Ingesting](#)(see page 321)
    - [Ingestion Modes & Options](#)(see page 321)
      - [Ingesting a Single Package](#)(see page 321)
      - [Ingesting Multiple Packages at Once](#)(see page 322)
    - [Restoring/Replacing using Packages](#)(see page 324)
      - [Default Restore Mode](#)(see page 324)
      - [Restore, Keep Existing Mode](#)(see page 324)
      - [Force Replace Mode](#)(see page 324)
  - [Disseminating](#)(see page 325)
    - [Disseminating a Single Object](#)(see page 325)
    - [Disseminating Multiple Objects at Once](#)(see page 325)
  - [Archival Information Packages \(AIPs\)](#)(see page 325)
  - [METS packages](#)(see page 326)

### 4.6.8.1 Package Importer and Exporter

This command-line tool gives you access to the Packager plugins. It can *ingest* a package to create a new DSpace Object (Community, Collection or Item), or *disseminate* a DSpace Object as a package.

To see all the options, invoke it as:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager --help
```

This mode also displays a list of the names of package ingestion and dissemination plugins that are currently installed in your DSpace. Each Packager plugin also may allow for custom options, which may provide you more control over how a package is imported or exported. You can see a listing of all specific packager options by invoking `--help` (or `-h`) with the `--type` (or `-t`) option:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager --help --type METS
```

The above example will display the normal help message, while also listing any additional options available to the "METS" packager plugin.

#### Supported Package Formats

DSpace comes with several pre-configured package ingestion and dissemination plugins, which allow you to import/export content in a variety of formats.

#### Pre-Configured Submission Package (SIP) Types



- AIP - Ingests content which is in the [DSpace Archival Information Package \(AIP\) format](#)(see page 587). This is used as part of the DSpace [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) process
- DSPACE-ROLES - Ingests DSpace users/groups in the [DSPACE-ROLES XML Schema](#)(see page 600). This is primarily used by the DSpace [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) process to ingest/replace DSpace Users & Groups.
- METS - Ingests content which is in the [DSpace METS SIP format](#)<sup>383</sup>
- PDF - Ingests a single PDF file (where basic metadata is extracted from the file properties in the PDF Document).

### Pre-Configured Dissemination Package (DIP) Types

- AIP - Exports content which is in the [DSpace Archival Information Package \(AIP\) format](#)(see page 587). This is used as part of the DSpace [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) process
- DSPACE-ROLES - Exports DSpace users/groups in the [DSPACE-ROLES XML Schema](#)(see page 600). This is primarily used by the DSpace [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) process to export DSpace Users & Groups.
- METS - Exports content in the [DSpace METS SIP format](#)<sup>384</sup>

For a list of all package ingestion and dissemination plugins that are currently installed in your DSpace, you can execute:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager --help
```

Some packages ingestion and dissemination plugins also have custom options/parameters. For example, to see a listing of the custom options for the "METS" plugin, you can execute:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager --help --type METS
```

## Ingesting

### Ingestion Modes & Options

When ingesting packages DSpace supports several different "modes". (Please note that not all packager plugins may support all modes of ingestion)

1. Submit/Ingest Mode ( `-s` option, default) – submit package to DSpace in order to create a new object(s)
2. Restore Mode ( `-r` option) – restore pre-existing object(s) in DSpace based on package(s). This also attempts to restore all handles and relationships (parent/child objects). This is a specialized type of "submit", where the object is created with a known Handle and known relationships.
3. Replace Mode ( `-r -f` option) – replace existing object(s) in DSpace based on package(s). This also attempts to restore all handles and relationships (parent/child objects). This is a specialized type of "restore" where the contents of existing object(s) is replaced by the contents in the AIP(s). By default, if a normal "restore" finds the object already exists, it will back out (i.e. rollback all changes) and report which object already exists.

### Ingesting a Single Package

To ingest a single package from a file, give the command:

<sup>383</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceMETSSIPProfile>

<sup>384</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceMETSSIPProfile>

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -e [user-email] -p [parent-handle] -t [packager-name] /
full/path/to/package
```

Where *[user-email]* is the e-mail address of the E-Person under whose authority this runs; *[parent-handle]* is the Handle of the Parent Object into which the package is ingested, *[packager-name]* is the plugin name of the package ingester to use, and */full/path/to/package* is the path to the file to ingest (or "-" to read from the standard input).

Here is an example that loads a PDF file with internal metadata as a package:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -e admin@myu.edu -p 4321/10 -t PDF thesis.pdf
```

This example takes the result of retrieving a URL and ingests it:

```
wget -O - http://alum.mit.edu/jarandom/my-thesis.pdf | [dspace]/bin/dspace packager
-e admin@myu.edu -p 4321/10 -t PDF -
```

#### Ingesting Multiple Packages at Once

Some Packager plugins support bulk ingest functionality using the `--all` (or `-a`) flag. When `--all` is used, the packager will attempt to ingest all child packages referenced by the initial package (and continue on recursively). Some examples follow:

- For a Site-based package - this would ingest **all** Communities, Collections & Items based on the located package files
- For a Community-based package - this would ingest that Community and all SubCommunities, Collections and Items based on the located package files
- For a Collection - this would ingest that Collection and all contained Items based on the located package files
- For an Item - this just ingest the Item (including all Bitstreams & Bundles) based on the package file.

Here is a basic example of a bulk ingest 'packager' command template:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -s -a -t AIP -e <eperson> -p <parent-handle> <file-
path>
```

for example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -s -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -p 4321/12 collection-
aip.zip
```

The above command will ingest the package named "collection-aip.zip" as a child of the specified Parent Object (handle="4321/12"). The resulting object is assigned a new Handle (since `-s` is specified). In addition, any child packages directly referenced by "collection-aip.zip" are also recursively ingested (a new Handle is also assigned for each child AIP).

#### Not All Packagers Support Bulk Ingest

Because the packager plugin must know how to locate all child packages from an initial package file, not all plugins can support bulk ingest. Currently, in DSpace the following Packager Plugins support bulk ingest capabilities:

- METS Packager Plugin
- AIP Packager Plugin (see page 559)

### Restoring/Replacing using Packages

**Restoring** is slightly different than just **ingesting**. When restoring, the packager makes every attempt to restore the object as it **used to be** (including its handle, parent object, etc.).

There are currently three restore modes:

1. Default Restore Mode ( `-r` ) = Attempt to restore object (and optionally children). Rollback all changes if any object is found to already exist.
2. Restore, Keep Existing Mode ( `-r -k` ) = Attempt to restore object (and optionally children). If an object is found to already exist, skip over it (and all children objects), and continue to restore all other non-existing objects.
3. Force Replace Mode ( `-r -f` ) = Restore an object (and optionally children) and **overwrite** any existing objects in DSpace. Therefore, if an object is found to already exist in DSpace, its contents are replaced by the contents of the package. *WARNING: This mode is potentially dangerous as it will permanently destroy any object contents that do not currently exist in the package. You may want to first perform a backup, unless you are sure you know what you are doing!*

### Default Restore Mode

By default, the restore mode ( `-r` option) will rollback all changes if any object is found to already exist. The user will be informed if which object already exists within their DSpace installation.

Use this 'packager' command template:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -t AIP -e <eperson> <file-path>
```

For example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

Notice that unlike `-s` option (for submission/ingesting), the `-r` option does not require the Parent Object ( `-p` option) to be specified if it can be determined from the package itself.

In the above example, the package "aip4567.zip" is restored to the DSpace installation with the Handle provided within the package itself (and added as a child of the parent object specified within the package itself). If the object is found to already exist, all changes are rolled back (i.e. nothing is restored to DSpace)

### Restore, Keep Existing Mode

When the "Keep Existing" flag ( `-k` option) is specified, the restore will attempt to skip over any objects found to already exist. It will report to the user that the object was found to exist (and was not modified or changed). It will then continue to restore all objects which do not already exist. This flag is most useful when attempting a bulk restore (using the `--all` (or `-a`) option).

One special case to note: If a Collection or Community is found to already exist, its child objects are also skipped over. So, this mode will not auto-restore items to an existing Collection.

Here's an example of how to use this 'packager' command:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -a -k -t AIP -e <eperson> <file-path>
```

For example:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -a -k -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

In the above example, the package "aip4567.zip" is restored to the DSpace installation with the Handle provided within the package itself (and added as a child of the parent object specified within the package itself). In addition, any child packages referenced by "aip4567.zip" are also recursively restored (the `-a` option specifies to also restore all child packages). They are also restored with the Handles & Parent Objects provided with their package. If any object is found to already exist, it is skipped over (child objects are also skipped). All non-existing objects are restored.

Force Replace Mode

When the "Force Replace" flag (`-f` option) is specified, the restore will **overwrite** any objects found to already exist in DSpace. In other words, existing content is deleted and then replaced by the contents of the package(s).

#### Potential for Data Loss

Because this mode actually **destroys** existing content in DSpace, it is potentially dangerous and may result in data loss! It is recommended to always perform a full backup (assetstore files & database) before attempting to replace any existing object(s) in DSpace.

Here's an example of how to use this 'packager' command:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -f -t AIP -e <eperson> <file-path>
```

For example:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -f -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

In the above example, the package "aip4567.zip" is restored to the DSpace installation with the Handle provided within the package itself (and added as a child of the parent object specified within the package itself). In addition, any child packages referenced by "aip4567.zip" are also recursively ingested. They are also restored with the Handles & Parent Objects provided with their package. *If any object is found to already exist, its contents are replaced by the contents of the appropriate package.*

If any error occurs, the script attempts to rollback the entire replacement process.

## Disseminating

### Disseminating a Single Object

To disseminate a single object as a package, give the command:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -e [user-email] -i [handle] -t [packager-name] [file-path]
```

Where *[user-email]* is the e-mail address of the E-Person under whose authority this runs; *[handle]* is the Handle of the Object to disseminate; *[packager-name]* is the plugin name of the package disseminator to use; and *[file-path]* is the path to the file to create (or "-" to write to the standard output). For example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -e admin@myu.edu -i 4321/4567 -t METS 4567.zip
```

The above code will export the object of the given handle (4321/4567) into a METS file named "4567.zip".

### Disseminating Multiple Objects at Once

To export an object hierarchy, use the `-a` (or `--all`) package parameter.

For example, use this 'packager' command template:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -a -e [user-email] -i [handle] -t [packager-name] [file-path]
```

for example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -a -t METS -e admin@myu.edu -i 4321/4567 4567.zip
```

The above code will export the object of the given handle (4321/4567) into a METS file named "4567.zip". In addition it would export all children objects to the same directory as the "4567.zip" file.

### Archival Information Packages (AIPs)

Since DSpace 1.7, DSpace can backup and restore all of its contents as a set of [AIP Files](#) (see page 587). This includes all Communities, Collections, Items, Groups and People in the system.

This feature came out of a requirement for DSpace to better integrate with [DuraCloud](#)<sup>385</sup>, and other backup storage systems. One of these requirements is to be able to essentially "backup" local DSpace contents into the cloud (as a type of offsite backup), and "restore" those contents at a later time.

Essentially, this means DSpace can export the entire hierarchy (i.e. bitstreams, metadata and relationships between Communities/Collections/Items) into a relatively standard format (a METS-based, [AIP format](#) (see page 587)). This entire hierarchy can also be re-imported into DSpace in the same format (essentially a restore of that content in the same or different DSpace installation).

---

<sup>385</sup> <https://duracloud.org>

For more information, see the section on [AIP backup & Restore for DSpace](#)(see page 559).

## METS packages

Since DSpace 1.4 release, the software includes a package disseminator and matching ingester for the DSpace METS SIP (Submission Information Package) format. They were created to help end users prepare sets of digital resources and metadata for submission to the archive using well-defined standards such as [METS](#)<sup>386</sup>, [MODS](#)<sup>387</sup>, and [PREMIS](#)<sup>388</sup>. The plugin name is *METS* by default, and it uses MODS for descriptive metadata.

The DSpace METS SIP profile is available at: [DSpaceMETSSIPProfile](#)<sup>389</sup>

## 4.6.9 Configurable Workflow

- [Introduction](#)(see page 327)
- [How to Configure your Workflows](#)(see page 327)
  - [WORKFLOWS](#)(see page 327)
  - [STEPS](#)(see page 327)
  - [ROLES](#)(see page 328)
  - [ACTIONS](#)(see page 328)
  - [CURATION](#)(see page 328)
  - [HOW IT WORKS](#)(see page 328)
- [Data Migration](#)(see page 328)
  - [Workflowitem conversion/migration scripts](#)(see page 328)
    - [Automatic migration](#)(see page 329)
    - [Java based migration](#)(see page 329)
- [Configuration](#)(see page 329)
  - [Main workflow configuration](#)(see page 329)
    - [workflowFactory bean \(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.XmlWorkflowFactoryImpl\)](#)(see page 331)
    - [workflow beans \(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow\)](#)(see page 332)
    - [role beans \(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role\)](#)(see page 332)
    - [step beans \(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Step\)](#)(see page 333)
  - [Workflow actions configuration](#)(see page 334)
    - [API configuration](#)(see page 334)
      - [User Selection Action](#)(see page 335)
      - [Processing Action](#)(see page 335)
- [Authorizations](#)(see page 335)
- [Database](#)(see page 335)
  - [cwf\\_workflowitem](#)(see page 336)
  - [cwf\\_collectionrole](#)(see page 336)
  - [cwf\\_workflowitemrole](#)(see page 336)
  - [cwf\\_pooltask](#)(see page 336)
  - [cwf\\_claimtask](#)(see page 337)
  - [cwf\\_in\\_progress\\_user](#)(see page 337)
- [Additional workflow steps/actions and features](#)(see page 337)
  - [Optional workflow steps: Select single reviewer workflow](#)(see page 337)
  - [Optional workflow steps: Score review workflow](#)(see page 338)
  - [Workflow overview features](#)(see page 338)

<sup>386</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/mets/>

<sup>387</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/>

<sup>388</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis/>

<sup>389</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceMETSSIPProfile>

### 4.6.9.1 Introduction

Workflows can be used to define how documents should be reviewed or edited after being submitted and/or imported into DSpace. The primary focus of the workflow framework is to create a more flexible solution for the administrator to configure, and even to allow an application developer to implement custom steps, which may be configured in the workflow for the collection through a simple configuration file. Each workflow can be compared to an action that is performed on an item between its submission to the repository and the moment it is archived and published in the repository. The concept behind this approach was modeled on the configurable submission system already present in DSpace.

### 4.6.9.2 How to Configure your Workflows

Every submission to DSpace goes through a workflow before it is published in the repository. A workflow consists of a series of steps, each of which is an opportunity for a reviewer, editor or collection administrator to modify and/or approve/reject the submission. A step may also begin by running a {Curation Task} over the submission.

Each collection is associated with a workflow. If no explicit association is made, the collection is assigned the default workflow. These associations are configured in `config/spring/api/workflow.xml` using the `workflowMapping` property of the `XmlWorkflowFactory` bean. To make an explicit association, add an entry to the list with the collection's Handle as the 'key' and the 'name' of a Workflow bean as the 'value-ref'.

Each step in a workflow is associated with a "role" which defines who can perform that step. Role members will be notified when a new submission needs their attention. Roles are defined by DSpace user groups. If you wish to have reviewers interact with incoming submissions, you must create and fill the necessary groups. See below for details.

#### WORKFLOWS

To create a new workflow, add another bean with the 'class' 'org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow' and a unique 'name'. Give it a 'steps' property containing a list of the steps that should be entered in sequence, and a 'firstStep' property which names the step to be entered first. See the default workflow for an example. An existing step may be re-used if appropriate, or you can create one to suit.

#### STEPS

Aside from its name, a step has a "user selection method", a "role", "actions" and "outcomes".

A step's 'userSelectionMethod' is the name of an "action" of the user-selection type. A step may, for example, let itself be claimed (for a given submission) by a single user, or it may combine the actions of multiple users. A step has exactly one 'userSelectionMethod'. See more on actions below.

A step's role defines the set of users who may perform actions on a submission that has entered that step. See more on roles below.

A step's actions are the types of work that are done in the step. See more on actions below. More than one action may be listed.

A step's outcomes connect the role members' decisions with the next step to be performed. For example, this allows a role member to accept a submission and skip subsequent steps by going directly to the final step in the workflow.

To create a new step, add a bean with 'class' `org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Step` and the necessary properties, as discussed above. See the existing steps in `workflow.xml` for examples.

## ROLES

You may re-use existing roles, or add your own. A role has a 'name', a 'scope', and optionally a 'description'. There are three kinds of roles:

- A COLLECTION role refers to a user group associated with a specific collection. It will be named {collectionID}\_{roleName}. For example, a role 'editor' with COLLECTION scope, applied to collection 123, will refer to the user group named 'editor\_123', while the same role applied to collection 456 will refer to the user group 'editor\_456'.
- A REPOSITORY role refers to a fixed user group, whose name is the role's name. A REPOSITORY role named 'fred' will always refer to the user group 'fred'.
- An ITEM role is assigned by a previous action in the workflow. [NEEDS MORE EXPLANATION]

To create a new role, add a bean with 'class' org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role, the appropriate 'scope', and a unique 'name'. Be sure that the related groups exist.

## ACTIONS

Actions are defined separately in 'config/spring/api/workflow-actions.xml'.

A number of actions are already defined, and these should serve most needs. Actions are implemented in Java code, so if you need a new one then you will need to write some Java in addition to configuring it here.

There are two kinds of actions: user assignment and processing. A user assignment action selects one or more role members to execute a step. A processing action modifies the state of the submission.

To configure a new Action, create a bean with a unique 'id', 'class' equal to the fully qualified name of the Java class which implements the action, and 'scope' "prototype". Add properties, constructor arguments, etc. as required by the code.

## CURATION

To attach a Curation Task to a workflow step, see [Curation System](#)<sup>390</sup>. Tasks are executed at the beginning of a step, before role members are notified.

## HOW IT WORKS

For details of how these concepts are implemented (for example, to create new actions) see the [Workflow](#)(see page 715) page under DSpace Development.

### 4.6.9.3 Data Migration

As of DSpace 7, Configurable Workflow is the only workflow system available in DSpace. It has fully replaced the older "traditional/basic workflow" system. One major difference is that Configurable Workflow is dynamic – if a user is added to a workflow approval task *after* a workflow has already begun, they will immediately get access to any existing items in workflow. Previously, this was not possible in the "traditional" workflow system.

#### Workflowitem conversion/migration scripts

Depending on the workflow that is used by a DSpace installation, different scripts can be used when migrating to the new workflow.

---

<sup>390</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC4x/Curation+System>



### Automatic migration

As part of the upgrade to DSpace 7 or above, all your old policies, roles, tasks and workflowitems will be automatically updated from the original workflow to the Configurable Workflow framework. This is done via this command:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace database migrate ignored
```

The "ignored" parameter will tell DSpace to run any previously-ignored migrations on your database. As the Configurable Workflow migrations have existed in the DSpace codebase for some time, this is the only way to force them to be run.

For more information on the "database migrate" command, please see [Database Utilities](#)(see page 611).

### Java based migration

In case your DSpace installation uses a customized version of the workflow, the migration script might not work properly and a different approach is recommended. Therefore, an additional Java based script has been created that restarts the workflow for all the workflowitems that exist in the original workflow framework. The script will take all the existing workflowitems and place them in the first step of the configurable workflow framework thereby taking into account the XML configuration that exists at that time for the collection to which the item has been submitted. This script can also be used to restart the workflow for workflowitems in the original workflow but not to restart the workflow for items in the configurable workflow.

To execute the script, run the following CLI command:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace dsrun org.dspace.xmlworkflow.migration.RestartWorkflow -e
admin@myrespository.org
```

The following arguments can be specified when running the script:

- -e: specifies the username of an administrator user
- -n: if sending submissions through the workflow, send notification emails
- -p: the provenance description to be added to the item
- -h: help

## 4.6.9.4 Configuration

### Main workflow configuration

As of DSpace 7, the `workflow.xml` configuration file has been migrated to use Spring Bean syntax (instead of a custom XML format). The structure of this XML has changed. If you need help migrating your old `workflow.xml` file (which started with a `<wf-config>` tag) to the new format (using `<bean>` tags), an XSLT script is available: [workflow-migration.xsl](#)<sup>391</sup>

<sup>391</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566678/workflow-migration.xsl?api=v2&modificationDate=1622149022820&version=1>

The workflow main configuration can be found in the workflow.xml file, located in `[dspace]/config/spring/api/workflow.xml`. An example of this workflow configuration file can be found below.

```
<beans>
 <bean class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.XmlWorkflowFactoryImpl">
 <property name="workflowMapping">
 <util:map>
 <entry key="defaultWorkflow" value-ref="defaultWorkflow"/>
<!-- <entry key="123456789/4" value-ref="selectSingleReviewer"/>-->
<!-- <entry key="123456789/5" value-ref="scoreReview"/>-->
 </util:map>
 </property>
 </bean>

 <!--Standard DSpace workflow-->
 <bean name="defaultWorkflow" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow">
 <property name="firstStep" ref="reviewstep"/>
 <property name="steps">
 <util:list>
 <ref bean="reviewstep"/>
 <ref bean="editstep"/>
 <ref bean="finaleditstep"/>
 </util:list>
 </property>
 </bean>

 <bean id="{workflow.id}"
 class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow">
 <!-- Another workflow configuration-->
 </bean>

 <!-- Role beans. See below. -->

 <!-- Step beans. See below. -->

</beans>
```

workflowFactory bean (org.dspace.xmlworkflow.XmlWorkflowFactoryImpl)

The workflow map contains a mapping between collections in DSpace and a workflow configuration, and is defined by the `workflowMapping` property of the workflow factory. Similar to the configuration of the submission process, the mapping can be done based on the handle of the collection. The mapping with "defaultWorkflow" as the value for the collection mapping, will be used for the collections not occurring in other mapping tags. Each mapping is defined by a "entry" element with two attributes:

- key: can either be a collection handle or "defaultWorkflow"
- value-ref: the value of this attribute points to one of the workflow configurations defined by the "Workflow" beans

workflow beans (`org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow`)

The workflow bean is a repeatable XML element and represents one workflow process. It requires the following:

- "name" attribute: a unique name used for the identification of the workflow and used in the workflow to collection mapping
- "firstStep" property: the identifier of the first step of the workflow. This step will be the entry point of this workflow-process. When a new item has been committed to a collection that uses this workflow, the step configured in the "firstStep" property will be the first step the item will go through.
- "steps" property: a list of all steps within this workflow (in the order they will be processed).

role beans (`org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role`)

Each workflow step has defined "role" property. A role represents one or more existing DSpace EPersons or Groups and can be used to assign them to one or more steps in the workflow process. One role is represented by one "role" bean and has the following:

- "id" attribute: a unique identifier (in one workflow process) for the role
- "description" property: optional attribute to describe the role
- "scope" property: optional attribute that is used to find our group and must have one of the following values, which are defined as constant fields of `org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role.Scope` :
  - COLLECTION: The collection value specifies that the group will be configured at the level of the collection. This type of groups is the same as the type that existed in the original workflow system. In case no value is specified for the scope attribute, the workflow framework assumes the role is a collection role.
  - REPOSITORY: The repository scope uses groups that are defined at repository level in DSpace. The name attribute should exactly match the name of a group in DSpace.
  - ITEM: The item scope assumes that a different action in the workflow will assign a number of EPersons or Groups to a specific workflow-item in order to perform a step. These assignees can be different for each workflow item.
- "name" property: The name specified in the name attribute of a role will be used to lookup an eperson group in DSpace. The lookup will depend on the scope specified in the "scope" attribute:
  - COLLECTION: The workflow framework will look for a group containing the name specified in the name attribute and the ID of the collection for which this role is used.
  - REPOSITORY: The workflow framework will look for a group with the same name as the name specified in the name attribute.
  - ITEM: in case the item scope is selected, the name of the role attribute is not required.

```
<bean id="reviewer" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role">
 <property name="scope" value="#{ T(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role.Scope).COLLECTION}
"/>
 <property name="name" value="Reviewer"/>
 <property name="description" value="The people responsible for this step are able
to edit the metadata of incoming submissions, and then accept or reject them."/>
</bean>
```

step beans (`org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Step`)

The step element represents one step in the workflow process. A step represents a number of actions that must be executed by one specified role. In case no `role` attribute is specified, the workflow framework assumes that the DSpace system is responsible for the execution of the step and that no user interface will be available for each of the actions in this step. The step element has the following in order to further configure it:

- "`name`" attribute: The name attribute specifies a unique identifier for the step. This identifier will be used when configuring other steps in order to point to this step. This identifier can also be used when configuring the start step of the workflow item.
- "`userSelectionMethod`" property: This attribute defines the `UserSelectionAction` that will be used to determine how to attach users to this step for a workflow-item. The value of this attribute must refer to the identifier of an action bean in the `workflow-actions.xml`. Examples of the user attachment to a step are the currently used system of a task pool or as an alternative directly assigning a user to a task.
- "`role`" property: optional attribute that must point to the `id` attribute of a role element specified for the workflow. This role will be used to define the epersons and groups used by the `userSelectionMethod`.
- `RequiredUsers`

```
<bean name="reviewstep" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Step">
 <property name="userSelectionMethod" ref="claimaction"/>
 <property name="role" ref="reviewer"/>
 <property name="outcomes">
 <util:map>
 <entry>
key="#{ T(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.ActionResult).OUTCOME_COMPLETE}"
 value-ref="editstep"/>
 </entry>
 </util:map>
 </property>
 <property name="actions">
 <util:list>
 <ref bean="reviewaction"/>
 </util:list>
 </property>
</bean>
```

Each step contains a number of actions that the workflow item will go through. In case the action has a user interface, the users responsible for the execution of this step will have to execute these actions before the workflow item can proceed to the next action or the end of the step.

There is also an optional subsection that can be defined for a step part called "`outcomes`". This can be used to define outcomes for the step that differ from the one specified in the `nextStep` attribute. Each action returns an integer depending on the result of the action. The default value is "0" and will make the workflow item proceed to the next action or to the end of the step.

In case an action returns a different outcome than the default "0", the alternative outcomes will be used to lookup the next step. The "`outcomes`" element contains a number of steps, each having a status attribute. This status attribute defines the return value of an action. The value of the element will be used to lookup the next step the workflow item will go through in case an action returns that specified status.

## Workflow actions configuration

### API configuration

The workflow actions configuration is located in the `[dspace]/config/spring/api/` directory and is named `workflow-actions.xml`. This configuration file describes the different Action Java classes that are used by the workflow framework. Because the workflow framework uses Spring framework for loading these action classes, this configuration file contains Spring configuration.

This file contains the beans for the actions and user selection methods referred to in the `workflow.xml`. In order for the workflow framework to work properly, each of the required actions must be part of this configuration.

```
<beans
 xmlns="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:util="http://www.springframework.org/schema/util"
 xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans http://
www.springframework.org/schema/beans/spring-beans-2.0.xsd
 http://www.springframework.org/schema/util http://
www.springframework.org/schema/util/spring-util-2.0.xsd">

 <!-- At the top are our bean class identifiers --->
 <bean id="{action.api.id}" class="{class.path}" scope="prototype"/>
 <bean id="{action.api.id.2}" class="{class.path}" scope="prototype"/>

 <!-- Below the class identifiers come the declarations for out actions/
userSelectionMethods -->

 <!-- Use class workflowActionConfig for an action -->
 <bean id="{action.id}" class="oorg.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.WorkflowActi
onConfig" scope="prototype">
 <constructor-arg type="java.lang.String" value="{action.id}"/>

 <property name="processingAction" ref="{action.api.id}"/>
 <property name="requiresUI" value="{true/false}"/>
 </bean>

 <!-- Use class UserSelectionActionConfig for a user selection method -->
 <!--User selection actions-->
 <bean id="{action.api.id.2}" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.UserSel
ectionActionConfig" scope="prototype">
 <constructor-arg type="java.lang.String" value="{action.api.id.2}"/>

 <property name="processingAction" ref="{user.selection.bean.id}"/>
 <property name="requiresUI" value="{true/false}"/>
 </bean>
</beans>
```

Two types of actions are configured in this Spring configuration file:

- User selection action: This type of action is always the first action of a step and is responsible for the user selection process of that step. In case a step has no role attached, no user will be selected and the `NoUserSelectionAction` is used.
- Processing action: This type of action is used for the actual processing of a step. Processing actions contain the logic required to execute the required operations in each step. Multiple processing actions can be defined in one step. These user and the workflow item will go through these actions in the order they are specified in the workflow configuration unless an alternative outcome is returned by one of them.

#### User Selection Action

Each user selection action that is used in the workflow configuration refers to a bean definition in the `workflow-actions.xml` file. In order to define a new user selection action, the following XML code is used:

```
<bean id="{action.api.id.2}" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.UserSelectionActionConfig" scope="prototype">
 <constructor-arg type="java.lang.String" value="{action.api.id.2}"/>

 <property name="processingAction" ref="{user.selection.bean.id}"/>
 <property name="requiresUI" value="{true/false}"/>
</bean>
```

This bean defines a new `UserSelectionActionConfig` and the following child tags:

- `constructor-arg`: This is a constructor argument containing the ID of the task. This is the same as the `id` attribute of the bean and is used by the workflow configuration to refer to this action.
- `property processingAction`: This tag refers the the ID of the API bean, responsible for the implementation of the API side of this action. This bean should also be configured in this XML.
- `property requiresUI`: In case this property is true, the workflow framework will expect a user interface for the action. Otherwise the framework will automatically execute the action and proceed to the next one.

#### Processing Action

Processing actions are configured similarly to the user selection actions. The only difference is that these processing action beans are implementations of the `WorkflowActionConfig` class instead of the `UserSelectionActionConfig` class.

#### 4.6.9.5 Authorizations

Currently, the authorizations are always granted and revoked based on the tasks that are available for certain users and groups. The types of authorization policies that is granted for each of these is always the same:

- READ
- WRITE
- ADD
- DELETE

#### 4.6.9.6 Database

The workflow uses a separate metadata schema named `workflow`. The fields this schema contains can be found in the `[dspace]/config/registries` directory and in the file `workflow-types.xml`. This schema is

only used when using the score reviewing system at the moment, but one could always use this schema if metadata is required for custom workflow steps.

The following tables have been added to the DSpace database. All tables are prefixed with 'cwf\_' to avoid any confusion with the existing workflow related database tables:

#### cwf\_workflowitem

The cwf\_workflowitem table contains the different workflowitems in the workflow. This table has the following columns:

- workflowitem\_id: The identifier of the workflowitem and primary key of this table
- item\_id: The identifier of the DSpace item to which this workflowitem refers.
- collection\_id: The collection to which this workflowitem is submitted.
- multiple\_titles: Specifies whether the submission has multiple titles (important for submission steps)
- published\_before: Specifies whether the submission has been published before (important for submission steps)
- multiple\_files: Specifies whether the submission has multiple files attached (important for submission steps)

#### cwf\_collectionrole

The cwf\_collectionrole table represents a workflow role for one collection. This type of role is the same as the roles that existed in the original workflow meaning that for each collection a separate group is defined to describe the role. The cwf\_collectionrole table has the following columns:

- collectionrol\_id: The identifier of the collectionrole and the primary key of this table
- role\_id: The identifier/name used by the workflow configuration to refer to the collectionrole
- collection\_id: The collection identifier for which this collectionrole has been defined
- group\_id: The group identifier of the group that defines the collection role

#### cwf\_workflowitemrole

The cwf\_workflowitemrole table represents roles that are defined at the level of an item. These roles are temporary roles and only exist during the execution of the workflow for that specific item. Once the item is archived, the workflowitemrole is deleted. Multiple rows can exist for one workflowitem with e.g. one row containing a group and a few containing epersons. All these rows together make up the workflowitemrole. The cwf\_workflowitemrole table has the following columns:

- workflowitemrole\_id: The identifier of the workflowitemrole and the primary key of this table
- role\_id: The identifier/name used by the workflow configuration to refer to the workflowitemrole
- workflowitem\_id: The cwf\_workflowitem identifier for which this workflowitemrole has been defined
- group\_id: The group identifier of the group that defines the workflowitemrole role
- eperson\_id: The eperson identifier of the eperson that defines the workflowitemrole role

#### cwf\_pooltask

The cwf\_pooltask table represents the different task pools that exist for a workflowitem. These task pools can be available at the beginning of a step and contain all the users that are allowed to claim a task in this step. Multiple rows can exist for one task pool containing multiple groups and epersons. The cwf\_pooltask table has the following columns:

- pooltask\_id: The identifier of the pooltask and the primary key of this table
- workflowitem\_id: The identifier of the workflowitem for which this task pool exists
- workflow\_id: The identifier of the workflow configuration used for this workflowitem

- `step_id`: The identifier of the step for which this task pool was created
- `action_id`: The identifier of the action that needs to be displayed/executed when the user selects the task from the task pool
- `eperson_id`: The identifier of an eperson that is part of the task pool
- `group_id`: The identifier of a group that is part of the task pool

#### `cwf_claimtask`

The `cwf_claimtask` table represents a task that has been claimed by a user. Claimed tasks can be assigned to users or can be the result of a claim from the task pool. Because a step can contain multiple actions, the claimed task defines the action at which the user has arrived in a particular step. This makes it possible to stop working halfway the step and continue later. The `cwf_claimtask` table contains the following columns:

- `claimtask_id`: The identifier of the claimtask and the primary key of this table
- `workflowitem_id`: The identifier of the workflowitem for which this task exists
- `workflow_id`: The id of the workflow configuration that was used for this workflowitem
- `step_id`: The step that is currently processing the workflowitem
- `action_id`: The action that should be executed by the owner of this claimtask
- `owner_id`: References the eperson that is responsible for the execution of this task

#### `cwf_in_progress_user`

The `cwf_in_progress_user` table keeps track of the different users that are performing a certain step. This table is used because some steps might require multiple users to perform the step before the workflowitem can proceed. The `cwf_in_progress_user` table contains the following columns:

- `in_progress_user_id`: The identifier of the in progress user and the primary key of this table
- `workflowitem_id`: The identifier of the workflowitem for which the user is performing or has performed the step.
- `user_id`: The identifier of the eperson that is performing or has performed the task
- `finished`: Keeps track of the fact that the user has finished the step or is still in progress of the execution

### 4.6.9.7 Additional workflow steps/actions and features

*These optional steps are only supported in 7.5 and later.*

These optional workflow steps are pre-defined in the "workflow.xml" but are not used by default.

#### Optional workflow steps: Select single reviewer workflow

This workflow makes it possible to assign a single user to review an item. This workflow configuration skips the task pool option meaning that the assigned reviewer no longer needs to claim the task. The configuration consists of the following 2 steps.

- `selectReviewerStep`: During this step, a user has the ability to select a responsible user to review the workflowitem. This means that for each workflowitem, a different user can be selected. Because a user is assigned, the task pool is no longer required.
  - The available users to select from are defined in the "action.selectrevieweraction.group" setting in `workflow.cfg`. This setting must list the name of a group of reviewers to select from (default value = "Reviewers" group).
- `singleUserReviewStep`: The start of the reviewstep is different than the typical task pool. Instead of having a task pool, the user will be automatically assigned to the task. However, the user still has the option to reject the task (in case he or she is not responsible for the assigned task) or review the item. In case the user rejects



the task, the workflowitem will be sent to the another step in the workflow as an alternative to the default outcome.

#### Optional workflow steps: Score review workflow

The score review system allows reviewers to give the reviewed item a rating. Depending on the results of the rating, the item will be approved to go to the next workflow step or will be sent to an alternative step. The score review workflow consists of the following 2 steps.

- **scoreReviewStep:** The group of responsible users for the score reviewing will be able to claim the task from the taskpool. Depending on the configuration, a different number of users can be required to execute the task (default is `requiredusers=2`). This means that the task will be available in the task pool until the required number of users has at least claimed the task. Once everyone of them has finished the task, the next (automatic) processing step is activated.
- **evaluationStep:** During the evaluationstep, no user interface is required. The workflow system will automatically execute the step that evaluates the different scores (which corresponds to a rating from 1-5). In case the average score is greater than the average "`minimumAcceptanceScore`", the item is approved, otherwise it is rejected. (The minimum average score is set by adjusting the `minimumAcceptanceScore` property passed to `evaluationactionAPI` in `config/spring/api/workflow-actions.xml`.)

#### Workflow overview features

The DSpace UI also provides a feature to allow Administrators to see & administer all active workflows (workitems). This feature is provided in the "Administer Workflow" menu option. Currently, the Administrator has the ability to permanently delete the workflowitem, or to send it back to the original submitter.

### 4.6.10 Submission User Interface

This page explains various customization and configuration options that are available within DSpace for the Item Submission user interface.

- [Default Submission Process](#)(see page 339)
  - [Optional Steps](#)(see page 340)
- [Understanding the Submission Configuration Files](#)(see page 340)
  - [The Structure of item-submission.xml](#)(see page 340)
  - [Defining Steps \(<step>\) within the item-submission.xml](#)(see page 341)
    - [Where to place your <step-definition>](#)(see page 341)
    - [The ordering of <step> tags matter!](#)(see page 341)
    - [Structure of the <step-definition> tag](#)(see page 342)
- [Reordering/Removing/Adding Submission Steps](#)(see page 343)
- [Assigning a custom Submission Process to a Collection](#)(see page 343)
  - [Getting A Collection's Handle](#)(see page 344)
- [Custom Metadata-entry Steps for Submission](#)(see page 344)
  - [Introduction](#)(see page 344)
  - [Describing Custom Metadata Forms](#)(see page 345)
  - [The Structure of submission-forms.xml](#)(see page 345)
    - [Using a form in a submission process for a Collection](#)(see page 346)
    - [Adding a Form](#)(see page 346)
      - [Forms and Pages](#)(see page 346)
      - [Composition of a Field](#)(see page 346)
      - [Item type Based Metadata Collection](#)(see page 347)

- [Configuring Controlled Vocabularies](#)(see page 347)
- [Adding Value-Pairs](#)(see page 349)
  - [Example](#)(see page 350)
- [Deploying Your Custom Forms](#)(see page 350)
- [Configuring the File Upload step](#)(see page 351)
  - [Basic Settings](#)(see page 351)
  - [Modifying metadata form presented for Bitstreams](#)(see page 351)
  - [Modifying access conditions \(embargo, etc.\) presented for Bitstreams](#)(see page 351)
- [Configuring the Item Access Conditions step](#)(see page 354)
  - [Enabling the step](#)(see page 354)
  - [Modifying access conditions \(embargo, etc.\) presented for Items](#)(see page 354)
  - [Examples of selecting Item and Bitstream access conditions](#)(see page 355)
- [Configuring the Sherpa Romeo step](#)(see page 356)
  - [Enabling the Sherpa Romeo step](#)(see page 356)
- [Creating new Submission Steps Programmatically.](#)(see page 357)

#### DSpace Submission Configuration changed in v7.x

The name and structure of the Submission configuration files changed in 7.x. The DSpace 6.x (and below) "item-submission.xml" and "input-forms.xml" configuration files are no longer supported. In 7.x and above, the format of the "item-submission.xml" file has been updated, and the older "input-forms.xml" has been replaced by a new "submission-forms.xml".

You can choose to either start fresh with the new v7 configuration files (see documentation below) and/or use the `./dspace submission-forms-migrate` script to migrate your old configurations into new ones. See the [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) guide (step on "Update your DSpace Configurations") for more information on using the migration script.

#### 4.6.10.1 Default Submission Process

The DSpace Submission process consists of a series of "steps", where each "step" corresponds to one or "sections" in the Submission UI. By default, the DSpace Submission process includes the following steps/sections, in this order:

1. **"Select Collection"** (id="collection"), appears as dropdown: If not already selected, the user must select a collection to deposit the Item into. As of DSpace 7, you also can change the Collection you are submitting into at any time. However, be aware that there may be some metadata lost if the Collection you switch two uses a *different* submission form & you already began entering metadata in the current submission.
2. **"Describe" sections** (id="traditionalpageone" and "traditionalpagetwo"): This is where the user may enter descriptive metadata about the Item. This step may consist of one or more sections of metadata entry. By default, there are two sections of metadata-entry. For information on modifying the metadata entry pages, please see [Custom Metadata-entry Pages for Submission](#)(see page 0) section below.
3. **"Upload" section** (id="upload"): This is where the user may upload one or more files to associate with the Item. As of DSpace 7, you can also drag and drop files anywhere on the page to trigger an upload. For more information on file upload, also see [Configuring the File Upload step](#)(see page 351) below.
4. **"License" section** (id="license"): This is where the user **must** agree to the repository distribution license in order to complete the deposit. This repository distribution license is defined in the `[dspace]/config/default.license` file. It can also be customized per-collection from the Collection Edit UI.
5. **"Deposit" button**: Once all required fields/sections are completed, the "Deposit" button becomes enabled. After clicking it, the new Item will either become immediately available or undergo a workflow approval

process (depending on the Collection policies). For more information on the workflow approval process see [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327)

To modify or reorganize these submission steps, just modify the `[dspace]/config/item-submission.xml` file. Please see the section below on [Reordering/Removing/Adding Submission Steps](#)(see page 343).

You can also choose to have different submission processes for different DSpace Collections. For more details, please see the section below on [Assigning a custom Submission Process to a Collection](#)(see page 343).

### Optional Steps

DSpace also ships with several optional steps which you may choose to enable if you wish. In no particular order:

- **"Item Access" (or Embargo**(see page 172) **) section** (id="itemAccessConditions"): *Only available in 7.2 or above.* This step allows the user to (optionally) modify access rights or set an embargo during the deposit of an Item. For more information on this step, and Embargo options in general, please see the [Embargo](#)(see page 172) documentation.
- **"CC License" section** (id="cclicense"): This step allows the user to (optionally) assign a Creative Commons license to a particular Item. Please see the [Configuring Creative Commons License](#)(see page 776) section of the Configuration documentation for more details.
- **"Extraction" section** (id="extractionstep"): This step will automatically attempt to extract metadata from uploaded files. Currently it only supports bibliographic formats documented in Importing Items via basic bibliographic formats (Endnote, BibTex, RIS, TSV, CSV) and online services (OAI, arXiv, PubMed, CrossRef, CiNii). Any extracted metadata is immediately populated in the submission form (without notifying the user).
  - By default it is disabled, as it populates metadata automatically (without notifying the user). This means it can sometimes result in duplicative metadata in the submission form.
  - The behavior of this step can be more fully configured via the 'config/spring/api/step-processing-listener.xml' configuration
  - NOTE: this action is also only triggered when a request is performed (e.g. when a file is uploaded or the submission form is saved). You can configure the Angular UI to autosave based on a timer in order to force this action to be done more regularly.
- Various [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) related steps: These steps are "Describe" steps that are specific to different Entity types. They provide a list of metadata fields of specific interest to those Entities.

To enable any of these optional submission steps, just uncomment the step definition within the `[dspace]/config/item-submission.xml` file. Please see the section below on [Reordering/Removing/Adding Submission Steps](#)(see page 343).

You can also choose to enable certain steps only for specific DSpace Collections. For more details, please see the section below on [Assigning a custom Submission Process to a Collection](#)(see page 343).

#### 4.6.10.2 Understanding the Submission Configuration Files

The `[dspace]/config/item-submission.xml` contains the submission configurations for the DSpace UI. This configuration file contains detailed documentation within the file itself, which should help you better understand how to best utilize it.

The Structure of *item-submission.xml*

**The structure of this file changed slightly in DSpace 7**

As of DSpace 7, the following structural changes were made to `item-submission.xml`:

- Step definitions under `<step-definitions>` now use the `<step-definition>` tag (previously, in 6.x, the tag was named `<step>`)
- Every step definition now needs to be defined under `<step-definitions>` (previously, in 6.x, you could also define them in `<submission-process>`), and have a unique ID
- Each `<step-definition>` now only represents a single "section" of the Submission UI. (previously, in 6.x, some steps like Describe represented multiple pages)
- An attribute `"mandatory=[true|false]"` was added to the `<step>` element. When true, that section is always displayed to the user. When false, it's not displayed by default, but instead must be activated explicitly by the user by choosing to add the section in the Submission UI.
- The old `<workflow-editable>` element has been replaced with a `<scope>` element which defines when/how this `<step>` should be displayed.

Because this file is in XML format, you should be familiar with XML before editing this file. By default, this file contains the "traditional" Item Submission Process for DSpace, which consists of the following Steps (in this order):

*Select Collection -> Describe (two steps) -> Upload -> License -> Complete*

If you would like to customize the steps used or the ordering of the steps, you can do so within the `<submission-definition>` section of the `item-submission.xml`.

In addition, you may also specify different Submission Processes for different DSpace Collections. This can be done in the `<submission-map>` section. The `item-submission.xml` file itself documents the syntax required to perform these configuration changes.

#### Defining Steps (`<step>`) within the `item-submission.xml`

This section describes how Steps of the Submission Process are defined within the `item-submission.xml`.

#### Where to place your `<step-definition>`

The `<step-definition>` always appear within the `<step-definitions>` section of the `item-submission.xml` configuration file.

- This section allows all `<step>` definitions to be defined globally (i.e. so they may be used in multiple `<submission-process>` definitions). Steps defined in this section **must** define a unique `id` which can be used to reference this step.
- For example:

```
<step-definitions>
 <step-definition id="custom-step">
 ...
 </step>
 ...
</step-definitions>
```

- The above step definition could then be referenced from within a `<submission-process>` as simply `<step id="custom-step"/>`

The ordering of `<step>` tags matter!

The ordering of the `<step>` tags within a `<submission-process>` definition directly corresponds to the order in which those steps will appear!

For example, the following defines a Submission Process where the *License* step directly precedes the *Describe* step (more information about the structure of the information under each `<step>` tag can be found in the section on Structure of the `<step>` Definition below):

```
<submission-process>
 <!--Step 1 will be to Sign off on the License-->
 <step id="license"/>

 <!--Step 2 & 3 will be to ask for metadata-->
 <step id="traditionalpageone"/>
 <step id="traditionalpagetwo"/>

 ...[other steps]...
</submission-process>
```

Structure of the `<step-definition>` tag

The structure of the `<step-definition>` tag is as follows:

```
<step-definition id="traditionalpageone" mandatory="true">
 <heading>submit.progressbar.describe.stepone</heading>
 <processing-class>org.dspace.app.rest.submit.step.DescribeStep</processing-class>
 <type>submission-form</type>
 <!-- <scope visibility="hidden" visibilityOutside="hidden">submission</scope> -->
</step-definition>
```

Each *step* contains the following elements/attributes. The required elements are so marked:

- **mandatory** (*attribute*): [true|false] When true, the step's section is displayed by default to all users in the UI. When false, the step is not displayed and must be activated explicitly by the user by selecting it in the UI or supplying data of interest to the section.
- **heading**: Partial I18N key (defined in the UI's language packs) which corresponds to the text that should be displayed in section header for this step. This partial I18N key is prefixed with "submission.sections.". Therefore, the full i18n key is "submission.sections.[heading]" in the User Interface's language packs (e.g. en.json5 for English)
- **processing-class (Required)**: Full Java path to the Processing Class for this Step. This Processing Class **must** perform the primary processing of any information gathered in this step. All valid step processing classes must extend the abstract `org.dspace.submit.AbstractProcessingStep` class (or alternatively, extend one of the pre-existing step processing classes in `org.dspace.submit.step.*`)
- **type (Required)**: The type of step defined. Most steps are of type "submission-form", which means they directly map to a `<form>` defined in the `submission-forms.xml` configuration file. In this situation, the `<step-definition>` "id" attribute MUST map to a `<form>` "name" attribute defined in `submission-forms.xml`. Any value is allowed, and only "submission-form" has a special meaning at this time.
- **scope**: Optionally, allows you to limit the "scope" of this particular step, and define whether the step is visible outside that scope. Valid scope values include "submission" (limited to the submission form) and "workflow" (limited to workflow approval process). You can also define a "visibilityOutside" attribute which can be set to "read-only" (in other scopes you can see this step but not edit it), or "hidden" (in other scopes you cannot see this step).

### 4.6.10.3 Reordering/Removing/Adding Submission Steps

The removal of existing steps and reordering of existing steps is a relatively easy process!

#### Reordering steps

1. Locate the `<submission-process>` tag which defines the Submission Process that you are using. If you are unsure which Submission Process you are using, it's likely the one with `name="traditional"`, since this is the traditional DSpace submission process.
2. Reorder the `<step>` tags within that `<submission-process>` tag. Be sure to move the *entire* `<step>` tag.

#### Removing one or more steps

1. Locate the `<submission-process>` tag which defines the Submission Process that you are using. If you are unsure which Submission Process you are using, it's likely the one with `name="traditional"`, since this is the traditional DSpace submission process.
2. Comment out (i.e. surround with `<! --` and `-->`) the `<step>` tags which you want to remove from that `<submission-process>` tag. Be sure to comment out the *entire* `<step >` tag.
  - *Hint:* You cannot remove the "collection" step, as an DSpace Item cannot exist without belonging to a Collection.

#### Adding one or more optional steps

1. Locate the `<submission-process>` tag which defines the Submission Process that you are using. If you are unsure which Submission Process you are using, it's likely the one with `name="traditional"`, since this is the traditional DSpace submission process.
2. Uncomment (i.e. remove the `<! --` and `-->`) the `<step>` tag(s) which you want to add to that `<submission-process>` tag. Be sure to uncomment the *entire* `<step>` tag.

### 4.6.10.4 Assigning a custom Submission Process to a Collection

Assigning a custom submission process to a Collection in DSpace involves working with the *submission-map* section of the *item-submission.xml*. For a review of the structure of the *item-submission.xml* see the section above on Understanding the Submission Configuration File.

Each *name-map* element within *submission-map* associates a collection with the name of a submission definition. Its *collection-handle* attribute is the Handle of the collection. Its *submission-name* attribute is the submission definition name, which must match the *name* attribute of a *submission-process* element (in the *submission-definitions* section of *item-submission.xml*).

For example, the following fragment shows how the collection with handle "12345.6789/42" is assigned the "custom" submission process:

```
<submission-map>
 <name-map collection-handle="12345.6789/42" submission-name="custom" />
 ...
</submission-map>
```

```
<submission-definitions>
 <submission-process name="custom">
 ...
</submission-definitions>
```

It's a good idea to keep the definition of the *default* name-map, so there is always a default for collections which do not have a custom form set.

### Getting A Collection's Handle

You will need the *handle* of a collection in order to assign it a custom form set. To discover the handle, go to the Community or Collection in the DSpace UI. Look for the "Permanent URI" listed near the top of the page. It should look something like:

```
http://myhost.my.edu/handle/12345.6789/42
```

The handle is everything after "handle/" (in the above example it is "12345.6789/42"). It should look familiar to any DSpace administrator. That is what goes in the *collection-handle* attribute of your *name-map* element.

## 4.6.10.5 Custom Metadata-entry Steps for Submission

### Introduction

This section explains how to customize the Web forms used by submitters and editors to enter and modify the metadata for a new item. These metadata web forms are controlled by the *Describe* step within the Submission Process. However, they are also configurable via their own XML configuration file `[dspace]/config/submission-forms.xml`.

In this configuration you can create alternate metadata forms, which can then be mapped to a "submission-form" step in the "item-submission.xml" (see above).

In creating custom metadata forms, you can choose:

- Which fields appear on each form, and their sequence. (Keep in mind, each "form" represents to a "step" or section)
- Labels, prompts, and other text associated with each field.
- Ability to display smaller fields side-by-side in a single "row"
- List of available choices for each menu-driven field.

All of the custom metadata-entry forms for a DSpace instance are controlled by a single XML file, `submission-forms.xml`, in the *config* subdirectory under the DSpace home, `[ dspace]/config/submission-forms.xml`. DSpace comes with a number of sample forms which implement the traditional metadata-entry forms, and also serves as a well-documented example. Some default forms include:

- "bitstream-metadata" - This is a special form which defines the metadata fields available for every uploaded bitstream (file)
- "traditionalpageone" - A sample form which is used by the first "Describe" step defined in item-submission.xml
- "traditionalpagetwo" - A sample form which is used by the second "Describe" step defined in item-submission.xml

- A number of sample forms for various out-of-the-box [Configurable Entities](#) (see page 198). These forms all have a corresponding `<step>` defined in `item-submission.xml`. In conjunction to those `<step>` definitions, these forms may be used to submit new Entities of specific types. Usually this is done by mapping that Entity-specific submission-process (in `item-submission.xml`) to a Collection which is used for new submissions of that Entity.

The rest of this section explains how to create your own sets of custom forms.

### Describing Custom Metadata Forms

The description of a set of fields through which submitters enter their metadata is called a *form* (in the UI, each "form" is displayed in a separate collapsible section). A form is identified by a unique symbolic *name*. In the XML structure, the *form* is broken down into *rows of fields*. This allows you to place smaller fields side-by-side in a single, horizontal row, or alternatively decide to display one field per row.

### The Structure of `submission-forms.xml`

#### The name & structure of this file changed slightly in DSpace 7

As of DSpace 7, the following structural changes were made to this configuration:

- `input-forms.xml` (v6) was renamed to `submission-forms.xml`
- `<form-map>` top-level element was removed. All Collection mappings are now in `item-submission.xml`
- `<page>` element under `<form>` was removed. As described below, `<form>` element now represent a single section of the submission process.
- `<row>` element under `<form>` was added. As described below, multiple fields can now be displayed in one horizontal row.
- A new form named "bitstream-metadata" was introduced to allow you to configure which metadata is requested for a bitstream during submission.

The XML configuration file has a single top-level element, `input-forms`, which contains two elements in a specific order. The outline is as follows:

```
<input-forms>

 <!-- Form Set Definitions -->
 <form-definitions>
 <form name="traditionalpageone">
 ...
 </form>
 ...
 </form-definitions>

 <!-- Name/Value Pairs used within Multiple Choice Widgets -->
 <form-value-pairs>
 <value-pairs value-pairs-name="common_iso_languages" dc-term="language_iso">
 ...
 </value-pairs>
 ...
 </form-value-pairs>
```



```
</input-forms>
```

### Using a form in a submission process for a Collection

Keep in mind, the "submission-forms.xml" only defines *forms* and *value-pairs* (used for specific fields like selectboxes). To enable a form requires also updating the "item-submission.xml" configuration to use that form (see also above):

1. In "item-submission.xml", a `<step-definition>` of type "submission-form" must be created, with an "id" matching the *name* of the *form* (see above for more details on step-definition)
2. In "item-submission.xml", a `<submission-process>` must be created/updated to use that newly defined "step".
3. Finally, also in "item-submission.xml", a Collection must be setup to use that submission process in the `<submission-map>` section.

So, if you modify submission-forms.xml, you may need to double check your changes will be used in your item-submission.xml.

### Adding a Form

You can add a new form by creating a new *form* element within the *form-definitions* element. It has one attribute, *name*, which as described above must match the "id" of a `<step-definition>` in "item-submission.xml".

### Forms and Pages

The content of the *form* is a sequence of *row* elements. Each of these corresponds to a single, horizontal row, containing metadata input fields. The rows are presented in sequence, with the first row displayed at the top of the form. A form is displayed as a section (or step) within the submission process.

A *form* may contain any number of rows. A row generally only contains one or two input fields (including more than one input field may require the "style" setting, see below). Each field defines an interactive dialog where the submitter enters one of the Dublin Core metadata items.

### Composition of a Field

Each *field* contains the following elements, in the order indicated. The required sub-elements are so marked:

- **dc-schema** (Required) : Name of metadata schema employed, e.g. *dc* for Dublin Core. This value must match the value of the *schema* element defined in *dublin-core-types.xml*
- **dc-element** (Required) : Name of the Dublin Core element entered in this field, e.g. *contributor*.
- **dc-qualifier**: Qualifier of the Dublin Core element entered in this field, e.g. when the field is *contributor.advisor* the value of this element would be *advisor*. Leaving this out means the input is for an unqualified DC element.
- **language**: If set to *true* a drop down menu will be shown, containing languages. The selected language will be used as language tag of the metadata field. A compulsory argument *value-pairs-name* must be given containing the name of the value pair that contains all the languages: e.g. `<language value-pairs-name="common_iso_languages">true</language>` .
- **repeatable**: Value is *true* when multiple values of this field are allowed, *false* otherwise. When you mark a field repeatable, the UI will add an "Add more" control to the field, allowing the user to ask for more fields to enter additional values. Intended to be used for arbitrarily-repeating fields such as subject keywords, when it is impossible to know in advance how many input boxes to provide. Repeatable fields also support reordering of values.
- **label** (Required): Text to display as the label of this field, describing what to enter, e.g. "Your Advisor's Name".
- **input-type** (Required): Defines the kind of interactive widget to put in the form to collect the Dublin Core value. Content must be one of the following keywords:

- **onebox** – A single text-entry box (i.e. a normal input textbox)
- **twobox** – A pair of simple text-entry boxes, used for *repeatable* values. (*By default, this input type is unused.*)
- **textarea** – Large block of text that can be entered on multiple lines, e.g. for an abstract.
- **name** – Personal name, with separate fields for family name and first name. When saved they are appended in the format 'LastName, FirstName'. (*By default, this input type is unused. Author fields now use the "onebox" type to support different types of names.*)
- **date** – Calendar date. When required, demands that at least the year be entered.
- **series** – Series/Report name and number. Separate fields are provided for series name and series number, but they are appended (with a semicolon between) when saved.
- **dropdown** – Choose value(s) from a "drop-down" menu list. **Note:** You must also include a value for the *value-pairs-name* attribute to specify a list of menu entries from which to choose. Use this to make a choice from a restricted set of options, such as for the *language* item.
- **qualdrop\_value** – Enter a "qualified value", which includes *both* a qualifier from a drop-down menu and a free-text value. Used to enter items like alternate identifiers and codes for a submitted item, e.g. the DC *identifier* field. **Note:** As for the *dropdown* type, you must include the *value-pairs-name* attribute to specify a menu choice list.
- **list** – Choose value(s) from a checkbox or radio button list. If the *repeatable* attribute is set to *true*, a list of checkboxes is displayed. If the *repeatable* attribute is set to *false*, a list of radio buttons is displayed. **Note:** You must also include a value for the *value-pairs-name* attribute to specify a list of values from which to choose. (*By default, this input type is unused.*)
- **tag** – A free-text field which allows you to add multiple labels/tags as values. An example is the "Subject Keywords" field. **Note:** A tag field **MUST** be marked as repeatable.
- **hint** (Required): Content is the text that will appear as a "hint", or instructions, below the input field. Can be left empty, but the tag must be present.
- **required**: When this element is included with any content, it marks the field as a required input. If the user saves the form without entering a value for this field, that text is displayed as a warning message. For example, `<required>You must enter a title.</required>` Note that leaving the required element empty will *not* mark a field as required, e.g.: `<required></required>`
- **vocabulary**: When specified, this field uses a [controlled vocabulary](#) (see page 371) defined in `[dspace] / config/controlled-vocabularies/[name].xml`. This setting may be used to provide auto-complete functionality, for example in the "Subject Keywords" field (which uses the "tag" input type). See also the "Configuring Controlled Vocabularies" section below.
- **regex**: When specified, this field will be validated against the Regular Expression, and only successfully validating values will be saved. An example is commented out in the default "Author" field.
- **style**: When specified, this provides a CSS style recommendation to the UI for how to style that field. This is primarily used when displaying multiple fields per row, so that you can tell the UI how many columns each field should use in that row. Keep in mind, these styles should follow the [Bootstrap Grid System](#)<sup>392</sup>, where the number of columns adds up to 12. An example can be seen in the default "Date of Issue" and "Publisher" fields, which are configured to use 4 (col-sm-4) and 8 (col-sm-8) columns respectively.

#### Item type Based Metadata Collection

Available in 7.3 and later

A field can be made visible depending on the value of *dc.type*. A new field element, `<type-bind>`, has been introduced to facilitate this. The `<type-bind>` takes a comma separated list of publication types. If the field is missing or empty, it will always be visible. In this example the field will only be visible if a value of "thesis" or "ebook" has been entered into *dc.type* on an earlier page:

<sup>392</sup> <https://getbootstrap.com/docs/4.0/layout/grid/>

```
<field>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>identifier</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier>isbn</dc-qualifier>
 <label>ISBN</label>
 <type-bind>thesis,ebook</type-bind>
</field>
```

A field may be configured multiple times in the submission configuration with different values in type-bind. This is useful if a field is required for one type but not another, or should display a different label and hint message depending on the publication type:

```
<field>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>identifier</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier>isbn</dc-qualifier>
 <label>ISBN</label>
 <type-bind>book,ebook</type-bind>
 <required>You must enter an ISBN for this book</required>
</field>

<field>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>identifier</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier>isbn</dc-qualifier>
 <label>ISBN of Parent Publication</label>
 <type-bind>thesis,book chapter,letter</type-bind>
 <hint>Enter the ISBN of the book in which this was published</hint>
</field>
```

If a field is *required* but is bound to a type that does not match the submitted publication, the *required* value will be ignored.

Note: When the submitter changes the Type field, other fields (usually just below it) dynamically appear. There's a brief demo of this feature in the [2022-07-13 - DSpace 7 Q&A webinar](#)<sup>393</sup> at time 19:05. The submission process is one page, but it has collapsible sections, each of which corresponds to one of the old "pages".

### Configuring Controlled Vocabularies

DSpace now supports controlled vocabularies to confine the set of keywords that users can use while describing items. The need for a limited set of keywords is important since it eliminates the ambiguity of a free description system, consequently simplifying the task of finding specific items of information. The controlled vocabulary allows the user to choose from a defined set of keywords organized in a tree (taxonomy) and then use these keywords to describe items while they are being submitted.

The taxonomies are described in XML following this (very simple) structure:

```
<node id="acmccs98" label="ACMCCS98">
 <isComposedBy>
```

<sup>393</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=249135425>

```

<node id="A." label="General Literature">
 <isComposedBy>
 <node id="A.0" label="GENERAL"/>
 <node id="A.1" label="INTRODUCTORY AND SURVEY"/>
 ...
 </isComposedBy>
</node>
...
</isComposedBy>
</node>

```

You are free to use any application you want to create your controlled vocabularies. A simple text editor should be enough for small projects. Bigger projects will require more complex tools. You may use Protegé to create your taxonomies, save them as OWL and then use a XML Stylesheet (XSLT) to transform your documents to the appropriate format. Future enhancements to this add-on should make it compatible with standard schemas such as OWL or RDF.

New vocabularies should be placed in `[dspace]/config/controlled-vocabularies/` and must be according to the structure described.

Vocabularies need to be associated with the corresponding metadata fields. Edit the file `[dspace]/config/submission-forms.xml` and place a "vocabulary" tag under the "field" element that you want to control. Set value of the "vocabulary" element to the name of the file that contains the vocabulary, leaving out the extension (the add-on will only load files with extension "\*.xml"). For example:

```

<field>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>subject</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier></dc-qualifier>
 <repeatable>true</repeatable>
 <label>Subject Keywords</label>
 <input-type>onebox</input-type>
 <hint>Enter appropriate subject keywords or phrases below.</hint>
 <required></required>
 <vocabulary>srsc</vocabulary>
</field>

```

The vocabulary element has an optional boolean attribute closed that can be used to force input only with the Javascript of controlled-vocabulary add-on. The default behaviour (i.e. without this attribute) is as set `closed="false"`. This allow the user also to enter the value in free way.

The following vocabularies are currently available by default:

- **nsi** - *nsi.xml* - The Norwegian Science Index
- **srsc** - *srsc.xml* - Swedish Research Subject Categories

### Adding Value-Pairs

Finally, your custom form description needs to define the "value pairs" for any fields with input types that refer to them. Do this by adding a *value-pairs* element to the contents of *form-value-pairs*. It has the following required attributes:

- **value-pairs-name** – Name by which an *input-type* refers to this list.
- **dc-term** – Dublin Core field for which this choice list is selecting a value.

Each *value-pairs* element contains a sequence of *pair* sub-elements, each of which in turn contains two elements:

- **displayed-value** – Name shown (on the web page) for the menu entry.
- **stored-value** – Value stored in the DC element when this entry is chosen. Unlike the HTML *select* tag, there is no way to indicate one of the entries should be the default, so the first entry is always the default choice.

Example

Here is a menu of types of common identifiers:

```
<value-pairs value-pairs-name="common_identifiers" dc-term="identifier">
 <pair>
 <displayed-value>Gov't Doc #</displayed-value>
 <stored-value>govdoc</stored-value>
 </pair>
 <pair>
 <displayed-value>URI</displayed-value>
 <stored-value>uri</stored-value>
 </pair>
 <pair>
 <displayed-value>ISBN</displayed-value>
 <stored-value>isbn</stored-value>
 </pair>
</value-pairs>
```

It generates the following HTML, which results in the menu widget below. (Note that there is no way to indicate a default choice in the custom input XML, so it cannot generate the HTML *SELECTED* attribute to mark one of the options as a pre-selected default.)

```
<select name="identifier_qualifier_0">
 <option VALUE="govdoc">Gov't Doc #</option>
 <option VALUE="uri">URI</option>
 <option VALUE="isbn">ISBN</option>
</select>
```

### Deploying Your Custom Forms

The DSpace web application only reads your custom form definitions when it starts up, so it is important to remember:

- *You must always restart Tomcat* (or whatever servlet container you are using) for changes made to the *submission-forms.xml* and/or *item-submission.xml* to take effect.

Any mistake in the syntax or semantics of the form definitions, such as poorly formed XML or a reference to a nonexistent field name, may result in errors in the DSpace REST API & UI. The exception message (at the top of the stack trace in the *dspace.log* file) usually has a concise and helpful explanation of what went wrong. Don't forget to stop and restart the servlet container before testing your fix to a bug.

#### 4.6.10.6 Configuring the File Upload step

##### Basic Settings

The *Upload* step in the DSpace submission process has a few configuration options which can be set with your `[dspace]/config/local.cfg` configuration file. They are as follows:

- `spring.servlet.multipart.max-file-size (default=512MB)` - Spring Boot's maximum allowable file upload size. For DSpace, we default it to 512MB (in `application.properties`). But, you may wish to override the default value in your `local.cfg`. Example values include "512MB", "1GB", or even "-1" (to allow unlimited). See Spring's documentation on this setting: [https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#\\_tuning\\_file\\_upload\\_limits](https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#_tuning_file_upload_limits)
  - NOTE: Increasing this value significantly does NOT guarantee that DSpace will be able to successfully upload files of a very large size via the web. Large uploads depend on many other factors including bandwidth, web server settings, internet connection speed, etc. Therefore, for very large files, you may need to consider importing via command-line tools or similar.
- `spring.servlet.multipart.max-request-size (default=512MB)` - Spring Boot's maximum allowable upload request size (i.e. the maximum total upload size for all files in a multi-file upload). For DSpace, we default it to 512MB (in `application.properties`). But, you may wish to override the default value in your `local.cfg`. Example values include "512MB", "1GB", or even "-1" (to allow unlimited). See Spring's documentation on this setting: [https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#\\_tuning\\_file\\_upload\\_limits](https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#_tuning_file_upload_limits)
  - NOTE: Increasing this value significantly does NOT guarantee that DSpace will be able to successfully upload files of a very large size via the web. Large uploads depend on many other factors including bandwidth, web server settings, internet connection speed, etc. Therefore, for very large files, you may need to consider importing via command-line tools or similar.
- `webui.submit.upload.required` - Whether or not all users are *required* to upload a file when they submit an item to DSpace. It defaults to 'true'. When set to 'false' users will see an option to skip the upload step when they submit a new item.

##### Modifying metadata form presented for Bitstreams

After uploading a file (bitstream) in the Submission UI, you can optionally edit that bitstream's metadata. The form displayed on that edit screen is built by the "bitstream-metadata" form defined in `submission-forms.xml`. You can modify that form to change the fields captured for a Bitstream. *However, the "dc.title" field is REQUIRED in order to store the name of the file.*

```
<form-definitions>
 <!-- Form used for entering in Bitstream/File metadata after uploading a file -->
 <form name="bitstream-metadata">
 ...
 </form>
</form-definitions>
```

##### Modifying access conditions (embargo, etc.) presented for Bitstreams

After uploading a file (bitstream) in the Submission UI, you can optionally edit that bitstream's access conditions. This allows you to embargo a bitstream, lease it, or limit it to Administrators only.

These access conditions are defined in a new Spring Bean configuration file `[dspace]/config/spring/api/access-conditions.xml`

- The "uploadConfigurationService" bean maps an existing "UploadConfiguration" bean (default is "uploadConfigurationDefault") to a specific step/section name used in item-submission.xml.

```
<!-- This default configuration says the <step-definition id="upload"> defined
in item-submission.xml uses "uploadConfigurationDefault" -->
<bean id="uploadConfigurationService" class="org.dspace.submit.model.UploadConf
figurationService">
 <property name="map">
 <map>
 <entry key="upload" value-ref="uploadConfigurationDefault" />
 </map>
 </property>
</bean>
```

- One or more UploadConfiguration beans may exist, providing different options for different upload sections. An "UploadConfiguration" consists of several properties:
  - **name** (Required): The unique name of this upload configuration
  - **configurationService** (Required through 7.3): reference to the DSpace ConfigurationService (should always be "org.dspace.services.ConfigurationService"). Starting in 7.4 this is no longer required and should not be set.
  - **metadata** (Required): The metadata "form" to use for this upload configuration. The value specified here MUST correspond to a <form> defined in your submission-forms.xml. In the below example, the "bitstream-metadata" form is used by the "uploadConfigurationDefault" bean...meaning that form will be used to capture metadata about the uploaded bitstream.
  - **options** (Required, but can be empty): list of all "AccessConditionOption" beans to enable. This list will be shown to the user to let them select which access restrictions to place on each bitstream. NOTE: To disable the ability to select bitstream access restrictions, comment out all <ref> tags to create an empty list of options.
  - **maxSize**: Optionally, you can specify a maximum size of file accepted by this UploadConfiguration. If unspecified, default is to use "upload.max" in dspace.cfg/local.cfg, or have no maximum.
  - **required**: Optionally, you can specify if a file upload is required for this UploadConfiguration. If true, upload is required and users cannot complete a submission without uploading at least one file. If false, no upload is required to complete the submission. If unspecified, default is to use "webui.submit.upload.required" configuration in dspace.cfg/local.cfg, which defaults to "true" (file upload required).

```
<bean id="uploadConfigurationDefault" class="org.dspace.submit.model.Uploa
dConfiguration">
 <property name="name" value="upload"></property>
 <property name="configurationService" ref="org.dspace.services.Configu
rationService"/>
 <property name="metadata" value="bitstream-metadata" />
 <property name="options">
 <!-- This is the list of access options which will be displayed on
the "bitstream-metadata" form -->
 <!-- If no <ref> tags appear in this list, then access
restrictions will not be allowed on bitstreams -->
 <list>
 <ref bean="openAccess"/>
 <ref bean="lease"/>
 </list>
 </property>
</bean>
```

```

 <ref bean="embargoed" />
 <ref bean="administrator"/>
 </list>
</property>
</bean>

```

- Any number of "AccessConditionOption" beans may be added for applying different types of access permissions to uploaded files (based on which one the user selects). These beans are easy to add/update, and just require the following
  - **id** (Required): Each defined bean MUST have a unique "id" and have "class=org.dspace.submit.model.AccessConditionOption".
  - **groupName**: Optionally, define a specific DSpace Group which this Access Condition relates to. This group will be saved to the ResourcePolicy when this access condition is applied.
  - **name**: Give a unique name for this Access Condition. This name is stored in the ResourcePolicy "name" when this access condition is applied.
  - **hasStartDate**: If the access condition is time-based, you can decide whether a start date is required. (true = required start date, false = disabled/not required). This start date will be saved to the ResourcePolicy when this access condition is applied.
  - **startDateLimit**: If the access condition is time-based, you can optionally set an start date limit (e.g. +36MONTHS). This field is used to set an upper limit to the start date based on the current date. In other words, a value of "+36MONTHS" means that users cannot set a start date which is more than 3 years from today. This setting's value uses [Solr's Date Math Syntax](#)<sup>394</sup>, and is always based on today (NOW).
  - **hasEndDate**: If the access condition is time-based, you can enable/disable whether an end date is required. (true = required end date, false = disabled/not required). This end date will be saved to the ResourcePolicy when this access condition is applied.
  - **endDateLimit**: If the access condition is time-based, you can optionally set an end date limit (e.g. +6MONTHS). This field is used to set an upper limit to the start date based on the current date. In other words, a value of "+6MONTHS" means that users cannot set an end date which is more than 6 months from today. This setting's value use [Solr's Date Math Syntax](#)<sup>395</sup>, and is always based on today (NOW).

```

<!-- Example access option named "embargo", which lets users specify a
future date
(not more than 3 years from now) when this file will be available to
Anonymous users -->
<bean id="embargoed" class="org.dspace.submit.model.AccessConditionOption">
 <property name="groupName" value="Anonymous"/>
 <property name="name" value="embargo"/>
 <property name="hasStartDate" value="true"/>
 <property name="startDateLimit" value="+36MONTHS"/>
 <property name="hasEndDate" value="false"/>
</bean>

```

- By default, DSpace comes with these out-of-the-box Access Conditions (which you can customize/change based on local requirements)
  - "administrator" - access restricts the bitstream to the Administrator group immediately (after submission completes)

<sup>394</sup> [https://solr.apache.org/guide/7\\_5/working-with-dates.html#date-math](https://solr.apache.org/guide/7_5/working-with-dates.html#date-math)

<sup>395</sup> [https://solr.apache.org/guide/7\\_5/working-with-dates.html#date-math](https://solr.apache.org/guide/7_5/working-with-dates.html#date-math)



- "openAccess" - makes the bitstream immediately accessible to Anonymous group (after submission completes)
- "embargoed" - embargoes the bitstream for a period of time (maximum of 3 years, as defined in startDateLimit default setting), after which it becomes anonymously accessible. See also [Embargo](#)(see page 172) for discussion of how embargoes work in DSpace.
- "lease" - makes the bitstream anonymously accessible immediately (after submission completes), but that access *expires* after a period of time (maximum of 6 months, as defined in endDateLimit default setting). After that date it is no longer accessible (except to Administrators)

#### 4.6.10.7 Configuring the Item Access Conditions step

##### Enabling the step

By default, the "Item Access Conditions" step is disabled. To enable it, simply update your `item-submission.xml` to include this tag in your `<submission-process>`:

```
<submission-process name="traditional">
 ...

 <!-- This step enables embargoes and other access restrictions at the Item level
-->
 <step id="itemAccessConditions"/>
</submission-process>
```

After making this update, you will need to restart your backend (REST API) for the changes to take effect.

##### Modifying access conditions (embargo, etc.) presented for Items

The "Item Access Conditions" step uses a similar access condition configuration as the "Upload" step as described in the [Modifying access conditions \(embargo, etc.\) presented for Bitstreams](#)(see page 351) documentation above.

All available Item access conditions are defined in a new Spring Bean configuration file `[dspace]/config/spring/api/access-conditions.xml`

- One or more "AccessConditionConfiguration" beans may exist, providing different options for different submission forms (only one should be in use in a form at a time). By default an "accessConditionConfigurationDefault" bean is defined. An "AccessConditionConfiguration" consists of several properties:
  - **name** (Required): The unique name of this configuration. It must match the "id" of the step defined in your `item-submission.xml`
  - **canChangeDiscoverable**: Whether this configuration allows users to change the discoverability of an Item. A "discoverable" item is one that is findable through all search/browse interfaces, provided that you have access to see that Item. A "non-discoverable" item is one that will never be findable through search/browse (except by Administrators)... instead a direct link is necessary to view the Item. See also [DSpace Item State Definitions](#)(see page 808). When "canChangeDiscoverable" is "true", the user can modify discoverability in this submission section. When set to "false", the user cannot modify this setting and all submitted Items will be "discoverable".

- **options** (Required): list of all "AccessConditionOption" beans to enable for this Item access conditions step. This list will be shown to the user to let them select which access restrictions to place on this Item.
- This step uses the same "AccessConditionOption" beans as the "Upload" step, as described in the [Modifying access conditions \(embargo, etc.\) presented for Bitstreams](#)(see page 351) documentation above. You can choose to enable the same options for both Items and Bitstreams, or provide different options for each.
- By default, DSpace comes with these out-of-the-box Access Conditions (which you can customize/change based on local requirements)
  - "administrator" - access restricts the bitstream to the Administrator group immediately (after submission completes)
  - "openAccess" - makes the bitstream immediately accessible to Anonymous group (after submission completes)
  - "embargoed" - embargoes the bitstream for a period of time (maximum of 3 years, as defined in startDateLimit default setting), after which it becomes anonymously accessible. See also [Embargo](#)(see page 172) for discussion of how embargoes work in DSpace.
  - "lease" - makes the bitstream anonymously accessible immediately (after submission completes), but that access *expires* after a period of time (maximum of 6 months, as defined in endDateLimit default setting). After that date it is no longer accessible (except to Administrators)

#### Examples of selecting Item and Bitstream access conditions

What happens when a User selects different access conditions for an Item (via the "Item Access Conditions" step) and its files (via the "Upload" step)? Generally speaking, both

Generally speaking, both access restrictions will be applied. Here's some examples:

- If a user selects "openAccess" in the "Item Access Conditions" step AND "embargo" in the "Upload" step for one Bitstream
  - Then, the Item's metadata will be publicly visible, but that single Bitstream will be embargoed.
- If a user selects "openAccess" in the "Item Access Conditions" step AND "administrator" in the "Upload" step for one Bitstream
  - Then, the Item's metadata will be publicly visible, but that single Bitstream will only be visible to Administrators
- If a user selects "administrator" in the "Item Access Conditions" step AND nothing in the "Upload" step.
  - Then, the Item's metadata and all Bitstreams will only be accessible to administrators.
- If a user selects "embargo" in the "Item Access Conditions" step AND nothing in the "Upload" step.
  - Then, the Item's metadata and all Bitstreams will be embargoed. Nothing will be visible in the system until the embargo data passes.
- If a user selects "embargo" in the "Item Access Conditions" step AND "openAccess" in the "Upload" step for one Bitstream.
  - Then, the Item's metadata will be embargoed (making it impossible to find the Item unless you are an Administrator). HOWEVER, the bitstream will be publicly accessible immediately (but only via a direct link, as it won't be searchable in the system until the embargo date passes).
- (To test other scenarios, submit a test Item with those permissions applied. Then, edit that Item, visit the "Status" tab, and click "Authorizations" to see what access restrictions were applied to the Item and its bitstreams.)

#### 4.6.10.8 Configuring the Sherpa Romeo step

Enabling the Sherpa Romeo step

By default, the "Sherpa RoMEO Policy" step is disabled. To enable it, simply update your `item-submission.xml` to include this tag in your `<submission-process>`:

```
<submission-process name="traditional">
 ...
 <!-- This step shows when appropriate publisher policies retrieved from SHERPA/
RoMEO -->
 <step id="sherpaPolicies"/>
</submission-process>
```

you must also obtain your `sherpa.romeo.apikey` registering you client application here <https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/api/> and put them in the `local.cfg`

```
sherpa.romeo.apikey = <YOUR-API-KEY>
```

The step needs to extract the ISSN of the Journal where the publication has been submitted/published to query the Sherpa/RoMEO database in order to visualize the publisher policies, this is done by an implementation of the `org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.ISSNItemExtractor` interface configured in the `org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.SHERPASubmitConfigurationService`

The configuration is provided by Spring `config/spring/api/sherpa.xml`

```
<bean class="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.SHERPASubmitConfigurationService"
 id="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.SHERPASubmitConfigurationService">
 <property name="issnItemExtractors">
 <list>
 <bean class="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.MetadataValueISSNExtractor">
 <property name="metadataList">
 <list>
 <value>dc.identifier.issn</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 </bean>
 <!-- Uncomment this bean if you have SHERPARoMEOJournalTitle enabled
tor">
 <property name="metadataList">
 <list>
 <value>dc.title.alternative</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 </list>
 </property>
</bean> -->
```

```

 </list>
 </property>
</bean>

```

out-of-box implementations able to extract the ISSN from the metadata value or authority are provided.

The screenshot displays the 'Sherpa policies' interface. At the top, a blue header contains the title 'Sherpa policies' and an information icon. Below the header, a light blue box contains a warning message: 'The below information was found via Sherpa Romeo. Based on the policies of your publisher, it provides advice regarding whether an embargo may be necessary and/or which files you are allowed to upload. If you have questions, please contact your site administrator via the feedback form in the footer.' A 'Refresh' button is located to the right of this message. The main content area is divided into three sections: 'Publication information', 'Publisher Policy', and 'Record Information'. The 'Publication information' section contains a table with the following data:

Title	Nature Synthesis
ISSNs	2731-0582
URL	<a href="https://www.nature.com/natsynth/">https://www.nature.com/natsynth/</a>
Publisher	<a href="#">Nature Research</a>
Romeo Pub	Nature Research: Nature Synthesis
Zeto Pub	Nature Research: Nature Synthesis

The 'Publisher Policy' section contains two entries, each with a dropdown arrow. The 'Record Information' section contains a table with the following data:

ID	40863
Date Created	11 January 2022 9:43:53 GMT+01:00
Last Modified	25 March 2022 14:08:29 GMT+01:00

At the bottom of the interface, there is a 'Discard' button (red) and a row of action buttons: 'Saved' (checked), 'Save', 'Save for later', and 'Deposit' (green).

#### 4.6.10.9 Creating new Submission Steps Programmatically.

First, a brief warning: *Creating a new Submission Step requires some Java knowledge, and is therefore recommended to be undertaken by a Java programmer whenever possible.*

*In most scenarios, this is NOT necessary, as it's much easier to configure a custom Submission Step using DescribeStep or similar.*

That being said, at a higher level, creating a new Submission Step requires the following (in this relative order):

1. Create a new Step Processing class
  - This class **must** extend the abstract `org.dspace.submit.AbstractProcessingStep` class and implement all methods defined by that abstract class.
  - This class should be built in such a way that it can process the input gathered from the UI
2. Add a valid Step Definition to the `item-submission.xml` configuration file.
  - This may also require that you add an I18N (Internationalization) key for this step's *heading to the UI*

- For more information on `<step-definition>` tags within the `item-submission.xml`, see the section above on Defining Steps (`<step>`) within the `item-submission.xml`.
3. For the UI, you will need to..
- Add a new section type to SectionsType enum matching to the type of step you are creating
  - Create a new Component for this new SectionsType, annotated with "@renderSectionFor()".... see existing section components under `src/app/submission/sections` for examples.
  - *(Other steps may be necessary... this process has not been fully documented at this time.)*

#### 4.6.10.10 Live Import from external sources

- [General Framework](#)(see page 358)
  - [Introduction](#)(see page 358)
  - [Features](#)(see page 358)
  - [Abstraction of input format](#)(see page 358)
  - [Editing Metadata Mapping](#)(see page 358)
  - [Transformation to DSpace Item](#)(see page 361)
    - [Implementation of an import source for External Sources](#)(see page 361)
    - [Implementation of an import source for files](#)(see page 361)
    - [Mapping raw data to Metadata](#)(see page 362)
    - [Inherited methods](#)(see page 362)
    - [Spring configuration for External Sources](#)(see page 362)
    - [Metadata mapping](#)(see page 363)
    - [Available Metadata Contributor classes](#)(see page 365)
  - [Framework Sources Implementations](#)(see page 366)
    - [PubMed Integration](#)(see page 366)
      - [Introduction](#)(see page 366)
      - [Publication Lookup URL](#)(see page 366)
      - [PubMed Metadata Mapping](#)(see page 366)
      - [PubMed specific classes Config](#)(see page 366)
        - [Metadata mapping classes](#)(see page 366)
        - [Service classes](#)(see page 367)
    - [ArXiv Integration](#)(see page 367)
      - [ArXiv Metadata Mapping](#)(see page 367)

#### General Framework

##### Introduction

This framework is used by both the [REST API](#)(see page 666) and [User Interface](#)(see page 478) to help enhance or enrich submissions. One examples usage is in [Importing Items via basic bibliographic formats](#) (Endnote, BibTex, RIS, CSV, etc) and [online services](#) (arXiv, PubMed, CrossRef, CiNii, etc)(see page 303)

##### Features

- lookup publications from remote sources
- Support for multiple implementations

## Abstraction of input format

The importer framework does not enforce a specific input format. Each importer implementation defines which input format it expects from a remote source. The import framework uses generics to achieve this. Each importer implementation will have a type set of the record type it receives from the remote source's response. This type set will also be used by the framework to use the correct MetadataFieldMapping for a certain implementation. Read "Implementation of an import source" below for more information and how to enable the framework.

## Editing Metadata Mapping

At a simple level, metadata mapping configurations are all in Spring configs in `[dspace.dir]/config/spring/api/`

In that directory, you'll find a mapping file per import source, e.g. "arxiv-integration.xml", "bibtex-integration.xml", "endnote-integration.xml", "pubmed-integration.xml", etc.

There are two different mapping types.

1. First, mapping from a file-based import (e.g. bibtex, endnote, ris, etc) to a DSpace metadata field.
  - a. The list of all of the enabled mappings can be found in a "MetadataFieldConfig" <util:map>, usually at the top of the config file.

```
<util:map id="bibtexMetadataFieldMap" key-type="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.MetadataFieldConfig"
 value-
 type=
 "org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.MetadataContributor">
 <description>Defines which metadatum is mapped on which metadatum.
 Note that while the key must be unique it
 only matters here for postprocessing of the value. The mapped
 MetadataContributor has full control over
 what metadatafield is generated.
 </description>
 <!-- These entry tags are the enabled mappings. The "value-ref" must
 map to a <bean> ID. -->
 <entry key-ref="dcTitle" value-ref="bibtexTitleContrib" />
 <entry key-ref="dcAuthors" value-ref="bibtexAuthorsContrib" />
 <entry key-ref="dcJournal" value-ref="bibtexJournalContrib" />
 <entry key-ref="dcIssued" value-ref="bibtexIssuedContrib" />
 <entry key-ref="dcJissn" value-ref="bibtexJissnContrib" />
</util:map>
```

- b. Each field in the file is mapped to a DSpace metadata field in a "SimpleMetadataContributor" bean definition. *NOTE: a large number of DSpace defined metadata fields are already configured as MetadataFieldConfig beans in the "dublincore-metadata-mapper.xml" Spring Config in the same directory. These may be reused in other configurations.*

```
<!-- This example bean for BibTex says the "title" key in the BibTex" file
should be mapped to the DSpace metadata field
```

```

 defined in the "dcTitle" bean. This "dcTitle" bean is found in
 "dublincore-metadata-mapper.xml" and obviously maps to "dc.title" -->
 <bean id="bibtexTitleContrib" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadata
 mapping.contributor.SimpleMetadataContributor">
 <property name="field" ref="dcTitle"/>
 <property name="key" value="title" />
 </bean>

```

2. Second, mapping from an external API query import (e.g. arxiv, pubmed, etc) to a DSpace metadata field.
  - a. Similar to above, The list of all of the enabled mappings can be found in a "MetadataFieldConfig" <util:map>, usually at the top of the config file.

```

<util:map id="arxivMetadataFieldMap" key-type="org.dspace.importer.external
 l.metadatamapping.MetadataFieldConfig"
 value-
 type=
 "org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.MetadataContribu
 tor">
 <description>Defines which metadatum is mapped on which metadatum.
 Note that while the key must be unique it
 only matters here for postprocessing of the value. The mapped
 MetadatumContributor has full control over
 what metadatafield is generated.
 </description>
 <!-- These entry tags are the enabled mappings. The "value-ref" must
 map to a <bean> ID. -->
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.title" value-ref="arxivTitleContrib"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.summary" value-ref="arxivSummaryContrib"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.published" value-ref="arxivPublishedContrib"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.arxiv.doi" value-ref="arxivDoiContrib"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.arxiv.journal_ref" value-ref="arxivJournalContrib
 b"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.category.term" value-ref="arxivCategoryTermContrib
 ib"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.author.name" value-ref="arxivAuthorContrib"/>
 <entry key-ref="arxiv.identifier.other" value-ref="arxivOtherContrib"/
 >
</util:map>

```

- b. Each field in the file is mapped to a DSpace metadata field, usually in a "SimpleXPathMetadatumContributor" bean definition which also uses a "MetadataFieldConfig" bean. *NOTE: a large number of DSpace defined metadata fields are already configured as MetadataFieldConfig beans in the "dublincore-metadata-mapper.xml" Spring Config in the same directory. These may be reused in other configurations.*

```

<!-- This first bean define an XPath query ("ns:title") to map to a field
(ID="arxiv.title") in DSpace -->
<bean id="arxivTitleContrib" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatam
 apping.contributor.SimpleXPathMetadatumContributor">
 <property name="field" ref="arxiv.title"/>

```

```

 <property name="query" value="ns:title"/>
 <property name="prefixToNamespaceMapping" ref="arxivBasePrefixToNamesp
aceMapping"/>
</bean>
<!-- This second bean then defines which DSpace field to use when
"arxiv.title" is references. In other words, between these two beans,
the "ns:title" XPath query value is saved to "dc.title". -->
<bean id="arxiv.title" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping
.MetadataFieldConfig">
 <constructor-arg value="dc.title"/>
</bean>

```

### Transformation to DSpace Item

The framework produces an 'ImportRecord' that is completely decoupled from DSpace. It contains a set of metadata DTO's that contain the notion of schema,element and qualifier. The specific implementation is responsible for populating this set. It is then very simple to create a DSpace item from this list.

#### Implementation of an import source for External Sources

Each external source/API importer implementation must at least implements

`org.dspace.importer.external.service.components.QuerySource`, which provides the query method used by the framework to retrieve data from the remote source (e.g. Pubmed, ArXiv, etc). Each external source importer must implements, according to the provider APIs, the declared methods.

An useful abstract for remote sources is

`org.dspace.importer.external.service.components.AbstractRemoteMetadataSource`. This class contains functionality to handle request timeout and to retry requests. Using this abstract, the query method must implements `java.util.concurrent.Callable`.

#### Implementation of an import source for files

Each file importer implementation must at least implements

`org.dspace.importer.external.service.components.FileSource`, which provides the basic methods used by the framework to parse and load data from the file (e.g. CSV, Endnote, etc).

Each importer must implements the method:

```

public List<ImportRecord> getRecords(InputStream inputStream) throws
FileSourceException;

```

This method is responsible to transform the input data into an ImportRecord list, which will then managed by the top layer of the framework.

The conversion from raw data to an ImportRecord could be done using the framework too, using the metadata mapping structure (see below).

File sources needs to know which file extensions they have to supports. This is done by the default method `isValidSourceForFile` in `FileSource`, and is controlled by the entries in the list returned by declared method `public List<String> getSupportedExtensions();`

An useful abstract for file source is

`org.dspace.importer.external.service.components.AbstractPlainMetadataSource`. It



should be used whenever it is possible to model the data in the file as a list of key-value lists (e.g. for CSV files, any row is a key value list).

### Mapping raw data to Metadata

The framework core is a mid-layer component which allow the conversion of raw data into metadata (ImportRecord) using xml configurable spring beans.

The core of this approach is

`org.dspace.importer.externa.service.AbstractImportMetadataSourceService`. Any service that wants to generate metadata from raw data should go through this abstract.

Our service then should extends `AbstractImportMetadataSourceService`, and use `transformSourceRecords` to transform raw data into `ImportRecords`.

The most relevant concept in the framework is `private MetadataFieldMapping<RecordType, MetadataContributor<RecordType>> metadataFieldMapping`. This is the place where the framework take the mapping between row data and the associated metadatum. This map must be injected in the service, and will be used by `transformSourceRecords` to convert the data.

`RecordType` is a generic type, which rapresent a single entry of the list of data, and will be mapped to a single `ImportRecord`. Any metadatum will be mapped to a specific field in the `RecordType` using a Contributor as described in Metadata mapping.

### Inherited methods

Method `getImportSource()` should return a unique identifier. Importer implementations should not be called directly, but class `org.dspace.importer.external.service.ImportService` should be called instead. This class contains the same methods as the importer implementations, but with an extra parameter 'url'. This url parameter should contain the same identifier that is returned by the `getImportSource()` method of the importer implementation you want to use.

The other inherited methods are used to query the remote source.

### Spring configuration for External Sources

In order to make the live import providers available, them must be mapped as spring beans into `dspace-api/src/main/resources/spring/spring-dspace-addon-import-services.xml`.

This is an example of a provider which allow to import both files and remote source.

```
<bean id="PubmedImportService"
 class="org.dspace.importer.external.pubmed.service.PubmedImportMetadataSourceServiceImpl" scope="singleton">
 <property name="metadataFieldMapping" ref="PubmedMetadataFieldMapping"/>
 <property name="supportedExtensions">
 <list>
 <value>xml</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 ...
</bean>
```

Here is defined the service responsible to fetch and transform the data `PubmedImportMetadataSourceServiceImpl`, which is an extension of `AbstractImportMetadataSourceService` as described above.

The field `metadataFieldMapping` is an instance of `Map<MetadataFieldConfig, MetadataContributor>` and contains the effective mapping.

`supportedExtensions` is the file extension this provider supports.

To expose this provider as Live Import provider, we need to construct a bean of type `org.dspace.external.provider.impl.LiveImportDataProvider` in the following way

```
<bean id="pubmedLiveImportDataProvider" class="org.dspace.external.provider.impl.Live
ImportDataProvider">
 <property name="metadataSource" ref="PubmedImportService"/>
 <property name="sourceIdentifier" value="pubmed"/>
 <property name="recordIdMetadata" value="dc.identifier.other"/>
</bean>
```

where `metadataSource` is the bean referencing to live import service as described in “Metadata mapping”, `sourceIdentifier` the name of the provider in the live import framework and `recordIdMetadata` the metadatum used as id of the `ImportRecord`.

Metadata mapping

When using an implementation of `AbstractImportSourceService`, a mapping of remote record fields to DSpace metadata fields can be created.

first create an implementation of class `AbstractMetadataFieldMapping` with the same type set used for the importer implementation.

Then create a spring configuration file in `[dspace.dir]/config/spring/api`.

Each DSpace metadata field that will be used for the mapping must first be configured as a spring bean of class `org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.MetadataFieldConfig`.

```
<bean id="dc.title" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.M
etadataFieldConfig">
 <constructor-arg value="dc.title"/>
</bean>
```

*NOTE: A large number of these `MetadataFieldConfig` definitions are already provided out-of-the-box in `[dspace.dir]/config/spring/api/dublincore-metadata-mapper.xml`. This allows most service-specific Spring configurations to just reuse those existing `MetadataFieldConfig` definitions*

Now this metadata field can be used to create a mapping. To add a mapping for the "dc.title" field declared above, a new spring bean configuration of a class `org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.MetadataContributor` needs to be added. This interface contains a type argument. The type needs to match the type used in the implementation of `AbstractImportSourceService`. The responsibility of each `MetadataContributor` implementation is to generate a set of metadata from the retrieved document. How it does that is completely opaque to the `AbstractImportSourceService` but it is assumed that only one entity (i.e. item) is fed to the metadata contributor.

For example `java SimpleXpathMetadatumContributor` implements

`MetadataContributor<OMElement>` can parse a fragment of xml and generate one or more metadata values.

This bean expects 2 property values:

- field: A reference to the configured spring bean of the DSpace metadata field. e.g. the "dc.title" bean declared above.
- query: The xpath expression used to select the record value returned by the remote source.

```
<bean id="titleContrib" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.SimpleXpathMetadatumContributor">
 <property name="field" ref="dc.title"/>
 <property name="query" value="dc:title"/>
</bean>
```

Multiple record fields can also be combined into one value. To implement a combined mapping first create a `SimpleXpathMetadatumContributor` as explained above for each part of the field.

```
<bean id="lastNameContrib" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.SimpleXpathMetadatumContributor">
 <property name="field" ref="dc.contributor.author"/>
 <property name="query" value="x:authors/x:author/x:surname"/>
</bean>
<bean id="firstNameContrib" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.SimpleXpathMetadatumContributor">
 <property name="field" ref="dc.contributor.author"/>
 <property name="query" value="x:authors/x:author/x:given-name"/>
</bean>
```

Note that namespace prefixes used in the xpath queries are configured in bean "FullprefixMapping" in the same spring file.

```
<util:map id="FullprefixMapping" key-type="java.lang.String" value-type="java.lang.String">
 <description>Defines the namespace mapping for the SimpleXpathMetadatum contributors</description>
 <entry key="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/" value="dc"/>
 <entry key="http://www.w3.org/2005/Atom" value="x"/>
</util:map>
```

Then create a new list in the spring configuration containing references to all *SimpleXPathMetadatumContributor* beans that need to be combined.

```
<util:list id="combinedauthorList" value-type="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.MetadataContributor" list-class="java.util.LinkedList">
 <ref bean="lastNameContrib"/>
 <ref bean="firstNameContrib"/>
</util:list>
```

Finally create a spring bean configuration of class *org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.CombinedMetadatumContributor*. This bean expects 3 values:

- field: A reference to the configured spring bean of the DSpace metadata field. e.g. the "dc.title" bean declared above.
- metadatumContributors: A reference to the list containing all the single record field mappings that need to be combined.
- separator: These characters will be added between each record field value when they are combined into one field.

```
<bean id="authorContrib" class="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.CombinedMetadatumContributor">
 <property name="separator" value=", "/>
 <property name="metadatumContributors" ref="combinedauthorList"/>
 <property name="field" ref="dc.contributor.author"/>
</bean>
```

Each contributor must also be added to the "MetadataFieldMap" used by the *MetadataFieldMapping* implementation. Each entry of this map maps a metadata field bean to a contributor. For the contributors created above this results in the following configuration:

```
<util:map id="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.MetadataFieldConfig"
 value-type="org.dspace.importer.external.metadatamapping.contributor.MetadataContributor">
 <entry key-ref="dc.title" value-ref="titleContrib"/>
 <entry key-ref="dc.contributor.author" value-ref="authorContrib"/>
</util:map>
```

Note that the single field mappings used for the combined author mapping are not added to this list.

Available Metadata Contributor classes

Class	Description
SimpleXPathMetadatumContributor	Use an XPath expression to map the XPath result to a metadatum
SimpleMetadataContributor	This contributor is used in plain metadata as exposed above. Mapping is easy because it is based on the key used in the DTO.
CombinedMetadatumContributor	Use a LinkedList of MetadataContributor to combine into the value the resulting value for each contributor.

## Framework Sources Implementations

### PubMed Integration

#### Introduction

First read the base documentation on external importing (see above). This documentation explains the implementation of the importer framework using PubMed (<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed>) as an example.

#### Publication Lookup URL

To be able to do the lookup for our configured import-service, we need to be able to know what URL to use to check for publications. This URL the `publication-lookup.url` setting defined within the `[dspace.dir]/config/modules/publication-lookup.cfg`. You may choose to modify this setting or override it within your `local.cfg`.

This setting can be modified in one of two ways:

- You can choose to specific a single, specific URL. This will tell the lookup service to only use one location to lookup publication information. Valid URLs are any that are defined as a `baseAddress` for beans within the `[src]/dspace-api/src/main/resources/spring/spring-dspace-addon-import-services.xml` Spring config file.
  - For example, this setting will ONLY use PubMed for lookups: `publication-lookup.url=http://eutils.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/eutils/`
- By default, `publication-lookup.url` is set to an asterisk ('\*'). This default value will attempt to lookup the publication using ALL configured importServices in the `[src]/dspace-api/src/main/resources/spring/spring-dspace-addon-import-services.xml` Spring config file

### PubMed Metadata Mapping

The PubMed metadata mappings are defined in the `[dspace.dir]/config/spring/api/pubmed-integration.xml` Spring configuration file. These metadata mappings can be tweaked as desired. The format of this file is described in the "Metadata mapping" section above

### PubMed specific classes Config

These classes are simply implementations based of the base classes defined in `importer/external`. They add characteristic behavior for services/mapping for the PubMed specific data.

### Metadata mapping classes

- "PubmedFieldMapping". An implementation of AbstractMetadataFieldMapping, linking to the bean that serves as the entry point of other metadata mapping
- "PubmedDateMetadatumContributor"/"PubmedLanguageMetadatumContributor". Pubmed specific implementations of the "MetadataContributor" interface

#### Service classes

- "GeneratePubmedQueryService". Generates the pubmed query which is used to retrieve the records. This is based on a given item.
- "PubmedImportMetadataSourceServiceImpl". Child class of "AbstractImportMetadataSourceService", retrieving the records from pubmed.

#### ArXiv Integration

##### ArXiv Metadata Mapping

The ArXiv metadata mappings are defined in the `[dspace.dir]/config/spring/api/arxiv-integration.xml` Spring configuration file. These metadata mappings can be tweaked as desired. The format of this file is described in the "Metadata mapping" section above

#### 4.6.10.11 Simple HTML Fragment Markup

A few features of the user interface, such as the deposit license text & some metadata fields, can be marked up using a subset of HTML. This HTML subset is defined by Angular, as we use Angular's "[innerHTML]" property to display these HTML-based fields.

Angular automatically sanitizes any HTML passed to "[innerHTML]" in order to avoid XSS attacks. See Angular docs at <https://angular.io/guide/security#preventing-cross-site-scripting-xss>

At this time, Angular does NOT have a formal reference of elements/attributes which are allowed, but we've compiled a list below of currently known acceptable elements. This list may change in later releases of Angular, but is currently maintained in Angular's "html\_sanitizer.ts": [https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/main/packages/core/src/sanitization/html\\_sanitizer.ts](https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/main/packages/core/src/sanitization/html_sanitizer.ts)

As of the writing of this page, these HTML5 elements may be used:

- h1, h2, h3, h4, h5, h6
- p, div
- a
- img
- audio
- video
- map
- table-based elements (table, td, th, tr, etc)
- list-based elements (ol, ul, li, etc)
- other formatting elements (b, i, u, br, hr, small, font, etc)

Not all DSpace fields support HTML, but the User Interface should make it clear which fields do. When adding HTML to a field, you should not create a complete HTML document (surrounded with "<html>" tags). Just add an HTML fragment.

#### 4.6.10.12 Supervision Orders

Available in 7.5 or later

In order to facilitate, as a primary objective, the opportunity for thesis authors to be supervised in the preparation of their e-theses, a supervision order system exists to bind groups of other users (thesis supervisors) to an item in someone's pre-submission workspace. The bound group can have system policies associated with it that allow different levels of interaction with the student's item; a small set of default policy groups are provided:

- Full editorial control (EDITOR)
- View item contents (OBSERVER)

Once the default set has been applied, a system administrator may modify them as they would any other policy set in DSpace

This functionality could also be used in situations where researchers wish to collaborate on a particular submission, although there is no particular collaborative workspace functionality.

### Creating a Supervision Order

Login as an Administrator, and visit the "Administer Workflow" sidebar menu. From this screen you can see all Items that are either in the "Workspace" (pre-submission) or "Workflow" (workflow approval process) status.

For Items that are in the "Workspace", it is possible to create a supervision order by clicking on the "Supervision" button.

After clicking "Supervision", you'll be able to create a Supervision order by selecting the "Type of Order" (EDITOR or OBSERVER) and assigning those permissions to an existing DSpace Group.

Supervision Group Selector
✕

---

Select a type of Order

▼

EDITOR

OBSERVER

Reviewers

🔍 Search

Browse all

Now showing 21 - 24 of 24

ID	Name	Action
b80d1827-6d0e-440d-94d6-3fd592289788	COLLECTION_b6bc506a-ccf2-4368-a294-28d98c92a91c_SUBMIT	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
8d6f1db3-97a6-448a-aa94-051df935dcb8	COLLECTION_908adbda-2d13-4d15-831d-5e02ac747ec3_SUBMIT	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
ffddb63c-cc44-408d-a5e3-1d0831aa6685	ReviewManagers	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
2cecca30-2fe4-4f78-8fb6-a355742c6c9a	Reviewers	<input type="button" value="Select"/>

« 1 2 3 4 5 »

✕ Cancel

💾 Save

In DSpace, there are currently two Types of Orders:

- EDITOR - The supervising group is given ADD, WRITE, and READ access to the item (but not any bundles or bitstreams that already exist). Any new bundles or bitstreams inherit the supervising group's policy to permit ADD, WRITE and READ operations.
  - NOTE: Keep in mind, this does NOT give the supervising group REMOVE policies on the Bundle or DELETE on the Item. This means the supervising group is only able to edit the metadata & add additional bitstreams. They are NOT able to remove existing bitstreams or delete the Item unless additional policies are manually added.
- OBSERVER - The supervising group is given READ access to the item (but not to any bundles or bitstreams that already exist). Any new bundles or bitstreams inherit the supervision group's policy to permit READ operations.
  - NOTE: At this time, there is a known issue where the OBSERVER group will still see the "Edit" and "Delete" buttons, but are unable to perform those actions. <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/2094>

Keep in mind, *you can adjust the permissions defined to any order after creating the order!* Simply click on the "Policies" button on the "Administer Workflow" page to adjust the default policies for that supervising group!

### Supervising a Submission

Once a Supervision Order is created (see above step), all group members for the supervising group will see that Item in their "Supervised Items" list on their MyDSpace page:



The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for 'Supervised Items'. At the top, there is a breadcrumb 'Home • MyDSpace' and a file upload area with the text 'Drag & Drop your files here, or browse'. Below this is a search bar with 'All of DSpace' and a search button. A dropdown menu labeled 'Show' is open, with 'Supervised items' selected and circled in red. The main content area displays 'Supervised Items' and 'Now showing 1 - 1 of 1'. A single item is shown with a 'No Thumbnail Available' placeholder and the title 'My next big project'. Below the item are buttons for 'View', 'Edit', and 'Delete'. On the left, there are filter sections for 'Status', 'Type', and 'Date', each with a plus sign, and a 'Reset filters' button.

Based on the type of Submission Order (or additional permissions provided), all members of the supervising group will be able to view and/or edit that in-progress submission.

### Managing Supervision Orders

At any time, an Administrator can remove or recreate Supervision Orders. This is also done from the "Administer Workflow" page.

On that page, a "Supervised By" filter exists, allowing you to locate all currently supervised items by the assigned group:

The screenshot shows the 'Administer Workflow' page. It features a search bar at the top and a 'Supervised By' filter section. The filter is currently set to 'Reviewers' with a checkmark. A dropdown menu is open under the 'Supervised By' section, showing 'Remove supervision group' and 'Reviewers x'. Below the filter, there are buttons for 'Delete', 'Policies', and 'Supervision'. The main content area displays 'Workflow and Workspace tasks' and 'Now showing 1 - 1 of 1'. A single item is shown with a 'No Thumbnail Available' placeholder and the title 'My next big project'. On the left, there are filter sections for 'Status', 'Type', 'Date', and 'Submitter', each with a plus sign, and a 'Reset filters' button.

You can click on the "Supervised by" label under the supervised item to **remove** the existing supervision order. New orders can be added by clicking the "Supervision" button. You can also adjust any supervising group permissions by editing the policies directly by clicking on the "Policies" button.

## 4.7 Items and Metadata

- [Authority Control of Metadata Values](#)(see page 371)
- [Batch Metadata Editing](#)(see page 387)
- [DOI Digital Object Identifier](#)(see page 396)

- [Item Level Versioning](#)(see page 407)
- [Mapping/Linking Items to multiple Collections](#)(see page 415)
- [Metadata Recommendations](#)(see page 416)
- [Moving Items](#)(see page 418)
- [PDF Citation Cover Page](#)(see page 418)
- [Updating Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 421)

## 4.7.1 Authority Control of Metadata Values

- [work in progress](#)(see page 371)
- [Introduction](#)(see page 371)
- [Simple choice management for DSpace submission forms](#)(see page 371)
  - [Example](#)(see page 371)
  - [Use simple choice management to add language tags to metadata fields](#)(see page 371)
- [Hierarchical Taxonomies and Controlled Vocabularies](#)(see page 371)
  - [How to invoke a controlled vocabulary from submission-forms.xml](#)(see page 372)
- [Authority Control: Enhancing DSpace metadata fields with Authority Keys](#)(see page 373)
  - [How it works](#)(see page 373)
  - [Original source:](#)(see page 373)

### 4.7.1.1 **WORK IN PROGRESS**

#### 4.7.1.2 Introduction

With DSpace you can describe digital objects such as text files, audio, video or data to facilitate easy retrieval and high quality search results. These descriptions are organized into metadata fields that each have a specific designation. For example: dc.title stores the title of an object, while dc.subject is reserved for subject keywords.

For many of these fields, including title and abstract, free text entry is the proper choice, as the values are likely to be unique. Other fields are likely to have values drawn from controlled sets. Such fields include unique names, subject keywords, document types and other classifications. For those kinds of fields the overall quality of the repository metadata increases if values with the same meaning are normalized across all items. Additional benefits can be gained if unique identifiers are associated as well in addition to canonical text values associated with a particular metadata field.

This page covers features included in the DSpace submission forms that allow repository managers to enforce the usage of normalized terms for those fields where this is required in their institutional use cases. DSpace offers simple and straightforward features, such as definitions of simple text values for dropdowns, as well as more elaborate integrations with external vocabularies such as the Library of Congress Naming Authority.

#### 4.7.1.3 Simple choice management for DSpace submission forms

The DSpace Submission forms, defined in the submission-forms.xml file, allows the inclusion of value pairs that can be organized in lists in order to populate dropdowns or other multiple choice elements. If you explore the default submission-forms.xml file, you can see that a number of such value pair lists are already pre defined.

## Example

```
<value-pairs value-pairs-name="common_identifiers" dc-term="identifier">
 <pair>
 <displayed-value>Gov't Doc #</displayed-value>
 <stored-value>govdoc</stored-value>
 </pair>
 <pair>
 <displayed-value>URI</displayed-value>
 <stored-value>uri</stored-value>
 </pair>
 <pair>
 <displayed-value>ISBN</displayed-value>
 <stored-value>isbn</stored-value>
 </pair>
</value-pairs>
```

It generates the following HTML, which results in the menu widget below.

```
<select name="identifier_qualifier_0">
 <option VALUE="govdoc">Gov't Doc #</option>
 <option VALUE="uri">URI</option>
 <option VALUE="isbn">ISBN</option>
</select>
```

A list of value pairs has following required attributes:

- **value-pairs-name** – Name by which an *input-type* refers to this list.
- **dc-term** – Dublin Core field for which this choice list is selecting a value.

Each *value-pairs* element contains a sequence of *pair* sub-elements, each of which in turn contains two elements:

- **displayed-value** – Name shown (on the web page) for the menu entry.
- **stored-value** – Value stored in the DC element when this entry is chosen. Unlike the HTML *select* tag, there is no way to indicate one of the entries should be the default, so the first entry is always the default choice.

Use simple choice management to add language tags to metadata fields

DSpace uses the simple choice management to provide a controlled list of language tags. Out of the box DSpace comes with a list of ISO language tags. You can add further language lists or use the provided one to let submitters tag languages of metadata fields. Take a look at the part of this documentation about the configuration of the [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338).

### 4.7.1.4 Hierarchical Taxonomies and Controlled Vocabularies

The value pairs system works well for short and flat lists of choices. DSpace offers a second way of structuring and managing more complex, hierarchical controlled vocabularies. In contrast to the value pairs system, these controlled vocabularies are managed in separate XML files in the `[dspace]/config/controlled-vocabularies/` directory instead of being entered straight into `submission-forms.xml`

The taxonomies are described in XML according to this structure:

```

<node id="acmccs98" label="ACMCCS98">
 <isComposedBy>
 <node id="A." label="General Literature">
 <isComposedBy>
 <node id="A.0" label="GENERAL"/>
 <node id="A.1" label="INTRODUCTORY AND SURVEY"/>
 ...
 </isComposedBy>
 </node>
 ...
 </isComposedBy>
</node>

```

As you can see, each node element has an id and label attribute. It can contain the isComposedBy element, which in its turn, consists of a list of other nodes.

You are free to use any application you want to create your controlled vocabularies. A simple text editor should be enough for small projects. Bigger projects will require more complex tools. You may use Protegé to create your taxonomies, save them as OWL and then use a XML Stylesheet (XSLT) to transform your documents to the appropriate format. Future enhancements to this add-on should make it compatible with standard schemas such as OWL or RDF.

#### How to invoke a controlled vocabulary from submission-forms.xml

Vocabularies need to be associated with the correspondent DC metadata fields. Edit the file [dspace]/config/submission-forms.xml and place a "vocabulary" tag under the "field" element that you want to control. Set value of the "vocabulary" element to the name of the file that contains the vocabulary, leaving out the extension (the add-on will only load files with extension "\*.xml"). For example:

```

<field>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>subject</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier></dc-qualifier>
 <repeatable>true</repeatable>
 <label>Subject Keywords</label>
 <input-type>onebox</input-type>
 <hint>Enter appropriate subject keywords or phrases below.</hint>
 <required></required>
 <vocabulary>srsc</vocabulary>
</field>

```

The vocabulary element has an optional boolean attribute `closed` that can be used to force input only with the Javascript of controlled-vocabulary add-on. The default behaviour (i.e. without this attribute) is `closed="false"`. This allows the user to enter values as free text in addition to selecting them from the controlled vocabulary.

The following vocabularies are currently available by default:

- **nsi** - *nsi.xml* - The Norwegian Science Index
- **srsc** - *srsc.xml* - Swedish Research Subject Categories

#### 4.7.1.5 Authority Control: Enhancing DSpace metadata fields with Authority Keys

The aforementioned features only deal with text representations of controlled values. DSpace also offers support for adding authority keys and confidence values to a specific text value entered in a metadata field. The following terminology applies in the description of this area of DSpace functionality:

- **Authority** An *authority* is an external source of fixed values for a given domain, each unique value identified by a *key*. For example, [the OCLC LC Name Authority Service](#)<sup>396</sup>, ORCID or VIAF.
- **Authority Record** The information associated with one of the values in an authority; may include alternate spellings and equivalent forms of the value, etc.
- **Authority Key** An opaque, hopefully persistent, identifier corresponding to exactly one record in the authority.

The fact that this functionality deals with **external** sources of authority makes it inherently different from the functionality for controlled vocabularies. Another difference is that the authority control is asserted *everywhere* metadata values are changed, including unattended/batch submission, SWORD package submission, and the administrative UI.

How it works

TODO

Original source:

[Authority Control of Metadata Values](#)<sup>397</sup> original development proposal for DSpace 1.6

#### 4.7.1.6 ORCID Authority

- [Introduction](#)(see page 375)
- [Use case and high level benefits](#)(see page 375)
- [Enabling the ORCID authority control](#)(see page 375)
- [Importing existing authors & keeping the index up to date](#)(see page 375)
  - [Different possible use cases for Index-authority script](#)(see page 377)
    - [Metadata value WITHOUT authority key in metadata](#)(see page 377)
    - [Metadata that already has an authority key from an external source \(NOT auto-generated by DSpace\)](#)(see page 377)
    - [Metadata that has already a new dspace generated uid authority key](#)(see page 377)
    - [Processing on records in the authority cache](#)(see page 377)
  - [Submission of new DSpace items - Author lookup](#)(see page 377)
  - [Admin Edit Item](#)(see page 379)
  - [Editing existing items using Batch CSV Editing](#)(see page 379)
  - [Storage of related metadata](#)(see page 382)
- [Configuration](#)(see page 382)
- [Adding additional fields under ORCID](#)(see page 383)
- [Integration with other systems beside ORCID](#)(see page 386)
- [FAQ](#)(see page 386)
  - [Which information from ORCID is currently indexed in the authority cache?](#)(see page 386)
  - [How can I index additional fields in the authority cache?](#)(see page 386)
  - [How can I use the information stored in the authority cache?](#)(see page 386)

<sup>396</sup> <http://www.oclc.org/research/researchworks/authority/default.htm>

<sup>397</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Authority+Control+of+Metadata+Values>

- [How to add additional metadata fields in the authority cache that are not related to ORCID?](#)(see page 386)
- [What happens to data if another authority control was already present?](#)(see page 387)
- [Where can I find the URL that is used to lookup ORCIDs?](#)(see page 387)

#### **ORCID Authority can only pull data from ORCID and link it to a DSpace metadata field**

ORCID Authority allows you to link up DSpace metadata fields (added during the submission process) to a person's ORCID identifier. The main use case for this feature is to allow you to link author metadata fields to their ORCID identifier. This is a very basic ORCID integration that has existed since DSpace 5.x.

If you are looking for ORCID Authentication & the ability to synchronize data from DSpace to an ORCID profile, then you should be using the [ORCID Integration](#)(see page 426) feature instead.

#### Introduction

The ORCID integration adds ORCID compatibility to the existing solutions for [Authority control in DSpace](#)<sup>398</sup>. String names of authors are still being stored in DSpace metadata. The authority key field is leveraged to store a uniquely generated internal ID that links the author to more extended metadata, including the ORCID ID and alternative author names.

This extended metadata is stored and managed in a dedicated SOLR index, the DSpace authority cache.

#### Use case and high level benefits

The vision behind this project consists of the following two aspects:

##### Lowering the threshold to adopt ORCID for the members of the DSpace community

ORCID's API has enabled developers across the globe to build points of integration between ORCID and third party applications. Up until today, this meant that members of the DSpace community were still required to implement front-end and back-end modifications to the DSpace source code in order to leverage these APIs. As DSpace aims to provide turnkey Institutional Repository functionality, the platform is expected to provide more functionality out of the box. Only an elite selection of members in the DSpace community has software development resources readily available to implement this kind of functionality. By contributing a solution directly to the core DSpace codebase, this threshold to adopt ORCID functionality in DSpace repositories is effectively lowered. The ultimate goal is to allow easy adoption of ORCID without customization of the DSpace software, by allowing repository administrators to enable or disable functionality by means of user friendly configuration.

##### Address generic use cases with appealing end user functionality

This proposal aims to provide user friendly features for both repository administrators as well as non- technical end users of the system. The addition of ORCID functionality to DSpace should not come at the cost of making the system more difficult for administrators and end users to use. Scope With this vision in mind, the project partners wanted to tackle the first phases for repository managers of existing DSpace repositories: ensuring that ORCIDs are properly associated with new works entering the system, as well as providing functionality to efficiently batch-update content already existing in the system, with unambiguous author identity information.

---

<sup>398</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=25468046>

## Enabling the ORCID authority control

If you wish to enable this feature, some changes are required to the `local.cfg` file. The first step is to activate the authority as a valid option for authority control, this is done by adding/setting an additional plugin in the `plugin.named.org399.dspace.content.authority.ChoiceAuthority` property. An example of this can be found below.

### authority.cfg

```
plugin.named.org.dspace.content.authority.ChoiceAuthority = \
 org.dspace.content.authority.SolrAuthority = SolrAuthorAuthority
```

The feature relies on the following configuration parameters in `authority.cfg` and `solrauthority.cfg`. To activate the default settings it suffices to remove the comment hashes ("#") for the following lines. See the section at the bottom of this page what these parameters mean exactly and how you can tweak the configuration.

```
This setting should already be specified in your solrauthority.cfg
solr.authority.server=${solr.server}/${solr.multicorePrefix}authority

These settings can be found in your authority.cfg (or could be added to local.cfg)
choices.plugin.dc.contributor.author = SolrAuthorAuthority
choices.presentation.dc.contributor.author = authorLookup
authority.controlled.dc.contributor.author = true
authority.author.indexer.field.1=dc.contributor.author
```

The final part of configuration is to add the authority consumer in front of the list of event consumers (in `dspace.cfg` or `local.cfg`). Add "authority" in front of the list as displayed below.

```
event.dispatcher.default.consumers = authority, versioning, discovery, eperson
```

## Importing existing authors & keeping the index up to date

When first enabled the authority index will be empty, to populate the authority index run the following script:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace index-authority
```

This will iterate over every metadata under authority control and create records of them in the authority index. The metadata without an authority key will each be updated with an auto generated authority key. These will not be matched in any way with other existing records. The metadata with an authority key that does not already exist in the index will be indexed with those authority keys. The metadata with an authority key that already exist in the index will be re-indexed the same way. These records remain unchanged.

---

<sup>399</sup> <http://plugin.named.org>

#### Different possible use cases for Index-authority script

Metadata value WITHOUT authority key in metadata

“Luyten, Bram” is present in the metadata without any authority key.

GOAL: “Luyten, Bram” gets added in the cache ONCE

All occurrences of “Luyten, Bram” in the DSpace item metadata will become linked with the same generated uid.

Metadata that already has an authority key from an external source (NOT auto-generated by DSpace)

“Snyers, Antoine” is present with authority key “u12345”

The old authority key needs to be preserved in the item metadata and duplicated in the cache.

“u12345” will be copied to the authority cache and used as the authority key there.

Metadata that has already a new dspace generated uid authority key

Item metadata already contains an author with name “Haak, Danielle” and a uid in the authority field

3dda2571-6be8-4102-a47b-5748531ae286

This uid is preserved and no new record is being created in the authority index.

Processing on records in the authority cache

Running this script again will update the index and keep the index clean. For example if an author occurs in a single item and that item is deleted the script will need to be run again to remove it from the index. When run again it will remove all records that no longer have a link to existing authors in the database.

#### Submission of new DSpace items - Author lookup

The submissions forms have not changed much. The only thing you can notice is an extra button next to the input fields for the author names. Next to the Add button, which is common for all repeatable fields, there is the Lookup & Add button.

Note: the below screenshots are from DSpace 6.x. They have not yet been updated for 7.x or above.



## Item submission

Describe Describe Access Upload Review CC License License Complete

### Describe Item

#### Authors:

Last name, e.g. *Smith*

First name(s) + "Jr", e.g. *Donald Jr*

Add

Lookup

Enter the names of the authors of this item below.

×
**Person lookup**

Search:

Name	
<b>Hancock, Roeland</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ last name: Hancock</li> <li>◦ first name: Roeland</li> <li>◦ orcid: 0000-0001-8932-6872</li> </ul>
<i>Hancock, Yvette</i>	
<i>Hancock, Katy</i>	
<i>Kleiner-Hancock, Heather</i>	<b>Items in this repository:</b> <a href="#">view items</a>
<i>Hancock, Mark</i>	<input type="button" value="Add This Person"/>
<i>Hancock, Steven</i>	
<i>Hancock, Karen</i>	
<i>Hancock, Kenneth</i>	
<i>Hancock, Travis</i>	
<i>HANCOCK, GALEN</i>	

**Showing 10 results.**

It's by clicking on that button that the Look-up User Interface appears. If an author name was filled in but not added yet, the Lookup User Interface will immediately perform a search for that name. Otherwise the search field remains empty and a list of known authors is displayed. The list of authors is updated as you type in the search box.

Authors that already appear somewhere in the repository are differentiated from the authors that have been retrieved from ORCID.

The authors retrieved from ORCID have their name italicized and they're listed after the authors that are found in the repository.

Name
Fingert, John
Chamberland, John
John Hunter, John Hunter
Coupland, John
Finnegan, John
wilbanks, john
Roemer, John
Wagner, John
Sproule, John
Volkman, John
<i>Vuchetich, John</i>
<i>Gales, John</i>

Click on one of these names to see more information about them. The message "There's no one selected" will vanish, making room for the author's information. The available information can vary: Authors imported from ORCID have an orcid where the others do not. Authors that have been added without look-up only show their last name and first name.

To add an author from the Look-up User Interface, you select the author in the list and then you click on the "Add This Person" button.

To add an author without look-up, you don't go through the Look-up User Interface. Instead you simply use the "Add" button in the submissions forms.

#### Admin Edit Item

In the edit metadata page, under the values for the dc.contributor.author fields, an extra line shows the author ID together with a lock icon and a Lookup button. The author ID cannot be changed manually. However the Lookup button will help you change the author name and ID at the same time.

Clicking the Lookup button brings back the Lookup User Interface. This works just the same way as in the submission forms.

## Metadata

Remove	Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	dc.contributor.author	Dutey, Jean  263117b9-c40d-42e7-8 <input type="button" value="Lookup"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	d	
<input type="checkbox"/>	d	
<input type="checkbox"/>	d	

### Person lookup

Search:

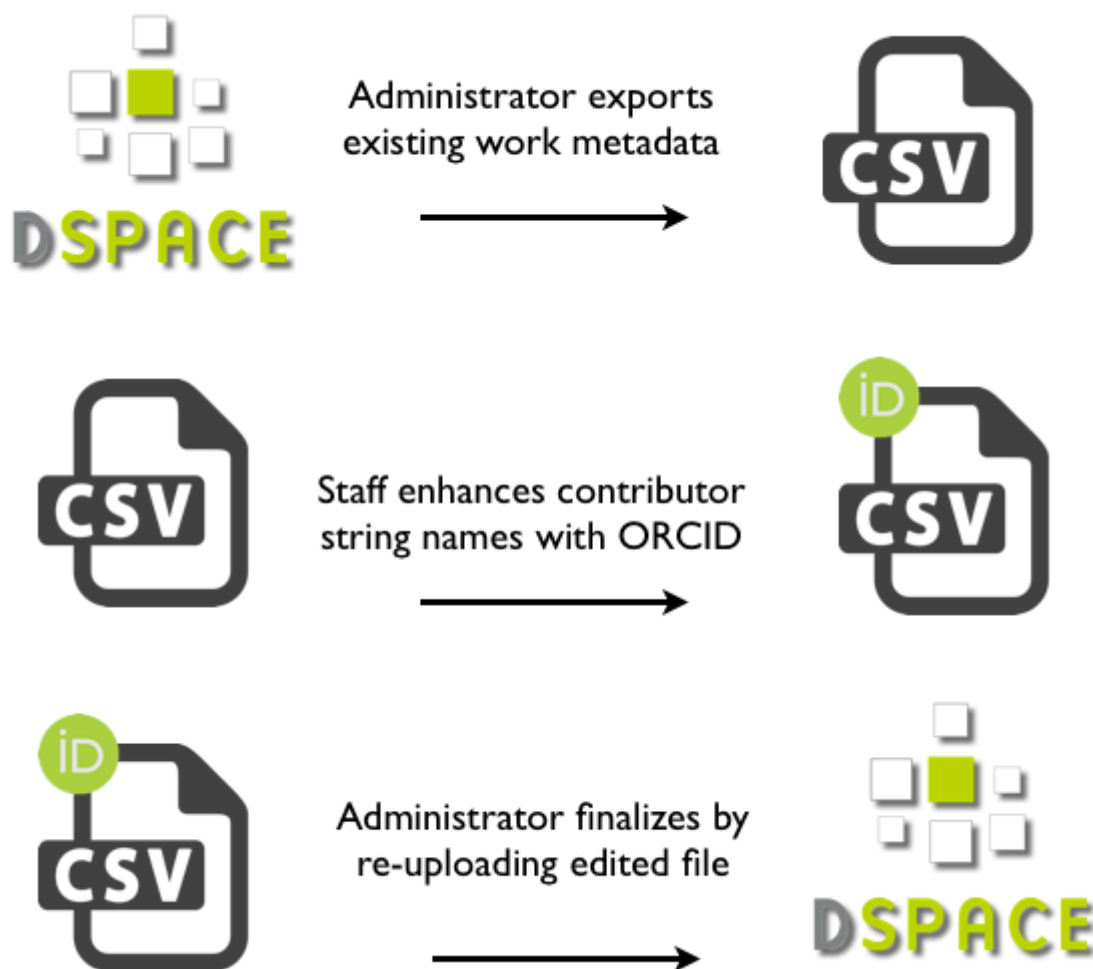
Name	
Dutey, Jean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>last name: Dutey</li><li>first name: Jean</li></ul> <p>Items in this repository: <a href="#">view items</a></p> <input type="button" value="Add This Person"/>

Showing 1 results.

Editing existing items using Batch CSV Editing

Instructions on how to use the Batch CSV Editing are found [on the Batch Metadata Editing documentation page](#)<sup>400</sup>.

<sup>400</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC5x/Batch+Metadata+Editing>



ORCID Integration is provided through the Batch CSV Editing feature with an extra available headers "ORCID:dc.contributor.author". The usual CSV headers only contain the metadata fields: e.g. "dc.contributor.author". In addition to the traditional header, another dc.contributor.author header can be added with the "ORCID:" prefix. The values in this column are supposed to be ORCID IDs.

id	collection	dc.title	ORCID:dc.contributor.author	dc.contributor.author
+	123456789/2	ORCID CSV Import example	0000-0001-8932-6872  0000-0001-9152-849X	Smith, Benjamin

For each of the ORCID authors a lookup will be done and their names will be added to the metadata. All the non-ORCID authors will be added as well. The authority keys and solr records are added when the reported changes are applied.

**Notice**  
Upload successful

## Import Metadata

Pending changes are listed below for review

**New item**

- Add to owning collection      123456789/2 (uiop)
- Add: (dc.title)                    ORCID CSV import example
- Add: (dc.contributor.author)    Smith, Benjamin
- Add: (dc.contributor.author)    Hancock, Roeland
- Add: (dc.contributor.author)    Vandekerckhove, Bram

Apply changes
Return

Storage of related metadata

ORCID authorities not only link a digital identifier to a name. It regroups a load of metadata going from alternative names and email addresses to keywords about their works and much more. The metadata is obtained by querying the ORCID web services. In order to avoid querying the ORCID web services every time, all these related metadata is gathered in a "metadata authority cache" that DSpace can access directly.

In practice the cache is provided by an apache solr server. When a look-up is made and an author is chosen that is not yet in the cache, a record is created from an ORCID profile and added to the cache with the list of related metadata. The value of the Dublin Core metadata is based on the first and last name as they are set in the ORCID profile. The authority key for this value links directly to the solr document's id. DSpace does not provide a way to edit these records manually.

String representation of the name in standard Dublin Core metadata enhanced with DSpace compliant authority id

Remove	Name	Value	Language
<input type="checkbox"/>	dc:contributor.author	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Haak, Laurel</div> <div style="font-size: small; margin-top: 5px;">fb4a91cb-3383-4044-a1ba-bf  <span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 1px 5px;">Lookup</span></div>	

```

<doc>
 <date name="creation-date">2013-12-23T20:51:03.714Z</date>
 <date name="last-modified-date">2013-12-23T20:51:03.714Z</date>
 <bool name="deleted">>false</bool>
 <str name="field">dc_contributor_author</str>
 <str name="first_name">Laurel</str>
 <str name="last_name">Haak</str>
 <str name="orcid_id">0000-0001-5109-3700</str>
 <str name="id">fb4a91cb-3383-4044-a1ba-b6be57b6547d</str>
 <arr name="name_variant">
 <str>Laurel L Haak</str>
 <str>L Haak, Laure Haak</str>
 <str>L. L. Haak</str>
 <str>Laurela L Häka</str>
 </arr>
</doc>

```

Second level “metadata authority cache” stores extended contributor metadata, including ORCID ID and alternative names

The information in the authority cache can be updated by running the following command line operation:

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace dsrun org.dspace.authority.UpdateAuthorities</code>
Arguments	description
-i	update specific solr records with the given internal ids (comma-separated)
-h	prints this help message

This will iterate over every solr record currently in use (unless the -i argument is provided), query the ORCID web service for the latest data and update the information in the cache. If configured, the script will also update the metadata of the items in the repository where applicable.

The configuration property can be set in `config/modules/solrauthority.cfg`, or overridden in your `local.cfg` (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)).

```
solrauthority.auto-update-items = false | true
```

When set to true and this script is run, if an authority record's information is updated the whole repository will be scanned for this authority. Every metadata field with this authority key will be updated with the value of the updated authority record.

## Configuration

In the [Enabling the ORCID authority control](#)(see page 0) section, you have been told to add this block of configuration.

### **NOTE: for DSpace 6x you can use local.cfg for these**

For all of the configuration options described below, you can use either `dspace.cfg` or `local.cfg`. Either will work. It is possible that, when you compile your code with Maven, and you have tests enabled, your build will fail. DSpace unit tests utilize parts of `dspace.cfg`, and the configuration options you will utilize below are known to cause unit test errors. The easiest way to avoid this situation is to use the `local.cfg` file.

```
solr.authority.server=${solr.server}/authority
choices.plugin.dc.contributor.author = SolrAuthorAuthority
choices.presentation.dc.contributor.author = authorLookup
authority.controlled.dc.contributor.author = true
authority.author.indexer.field.1=dc.contributor.author
```

The ORCID Integration feature is an extension on the authority control in DSpace. Most of these properties are extensively explained [on the Authority Control of Metadata Values documentation page](#)<sup>401</sup>. These will be revisited but first we cover the properties that have been newly added.

- The **solr.authority.server** is the url to the solr core. Usually this would be on the **solr.server** next to the oai, search and statistics cores.
- **authority.author.indexer.field.1** and the subsequent increments configure which fields will be indexed in the authority cache. However before adding extra fields into the solr cache, please read the section about [Adding additional fields under ORCID](#)(see page 0).

That's it for the novelties. Moving on to the generic authority control properties:

- With the **authority.controlled** property every metadata field that needs to be authority controlled is configured. This involves every type of authority control, not only the fields for ORCID integration.
- The **choices.plugin** should be configured for each metadata field under authority control. Setting the value on SolrAuthorAuthority tells DSpace to use the solr authority cache for this metadatafield, cfr. [Storage of related metadata](#)(see page 0).
- The **choices.presentation** should be configured for each metadata field as well. The traditional values for this property are `select | suggest | lookup`. A new value, `authorLookup`, has been added to be used in combination with the SolrAuthorAuthority choices plugin. While the other values can still be used, the `authorLookup` provides a richer user interface in the form of a popup on the submission page.
- The browse indexes need to point to the new authority-controlled index: `webui.browse.index.2 = author:metadata:dc.contributor.*,dc.creator:text` should become **webui.browse.index.2 = author:metadataAuthority:dc.contributor.author:authority**
- More existing configuration properties are available but their values are independent of this feature and their default values are usually fine: **choices.closed**, **authority.required**, **authority.minconfidence**.

For the cache update script, one property can be set in `config/modules/solrauthority.cfg`:

```
auto-update-items = false | true
```

The default value for when the property is missing is false.

The final part of configuration is to add the authority consumer in front of the list of event consumers. Add "authority" in front of the list as displayed below.

```
event.dispatcher.default.consumers = authority, versioning, discovery, eperson, harvester
```

Without the consumer there is no automatic indexing of the authority cache and the metadata will not even have authority keys.

Changes to the configuration always require a server restart before they're in effect.

### Adding additional fields under ORCID

Other metadata fields besides "dc.contributor.author" can benefit from the ORCID authority control at the same time. Here is an example of how to get the same ORCID functionality for the "dc.contributor.editor" metadata field assuming that "dc.contributor.author" is already configured correctly. It can be achieved by modifying configuration files only.

<sup>401</sup> [https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Authority\\_Control\\_of\\_Metadata\\_Values](https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Authority_Control_of_Metadata_Values)

First add the same configuration fields that have been added for the "dc.contributor.author"

```
choices.plugin.dc.contributor.editor = SolrAuthorAuthority
choices.presentation.dc.contributor.editor = authorLookup
authority.controlled.dc.contributor.editor = true

authority.author.indexer.field.1=dc.contributor.author
authority.author.indexer.field.2=dc.contributor.editor
```

This is enough to get the look-up interface on the submission page and on the edit metadata page. The authority keys will be added and indexed with the information from orcid just as it happens with the Authors.

But you're not completely done yet, There is one more configuration step. Because now when adding new editors in the metadata that are not retrieved through the external look-up, their first and last name will not be displayed in the look-up interface next time you look for them.

To fix this, open the file at `config/spring/api/orcid-authority-services.xml` and find this spring bean:

```
<bean name="AuthorityTypes" class="org.dspace.authority.AuthorityTypes">
 <property name="types">
 <list>
 <bean class="org.dspace.authority.orcid.Orcidv3AuthorityValue"/>
 <bean class="org.dspace.authority.PersonAuthorityValue"/>
 </list>
 </property>
 <property name="fieldDefaults">
 <map>
 <entry key="dc_contributor_author">
 <bean class="org.dspace.authority.PersonAuthorityValue"/>
 </entry>
 </map>
 </property>
</bean>
```

The map inside the "fieldDefaults" property needs an additional entry for the editor field:

```
<entry key="dc_contributor_editor">
 <bean class="org.dspace.authority.PersonAuthorityValue"/>
</entry>
```

With this last change everything is set up to work correctly. The rest of this configuration file is meant for JAVA developers that wish to provide [integration with other systems beside ORCID](#)(see page 0). Developers that wish to display other fields than first and last name can also have a look in that section.

**Note:** Each metadata field has a separate set of authority records. Authority keys are not shared between different metadata fields. E. g. multiple dc.contributor.author can have the same authority key and point to the same authority record in the cache. But when an ORCID is chosen for a dc.contributor.editor field, a separate record is made in the cache. Both records are updated from the same source and will contain the same information. The



difference is that when performing a look-up of a person that has been introduced as an authority for an author field but not yet as an editor, it will show as record that is not yet present in the repository cache.

### Integration with other systems beside ORCID

The authority cache and look-up functionality can be extended to use other sources than ORCID or to show more information in the look-up interface. However some JAVA development is necessary for this. Specific instructions can be found in the readme file of the [org.dspace.authority package](#)<sup>402</sup>.

### FAQ

Which information from ORCID is currently indexed in the authority cache?

Here is a breakdown of the fields stored in the solr cache.

The system/dspace related fields are: *id, field, value, deleted, creation\_date, last\_modified\_date, authority\_type*.

The fields with data coming directly from ORCID are: *first\_name, last\_name, name\_variant, orcid\_id, label\_researcher\_url, label\_keyword, label\_external\_identifier, label\_biography, label\_country*. The field *all\_labels* contains all the values from the other fields starting with "label\_".

How can I index additional fields in the authority cache?

There is currently no configuration to control which fields are indexed. The only way to achieve this is to modify the source code.

List of the files at work for this job:

`config/spring/api/orcid-authority-services.xml` : OrcidSource contains the URL for orcid's REST API.

`org.dspace.authority.orcid.Orcid` makes the REST call

+ `org.dspace.authority.orcid.xml.XMLtoBio` converts the received XML to a java object (Bio).

+ `org.dspace.authority.orcid.model.Bio`

+ `org.dspace.authority.orcid.OrcidAuthorityValue#create(org.dspace.authority.orcid.model.Bio)` inserts all the values from Bio into the AuthorityValue subclass.

+ `org.dspace.authority.orcid.OrcidAuthorityValue#getSolrInputDocument` defines what's included in solr.

The files preceded with a '+' would be necessary to modify to add more info into the cache.

How can I use the information stored in the authority cache?

The look-up UI is currently the only place this information is sent to. However just a limited number of fields are sent. The place in the source code to modify to get more fields there is

`org.dspace.authority.orcid.OrcidAuthorityValue#choiceSelectMap`. This is also documented in [the readme of the org.dspace.authority package](#).<sup>403</sup>

How to add additional metadata fields in the authority cache that are not related to ORCID?

Make the same configuration step as for [adding additional fields under ORCID](#)(see page 0). Currently the ORCID suggestions cannot be turned off for specific fields, that would require custom code.

<sup>402</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/authority>

<sup>403</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/authority>

What happens to data if another authority control was already present?

As long as the metadata does not get indexed, there will be no changes. However every time any metadata of an item is modified, the metadata under authority control for that item will be re-indexed. When that happens a record will be inserted in the solr cache. That record's ID will be the authority key of the metadata. This can be done for all metadata at once with the index-authority script.

In short: authority keys that exist prior to enabling the solrauthority are kept. They just won't show in the look-up until they are indexed.

Where can I find the URL that is used to lookup ORCIDs?

It is found in the `config/spring/api/orcid-authority-services.xml` configuration file. Look for the `<bean name="OrcidSource">`, which is initialized with a URL of <http://pub.orcid.org>

## 4.7.2 Batch Metadata Editing

- [Batch Metadata Editing Tool](#)(see page 387)
  - [Export Function](#)(see page 387)
    - [Web Interface Export](#)(see page 387)
    - [Command Line Export](#)(see page 387)
  - [Import Function](#)(see page 389)
    - [Web Interface Import](#)(see page 389)
    - [Command Line Import](#)(see page 390)
  - [CSV Format](#)(see page 390)
    - [File Structure](#)(see page 390)
  - [Editing the CSV](#)(see page 391)
    - [Editing Collection Membership](#)(see page 393)
    - [Adding Metadata-Only Items](#)(see page 393)
    - [Deleting Metadata](#)(see page 393)
    - [Performing 'actions' on items](#)(see page 393)
    - [Migrating Data or Exchanging data](#)(see page 393)
    - [Common Issues](#)(see page 393)
      - [Metadata values in CSV export seem to have duplicate columns](https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/TechnicalFAQ#TechnicalFAQ-MetadatatavaluesinCSVexportseemtohavetoduplicatecolumns)<https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/TechnicalFAQ#TechnicalFAQ-MetadatatavaluesinCSVexportseemtohavetoduplicatecolumns>(see page 393)
      - [DSpace responds with "No changes were detected" when CSV is uploaded](#)(see page 393)

### 4.7.2.1 Batch Metadata Editing Tool

DSpace provides a batch metadata editing tool. The batch editing tool is able to produce a comma delimited file in the CSV format. The batch editing tool facilitates the user to perform the following:

- Batch editing of metadata (e.g. perform an external spell check)
- Batch additions of metadata (e.g. add an abstract to a set of items, add controlled vocabulary such as LCSH)
- Batch find and replace of metadata values (e.g. correct misspelled surname across several records)
- Mass move items between collections
- Mass deletion, withdrawal, or re-instatement of items
- Enable the batch addition of new items (without bitstreams) via a CSV file
- Re-order the values in a list (e.g. authors)

For information about configuration options for the Batch Metadata Editing tool, see [Batch Metadata Editing Configuration](#)(see page 394)

## Export Function

### Web Interface Export

Batch metadata exports (to CSV) can be performed from the Administrative menu:

- Login as an Administrative user
- In Sidebase, select "Export" → "Metadata". Type in the Community/Collection name.
  - Alternatively, browse to the Community or Collection you wish to export, and then go to "Export" → "Metadata". That Community/Collection will be preselected.
- Click "Export". A new Process will be created (in "Processes" menu). Once completed, download the resulting CSV.

#### DSpace 7.0 does not yet support all features

In DSpace 7.0, it is not possible to export to CSV based on search results. This feature existed in 6.x, and it is scheduled to be restored in a later 7.x release (currently 7.1). See [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>404</sup>.

Added in DSpace 7.3:

- **Export search results to a CSV** (*similar to 6.x*). When logged in as an Administrator, after performing a search a new "Export search results as CSV" button appears. Clicking it will export the metadata of all items in your search results to a CSV. This CSV can then be used to perform batch metadata updates (based on the items in your search results). - [Release Notes](#)(see page 34)

Please see below documentation for more information on the [CSV format](#)(see page 390) and actions that can be performed by [editing the CSV](#)(see page 391).

### Command Line Export

The following table summarizes the basics.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-export</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.app.bulkedit.MetadataExport</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms):	Description
<code>-f</code> or <code>--file</code>	Required. The filename of the resulting CSV.
<code>-i</code> or <code>--id</code>	The Item, Collection, or Community handle or Database ID to export. If not specified, <b>all</b> items will be exported.

<sup>404</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

<code>-a</code> or <code>--all</code>	Include all the metadata fields that are not normally changed (e.g. provenance) or those fields you configured in the <code>[dspace]/config/modules/bulkedit.cfg</code> to be ignored on export.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Display the help page.

To run the batch editing exporter, at the command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-export -f name_of_file.csv -i 1023/24
```

Example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-export -f /batch_export/col_14.csv -i /1989.1/24
```

In the above example we have requested that a collection, assigned handle '1989.1/24' export the entire collection to the file 'col\_14.csv' found in the '/batch\_export' directory.

Please see below documentation for more information on the [CSV format](#)(see page 390) and actions that can be performed by [editing the CSV](#)(see page 391) .

## Import Function

### Importing large CSV files

It is not recommended to import CSV files of more than 1,000 lines (i.e. 1,000 items). When importing files larger than this, it may be difficult for an Administrator to accurately verify the changes that the import tool states it will make. In addition, depending on the memory available to the DSpace site, large files may cause 'Out Of Memory' errors part way through the import process.

## Web Interface Import

Batch metadata imports (from CSV) can be performed from the Administrative menu:

- First, complete all [editing of the CSV](#)(see page 391) and save your changes
- Login as an Administrative User
- In sidebar, select "Import" → "Metadata" and drag & drop the CSV file

### DSpace 7.0 does not yet support all features

In DSpace 7.0, metadata import will occur immediately & results will be reported. In 6.x, after uploading the CSV, you were first presented with a summary of the changes that were to be performed, allowing you to review and choose whether to apply them or cancel. This "preview" feature will be restored in a later 7.x release (currently 7.1), see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>405</sup>.

Added in DSpace 7.3:

<sup>405</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

- **Validate a Batch Metadata CSV before applying changes** (*similar to 6.x*). When uploading a CSV for batch updates (using "Import" menu), a new "Validate Only" option is selected by default. When selected, the uploaded CSV will only be validated & you'll receive a report of the detected changes in the CSV. This allows you to verify the changes are correct before applying them. (NOTE: applying the changes requires re-submitting the CSV with the "Validate Only" option deselected) - [Release Notes](#)(see page 34)

## Command Line Import

The following table summarizes the basics.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-import</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.app.bulkedit.MetadataImport</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms:	Description
<code>-f</code> or <code>--file</code>	Required. The filename of the CSV file to load.
<code>-s</code> or <code>--silent</code>	Silent mode. The import function does not prompt you to make sure you wish to make the changes.
<code>-e</code> or <code>--email</code>	The email address of the user. This is only required when adding new items.
<code>-w</code> or <code>--workflow</code>	When adding new items, the program will queue the items up to use the Collection Workflow processes.
<code>-n</code> or <code>--notify</code>	when adding new items using a workflow, send notification emails.
<code>-t</code> or <code>--template</code>	When adding new items, use the Collection template, if it exists.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Display the brief help page.

Silent Mode should be used carefully. It is possible (and probable) that you can overlay the wrong data and cause irreparable damage to the database.

To run the batch importer, at the command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-import -f name_of_file.csv
```

## Example

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-import -f /dImport/col_14.csv
```

If you are wishing to upload new metadata **without** bitstreams, at the command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace metadata-import -f /dImport/new_file.csv -e joe@user.com -w -n -t
```

In the above example we threw in all the arguments. This would add the metadata and engage the workflow, notification, and templates to all be applied to the items that are being added.

## CSV Format

The CSV (comma separated values) files that this tool can import and export abide by the [RFC4180](http://www.rfc4180.org/)<sup>406</sup> CSV format. This means that new lines, and embedded commas can be included by wrapping elements in double quotes. Double quotes can be included by using two double quotes. The code does all this for you, and any good csv editor such as Excel or OpenOffice will comply with this convention.

All CSV files are also in UTF-8 encoding in order to support all languages.

## File Structure

The first row of the CSV must define the metadata values that the rest of the CSV represents. **The first column must always be "id" which refers to the item's internal database ID.** All other columns are optional. The other columns contain the dublin core metadata fields that the data is to reside.

A typical heading row looks like:

```
id,collection,dc.title,dc.contributor,dc.date.issued,etc,etc,etc.
```

Subsequent rows in the csv file relate to items. A typical row might look like:

```
350,2292,Item title,"Smith, John",2008
```

If you want to store multiple values for a given metadata element, they can be separated with the double-pipe '|' (or another character that you defined in your `modules/bulkedit.cfg` file). For example:

```
Horses| |Dogs| |Cats
```

Elements are stored in the database in the order that they appear in the CSV file. You can use this to order elements where order may matter, such as authors, or controlled vocabulary such as Library of Congress Subject Headings.

---

<sup>406</sup> <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4180.txt>

## Editing the CSV

### **If you are editing with Microsoft Excel, be sure to open the CSV in Unicode/UTF-8 encoding**

By default, Microsoft Excel may not correctly open the CSV in Unicode/UTF-8 encoding. This means that special characters may be improperly displayed and also can be "corrupted" during re-import of the CSV. You need to tell Excel this CSV is Unicode, by importing it as follows. *(Please note these instructions are valid for MS Office 2007 and 2013. Other Office versions may vary)*

- First, open Excel (with an empty sheet/workbook open)
- Select "Data" tab
- Click "From Text" button (in the "External Data" section)
- Select your CSV file
- Wizard Step 1
  - Choose "Delimited" option
  - Start import at row: 1
  - In the "File origin" selectbox, select "65001 : Unicode (UTF-8)"
    - NOTE: these encoding options are sorted alphabetically, so "Unicode (UTF-8)" appears near the bottom of the list.
  - Click Next
- Wizard Step 2
  - Select "Comma" as the only delimiter
  - Click Next
- Wizard Step 3
  - Select "Text" as the "Column data format" *(Unfortunately, this must be done for each column individually in Excel)*
    - At a minimum, you MUST ensure all date columns (e.g. dc.date.issued) are treated as "Text" so that Excel doesn't autoconvert DSpace's YYYY-MM-DD format into MM/DD/YYYY
    - To avoid such autoconversion, it is safest to ensure each column is treated as "Text". Unfortunately, this means selecting each column one-by-one and choosing "Text" as the "Column data format".
  - Click Finish
- Choose whether to open CSV in the existing sheet or a new one

### **Tips to Simplify the Editing Process**

When editing a CSV, here's a couple of basic tips to keep in mind:

1. The "id" column MUST remain intact. This column also must always have a value in it.
2. To simplify the CSV, you can simply remove any columns you do NOT wish to edit (except for "id" column, see #1). Don't worry, removing the entire column won't delete metadata (see #3)
3. When importing a CSV file, the importer will *overlay* the metadata onto what is already in the repository to determine the differences. It *only* acts on the contents of the CSV file, rather than on the complete item metadata. This means that the CSV file that is exported can be manipulated quite substantially before being re-imported. Rows (items) or Columns (metadata elements) can be removed and will be ignored.
  - a. For example, if you only want to edit "dc.subject", you can remove ALL columns EXCEPT for "id" and "dc.subject" so that you can just manipulate the "dc.subject" field. On import, DSpace will see that you've only included the "dc.subject" field in your CSV and therefore will only update the "dc.subject" metadata field for any items listed in that CSV.

4. Because removing an entire column does NOT delete metadata value(s), if you actually wish to delete a metadata value you should leave the column intact, and simply clear out the appropriate row's value (in that column).

### Editing Collection Membership

Items can be moved between collections by editing the collection handles in the 'collection' column. Multiple collections can be included. The first collection is the 'owning collection'. The owning collection is the primary collection that the item appears in. Subsequent collections (separated by the field separator) are treated as mapped collections. These are the same as using the map item functionality in the DSpace user interface. To move items between collections, or to edit which other collections they are mapped to, change the data in the collection column.

### Adding Metadata-Only Items

New metadata-only items can be added to DSpace using the batch metadata importer. To do this, enter a plus sign '+' in the first 'id' column. The importer will then treat this as a new item. If you are using the command line importer, you will need to use the -e flag to specify the user email address or id of the user that is registered as submitting the items.

### Deleting Metadata

It is possible to perform metadata deletes across the board of certain metadata fields from an exported file. For example, let's say you have used keywords (dc.subject) that need to be removed *en masse*. You would leave the column (dc.subject) intact, but remove the data in the corresponding rows.

### Performing 'actions' on items

It is possible to perform certain 'actions' on items. This is achieved by adding an 'action' column to the CSV file (after the id, and collection columns). There are three possible actions:

1. **'expunge'** This permanently deletes an item. Use with care! This action must be enabled by setting 'allowexpunge = true' in `modules/bulkedit.cfg`
2. **'withdraw'** This withdraws an item from the archive, but does not delete it.
3. **'reinstate'** This reinstates an item that has previously been withdrawn.

If an action makes no change (for example, asking to withdraw an item that is already withdrawn) then, just like metadata that has not changed, this will be ignored.

### Migrating Data or Exchanging data

It is possible that you have data in one Dublin Core (DC) element and you wish to really have it in another. An example would be that your staff have input Library of Congress Subject Headings in the Subject field (dc.subject) instead of the LCSH field (dc.subject.lcsh). Follow these steps and your data is migrated upon import:

1. Insert a new column. The first row should be the new metadata element. (We will refer to it as the TARGET)
2. Select the column/rows of the data you wish to change. (We will refer to it as the SOURCE)
3. Cut and paste this data into the new column (TARGET) you created in Step 1.
4. Leave the column (SOURCE) you just cut and pasted from empty. Do not delete it.



## Common Issues

### Metadata values in CSV export seem to have duplicate columns<sup>407</sup>

DSpace responds with "No changes were detected" when CSV is uploaded

Unfortunately, this response may be caused in many ways

- It's possible the CSV was not saved properly after editing. Check that the edits are in the CSV, and that there were no backend errors in the DSpace logs (which would be an indication of an invalid or corrupted CSV file)
- Depending on the version of DSpace, you may be encountering this known bug with processing linebreaks in CSV files: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/6600>
- If you are setting a new embargo date in the CSV, ensure that the embargo lift date is a future date. It's been reported that past dates may cause DSpace to ignore item changes.

### 4.7.2.2 Batch Metadata Editing Configuration

The [Batch Metadata Editing Tool](#) (see page 387) allows the administrator to extract from the DSpace database a set of records for editing via a CSV file. It provides an easier way of editing large collections.

A full list of all available Batch Metadata Editing Configurations:

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/bulkedit.cfg</code>
Property:	<code>bulkedit.valueseparator</code>
Example Value:	<code>bulkedit.valueseparator =   </code>
Informational note	The delimiter used to separate values within a single field. For example, this will place the double pipe between multiple authors appearing in one record (Smith, William    Johannsen, Susan). This applies to any metadata field that appears more than once in a record. The user can change this to another character.
Property:	<code>bulkedit.fieldseparator</code>
Example Value:	<code>bulkedit.fieldseparator = ,</code>
Informational note	The delimiter used to separate fields (defaults to a comma for CSV). Again, the user could change it something like '\$'. If you wish to use a tab, semicolon, or hash (#) sign as the delimiter, set the value to be <code>tab</code> , <code>semicolon</code> or <code>hash</code> .
	<pre>bulkedit.fieldseparator = tab</pre>

<sup>407</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/TechnicalFAQ#TechnicalFAQ-MetadatavaluesinCSVexportseemtohaveduplicatecolumns>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/bulkedit.cfg</code>
Property:	<code>bulkedit.authorityseparator</code>
Example Value:	<code>bulkedit.authorityseparator = ::</code>
Informational note	The delimiter used to separate authority data (defaults to a double colon ::)
Property:	<code>bulkedit.gui-item-limit</code>
Example Value:	<code>bulkedit.gui-item-limit = 20</code>
Informational note	When using the WEBUI, this sets the limit of the number of items allowed to be edited in one processing. There is no limit when using the CLI.
Property:	<code>bulkedit.ignore-on-export</code>
Example Value:	<pre>bulkedit.ignore-on-export = dc.date.accessioned, \                              dc.date.available, \                              dc.date.updated,                              dc.description.provenance</pre>
Informational note	Metadata elements to exclude when exporting via the user interfaces, or when using the command line version and not using the -a (all) option.
Property:	<code>bulkedit.allowexpunge</code>
Example Value:	<code>bulkedit.allowexpunge = false</code>
Informational note	Should the 'action' column allow the 'expunge' method. By default this is set to false
Property	<code>bulkedit.allow-bulk-deletion</code>
Example Value:	<code>bulkedit.allow-bulk-deletion = dspace.agreements.end-user</code>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/modules/bulkedit.cfg</code>
Informational note	Comma separated list of metadata fields that can be deleted in bulk using the 'metadata-deletion' script. By default only the 'dspace.agreements.end-user' field can be deleted in bulk, as doing so allows an Administrator to force all users to re-review the End User Agreement on their next login. However, you may choose to enable additional fields. Keep in mind, any fields listed here may be batch deleted from the Processes UI & such metadata deletions cannot be undone.

### 4.7.3 DOI Digital Object Identifier

- [Persistent Identifier](#)(see page 396)
- [DOI Registration Agencies](#)(see page 396)
  - [Configure DSpace to use the DataCite API](#)(see page 396)
    - [dspace.cfg](#)(see page 396)
    - [Metadata conversion](#)(see page 399)
    - [Identifier Service](#)(see page 400)
    - [DOIs using DataCite and Item Level Versioning](#)(see page 401)
    - [Command Line Interface](#)(see page 401)
    - ['cron' job for asynchronous reservation/registration](#)(see page 403)
    - [Limitations of DataCite DOI support](#)(see page 404)
  - [Configure DSpace to use EZID service for registration of DOIs](#)(see page 404)
    - [Limitations of EZID DOI support](#)(see page 406)
- [Adding support for other Registration Agencies](#)(see page 406)

#### 4.7.3.1 Persistent Identifier

It is good practice to use Persistent Identifiers to address items in a digital repository. There are many different systems for Persistent Identifiers: [Handle](#)<sup>408</sup>, [DOI](#)<sup>409</sup>, [urn:nbn](#)<sup>410</sup>, [purl](#)<sup>411</sup> and many more. It is far out of the scope of this document to discuss the differences of all these systems. For several reasons the Handle System is deeply integrated in DSpace, and DSpace makes intensive use of it. With DSpace 3.0 the [Identifier Service](#)(see page 0) was introduced that makes it possible to also use external identifier services within DSpace.

DOIs are Persistent Identifiers like Handles are, but as many big publishing companies use DOIs they are quite well-known to scientists. Some journals ask for DOIs to link supplemental material whenever an article is submitted. Beginning with DSpace 4.0 it is possible to use DOIs in parallel to the Handle System within DSpace. By "using DOIs" we mean automatic generation, reservation and registration of DOIs for every item that enters the repository. These newly registered DOIs will not be used as a means to build URLs to DSpace items. Items will still rely on handle assignment for the item urls.

408 <http://www.handle.net/>

409 <http://www.doi.org/>

410 <http://tools.ietf.org/search/rfc3188>

411 <http://purl.oclc.org/docs/index.html>

### 4.7.3.2 DOI Registration Agencies

To register a DOI one has to enter into a contract with a DOI registration agency which is a member of the International DOI Foundation. Several such agencies exist. Different DOI registration agencies have different policies. Some of them offer DOI registration especially or only for academic institutions, others only for publishing companies. Most of the registration agencies charge fees for registering DOIs, and all of them have different rules describing for what kind of item a DOI can be registered. To make it quite clear: to register DOIs with DSpace you have to enter into a contract with a DOI registration agency.

[DataCite<sup>412</sup>](http://www.datacite.org) is an international initiative to promote science and research, and a member of the International DOI Foundation. The members of DataCite act as registration agencies for DOIs. Some DataCite members provide their own APIs to reserve and register DOIs; others let their clients use the DataCite API directly. Starting with version 4.0 DSpace supports the administration of DOIs by using the DataCite API directly or by using the API from EZID (which is a service of the University of California Digital Library). This means you can administer DOIs with DSpace if your registration agency allows you to use the DataCite API directly or if your registration agency is EZID.

Configure DSpace to use the DataCite API

If you use a DOI registration agency that lets you use the DataCite API directly, you can follow the instructions below to configure DSpace. In case EZID is your registration agency the configuration of DSpace is documented here: [Configure DSpace to use EZID service for registration of DOIs](#)(see page 404).

To use DOIs within DSpace you have to configure several parts of DSpace:

- enter your DOI prefix and the credentials to use the API from DataCite in `dspace.cfg`,
- configure the script which generates some metadata,
- activate the DOI mechanism within DSpace,
- configure a cron job which transmits the information about new and changed DOIs to the registration agency.

`dspace.cfg`

After you enter into a contract with a DOI registration agency, they'll provide you with user credentials and a DOI prefix. You have to enter these in the `dspace.cfg`. Here is a list of DOI configuration options in `dspace.cfg`:

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg</code>
<b>Property:</b>	<code>identifier.doi.user</code>
Example Value:	<code>identifier.doi.user = user123</code>
Informational Note:	Username to login into the API of the DOI registration agency. You'll get it from your DOI registration agency.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>identifier.doi.password</code>

---

<sup>412</sup> <http://www.datacite.org>

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<code>[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg</code>
Example Value:	<code>identifier.doi.password = top-secret</code>
Informational Note:	Password to login into the API of the DOI registration agency. You'll get it from your DOI registration agency.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>identifier.doi.prefix</code>
Example Value:	<code>identifier.doi.prefix = 10.5072</code>
Informational Note:	The prefix you got from the DOI registration agency. All your DOIs start with this prefix, followed by a slash and a suffix generated from DSpace. The prefix can be compared with a namespace within the DOI system.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>identifier.doi.namespaceseparator</code>
Example Value:	<code>identifier.doi.namespaceseparator = dspace-</code>
Informational Note:	This property is optional. If you want to use the same DOI prefix in several DSpace installations or with other tools that generate and register DOIs it is necessary to use a namespace separator. All the DOIs that DSpace generates will start with the DOI prefix, followed by a slash, the namespace separator and some number generated by DSpace. For example, if your prefix is 10.5072 and you want all DOIs generated by DSpace to look like 10.5072/dspace-1023 you have to set this as in the example value above.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>identifier.doi.resolver</code>
Example Value:	<code>identifier.doi.resolver = <a href="https://doi.org">https://doi.org</a></code>
Informational Note:	URL for the DOI resolver. This will be the stem for generated DOIs. This property is optional, and defaults to the example value above.
<b>Property:</b>	<code>crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher</code>
Example Value:	<code>crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher = My University Press</code>
Informational Note:	The name of the publishing institution or publisher.

<b>Configuration File:</b>	<b>[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg</b>
<b>Property:</b>	crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.hostingInstitution
Example Value:	crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.hostingInstitution = My University
Informational Note:	The name of the organization/institution which hosts this instance of the object. If not configured, it will default to the value of crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher.
<b>Property:</b>	crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.dataManager
Example Value:	crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.dataManager = My University Department of Geology
Informational Note:	If not configured, it will default to the value of crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher.

Please don't use the test prefix 10.5072 with DSpace. The test prefix 10.5072 differs from other prefixes: It answers GET requests for all DOIs even for DOIs that are unregistered. DSpace checks that it mint only unused DOIs and will create an Error: "Register DOI ... failed: DOI\_ALREADY\_EXISTS". Your registration agency can provide you an individual test prefix, that you can use for tests.

#### Metadata conversion

To reserve or register a DOI, DataCite requires that metadata be supplied which describe the object that the DOI addresses. The file [dspace]/config/crosswalks/DIM2DataCite.xsl controls the conversion of metadata from the DSpace internal format into the DataCite format. If you are running a version of DSpace earlier than 6.0, you have to add your DOI prefix, namespace separator and the name of your institution to this file:

#### **\\[dspace\\]/config/crosswalks/DIM2DataCite.xsl**

```
<!--
 Document : DIM2DataCite.xsl
 Created on : January 23, 2013, 1:26 PM
 Author : pbecker, ffuerste
 Description: Converts metadata from DSpace Intermediat Format (DIM) into
 metadata following the DataCite Schema for the Publication and
 Citation of Research Data, Version 2.2
-->
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
 xmlns:dspace="http://www.dspace.org/xmlns/dspace/dim"
 xmlns="http://datacite.org/schema/kernel-2.2"
 version="1.0">
```

```

<!-- CONFIGURATION -->
<!-- Please add your DOI-Prefix and your namespace separator here (e.g. 10.5072-
dspace-). -->
<xsl:variable name="prefix">10.5072-dspace-</xsl:variable>
<!-- The content of the following variable will be used as element publisher. -->
<xsl:variable name="publisher">My University</xsl:variable>
<!-- The content of the following variable will be used as element contributor
with contributorType datamanager. -->
<xsl:variable name="datamanager"><xsl:value-of select="$publisher" /></
xsl:variable>
<!-- The content of the following variable will be used as element contributor
with contributorType hostingInstitution. -->
<xsl:variable name="hostinginstitution"><xsl:value-of select="$publisher" /></
xsl:variable>
<!-- Please take a look into the DataCite schema documentation if you want to
know how to use these elements.
 http://schema.datacite.org -->

<!-- DO NOT CHANGE ANYTHING BELOW THIS LINE EXCEPT YOU REALLY KNOW WHAT YOU ARE
DOING! -->
...

```

Just change the value in the variable named "publisher".

If you are running DSpace 6.0 or later, then these should instead be configured using the `crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.*` properties in `local.cfg`. You should not need to edit `DIM2DataCite.xsl`.

If you want to know more about the DataCite Schema, have a look at the [documentation](http://schema.datacite.org)<sup>413</sup>. If you change this file in a way that is not compatible with the DataCite schema, you won't be able to reserve and register DOIs anymore. Do not change anything if you're not sure what you're doing.

### Identifier Service

The Identifier Service manages the generation, reservation and registration of identifiers within DSpace. You can configure it using the config file located in `[dspace]/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml`. In the file you should already find the code to configure DSpace to register DOIs. Just read the comments and remove the comment signs around the two appropriate beans.

After removing the comment signs the file should look something like this (I removed the comments to make the listing shorter):

```

\[[dspace]]/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml

```

```

<!--
 Copyright (c) 2002-2010, DuraSpace. All rights reserved
 Licensed under the DuraSpace License.

```

<sup>413</sup> <http://schema.datacite.org>

A copy of the DuraSpace License has been included in **this** distribution and is available at: <http://www.dspace.org/license>

-->

```
<beans xmlns="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans
 http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans/spring-beans-2.5.xsd">

 <bean id="org.dspace.identifier.IdentifierService"
 class="org.dspace.identifier.IdentifierServiceImpl"
 autowire="byType"
 scope="singleton"/>

 <bean id="org.dspace.identifier.DOIIdentifierProvider"
 class="org.dspace.identifier.DOIIdentifierProvider"
 scope="singleton">
 <property name="configurationService"
 ref="org.dspace.services.ConfigurationService" />
 <property name="DOIConnector"
 ref="org.dspace.identifier.doi.DOIConnector" />
 </bean>

 <bean id="org.dspace.identifier.doi.DOIConnector"
 class="org.dspace.identifier.doi.DataCiteConnector"
 scope="singleton">
 <property name='DATACITE_SCHEME' value='https' />
 <property name='DATACITE_HOST' value='mds.test.datacite.org' />
 <property name='DATACITE_DOI_PATH' value='/doi/' />
 <property name='DATACITE_METADATA_PATH' value='/metadata/' />
 <property name='disseminationCrosswalkName' value="DataCite" />
 </bean>
</beans>
```

If you use other IdentifierProviders beside the DOIIdentifierProvider there will be more beans in this file.

Please pay attention to configure the property DATACITE\_HOST. Per default it is set to the DataCite test server. To reserve real DOIs you will have to change it to mds.datacite.org. Ask your registration agency if you're not sure about the correct address.

DSpace should send updates to DataCite whenever the metadata of an item changes. To do so you have to change the dspace.cfg again. You should remove the comments in front of the two following properties or add them to the dspace.cfg:

```
\\[dspace]\\config\\dspace.cfg
```

```
event.consumer.doi.class = org.dspace.identifier.doi.DOIConsumer
event.consumer.doi.filters = Item+Modify_Metadata
```

Then you should add 'doi' to the property `event.dispatcher.default.consumers`. After adding it, this property may look like this:



```
[[dspace]]/config/dspace.cfg
```

```
event.dispatcher.default.consumers = versioning, discovery, eperson, harvester, doi
```

### DOIs using DataCite and Item Level Versioning

If you enabled [Item Level Versioning](#) (see page 407) you should enable the `VersionedDOIIdentifierProvider` instead of the `DOIIdentifierProvider`. The `VersionedDOIIdentifierProvider` ensures that newer versions of the same Item gets a DOI looking as the DOI of the first version of an item, extended by a dot and the version number. With DSpace 6 this also became the default for handles if Item Level Versioning is enabled. In the configuration file `[dspace]/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml` you'll find the possibility to enable the `VersionedDOIIdentifierProvider`. If you want to use versioned DOIs, please comment out the `DOIIdentifierProvider` as only one of both DOIProviders should be enabled at the same time.

### Command Line Interface

To make DSpace resistant to outages of DataCite we decided to separate the DOI support into two parts. When a DOI should be generated, reserved or minted, DSpace does this in its own database. To perform registration and/or reservation against the DOI registration agency a job has to be started using the command line. Obviously this should be done by a cron job periodically. In this section we describe the command line interface, in case you ever want to use it manually. In the next section you'll see the cron job that transfers all DOIs designated for reservation and/or registration.

The command line interface in general is documented here: [Command Line Operations](#) (see page 608).

The command used for DOIs is `doi-organiser`. You can use the following options:

Option (short)	Option (long)	Parameter	Description
-d	--delete-all		Transmit information to the DOI registration agency about all DOIs that were deleted.
	--delete-doi	DOI	Transmit information to the DOI registration agency that the specified DOI was deleted. The DOI must already be marked for deletion; you cannot use this command to delete a DOI for an existing item.
-h	--help		Print online help.
-l	--list		List all DOIs whose changes were not committed to the registration agency yet.

Option (short)	Option (long)	Parameter	Description
-q	--quiet		The doi-organiser sends error reports to the mail address configured in the property alert.recipient in dspace.cfg. If you use this option no output should be given to stdout. If you do not use this option the doi-organiser writes information about successful and unsuccessful operations to stdout and stderr. You can find information in dspace.log of course.
-r	--register-all		Transmit information about all DOIs that should be registered.
	--register-doi	DOI   ItemID   handle	If a DOI is marked for registration, you can trigger the registration at the DOI registration agency by this command. Specify either the DOI, the ID of the item, or its handle.
-s	--reserve-all		Transmit to the DOI registration agency information about all DOIs that should be reserved.
	--reserve-doi	DOI   ItemID   handle	If a DOI is marked for registration, you can trigger the registration at the DOI registration agency by this command. Specify either the DOI, the ID of the item, or its handle.
-u	--update-all		If a DOI is reserved for an item, the metadata of the item will be sent to DataCite. This command transmits new metadata for items whose metadata were changed since the DOI was reserved.
	--update-doi	DOI   ItemID   handle	If a DOI needs an update of the metadata of the item it belongs to, you can trigger this update with this command. Specify either the DOI, the ID of the item, or its handle.

Currently you cannot generate new DOIs with this tool. You can only send information about changes in your local DSpace database to the registration agency.

'cron' job for asynchronous reservation/registration

When a DOI should be reserved, registered, deleted or its metadata updated, DSpace just writes this information into its local database. A command line interface is supplied to send the necessary information to the registration agency. This behavior makes it easier to react to outages or errors while using the API. This information should be sent regularly, so it is a good idea to set up a cron job instead of doing it manually.

There are four commands that should be run regularly:

- Update the metadata of all items that have changed since their DOI was reserved.
- Reserve all DOIs marked for reservation
- Register all DOIs marked for registration
- Delete all DOIs marked for deletion

In DSpace, a DOI can have the state "registered", "reserved", "to be reserved", "to be registered", "needs update", "to be deleted", or "deleted". After updating an item's metadata the state of its assigned DOI is set back to the last state it had before. So, e.g., if a DOI has the state "to be registered" and the metadata of its item changes, it will be set to the state "needs update". After the update is performed its state is set to "to be registered" again. Because of this behavior **the order of the commands above matters**: the update command must be executed before all of the other commands above.

The cron job should perform the following commands with the rights of the user your DSpace installation runs as:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -u -q
[dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -s -q
[dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -r -q
[dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -d -q
```

The doi-organiser sends error messages as email and logs some additional information. The option -q tells DSpace to be quiet. If you don't use this option the doi-organiser will print messages to stdout about every DOI it successfully reserved, registered, updated or deleted. Using a cron job these messages would be sent as email.

In case of an error, consult the log messages. If there is an outage of the API of your registration agency, DSpace will not change the state of the DOIs so that it will do everything necessary when the cron job starts the next time and the API is reachable again.

The frequency the cron job runs depends on your needs and your hardware. The more often you run the cron job the faster your new DOIs will be available online. If you have a lot of submissions and want the DOIs to be available really quickly, you probably should run the cron job every fifteen minutes. If there are just one or two submissions per day, it should be enough to run the cron job twice a day.

To set up the cron job, you just need to run the following command as the *dspace* UNIX user:

```
crontab -e
```

The following line tells cron to run the necessary commands twice a day, at 1am and 1pm. Please notice that the line starting with the numbers is one line, even it it should be shown as multiple lines in your browser.

```
Send information about new and changed DOIs to the DOI registration agency:
0 1,13 * * * [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -u -q ; [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-
organiser -s -q ; [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -r -q ; [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-
organiser -d -q
```

## Limitations of DataCite DOI support

**Every DSpace installation expects to be the only application that generates DOIs which start with the prefix and the namespace separator you configured. DSpace does not check whether a DOI it generates is reserved or registered already.**

That means if you want to use other applications or even more than one DSpace installation to register DOIs with the same prefix, you'll have to use a unique namespace separator for each of them. Also you should not generate DOIs manually with the same prefix and namespace separator you configured within DSpace. For example, if your prefix is 10.5072 you can configure one DSpace installation to generate DOIs starting with 10.5072/papers-, a second installation to generate DOIs starting with 10.5072/data- and another application to generate DOIs starting with 10.5072/results-.

DOIs will be used in addition to Handles. This implementation does not replace Handles with DOIs in DSpace. That means that DSpace will still generate Handles for every item, every collection and every community, and will use those Handles as part of the URL of items, collections and communities.

DSpace currently generates DOIs for items only. There is no support to generate DOIs for Communities and collections yet.

When using DSpace's support for the DataCite API probably not all information would be restored when using the AIP Backup and Restore (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5203>). The DOIs included in metadata of Items will be restored, but DSpace won't update the metadata of those items at DataCite anymore. You can even get problems when minting new DOIs after you restored older once using AIP.

## Configure DSpace to use EZID service for registration of DOIs

The EZID IdentifierProvider operates synchronously, so there is much less to configure. You will need to uncomment the `org.dspace.identifier.EZIDIdentifierProvider` bean in `config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml` to enable DOI registration through EZID.

In `config/dspace.cfg` you will find a small block of settings whose names begin with `identifier.doi.ezid`. You should uncomment these properties and give them appropriate values. Sample values for a test account are supplied.

name	meaning
<code>identifier.doi.ezid.shoulder</code>	The "shoulder" is the DOI prefix issued to you by the EZID service. DOIs minted by this instance of DSpace will be the concatenation of the "shoulder" and a locally unique token.
<code>identifier.doi.ezid.user</code> <code>identifier.doi.ezid.password</code>	The username and password by which you authenticate to EZID.
<code>identifier.doi.ezid.publisher</code>	You may specify a default value for the required <code>datacite.publisher</code> metadatum, for use when the Item has no publisher.

name	meaning
crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher	Should match identifier.doi.ezid.publisher.
crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.hostingInstitution	Name of the hosting institution. If not configured, it will be set to the value of crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher.
crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.dataManager	Name of the data manager. If not configured, it will be set to the value of crosswalk.dissemination.DataCite.publisher.

Back in `config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml` you will see some other configuration of the `EZIDIdentifierProvider` bean. In most situations, the default settings should work well. But, here's an explanation of options available:

- *EZID Provider / Registrar settings:* By default, the `EZIDIdentifierProvider` is configured to use the CDLib provider ([ezid.cdlib.org](http://ezid.cdlib.org/)<sup>414</sup>) in the `EZID_SCHEME`, `EZID_HOST` and `EZID_PATH` settings. In most situations, the default values should work for you. However, you may need to modify these values (especially the `EZID_HOST`) if you are registered with a different EZID provider. In that situation, please check with your provider for valid "host" and "path" settings. If your provider provides EZID service at a particular path on its host, you may set that in `EZID_PATH`.
  - NOTE: As of the writing of this documentation, the default CDLib provider settings should also work for institutions that use Purdue ([ezid.lib.purdue.edu](https://ezid.lib.purdue.edu/)<sup>415</sup>) as a provider. Currently, Purdue and CDLib currently share the same infrastructure, and both [ezid.cdlib.org](http://ezid.cdlib.org/)<sup>416</sup> and [ezid.lib.purdue.edu](http://ezid.lib.purdue.edu/)<sup>417</sup> point to the same location.
- *Metadata mappings:* You can alter the mapping between DSpace and EZID metadata, should you choose. The `crosswalk` property is a map from DSpace metadata fields to EZID fields, and can be extended or changed. The `key` of each `entry` is the name of an EZID metadata field; the `value` is the name of the corresponding DSpace field, from which the EZID metadata will be populated.
- *Crosswalking / Transforms:* You can also supply transformations to be applied to field values using the `crosswalkTransform` property. Each `key` is the name of an EZID metadata field, and its `value` is the name of a Java class which will convert the value of the corresponding DSpace field to its EZID form. The only transformation currently provided is one which converts a date to the year of that date, named `org.dspace.identifier.ezid.DateToYear`. In the configuration as delivered, it is used to convert the date of issue to the year of publication. You may create new Java classes with which to supply other transformations, and map them to metadata fields here. If an EZID metadatum is not named in this map, the default mapping is applied: the string value of the DSpace field is copied verbatim.

---

414 <http://ezid.cdlib.org/>

415 <https://ezid.lib.purdue.edu/>

416 [http://ezid.cdlib.org](http://ezid.cdlib.org/)

417 <http://ezid.lib.purdue.edu>

### Limitations of EZID DOI support

DOIs will be used in addition to Handles. This implementation does not replace Handles with DOIs in DSpace. That means that DSpace will continue to generate Handles for every item, every collection and every community, and will use those Handles as part of the URL of items, collections and communities.

Currently, the EZIDIdentifierProvider has a known issue where it stores its DOIs in the `dc.identifier` field, instead of using the `dc.identifier.uri` field (which is the one used by DataCite DOIs and Handles). See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/1006> for more details. This will be corrected in a future version of DSpace.

DSpace currently generates DOIs for items only. There is no support to generate DOIs for Communities and Collections yet.

### 4.7.3.3 Adding support for other Registration Agencies

If you want DSpace to support other registration agencies, you just have to write a Java class that implements the interface `DOIConnector` (`[dspace-source]/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/identifier/doi/DOIConnector.java`). You might use the `DataCiteConnector` (`[dspace-source]/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/identifier/doi/DataCiteConnector.java`) as an example. After developing your own `DOIConnector`, you configure DSpace as if you were using the DataCite API directly. Just use your `DOIConnector` when configuring the `IdentifierService` instead of the `DataCiteConnector`.

## 4.7.4 Item Level Versioning

- [What is Item Level Versioning?\(see page 407\)](#)
- [Important warnings\(see page 407\)](#)
- [Enabling Item Level Versioning\(see page 407\)](#)
- [Initial Requirements\(see page 407\)](#)
- [User Interface\(see page 409\)](#)
  - [General behaviour: Linear Versioning\(see page 409\)](#)
  - [Creating a new version of an item\(see page 409\)](#)
  - [View the history and older versions of an item\(see page 411\)](#)
- [Architecture\(see page 412\)](#)
  - [Versioning model\(see page 412\)](#)
- [Configuration\(see page 412\)](#)
  - [Versioning Service Override\(see page 412\)](#)
  - [Identifier Service Override\(see page 412\)](#)
  - [Version History Visibility\(see page 414\)](#)
  - [Allowing submitters to version their items\(see page 414\)](#)
- [Identified Challenges & Known Issues\(see page 414\)](#)
  - [Conceptual compatibility with Embargo\(see page 414\)](#)
  - [Conceptual compatibility with Item Level Statistics\(see page 414\)](#)
  - [Exposing version history\(see page 414\)](#)
    - [Hide Submitter details in version table\(see page 414\)](#)

### 4.7.4.1 What is Item Level Versioning?

*Versioning* is a new functionality to build the history of an item. Users will have the opportunity to create new version of an existing item any time they will make a change.

**Supported in 7.1 or above**

Item level versioning was not fully supported in DSpace 7.0 (you were only able to view existing versions). It was restored in DSpace 7.1. See [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>418</sup>

## 4.7.4.2 Important warnings

**Item Level Versioning on Entities configuration**

[Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) are supported in Item Level Versioning support starting from version 7.3. More details about the configuration specific to Configurable Entities can be found on that page.

**AIP Backup & Restore functionality only works with the Latest Version of Items**

If you are using the [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559) functionality to backup / restore / migrate DSpace Content, you must be aware that the "Item Level Versioning" feature is **not yet compatible** with AIP Backup & Restore. **Using them together may result in accidental data loss.** Currently the AIPs that DSpace generates only store the *latest version* of an Item. Therefore, past versions of Items will always be lost when you perform a restore / replace using AIP tools. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4751>.

**DSpace 6+ changed the way Handles are created for versioned Items**

Starting with 6.0, the way DSpace crates Handles for versioned Items was changed. If you want to keep the old behavior of DSpace 4 and 5 you have to enable the

`VersionedHandleIdentifierProviderWithCanonicalHandles` in the XML configuration

files `[dspace]/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml` . See

[IdentifierServiceOverride](#)(see page 412) below for details and the comments in the configuration file.

## 4.7.4.3 Enabling Item Level Versioning

By default, *Item Level Versioning* is enabled in DSpace 7.1. You may choose to disable it by updating this configuration in your local.cfg:

```
versioning.enabled = false
```

## 4.7.4.4 Initial Requirements

The Item Level Versioning implementation builds on following requirements identified by the stakeholders who supported this contribution: [Initial Requirements Analysis](#)<sup>419</sup>

1. What should be *Versionable*
  - a. Versioning happens at the level of an Individual Item

<sup>418</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

<sup>419</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/Item+Versioning+Support>

- b. Versioning should preserve the current state of *metadata*, *bitstreams* and *resource policies* attached to the item.
- 2. Access, Search and Discovery
  - a. Only the most recent version of an item is available via the search interface
  - b. Previous versions of Items should continue to be visible, citable and accessible
  - c. The Bitstreams for previous versions are retained. If something was once retrievable, it should always be retrievable.
- 3. Identifiers
  - a. Each version of an Item is represented by a separate "*versioned*" identifier
  - b. A base "*versionhistory*" Identifier points to the most recent version of the Item.
  - c. A revision identifier also exists that is unique to the specific version.
  - d. When a new version of an Item is deposited, a new revision identifier will be created.
- 4. Presentation
  - a. On the item page, there is a link to view previous/subsequent versions.
  - b. By examining the metadata or identifiers, it is possible to determine whether an item is the most recent version, the original version, or an intermediate version.
- 5. Access Control and Rights
  - a. Certain roles should be able to generate a new version of the item via submission.
  - b. To submitters, collection manager, administrators will be given to option to create new version of an item.
  - c. Rights to access a specific Item should transmute as well to previous versions
  - d. Rights to access a specific Bitstream should also transmute to previous versions.
- 6. Data Integrity
  - a. The relationships between versions should not be brittle and breakable by manipulating Item metadata records.
  - b. The relationships between versions should be preserved and predictable in various Metadata Exports (OAI, Packers, ItemExport)
  - c. The relationships between versions should be maintained in SWORD and AIP packaging and be maintained in updates and restorations.

#### 4.7.4.5 User Interface

General behaviour: Linear Versioning

From the user interface, DSpace offers **linear** versioning. As opposed to hierarchical versioning, linear version has following properties:

- A new version can be created started from any available version but will be always be put at the end of the version history (it will be the latest)
- Only one in-progress version can exist at any time. When new version has been created and still needs to pass certain steps of the workflow, it is temporarily impossible to create another new version until the workflow steps are finished and the new version has replaced the previous one.

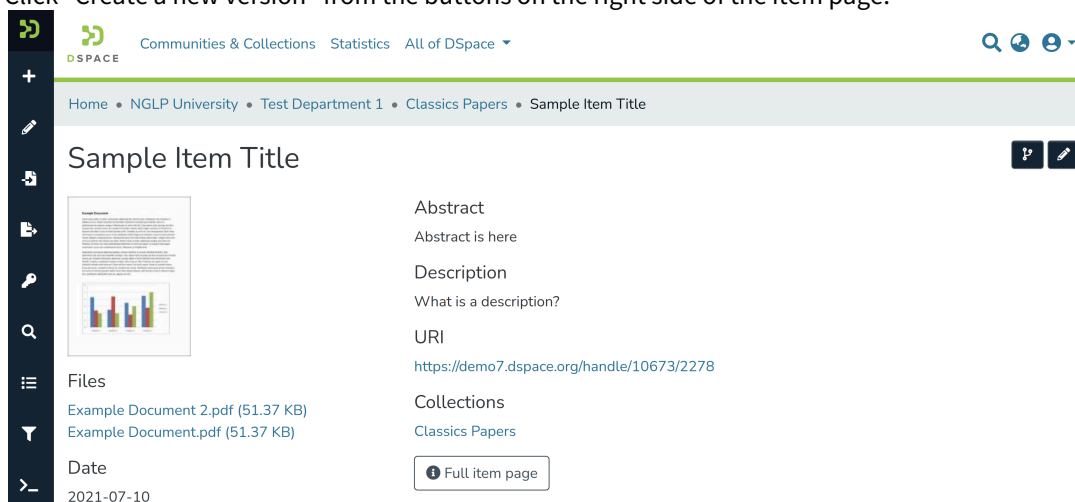
Creating a new version of an item

Administrators, collection/community administrators and eventually the original submitter can create new versions of an item from the Item View page. By default the original submitter is not allowed to create new version but the permission can be granted with the following property

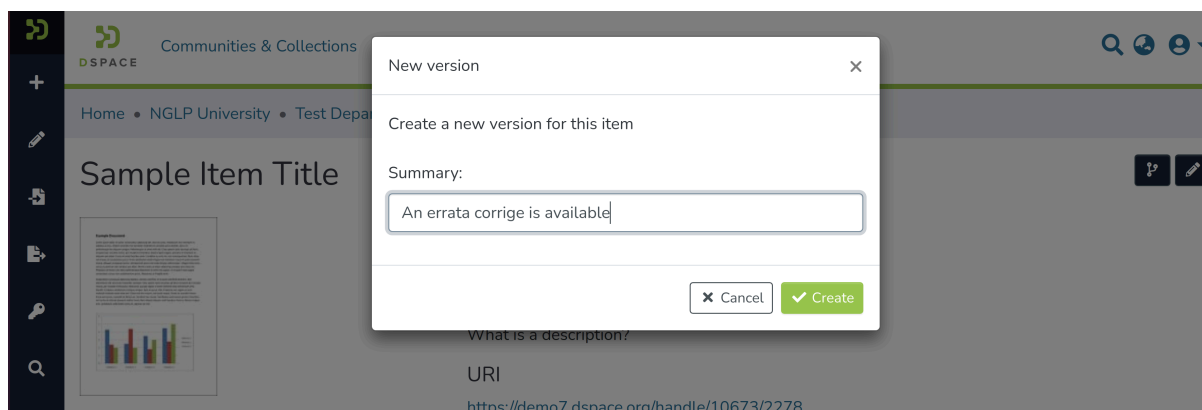


**modules/versioning.cfg**versioning.submitterCanCreateNewVersion=**false**

1. Click "Create a new version" from the buttons on the right side of the item page.



2. Provide the reason for creating a new version that will later on be stored and displayed in the version summary.



3. Your new version is now creates as a new Item in your Workspace. It requires you to go through the submission and workflow steps like you would do for a normal, new submission to the collection. The rationale behind this is that if you are adding new files or metadata, you will also need to accept the license for them. In addition to this, the versioning functionality does not bypass any quality control embedded in the workflow steps.

After the submission steps and the execution of subsequent workflow steps, the new version becomes available in the repository.

Versions can be also managed via the edit item page, in the dedicated versions tab

Version	Editor	Date	Summary
2 <span>Workspace Item</span>		2021-10-31 21:04:15	An errata corrige is available
1 *		2021-07-09 17:27:38	

\* Selected version

[← Back](#)

View the history and older versions of an item

An overview of the version history, including links to older versions of an item, is available at the bottom of an Item View page. The repository administrator can decide whether the version history should be available to all users or restricted to administrators. Since DSpace 6 the repository administrator can decide whether all users should be able to see the version submitter/editor or if this information is restricted and can be seen by administrators only. As this may expose data that may be considered personal (name and email address of the submitter), we encourage everyone to leave the default setting and reveal those information to administrators only.

## Version History

You are currently viewing version 2 of the item.

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

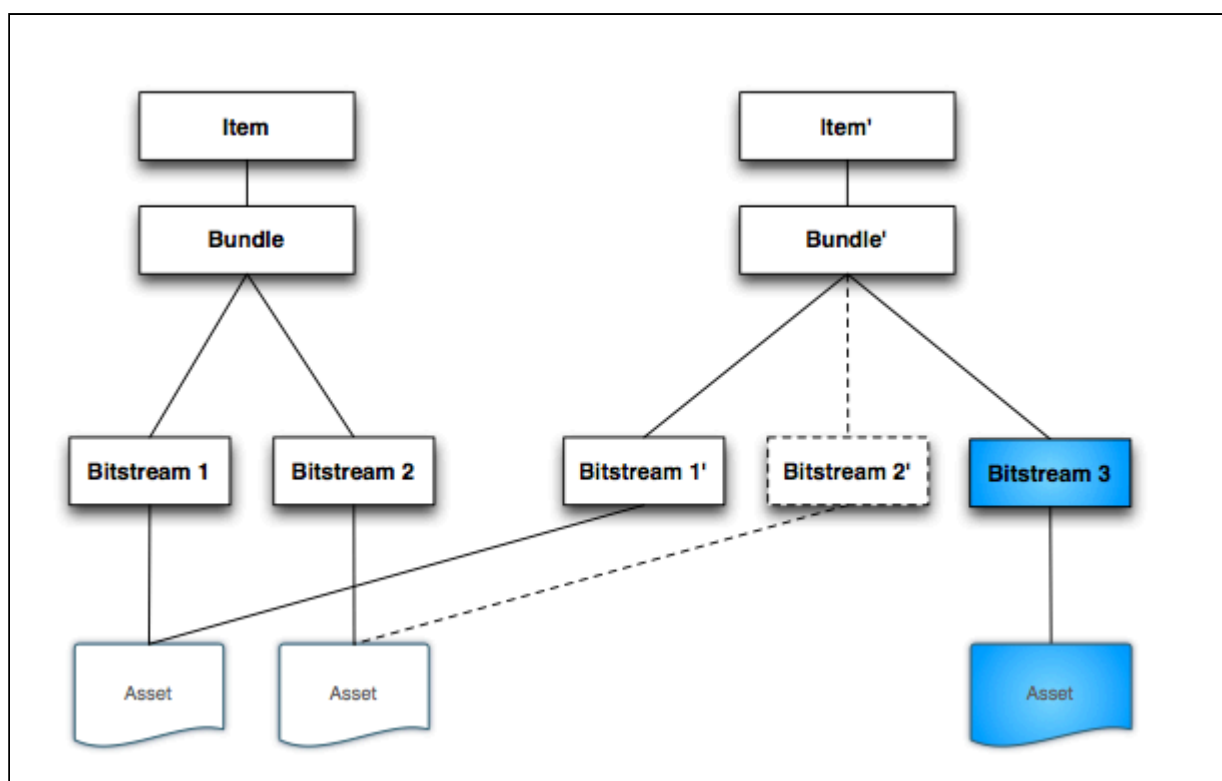
Version	Editor	Date	Summary
2 *		2021-10-31 21:04:15	An errata corrige is available
1		2021-07-09 17:27:38	

\* Selected version

### 4.7.4.6 Architecture

#### Versioning model

For every new Version a separate DSpace Item will be created that replicates the metadata, bundle and bitstream records. The bitstream records will point to the same file on the disk.



The *Cleanup* method has been modified to retain the file if another Bitstream record point to it (the dotted lines in the diagram represent a bitstream deleted in the new version), in other words the file will be deleted only if the Bitstream record processed is the only one to point to the file ( $count(INTERNAL\_ID)=1$ ).

#### 4.7.4.7 Configuration

##### Versioning Service Override

You can override the default behaviour of the Versioning Service using following XML configuration file, deployed under your dspace installation directory:

[\[dspace\\_installation\\_dir\]/config/spring/api/versioning-service.xml](#)<sup>420</sup>

In this file, you can specify which metadata fields are automatically "reset" (i.e. cleared out) during the creation of a new item version. By default, all metadata values (and bitstreams) are copied over to the newly created version, with the exception of **dc.date.accessioned** and **dc.description.provenance**. You may specify additional metadata fields to reset by adding them to the "ignoredMetadataFields" property in the "versioning-service.xml" file:

```

<!-- Default Item Versioning Provider, defines behavior for replicating
Item, Metadata, Budles and Bitstreams. Autowired at this time. -->
<bean class="org.dspace.versioning.DefaultItemVersionProvider">
 <property name="ignoredMetadataFields">
 <set>
 <value>dc.date.accessioned</value>
 <value>dc.description.provenance</value>
 </set>
 </property>
</bean>

```

##### Identifier Service Override

Persistent Identifiers are used to address Items within DSpace. The handle system is deeply integrated within DSpace, but since version 4 DSpace can also mint DOIs. DSpace 4 and 5 supported one type of versioned handle: The initial version of an Item got a handle, e.g. 10673/100. This handle was called the canonical one. When a newer version was created, the canonical handle was moved to identify the newest version. The previously newest version got a new handle build out of the canonical handle extended by a dot and the version number. In the image below you see a version history of an item using this handle strategy.

The canonical handle will always point to the newest version of an Item. This makes sense if you hide the version history. Normal users won't be able to find older versions and will always see just the newest one. Please keep in mind, that older versions can be accessed by "guessing" the versioned Handle if you do not remove the read policies manually. The downside of this identifier strategy is that there is no permanent handle to cite the currently newest version, as it will get a new Handle when a newer version is created.

With DSpace 6 versioned DOIs (using DataCite as DOI registration agency) were added and the default versioned Handle strategy was changed. Starting with DSpace 6 the `VersionedHandleIdentifierProvider` creates a handle for the first version of an item. Every newer version gets the same handle extended by a dot and the version number. To stay by the example from above, the first version of an Item gets the Handle 10673/100, the second version 10673/100.2, the third version 10673.3 and so on. This strategy has the downside that there is no handle pointing always to the newest version. But each version gets an identifier that can be use to cite exactly this version. If page numbers changes in newer editions the old citations stay valid.

In DSpace 4 and 5 only the strategy using canonical handles (one handle that always points to the newest version) were implemented. In DSpace 6 the strategy of creating a new handle for each version was implemented. With

<sup>420</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace/config/spring/api/versioning-service.xml>

DSpace 6 this new strategy become the default. The strategy using canonical handle still exists in DSpace but you have to enable the `VersionedHandleIdentifierWithCanonicalHandles` in the file `[dspace]/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml`. With DSpace 6 versioned DOIs were introduced using the strategy that every new version gets a new DOI (extended by a dot and the version numbers for versions  $\geq 2$ ). To use versioned Handle you have to enable DOIs, you have to use DataCite as registration agency and you have to enable the `VersionedDOIIdentifierProvider` in the named configuration file.

You can configure which persistent identifiers should be used by editing following XML configuration file, deployed under your dspace installation directory:

[\[dspace\\_installation\\_dir\]/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml](#)<sup>421</sup>

No changes to this file are required to enable Versioning. This file is currently only relevant if you want to keep the identifier strategy from DSpace 4 and 5 or if you want to enable DOIs (see page 396) or even versioned DOIs.

#### Version History Visibility

By default, **all** users will be able to see the version history. To ensure that only administrators can see the Version History, enable `versioning.item.history.view.admin` in the `[dspace]/config/modules/versioning.cfg` OR in your `local.cfg` file.

```
versioning.item.history.view.admin=false
```

#### Allowing submitters to version their items

With DSpace 6.0 it became possible to allow submitters to create new versions of their own items. The new versions are going through the normal workflow process if the collection is configured this way. To allow submitters to create new versions of Item they originally submitted, you have to change the configuration property `versioning.submitterCanCreateNewVersion` and set it to `true`. It is part of the configuration file `[dspace]/config/modules/versioning.cfg` but can be overridden in your `local.cfg` too.

#### 4.7.4.8 Identified Challenges & Known Issues

Item Level Versioning has a substantial conceptual impact on many DSpace features. Therefore it has been accepted into DSpace as an optional feature. Following challenges have been identified in the current implementation. As an early adopter of the Item Level Versioning feature, your input is greatly appreciated on any of these.

##### Conceptual compatibility with Embargo

Lifting an embargo currently does not interact with Item Level Versioning. Additional implementation would be required to ensure that lifting an embargo actually creates a new version of the item.

<sup>421</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace/config/spring/api/identifier-service.xml>

### Conceptual compatibility with Item Level Statistics

Both on the level of pageviews and downloads, different versions of an item are treated as different items. As a result, an end user will have the impression that the stats are being "reset" once a new version is installed, because the previous downloads and pageviews are allocated to the previous version.

One possible solution would be to present an end user with aggregated statistics across all viewers, and give administrators the possibility to view statistics per version.

### Exposing version history

The version history is added on the bottom of a versioned item page. A repository administrator can either decide to show this to all users, or restrict it to admins only. If it is shown to admins only, an end user will have no way to find the way to an older version. Since DSpace 6 you can also configure if the submitter's name and email address should be part of the version history or if they should be hidden. To show the submitter might actually be useful if the editor account is always a generic institutional email address, but may conflict with local privacy laws if any personal details are included.

## Version History

You are currently viewing version 2 of the item.

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

Version	Editor	Date	Summary
2 *		2021-10-31 21:04:15	An errata corrige is available
1		2021-07-09 17:27:38	

\* Selected version

### Hide Submitter details in version table

In either the `[dspace]/config/modules/versioning.cfg` configuration file or your `local.cfg`, you can customize the configuration option `versioning.item.history.include.submitter`. By default this is set to `false`, which means that information about the submitter is only viewable by administrators. If you want to expose the submitters information to everyone (which be useful if all submitters uses generic institutional email addresses, but may conflict with local privacy laws if personal details are included) you can set this configuration property to `true`.

```
The property item.history.include.submitter controls whether the name of
the submitter of a version should be included in the version history of
an item.
versioning.item.history.include.submitter=false
```

## 4.7.5 Mapping/Linking Items to multiple Collections

- [Introduction](#)(see page 416)
- [Using the Item Mapper](#)(see page 416)

- [Implications](#)(see page 416)
  - [Mapping collection vs Owning collection](#)(see page 416)
  - [Mapping an item does not modify access rights](#)(see page 416)

#### 4.7.5.1 Introduction

The Item Mapper is a tool in the DSpace web user interface allowing repository managers to display the same item in multiple collections at once. Thanks to this feature, a repository manager is not forced to duplicate items to display them in different collections

#### 4.7.5.2 Using the Item Mapper

In the User Interface, the item mapper can be accessed when editing an Item.

- Login as someone with Edit permissions
- Search/browse to the Item
- Click the "Edit this Item" button
- Click "Mapped" collections" button on the "Status" tab
  - You'll be shown a list of currently mapped collections (if any)
  - You can also map the item to a new collection by clicking on "Map new collections" tab, and searching for the Collection(s)

#### 4.7.5.3 Implications

##### Mapping collection vs Owning collection

The relation between an item and the collection in which it is mapped is different from the relation that this item has with the collection to which it was originally submitted. This second collection is referred to as the "owning" collection. When an item is deleted from the owning collection, it automatically disappears from the mapping collection. From within the mapping collection, the only thing that can be deleted is the mapping relation. Removing this mapping relation does not affect the presence of the item in the owning collection.

##### Mapping an item does not modify access rights

When an item gets mapped into a collection, it does not receive new access rights. It retains the authorizations that it inherited from the collection that "owns" it. Collection admins who do not have read access to an item will not be able to map them to other collections.

#### 4.7.6 Metadata Recommendations

- [Recommended Metadata Fields](#)(see page 416)
- [Local Fields](#)(see page 417)

### 4.7.6.1 Recommended Metadata Fields

DSpace provides a broad list of metadata fields out of the box (see: [Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries](#)<sup>422</sup>), and a variety of options for adding content to DSpace (both from the UI and from other services). No matter which Ingest option you use, DSpace recommends ensuring that the following metadata fields are specified:

- **Title** ( `dc.title` )
  - When submitting an Item via the DSpace web user interface, this field is **required**.
  - If you add an Item to DSpace through another means (SWORD, etc), it is recommended to specify a title for an Item. Without a title, the Item will show up in DSpace as "Untitled".
- **Publication Date** ( `dc.date.issued` )
  - When submitting an Item via the DSpace web user interface, this field is **required** (by default).
    - However, your System Administrator can choose to enable the "Initial Questions" step within the [Submission User Interface](#)<sup>423</sup>. Enabling this step will cause the following to occur: If the item is said to be "published", then the Publication Date will be required. If the item is said to be "unpublished" then the Publication Date will be auto-set to today's date (date of submission).  
*WARNING:* Google Scholar has recommended against automatically assigning this "dc.date.issued" field to the date of submission as it often results in incorrect dates in Google Scholar results. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4850> and <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5112> for more details.
  - If you add an Item to DSpace through another means (SWORD, etc), it is recommended to specify the date in which an Item was published, in [ISO-8601](#)<sup>424</sup> (e.g. 2007, 2008-01, or 2011-03-04). This ensures DSpace can accurately report the publication date to services like Google Scholar. If an item is unpublished, you can either choose to leave this blank, or pass in the literal string "today" (which will tell DSpace to automatically set it to the date of ingest)

#### DSpace will not auto-assign a "dc.date.issued"

As of DSpace 4.0, the system will not assign a "dc.date.issued" when unspecified. Previous versions of DSpace (3.0 or below) would set "dc.date.issued" to the date of accession (`dc.date.accessioned`), if it was unspecified during ingest.

If you are adding content to DSpace without using the DSpace web user interface, there are two recommended options for assigning "dc.date.issued"

- If the item is previously published before, please set "dc.date.issued" to the date of publication in [ISO-8601](#)<sup>425</sup> (e.g. 2007, 2008-01, or 2011-03-04)
- If the item has never been previously published, you may set "dc.date.issued='today'" (the literal string "today"). This will cause DSpace to automatically assign "dc.date.issued" to the date of accession (`dc.date.accessioned`), as it did previously
  - You can also choose to leave "dc.date.issued" as unspecified, but then the new Item will have an empty date within DSpace.

Obviously, we recommend specifying as much metadata as you can about a new Item. For a full list of supported metadata fields, please see: [Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries](#)<sup>426</sup>

<sup>422</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC4x/Metadata+and+Bitstream+Format+Registries>

<sup>423</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC4x/Submission+User+Interface>

<sup>424</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO\\_8601](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_8601)

<sup>425</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO\\_8601](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_8601)

<sup>426</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC4x/Metadata+and+Bitstream+Format+Registries>



### 4.7.6.2 Local Fields

You may encounter situations in which you will require an appropriate place to store information that does not immediately fit with the description of a field in the default registry. The recommended practice in this situation is to create new fields in a separate schema. You can choose your own name and prefix for this schema such as *local.* or *myuni.*

It is generally discouraged to use any of the fields from the default schema as a place to store information that doesn't correspond with the fields description. This is especially true if you are ever considering the option to open up your repository metadata for external harvesting.

## 4.7.7 Moving Items

- [Moving Items via Web UI](#)(see page 418)
- [Moving Items via the Batch Metadata Editor](#)(see page 418)

### 4.7.7.1 Moving Items via Web UI

It is possible for Administrators to move items one at a time from the User Interface.

- Login as an Administrator
- Browse/search for the item.
- Click "Edit this Item" on the item page
- When editing an item, on the 'Edit item' screen, click the "Move..." button.
- Search for the new Collection for the item to appear in. By default, when the item is moved, it will take its authorizations (who can READ / WRITE it) with it.
  - If you wish for the item to take on the default authorizations of the destination collection, tick the 'Inherit policies' checkbox. This is useful if you are moving an item from a private collection to a public collection, or from a public collection to a private collection.
  - Note: When selecting the 'Inherit policies' option, ensure that this will not override system-managed authorizations such as those imposed by the embargo system.

### 4.7.7.2 Moving Items via the Batch Metadata Editor

Items may also be moved in bulk by using the CSV batch metadata editor (see [Editing Collection Membership](#)(see page 393) section under [Batch Metadata Editing](#)(see page 387)).

## 4.7.8 PDF Citation Cover Page

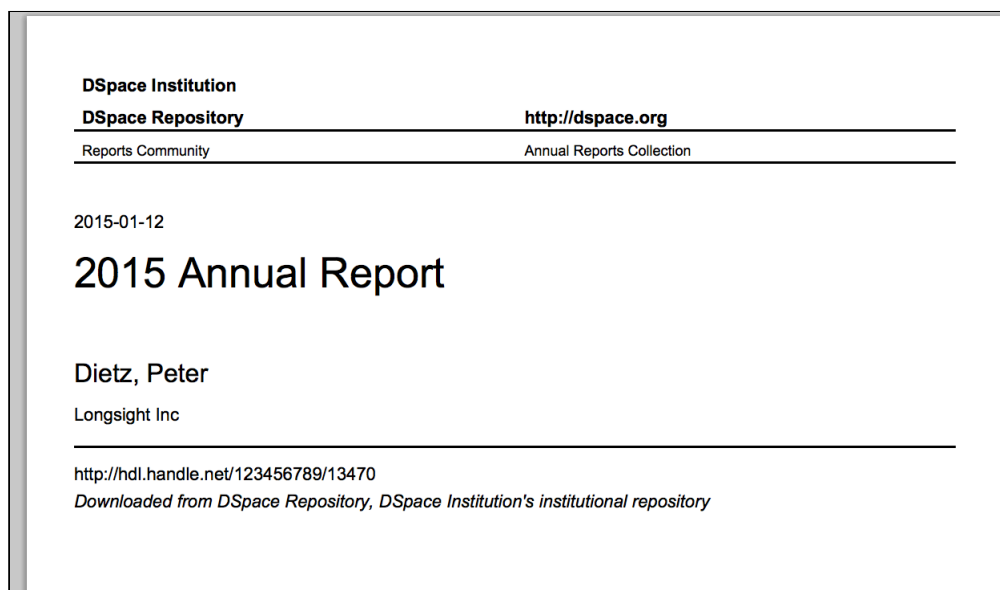
**Enabling PDF Cover Pages may affect your site's visibility in Google Scholar (and similar search engines)**

Google Scholar specifically warns against automatically generating PDF Cover Pages, as they can break the metadata extraction techniques used by their search engine. Be aware that enabling PDF Cover Pages may also cause those items to no longer be indexed by Google Scholar. For more information, please see the "[Indexing Repositories: Pitfalls and Best Practices](#)<sup>427</sup>" talk from Anurag Acharya (co-creator of Google Scholar) presented at the Open Repositories 2015 conference.

A known issue with the current implementation of the PDF Citation Cover Page is that primarily only English/Roman characters are supported. This is due to a limitation in the tool used to generate PDFs. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5590> for more details on this issue

Adding a cover page to retrieved documents from DSpace that include additional citation information has been sought, as documents uploaded to the repository might have had their context stripped from them, when they are just a PDF. Context that might have surrounded the document would be the journal, publisher, edition, and more. Without that information, the document might just be a few pages of text, with no way to piece it together. Since repository policy might be to include this information as metadata to the Item, this metadata can be added to the citation cover page, so that the derivative PDF includes all of this information.

The citation cover page works by only storing the original PDF in DSpace, and then generating the citation-cover-page PDF on-the-fly. An alternative set up would be to run the PDF Citation Coverpage Curation Task on the DSpace repository contents, and then disseminate the pre-generated citation-version instead of generating it on the fly.



#### 4.7.8.1 Configuration settings for Citation Cover Page

##### **Configuration file renamed to citation-page.cfg and configurations names have changed**

As of DSpace 6.0, the configuration file for this feature was **renamed** from `disseminate-citation.cfg` to `citation-page.cfg`. The renaming was to clarify the purpose of this configuration file, as its previous name was misleading / confusing to some users.

<sup>427</sup> [https://media.dlib.indiana.edu/media\\_objects/9z903008w](https://media.dlib.indiana.edu/media_objects/9z903008w)

In addition, all configurations below have now been prefixed with "citation-page" (e.g. the `enable_globally` configuration has been renamed to `citation-page.enable_globally`)

In the `{dspace.dir}/config/modules/citation-page.cfg` file review the following fields to make sure they are uncommented:

<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.enable_globally</b>
Example Values:	<code>citation-page.enable_globally = true</code>
Informational Note:	Boolean to determine is citation-functionality is enabled globally for entire site. This will enable the citation cover page generator for all PDFs. Default: disabled
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.enabled_collections</b>
Example Values:	<code>citation-page.enabled_collections = 1811/123, 1811/234</code>
Informational Note:	List of collection handles to enable the cover page generator for bitstreams within. Default: blank
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.enabled_communities</b>
Example Values:	<code>citation-page.enabled_communities = 1811/222, 1811/333</code>
Informational Note:	List of community handles to enable the cover page generator for bitstreams within. Default: blank
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.citation_as_first_page</b>
Example Values:	<code>citation-page.citation_as_first_page = true</code>
Informational Note:	Should the citation page be the first page cover (true), or the last page (false). Default: true, (first page)
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.header1</b>

Example Values:	citation-page.header1 = University of Higher Education
Informational Note:	First row of header, perhaps for institution / university name. Commas separate multiple sections of the header (see screenshot above) Default Value: DSpace Institution
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.header2</b>
Example Values:	citation-page.header2 = Scholar Archive\, <a href="http://archive.example.com">http://archive.example.com</a>
Informational Note:	Second row of header, perhaps put your DSpace instance branded name, and url to your DSpace. A comma is used to separate instance name, and the URL Default Value: DSpace Repository, <a href="http://dspace.org">http://dspace.org</a>
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.fields</b>
Example Values:	citation-page.fields = dc.date.issued, dc.title, dc.creator, dc.contributor.author, dc.publisher, _line_, dc.identifier.citation, dc.identifier.uri
Informational Note:	Metadata fields to display on the citation PDF. Specify in schema.element.qualifier form, and separate fields by a comma. If you want to have a horizontal line break, use _line_ Default Value: dc.date.issued,dc.title,dc.creator,dc.contributor.author,dc.publisher, _line_,dc.identifier.citation,dc.identifier.uri
<b>Property:</b>	<b>citation-page.footer</b>
Example Values:	citation-page.footer = Downloaded from Scholar Archive at University of Higher Education\, an open access institutional repository. All Rights Reserved.
Informational Note:	Footer text at the bottom of the citation page. It might be some type of license or copyright information, or just letting the recipient know where they downloaded the file from. Default Value: Downloaded from DSpace Repository\, DSpace Institution's institutional repository NOTE: any commas appearing in this text should be escaped as "\, ". See example above.

## 4.7.9 Updating Items via Simple Archive Format

- [Item Update Tool](#)(see page 421)
  - [DSpace Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 421)
  - [ItemUpdate Commands](#)(see page 421)
    - [CLI Examples](#)(see page 424)

### 4.7.9.1 Item Update Tool

ItemUpdate is a batch-mode command-line tool for altering the metadata and bitstream content of existing items in a DSpace instance. It is a companion tool to ItemImport and uses the DSpace simple archive format to specify changes in metadata and bitstream contents. Those familiar with generating the source trees for ItemImport will find a similar environment in the use of this batch processing tool.

For metadata, ItemUpdate can perform 'add' and 'delete' actions on specified metadata elements. For bitstreams, 'add' and 'delete' are similarly available. All these actions can be combined in a single batch run.

ItemUpdate supports an undo feature for all actions except bitstream deletion. There is also a test mode, as with ItemImport. However, unlike ItemImport, there is no resume feature for incomplete processing. There is more extensive logging with a summary statement at the end with counts of successful and unsuccessful items processed.

One probable scenario for using this tool is where there is an external primary data source for which the DSpace instance is a secondary or down-stream system. Metadata and/or bitstream content changes in the primary system can be exported to the simple archive format to be used by ItemUpdate to synchronize the changes.

A note on terminology: **item** refers to a DSpace item. **metadata element** refers generally to a qualified or unqualified element in a schema in the form `[schema].[element].[qualifier]` or `[schema].[element]` and occasionally in a more specific way to the second part of that form. **metadata field** refers to a specific instance pairing a metadata element to a value.

#### DSpace Simple Archive Format

As with [ItemImporter](#)(see page 308), the idea behind the DSpace's simple archive format is to create an archive directory with a subdirectory per item. There are a few additional features added to this format specifically for ItemUpdate. Note that in the simple archive format, the item directories are merely local references and only used by ItemUpdate in the log output.

The user is referred to the previous section [DSpace Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308).

Additionally, the use of a **delete\_contents** is now available. This file lists the bitstreams to be deleted, one bitstream ID per line. Currently, no other identifiers for bitstreams are usable for this function. This file is an addition to the Archive format specifically for ItemUpdate.

The optional suppress\_undo file is a flag to indicate that the 'undo archive' should not be written to disk. This file is usually written by the application in an undo archive to prevent a recursive undo. This file is an addition to the Archive format specifically for ItemUpdate.

#### ItemUpdate Commands

Command used:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace itemupdate
```

Java class:	<i>org.dspace.app.itemupdate.ItemUpdate</i>
Arguments short and (long) forms:	Description
<code>-a</code> or <code>--addmetadata</code> [metadata element]	Repeatable for multiple elements. The metadata element should be in the form dc.x or dc.x.y. The mandatory argument indicates the metadata fields in the dublin_core.xml file to be added unless already present (multiple fields should be separated by a semicolon ';'). However, duplicate fields will not be added to the item metadata without warning or error.
<code>-d</code> or <code>--deletemetadata</code> [metadata element]	Repeatable for multiple elements. All metadata fields matching the element will be deleted.
<code>-A</code> or <code>--addbitstreams</code>	Adds bitstreams listed in the contents file with the bitstream metadata cited there.
<code>-D</code> or <code>--deletebitstreams</code> [filter plug classname or alias]	Not repeatable. With no argument, this operation deletes bitstreams listed in the <code>deletes_contents</code> file. Only bitstream IDs are recognized identifiers for this operation. The optional filter argument is the classname of an implementation of <code>org.dspace.app.itemupdate.BitstreamFilter</code> class to identify files for deletion or one of the aliases (e.g. ORIGINAL, ORIGINAL_AND_DERIVATIVES, TEXT, THUMBNAIL) which reference existing filters based on membership in a bundle of that name. In this case, the <code>delete_contents</code> file is not required for any item. The filter properties file will contains properties pertinent to the particular filter used. Multiple filters are not allowed.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Displays brief command line help.
<code>-e</code> or <code>--eperson</code>	Email address of the person or the user's database ID ( <b>Required</b> )
<code>-s</code> or <code>--source</code>	Directory archive to process ( <b>Required</b> )
<code>-i</code> or <code>--itemfield</code>	Specifies the metadata field that contains the item's identifier; Default value is "dc.identifier.uri" (Optional)
<code>-t</code> or <code>--test</code>	Runs the process in test mode with logging. But no changes applied to the DSpace instance. (Optional)

<code>-P</code> or <code>--provenance</code>	Prevents any changes to the provenance field to represent changes in the bitstream content resulting from an Add or Delete. In other words, when this flag is specified, no new provenance information is added to the DSpace Item when adding/deleting a bitstream. No provenance statements are written for thumbnails or text derivative bitstreams, in keeping with the practice of MediaFilterManager. (Optional)
<code>-F</code> or <code>--filter-properties</code>	The filter properties files to be used by the delete bitstreams action (Optional)
<code>-v</code> or <code>--verbose</code>	Turn on verbose logging.

## CLI Examples

### Adding Metadata:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace itemupdate -e joe@user.com -s [path/to/archive] -a dc.description
```

This will update all DSpace Items listed in your archive directory, adding a new `dc.description` metadata field. Items will be located in DSpace based on the handle found in 'dc.identifier.uri' (since the `-i` argument wasn't used, the default metadata field, `dc.identifier.uri`, from the `dublin_core.xml` file in the archive folder, is used).

## 4.8 Managing Community Hierarchy

- [Sub-Community Management](#)(see page 424)

### 4.8.1 Sub-Community Management

DSpace provides an administrative tool, 'CommunityFiliator', for managing community sub-structure. It has two operations, either establishing a community to sub-community relationship, or dis-establishing an existing relationship.

The familiar parent/child metaphor can be used to explain how it works. Every community in DSpace can be either a 'parent' community, meaning it has at least one sub-community, or a 'child' community, meaning it is a sub-community of another community, or both or neither. In these terms, an 'orphan' is a community that lacks a parent (although it can be a parent); 'orphans' are referred to as 'top-level' communities in the DSpace user-interface, since there is no parent community 'above' them. The first operation, establishing a parent/child relationship - can take place between any community and an orphan. The second operation - removing a parent/child relationship, will make the child an orphan.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace community-filiator</code>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------

Java class:	<i>org.dspace.administer.CommunityFiliator</i>
Arguments short and (long) forms:	Description
<code>-s</code> or <code>--set</code>	Set a parent/child relationship
<code>-r</code> or <code>--remove</code>	Remove a parent/child relationship
<code>-c</code> or <code>--child</code>	Child community (Handle or database ID)
<code>-p</code> or <code>--parent</code>	Parent community (Handle or database ID)
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Online help.

**Set** a parent/child relationship, issue the following at the CLI:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace community-filiator --set --parent=parentID --child=childID
```

(or using the short form)

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace community-filiator -s -p parentID -c childID
```

where '-s' or '-set' means establish a relationship whereby the community identified by the '-p' parameter becomes the parent of the community identified by the '-c' parameter. Both the 'parentID' and 'childID' values may be handles or database IDs.

The reverse operation looks like this:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace community-filiator --remove --parent=parentID --child=childID
```

(or using the short form)

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace community-filiator -r -p parentID -c childID
```

where '-r' or '-remove' means dis-establish the current relationship in which the community identified by 'parentID' is the parent of the community identified by 'childID'. The outcome will be that the 'childID' community will become an orphan, i.e. a top-level community.

If the required constraints of operation are violated, an error message will appear explaining the problem, and no change will be made. An example in a removal operation, where the stated child community does not have the stated parent community as its parent: "Error, child community not a child of parent community".



It is possible to effect arbitrary changes to the community hierarchy by chaining the basic operations together. For example, to move a child community from one parent to another, simply perform a 'remove' from its current parent (which will leave it an orphan), followed by a 'set' to its new parent.

It is important to understand that when any operation is performed, all the sub-structure of the child community follows it. Thus, if a child has itself children (sub-communities), or collections, they will all move with it to its new 'location' in the community tree.

## 4.9 ORCID Integration

Since DSpace 7.3 a bidirectional ORCID integration is available for DSpace. This feature allows for authentication via ORCID, as well as synchronizing data between ORCID and DSpace, via the usage of [Researcher Profiles](#)(see page 443).

### Acknowledgments

The ORCID integration was originally developed by [4Science](#)<sup>428</sup> in [DSpace-CRIS](#)<sup>429</sup>. It is the result of years of collaboration with several institutions and the ORCID team that has helped to correct, improve and broaden the scope of the integration. We want to thank the [University of Hong Kong](#)<sup>430</sup> that was the first institution to fund development activities in this regard back in 2015 and the [TUHH Hamburg University of Technology](#)<sup>431</sup> that have funded the initial porting of the ORCID integration to the new Angular/REST architecture introduced in DSpace 7. Last but not least, funds have been received by the DSpace community to port this feature from DSpace-CRIS to DSpace.

- [Overview](#)(see page 427)
- [User features](#)(see page 427)
  - [Login via ORCID](#)(see page 427)
  - [Connect/Disconnect the local profile to ORCID](#)(see page 427)
  - [Import publications from ORCID](#)(see page 430)
- [Configuration](#)(see page 430)
  - [Enable the integration](#)(see page 430)
  - [Configure the push of information from DSpace to ORCID](#)(see page 433)
    - [Mapping of the DSpace Person Items to ORCID Works](#)(see page 434)
    - [Mapping of DSpace Publication items to ORCID Works](#)(see page 435)
    - [Mapping of DSpace Project items to ORCID Funding](#)(see page 437)
  - [Configure the import features](#)(see page 439)
  - [Configure the author lookup in submission](#)(see page 441)
- [Troubleshooting & common issues](#)(see page 441)
  - [I'm having trouble testing the ORCID integration. What should I check?](#)(see page 441)
  - [I cannot find the ORCID features described by this page in my installation](#)(see page 442)
  - [I'm unable to authenticate via ORCID](#)(see page 442)
  - [I'm having trouble creating test accounts on ORCID to experiment with the features](#)(see page 442)
  - [I have configured my Public ORCID API credentials in DSpace but I get an error attempting to login via ORCID](#)(see page 442)
  - [I don't find my publications looking up for my ORCID id](#)(see page 442)

428 <https://www.4science.com>

429 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACECRIS/DSpace-CRIS+Home>

430 <https://hku.hk/>

431 <https://www.tuhh.de/>

- I cannot push all my publications, only few or none of them are listed in the queue(see page 443)
- Push of publications to ORCID fails(see page 443)
- Push of projects to ORCID fails(see page 443)

## 4.9.1 Overview

DSpace provides a bidirectional integration with [ORCID](#)<sup>432</sup> based on the ORCID API v3.0. Both the Public ORCID API and the Membership API are supported.

The table below summarizes the supported features according to the type of ORCID API configured.

Feature	No credentials *	Public API	Member API
Authentication		✓	✓
Connect local profile to ORCID (authenticated ID)		✓	✓
ORCID Registry Lookup - import Person records	✓	✓	✓
ORCID Registry Lookup - as authority	✓	✓	✓
Import publication from ORCID	✓	✓	✓
Push biographic data to ORCID			✓
Push publications to ORCID (works)			✓
Push projects to ORCID (fundings)			✓

\* **No credentials:** please note that ORCID strongly recommends to apply at least for a free public API Key as this will help to trouble-shoot integration problems and get support from ORCID. There is also a chance to get better performance/priority over "unknown" client.

## 4.9.2 User features

### 4.9.2.1 Login via ORCID

Once enabled, an option to login via ORCID is provided to the user among the other authentication methods configured in the system. The ORCID authentication doesn't allow the user to reset his password from DSpace.

---

432 <https://orcid.org/>



dspaceadmin@gmail.com

.....

Log in

or

Log in with Shibboleth

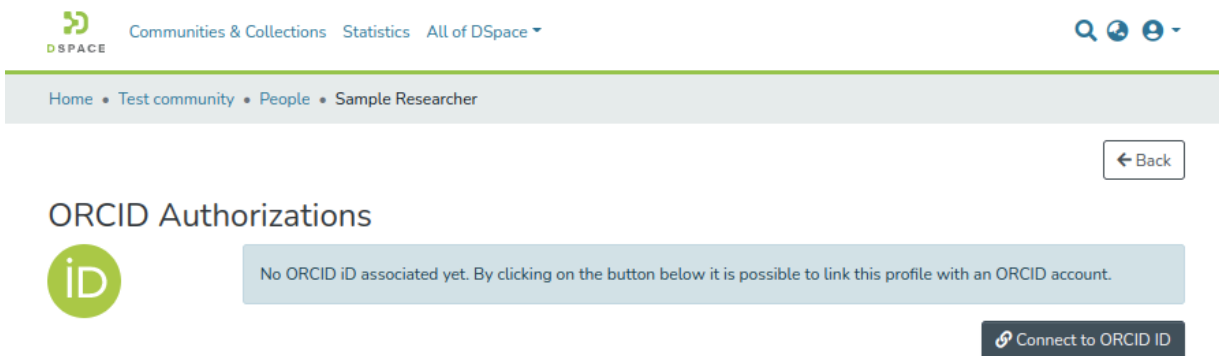
Log in with ORCID

New user? Click here to register.

Have you forgotten your password?

#### 4.9.2.2 Connect/Disconnect the local profile to ORCID

The researcher can connect (or disconnect) their DSpace local [Researcher Profile](#) (see page 443) with ORCID from the Person item detail page.



DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Test community • People • Sample Researcher

← Back

## ORCID Authorizations

**iD**

No ORCID iD associated yet. By clicking on the button below it is possible to link this profile with an ORCID account.

Connect to ORCID ID

The screenshot displays the DSpace user interface for ORCID management. At the top, the DSpace logo and navigation links (Communities & Collections, Statistics, All of DSpace) are visible. Below the navigation bar, the breadcrumb trail reads: Home • Objetos relacionados • People 2 • Famous Researcher. A 'Back' button is located in the top right corner of the main content area.

### ORCID Authorizations

The 'ORCID Authorizations' section is divided into two panels:

- Granted authorizations:** Contains a list of instructions:
  - Get your ORCID iD
  - Read your information with visibility set to Trusted Parties
  - Add/update your research activities
  - Add/update other information about you
- Missing authorizations:** Contains a green message box: "Great! This box is empty, so you have granted all access rights to use all functions offers by your institution."

Below these panels is a red button labeled "Disconnect from ORCID".

### ORCID Synchronization settings

The 'ORCID Synchronization settings' section includes:

- Synchronization mode:** A text box explaining the options: "Please select how you would like synchronization to ORCID to occur. The options include 'Manual' (you must send your data to ORCID manually), or 'Batch' (the system will send your data to ORCID via a scheduled script)." Below this is a dropdown menu currently set to "Manual".
- Publication preferences:** A text box: "Select whether to send your linked Publication entities to your ORCID record's list of works."
- Funding preferences:** A text box: "Select whether to send your linked Project entities to your ORCID record's list of funding information."
- Profile preferences:** A text box: "Select whether to send your biographical data or personal identifiers to your ORCID record."

Once a profile has been connected they can manage their synchronization preferences deciding what should be pushed to ORCID, including:

- biographic data
- Publication (entities) linked with their Researcher Profile. (Publication entities are synced to Works in ORCID.)
- Project (entities) linked with their Researcher Profile. (Project entities are synced to Fundings in ORCID.)

**NOTE:** The ORCID synchronization feature is disabled by default, even when ORCID Authentication is enabled. See Configuration section below for how to enable it.

## ORCID Synchronization settings

**Synchronization mode**

Please select how you would like synchronization to ORCID to occur. The options include "Manual" (you must send your data to ORCID manually), or "Batch" (the system will send your data to ORCID via a scheduled script).

Synchronization mode

**Publication preferences**

Select whether to send your linked Publication entities to your ORCID record's list of works.

Disabled  
 All publications

**Funding preferences**

Select whether to send your linked Project entities to your ORCID record's list of funding information.

Disabled  
 All fundings

**Profile preferences**

Select whether to send your biographical data or personal identifiers to your ORCID record.

Biographical data  
 Identifiers

[Update settings](#)

## ORCID Registry Queue

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

Type	Description	
	Publication for ORCID webinar - updated	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Update this entry on the ORCID registry</div> 

(see page 426)

The synchronization can happen automatically over the night or manually. The list of information that should be pushed or updated from DSpace to ORCID is presented in a queue and can be manually discarded or immediately pushed by the researcher.

### 4.9.2.3 Import publications from ORCID

It is possible to import a publication from ORCID using the "Import from external sources" button in the home page. Once you select the Publication entity type you will be able to find ORCID as a Source and you can get the list of publications (ORCID works) that appear in an ORCID profile by searching for its ORCID id.

Communities & Collections All of DSpace 🔍 🔄 🌐

---

Import a publication from an external source

**Search Results**  
Now showing 1 - 3 of 3

- Naturally enhanced neutralizing breadth against SARS-CoV-2 one year after infection.
- Publication Metadata in CERIF: Inspiration by FRBR
- The Impact of COVID-19 on the Optimal Management of Osteoporosis.

[← Back to MyDSpace](#)

(see page 426)

## 4.9.3 Configuration

### 4.9.3.1 Enable the integration

All the ORCID features requires a minimal common set of properties to configure in the `local.cfg`

```
These URLs are for testing against ORCID's Sandbox API
These are only useful for testing, and you must first request a Sandbox API Key
from ORCID
orcid.domain-url= https://sandbox.orcid.org
orcid.api-url = https://api.sandbox.orcid.org/v3.0
orcid.public-url = https://pub.sandbox.orcid.org/v3.0
Keep in mind, these API keys MUST be for the Sandbox API if you use
"sandbox.orcid.org" URLs above!
orcid.application-client-id = <YOUR-SANDBOX-ORCID-CLIENT-ID>
orcid.application-client-secret = <YOUR-SANDBOX-ORCID-CLIENT-SECRET>

Once you are ready to switch to Production, you need to update these settings to
use ORCID's production API
See https://github.com/ORCID/ORCID-Source/tree/master/orcid-api-web#endpoints
orcid.domain-url= https://orcid.org
orcid.api-url = https://api.orcid.org/v3.0
orcid.public-url = https://pub.orcid.org/v3.0
DON'T FORGET TO UPDATE YOUR API KEY! It must be a valid Public or Member API Key
orcid.application-client-id = <YOUR-PRODUCTION-ORCID-CLIENT-ID>
orcid.application-client-secret = <YOUR-PRODUCTION-ORCID-CLIENT-SECRET>
```

**To enable the main integration (i.e. connect a local profile with ORCID and push data to the ORCID registry) you need to be an ORCID Member<sup>433</sup>, get a Member API Key<sup>434</sup> and properly enable and configure the feature in DSpace.** To test ORCID integration, it's possible to use the ORCID Sandbox<sup>435</sup> (without being an ORCID member). However, to do so, you must request a Sandbox Member API Key<sup>436</sup>.

In the ORCID API Credentials request form you will be asked to enter one or more redirect URLs for you application (DSpace). You will need to enter here the root URLs of your REST and Angular interfaces, which could be different. Otherwise it will be sufficient to enter the URL of your Angular UI. For example, for the DSpace 7 official demo these are:

- Angular: <https://demo7.dspace.org> (please note the absence of a /home or any subrouting)
- REST: <https://api7.dspace.org> (please note the absence of a /server or any subrouting)

Once ORCID has reviewed and approved your request, you will get from them the Client ID and Client Secret that need to be set in the `local.cfg` among other properties See the configuration examples above.

Please note that by default DSpace will request permissions to READ and WRITE all the information from the ORCID profile, as this will enable support for all of the features. You can fine-tune that by overriding the following

<sup>433</sup> <https://info.orcid.org/membership/>

<sup>434</sup> <https://info.orcid.org/documentation/features/member-api/>

<sup>435</sup> <https://sandbox.orcid.org/>

<sup>436</sup> <https://info.orcid.org/register-a-client-application-sandbox-member-api/>

properties. Please note that if you are going to configure Public API Credentials you MUST update this configuration keeping only the `/authenticate` scope as all the other scopes require Member API.

```
The scopes to be granted by the user during the login on ORCID (see https://
info.orcid.org/faq/what-is-an-oauth-scope-and-which-scopes-does-orcid-support/)
orcid.scope = /authenticate
The below scopes are ONLY valid if you have a Member API Key. They should be
commented out if you only have a Public API Key
orcid.scope = /read-limited
orcid.scope = /activities/update
orcid.scope = /person/update
```

To enable **ORCID Authentication** you need to uncomment the following line in the `modules/authentication.cfg` file or add it to your `local.cfg`

```
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.OrcidAuthentication
```

Please note that you are NOT required to enable the ORCID Authentication to use the other ORCID features, including the synchronisation ones. It is also possible to use just the ORCID Authentication without enabling all the other features.

When a user logs in via ORCID the system will attempt to reuse an existing account looking up by email. If none is found then a new account is created in DSpace. It is possible to disable the creation of new accounts by setting the following property:

```
authentication-orcid.can-self-register = false
```

To enable **ORCID Synchronization**, you need to uncomment the following or add it to your `local.cfg`

```
the properties below are required only for the sync / linking part (not for
authentication or import)
orcid.synchronization-enabled = true
you need to enable the orcidqueue consumer to keep track of what need to be sync
between DSpace and ORCID
event.dispatcher.default.consumers = versioning, discovery, eperson, orcidqueue
```

The push of DSpace data (Person, Publication, Project) to ORCID is based on mappings defined in the `config/modules/orcid.cfg` file. You will find details below in the dedicated paragraphs.

The ORCID Synchronization features depend on other features that must be enabled: [DSpace User Profile](#)(see page 443), [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) at least Person, Publication, Project & OrgUnit.

The synchronization features are classified as *experimental* at the time of 7.3 and it **MUST** be enabled manually. Due to the strict validation rules applied on the ORCID side and the absence of friendly edit UI for the archived items in DSpace (see [issues#2876](#)<sup>437</sup>), it is hard at this time to achieve an optimal UX.

#### 4.9.3.2 Configure the push of information from DSpace to ORCID

Please note that many fields on the ORCID side are subject to validation, i.e. only values from controlled-list can be used and some fields are mandatory. The table below summarizes the validations that are defined at the time of DSpace 7.3. ORCID updates such rules periodically, usually modifying (enlarging) the controlled-list, and changes to the mandatory fields can also happen.

ORCID Entity	Corresponding DSpace Entity	Mandatory fields	Controlled fields
Person	Person		Country (iso-3166 2 code letter)
Work	Publication	Title Type Publication Date (>= 1900) External Identifier (at least one)	Type ( <a href="https://info.orcid.org/documentation/integration-and-api-faq/#easy-faq-2682">https://info.orcid.org/documentation/integration-and-api-faq/#easy-faq-2682</a> ) Identifier.Type ( <a href="https://pub.orcid.org/v3.0/identifiers">https://pub.orcid.org/v3.0/identifiers</a> )
Funding	Project	Title External Identifier (at least one) Funding Agency (Organisation) Currency if an Amount is provided	Amount.Currency ( <a href="https://www.iso.org/iso-4217-currency-codes.html">https://www.iso.org/iso-4217-currency-codes.html</a> )
Organisation	OrgUnit	External Identifier (at least one) Address City Country	See <a href="https://support.orcid.org/hc/en-us/articles/360006894674-Metadata-in-the-Funding-section">https://support.orcid.org/hc/en-us/articles/360006894674-Metadata-in-the-Funding-section</a> Country (iso-3166 2 code letter) Identifier.Type (ROR, LEI, CrossRef Funder ID, RINGOLD, GRID <sup>438</sup> )

<sup>437</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/2876>

<sup>438</sup> <https://github.com/ORCID/ORCID-Source/blob/master/orcid-core/src/main/java/org/orcid/core/orgs/OrgDisambiguatedSourceType.java>



To provide more meaningful messages to the user DSpace implements a local validation before trying to push the record to ORCID. This validation verifies the data using the rules above so that a specific message is displayed to the user. If for any reason another error is returned by ORCID a generic message is shown to the user and the exact technical message received by ORCID is logged in the `dspace.log` file and stored in the `orcidhistory` table.

The local validation can be turned off. This validation is mainly intended as a development/debug option and should be not enabled in production.

```
orcid.validation.work.enabled = true
orcid.validation.funding.enabled = true
```

### Mapping of the DSpace Person Items to ORCID Works

Metadata in a DSpace "Person" item, once that the item has been linked to ORCID by the researcher owning the ORCID profile, can be pushed to ORCID to fill the Profile Section of the ORCID Person using the `org.dspace.orcid.service.OrcidProfileSectionFactoryService` configured via this mapping bean:

```
<!-- Configuration of ORCID profile sections factory.
Each entry of sectionFactories must be an implementation of
OrcidProfileSectionFactory.-->
<bean class="org.dspace.orcid.service.impl.OrcidProfileSectionFactoryServiceImpl">
 <constructor-arg name="sectionFactories">
 <list>
 <bean class="org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidSimpleValueObjectFactory">
 <constructor-arg name="sectionType" value="OTHER_NAMES" />
 <constructor-arg name="preference" value="BIOGRAPHICAL" />
 <property name="metadataFields" value="{orcid.mapping.other-
names}" />
 </bean>
 <bean class="org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidSimpleValueObjectFactory">
 <constructor-arg name="sectionType" value="KEYWORDS" />
 <constructor-arg name="preference" value="BIOGRAPHICAL" />
 <property name="metadataFields" value="{orcid.mapping.keywords}" />
 </bean>
 <bean class="org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidSimpleValueObjectFactory">
 <constructor-arg name="sectionType" value="COUNTRY" />
 <constructor-arg name="preference" value="BIOGRAPHICAL" />
 <property name="metadataFields" value="{orcid.mapping.country}" />
 </bean>
 </list>
 </constructor-arg>
</bean>
```

```

 </bean>

 <bean class="org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidPersonExternalI
dentifierFactory">
 <constructor-arg name="sectionType" value="EXTERNAL_IDS" />
 <constructor-arg name="preference" value="IDENTIFIERS" />
 <property name="externalIds" value="{orcid.mapping.person-
external-ids}" />
 </bean>

 <bean class="org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidSimpleValueObjec
tFactory">
 <constructor-arg name="sectionType" value="RESEARCHER_URLS" />
 <constructor-arg name="preference" value="IDENTIFIERS" />
 <property name="metadataFields" value="{
{orcid.mapping.researcher-urls}" />
 </bean>

 </list>
</constructor-arg>
</bean>

```

The above configuration links each piece of information that can be synchronized from DSpace to ORCID with a preference that the user can manage on the DSpace side (i.e. sync of the keywords is linked to the BIOGRAPHICAL preference) and defines which DSpace metadata will be used to fill the ORCID field. The bean reads the metadata mapping from the `config/modules/orcid.cfg`

```

Other names mapping
orcid.mapping.other-names = person.name.variant
orcid.mapping.other-names = person.name.translated

Keywords mapping
orcid.mapping.keywords = dc.subject

Country mapping
orcid.mapping.country = person.country
orcid.mapping.country.converter =

Person External ids mapping
##orcid.mapping.person-external-ids syntax is <metadataField>::<type>
orcid.mapping.person-external-ids = person.identifier.scopus-author-id::SCOPUS
orcid.mapping.person-external-ids = person.identifier.rid::RID

Researcher urls mapping
orcid.mapping.researcher-urls = dc.identifier.uri

```

### Mapping of DSpace Publication items to ORCID Works

A DSpace "Publication" item is pushed to ORCID as a "Work" using the `org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidWorkFactory` configured via this mapping bean:

```

 <bean id="orcidWorkFactoryFieldMapping" class="org.dspace.app.orcid.model.OrcidWorkFactoryFieldMapping" >
 <property name="contributorFields" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.contributors}" />
 />
 <property name="externalIdentifierFields" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.external-ids}" />
 <property name="publicationDateField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.publication-date}" />
 <property name="titleField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.title}" />
 <property name="journalTitleField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.journal-title}" />
 <property name="shortDescriptionField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.short-description}" />
 <property name="subTitleField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.sub-title}" />
 <property name="languageField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.language}" />
 <property name="languageConverter" ref="\${orcid.mapping.work.language.converter}" />
 <property name="typeField" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.type}" />
 <property name="typeConverter" ref="\${orcid.mapping.work.type.converter}" />
 <property name="citationType" value="\${orcid.mapping.work.citation.type}" />
</bean>

```

that reads the mapping from the `config/modules/orcid.cfg` file:

```

Work (Publication) mapping
orcid.mapping.work.title = dc.title
orcid.mapping.work.sub-title =
orcid.mapping.work.short-description = dc.description.abstract
orcid.mapping.work.publication-date = dc.date.issued
orcid.mapping.work.language = dc.language.iso
orcid.mapping.work.language.converter = mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidLanguageCode
orcid.mapping.work.journal-title = dc.relation.ispartof
orcid.mapping.work.type = dc.type
orcid.mapping.work.type.converter = mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidPublicationType

##orcid.mapping.work.contributors syntax is <metadataField>::<role>
orcid.mapping.work.contributors = dc.contributor.author::author
orcid.mapping.work.contributors = dc.contributor.editor::editor

##orcid.mapping.work.external-ids syntax is <metadataField>::<type> or $simple-handle::<type>
##The full list of available external identifiers is available here https://
pub.orcid.org/v3.0/identifiers
orcid.mapping.work.external-ids = dc.identifier.doi::doi
orcid.mapping.work.external-ids = dc.identifier.scopus::eid
orcid.mapping.work.external-ids = dc.identifier.pmid::pmid
orcid.mapping.work.external-ids = $simple-handle::handle
orcid.mapping.work.external-ids = dc.identifier.isi::wosuid
orcid.mapping.work.external-ids = dc.identifier.issn::issn

```

In the above configuration the "simple" properties are mapped matching the ORCID field name on the left (i.e. short-description) with the DSpace metadata that holds such information (i.e. dc.description.abstract). For the ORCID Type field a special "converter" is configured so that the value of the DSpace metadata (i.e. dc.type) is mapped to the controlled-list of types accepted by ORCID (<https://info.orcid.org/faq/what-work-types-does-orcid-support/>). The value of the `orcid.mapping.work.type.converter` matches the name of a bean defined in the `config/spring/api/orcid-services.xml`

```
<bean name="mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidPublicationType" class="org.dspace.util.SimpleMapConverter" init-method="init">
 <property name="converterNameFile" value="orcid/mapConverter-dspace-to-orcid-publication-type.properties" />
 <property name="configurationService" ref="org.dspace.services.ConfigurationService" />
 <property name="defaultValue" value="other"/>
</bean>
```

Finally a special treatment is needed for the external ids as this is a complex field on the ORCID side composed of two values: the identifier type (from a controlled-list) and the identifier value. In this case the configuration maps a DSpace metadata field (i.e. dc.identifier.doi) to a specific identifier type (i.e. the part after :: , doi).

#### Mapping of DSpace Project items to ORCID Funding

A DSpace "Project" item is pushed to ORCID as a "Funding" using the

`org.dspace.orcid.model.factory.impl.OrcidFundingFactory` configured via this mapping bean:

```
<bean id="orcidFundingFactoryFieldMapping" class="org.dspace.orcid.model.OrcidFundingFieldMapping" >
 <property name="contributorFields" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.contributors}" />
 <property name="externalIdentifierFields" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.external-ids}" />
 <property name="titleField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.title}" />
 <property name="typeField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.type}" />
 <property name="typeConverter" ref="{orcid.mapping.funding.type.converter}" />
/>
 <property name="amountField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.amount}" />
 <property name="amountCurrencyField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.amount.currency}" />
 <property name="amountCurrencyConverter" ref="{orcid.mapping.funding.amount.currency.converter}" />
 <property name="descriptionField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.description}" />
 <property name="startDateField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.start-date}" />
 <property name="endDateField" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.end-date}" />
 <property name="organizationRelationshipType" value="{orcid.mapping.funding.organization-relationship-type}" />
</bean>
```

that reads the mapping from the `config/modules/orcid.cfg` file

```
Funding mapping
orcid.mapping.funding.title = dc.title
orcid.mapping.funding.type =
orcid.mapping.funding.type.converter = mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidFundingType
##orcid.mapping.funding.external-ids syntax is <metadataField>::<type>
##The full list of available external identifiers is available here https://
pub.orcid.org/v3.0/identifiers
orcid.mapping.funding.external-ids = dc.identifier::grant_number
orcid.mapping.funding.external-ids = dc.identifier.other::other-id
orcid.mapping.funding.description = dc.description
orcid.mapping.funding.start-date = project.startDate
orcid.mapping.funding.end-date = project.endDate
##orcid.mapping.funding.contributors syntax is <metadataField>::<type>
orcid.mapping.funding.contributors = project.investigator::lead
orcid.mapping.funding.organization-relationship-type = isOrgUnitOfProject
orcid.mapping.funding.amount = project.amount
orcid.mapping.funding.amount.currency = project.amount.currency
orcid.mapping.funding.amount.currency.converter =
mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidAmountCurrency
```

in the above configuration the "simple" properties are mapped matching the ORCID field name on the left (i.e. description) with the DSpace metadatafield that holds such information (i.e dc.description). For the ORCID Type field a special "converter" is configured so that the value of the DSpace metadata (i.e. dc.type) is mapped to the controlled-list of types accepted by ORCID (<https://support.orcid.org/hc/en-us/articles/360006894674-Metadata-in-the-Funding-section>). The value of the `orcid.mapping.funding.type.converter` matches the name of a bean defined in the `config/spring/api/orcid-services.xml`. The same apply for the currency `orcid.mapping.funding.amount.currency.converter = mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidAmountCurrency`

```
<bean name="mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidFundingType" class="org.dspace.util.SimpleMapConverter" init-method="init">
 <property name="converterNameFile" value="orcid/mapConverter-dspace-to-orcid-funding-type.properties" />
 <property name="configurationService" ref="org.dspace.services.ConfigurationService" />
 <property name="defaultValue" value="" />
</bean>

<bean name="mapConverterDSpaceToOrcidAmountCurrency" class="org.dspace.util.SimpleMapConverter" init-method="init">
 <property name="converterNameFile" value="orcid/mapConverter-dspace-to-orcid-amount-currency.properties" />
 <property name="configurationService" ref="org.dspace.services.ConfigurationService" />
 <property name="defaultValue" value="" />
</bean>
```

Finally a special treatment is needed for Funder that is a mandatory field on the ORCID side. In this case the mapping defines which relation is used to link the Project with the Funder (OrgUnit)

```
orcid.mapping.funding.organization-relationship-type = isOrgUnitOfProject
```

#### 4.9.3.3 Configure the import features

The Import features from ORCID have been implemented using the [Live Import Framework](#)(see page 358)

The following bean is used to configure the **import of person records from ORCID**. It is activated as an external source in `config/spring/api/external-services.xml`

```
<bean class="org.dspace.external.provider.impl.OrcidV3AuthorDataProvider" init-
method="init">
 <property name="sourceIdentifier" value="orcid"/>
 <property name="orcidUrl" value="\${orcid.domain-url}" />
 <property name="clientId" value="\${orcid.application-client-id}" />
 <property name="clientSecret" value="\${orcid.application-client-secret}" />
 <property name="OAUTHUrl" value="\${orcid.token-url}" />
 <property name="orcidRestConnector" ref="orcidRestConnector"/>
 <property name="supportedEntityTypes">
 <list>
 <value>Person</value>
 </list>
 </property>
</bean>
```

the mapping between ORCID Person and the DSpace Person Item is the following, currently hard-coded:

ORCID	DSpace
Name/FamilyName	person.firstName
Name/GivenName	person.givenName
Name/Path	person.identifier.orcid
ORCID Profile URL	dc.identifier.uri

The following bean is instead used to configure the **import of publication records** from ORCID (Work)

```
<bean id="orcidPublicationDataProvider" class="org.dspace.external.provider.impl.
OrcidPublicationDataProvider">
 <property name="sourceIdentifier" value="orcidWorks"/>
```

```

 <property name="fieldMapping" ref="orcidPublicationDataProviderFieldMapping"/
 >
 <property name="supportedEntityTypes">
 <list>
 <value>Publication</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 </bean>

```

The mapping of the ORCID Work metadata to the DSpace metadata is performed by the following bean in `config/spring/api/orcid-services.xml`

```

 <bean id="orcidPublicationDataProviderFieldMapping" class="org.dspace.orcid.model
.OrcidWorkFieldMapping" >
 <property name="contributorFields" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.contributors}" />
 <property name="externalIdentifierFields" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.external-ids}" />
 <property name="publicationDateField" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.issued-date}" />
 <property name="titleField" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.title}" />
 <property name="journalTitleField" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.is-part-of}" />
 <property name="shortDescriptionField" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.description}" />
 <property name="languageField" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.language}" />
 <property name="languageConverter" ref="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.language.converter}" />
 <property name="typeField" value="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.type}" />
 <property name="typeConverter" ref="{orcid.external-
data.mapping.publication.type.converter}" />
 </bean>

```

that reads the mapping from the `config/modules/orcid.cfg` file.

Please note that such mapping is separated from the mapping used to push information from DSpace to ORCID but usually, as provided in the default configuration, the mapping should be the same.

```

Work (Publication) external-data.mapping
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.title = dc.title

orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.description = dc.description.abstract
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.issued-date = dc.date.issued
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.language = dc.language.iso

```

```

orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.language.converter =
mapConverterOrcidToDspaceLanguageCode
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.is-part-of = dc.relation.ispartof
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.type = dc.type
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.type.converter =
mapConverterOrcidToDspacePublicationType

##orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.contributors syntax is
<metadataField>::<role>
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.contributors = dc.contributor.author::author
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.contributors = dc.contributor.editor::editor

##orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.external-ids syntax is
<metadataField>::<type> or $simple-handle::<type>
##The full list of available external identifiers is available here https://
pub.orcid.org/v3.0/identifiers
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.external-ids = dc.identifier.doi::doi
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.external-ids = dc.identifier.scopus::eid
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.external-ids = dc.identifier.pmid::pmid
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.external-ids = dc.identifier.isi::wosuid
orcid.external-data.mapping.publication.external-ids = dc.identifier.issn::issn

```

#### 4.9.3.4 Configure the author lookup in submission

Please note that there are two different possibilities:

- via an [ORCID lookup authority](#) (see page 374) available for a DSpace repository that is not using Configurable Entities
- via a relation among the research output item (Publication, etc.) and a Person Item bound to the ORCID Person External Source defined in the previous paragraph

## 4.9.4 Troubleshooting & common issues

The troubleshooting guide from ORCID can help as well <https://info.orcid.org/documentation/integration-guide/troubleshooting/>

### 4.9.4.1 I'm having trouble testing the ORCID integration. What should I check?

Please double check the documentation and the other FAQs to be sure that you have followed all of the instructions to enable the integration correctly. If you still have trouble, contact the [DSpace tech community via email or slack](#)<sup>439</sup> providing as much detail as possible. If the issue is related to the synchronization of DSpace local data with ORCID it would be useful to share information about the content of your `orcidhistory` table and any relevant message that you could have in the `dspace.log` file.

<sup>439</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Support>



#### 4.9.4.2 I cannot find the ORCID features described by this page in my installation

The ORCID features must be enabled by changing some configuration files. Please refer to the **Enable the integration section** above.

#### 4.9.4.3 I'm unable to authenticate via ORCID

If you have correctly enabled the ORCID authentication feature and you are able to start the OAuth flow with ORCID but get a failure when you are redirected back to DSpace, it could be due to privacy settings on your ORCID record. The DSpace ORCID authentication **requires that you release an email address to match your ORCID account with a DSpace account** or to create a new one at your first login. Make your ORCID account email address public or visible to trusted parties. This is often not the case for a freshly created account on ORCID.

If you are encountering this issue, you'll see a message like this in your "dspace.log" file on the backend:

```
2022-08-04 11:43:42,124 ERROR unknown unknown
org.dspace.authenticate.OrcidAuthenticationBean @ An error occurs registering a new
EPerson from ORCID
java.lang.IllegalStateException: The email is configured private on orcid
```

#### 4.9.4.4 I'm having trouble creating test accounts on ORCID to experiment with the features

Please refer to the ORCID trouble-shooting guide <https://info.orcid.org/documentation/integration-guide/troubleshooting/> A frequent mistake working with the ORCID sandbox environment is to forget that only email addresses @mailinator.com are allowed for account created on the sandbox. Remember to validate your email address once the account as been created visiting the online inbox at mailinator.com

#### 4.9.4.5 I have configured my Public ORCID API credentials in DSpace but I get an error attempting to login via ORCID

When you use public ORCID API credentials you can only use a subset of the integration features (check). Moreover you need to limit the scopes (permissions) requested to the user via the ORCID authentication to the / `authenticate` scope. Please check the **Enable the integration section** above.

#### 4.9.4.6 I don't find my publications looking up for my ORCID id

Please check " `config/modules/orcid.cfg` " (or your `local.cfg` ) to see if the system has been properly configured to use the production ORCID API. There is a chance that your installation is still configured to use the ORCID Sandbox that is appropriate for the testing and development phase of the integration. The ORCID sandbox doesn't contain the same data as the Public environment.

#### 4.9.4.7 I cannot push all my publications, only few or none of them are listed in the queue

Please double check that the `orcidqueue` consumer has been enabled (in `dspace.cfg` or `local.cfg`) and that the orcid settings of your profile have the "All publications" checkbox flagged. ORCID features require the use of the new [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198). Only Publication item are synchronized with ORCID; simple "untyped" Items will not be synchronized. Please consider to convert your legacy collection to "Publication" collection and set a `dspace.entity.type = Publication` metadata on your legacy items.

#### 4.9.4.8 Push of publications to ORCID fails

This is usually due to validation errors. ORCID could complain about missing mandatory fields or invalid values for fields that are linked to a controlled-list. Please check the table in the ***Configure the push of information from DSpace to ORCID*** and the ***Mapping of DSpace Publication items to ORCID Works paragraph*** to solve this. Your `dspace.log` file may also provide useful error messages.

#### 4.9.4.9 Push of projects to ORCID fails

This is usually due to validation errors. Make sure that all required metadata fields exist on the Project Entity and any linked OrgUnit Entities. ORCID could complain about missing mandatory fields or invalid values for fields that are linked to a controlled-list. Please check the table in the ***Configure the push of information from DSpace to ORCID*** and the ***Mapping of DSpace Project items to ORCID Funding paragraph*** to solve this. Your `dspace.log` file may also provide useful error messages.

## 4.10 Researcher Profiles

The DSpace Researcher Profile feature has been introduced in DSpace 7.3 to support the [ORCID Integration](#)(see page 426) work but can be used alone. It is turned off by default and must be enabled manually

A DSpace Researcher Profile is a special Person Entity (item) that is linked with exactly one EPerson (DSpace account). This linked EPerson owns the profile (Person Item), including having WRITE permission on it. The link between the Person Item and the EPerson is managed in the Person's `dspace.object.owner` metadata field. This field is configured to hold authority values and will contain the `uuid` of the EPerson that owns the profile.

Here a summary of the key concepts & requirements of the feature:

- Profiles require [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198) to be enabled, as every Researcher Profile is represented by a Person Entity.
- Profiles can be linked to only one EPerson (user account). That EPerson has full rights to manage the profile, including whether the profile is publicly visible or private.
- Optionally, Profiles can be synchronized (or initially created) via [ORCID Integration](#)(see page 426).

When the feature is enabled, the user can create a researcher profile from his Profile (account page)

DSpace logo: Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • Update Profile

## Update Profile

Researcher Profile

Researcher profile not yet associated

[+ Create new](#)

If a Person Item already exists in the system, matching the account email address, this Person Item is offered to the user:

DSpace logo: Communities & Collections

Home • Update Profile

## Update Profile

Researcher Profile

Researcher profile not yet associated

[+ Create new](#)

Identify

Email Address

Profile tips

These are existing profiles that may be related to you. If you recognize yourself in one of these profiles, select it and on the detail page, among the options, choose to claim it. Otherwise you can create a new profile from scratch using the button below.

**Person**  
Luca Giamminonni

None of these are mine [+ Create a new one](#)

Once a profile has been created or claimed, the user can make it public (Anonymous READ) or private:

## Update Profile

Researcher Profile

Researcher profile associated

Status:  PUBLIC

[+ Create new](#) [View](#) [Delete](#)

By default, deletion of the researcher profile does NOT delete the corresponding Person Item. Instead, it just unlinks the Person Item from the EPerson account. This behavior can be changed as specified in the **Advanced configuration** section below.

### 4.10.1 Enable the feature

To enable the feature you need to set the following property (uncommenting it in the `config/modules/researcher-profile.cfg` or adding it to the `config/local.cfg` )

```
researcher-profile.entity-type = Person
```

You can specify a different Entity Type for the item that can be used as profile. This is an advanced setting -- change it only if you know what are you doing and have implemented specific customisation.

You need to enable also the EPerson authority for the `dspace.object.owner` . Uncomment the following lines in the `config/modules/authority.cfg`:

```
Configuration settings required for Researcher Profiles
These settings ensure "dspace.object.owner" field are indexed by Authority Control
choices.plugin.dspace.object.owner = EPersonAuthority
choices.presentation.dspace.object.owner = suggest
authority.controlled.dspace.object.owner = true
```

Last, you need to ensure that at least one Collection is configured to accept Person entities. Only EPersons having the submission right in such a Collection will be able to create profiles. There are many possibilities for using these settings to control who may or may not create a profile.

### 4.10.2 Advanced configuration

You can configure some aspects of the Profile feature in the `config/modules/researcher-profile.cfg`

Property:	<code>researcher-profile.entity-type</code>
Example Value:	<code>Person</code>
Informational Note:	The type of Entity to use for Researcher Profile items. By default, the Person Entity is used, as this is provided out-of-the-box in DSpace. This would only need to be modified if you have created a heavily customized <a href="#">Configurable Entities</a> (see page 198) data model which does NOT include Person.
Property:	<code>researcher-profile.collection.uuid</code>
Example Value:	[collection-uuid]

Informational Note:	<p>UUID of the Collection where all Researcher Profiles should be created by default. This Collection MUST be configured to accept Person Entities (or the entity type specified in "researcher-profile.entity-type").</p> <p>By default this is UNSPECIFIED. The default behavior is that the person's Researcher Profile will be created in the Collection in DSpace which is configured to accept Person Entities and where the user has permissions to submit. If multiple Collections of this type are available, then the first one found will be used.</p>
Property:	<code>researcher-profile.hard-delete.enabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>false</code>
Informational note	<p>Whether to enable "hard delete" when a Researcher Profile is deleted by an EPerson. When "hard delete" is enabled (set to true), then anytime an EPerson deletes their Researcher Profile, the underlying Person Entity will be deleted (i.e. this acts as a permanent deletion). When "hard delete" is disabled (set to false, the default value), then anytime an EPerson deletes their Researcher Profile, it will simply be "unlinked". In other words, the underlying Person Entity will be kept in the system.</p>
Property:	<code>researcher-profile.set-new-profile-visible</code>
Example Value:	<code>false</code>
Informational note	<p>Whether to make a new Researcher Profile "visible" (i.e. allow anonymous access) on creation. When set to "false" (default value), a newly created Researcher Profile will only be accessible to the EPerson who created it. That EPerson may chose to make to visible (i.e. allow anonymous access) at a later time. When set to "true", a newly created Researcher Profile will be immediately accessible to anonymous users. But, the EPerson who created it may chose to hide it (i.e. disallow anonymous access) at a later time.</p>

### 4.10.3 Troubleshooting

#### 4.10.3.1 I cannot find this feature

The feature needs to be enabled explicitly. Please follow the instruction in the **Enable the feature** section above.

#### 4.10.3.2 The users sees an error when they try to create their profile

The feature requires that the Person entity be configured in the data model (see [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198)) and the user must have permission to submit in at least one collection configured to accept Person entities. Please

double check that the EPersonAuthority is bound to the `dspace.object.owner` metadata -- see the **Enable the feature** section above.

## 4.11 Statistics and Metrics

- [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447)
- [DSpace Google Analytics Statistics](#)(see page 471)
- [Exchange usage statistics with IRUS](#)(see page 475)

### 4.11.1 SOLR Statistics

DSpace uses the Apache SOLR application underlying the statistics. SOLR enables performant searching and adding to vast amounts of (usage) data.

Unlike previous versions, enabling statistics in DSpace does not require additional installation or customization. All the necessary software is included.

- [What is exactly being logged ?](#)(see page 447)
  - [Common stored fields for all usage events](#)(see page 447)
  - [Unique stored fields for bitstream downloads](#)(see page 449)
  - [Unique stored fields for search queries](#)(see page 449)
  - [Unique stored fields for workflow events](#)(see page 449)
- [Web User Interface Elements](#)(see page 449)
  - [Pageview and Download statistics](#)(see page 449)
    - [Home page](#)(see page 449)
    - [Community home page](#)(see page 449)
    - [Collection home page](#)(see page 449)
    - [Item home page](#)(see page 449)
  - [Search Query Statistics](#)(see page 449)
  - [Workflow Event Statistics](#)(see page 451)
- [Architecture](#)(see page 451)
- [Configuration settings for Statistics](#)(see page 451)
  - [Pre-1.6 Statistics settings](#)(see page 457)
- [Statistics Administration](#)(see page 457)
  - [Converting older DSpace logs into SOLR usage data](#)(see page 457)
  - [Statistics Client Utility](#)(see page 457)
  - [Anonymizing Statistics](#)(see page 457)
- [Custom Reporting - Querying SOLR Directly](#)(see page 457)
  - [Resources](#)(see page 457)
  - [Examples](#)(see page 457)
    - [Top downloaded items by a specific user](#)(see page 457)
- [Managing the City Database File](#)(see page 458)

#### 4.11.1.1 What is exactly being logged ?

After the introduction of the SOLR Statistics logging, every pageview and file download is logged in a dedicated SOLR statistics core.

In addition to the already existing logging of pageviews and downloads, DSpace also logs search queries users enter in the DSpace search dialog and workflow events.

### DSpace 7.0 does not yet support all features

In DSpace 7.0, only usage statistics (pageview, downloads) are logged. Search statistics and workflow reports (which were available in v6) are not yet supported, but are both scheduled to be restored in a later 7.x release (currently 7.1 for workflow reports, and 7.2 for search statistics), see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>440</sup>

### Workflow Events logging

Only workflow events, initiated and executed by a physical user are being logged. Automated workflow steps or ingest procedures are currently **not** being logged by the workflow events logger.

The logging happens at the server side, and doesn't require a javascript like Google Analytics does, to provide usage data. Definition of which fields are to be stored happens in the file **dspace/solr/statistics/conf/schema.xml**.

Although they are stored in the same index, the stored fields for views, search queries and workflow events are different. A new field, `statistics_type` determines which kind of a usage event you are dealing with. The three possible values for this field are **view**, **search** and **workflow**.

```
<field name="statistics_type" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="true" />
```

Common stored fields for all usage events

```
<field name="type" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="true" />
<field name="id" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="true" />
<field name="ip" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="time" type="date" indexed="true" stored="true" required="true" />
<field name="epersonid" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="continent" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="country" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="countryCode" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="city" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="longitude" type="float" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="latitude" type="float" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="owningComm" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" multiValued="true"/>
<field name="owningColl" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" multiValued="true"/>
<field name="owningItem" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" multiValued="true"/>
<field name="dns" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
```

<sup>440</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

```
<field name="userAgent" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="isBot" type="boolean" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="referrer" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"/>
<field name="uid" type="uuid" indexed="true" stored="true" default="NEW" />
<field name="statistics_type" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="true" default="view" />
```

The combination of `type` (see page 829) and `id` determines which resource (either community, collection, item page or file download) has been requested.

#### Unique stored fields for bitstream downloads

```
<field name="bundleName" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"
multiValued="true" />
```

#### Unique stored fields for search queries

```
<field name="query" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"
multiValued="true"/>
<field name="scopeType" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"
/>
<field name="scopeId" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="rpp" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="sortBy" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="sortOrder" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" /
>
<field name="page" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
```

#### Unique stored fields for workflow events

```
<field name="workflowStep" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"
" multiValued="true"/>
<field name="previousWorkflowStep" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true"
required="false" multiValued="true"/>
<field name="owner" type="string" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"
multiValued="true"/>
<field name="submitter" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false"
/>
<field name="actor" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="false" />
<field name="workflowItemId" type="integer" indexed="true" stored="true" required="fa
lse" />
```



### 4.11.1.2 Web User Interface Elements

#### Pageview and Download statistics

In the UI, pageview and download statistics can be accessed from the "Statistics" navigation menu near the header. That statistics page is "context aware", so it will show the usage statistics for whatever page (site, Community, Collection) you are currently on.

If you are not seeing the menu, it's likely that they are only enabled for administrators in your installation. Change the configuration parameter "authorization.admin.usage" in usage-statistics.cfg to false in order to make statistics visible for all repository visitors.

#### Home page

Starting from the repository homepage, the statistics page displays the top 10 most popular items of the entire repository.

#### Community home page

The following statistics are available for the community home pages:

- Total visits of the current community home page
- Visits of the community home page over a timespan of the last 7 months
- Top 10 country from where the visits originate
- Top 10 cities from where the visits originate

#### Collection home page

The following statistics are available for the collection home pages:

- Total visits of the current collection home page
- Visits of the collection home over a timespan of the last 7 months
- Top 10 country from where the visits originate
- Top 10 cities from where the visits originate

#### Item home page

The following statistics are available for the item home pages:

- Total visits of the item
- Total visits for the bitstreams attached to the item
- Visits of the item over a timespan of the last 7 months
- Top 10 country views from where the visits originate
- Top 10 cities from where the visits originate

#### Search Query Statistics

##### **DSpace 7.0 does not yet support**

Search query statistics are not supported in 7.0, but are scheduled to be released in a later 7.x release (currently 7.2), see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>441</sup>.

---

<sup>441</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

The below screenshots and instructions are for 6.x and will need updating for 7.x once this feature is completed.

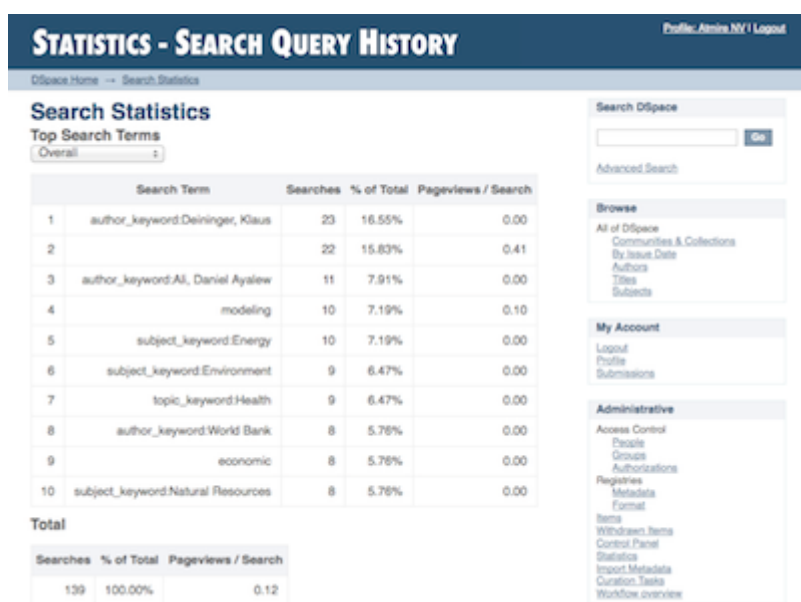
In the UI, search query statistics can be accessed from the lower end of the navigation menu.

If you are not seeing the link labelled "search statistics", it is likely that they are only enabled for administrators in your installation. Change the configuration parameter "authorization.admin.search" in usage-statistics.cfg to false in order to make statistics visible for all repository visitors.

The dropdown on top of the page allows you to modify the time frame for the displayed statistics.

The Pageviews/Search column tracks the amount of pages visited after a particular search term. Therefore a zero in this column means that after executing a search for a specific keyword, not a single user has clicked a single result in the list.

If you are using Discovery, note that clicking the [facets](#)<sup>442</sup> also counts as a search, because clicking a [facet](#)<sup>443</sup> sends a search query to the Discovery index.



## Workflow Event Statistics

### DSpace 7.0 does not yet support

Workflow event statistics are not supported in 7.0, but are scheduled to be released in a later 7.x release (currently 7.1), see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>444</sup>.

The below screenshots and instructions are for 6.x and will need updating for 7.x once this feature is completed.

In the UI, search query statistics can be accessed from the lower end of the navigation menu.

If you are not seeing the link labelled "Workflow statistics", it is likely that they are only enabled for administrators in your installation. Change the configuration parameter "authorization.admin.workflow" in usage-statistics.cfg to false in order to make statistics visible for all repository visitors.

<sup>442</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC3x/Discovery#Discovery-WhatisaSidebarFacet>

<sup>443</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC3x/Discovery#Discovery-WhatisaSidebarFacet>

<sup>444</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

The dropdown on top of the page allows you to modify the time frame for the displayed statistics.

**Workflow Statistics**

Workflow Statistics  
Overall

	Step	Performed
1	Accept/Reject/Edit Metadata Step Pool	624
2	Accept/Reject/Edit Metadata Step	610
3	Edit Metadata Step Pool	384
4	Accept/Reject Step Pool	357
5	Accept/Reject Step	290
6	Score Review Pool	256
7	Score Review	215
8	Single User Review Pool	145
9	Edit Metadata Step	103
10	Score Review Evaluation	94

#### 4.11.1.3 Architecture

The DSpace Statistics Implementation is a Client/Server architecture based on Solr for collecting usage events in the User Interface or REST API applications of DSpace. Solr must be installed separately from DSpace.

#### 4.11.1.4 Configuration settings for Statistics

In the `{dspace.dir}/config/modules/solr-statistics.cfg` file review the following fields. These fields can be edited in place, or overridden in your own local.cfg config file (see [Configuration Reference](#) (see page 724)).

Property:	solr-statistics.server
Example Values:	solr-statistics.server = <a href="http://127.0.0.1/solr/statistics">http://127.0.0.1/solr/statistics</a> solr-statistics.server = \${solr.server}/statistics

Informational Note:	<p>Is used by the SolrLogger Client class to connect to the Solr server over http and perform updates and queries. In most cases, this can (and should) be set to localhost (or 127.0.0.1).</p> <p>To determine the correct path, you can use a tool like <code>wget</code> to see where Solr is responding on your server. For example, you'd want to send a query to Solr like the following:</p> <pre>wget http://127.0.0.1/solr/statistics/select?q=**</pre> <p>Assuming you get an HTTP 200 OK response, then you should set <code>solr.log.server</code> to the '/statistics' URL of 'http://127.0.0.1/solr/statistics' (essentially removing the "/select?q=:" query off the end of the responding URL.)</p>
Property:	solr-statistics.query.filter.bundles
Example Value:	solr-statistics.query.filter.bundles=ORIGINAL
Informational Note:	A comma separated list that contains the bundles for which the file statistics will be displayed.
Property:	solr-statistics.query.filter.spiderIp
Example Value:	solr-statistics.query.filter.spiderIp = false
Informational Note:	If true, statistics queries will filter out spider IPs -- use with caution, as this often results in extremely long query strings.
Property:	solr-statistics.query.filter.isBot
Example Value:	solr-statistics.query.filter.isBot = true
Informational Note:	If true, statistics queries will filter out events flagged with the "isBot" field. This is the recommended method of filtering spiders from statistics.

Property:	solr-statistics.autoCommit
Example Value:	solr-statistics.autoCommit = true
Informational Note:	<p>If true (default), then all view statistics will be committed to Solr whenever the next autoCommit is triggered. This is recommended behavior.</p> <p>If false, then view statistics will be committed to Solr <i>immediately</i> (i.e. via an explicit commit call). This setting is untested in Production scenarios, and is primarily used by automated integration tests (to verify that the statistics engine is working properly).</p>
Property:	solr-statistics.spiderips.urls
Example Value:	<p>solr-statistics.spiderips.urls =</p> <pre>http://iplists.com/google.txt, \ http://iplists.com/inktomi.txt, \ http://iplists.com/lycos.txt, \ http://iplists.com/infoseek.txt, \ http://iplists.com/altavista.txt, \ http://iplists.com/excite.txt, \ http://iplists.com/misc.txt</pre>
Informational Note:	<p>List of URLs to download spiders files into [dspace]/config/spiders. These files contain lists of known spider IPs and are utilized by the SolrLogger to flag usage events with an "isBot" field, or ignore them entirely.</p> <p>The "stats-util" command can be used to force an update of spider files, regenerate "isBot" fields on indexed events, and delete spiders from the index. For usage, run:</p> <pre>dspace stats-util -h</pre> <p>from your [dspace]/bin directory</p>

In the `{dspace.dir}/config/modules/usage-statistics.cfg` file review the following fields. These fields can be edited in place, or overridden in your own local.cfg config file (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)).

Property:	usage-statistics.dbfile
Example Value:	usage-statistics.dbfile = \${dspace.dir}/config/GeoLite2-City.mmdb
Informational Note:	<p>References the location of the installed GeoLite or DB-IP City "mmdb" database file. This file is utilized by the LocationUtils to calculate the location of client requests based on IP address.</p> <p>NOTE: This database file MUST be downloaded, installed and updated using third-party tools. See the "<a href="#">Managing the City Database File</a>(see page 458)" section below.</p>
Property:	usage-statistics.resolver.timeout
Example Value:	usage-statistics.resolver.timeout = 200
Informational Note:	Timeout in milliseconds for DNS resolution of origin hosts/IPs. Setting this value too high may result in solr exhausting your connection pool.
Property:	useProxies (Set in dspace.cfg)
Example Value:	useProxies = true
Informational Note:	Will cause Statistics logging to look for X-Forward URI to detect clients IP that have accessed it through a Proxy service (e.g. the Apache mod_proxy). Allows detection of client IP when accessing DSpace. [Note: This setting is found in the DSpace Logging section of dspace.cfg]
Property:	usage-statistics.authorization.admin.usage
Example Value:	usage-statistics.authorization.admin.usage = true

Informational Note:	When set to true, only general administrators, collection and community administrators are able to access the pageview and download statistics from the web user interface. As a result, the links to access statistics are hidden for non logged-in admin users. Setting this property to "false" will display the links to access statistics to anyone, making them publicly available.
Property:	usage-statistics.authorization.admin.search
Example Value:	usage-statistics.authorization.admin.search = true
Informational Note:	When set to true, only system, collection or community administrators are able to access statistics on search queries.
Property:	usage-statistics.authorization.admin.workflow
Example Value:	usage-statistics.authorization.admin.workflow = true
Informational Note:	When set to true, only system, collection or community administrators are able to access statistics on workflow events.
Property:	usage-statistics.logBots
Example Value:	usage-statistics.logBots = true
Informational Note:	When this property is set to false, and IP is detected as a spider, the event is not logged. When this property is set to true, the event will be logged with the "isBot" field set to true. (see solr-statistics.query.filter.* for query filter options)
Property:	usage-statistics.shardedByYear
Example Value:	usage-statistics.shardedByYear = false

Informational Note:	When set to "true", the DSpace statistics engine will look for additional Solr Shards (per year) when compiling all usage statistics. Therefore, if you are regularly running "stats-utils -s" (as documented in the " <a href="#">Solr Sharding By Year</a> " <sup>445</sup> section of the "SOLR Statistics Maintenance" page), then you should set this to "true". By default, it is "false", which tells the statistics engine to only compile usage statistics based on what is found in the current Solr core.
---------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### Pre-1.6 Statistics settings

##### **DSpace 7.0 does not yet support**

Log-based statistics not supported in 7.0. They are under discussion as this feature is not widely used. Tentatively they are scheduled for a possible release/replacement in 7.1, see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>446</sup>.

Older versions of DSpace featured static reports generated from the log files. They still persist in DSpace today but are completely independent from the SOLR based statistics.

The following configuration parameters applicable to these reports can be found in dspace.cfg.

```
Statistical Report Configuration Settings

should the stats be publicly available? should be set to false if you only
want administrators to access the stats, or you do not intend to generate
any
report.public = false

directory where live reports are stored
report.dir = ${dspace.dir}/reports/
```

These fields are not used by the new 1.6 Statistics, but are only related to the Statistics from previous DSpace releases

#### 4.11.1.5 Statistics Administration

##### Converting older DSpace logs into SOLR usage data

If you have upgraded from a previous version of DSpace, converting older log files ensures that you carry over older usage stats from before the upgrade.

##### Statistics Client Utility

The command line interface (CLI) scripts can be used to clean the usage database from additional spider traffic and other maintenance tasks. As of DSpace 3.0, a script has been added to split up the monolithic SOLR core into individual cores each containing a year of statistics.

<sup>445</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC6x/SOLR+Statistics+Maintenance#SOLRStatisticsMaintenance-SolrShardingByYear>

<sup>446</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>



## Anonymizing Statistics

DSpace provides a commandline script (`./dspace anonymize-statistics`) which allows you to anonymize your statistics to better comply with GDPR and similar privacy regulations.

The script will anonymise the IP values by rewriting ('masking') the last part. This mask is configurable, both for ipv4 and ipv6 addresses.

- For IPv4 addresses, the last number will be replaced by the mask, defined by the configuration key 'anonymise\_statistics.ip\_v4\_mask' which defaults to '254'.  
For example, 109.74.16.171 is rewritten as 109.74.16.254
- For IPv6 address, the last two numbers will be replaced by the mask, defined by the configuration key 'anonymise\_statistics.ip\_v6\_mask' which defaults to 'FFFF:FFFF'. For example,  
2001:0db8:85a3:0000:0000:8a2e:0370:7334 is rewritten as 2001:0db8:85a3:0000:0000:8a2e:FFFF:FFFF

For each anonymised record, the DNS field is also replaced by "anonymised".

Script options available:

- The program only processes records older than 90 days. This period can be altered with the config 'anonymise\_statistics.time\_limit' (expressed in days) in `usage-statistics.cfg`.
- "-s [sleep]" : The script takes an optional parameter '-s [sleep]' (expressed in ms), which will make the Java thread sleep between the calls to Solr to reduce the load impact.
- "-t [threads]" : The Solr service commit mechanism is also optimised by adding multi-threading support. The script takes an optional parameter '-t [threads]' to indicate how many threads the Solr service can use for this, if not given the thread count defaults to 2.

**Statistical records can also be anonymised the moment they are created.** Enabling this feature can be done by setting the configuration parameter "anonymise\_statistics.anonymise\_on\_log" to true in "usage-statistics.cfg". When this configuration property is not set, the feature is disabled by default.

### 4.11.1.6 Custom Reporting - Querying SOLR Directly

When the web user interface does not offer you the statistics you need, you can greatly expand the reports by querying the SOLR index directly.

#### Resources

- <https://www.safaribooksonline.com/library/view/apache-solr-enterprise/9781782161363/>
- <https://lucidworks.com/blog/faceted-search-with-solr/>

#### Examples

Top downloaded items by a specific user

#### Query:

```
http://localhost:8983/solr/statistics/select?
indent=on&version=2.2&start=0&rows=10&fl=*&score&qt=standard&wt=standard&explainOther=&hl.fl=&facet=true&facet.field=epersonid&q=type:0
```

#### Explained:

facet.field=epersonid — You want to group by epersonid, which is the user id.  
type:0 — Interested in bitstreams only

```
<lst name="facet_counts">
 <lst name="facet_fields">
 <lst name="epersonid">
 <int name="66">1167</int>

<int name="117">251</int>

<int name="52">42</int>

<int name="19">36</int>

<int name="88">20</int>

<int name="112">18</int>

<int name="110">9</int>

<int name="96">0</int>

</lst>
 </lst>
</lst>
```

#### 4.11.1.7 Managing the City Database File

If you wish to record the geographic locations of clients in your DSpace statistics records (e.g. the City or Country where they are accessing DSpace), you **must** install (and regularly update) one of the following IP to City Database Files (in MMDB format). We recommend installing a City-level database, as it provides more granular location information than a Country-level database (which can only provide the country where the access originated).

- Either install a copy of [MaxMind's GeoLite City database](https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoip2/geolite2/)<sup>447</sup> (in MMDB format)
  - Installing MaxMind GeoLite2 is *free*. However, you **must** sign up for a (free) MaxMind account in order to obtain a license key to use the GeoLite2 database.
  - You will need to arrange regular downloads of the GeoLite2 database. MaxMind [offers an updater tool \(geoipupdate\)](https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoipupdate/#For_Free_GeoLite2_Databases)<sup>448</sup> to do the downloading/updating, and a number of Linux distributions package it (as `geoipupdate`). You will still need to configure your license key prior to usage. Use it before restarting DSpace, to get an up-to-date database.
  - Once the "GeoLite2-City.mmdb" database file is installed on your system, you will need to configure its location as the value of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in your `local.cfg` configuration file.
  - NOTE: This file is frequently updated by [MaxMind.com](http://MaxMind.com)<sup>449</sup>, so you will need to refresh it regularly (ideally by scheduling the updater tool via a cron job or similar). As this is written, the database is updated monthly, and to be allowed to obtain it you need to agree to keep your copy updated.

<sup>447</sup> <https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoip2/geolite2/>

<sup>448</sup> [https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoipupdate/#For\\_Free\\_GeoLite2\\_Databases](https://dev.maxmind.com/geoip/geoipupdate/#For_Free_GeoLite2_Databases)

<sup>449</sup> <http://MaxMind.com>

- Or, you can alternatively use/install [DB-IP's City Lite database](#)<sup>450</sup> (in MMDB format)
  - This database is also free to use, but does **not** require an account to download.
  - You will need to arrange regular downloads of the City Lite database. DB-IP offers an [updater tool \(dbip-update\)](#)<sup>451</sup> to do the downloading/updating, but it requires PHP to run.
  - Once the "dbip-city-lite.mmdb" database file is installed on your system, you will need to configure its location as the value of `usage-statistics.dbfile` in your `local.cfg` configuration file.
  - NOTE: This file is frequently updated by [DB-IP.com](#)<sup>452</sup>, so you will need to refresh it regularly (ideally by scheduling the updater tool via a cron job or similar). As this is written, the database is updated monthly with the latest available at <https://db-ip.com/db/download/ip-to-city-lite>

#### 4.11.1.8 SOLR Statistics Maintenance

- [DSpace Log Converter](#)(see page 460)
- [Filtering and Pruning Spiders](#)(see page 461)
- [Export SOLR records to intermediate format for import into another tool/instance](#)(see page 463)
- [Export SOLR statistics, for backup and moving to another server](#)(see page 463)
- [Import SOLR statistics, for restoring lost data or moving to another server](#)(see page 464)
- [Reindex SOLR statistics, for upgrades or whenever the Solr schema for statistics is changed](#)(see page 464)
- [Upgrade Legacy DSpace Object Identifiers \(pre-6x statistics\) to DSpace 6x UUID Identifiers](#)(see page 465)
- [Solr Sharding By Year](#)(see page 466)
  - [Technical implementation details](#)(see page 467)
  - [Testing Solr Shards](#)(see page 468)

#### DSpace Log Converter

The use of Solr for statistics in DSpace makes it possible to have a database of statistics. With this in mind, there is the issue of the older log files and how a site can use them. The following command process is able to convert the existing log files and then import them for Solr use. The user will need to perform this conversion only once.

The Log Converter program converts log files from `dspace.log` into an intermediate format that can be inserted into Solr.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace stats-log-converter</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.statistics.util.ClassicDSpaceLogConverter</code>
Arguments short and long forms):	Description
<code>-i</code> or <code>--in</code>	Input file
<code>-o</code> or <code>--out</code>	Output file

<sup>450</sup> <https://db-ip.com/db/download/ip-to-city-lite>

<sup>451</sup> <https://db-ip.com/tutorials/database-file-update>

<sup>452</sup> <https://db-ip.com/>

<code>-m</code> or <code>--multiple</code>	Adds a wildcard at the end of input and output, so it would mean if <code>-i dspace.log -m</code> was specified, <code>dspace.log*</code> would be converted. (i.e. all of the following: <code>dspace.log</code> , <code>dspace.log.1</code> , <code>dspace.log.2</code> , <code>dspace.log.3</code> , etc.)
<code>-n</code> or <code>--newformat</code>	If the log files have been created with DSpace 1.6 or newer
<code>-v</code> or <code>--verbose</code>	Display verbose output (helpful for debugging)
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Help

The command loads the intermediate log files that have been created by the aforementioned script into Solr.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace stats-log-importer</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.statistics.util.StatisticsImporter</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
<code>-i</code> or <code>--in</code>	input file
<code>-m</code> or <code>--multiple</code>	Adds a wildcard at the end of the input, so it would mean <code>dspace.log*</code> would be imported
<code>-s</code> or <code>--skipdns</code>	To skip the reverse DNS lookups that work out where a user is from. (The DNS lookup finds the information about the host from its IP address, such as geographical location, etc. This can be slow, and wouldn't work on a server not connected to the internet.)
<code>-v</code> or <code>--verbose</code>	Display verbose output (helpful for debugging)
<code>-l</code> or <code>--local</code>	For developers: allows you to import a log file from another system, so because the handles won't exist, it looks up random items in your local system to add hits to instead.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Help

Although the DSpace Log Converter applies basic spider filtering (googlebot, yahoo slurp, msnbot), it is far from complete. Please refer to [Filtering and Pruning Spiders](#) (see page 461) for spider removal operations, after converting your old logs.

## Filtering and Pruning Spiders

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace stats-util</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.statistics.util.StatisticsClient</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
<code>-b</code> or <code>--reindex-bitstreams</code>	Reindex the bitstreams to ensure we have the bundle name
<code>-r</code> or <code>--remove-deleted-bitstreams</code>	While indexing the bundle names remove the statistics about deleted bitstreams
<code>-u</code> or <code>--update-spider-files</code>	Update Spider IP Files from internet into <code>[dspace]/config/spiders</code> . Downloads Spider files identified in <code>dspace.cfg</code> under property <code>solr.spiderips.urls</code> . See <a href="#">Configuration settings for Statistics</a> <sup>453</sup>
<code>-f</code> or <code>--delete-spiders-by-flag</code>	Delete Spiders in Solr By isBot Flag. Will prune out all records that have <code>isBot:true</code>
<code>-i</code> or <code>--delete-spiders-by-ip</code>	Delete Spiders in Solr By IP Address, DNS name, or Agent name. Will prune out all records that match spider identification patterns.
<code>-m</code> or <code>--mark-spiders</code>	Update isBot Flag in Solr. Marks any records currently stored in statistics that have IP addresses matched in spiders files
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Calls up this brief help table at command line.

## Notes:

The usage of these options is open for the user to choose. If you want to keep spider entries in your repository, you can just mark them using `-m` and they will be excluded from statistics queries when `"solr.statistics.query.filter.isBot = true"` in the `dspace.cfg` . If you want to keep the spiders out of the solr repository, just use the `-i` option and they will be removed immediately.

Spider IPs are specified in files containing one pattern per line. A line may be a comment (starting with `"#"` in column 1), empty, or a single IP address or DNS name. If a name is given, it will be resolved to an address. Unresolvable names are discarded and will be noted in the log.

<sup>453</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC3x/DSpace+Statistics#DSpaceStatistics-ConfigurationsettingsforStatistics>

There are guards in place to control what can be defined as an IP range for a bot. In `[dspace]/config/spiders`, spider IP address ranges have to be at least 3 subnet sections in length 123.123.123 and IP Ranges can only be on the smallest subnet [123.123.123.0 - 123.123.123.255]. If not, loading that row will cause exceptions in the dspace logs and exclude that IP entry.

Spiders may also be excluded by DNS name or Agent header value. Place one or more files of patterns in the directories `[dspace]/config/spiders/domains` and/or `[dspace]/config/spiders/agents`. Each line in a pattern file should be either empty, a comment starting with "#" in column 1, or a regular expression which matches some names to be recognized as spiders.

Export SOLR records to intermediate format for import into another tool/instance

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace stats-util</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.statistics.util.StatisticsClient</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
<code>-e</code> or <code>--export</code>	Export SOLR view statistics data to usage statistics intermediate format

This exports the records to `[dspace]/temp/usagstats_0.csv`. This will chunk the files at 10,000 records to new files. This can be imported with `stats-log-importer` to [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447)

Export SOLR statistics, for backup and moving to another server

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace solr-export-statistics</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.util.SolrImportExport</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
<code>-i</code> or <code>--index-name</code>	optional, the name of the index to process. "statistics" is the default. "authority" can also be exported.
<code>-l</code> or <code>--last integer</code>	optionally export only <i>integer</i> many days worth of statistics
<code>-d</code> or <code>--directory</code>	optional, directory to use for storing the exported files. By default, <code>[dspace]/solr-export</code> is used. If that is not appropriate (due to storage concerns), we recommend you use this option to specify a more appropriate location.

- f or -force-overwrite	optional, overwrite export file if it exists (DSpace 6.1 and later)
-------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Import SOLR statistics, for restoring lost data or moving to another server

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace solr-import-statistics</code>
Java class:	org.dspace.util.SolrImportExport
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
- i or -index-name	optional, the name of the index to process. "statistics" is the default. "authority" can also be imported.
<code>-c or --clear</code>	optional, clears the contents of the existing stats core before importing
<code>-d or --directory</code>	optional, directory which contains the files for importing. By default, <code>[dspace]/solr-export</code> is used. If that is not appropriate (due to storage concerns), we recommend you use this option to specify a more appropriate location.

Reindex SOLR statistics, for upgrades or whenever the Solr schema for statistics is changed

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace solr-reindex-statistics</code>
Java class:	org.dspace.util.SolrImportExport
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
- i or -index-name	optional, the name of the index to process. "statistics" is the default
<code>-k or --keep</code>	optional, tells the script to keep the intermediate export files for possible later use (by default all exported files are removed at the end of the reindex process).

<code>-d</code> or <code>--directory</code>	optional, directory to use for storing the exported files (temporarily, unless you also specify <code>--keep</code> , see above). By default, <code>[dspace]/solr-export</code> is used. If that is not appropriate (due to storage concerns), we recommend you use this option to specify a more appropriate location. Not sure about your space requirements? You can estimate the space required by looking at the current size of <code>[dspace]/solr/statistics</code>
<code>-f</code> or <code>--force-overwrite</code>	optional, overwrite export file if it exists (DSpace 6.1 and later)

NOTE: `solr-reindex-statistics` is safe to run on a live site. The script stores incoming usage data in a temporary SOLR core, and then merges that new data into the reindexed data when the reindex process completes.

#### Upgrade Legacy DSpace Object Identifiers (pre-6x statistics) to DSpace 6x UUID Identifiers

This command was introduced in **DSpace 7.0** and will be included in the **DSpace 6.4** release as well. **It is recommended that all DSpace instances with legacy identifiers perform this one-time upgrade of legacy statistics records.** This action is safe to run on a live site. As a precaution, it is recommended that you backup you statistics shards before performing this action. **Note: a link to this section of the documentation should be added to the DSpace 6.4 Release Notes.** (It is already noted in the DSpace 7.0 [Upgrading DSpace](#)(see page 116) page, step 11d)

The DSpace 6x code base changed the primary key for all DSpace objects from an integer id to UUID identifiers. Statistics records that were created before upgrading to DSpace 6x contain the legacy identifiers.

While the DSpace user interfaces make some attempt to correlate legacy identifiers with uuid identifiers, it is recommended that users perform this one time upgrade of legacy statistics records.

If you have sharded your statistics repository, this action must be performed on each shard.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace solr-upgrade-statistics-6x</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.util.SolrUpgradePre6xStatistics</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
<code>-i</code> or <code>--index-name</code>	Optional, the name of the index to process. "statistics" is the default
<code>-n</code> or <code>--num_rec</code>	Optional. Total number of records to update (default=100,000). To process all records, set <code>-n</code> to 10000000 or to 100000000 (10M or 100M) If possible, please allocate 2GB of memory to this process (e.g. <code>-Xmx2000m</code> )
<code>-b</code> or <code>--batch_size</code>	Number of records to batch update to SOLR at one time (default=10,000).



NOTE: This process will rewrite most solr statistics records and may temporarily double the size of your statistics repositories.

If a UUID value cannot be found for a legacy id, the legacy id will be converted to the form "xxxx-unmigrated" where xxxx is the legacy id.

### Solr Sharding By Year

The DSpace tool described below for managing Solr data through yearly sharding no longer functions in DSpace 7.x (see also <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8478>). Using these tools to manage Solr shards is no longer recommended. Alternative approaches are being explored and this page will be updated to reflect those findings.

Command used:	<code>[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE stats-util</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dSPACE.statistics.util.StatisticsClient</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
<code>-s</code> or <code>--shard-solr-index</code>	Splits the data in the main Solr core up into a separate core for each year. This will upgrade the performance of Solr.

#### Notes:

Yearly Solr sharding is a routine that can drastically improve the performance of your DSpace SOLR statistics. It was introduced in DSpace 3.0 and is not backwards compatible. The routine decreases the load created by the logging of new usage events by reducing the size of the SOLR Core in which new usage data are being logged. By running the script, you effectively split your current SOLR core, containing all of your usage events, into different SOLR cores that each contain the data for one year. In case your DSpace has been logging usage events for less than one year, you will see no notable performance improvements until you run the script after the start of a new year. Both writing new usage events as well as read operations should be more performant over several smaller SOLR Shards instead of one monolithic one.

It is highly recommended that you execute this script once at the start of every year. To ensure this is not forgotten, you can include it in your crontab or other system scheduling software. Here's an example cron entry (just replace [dSPACE] with the full path of your DSpace installation):

```
At 12:00AM on January 1, "shard" the DSpace Statistics Solr index. Ensures each
year has its own Solr index - this improves performance.
0 0 1 1 * [dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE stats-util -s
```

#### **You MUST restart Tomcat after sharding**

After running the statistics shard process, the "View Usage Statistics" page(s) in DSpace will **not** automatically recognize the new shard.

Restart tomcat to ensure that the new shard is recognized & included in usage statistics queries.

### Repair of Shards Created Before DSpace 5.7 or DSpace 6.1

If you ran the shard process before upgrading to DSpace 5.7 or DSpace 6.1, the multi-value fields such as `owningComm` and `owningColl` are likely be corrupted. Previous versions of the shard process lost the multi-valued nature of these fields. Without the multi-valued nature of these fields, it is difficult to query for statistics records by community / collection / bundle.

You can verify this problem in the solr admin console by looking at the `owningComm` field on existing records and looking for the presence of `"\"` within that field.

The following process may be used to repair these records.

1. Backup your solr statistics-xxxx directories while tomcat is down.
2. Backup and delete the contents of the `dspace-install/solr-export` directory
3. For each "statistics-xxxx" shard that exists, export the repository

```
dspace solr-export-statistics -i statistics-xxxx -f
```

4. Run the following to repair records in the `dspace-install/solr-export` directory

```
for file in *
do
sed -E -e "s/[\\]+,/,/g" -i $file
done
```

5. For each shard that was exported, run the following import

```
dspace solr-import-statistics -i statistics-xxxx -f
```

If you repeat the query that was run previously, the fields containing `"\"` should now contain an array of owning community ids.

### Shard Naming

Prior to the release of DSpace 6.1, the shard names created were off by one year in timezones with a positive offset from GMT.

Shards created subsequent to this release may appear to skip by one year.

See DS-3437

### Technical implementation details

After sharding, the Solr data cores are located in the `[dspace.dir]/solr` directory. There is no need to define the location of each individual core in `solr.xml` because they are automatically retrieved at runtime. This retrieval happens in the `static` method located in the `org.dspace.statistics.SolrLogger` class. These cores are stored in the `statisticYearCores` list. Each time a query is made to Solr, these cores are added as shards by the `addAdditionalSolrYearCores` method. The cores share a common configuration copied from your original `statistics` core. Therefore, no issues should be resulting from subsequent `ant update s`.

The actual sharding of the of the original Solr core into individual cores by year is done in the `shardSolrIndex` method in the `org.dspace.statistics.SolrLogger` class. The sharding is done by first running a facet on the time to get the facets split by year. Once we have our years from our logs we query the main Solr data server

for all information on each year & download these as CSVs. When we have all data for one year, we upload it to the newly created core of that year by using the [update csv](#)<sup>454</sup> handler. Once all data of one year have been uploaded, those data are removed from the main Solr (by doing it this way if our Solr crashes we do not need to start from scratch).

### Multiple Shard Fix (DSpace 6.1)

A bug exists in the DSpace 6.0 release that prevents tomcat from starting when multiple shards are present. To address this issue, the initialization of SOLR shards is deferred until the first SOLR related requests are processed. See DS-3457

### Testing Solr Shards

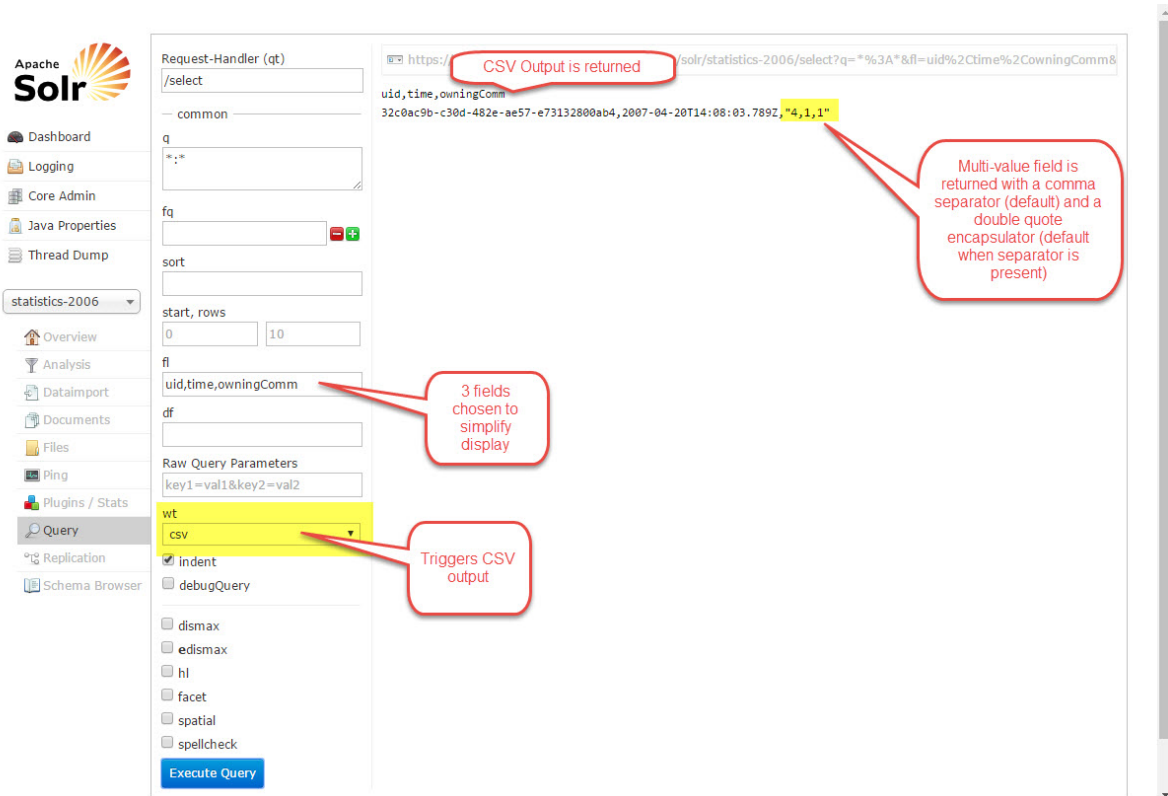
[Testing Solr Shards](#)(see page 468)

### Testing Solr Shards

These notes detail how to test and manipulate SOLR statistics shards.

### Testing CSV Export

The SOLR Admin Console provides a mechanism to test the CSV Export Process and Parameters



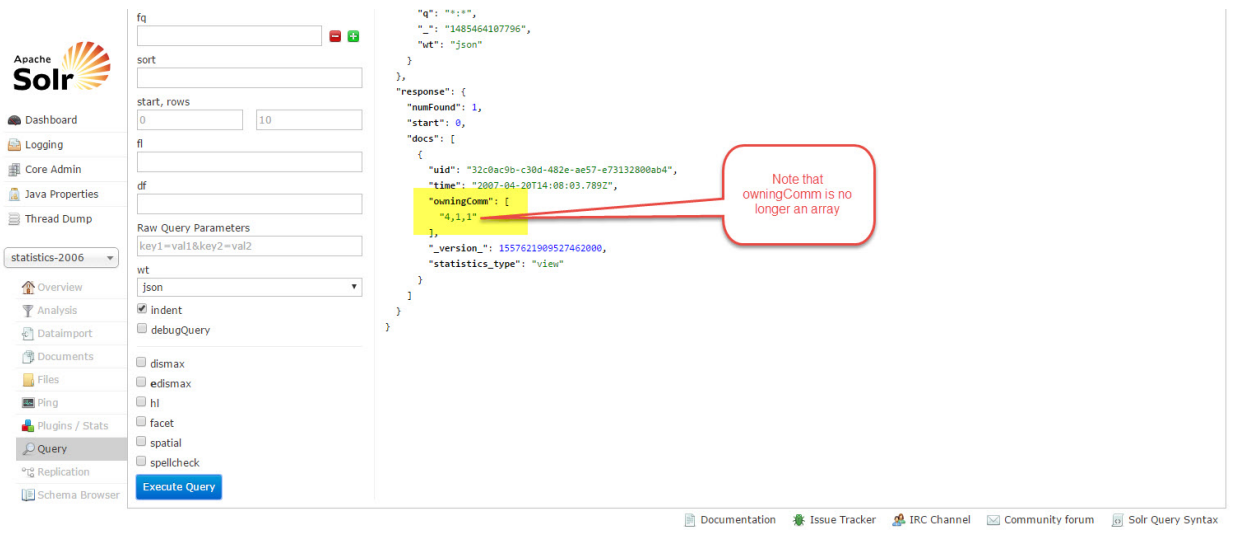
454 <http://wiki.apache.org/solr/UpdateCSV>

### Testing CSV Import

The SOLR Admin Console provides a mechanism to access the CSV Upload process. Unfortunately, it does not all parameters to be provided.



Note that the multi-value field is corrupted if you import by this manner.



It is possible to csv import parameters using curl.

### Running CSV Upload with curl

```
curl -F "data=@statistics-2006_export_2007-04.csv" "http://localhost/solr/
statistics-2006/update/csv?
skip=_version_&csv.mv.escape=%5C&f.owningColl.split=true&f.owningColl.separator=%7C&f.
owningComm.split=true&f.owningComm.separator=,&f.owningItem.split=true&f.owningItem.se
parator=%7C&f.bundleName.split=true&f.bundleName.separator=%7C&stream.contentType=text
%2Fcsv%3Bcharset%3Dutf-8&commit=true&softCommit=false&waitSearcher=true&wt=java&ver
sion=2"
```

### Creating a Shard in the Admin Console

While this is probably not necessary, it is possible to create an empty shard in the Solr Admin console.

Note that existing shards use the statistics directory as an "instance" directory.

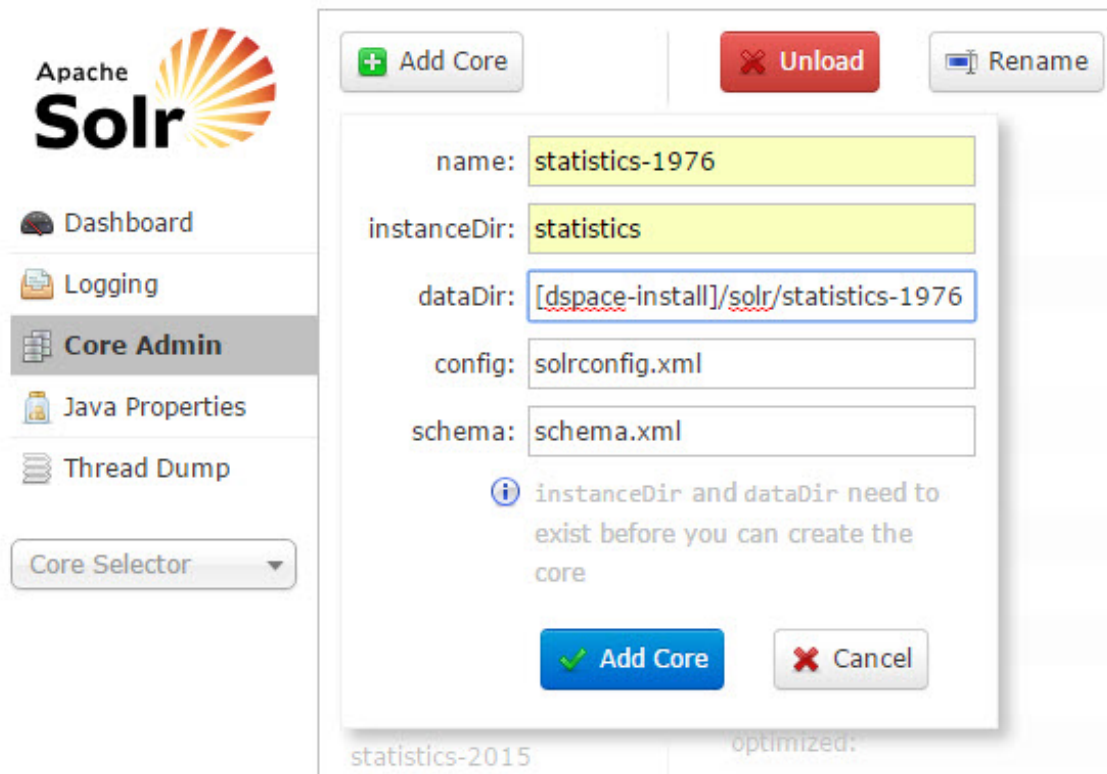
The screenshot displays the Apache Solr Admin Console interface. On the left, the navigation menu includes 'Dashboard', 'Logging', 'Core Admin' (selected), 'Java Properties', and 'Thread Dump'. Below the menu is a 'Core Selector' dropdown. The main content area shows the configuration for the 'statistics-2006' shard. At the top, there are buttons for 'Add Core', 'Unload', 'Rename', 'Swap', 'Reload', and 'Optimize'. The 'Core' section shows the following configuration:

startTime:	41 minutes ago
instanceDir:	/opt/dspace/solr/statistics/
dataDir:	/opt/dspace/solr/statistics-2006/data/

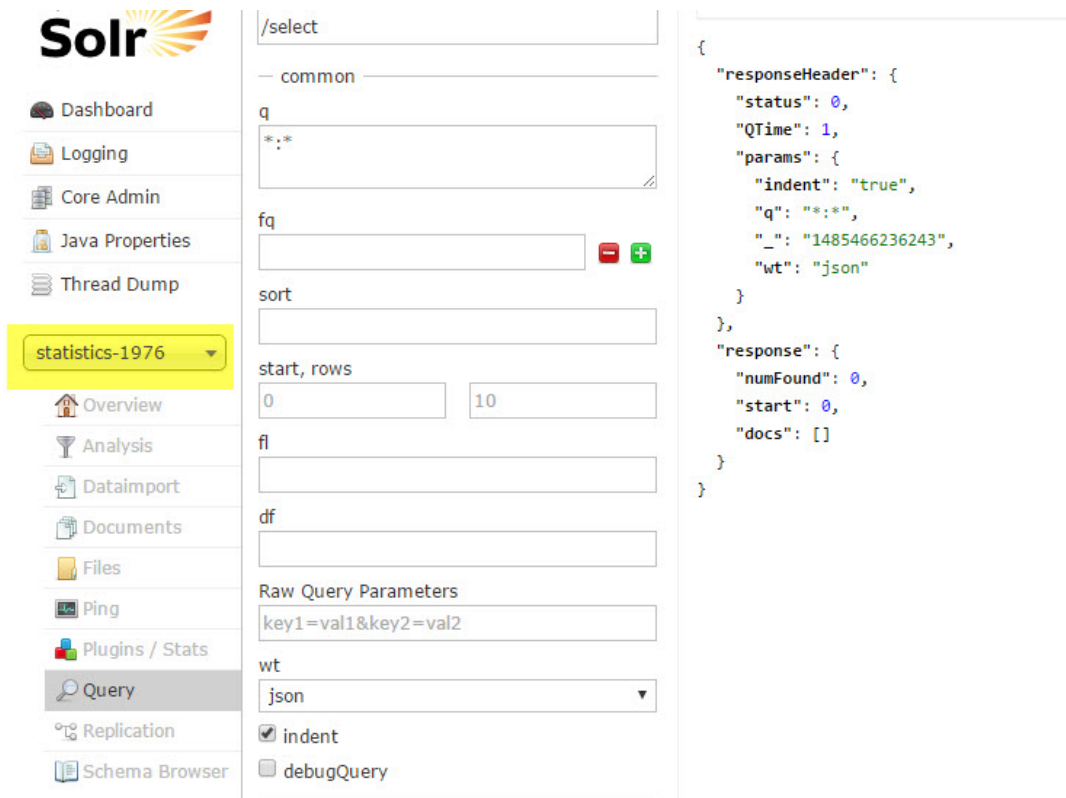
The 'Index' section shows the following configuration:

lastModified:	8 months ago
version:	115
numDocs:	1
maxDoc:	1
deletedDocs:	-
optimized:	✓
current:	✓

### Manually create a new shard



The new shard can be queried like the other ones



## 4.11.2 DSpace Google Analytics Statistics

- [Google Analytics Support](#)(see page 471)
  - [Enabling Google Analytics](#)(see page 471)
  - [Configuring Google Analytics](#)(see page 471)
- [Google Analytics Reports in DSpace UI](#)(see page 473)
  - [Configuration settings for Google Analytics Statistics](#)(see page 474)

### 4.11.2.1 Google Analytics Support

It is possible to record User Interface traffic by enabling the recording of Google Analytics data within DSpace. DSpace supports **either** Universal Analytics or [Google Analytics 4](#)<sup>455</sup>.

#### Enabling Google Analytics

By default, Google Analytics is disabled in DSpace. To enable it, simply set the value of `google.analytics.key` in either your `local.cfg` or `dspace.cfg` :

```
For Universal Analytics (older style Google Analytics)
google.analytics.key = UA-XXXXXX-X

Or, for Google Analytics 4
google.analytics.key = G-XXXXX
```

When Google Analytics is disabled, you will see 404 responses returned from the REST API whenever the User Interface attempts to access `#{dspace.server.url}/api/config/properties/google.analytics.key` . This is expected behavior, as that 404 response is the REST API telling the User Interface that Google Analytics is not configured. When the UI sees that 404 from the REST API, it disables Google Analytics tracking the UI.

#### Configuring Google Analytics

Additional configuration are provided to allow for enhanced Google Analytics support.

Property:	<code>google.analytics.buffer</code>
Example Value:	<code>google.analytics.buffer = 256</code>
Informational Note:	Maximum number of events held in the buffer to send to Google Analytics. Used in conjunction with "cron" settings below.

<sup>455</sup> <https://support.google.com/analytics/answer/10089681?hl=en>

Property:	<code>google.analytics.cron</code>
Example Value:	<code>google.analytics.cron = 0 0/5 * * * ?</code>
Informational Note:	<p>REQUIRED if you want to send file download events to Google Analytics (where they will be tracked as Google "events"). This defines the schedule for how frequently events tracked on the backend (like file downloads) will be sent to Google Analytics. Syntax is defined at <a href="https://www.quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.3.0/org/quartz/CronTrigger.html">https://www.quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.3.0/org/quartz/CronTrigger.html</a></p> <p>The above example will run this task every 5 minutes (0 0/5 * * * ?)</p> <p>For Google Analytics 4, you MUST also add the "api-secret" below to support sending download events.</p>
Property:	<code>google.analytics.api-secret</code>
Example Value:	<code>google.analytics.api-secrte = mysecret</code>
Informational Note:	<p>(Only used for Google Analytics 4) Defines a Measurement Protocol API Secret to be used to track interactions which occur outside of the user's browser.</p> <p>This is REQUIRED to track downloads of bitstreams. For more details see <a href="https://developers.google.com/analytics/devguides/collection/protocol/ga4">https://developers.google.com/analytics/devguides/collection/protocol/ga4</a></p>

#### 4.11.2.2 Google Analytics Reports in DSpace UI

##### **DSpace 7 does not yet support**

Google Analytics Reporting is not available in DSpace 7.0. While DSpace 7 can capture statistics via Google Analytics (see above), it is not able to display Google Analytics reports in the DSpace User Interface (like was supported in the XMLUI). It is under discussion as it's unclear how many sites used this feature. See [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>456</sup>

As of DSpace version 5.0 it has also become possible to expose that recorded Google Analytics data within DSpace. The data is retrieved from Google using the Google Analytics Reporting API v3. This feature is disabled by default, to enable it please follow the instructions below.

Please read the documentation found at <https://developers.google.com/analytics/devguides/reporting/core/v3/> and <https://developers.google.com/accounts/docs/OAuth2ServiceAccount>. It is the definitive documentation, however, it is over detailed for our purposes so the critical steps are summarised below. The theory is that as a developer you would create a Google project, write your application and store the code in the Google code repository, then create a Google Service Account which your application could use to retrieve data from the Google Analytics API. In our case we already have our application, DSpace, but we still have to go through the motions of

<sup>456</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>



creating a project in order to be able to generate the Service Account which we need to allow DSpace to talk to the Google Analytics API.

1. Logon to the Google Developers Console <https://console.developers.google.com/project> with whatever email address you use to access/manage your existing Google Analytics account(s).
2. Create a new Google Project. The assumption is that you are developing some new software and will make use of the Google code repository. This is not the case but you need to create the skeleton project before you can proceed to the next step.
3. Enable the Analytics API for the project. In the sidebar on the left, expand **APIs & auth**. Next, click **APIs**. In the list of APIs, make sure the status is **ON** for the Analytics API.
4. In the sidebar on the left, select **Credentials**.
5. Select **OAuth / Create new Client ID**, then in the subsequent popup screen select **Service account**. This will automatically generate the required Service Account email address and certificate.
6. Go to your Google Analytics dashboard <http://www.google.com/analytics/>. Create an account for the newly generated Service Account email address and give it permission to 'Read and Analyze' at account level. See \*Note below.
7. The generated certificate needs to be placed somewhere that your DSpace application can access and be referenced as described below in the configuration section..

\*Note:- The Google documentation specifies that the Service Account email address should only require 'Read and Analyze' permission. However, it would appear this may not be the case and it may be necessary to grant greater permissions, at least initially.

#### Configuration settings for Google Analytics Statistics

In the `[dspace.dir]/config/modules/google-analytics.cfg` file review the following fields. These should be either edited directly or overridden in your local.cfg config file (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)).

Property:	google-analytics.application.name
Value:	Dummy Project
Informational Note:	Not sure if this property is required but it was in the example code provided by Google. Please do not delete.
Property:	google-analytics.table.id
Example Value:	ga:12345678
Informational Note:	Logon to the Google Analytics Dashboard and select the Property (or website in plain English) that you wish to target. Then select the Admin section for the property. You should then be able to select the 'view settings' for the view you are interested in. The View ID should replace 12345678 below (note - confusingly the Reporting API documentation refers to the View ID as Table ID).
Property:	google-analytics.account.email



### 4.11.3.2 Prerequisite

The DSpace server should be able to access the tracker's base production and test URL's.

The tracker's base production URL will depend on the area/country where your repository is located:

- United Kingdom: <http://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/>
- Australia and New-Zealand: <https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/anz/>
- United States: <https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/us/>

The tracker's base test URL is common to all areas/countries:

<https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/test/>

Access to the tracker's base URLs can easily be verified using a *wget* command with the applicable URL, e.g.:

```
wget https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/test/
```

The above command should return a HTTP 200.

### 4.11.3.3 Configuration

The IRUS statistics tracker can be configured in the `irus-statistics.cfg` file which can be found `[dspace-src]/dspace/config/modules`.

Property	Description	Default
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.enabled</code>	Configuration used to enable the IRUS statistics tracker. Set to true to enable.	<code>false</code>
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.type-field</code>	Metadata field to check if certain items should be excluded from tracking. If empty or commented out, all items are tracked.	
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.type-value</code>	The values in the above metadata field that will be considered to be tracked.	

Property	Description	Default
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.entity-types</code>	The <b>entity types</b> (see page 198) to be included in the tracking. If left empty, only publication hits will be tracked. If entities are disabled in DSpace (the default in DSpace 7.1), then all Items will be included in tracking.	Publication
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.environment</code>	The tracker environment determines to which url the statistics are exported (test or prod).	test
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.testurl</code>	The url to which the trackings are exported when testing. (In theory, this should be <a href="https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/test/">https://irus.jisc.ac.uk/counter/test/</a> )	
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.produrl</code>	The url to which the trackings are exported in production. (this will depend on your area/country, refer to the Prerequisite section)	
<code>irus.statistics.tracker.urlversion</code>	Tracker version	

Property	Description	Default
<code>irus.statistics.spider.agentregex.url</code>	<p>External URL pointing to the COUNTER user agents file. The user agents file is downloaded from the provided URL as part of the Apache ant build process.</p> <p>Item views determined by DSpace to have been generated by bots/spiders are not sent to IRUS. Including this additional (and optional) agents file can reduce unnecessary network traffic by reducing the need to transfer view data that will be ignored by IRUS.</p> <p>Example value: <a href="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/atmire/COUNTER-Robots/master/generated/COUNTER_Robots_list.txt">https://raw.githubusercontent.com/atmire/COUNTER-Robots/master/generated/COUNTER_Robots_list.txt</a></p>	
<code>irus.statistics.spider.agentregex.regexfile</code>	<p>Location where the user agents file should be downloaded to. The Apache ant build process that retrieves the user agents file from the URL specified above places it in the location specified here.</p> <p>Example value: <code>\${dspace.dir}/config/spiders/agents/COUNTER_Robots_list.txt</code></p>	

## 4.12 User Interface

- [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478)
- [User Interface Customization](#)(see page 505)
- [Discovery](#)(see page 522)
- [Multilingual Support](#)(see page 544)
- [IIIF Configuration](#)(see page 547)
- [Contextual Help Tooltips](#)(see page 555)

### 4.12.1 User Interface Configuration

- [Overview](#)(see page 479)
- [Configuration File Format](#)(see page 479)
  - [Migrate environment file to YAML](#)(see page 479)
- [Configuration Override](#)(see page 481)
  - [In 7.2 or above](#)(see page 481)
  - [In 7.1 or 7.0](#)(see page 483)
- [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 483)
  - [Production Mode](#)(see page 483)
  - [UI Core Settings](#)(see page 483)
  - [REST API Settings](#)(see page 484)
  - [Cache Settings - General](#)(see page 486)
  - [Cache Settings - Server Side Rendering \(SSR\)](#)(see page 486)
  - [Authentication Settings](#)(see page 489)
  - [Form Settings](#)(see page 489)
  - [Notification Settings](#)(see page 490)
  - [Submission Settings](#)(see page 490)
  - [Language Settings](#)(see page 493)
  - [Browse By Settings](#)(see page 494)
  - [Community-List Settings](#)(see page 496)
  - [Homepage Settings](#)(see page 496)
  - [Undo Settings](#)(see page 496)
  - [Item Access Labels](#)(see page 498)
  - [Item Page Settings](#)(see page 498)
  - [Theme Settings](#)(see page 498)
  - [Media Viewer Settings](#)(see page 501)
  - [Toggle end-user agreement and privacy policy](#)(see page 503)
  - [Settings for rendering Markdown, HTML and MathJax in metadata](#)(see page 503)
  - [Controlled Vocabularies in Search Filters](#)(see page 503)
  - [Universal \(Server-side Rendering\) Settings](#)(see page 503)
  - [Debug Settings](#)(see page 504)

### 4.12.1.1 Overview

As the DSpace 7 User Interface is built on [Angular.io](https://angular.io/)<sup>460</sup>, it aligns with many of the best practices of that platform & the surrounding community. One example is that our UI uses the [TypeScript language](https://www.typescriptlang.org/)<sup>461</sup>. That said, you do NOT need to be deeply familiar with TypeScript to edit themes or other configuration.

#### **In DSpace 7.2 and later, the UI Configuration format changed to support runtime configuration loading**

As of DSpace 7.2, the UI configuration format has changed to YAML in order to support runtime configuration. This means that reloading configurations now simply requires restarting the UI (which generally takes a few seconds).

In DSpace 7.1 and below, you had to rebuild the UI anytime you modified a configuration setting. The UI configuration format was Typescript which required recompiling each time a setting changed.

### 4.12.1.2 Configuration File Format

In DSpace 7.2 and above, the Configuration format is now YAML and is located at `./config/config.*.yaml`.

In DSpace 7.1 and 7.0, the Configuration format was a Typescript file and was located at `./src/environments/environment.*.ts`. The structure of this file was essentially a JSON like format.

If you are upgrading from 7.0 or 7.1 to 7.2 (or later), you will either need to migrate your old configuration file (from Typescript to YAML) or start fresh. You can migrate your old (7.0 or 7.1) "environment.\*.ts" configuration file to the new "config.\*.yaml" format (see below).

#### Migrate environment file to YAML

These instructions will allow you to migrate your old (7.0 or 7.1) "environment.\*.ts" configuration file to the new "config.\*.yaml" format.

1. First, you will need to make minor modifications to the old "environment.\*.ts" configuration file(s) to ensure it no longer imports any other files:

#### **Replace all imports in environment.\*.ts**

```
// (1) FIRST, you must comment out or remove all 4 imports at the top of the
file. For example:

//import { GlobalConfig } from '../config/global-config.interface';
//import { NotificationAnimationsType } from '../app/shared/notifications/
models/notification-animations-type';
//import { BrowseByType } from '../app/browse-by/browse-by-switcher/browse-by-
decorator';
```

<sup>460</sup> <https://angular.io/>

<sup>461</sup> <https://www.typescriptlang.org/>

```

//import { RestRequestMethod } from '../app/core/data/rest-request-method';

// (2) SECOND, replace those 4 imported objects with these 4 objects.
// Paste this code at the top of the file where those imports were.

interface GlobalConfig { }

enum NotificationAnimationsType {
 Fade = 'fade',
 FromTop = 'fromTop',
 FromRight = 'fromRight',
 FromBottom = 'fromBottom',
 FromLeft = 'fromLeft',
 Rotate = 'rotate',
 Scale = 'scale'
}

enum BrowseByType {
 Title = 'title',
 Metadata = 'metadata',
 Date = 'date'
}

enum RestRequestMethod {
 GET = 'GET',
 POST = 'POST',
 PUT = 'PUT',
 DELETE = 'DELETE',
 OPTIONS = 'OPTIONS',
 HEAD = 'HEAD',
 PATCH = 'PATCH'
}

```

2. Now, you are ready to run the "yarn env:yaml" command to transform this old configuration into the new format.

#### Migrate from environment.\*.ts to config.\*.yaml

```
yarn env:yaml [relative-path-to-environment.ts] [optional-relative-path-to-YAML]
```

```
For example, from the 7.2 (or above) root directory, run this:
yarn env:yaml relative/path/to/old/environment.prod.ts config/config.prod.yaml
```

3. Finally, the old environment.\*.ts config file(s) can be deleted. They are not used at all in 7.2 or above.



### 4.12.1.3 Configuration Override

In 7.2 or above

Starting in 7.2, if you make a configuration update, you only need to restart the frontend. There is no need to rebuild unless you have made code changes in `./src` directory or similar.

The UI configuration files reside in the `./config/` folder in the [Angular UI source code](#)<sup>462</sup>. The default configuration is provided in `config.yml`.

To change the default configuration values, you simply create (one or more) local files that override the parameters you need to modify. You can use `config.example.yml` as a starting point.

- For example, create a new `config.dev.yml` file in `config/` for a `development` environment;
- For example, create a new `config.prod.yml` file in `config/` for a `production` environment;

Configurations can also be overridden via one of the following

- Using Environment variables. All environment variables MUST (1) be prefixed with "DSPACE\_", (2) use underscores as separators (no dots allowed), and (3) use all uppercase. Some examples are below:

```
"ui" settings environment variables
ui.host => DSPACE_UI_HOST # The host name
ui.port => DSPACE_UI_PORT # The port number
ui.nameSpace => DSPACE_UI_NAMESPACE # The namespace
ui.ssl => DSPACE_UI_SSL # Whether the angular application uses SSL [true/false]

"rest" settings environment variables
rest.host => DSPACE_REST_HOST # The host name of the REST application
rest.port => DSPACE_REST_PORT # The port number of the REST application
rest.nameSpace => DSPACE_REST_NAMESPACE # The namespace of the REST application
rest.ssl => DSPACE_REST_SSL # Whether the angular REST uses SSL [true/false]

Other examples
defaultLanguage => DSPACE_DEFAULTLANGUAGE
mediaViewer.video => DSPACE_MEDIAVIEWER_VIDEO

NOTE: At this time, only string/boolean/number based settings can be
overridden in Environment variables
```

- Or, by creating a `.env` (environment) file in the project root directory and setting the environment variables in that location.

The override priority ordering is as follows (with items listed at the top overriding all other settings)

1. Environment variables
2. The `.env` file

<sup>462</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/>

3. The `./config/config.prod.yml`, `./config/config.dev.yml` or `./config/config.test.yml` files (depending on current mode)
4. The `./config/config.yml` file
5. The hardcoded defaults in `./src/config/default-app-config.ts`

In 7.1 or 7.0

The UI configuration files reside in the `./src/environments/` folder in the [Angular UI source code](#)<sup>463</sup>. The default configuration are in `environment.common.ts` in that directory.

To change the default configuration values, you simply create (one or more) local files that override the parameters you need to modify. You can use `environment.template.ts` as a starting point.

- For example, create a new `environment.dev.ts` file in `src/environments/` for a `development` environment;
- For example, create a new `environment.prod.ts` file in `src/environments/` for a `production` environment;

The "ui" and "rest" sections of the configuration may also be overridden separately via one of the following

- By setting any of the following environment variables in your system:

```
"ui" settings environment variables
DSPACE_HOST # The host name of the angular application
DSPACE_PORT # The port number of the angular application
DSPACE_NAMESPACE # The namespace of the angular application
DSPACE_SSL # Whether the angular application uses SSL [true/false]

"rest" settings environment variables
DSPACE_REST_HOST # The host name of the REST application
DSPACE_REST_PORT # The port number of the REST application
DSPACE_REST_NAMESPACE # The namespace of the REST application
DSPACE_REST_SSL # Whether the angular REST uses SSL [true/false]
```

- Or, by creating a `.env` (environment) file in the project root directory and setting the environment variables in that location.

The override priority ordering is as follows (with items listed at the top overriding all other settings)

1. Environment variables
2. The ".env" file
3. The "environment.prod.ts", "environment.dev.ts" or "environment.test.ts"
4. The "environment.common.ts"

---

<sup>463</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/>

#### 4.12.1.4 Configuration Reference

The following configurations are available in `./src/environments/environment.common.ts`. These settings may be overridden as described above.

##### Production Mode

###### Only valid for 7.1 or 7.0

As of 7.2 and above, Angular production mode is automatically enabled whenever you are running the app in Production mode (`NODE_ENV=production`, or `'yarn start:prod'` or `'yarn serve:ssr'`). Angular production mode is automatically disabled when you are running the app in Development mode (`NODE_ENV=development`, or `'yarn start:dev'` or `'yarn serve'`).

When Production mode is enabled, this enables Angular's [runtime production mode](#)<sup>464</sup> and compresses the built application. This should always be enabled in Production scenarios.

```
production: true
```

##### UI Core Settings

The "ui" (user interface) section defines where you want Node.js to run/respond. It may correspond to your primary/public URL, but it also may not (if you are running behind a proxy). In this example, we are setting up our UI to just use localhost, port 4000. This is a common setup for when you want to use Apache or Nginx to handle HTTPS and proxy requests to Node.js running on port 4000.

###### Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)

```
ui:
 ssl: false
 host: localhost
 port: 4000
 # NOTE: Space is capitalized because 'namespace' is a reserved string in TypeScript
 namespace: /
 # The rateLimiter settings limit each IP to a 'max' of 500 requests per 'windowMs'
 # (1 minute).
 rateLimiter:
 windowMs: 60000 # 1 minute
 max: 500 # limit each IP to 500 requests per windowMs
```

<sup>464</sup> <https://angular.io/guide/deployment#enable-runtime-production-mode>

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```

ui: {
 ssl: false,
 host: 'localhost',
 port: 4000,
 // NOTE: Space is capitalized because 'namespace' is a reserved string in
TypeScript
 nameSpace: '/',
 // The rateLimiter settings limit each IP to a "max" of 500 requests per
"windowMs" (1 minute).
 rateLimiter: {
 windowMs: 1 * 60 * 1000, // 1 minute
 max: 500 // limit each IP to 500 requests per windowMs
 }
},

```

The "rateLimiter" sub-section can be used to protect against a DOS (denial of service) attack when the UI is processed on the server side (i.e. server-side rendering). Default settings are usually OK. In Angular, server-side rendering occurs to support better [Search Engine Optimization](#)(see page 647) (SEO), as well as to support clients which cannot use Javascript. See also [Angular's docs on Server-side rendering](#)<sup>465</sup>.

REST API Settings

The "rest" (REST API) section defines which REST API the UI will use. The REST settings MUST correspond to the primary URL of the backend. Usually, this means they must be kept in sync with the value of `dspace.server.url` in the backend's `local.cfg`

This example is valid if your Backend is publicly available at `https://api.mydspace.edu/server/` . Keep in mind that the "port" must always be specified even if it's a standard port (i.e. port 80 for HTTP and port 443 for HTTPS).

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```

rest:
 ssl: true
 host: api.mydspace.edu
 port: 443
NOTE: Space is capitalized because 'namespace' is a reserved string in TypeScript
nameSpace: /server

```

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```

rest: {
 ssl: true,

```

<sup>465</sup> <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

```

host: 'api.mydspace.edu',
port: 443,
// NOTE: Space is capitalized because 'namespace' is a reserved string in
TypeScript
nameSpace: '/server'
},

```

### Cache Settings - General

The "cache" section controls how long objects/responses will remain in the UI cache. The defaults should be OK for most sites.

#### Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)

```

cache:
 # NOTE: how long should objects be cached for by default
 msToLive:
 default: 900000 # 15 minutes
 # Default 'Cache-Control' HTTP Header to set for all static content (including
 compiled *.js files)
 # Defaults to one week. This lets a user's browser know that it can cache these
 files for one week,
 # after which they will be "stale" and need to be redownloaded.
 control: max-age=604800 # one week
 autoSync:
 defaultTime: 0
 maxBufferSize: 100
 timePerMethod:
 PATCH: 3 # time in seconds

```

#### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```

cache: {
 // NOTE: how long should objects be cached for by default
 msToLive: {
 default: 15 * 60 * 1000, // 15 minutes
 },
 control: 'max-age=60', // revalidate browser
 autoSync: {
 defaultTime: 0,
 maxBufferSize: 100,
 timePerMethod: {[RestRequestMethod.PATCH]: 3} as any // time in seconds
 }
},

```

## Cache Settings - Server Side Rendering (SSR)

Available in 7.5 or later

Caching options are also available for the User Interface's "server-side rendering" (which uses [Angular Universal](#)<sup>466</sup>). Server-side rendering is used to pre-generate full HTML pages and pass those back to users. This is necessary for Search Engine Optimization (SEO) as some web crawlers cannot use Javascript. It also can be used to immediately show the first HTML page to users while the Javascript app loads in the user's browser.

While server-side-rendering is highly recommended on all sites, it can result in Node.js having to pre-generate many HTML pages at once when a site has a large number of simultaneous users/bots. This may cause Node.js to spend a lot of time processing server-side-rendered content, slowing down the entire site.

Therefore, DSpace provides some basic caching of server-side rendered pages, which allows the same pre-generated HTML to be sent to many users/bots at once & decreases the frequency of server-side rendering.

Two cache options are provide: `botCache` and `anonymousCache` . As the names suggest, the `botCache` is used for known web crawlers / bots, while the `anonymousCache` may be used for all anonymous (non-authenticated) users. By default, only the `botCache` is enabled. But highly active sites may wish to enable the `anonymousCache` as well, since it can provide users with a more immediate response when they encounter cached pages.

Keep in mind, when the "anonymousCache" is enabled, this means that all non-authenticated users will utilize this cache. This cache can result in massive speed improvements (for initial page load), as the majority of users may be interacting with cached content. However, these users may occasionally encounter cached pages which are outdated or "stale" (based on values of "timeToLive" and "allowStale"). This means that these users will not immediately see new updates or newly added content (Communities, Collections, Items) until the cache has refreshed itself. That said, when "timeToLive" is set to a low value (like 10 seconds), this risk is minimal for highly active pages/content.

**config.\*.yml**

```
cache:
 ...
 serverSide:
 # Set to true to see all cache hits/misses/refreshes in your console logs. Useful
for debugging SSR caching issues.
 debug: false
 # When enabled (i.e. max > 0), known bots will be sent pages from a server side
 cache specific for bots.
 # (Keep in mind, bot detection cannot be guaranteed. It is possible some bots
 will bypass this cache.)
 botCache:
 # Maximum number of pages to cache for known bots. Set to zero (0) to disable
 server side caching for bots.
 # Default is 1000, which means the 1000 most recently accessed public pages
 will be cached.
```

466 <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

```

As all pages are cached in server memory, increasing this value will increase
memory needs.
Individual cached pages are usually small (<100KB), so max=1000 should only
require ~100MB of memory.
max: 1000
Amount of time after which cached pages are considered stale (in ms). After
becoming stale, the cached
copy is automatically refreshed on the next request.
NOTE: For the bot cache, this setting may impact how quickly search engine
bots will index new content on your site.
For example, setting this to one week may mean that search engine bots may
not find all new content for one week.
timeToLive: 86400000 # 1 day
When set to true, after timeToLive expires, the next request will receive the
cached page & then re-render the page
behind the scenes to update the cache. This ensures users primarily interact
with the cache, but may receive stale pages (older than timeToLive).
When set to false, after timeToLive expires, the next request will wait on
SSR to complete & receive a fresh page (which is then saved to cache).
This ensures stale pages (older than timeToLive) are never returned from the
cache, but some users will wait on SSR.
allowStale: true
When enabled (i.e. max > 0), all anonymous users will be sent pages from a
server side cache.
This allows anonymous users to interact more quickly with the site, but also
means they may see slightly
outdated content (based on timeToLive)
anonymousCache:
Maximum number of pages to cache. Default is zero (0) which means anonymous
user cache is disabled.
As all pages are cached in server memory, increasing this value will increase
memory needs.
Individual cached pages are usually small (<100KB), so a value of max=1000
would only require ~100MB of memory.
max: 0
Amount of time after which cached pages are considered stale (in ms). After
becoming stale, the cached
copy is automatically refreshed on the next request.
NOTE: For the anonymous cache, it is recommended to keep this value low to
avoid anonymous users seeing outdated content.
timeToLive: 10000 # 10 seconds
When set to true, after timeToLive expires, the next request will receive the
cached page & then re-render the page
behind the scenes to update the cache. This ensures users primarily interact
with the cache, but may receive stale pages (older than timeToLive).
When set to false, after timeToLive expires, the next request will wait on
SSR to complete & receive a fresh page (which is then saved to cache).
This ensures stale pages (older than timeToLive) are never returned from the
cache, but some users will wait on SSR.
allowStale: true

```

## Authentication Settings

The "auth" section provides some basic authentication-related settings. Currently, it's primarily settings related to when a session timeout warning will be showed to your users, etc.

### Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)

```
auth:
 # Authentication UI settings
 ui:
 # the amount of time before the idle warning is shown
 timeUntilIdle: 900000 # 15 minutes
 # the amount of time the user has to react after the idle warning is shown before
 they are logged out.
 idleGracePeriod: 300000 # 5 minutes
 # Authentication REST settings
 rest:
 # If the rest token expires in less than this amount of time, it will be
 refreshed automatically.
 # This is independent from the idle warning.
 timeLeftBeforeTokenRefresh: 120000 # 2 minutes
```

### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```
auth: {
 // Authentication UI settings
 ui: {
 // the amount of time before the idle warning is shown
 timeUntilIdle: 15 * 60 * 1000, // 15 minutes
 // the amount of time the user has to react after the idle warning is shown
 before they are logged out.
 idleGracePeriod: 5 * 60 * 1000, // 5 minutes
 },
 // Authentication REST settings
 rest: {
 // If the rest token expires in less than this amount of time, it will be
 refreshed automatically.
 // This is independent from the idle warning.
 timeLeftBeforeTokenRefresh: 2 * 60 * 1000, // 2 minutes
 },
},
```

## Form Settings

The "form" section provides basic settings for any forms displayed in the UI. At this time, these settings only include a validatorMap, which is not necessary to modify for most sites



**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```
form:
 # (7.5 and above) Whether to enable "spellcheck" attribute of textareas in forms.
 spellCheck: true
 # NOTE: Map server-side validators to comparative Angular form validators
 validatorMap:
 required: required
 regex: pattern
```

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```
form: {
 // NOTE: Map server-side validators to comparative Angular form validators
 validatorMap: {
 required: 'required',
 regex: 'pattern'
 }
},
```

## Notification Settings

The "notifications" section provides options related to where user notifications will appear in your UI. By default, they appear in the top right corner, and timeout after 5 seconds.

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```
notifications:
 rtl: false
 position:
 - top
 - right
 maxStack: 8
 # NOTE: after how many seconds notification is closed automatically. If set to zero
 notifications are not closed automatically
 timeout: 5000 # 5 second
 clickToClose: true
 # NOTE: 'fade' | 'fromTop' | 'fromRight' | 'fromBottom' | 'fromLeft' | 'rotate' |
 'scale'
 animate: scale
```

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```

notifications: {
 rtl: false,
 position: ['top', 'right'],
 maxStack: 8,
 // NOTE: after how many seconds notification is closed automatically. If set to
 // zero notifications are not closed automatically
 timeOut: 5000, // 5 second
 clickToClose: true,
 // NOTE: 'fade' | 'fromTop' | 'fromRight' | 'fromBottom' | 'fromLeft' | 'rotate' |
 'scale'
 animate: NotificationAnimationsType.Scale
},

```

The set of valid animations can be found in the [NotificationAnimationsType](#)<sup>467</sup>, and are implemented in `./src/shared/animations/`

**Submission Settings**

The "submission" section provides some basic Submission/Deposit UI options. These allow you to optionally enable an autosave (disabled by default), and custom styles/icons for metadata fields or authority confidence values.

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```

submission:
 autosave:
 # NOTE: which metadata trigger an autosave
 metadata: []
 # NOTE: after how many time (milliseconds) submission is saved automatically
 # eg. timer: 300000 # 5 minutes
 timer: 0
 icons:
 metadata:
 # NOTE: example of configuration
 # # NOTE: metadata name
 # - name: dc.author
 # # NOTE: fontawesome (v5.x) icon classes and bootstrap utility classes can
 # be used
 # style: fas fa-user
 - name: dc.author
 style: fas fa-user
 # default configuration
 - name: default
 style: ''

```

<sup>467</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/shared/notifications/models/notification-animations-type.ts>

```

authority:
 confidence:
 # NOTE: example of configuration
 # # NOTE: confidence value
 # - name: dc.author
 # # NOTE: fontawesome (v5.x) icon classes and bootstrap utility classes can
be used
 # style: fa-user
 - value: 600
 style: text-success
 - value: 500
 style: text-info
 - value: 400
 style: text-warning
 # default configuration
 - value: default
 style: text-muted

```

#### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```

submission: {
 autosave: {
 // NOTE: which metadata trigger an autosave
 metadata: [],
 /**
 * NOTE: after how many time (milliseconds) submission is saved automatically
 * eg. timer: 5 * (1000 * 60); // 5 minutes
 */
 timer: 0
 },
 icons: {
 metadata: [
 /**
 * NOTE: example of configuration
 * {
 * // NOTE: metadata name
 * name: 'dc.author',
 * // NOTE: fontawesome (v5.x) icon classes and bootstrap utility classes
can be used
 * style: 'fa-user'
 * }
 */
 {
 name: 'dc.author',
 style: 'fas fa-user'
 },
 // default configuration
 {
 name: 'default',
 style: ''
 }
]
 }
}

```

```

 }
],
 authority: {
 confidence: [
 /**
 * NOTE: example of configuration
 * {
 * // NOTE: confidence value
 * value: 'dc.author',
 * // NOTE: fontawesome (v4.x) icon classes and bootstrap utility
classes can be used
 * style: 'fa-user'
 * }
 */
 {
 value: 600,
 style: 'text-success'
 },
 {
 value: 500,
 style: 'text-info'
 },
 {
 value: 400,
 style: 'text-warning'
 },
 // default configuration
 {
 value: 'default',
 style: 'text-muted'
 },
]
 }
},

```

## Language Settings

The "defaultLanguage" and "languages" sections allow you to customize which languages to support in your User Interface. See also [Multilingual Support](#)(see page 544).

### Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)

```

Default Language in which the UI will be rendered if the user's browser language
is not an active language
defaultLanguage: en

Languages. DSpace Angular holds a message catalog for each of the following
languages.

```

```
When set to active, users will be able to switch to the use of this language in the
user interface.
All out of the box language packs may be found in the ./src/assets/i18n/ directory
languages:
- code: en
 label: English
 active: true
- code: cs
 label: Čeština
 active: true
- code: de
 label: Deutsch
 active: true
- ...
```

#### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```
// Default Language in which the UI will be rendered if the user's browser language
is not an active language
defaultLanguage: 'en',
// Languages. DSpace Angular holds a message catalog for each of the following
languages.
// When set to active, users will be able to switch to the use of this language in
the user interface.
languages: [{
 code: 'en',
 label: 'English',
 active: true,
}, {
 code: 'de',
 label: 'Deutsch',
 active: true,
},
...
],
```

The DSpace UI requires that a corresponding language pack file (named with the language code and ending in ".json5") be placed in `./src/assets/i18n/`. See also [DSpace 7 Translation - Internationalization \(i18n\) - Localization \(l10n\)](#)<sup>468</sup> for information about how to create and contribute these files.

#### Browse By Settings

In 7.2 or above, the "browseBy" section only provides basic UI configurations for "Browse by" pages (/browse path). The "Browse by" options that appear in the "All of DSpace" header menu *are determined dynamically from the REST API*. This allows the UI to change dynamically based on the configured browse indexes in [Discovery](#)(see page 522).

<sup>468</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=117735441>

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```

browseBy:
 # Amount of years to display using jumps of one year (current year - oneYearLimit)
 oneYearLimit: 10
 # Limit for years to display using jumps of five years (current year -
 fiveYearLimit)
 fiveYearLimit: 30
 # The absolute lowest year to display in the dropdown (only used when no lowest
 date can be found for all items)
 defaultLowerLimit: 1900
 # If true, thumbnail images for items will be added to BOTH search and browse
 result lists. (default: true)
 showThumbnails: true
 # The number of entries in a paginated browse results list.
 # Rounded to the nearest size in the list of selectable sizes on the settings menu.
 pageSize: 20

NOTE: The "types" section no longer exists, as it is determined dynamically via the
REST API

```

NOTE: The "pageSize" configuration will always round to the closest "pageSizeOptions" value listed in "page-component-options.model.ts"<sup>469</sup>

In 7.1 or 7.0, the "browseBy" section allowed you to customize which "Browse by" options appear in the "All of DSpace" header menu at the top of your DSpace site. The "id" MUST correspond to the *name* of a valid Browse index available from your REST API (see documentation on the [REST API /api/discover/browses endpoint](https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/browses.md)<sup>470</sup>). It is possible to configure additional indexes on the Backend using [Discovery](#)(see page 522), and any configured index appears in your REST API.

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```

browseBy: {
 // Amount of years to display using jumps of one year (current year - oneYearLimit)
 oneYearLimit: 10,
 // Limit for years to display using jumps of five years (current year -
 fiveYearLimit)
 fiveYearLimit: 30,
 // The absolute lowest year to display in the dropdown (only used when no lowest
 date can be found for all items)
 defaultLowerLimit: 1900,
 // List of all the active Browse-By types
 // Adding a type will activate their Browse-By page and add them to the global
 navigation menu,
 // as well as community and collection pages
 // Allowed fields and their purpose:
 // id: The browse id to use for fetching info from the rest api

```

<sup>469</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/shared/pagination/pagination-component-options.model.ts#L25>

<sup>470</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/browses.md>

```

// type: The type of Browse-By page to display
// metadataField: The metadata-field used to create starts-with options (only
// necessary when the type is set to 'date')
types: [
 {
 id: 'title',
 type: BrowseByType.Title,
 },
 {
 id: 'dateissued',
 type: BrowseByType.Date,
 metadataField: 'dc.date.issued'
 },
 {
 id: 'author',
 type: BrowseByType.Metadata
 },
 {
 id: 'subject',
 type: BrowseByType.Metadata
 }
]
},

```

### Community-List Settings

Available in 7.4 or later

The "communityList" section allows you to configure the behavior of the "Communities & Collections" page (/community-list path), which is linked in the header.

#### **config.\*.yml**

```

communityList:
 # Number of communities to list per expansion (i.e. each time you click "show more")
 pageSize: 20

```

NOTE: The "pageSize" configuration will always round to the closest "pageSizeOptions" value listed in "page-component-options.model.ts"<sup>471</sup>

### Homepage Settings

Available in 7.4 or later

The "homePage" section allows you to configure the behavior of the DSpace homepage (/ path).

<sup>471</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/shared/pagination/pagination-component-options.model.ts#L25>

**config.\*.yml**

```

homePage:
 recentSubmissions:
 # The number of item showing in recent submissions list. Set to "0" to hide all
 recent submissions
 pageSize: 5
 # Date field to use to sort recent submissions
 sortField: 'dc.date.accessioned'
 topLevelCommunityList:
 # Number of communities to list (per page) on the home page
 # This will always round to the nearest number from the list of page sizes. e.g.
 if you set it to 7 it'll use 10
 pageSize: 5

```

NOTE: The "pageSize" configuration will always round to the closest "pageSizeOptions" value listed in "page-component-options.model.ts"<sup>472</sup>

## Undo Settings

Both the "item" edit and "collection" edit screens allow you to undo changes within a specific time. This is controlled by these settings:

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```

item:
 edit:
 undoTimeout: 10000 # 10 seconds

collection:
 edit:
 undoTimeout: 10000 # 10 seconds

```

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```

item: {
 edit: {
 undoTimeout: 10000 // 10 seconds
 }
},
collection: {
 edit: {
 undoTimeout: 10000 // 10 seconds
 }
}

```

<sup>472</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/shared/pagination/pagination-component-options.model.ts#L25>



```
},
```

### Item Access Labels

Available in 7.3 or later

Item access labels allow to display for each item in search results if it is Open Access, under embargo, restricted or metadata only (does not contain any file/bitstream). This feature is disabled by default, but can be enabled in your `config.*.yaml`.

#### **config.\*.yaml**

```
Item Config
item:
 # Show the item access status label in items lists (default=false)
 showAccessStatuses: true
```

### Item Page Settings

Available in 7.5 or later

The "item" section allows you to configure the behavior of the Item pages.

#### **config.\*.yaml**

```
item:
 ...
 bitstream:
 # Number of entries in the bitstream list in the item view page.
 pageSize: 5
```

NOTE: The "pageSize" configuration will always round to the closest "pageSizeOptions" value listed in "page-component-options.model.ts"<sup>473</sup>

### Theme Settings

The "themes" section allows you to configure which theme(s) are enabled for your DSpace site (with the default theme being the "dspace" one). You can enable a single theme across all pages, and/or enable specific alternative themes based on a specific Community, Collection or Item (by UUID or Handle), or based on a Regex match of a URL pattern. This allows you fine grained control over how your site looks, including the ability to customize it per Community or Collection or even per specific pages in the site. See [User Interface Customization](#)(see page 505) for details of how to create a new, custom theme.

<sup>473</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/shared/pagination/pagination-component-options.model.ts#L25>

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```

themes:
 # Add additional themes here. In the case where multiple themes match a route, the
 first one
 # in this list will get priority. It is advisable to always have a theme that
 matches
 # every route as the last one
 #
 # # A theme with a handle property will match the community, collection or item
 with the given
 # # handle, and all collections and/or items within it
 # - name: 'custom',
 # handle: '10673/1233'
 #
 # # A theme with a regex property will match the route using a regular expression.
 If it
 # # matches the route for a community or collection it will also apply to all
 collections
 # # and/or items within it
 # - name: 'custom',
 # regex: 'collections\/\e8043bc2.*'
 #
 # # A theme with a uuid property will match the community, collection or item with
 the given
 # # ID, and all collections and/or items within it
 # - name: 'custom',
 # uuid: '0958c910-2037-42a9-81c7-dca80e3892b4'
 #
 # # The extends property specifies an ancestor theme (by name). Whenever a themed
 component is not found
 # # in the current theme, its ancestor theme(s) will be checked recursively before
 falling back to default.
 # - name: 'custom-A',
 # extends: 'custom-B',
 # # Any of the matching properties above can be used
 # handle: '10673/34'
 #
 # - name: 'custom-B',
 # extends: 'custom',
 # handle: '10673/12'
 #
 # # A theme with only a name will match every route
 # name: 'custom'
 #
 # # This theme will use the default bootstrap styling for DSpace components
 # - name: BASE_THEME_NAME
 #
 - name: dspace
 # Whenever this theme is active, the following tags will be injected into the
 <head> of the page.

```

```
Example use case: set the favicon based on the active theme.
headTags:
- tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: icon
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/favicon.ico
 sizes: any
- tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: icon
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/favicon.svg
 type: image/svg+xml
- tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: apple-touch-icon
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/apple-touch-icon.png
- tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: manifest
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/manifest.webmanifest
```

#### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```
themes: [
 // Add additional themes here. In the case where multiple themes match a route, the
 // first one
 // in this list will get priority. It is advisable to always have a theme that
 // matches
 // every route as the last one

 // {
 // // A theme with a handle property will match the community, collection or item
 // with the given
 // // handle, and all collections and/or items within it
 // name: 'custom',
 // handle: '10673/1233'
 // },
 // {
 // // A theme with a regex property will match the route using a regular
 // expression. If it
 // // matches the route for a community or collection it will also apply to all
 // collections
 // // and/or items within it
 // name: 'custom',
 // regex: 'collections\/e8043bc2.*'
 // },
 // {
 // // A theme with a uuid property will match the community, collection or item
 // with the given
 // // ID, and all collections and/or items within it
```

```

// name: 'custom',
// uuid: '0958c910-2037-42a9-81c7-dca80e3892b4'
// },
// {
// // Using the "extends" property allows a theme to extend/borrow from an
// // ancestor theme (by name).
// // // Whenever a theme component is now found in this themes, its ancestor
// // theme(s) will be checked
// // // recursively before falling back to default.
// // name: 'custom-A',
// // extends: 'custom-B',
// // // Any of the matching properties above can be used
// // handle: 10673/34,
// // },
// // {
// // name: 'custom-B',
// // extends: 'custom',
// // handle: 10673/12,
// // },
// // {
// // // A theme with only a name will match every route
// // name: 'custom'
// // },
// // {
// // // This theme will use the default bootstrap styling for DSpace components
// // name: BASE_THEME_NAME
// // },
// {
// // The default dspace theme
// name: 'dspace'
// // Whenever this theme is active, the following tags will be injected into the
// // <head> of the page.
// // Example use case: set the favicon based on the active theme.
// headTags: [
// {
// // Insert <link rel="icon" href="assets/dspace/images/favicons/favicon.ico"
// // sizes="any"/> into the <head> of the page.
// tagName: 'link',
// attributes: {
// 'rel': 'icon',
// 'href': 'assets/dspace/images/favicons/favicon.ico',
// 'sizes': 'any',
// }
// },
// ...
//]
// },
// },
],

```

## Media Viewer Settings

The DSpace UI comes with a basic, out-of-the-box Media Viewer (disabled by default). This media viewer can support any files which have a MIME Type that *begins with* either "image/\*", "video/\*", or "audio/\*".

### Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)

```
Whether to enable media viewer for image and/or video Bitstreams (i.e. Bitstreams
whose MIME type starts with 'image' or 'video').
When "image: true", this enables a gallery viewer where you can zoom or page
through images.
When "video: true", this enables embedded video streaming. This embedded video
streamer also supports audio files.
mediaViewer:
 image: false
 video: false
```

As of 7.5 (or later), the Video viewer also supports [WebVTT](#)<sup>474</sup> (or VTT) Captioning. Video captioning requires that a WebVTT Caption file (.vtt) be uploaded into the DSpace Item (DSpace is not able to create or generate these .vtt files). Here's an example of how to setup captioning:

- The Item must already have a Bitstream which is a video file (in a "video/\*" format) in the ORIGINAL bundle. In this example, we'll assume it is named "myVideo.mp4"
- Upload a corresponding WebVTT Caption file named " `[video-filename]-[languageCode].vtt` " to the ORIGINAL bundle.
  - For a video named "myVideo.mp4", an English caption file would be named "myVideo.mp4-en.vtt".
  - If an additional Spanish language caption file was uploaded, it should be named "myVideo.mp4-es.vtt".
  - All WebVTT Caption files MUST use two-letter ISO 639-1 Language Codes. A list of all supported Language Codes can be found in "src/app/item-page/media-viewer/media-viewer-video/language-helper.ts"
- Once the Caption file is uploaded, reload the video viewer (on the Item page). You should now see the "Captions" (or CC) option is now available. (Depending on the browser you use, this option may appear in the lower menu of the video, or require you to open an options menu.) Selecting it will enable captioning in your language of choice.

### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```
// Whether to enable media viewer for image and/or video Bitstreams (i.e. Bitstreams
whose MIME type starts with "image" or "video").
// For images, this enables a gallery viewer where you can zoom or page through
images.
// For videos, this enables embedded video streaming
mediaViewer: {
 image: false,
```

<sup>474</sup> [https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/API/WebVTT\\_API](https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/API/WebVTT_API)

```
video: false,
},
```

### Toggle end-user agreement and privacy policy

Available in 7.4 or later

The DSpace UI comes with basic end-user agreement and privacy policy functionality. Since release 7.4 these features can be disabled in a configuration file. More information on what disabling on of these features results in is documented in the default app configuration (see code snippet below).

#### config.\*.yml

```
info:
 # Whether the end user agreement is required before users may use the repository.
 # If enabled, the user will be required to accept the agreement before they can use
 the repository.
 # If disabled, the page will not exist and no agreement is required to use the
 repository
 enableEndUserAgreement: false
 # Whether the privacy statement should exist or not.
 enablePrivacyStatement: false
```

By default the features are enabled.

### Settings for rendering Markdown, HTML and MathJax in metadata

Available in 7.4 or later

The DSpace UI can support Markdown (using <https://commonmark.org/>) and MathJax (<https://www.mathjax.org>) in metadata field values. Both Markdown and MathJax are disabled by default.

HTML is a part of markdown, so enabling the markdown option will ensure HTML tags in metadata field values get rendered as well

```
Whether to enable Markdown (https://commonmark.org/) and MathJax (https://www.mathjax.org/)
display in supported metadata fields. By default, only dc.description.abstract is
supported.
markdown:
 enabled: false
 mathjax: false
```

Mathjax will only be rendered if markdown is enabled, so configuring 'markdown.mathjax = true' with 'markdown.enabled = false' will have no effect.

By default, only the "dc.description.abstract" metadata supports these formats when enabled. To enable markdown for other metadata fields, a custom sub-component of the [ItemPageFieldComponent](#)<sup>475</sup> has to be created for that metadata field, with the [enableMarkdown](#)<sup>476</sup> field set to true. Refer to the [ItemPageAbstractFieldComponent](#)<sup>477</sup> component for an example.

## Controlled Vocabularies in Search Filters

Available in 7.5 or later

When using hierarchical controlled vocabularies (e.g. SRSC as described in [Authority Control of Metadata Values](#)(see [page 371](#))), it's possible to search using the controlled vocabulary hierarchy via the search filters. To enable this feature, you must specify the filter and vocabulary to enable as follows:

```
Which vocabularies should be used for which search filters
and whether to show the filter in the search sidebar
Take a look at the filter-vocabulary-config.ts file for documentation on how the
options are obtained
vocabularies:
 - filter: 'subject'
 vocabulary: 'srsc'
 enabled: true
```

Keep in mind, the "filter" MUST be a valid search filter (e.g. subject, author) as seen on the "/api/discover/facets" REST API endpoint. The "vocabulary" MUST be a valid controlled vocabulary installed in your DSpace backend (under "[dspace]/config/controlled-vocab/" folder based on the documentation at [Authority Control of Metadata Values](#)(see [page 371](#))).

## Universal (Server-side Rendering) Settings

### Only valid for 7.1 or 7.0

As of DSpace 7.2, these settings are no longer editable. Universal is automatically enabled at all times to support [Search Engine Optimization](#)(see [page 647](#)).

The "universal" section pertains to enabling/disabling [Angular Universal for Server-side rendering](#)<sup>478</sup>. DSpace requires server-side rendering to support [Search Engine Optimization](#)(see [page 647](#)). When it's turned off, your site may not be able to be indexed in Google, Google Scholar and other search engines.

<sup>475</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/item-page/simple/field-components/specific-field/item-page-field.component.ts>

<sup>476</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/item-page/simple/field-components/specific-field/item-page-field.component.ts#L23>

<sup>477</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/item-page/simple/field-components/specific-field/abstract/item-page-abstract-field.component.ts>

<sup>478</sup> <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

**environment.\*.ts**

```
// Angular Universal settings
universal: {
 preboot: true,
 async: true,
 time: false
},
```

## Debug Settings

The "debug" property allows you to turn on debugging in the Angular UI. When enabled, your environment and all [Redux](https://redux.js.org/)<sup>479</sup> actions/transfers are logged to the console. This is only ever needed if you are debugging a tricky issue.

**Format for 7.2 or later (config.\*.yml)**

```
NOTE: will log all redux actions and transfers in console
debug: false
```

**Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)**

```
// NOTE: will log all redux actions and transfers in console
debug: false
```

## 4.12.2 User Interface Customization

- [Angular Overview](#)(see page 506)
- [Theme Technologies](#)(see page 506)
- [Running the UI in Developer Mode](#)(see page 507)
- [Creating a Custom Theme](#)(see page 507)
  - [Theme Directories & Design Principles](#)(see page 507)
  - [Getting Started](#)(see page 508)
  - [Global style/font/color customizations](#)(see page 510)
  - [Customize Logo in Header](#)(see page 513)

---

<sup>479</sup> <https://redux.js.org/>



- [Customize Footer](#)(see page 514)
- [Customize Favicon for site or theme](#)(see page 515)
- [Customize Home Page News](#)(see page 517)
- [Customize other Components in your Theme](#)(see page 518)
- [Customize UI labels using Internationalization \(i18n\) files](#)(see page 518)
- [Extending other Themes](#)(see page 518)
- [Adding Component Directories to your Theme](#)(see page 520)
- [Removing Component Directories from your Theme](#)(see page 521)
- [Additional Theming Resources](#)(see page 521)

#### 4.12.2.1 Angular Overview

The DSpace User Interface (UI) is built on the [Angular.io](#)<sup>480</sup> framework. All data comes from the [REST API](#)(see page 666) (DSpace Backend), and the final HTML pages are generated via [TypeScript](#)<sup>481</sup>.

Before getting started in customizing or branding the UI, there are some basic Angular concepts to be aware of. *You do not need to know Angular or TypeScript to theme or brand the UI.* But, understanding a few basic concepts will allow you to better understand the folder structure / layout of the codebase.

**Angular Components:** In Angular, every webpage consists of a number of "components" which define the structure of a page. They are the main "building block" of any Angular application. Components are reusable across many pages. So, for example, there's only one "header" and "footer" component, even though they appear across all pages.

Each Component has:

- A `*.component.ts` ([TypeScript](#)<sup>482</sup>) file which contains the logic & name ("selector") of the component
- A `*.component.html` (HTML) file which contains the HTML markup for the component (and possibly references to other embedded components). This is also called the "template".
  - In HTML files, components are named/referenced as HTML-like tags (e.g. `<ds-header>` , `<ds-footer>` ). In DSpace's UI, every component starts with "ds-" in order to distinguish it as an out-of-the-box DSpace component.
- A `*.component.scss` ([Sass](#)<sup>483</sup> / CSS) file which contains the style for the component.

If you want a deeper dive into Angular concepts of Components and Templates, see <https://angular.io/guide/architecture-components>

#### 4.12.2.2 Theme Technologies

The DSpace UI uses:

- [Bootstrap](#)<sup>484</sup> (v4.x) website framework for general layout & webpage components (buttons, alerts, etc)
- [Sass](#)<sup>485</sup>, a CSS preprocessor, for stylesheets. Sass is very similar to CSS (in fact, any CSS is valid Sass). But, Sass allows you to nest CSS rules & have variables and functions. For a brief overview on Sass, see <https://sass-lang.com/guide>

---

480 <https://angular.io/>

481 <https://www.typescriptlang.org/>

482 <https://www.typescriptlang.org/>

483 <https://sass-lang.com/>

484 <https://getbootstrap.com/>

485 <https://sass-lang.com/>

- [HTML5](#)<sup>486</sup>, the latest specification of the HTML language

Familiarity with these technologies (or even just CSS + HTML) is all you need to do basic theming of the DSpace UI.

#### 4.12.2.3 Running the UI in Developer Mode

Whenever you are testing changes in the User Interface, may wish to see you changes "live" instead of rebuilding after each change. The easiest way to achieve this is to run the User Interface locally (i.e. on localhost) in developer mode by running:

```
yarn start:dev
```

This mode has several development-specific advantages:

- UI starts more rapidly
- UI will use a separate "config.dev.yml" configuration file (in 7.1 or 7.0 this file was named "environment.dev.ts"). This lets you have development specific configs, separate from your Production settings in "config.prod.yml" (in 7.1 or 7.0 this file was named "environment.prod.ts")
- UI will automatically reload anytime you modify a file. Essentially the UI will constantly "watch" for changes (as you make them) & will reload anytime you modify a file. This lets you find issues/bugs more rapidly and also test more rapidly.

Keep in mind, you should NEVER run the UI in developer mode in production scenarios. Production mode provides much better performance and ensures your site fully supports SEO, etc.

#### 4.12.2.4 Creating a Custom Theme

##### Theme Directories & Design Principles

A theme's directory should include the following files and directories

- `app/` contains the theme's Angular components and should mirror the structure of `src/app/`
- `assets/` contains the theme's custom assets, such as fonts or images
- `styles/` contains the theme's global styles
- `eager-theme.module.ts` declares the components that should be included in the app's main bundle, such as
  - *Eager components* are those that should be available immediately when first loading, such as the main parts of the homepage and components that are present on every page.
  - *Entry components*<sup>487</sup> that are registered via a decorator such as `@listableObjectComponent`. These must also be included in the module's `providers`.
- `lazy-theme.module.ts` declares all the other components of the theme.

Out of the box, there are three theming layers/directories to be aware of:

- **Base Theme** (`src/app/` directories): The primary look & feel of DSpace (e.g. HTML layout, header/footer, etc) is defined by the HTML5 templates under this directory. Each HTML5 template is stored in a subdirectory named for the Angular component where that template is used. The base theme includes very limited styling

<sup>486</sup> <https://html.spec.whatwg.org/dev/>

<sup>487</sup> <https://angular.io/guide/entry-components>

(CSS, etc), based heavily on [default Bootstrap \(4.x\) styling](#)<sup>488</sup>, and only allowing for minor tweaks to improve WCAG 2.1 AA accessibility.

- **Custom Theme** ( `src/themes/custom` directories): This directory acts as the scaffolding or template for creating a new custom theme. It provides (empty) Angular components/templates which allow you to change the theme of individual components. Since all files are empty by default, if you enable this theme (without modifying it), it will look *identical* to the Base Theme.
- **DSpace Theme** ( `src/themes/dspace` directories): This is the default theme for DSpace 7. It's a very simple example theme providing a custom color scheme, header & homepage on top of the Base Theme. It's important to note that this theme **ONLY** provides custom CSS/images to override our Base Theme. All HTML5 templates are included at the Base Theme level, as this ensures those HTML5 templates are also available to the Custom Theme.

The DSpace UI design principles & technologies are described in more detail at [DSpace UI Design principles and guidelines](#)<sup>489</sup>

## Getting Started

1. *Choose a theme to start from:* As documented above, there are two "src/theme/" directories provided out of the box: "custom" or "dspace". You should select one to use as the basis for your theme. Which you choose is up to you, but here are a few things to consider:
  - a. *DSpace Theme* ( `src/themes/dspace` ): This is a simple, example theme for novice users. Primarily, in this theme, you can immediately customize the CSS, header & homepage components. You can add other components as needed (see "[Adding Component Directories to your Theme](#)(see [page 520](#))" below).
    - i. *Advantages:* This theme is small and simple. It provides an easy starting point / example for basic themes. Future User Interface upgrades (e.g. from 7.1 → 7.2) are likely to be easier because the theme is smaller in size.
    - ii. *Disadvantages:* It has very few component directories by default. But you can always add more. See "[Adding Component Directories to your Theme](#)(see [page 520](#))" below.
  - b. *Custom Theme* ( `src/themes/custom` ): This theme provides all available theme-able components for more advanced or complex theming options. This provides you full control over everything that is theme-able in the User Interface
    - i. *Advantages:* All theme-able components are provided in subdirectories. This makes it easier to modify the look and feel of any area of the User Interface.
    - ii. *Disadvantages:* After creating your theme, you may wish to remove any component directories that you didn't modify (see "[Removing Component Directories from your Theme](#)(see [page 521](#))" below). Generally speaking, upgrades (e.g. from 7.1 → 7.2) are often easier if your theme includes fewer components (as your theme may require updates if any component it references change significantly).
2. *Create your own theme folder OR edit the existing theme folder:* Either edit the theme directory in place, or copy it (and all its contents) into a new folder under `src/themes/` (choose whatever folder name you want)
3. *Register your theme folder (only necessary if you create a new folder in previous step):* Now, we need to make the UI aware of this new theme folder, before it can be used in configuration.
  - a. Modify `angular.json` (in the root folder), adding your theme folder's main "theme.scss" file to the "styles" list. The below example is for a new theme folder named `src/themes/mydspaceite/`

<sup>488</sup> <https://getbootstrap.com/docs/4.6/getting-started/introduction/>

<sup>489</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+UI+Design+principles+and+guidelines>

```

"styles": [
 "src/styles/startup.scss",
 {
 "input": "src/styles/base-theme.scss",
 "inject": false,
 "bundleName": "base-theme"
 },
 ...
 {
 "input": "src/themes/mydspacesite/styles/theme.scss",
 "inject": false,
 "bundleName": "mydspacesite-theme"
 },
]

```

NOTE: the "bundleName" for your custom them MUST use the format "\${folder-name}-theme". E.g. if the folder is named "src/themes/amazingtheme", then the "bundleName" MUST be "amazingtheme-theme"

4. (As of 7.3 or above) Import the new theme's `eager-theme.module.ts` in `themes/eager-themes.module.ts`. If you're switching from one theme to another, remove the old theme from the imports. Below is an example for a theme named "my-theme":

#### themes/eager-themes.module.ts

```

// COMMENT out the imports for any themes you are NOT using
//import { EagerThemeModule as DSpaceEagerThemeModule } from './dspace/eager-
theme.module';
//import { EagerThemeModule as CustomEagerThemeModule } from './custom/eager-
theme.module';

// Add a new import for your custom theme. Give its EagerThemeModule a unique
name (e.g. "as [choose-a-unique-name]").
// Make sure the path points at its "eager-theme.module.ts" (see 'from' portion
of the import statement).
// NOTE: You can import multiple themes if you plan to use multiple themes
import { EagerThemeModule as MyThemeEagerThemeModule } from './my-theme/eager-
theme.module';

...
@NgModule({
 imports: [
 // Again, comment out any themes you are NOT using
 //DSpaceEagerThemeModule,
 //CustomEagerThemeModule,

 // Add your custom theme's EagerThemeModule to this list
 // NOTE: you can add multiple theme's to this list if you plan to use
multiple themes.
 MyThemeEagerThemeModule,

```

```
],
})
```

5. *Enable your theme:* Modify your `config/config.*.yml` configuration file (in 7.1 or 7.0 this file was named `src/environments/environment.*.ts`), adding your new theme to the "themes" array in that file. Pay close attention to modify the correct configuration file (e.g. modify `config.dev.yml` if running in dev mode, or `config.prod.yml` if running in prod mode). We recommend starting in "dev mode" (`config.dev.yml`) as this mode lets you see your changes immediately in a browser without a full rebuild of the UI – see next step.

#### Format for 7.2 or above (config.\*.yml)

```
In this example, we only show one theme enabled. It's possible to enable
multiple (see below note)
themes:
 - name: 'myspacesite'
```

#### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```
// In this example, we only show one theme enabled. It's possible to enable
multiple (see below note)
themes: [
 {
 name: 'myspacesite'
 },
]
```

NOTE: The "name" used is the name of the theme's folder, so the example is for enabling a theme at `src/themes/myspacesite/` globally. You should also comment out the default "dspace" theme, if you intend to replace it entirely.

NOTE #2: You may also choose to enable multiple themes for your site, and even specify a different theme for different Communities, Collections, Items or URL paths. See [User Interface Configuration](#) (see page 478) for more details on "Theme Settings"

6. *Verify your settings by starting the UI* (ideally in Dev mode): At this point, you should verify the basic settings you've made all "work". We recommend doing your theme work while running the UI in "dev mode", as the UI will auto-restart anytime you save a new change. This will allow you to quickly see the impact of each change in your browser.

```
Start in dev mode (which uses config.dev.yml)
yarn start:dev
```

7. At this point, you can start making changes to your theme. See the following sections for examples of how to make common changes.

## Global style/font/color customizations

Changes to the global Bootstrap variables or styles will apply to all pages / Angular components across the entire site.

1. *Global style changes:* All global style changes can be made in your theme's `styles` folder (e.g. `src/themes/mydspacesite/styles`). There are four main files in that folder:
  - a. `_theme_sass_variable_overrides.scss` - May be used to override Bootstrap's default Sass variables. This is the file you may wish to use for **most** style changes. There are a large number of Bootstrap variables available which control everything from fonts, colors and the base style for all Bootstrap web components. For a full list of Bootstrap variables you can override in this file, see the `node_modules/bootstrap/scss/_variables.scss` file (which is installed in your source directory when you run "yarn install"). More information may also be found in the Bootstrap Sass documentation at <https://getbootstrap.com/docs/4.0/getting-started/theming/#sass>
  - b. `_theme_css_variable_overrides.scss` - May be used to override DSpace's default CSS variables. DSpace's UI uses CSS variables for all its components. These variables all start with "--ds-\*", and are listed in `src/styles/_custom_variables.scss`. You can also use this file to add your own, custom CSS variables which you want to use for your theme. If you create custom variables, avoid naming them with a "--ds-\*" or a "--bs-\*" prefix, as those are reserved for DSpace and Bootstrap variables.
  - c. `_global-styles.scss` - May be used to modify the global CSS/SCSS for the site. This file may be used to override the default global style contained in `src/styles/_global-styles.scss`. Keep in mind, many styles can be more quickly changed by simply updating a variable in one of the above "\*\_variable\_overrides.scss" files. So, it's often easier to use those first, where possible.
  - d. `theme.scss` - This just imports all the necessary Sass files to create the theme. It's unnecessary to modify directly, unless you wish to add new Sass files to your theme.
2. *Modifying the default font:* By default, DSpace uses Bootstrap's "native font stack"<sup>490</sup>, which just uses system UI fonts. However, the font used in your site can be quickly updated via Bootstrap variables in your theme's `_theme_sass_variable_overrides.scss` file.
  - a. One option is to add a new import statement and modify the "\$font-family-sans-serif" variable:

```
// Import the font (from a URL)
@import url('https://fonts.googleapis.com/css?family=Source+Sans+Pro');

// Configure Bootstrap to use this font (and list a number of backup fonts
// to use on various systems)
$font-family-sans-serif: 'Source Sans Pro', -apple-system,
BlinkMacSystemFont, "Segoe UI", "Roboto", "Helvetica Neue", Arial, sans-
serif, "Apple Color Emoji", "Segoe UI Emoji", "Segoe UI Symbol" !default;
```

- b. If your font requires installing local files, you can do the following
  - i. Copy your font file(s) in your theme's `assets/fonts/` folder

---

<sup>490</sup> <https://getbootstrap.com/docs/4.0/content/reboot/#native-font-stack>

- ii. Create a new ".scss" file specific to your font in that folder, e.g. `assets/fonts/open-sans.scss`, and use the "@font-face" CSS rule<sup>491</sup> to load that font:

```
open-sans.scss

@font-face {
 font-family: "Open Sans";
 src: url("/assets/fonts/OpenSans-Regular-webfont.woff2") format("woff2"),
 url("/assets/fonts/OpenSans-Regular-webfont.woff") format("woff");
}
```

- iii. Then, import that new "open-sans.scss" file and use it in the "\$font-family-sans-serif" variable

```
// Import the font via the custom SCSS file
@import '../assets/fonts/open-sans';

// Configure Bootstrap to use this font (and list a number of backup
// fonts to use on various systems)
$font-family-sans-serif: 'Open Sans', -apple-system,
BlinkMacSystemFont, "Segoe UI", "Roboto", "Helvetica Neue", Arial,
sans-serif, "Apple Color Emoji", "Segoe UI Emoji", "Segoe UI Symbol"
!default;
```

- c. Keep in mind, as changing the font just requires adjusting Bootstrap Sass variables, there are a lot of Bootstrap guides out there that can help you make more advanced changes
3. *Modifying default color scheme:* The colors used in your site can be quickly updated via Bootstrap variables in your theme's `_theme_sass_variable_overrides.scss` file.
  - a. Again, you can use entirely Bootstrap variables to adjust color schemes. See the [Bootstrap Theming Colors documentation](#)<sup>492</sup>
  - b. A list of all Bootstrap color variables can be found in the `node_modules/bootstrap/scss/_variables.scss` file
  - c. Additional examples can be found in the out-of-the-box "dspace" theme, which adjusts the default Bootstrap colors slightly for both accessibility & to match the DSpace logo.
4. Any changes require rebuilding your UI. If you are running in "dev mode" (`yarn start:dev`), then the UI will restart automatically whenever changes are detected.

### CSS custom properties vs. SASS variables

Support for theme switching at runtime requires that components use CSS custom properties (which vary at runtime) rather than SASS variables (which are fixed at build time). Thus, SASS variables will be undefined in individual components' stylesheets. The Bootstrap SASS variables are mapped to CSS properties for use in these places. For example, `$red` is mapped to `--bs-red` and may be referenced as `var("--bs-red")`.

<sup>491</sup> <https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/@font-face>

<sup>492</sup> <https://getbootstrap.com/docs/4.1/getting-started/theming/#color>

## Customize Logo in Header

1. Copy your logo to your theme's `assets/images/` folder. Anything in this theme folder will be deployed to `/assets/[theme-name]/images/` URL path.
2. Edit your theme's `app/header/header.component.ts` file. Swap the "templateUrl" property that your theme is using the local copy of "header.component.html"

### header.component.ts

```
@Component({
 selector: 'ds-header',
 // styleUrls: ['header.component.scss'],
 styleUrls: ['../../../../../app/header/header.component.scss'],
 // Uncomment the templateUrl which references the "header.component.html"
 // file in your theme directory
 templateUrl: 'header.component.html',
 // Comment out the templateUrl which references the default "src/app/header/
 // header.component.html" file.
 //templateUrl: '../../../../../app/header/header.component.html',
})
```

3. Your theme's version of the `header.component.html` file will be empty by default. Copy over the default HTML code from `src/app/header/header.component.html` into your version of this file.
4. Then, modify your copy of `header.component.html` to use your logo. In this example, we're assuming your theme name is "mytheme" and the logo file is named "my-logo.svg"

```
<header>
 <div class="container">
 <div class="d-flex flex-row justify-content-between">

 <!-- Modify the logo on the next line -->

 ...
 </div>
 </header>
```

5. Obviously, you can also make additional modifications to the HTML of the header in this file! You'll also see that the header references several other DSpace UI components (e.g. `<ds-search-navbar>` is the search icon in the header). You can easily comment out these tags to disable them, or move them around to change where that component appears in the header.
6. Any changes require rebuilding your UI. If you are running in "dev mode" (`yarn start:dev`), then the UI will restart automatically whenever changes are detected.
7. NOTE: If you have a theme based on the "dspace" theme, be aware that theme places the header logo in two locations. This allows the "dspace" theme to support a single-line header (whereas the "custom" theme's header is multi-line):



- a. The Header component (*as described above*) is only used on user profile pages
- b. The Navbar component ( `src/app/navbar/navbar.component.html` ) is used everywhere else. The Navbar component can be customized in the same way as the Header Component. Just edit the logo path in the "navbar.component.html".

### Customize Footer

1. First, you'll want to decide if you want to modify just the footer's HTML, or the footer's styles (CSS/Sass), or both.
  - a. If you want to modify the HTML, you'll need to create a copy of "footer.component.html" in your theme, where you place your changes.
  - b. If you want to modify the styles, you'll need to create a copy of "footer.component.scss" in your theme, where you place your changes.
2. Edit your theme's `app/footer/footer.component.ts` file. Swap the "templateUrl" and "styleUrls" properties, based on which you want to modify in your theme.

#### footer.component.ts

```
@Component({
 selector: 'ds-footer',
 // If you want to modify styles, then...
 // Uncomment the styleUrls which references the "footer.component.scss" file
 // in your theme's directory
 // and comment out the one that references the default "src/app/footer/
 // footer.component.scss"
 styleUrls: ['footer.component.scss'],
 //styleUrls: ['../../../../../app/footer/footer.component.scss'],
 // If you want to modify HTML, then...
 // Uncomment the templateUrl which references the "footer.component.html"
 // file in your theme's directory
 // and comment out the one that references the default "src/app/footer/
 // footer.component.html"
 templateUrl: 'footer.component.html'
 //templateUrl: '../../../../../app/footer/footer.component.html'
})
```

3. Now, based on what you want to modify, you will need to either update your theme's copy of `footer.component.html` or `footer.component.scss` or both.
  - a. To change footer HTML: Your theme's version of the `footer.component.html` file will be empty by default. Copy over the default HTML code from `src/app/footer/footer.component.html` into your version of this file.
  - b. To change footer Styles: Your theme's version of the `footer.component.scss` file will be empty by default. Copy over the default Sass code from `src/app/footer/footer.component.scss` into your version of this file.
4. Modify the HTML or Sass as you see fit.

- a. If you want to add images, add them to your theme's `assets/images` folder. Then reference them at the `/assets/[theme-name]/images/` URL path.
  - b. Keep in mind, all Bootstrap variables, utility classes & styles can be used in these files. Take advantage of Bootstrap when you can do so.
5. DSpace also has a option to display a two-level footer, which is becoming more common these days. By default, DSpace just displays a small, bottom footer. But, you can enable a top footer (above that default footer) by add this line into your theme's `footer.component.ts`

#### footer.component.ts

```
export class FooterComponent extends BaseComponent {
 // This line will enable the top footer in your theme
 showTopFooter = true;
}
```

This top footer appears in the `footer.component.html` within a div. Notice the `*ngIf='showTopFooter'`, which only shows that div when that variable is set to "true"

#### footer.component.html

```
<footer class="text-lg-start">
 <!-- This div and everything within it only displays if showTopFooter=true -->
 <div *ngIf="showTopFooter" class="top-footer">
 ...
 </div>
 <!-- The bottom footer always displays -->
 <div class="bottom-footer ...">
 ...
 </div>
</footer>
```

6. Any changes require rebuilding your UI. If you are running in "dev mode" (`yarn start:dev`), then the UI will restart automatically whenever changes are detected.

### Customize Favicon for site or theme

Available in 7.2 or above. In 7.1 or 7.0, the only way to change the favicon is to modify the `src/assets/images/favicon.ico` file.

Each theme has the ability to add a set of (attribute-only) HTML tags in the `<head>` section of the page. This is useful for example to change the **favicon** based on the active theme. Whenever the theme changes, the head tags are reset. A theme can inherit head tags from the parent theme **only** if it doesn't have any head tags itself. (E.g. theme B extends theme A; if theme B does not have head tags, the head tags of theme A will be used (if any). However, if theme B does have head tags, only the tags from theme B will be used.) If none of the themes in the inheritance hierarchy have head tags configured, the head tags of the default theme (if any) will be used.

Note that a simple hardcoded favicon is set in case no head tags are currently active. The hardcoded favicon is stored at `src/assets/images/favicon.ico`. This implies that if head tags are added to a theme, the favicon should also be configured explicitly for that theme, else the behavior is undefined.

1. In the "themes" section of your `config/config.*.yml` configuration file, add (one or more) "headTags", pointing at the favicon file you want to use. For example:

```

themes:
 # The default dspace theme
 - name: dspace
 # Whenever this theme is active, the following tags will be injected into
 the <head> of the page.
 # Example use case: set the favicon based on the active theme.
 headTags:
 # Insert <link rel="icon" href="assets/dspace/images/favicons/
 favicon.ico" sizes="any"/> into the <head> of the page.
 - tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: icon
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/favicon.ico
 sizes: any
 # Insert <link rel="icon" href="assets/dspace/images/favicons/
 favicon.svg" type="image/svg+xml"/> into the <head> of the page.
 - tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: icon
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/favicon.svg
 type: image/svg+xml
 # Insert <link rel="apple-touch-icon" href="assets/dspace/images/
 favicons/apple-touch-icon.png"/> into the <head> of the page.
 - tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: apple-touch-icon
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/apple-touch-icon.png
 # Insert <link rel="manifest" href="assets/dspace/images/favicons/
 manifest.webmanifest"/> into the <head> of the page.
 - tagName: link
 attributes:
 rel: manifest
 href: assets/dspace/images/favicons/manifest.webmanifest

```

2. In 7.2 or above, any changes to this configuration just require restarting your site (no rebuild necessary). In 7.1 or 7.0, you must rebuild your site after modifying the favicon.ico.
3. NOTE: If you specify multiple formats for your favicon (e.g. favicon.svg and favicon.ico), then your browser will select which one it prefers (e.g. Chrome seems to favor SVG over ICO). However, if you want to force all browser to use a single favicon, then you may wish to only specify one "icon" format in your `headTags` section.

## Customize Home Page News

1. First, you'll want to decide if you want to modify just the Home Page News HTML, or styles (CSS/Sass), or both.
  - a. If you want to modify the HTML, you'll need to create a copy of "home-news.component.html" in your theme, where you place your changes.
  - b. If you want to modify the styles, you'll need to create a copy of "home-news.component.scss" in your theme, where you place your changes.
2. Edit your theme's `app/home-page/home-news/home-news.component.ts` file. Swap the "templateUrl" and "styleUrls" properties, based on which you want to modify in your theme.

```
home-news.component.ts

@Component({
 selector: 'ds-home-news',
 // If you want to modify styles, then...
 // Uncomment the styleUrls which references the "home-news.component.scss"
 // file in your theme's directory
 // and comment out the one that references the default "src/app/home-page/
 // home-news/home-news.component.scss"
 styleUrls: ['./home-news.component.scss'],
 //styleUrls: ['../../../../../app/home-page/home-
 // news.component.scss'],
 // If you want to modify HTML, then...
 // Uncomment the templateUrl which references the "home-news.component.html"
 // file in your theme's directory
 // and comment out the one that references the default "src/app/home-page/
 // home-news/home-news.component.html"
 templateUrl: './home-news.component.html',
 //templateUrl: '../../../../../app/home-page/home-
 // news.component.html'
})
```

3. Now, based on what you want to modify, you will need to either update your theme's copy of `home-news.component.html` or `home-news.component.scss` or both.
  - a. To change HTML: Your theme's version of the `home-news.component.html` file will be empty by default. Copy over the default HTML code from `src/app/home-page/home-news/home-news.component.html` into your version of this file.
  - b. To change Styles: Your theme's version of the `home-news.component.scss` file will be empty by default. Copy over the default Sass code from `src/app/home-page/home-news/home-news.component.scss` into your version of this file.
4. Modify the HTML or Sass as you see fit.
  - a. If you want to add images, add them to your theme's `assets/images` folder. Then reference them at the `/assets/[theme-name]/images/` URL path.
  - b. Keep in mind, all Bootstrap variables, utility classes & styles can be used in these files. Take advantage of Bootstrap when you can do so.

5. Any changes require rebuilding your UI. If you are running in "dev mode" (yarn start:dev), then the UI will restart automatically whenever changes are detected.

### Customize other Components in your Theme

By now, if you've followed this entire guide, you'll notice a pattern! Customizing specific DSpace UI components requires just three steps:

1. *Configure your theme to use its copies of files:* Modify the corresponding `*.component.ts` in your theme.
  - a. If you want to modify component style, replace the "styleUrls" in that file to point at the copy of `*.component.scss` in your theme.
  - b. If you want to modify component HTML, replace the "template" in that file to point at the copy of `*.component.html` in your theme.
2. *Copy the default UI code into your theme file(s)*
  - a. If you want to modify component style, copy the default `*.component.scss` code (from `src/app/`) into your theme's `component.scss` file.
  - b. If you want to modify component HTML, copy the default `*.component.html` code (from `src/app/`) into your theme's `component.html` file.
3. *Modify those theme-specific files*
  - a. If you want to add images, add them to your theme's `assets/images` folder. Then reference them at the `/assets/[theme-name]/images/` URL path.
  - b. Keep in mind, all Bootstrap variables, utility classes & styles can be used in these files. Take advantage of Bootstrap when you can do so.
4. Remember to either rebuild the UI after each change, or run in dev mode (yarn start:dev) while you are doing theme work.

### Customize UI labels using Internationalization (i18n) files

Much of the text (like headers and labels) displayed by the DSpace UI is captured in translation (language pack) files to support the use of DSpace in multiple languages. This model of multi-language support is called internationalization (abbreviated i18n). The default set of these i18n files are stored in `src/assets/i18n` and named using the language code, so `en.json5` is the English translation, `fr.json5` is the French translation, etc. In each of these files, a set of "keys" is mapped to text in the given language.

If you would like to change the text displayed in the UI, you will need to edit the i18n translation files. There are two approaches you can take:

1. You can edit the `src/assets/i18n/*.json5` file(s) directly
  - a. For example, to change the label for the browse menu when viewing the UI in English (which defaults to "All of DSpace"), you would edit `src/assets/i18n/en.json5` and change the value for `menu.section.browse_global`.
2. And/or, you can create a separate `*.json5` file in your theme which only lists the keys you have changed. This can keep your language changes in your theme, and will override the default keys in the `src/assets/i18n/` files. However, a specific setup is necessary, see the "Theme override approach" instructions below.

**Theme override approach**

The following "theme override" approach to capture i18n changes within a theme is only supported in DSpace 7.1 or above.

While editing the default i18n files directly is effective, the recommended approach is to capture i18n changes in your theme. This ensures that your changes to the default values are easy to find and review and also removes the risk of losing your changes when upgrading to newer versions of DSpace.

To capture i18n changes in your theme, you will need to:

1. Create an i18n directory under `src/themes/[theme-name]/assets`
2. For each language you would like to update, add a file to the new i18n directory following the naming scheme in the default i18n directory (en.json5 for English, fr.json5 for French, etc)
3. In each translation file add only the settings that you wish to add or override

There is an example of this configuration in the custom theme, which you can find in `src/themes/custom/assets/i18n`.

Once you have changes in place within your theme, they need to be applied by executing a script.

1. In a terminal window, change to the /scripts directory
2. Execute:

```
yarn merge-i18n -s src/themes/[theme-name]/assets/i18n
```

The `merge-i18n` script will merge the changes captured in your theme with the default settings, resulting in updated versions of the default i18n files. Any setting you included in your theme will override the default setting. Any new properties will be added. Files will be merged based on file name, so en.json5 in your theme will be merged with the en.json5 file in the default i18n directory.

**Extending other Themes**

This is only supported in 7.1 and above

Themes can extend other themes using the "extends" configuration. See [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478) for more examples.

Extending another theme means that you inherit all the settings of the extended theme. So, if the current theme does NOT specify a component style, its ancestor theme(s) will be checked recursively for their styles before falling back to the default. In other words, this "extends" setting allows for a theme to **inherit** all styles/components from the extended theme, and only override those styles/components you wish to override.

Here's a basic example:

**Format for 7.2 or above (config.\*.yml)**

```
themes:
 # grandchild theme
 - name: custom-A
```

```

extends: custom-B
handle: '10673/34'
child theme
- name: custom-B
 extends: custom
 handle: 10673/2
default theme
- name: custom

```

#### Format for 7.1 or 7.0 (environment.\*.ts)

```

themes: [
 // grandchild theme
 {
 name: 'custom-A',
 extends: 'custom-B',
 handle: '10673/34',
 },
 // child theme
 {
 name: 'custom-B',
 extends: 'custom',
 handle: '10673/2',
 },
 // default theme
 {
 name: 'custom',
 },
],

```

In the above examples:

- When the object at Handle '10673/2' (and any child objects) is viewed, the 'custom-B' theme will be used. By default, you'll have the same styles as the extended 'custom' theme. However, you can override individual styles in your 'custom-B' theme.
- When the object at Handle '10673/34' (and any child objects) is viewed, the 'custom-A' theme will be used. By default, your overall theme will be based on the 'custom' theme (in this case a "grandparent" theme). But, you can override those styles in your 'custom-B' theme or 'custom-A' theme.
  - The order of priority is 'custom-A', then 'custom-B', then 'custom'. If a style/component is in 'custom-A' it will be used. If not, 'custom-B' will be checked and if it's there, that version will be used. If not in either 'custom-A' or 'custom-B', then the style/component from 'custom' will be used. If the style/component is not in ANY of those themes, then the default (base theme) style will be used.

#### Adding Component Directories to your Theme

If you come across an Angular Component which is NOT in your theme but want to customize it, you can add it into your theme directory. This involves copying the component from the "Custom" theme over into your theme.

You can add/copy over a Component Directory as follows:

1. First, copy the Angular Component directory in question from the "Custom" theme folder (src/themes/custom) into your theme's folder. *NOTE: at this time, not all components are theme-able. So, if it doesn't exist in the "Custom" theme folder, then it may not be possible to theme.*
  - a. For example, if you wanted to add the Footer Component to your theme, it can be found in the "Custom" theme at "src/themes/custom/app/footer".
  - b. Copy that entire folder into your theme folder, retaining the same relative path. For example, to add the Footer Component, copy "src/themes/custom/app/footer" (and all contents) into "src/themes/[your-theme]/app/footer".
2. Now, you need to "register" that component in one of your theme's module files: lazy-theme.module.ts or eager-theme.module.ts. For performance it's best to put as many components into lazy-theme.module.ts as that means they'll only be downloaded if they're needed. Components in eager-theme.module.ts are included in the initial JS download for the app, so you should only add components there that are necessary on every page, such as the header and footer, these should be added to the `DECLARATIONS` array. You should also include components using one of our custom decorators (such as `@listableObjectComponent`), because those decorators need to be registered when the app starts to be able to be picked up. These should be added to the `ENTRY_COMPONENTS` array, which will both declare them as well as ensure they're loaded when the app starts.
3. Add an import of the new component file, or **copy** the corresponding import from "src/themes/custom/lazy-theme.module.ts" or "src/themes/custom/eager-theme.module.ts". For example, the Footer Component import can be found in "src/themes/custom/eager-theme.module.ts" and looks like this:

```
import { FooterComponent } from './app/footer/footer.component';
```

4. In that same module file, also add this imported component to the "DECLARATIONS" section. (Again, you can optionally look in the custom theme's module files to see how its done). For example, the Footer Component would then be added to the list of DECLARATIONS (the order of the declarations list doesn't matter):

```
const DECLARATIONS = [

 FooterComponent,

];
```

5. At this point, you should rebuild/restart your UI to ensure nothing has broken. If you did everything correctly, no build errors will occur. Generally speaking, it's best to add Components one by one, rebuilding in between.
6. Now, you can customize your newly added Component by following the "[Customizing Other Components in your Theme](#)(see page 0)" instructions above.

### Removing Component Directories from your Theme

While there is no harm in keeping extra, unmodified component directories in your theme, it can be beneficial to *remove component directories which are unchanged*.

The main advantage to keeping your theme simple/small is that it can make future upgrades easier. Generally speaking, the fewer components you have in your theme, the less likely your theme will need modification in a future upgrade (as generally your theme may require updates if one of the components it references underwent structural/major changes).

You can remove a Component directory as follows:



1. First you MUST remove all references to that directory/component from your theme's `lazy-theme.module.ts` and `eager-theme.module.ts` files.
  - a. For example, to delete the `./app/login-page` directory, you'd want to find which component(s) use that directory in your `lazy-theme.module.ts` file.
  - b. If you search that file, you'd find this reference:

```
import { LoginPageComponent } from './app/login-page/login-page.component';
```

- c. That means you not only need to remove that "import" statement. You'd also need to remove all other references to "LoginPageComponent" in that same `lazy-theme.module.ts` file. So, you'd also need to remove it from the DECLARATIONS section:

```
const DECLARATIONS = [

 LoginPageComponent,

];
```

2. Finally, delete the directory in question from your theme.
3. At this point, you should rebuild/restart your UI to verify nothing has broken. If you did everything correctly, no build errors will occur.
  - a. If you failed to edit your `lazy-theme.module.ts` correctly, you may see "Cannot find module [path-to-module]" errors which reference the directories that Angular/Node can no longer find in your theme. Either restore those directories, or remove the reference(s) from the `lazy-theme.module.ts` similar to step 1 above.

#### 4.12.2.5 Additional Theming Resources

- ["Getting Started with DSpace 7.0" Basic Workshop at OR2021 Conference](#)<sup>493</sup>
- [Bootstrap Documentation](#)<sup>494</sup> - DSpace's UI strives to be compliant with "out-of-the-box" Bootstrap as much as possible. Therefore, Bootstrap knowledge is very beneficial in customizing DSpace.
- [Sass Documentation](#)<sup>495</sup> - Bootstrap and DSpace both use Sass to enhance your ability to customize styles quickly via variables, etc. Some familiarity with Sass is recommended, though you need not be an expert.

### 4.12.3 Discovery

- [What is DSpace Discovery](#)(see page 523)
  - [What is a Sidebar Facet](#)(see page 523)
  - [What is a Search Filter](#)(see page 524)
  - [What is a tag cloud facet](#)(see page 525)
- [Configuration files](#)(see page 525)
- [General Discovery settings \(config/modules/discovery.cfg\)](#)(see page 525)

<sup>493</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+7+at+OR2021>

<sup>494</sup> <https://getbootstrap.com/docs/4.1/getting-started/introduction/>

<sup>495</sup> <https://sass-lang.com/documentation>

- [Browse settings \(config/dspace.cfg\)](#)(see page 528)
- [Modifying the Discovery User Interface \(config/spring/api/discovery.xml\)](#)(see page 529)
  - [Structure Summary](#)(see page 529)
  - [Default settings](#)(see page 530)
  - [Non indexed metadata fields](#)(see page 530)
  - [Search filters & sidebar facets Customization](#)(see page 532)
    - [Hierarchical \(taxonomies based\) sidebar facets](#)(see page 533)
  - [Sort option customization for search results](#)(see page 534)
  - [DiscoveryConfiguration](#)(see page 534)
    - [Configuring lists of sidebarFacets and searchFilters](#)(see page 535)
    - [Configuring and customizing search sort fields](#)(see page 535)
    - [Adding default filter queries \(OPTIONAL\)](#)(see page 536)
    - [Access Rights Awareness](#)(see page 536)
      - [Access Rights Awareness - technical details](#)(see page 537)
    - [Customizing the Recent Submissions display](#)(see page 537)
    - [Customizing hit highlighting & search snippets](#)(see page 538)
      - [Hit highlighting technical details](#)(see page 539)
    - ["More like this" configuration](#)(see page 540)
      - ["More like this" technical details](#)(see page 540)
    - ["Did you mean" spellcheck aid for search configuration](#)(see page 540)
      - ["Did you mean" spellcheck aid for search technical details](#)(see page 541)
    - [Customizing the "Tag Cloud" facet](#)(see page 541)
    - [Disabling the "Has file\(s\)" facet](#)(see page 543)
- [Discovery Solr Index Maintenance](#)(see page 543)
- [Advanced Solr Configuration](#)(see page 544)

#### 4.12.3.1 What is DSpace Discovery

The Discovery Module enables faceted searching & browsing for your repository.

Although these techniques are new in DSpace, they might feel familiar from other platforms like Aquabrowser or Amazon, where facets help you to select the right product according to facets like price and brand. DSpace Discovery offers very powerful browse and search configurations that were only possible with code customization in the past.

[Watch the DSpace Discovery introduction video](#)<sup>496</sup>

Since 6.0, Discovery is the only out-of-the-box Search and Browse infrastructure provided in DSpace.

#### What is a Sidebar Facet

From the user perspective, faceted search (also called faceted navigation, guided navigation, or parametric search) breaks up search results into multiple categories, typically showing counts for each, and allows the user to "drill down" or further restrict their search results based on those facets.

When you have successfully enabled Discovery in your DSpace, you will notice that the different enabled facets are visualized in a "Discover" section in your sidebar, by default, right below the Browse options.

---

<sup>496</sup> <http://www.youtube.com/v/abRSXTUEwws>

**Discover**

**Author**

[hemker, h.c. \(135\)](#)

[verspagen, bart \(82\)](#)

[hemker, h. coenraad \(39\)](#)

[grip, a. de \(34\)](#)

[muysken, j. \(33\)](#)

[... View More](#)

**Subject**

[economics \(jel: a\) \(34\)](#)

[economics of technology \(jel: o\) \(22\)](#)

[economic development and growth \(jel: o\) \(17\)](#)

[education, training and the labour market \(12\)](#)

[mathematical economics \(12\)](#)

[... View More](#)

**Date Issued**

[2010 - 2011 \(17\)](#)

[2000 - 2009 \(678\)](#)

[1990 - 1999 \(130\)](#)

[1980 - 1989 \(126\)](#)

[1972 - 1979 \(69\)](#)

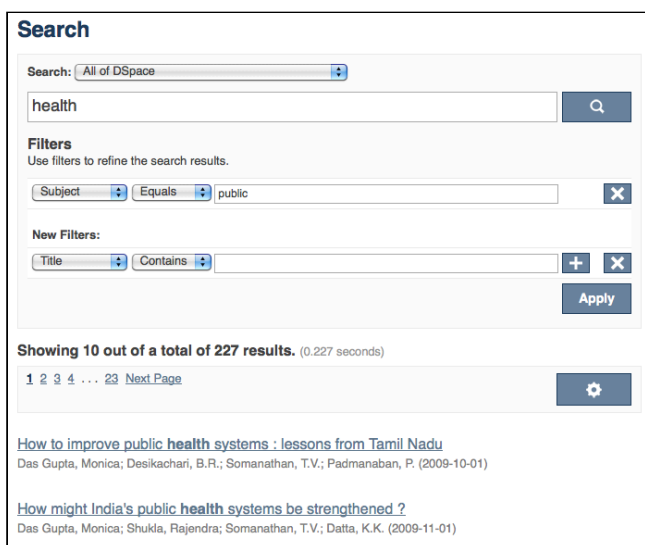
In this example, there are 3 Sidebar Facets: Author, Subject and Date Issued. It's important to know that multiple metadata fields can be included in one facet. For example, the Author facet above includes values from both dc.contributor.author as well as dc.creator.

Another important property of Sidebar Facets is that their contents are automatically updated to the context of the page. On collection homepages or community homepages it will include information about the items included in that particular collection or community.

#### What is a Search Filter

In a standard search operation, a user specifies his complete query prior to launching the operation. If the results are not satisfactory, the user starts over again with a (slightly) altered query.

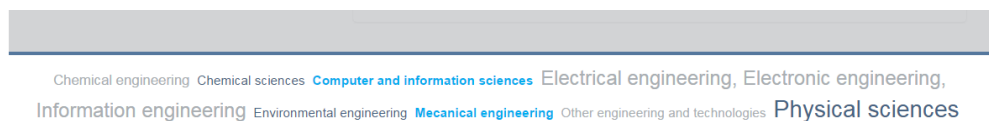
In a faceted search, a user can modify the list of displayed search results by specifying additional "filters" that will be applied on the list of search results. In DSpace, a filter is a contain condition applied to specific facets. In the example below, a user started with the search term "health", which yielded 500 results. After applying the filter "public" on the facet "Subject", only 227 results remain. Each time a user selects a sidebar facet it will be added as a filter. Active filters can be altered or removed in the 'filters' section of the search interface.



Another example: Using the standard search, a user would search for something like [**wetland + "dc.author=Mitsch, William J" + dc.subject="water quality"**]. With filtered search, they can start by searching for [**wetland**], and then filter the results by the other attributes, author and subject.

What is a tag cloud facet

Tag cloud facet is another way to display facets of your repository in a "tag cloud" form in which the importance of each tag is shown with font size or color. This format is useful for quickly perceiving the most prominent terms.



This is a classic "tag cloud" facet in a DSpace repository.

#### 4.12.3.2 Configuration files

The configuration for discovery is located in 2 separate files.

- General settings: The `discovery.cfg` file located in the `[dspace-install-dir]/config/modules` directory.
- Browse settings: The `dspace.cfg` file located in `[dspace-install-dir]/config/` includes "webui.browse.index.\*" settings
- User Interface Configuration: The `discovery.xml` file is located in `[dspace-install-dir]/config/spring/api/` directory.

### 4.12.3.3 General Discovery settings ( `config/modules/discovery.cfg` )

The `discovery.cfg` file is located in the `[dspace]/config/modules` directory and contains following properties. Any of these properties may be overridden in your `local.cfg` (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)):

Property:	<b>discovery.search.server</b>
Example Value:	<code>discovery.search.server=[http://localhost:8080/solr/search]</code>
Informational Note:	<p>Discovery relies on a Solr index for storage and retrieval of its information. This parameter determines the location of the Solr index.</p> <p>If you are uncertain whether this property is set correctly, you can use a commandline tool like "wget" to perform a query against the Solr index (and ensure Solr responds). For example, the below query searches the Solr index for "test" and returns the response on standard out:</p> <pre>wget -O - http://localhost:8080/solr/search/select?q=test</pre>
Property:	<b>discovery.index.authority.ignore[.field]</b>
Example Value:	<pre>discovery.index.authority.ignore=true</pre> <pre>discovery.index.authority.ignore.dc.contributor.author=false</pre>
Informational Note:	<p>By default, Discovery will use the authority information in the metadata to disambiguate homonyms. Setting this property to false will make the indexing process the same as the metadata doesn't include authority information. The configuration can be different on a field (<code>&lt;schema&gt;.&lt;element&gt;.&lt;qualifier&gt;</code>) basis. Setting the property without a field will change the default value.</p>
Property:	<b>discovery.browse.authority.ignore[.browse-index]</b>
Example Value:	<pre>discovery.browse.authority.ignore=true</pre> <pre>discovery.browse.authority.ignore.author=false</pre>

Informational Note:	<i>Similar property to "discovery.index.authority.ignore", except specific to the "Browse By" indexes. By default, Discovery will use the authority information in the metadata to disambiguate homonyms. Setting this property to false will make the indexing process the same as the metadata doesn't include authority information. The configuration can be different on a browse index basis. Setting the property without a browse index will change the default value.</i>
Property:	<b>discovery.index.authority.ignore-prefered[.field]</b>
Example Value:	<pre>discovery.index.authority.ignore-prefered=true discovery.index.authority.ignore-prefered.dc.contributor.author=false</pre>
Informational Note:	By default, Discovery will use the authority information in the metadata to query the authority for the preferred label. Setting this property to false will make the indexing process the same as the metadata doesn't include authority information (i.e. the preferred form is the one recorded in the metadata value). The configuration can be different on a field (<schema>.<element>.<qualifier>) basis. Setting the property without a field will change the default value. <b>If the authority is a remote service, disabling this feature can greatly improve performance.</b>
Property:	<b>discovery.browse.authority.ignore-prefered[.browse-index]</b>
Example Value:	<pre>discovery.browse.authority.ignore-prefered=true discovery.browse.authority.ignore-prefered.author=false</pre>
Informational Note:	<i>Similar property to "discovery.index.authority.ignore-prefered", except specific to the "Browse By" indexes. By default, Discovery will use the authority information in the metadata to query the authority for the preferred label. Setting this property to false will make the indexing process the same as the metadata doesn't include authority information (i.e. the preferred form is the one recorded in the metadata value). The configuration can be different on a browse index basis. Setting the property without a browse index will change the default value. <b>If the authority is a remote service, disabling this feature can greatly improve performance.</b></i>
Property:	<b>discovery.index.authority.ignore-variants[.field]</b>

Example Value:	<code>discovery.index.authority.ignore-variants=true</code> <code>discovery.index.authority.ignore-variants.dc.contributor.author=false</code>
Informational Note:	By default, Discovery will use the authority information in the metadata to query the authority for variants. Setting this property to false will make the indexing process the same, as the metadata doesn't include authority information. The configuration can be different on a per-field (<schema>.<element>.<qualifier>) basis. Setting the property without a field will change the default value. <b>If authority is a remote service, disabling this feature can greatly improve performance.</b>
Property:	<b>discovery.browse.authority.ignore-variants[.browse-index]</b>
Example Value:	<code>discovery.browse.authority.ignore-variants=true</code> <code>discovery.browse.authority.ignore-variants.author=false</code>
Informational Note:	<i>Similar property to "discovery.index.authority.ignore-variants", except specific to the "Browse By" indexes.</i> By default, Discovery will use the authority information in the metadata to query the authority for variants. Setting this property to false will make the indexing process the same, as the metadata doesn't include authority information. The configuration can be different on a browse index basis. Setting the property without a browse index will change the default value. <b>If authority is a remote service, disabling this feature can greatly improve performance.</b>

#### 4.12.3.4 Browse settings ( `config/dspace.cfg` )

See the "Browse Index Configuration" section of the [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 780) for all "Browse By" configurations. These Configurations control both which fields are indexed for browsing, as well as which Browse by options appear in the user interface. Changing these configurations requires reindexing.

If you add new browse fields then you should coordinate changes here with the message catalog(s) in the UI. You will need to add several entries:

key	value
<code>browse.comcol.by.*</code>	label the browse field in the Browse menu of a community or collection page

key	value
menu.section.browse_global_by_*	label the browse field in the "browse" dropdown at the top of the page
browse.metadata.*	label the browse field in the body of the browsing page
browse.metadata.*.breadcrumbs	label the browse field in the page's "breadcrumb trail"

#### 4.12.3.5 Modifying the Discovery User Interface ( `config/spring/api/discovery.xml` )

The `discovery.xml` file is located in the `[dspace]/config/spring/api` directory. Modifying these settings can change the behavior of the Search pages in the user interface, allowing you to customize the facets, filters, sort options, etc.

If you add new search fields, sorts, etc. then you should coordinate changes here with the message catalog(s) in the UI. You will need to add e.g. `search.filters.filter.NAME.head` (where NAME is the `indexFieldName` of the field definition) to label a new search field.

#### Structure Summary

This file is in XML format. You should be familiar with XML before editing this file. The configurations are organized together in beans, depending on the purpose these properties are used for.

This purpose can be derived from the class of the beans. Here's a short summary of classes you will encounter throughout the file and what the corresponding properties in the bean are used for.

[Download the configuration file and review it together with the following parameters](#)<sup>497</sup>

Class:	<b>DiscoveryConfigurationService</b>
Purpose:	Defines the mapping between separate Discovery configurations and individual collections/communities
Default:	All communities, collections and the homepage (key=default) are mapped to defaultConfiguration. Also controls the metadata fields that should not be indexed in the search core (item provenance for example).
Class:	<b>DiscoveryConfiguration</b>
Purpose:	Groups configurations for sidebar facets, search filters, search sort options and recent submissions
Default:	There is one configuration by default called defaultConfiguration

<sup>497</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566682/discovery.xml?api=v2&modificationDate=1540318717159&version=1>



Class:	<b>DiscoverySearchFilter</b>
Purpose:	Defines that specific metadata fields should be enabled as a search filter
Default:	dc.title, dc.contributor.author, dc.creator, dc.subject.* and dc.date.issued are defined as search filters
Class:	<b>DiscoverySearchFilterFacet</b>
Purpose:	Defines which metadata fields should be offered as a contextual sidebar browse options, each of these facets has also got to be a search filter
Default:	dc.contributor.author, dc.creator, dc.subject.* and dc.date.issued
Class:	<b>HierarchicalSidebarFacetConfiguration</b>
Purpose:	Defines which metadata fields contain hierarchical data and should be offered as a contextual sidebar option
Class:	<b>DiscoverySortConfiguration</b>
Purpose:	Further specifies the sort options to which a DiscoveryConfiguration refers
Default:	dc.title and dc.date.issued are defined as alternatives for sorting, other than Relevance (hard-coded)
Class:	<b>DiscoveryHitHighlightingConfiguration</b>
Purpose:	Defines which metadata fields can contain hit highlighting & search snippets
Default:	dc.title, dc.contributor.author, dc.subject, dc.description.abstract & full text from text files.
Class:	<b>TagCloudFacetConfiguration</b>
Purpose:	Defines the tag cloud appearance configuration bean and the search filter facets to appear in the tag cloud form. You can have different " <b>TagCloudFacetConfiguration</b> " per community or collection or the home page

## Default settings

In addition to the summarized descriptions of the default values, following details help you to better understand these defaults. If you haven't already done so, [download the configuration file and review it together with the following parameters](#)<sup>498</sup>.

The file contains one default configuration that defines following sidebar facets, search filters, sort fields and recent submissions display:

- Sidebar facets
  - **searchFilterAuthor:** groups the metadata fields dc.contributor.author & dc.creator with a facet limit of 10, sorted by occurrence count
  - **searchFilterSubject:** groups all subject metadata fields (dc.subject.\*) with a facet limit of 10, sorted by occurrence count
  - **searchFilterIssued:** contains the dc.date.issued metadata field, which is identified with the type "date" and sorted by specific date values
- Search filters
  - **searchFilterTitle:** contains the dc.title metadata field
  - **searchFilterAuthor:** contains the dc.contributor.author & dc.creator metadata fields
  - **searchFilterSubject:** contains the dc.subject.\* metadata fields
  - **searchFilterIssued:** contains the dc.date.issued metadata field with the type "date"
- Sort fields
  - **sortTitle:** contains the dc.title metadata field
  - **sortDateIssued:** contains the dc.date.issued metadata field, this sort has the type date configured.
- defaultFilterQueries
  - The default configuration contains no defaultFilterQueries
  - The default filter queries are disabled by default but there is an example in the default configuration in comments which allows discovery to only return items (as opposed to also communities/collections).
- Recent Submissions
  - The recent submissions are sorted by dc.date.accessioned which is a date and a maximum number of 5 recent submissions are displayed.
- Hit highlighting
  - The fields dc.title, dc.contributor.author & dc.subject can contain hit highlighting.
  - The dc.description.abstract & full text field are used to render search snippets.
- Non indexed metadata fields
  - **Community/Collections:** dc.rights (copyright text)
  - **Items:** dc.description.provenance

Many of the properties contain lists that use references to point to the configuration elements. This way a certain configuration type can be used in multiple discovery configurations so there is no need to duplicate them.

## Non indexed metadata fields

The discovery.xml file has configuration to not index certain metadata fields for communities/collections/items. The configuration is handled in the "toIgnoreMetadataFields" property located in the "org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryConfigurationService" bean. Below is an example configuration that excludes dc.description.provenance for items & dc.rights for communities/collections:

```
<property name="toIgnoreMetadataFields">
 <map>
```

<sup>498</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566682/discovery.xml?api=v2&modificationDate=1540318717159&version=1>

```

 <entry>
 <key><util:constant static-field="org.dspace.core.Constants.COMMUNITY"/
></key>
 <list>
 <!--Introduction text-->
 <!--<value>dc.description</value>-->
 <!--Short description-->
 <!--<value>dc.description.abstract</value>-->
 <!--News-->
 <!--<value>dc.description.tableofcontents</value>-->
 <!--Copyright text-->
 <value>dc.rights</value>
 <!--Community name-->
 <!--<value>dc.title</value>-->
 </list>
 </entry>
 <entry>
 <key><util:constant static-field="org.dspace.core.Constants.COLLECTION"/
></key>
 <list>
 <!--Introduction text-->
 <!--<value>dc.description</value>-->
 <!--Short description-->
 <!--<value>dc.description.abstract</value>-->
 <!--News-->
 <!--<value>dc.description.tableofcontents</value>-->
 <!--Copyright text-->
 <value>dc.rights</value>
 <!--Collection name-->
 <!--<value>dc.title</value>-->
 </list>
 </entry>
 <entry>
 <key><util:constant static-field="org.dspace.core.Constants.ITEM"/></key>
 <list>
 <value>dc.description.provenance</value>
 </list>
 </entry>
 </map>
</property>

```

By adding additional values to the appropriate lists additional metadata can be excluded from the search core, a reindex is required after altering this file to ensure that the values are removed from the index.

### Search filters & sidebar facets Customization

This section explains the properties for search filters & sidebar facets. Each sidebar facet must occur in the reference list of the search filters. Below is an example configuration of a search filter that is not used as a sidebar facet.

```

<bean id="searchFilterTitle" class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoverySearchFilter">

```

```

<property name="indexFieldName" value="title"/>
<property name="metadataFields">
 <list>
 <value>dc.title</value>
 </list>
</property>
</bean>

```

The id & class attributes are mandatory for this type of bean. The properties that it contains are discussed below.

- **indexFieldName** (Required): A unique search filter name, the metadata will be indexed in Solr under this field name.
- **metadataFields** (Required): A list of the metadata fields that need to be included in the facet.

Sidebar facets extend the search filter and add some extra properties to it. Below is an example of a search filter that is also used as a sidebar facet.

```

<bean id="searchFilterAuthor" class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.SidebarFacetC
onfiguration">
 <property name="indexFieldName" value="author"/>
 <property name="metadataFields">
 <list>
 <value>dc.contributor.author</value>
 <value>dc.creator</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 <property name="facetLimit" value="10"/>
 <property name="sortOrder" value="COUNT"/>
 <property name="type" value="text"/>
</bean>

```

Note that the class has changed from **DiscoverySearchFilter** to **SidebarFacetConfiguration**. This is needed to support the extra properties.

- **facetLimit** (optional): The maximum number of values to be shown. This property is optional, if none is specified the default value "10" will be used. If the filter has the type **date**, this property will not be used since dates are automatically grouped together.
- **sortOrder** (optional): The sort order for the sidebar facets, it can either be COUNT or VALUE. The default value is COUNT.
  - **COUNT** Facets will be sorted by the number of times they appear in the repository
  - **VALUE** Facets will be sorted alphabetically
- **type** (optional): the type of the sidebar facet it can either be "date" or "text". "text" is the default value.
  - **text**: The facets will be treated as is
  - **date**: Only the year will be stored in the Solr index. These years are automatically displayed in ranges that get smaller when you select one.

#### Hierarchical (taxonomies based) sidebar facets

Discovery supports specialized drill down in hierarchically structured metadata fields. For this drill down to work, the metadata in the field for which you enable this must be composed out of terms, divided by a splitter. For example, you could have a dc.subject.taxonomy field in which you keep metadata like "CARTOGRAPHY::PHOTOGRAMMETRY", in which Cartography and Photogrammetry are both terms, divided by the

splitter "::". Initially the sidebar will only display the top level facets. When clicking on "view more" all the facet options will be displayed.

```
<bean id="searchFilterSubject" class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.Hierarchical
SidebarFacetConfiguration">
 <property name="indexFieldName" value="subject"/>
 <property name="metadataFields">
 <list>
 <value>dc.subject</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 <property name="sortOrder" value="COUNT"/>
 <property name="splitter" value="::"/>
 <property name="skipFirstNodeLevel" value="false"/>
</bean>
```

Note that the class has changed from **SidebarFacetConfiguration** to **HierarchicalSidebarFacetConfiguration**. This is needed to support the extra properties.

- **splitter** (required): The splitter used to split up the separate nodes
- **skipFirstNodeLevel** (optional): Whether or not to show the root node level. For some hierarchical data there is a single root node. In most cases it doesn't need to be shown since it isn't relevant. **This property is true by default.**

#### Sort option customization for search results

This section explains the properties of an individual SortConfiguration, like sortTitle and sortDateIssued from the default configuration. In order to create custom sort options, you can either modify specific properties of those that already exist or create a totally new one from scratch.

Here's what the sortTitle SortConfiguration looks like:

```
<bean id="sortTitle" class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoverySortFieldConf
figuration">
 <property name="metadataField" value="dc.title"/>
 <property name="type" value="text"/>
</bean>
```

The `id` and `class` attributes are mandatory for this type of bean. The properties that it contains are discussed below.

- **metadataField** (Required): The metadata field indicating the sort values
- **type** (optional): the type of the sort option can either be date or text, if none is defined text will be used.

#### DiscoveryConfiguration

The DiscoveryConfiguration groups configurations for sidebar facets, search filters, search sort options and recent submissions. If you want to show the same sidebar facets, use the same search filters, search options and recent submissions everywhere in your repository, you will only need one DiscoveryConfiguration and you might as well just edit the defaultConfiguration.

The DiscoveryConfiguration makes it very easy to use custom sidebar facets, search filters, ... on specific communities or collection homepage. This is particularly useful if your collections are heterogeneous. For example, in a collection with conference papers, you might want to offer a sidebar facet for conference date, which might be more relevant than the actual issued date of the proceedings. In a collection with papers, you might want to offer a facet for funding bodies or publisher, while these fields are irrelevant for items like learning objects.

A DiscoveryConfiguration consists of six parts:

- The list of applicable sidebarFacets
- The list of applicable searchFilters
- The list of applicable searchSortFields
- Any default filter queries (optional)
- The configuration for the Recent submissions display
- The configuration of the tag cloud facet

Configuring lists of sidebarFacets and searchFilters

After modifying sidebarFacets and searchFilters, don't forget to reindex existing items by running `[dspace]/bin/dspace index-discovery -b`, otherwise the changes will not appear.

Below is an example of how one of these lists can be configured. It's important that each of the bean references corresponds to the exact name of the earlier defined facets, filters or sort options.

Each sidebar facet must also occur in the list of the search filters.

```
<property name="sidebarFacets">
 <list>
 <ref bean="sidebarFacetAuthor" />
 <ref bean="sidebarFacetSubject" />
 <ref bean="sidebarFacetDateIssued" />
 </list>
</property>
```

Configuring and customizing search sort fields

The search sort field configuration block contains the available sort fields and the possibility to configure a default sort field and sort order.

Below is an example of the sort configuration.

```
<property name="searchSortConfiguration">
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoverySortConfiguration">
 <!--<property name="defaultSort" ref="sortDateIssued"/>-->
 <!--DefaultSortOrder can either be desc or asc (desc is default)-->
 <property name="defaultSortOrder" value="desc"/>
 <property name="sortFields">
 <list>
 <ref bean="sortTitle" />
 <ref bean="sortDateIssued" />
 </list>
 </property>
 </bean>
</property>
```

```

 </property>
 </bean>
</property>

```

The property name & the bean class are mandatory. The property field names are discussed below.

- **defaultSort** (optional): The default field on which the search results will be sorted. This must be a reference to an existing search sort field bean. If none is given relevance will be the default. Sorting according to the internal relevance algorithm is always available, even though it's not explicitly mentioned in the sortFields section.
- **defaultSortOrder** (optional): The default sort order can either be asc or desc.
- **sortFields** (mandatory): The list of available sort options, each element in this list must link to an existing sort field configuration bean.

#### Adding default filter queries (OPTIONAL)

Default filter queries are applied on all search operations and sidebar facet clicks. One useful application of default filter queries is ensuring that all returned results are items. As a result, subcommunities and collections that are returned as results of the search operation, are filtered out.

Similar to the lists above, the default filter queries are defined as a list. They are optional.

```

<property name="defaultFilterQueries">
 <list>
 <value>query1</value>
 <value>query2</value>
 </list>
</property>

```

This property contains a simple list which in turn contains the queries. Some examples of possible queries:

- search.resourcetype:2
- dc.subject:test
- dc.contributor.author: "Van de Velde, Kevin"
- ...

#### Access Rights Awareness

By default, when searching and browsing using Discovery, you will only see items that you have access to. So, your search/browse results may differ if you are logged into DSpace. This Access Rights Awareness feature ensures that anonymous users (and search engines) are not able to access information (both files and metadata) about embargoed or private items. It also provides you with more direct control over who can see individual items within your DSpace.

##### *How does Access Rights Awareness work?*

Access Rights Awareness checks the "READ" access on the Item.

If the "Anonymous" group has "READ" access on the Item, then anonymous/public users will be able to view that Item's metadata and locate that Item via DSpace's search/browse system. In addition, search engines will also be able to index that Item's metadata. However, even with Anonymous READ set at the Item-level, you may still choose to access-restrict the downloading/viewing of *files* within the Item. To do so, you would restrict "READ" access on individual Bitstream(s) attached to the Item.

If the "Anonymous" group does NOT have "READ" access on the Item, then anonymous users will never see that Item appear within their search/browse results (essentially the Item is "invisible" to them). In addition, that Item

will be invisible to search engines, so it will never be indexed by them. However, any users who have been given READ access will be able to find/locate the item after logging into DSpace. For example, if a "Staff" group was provided "READ" access on the Item, then members of that "Staff" group would be able to locate the item via search/browse after logging into DSpace.

#### How can I disable Access Rights Awareness?

If you prefer to allow all access-restricted or embargoed Items to be findable within your DSpace, you can choose to turn off Access Rights Awareness. However, please be aware that this means that restricting "READ" access on an Item will not really do anything – the Item metadata will be available to the public no matter what group(s) were given READ access on that Item.

This feature can be switched off by going to the `[dspace.dir]/config/spring/api/discovery.xml` file & commenting out the bean & the alias shown below.

```
<bean class="org.dspace.discovery.SolrServiceResourceRestrictionPlugin" id="solrServiceResourceIndexPlugin"/>

<alias name="solrServiceResourceIndexPlugin" alias="org.dspace.discovery.SolrServiceResourceRestrictionPlugin"/>
```

The Browse Engine only supports the "Access Rights Awareness" if the Solr/Discovery backend is enabled (see [Defining the Storage of the Browse Data](#) (see page 780)). However, it is enabled by default for DSpace 3.x and above.

#### Access Rights Awareness - technical details

The *DSpaceObject* class has an *updateLastModified()* method which will be triggered each time an authorization policy changes. This method is only implemented in the item class where the last\_modified timestamp will be updated and a modify event will be fired. By doing this we ensure that the discovery consumer is called and the item is reindexed. Since this feature can be switched off a separate plugin has been created: the *SolrServiceResourceRestrictionPlugin*. Whenever we reindex a DSpace object all the read rights will be stored in the read field. We make a distinction between groups and users by adding a 'g' prefix for groups and the 'e' prefix for epersons.

When searching in discovery all the groups the user belongs to will be added as a filter query as well as the users identifier. If the user is an admin all items will be returned since an admin has read rights on everything.

#### Customizing the Recent Submissions display

The recent submissions configuration element contains all the configuration settings to display the list of recently submitted items on the home page or community/collection page. Because the recent submission configuration is in the discovery configuration block, it is possible to show 10 recently submitted items on the home page but 5 on the community/collection pages.

Below is an example configuration of the recent submissions.

```
<property name="recentSubmissionConfiguration">
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryRecentSubmissionsConfiguration">
 <property name="metadataSortField" value="dc.date.accessioned"/>
 <property name="type" value="date"/>
 <property name="max" value="5"/>
 </bean>
</property>
```



```
</bean>
</property>
```

The property name and the bean class are mandatory. The property field names are discussed below.

- **metadataSortField** (mandatory): The metadata field to sort on to retrieve the recent submissions
- **max** (mandatory): The maximum number of results to be displayed as recent submissions
- **type** (optional): the type of the search filter. It can either be date or text, if none is defined text will be used.

### Customizing hit highlighting & search snippets

The hit highlighting configuration element contains all settings necessary to display search snippets & enable hit highlighting.

#### Disabling hit highlighting / search snippets

You can disable hit highlighting / search snippets by commenting out the entire `<property name="hitHighlightingConfiguration">` Configuration in the `[dspace]/config/spring/api/discovery.xml` configuration file.

**PLEASE BE AWARE there are two sections where this `<property>` definition exists.** You should comment out both. One is under the `<bean id="defaultConfiguration">` and one is under the `<bean id="homepageConfiguration">`

Alternatively, you may also choose to tweak which fields are shown in hit highlighting, or modify the number of matching words shown (snippets) and/or number of characters shown around the matching word (maxSize).

For this change to take effect in the User Interface, you will need to restart Tomcat.

Changes made to the configuration will not automatically be displayed in the user interface. By default, only the following fields are displayed: dc.title, dc.contributor.author, dc.creator, dc.contributor, dc.date.issued, dc.publisher, dc.description.abstract and fulltext. If additional fields are required, look for the "itemSummaryList" template.

Below is an example configuration of hit highlighting.

```
<property name="hitHighlightingConfiguration">
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryHitHighlightingConfiguration">
 <property name="metadataFields">
 <list>
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryHitHighlightingFieldConfiguration">
 <property name="field" value="dc.title"/>
 <property name="snippets" value="5"/>
 </bean>
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryHitHighlightingFieldConfiguration">
 <property name="field" value="dc.contributor.author"/>
 <property name="snippets" value="5"/>
 </bean>
 </list>
 </property>
 </bean>
</property>
```

```

 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryHitHighlight
FieldConfiguration">
 <property name="field" value="dc.subject"/>
 <property name="snippets" value="5"/>
 </bean>
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryHitHighlight
FieldConfiguration">
 <property name="field" value="dc.description.abstract"/>
 <!-- Max number of characters to display around the matching word
(Warning setting to 0 returns entire field) -->
 <property name="maxSize" value="250"/>
 <!-- Max number of snippets (matching words) to show -->
 <property name="snippets" value="2"/>
 </bean>
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryHitHighlight
FieldConfiguration">
 <!-- Displays snippets from indexed full text of document (for
supported formats) -->
 <property name="field" value="fulltext"/>
 <!-- Max number of characters to display around the matching word
(Warning setting to 0 returns entire field) -->
 <property name="maxSize" value="250"/>
 <!-- Max number of snippets (matching words) to show -->
 <property name="snippets" value="2"/>
 </bean>
 </list>
</property>
</bean>
</property>

```

The property name and the bean class are mandatory. The property field names are:

- **field** (mandatory): The metadata field to be highlighted (can also be \* if all the metadata fields should be highlighted).
- **maxSize** (optional): Limit the number of characters displayed to only the relevant part (use metadata field as search snippet).
- **snippets** (optional): The maximum number of snippets that can be found in one metadata field.

#### Hit highlighting technical details

The *org.dspace.discovery.DiscoveryQuery* object has a setter & getter for the hit highlighting configuration set in Discovery configuration. If this configuration is given the *resolveToSolrQuery* method located in the *org.dspace.discovery.SolrServiceImpl* class will use the standard Solr highlighting feature (<http://wiki.apache.org/solr/HighlightingParameters>). The *org.dspace.discovery.DiscoverResult* class has a method to set the highlighted fields for each object & field.

The rendering of search results is no longer handled by the METS format but uses a special type of list named "TYPE\_DSO\_LIST". Each metadata field (& fulltext if configured) is added in the DRI and IF the field contains hit highlighting the Java code will split up the string & add *DRI highlights* to the list. The XSL for the themes also contains special rendering XSL for the DRI; for Mirage, the changes are located in the *discovery.xsl* file. For themes using the old themes based on structural.xsl, look for the template matching "*dri:list[@type='dsolist']*".

### "More like this" configuration

The "more like this"-configuration element contains all the settings for displaying related items on an item display page.

Below is an example of the "more like this" configuration.

```
<property name="moreLikeThisConfiguration">
 <bean class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.DiscoveryMoreLikeThisConfiguratio
n">
 <property name="similarityMetadataFields">
 <list>
 <value>dc.title</value>
 <value>dc.contributor.author</value>
 <value>dc.creator</value>
 <value>dc.subject</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 <!--The minimum number of matching terms across the metadata fields above
before an item is found as related -->
 <property name="minTermFrequency" value="5"/>
 <!--The maximum number of related items displayed-->
 <property name="max" value="3"/>
 <!--The minimum word length below which words will be ignored-->
 <property name="minWordLength" value="5"/>
 </bean>
</property>
```

The property name and the bean class are mandatory. The property field names are discussed below.

- `similarityMetadataFields`: the metadata fields checked for similarity
- `minTermFrequency`: The minimum number of matching terms across the metadata fields above before an item is found as related
- `max`: The maximum number of related items displayed
- `minWordLength`: The minimum word length below which words will be ignored

### "More like this" technical details

The `org.dspace.discovery.SearchService` object has received a `getRelatedItems()` method. This method requires an item & the more-like-this configuration bean from above. This method is implemented in the `org.dspace.discovery.SolrServiceImpl` which uses the item as a query & uses the default Solr parameters for more-like-this to pass the bean configuration to solr (<https://cwiki.apache.org/confluence/display/solr/MoreLikeThis>). The result will be a list of items or if none found an empty list.

### "Did you mean" spellcheck aid for search configuration

DSpace 4 introduces the use of SOLR's SpellCheckComponent as an aid for search. When a user's search does not return any hits, the user is presented with a suggestion for an alternative search query.

Search:

Did you mean: [panel error](#)

[Add filters](#)

The feature currently only one line of configuration to discovery.xml. Changing the value from true to false will disable the feature.

```
<property name="spellCheckEnabled" value="true" />
```

"Did you mean" spellcheck aid for search technical details

Similar to the More like this configuration, SOLR's spell check component is used with default configuration values. Any of these values can be overridden in the solrconfig.xml file located in dspace/solr/search/conf/. Following links provide more information about the SOLR SpellCheckComponent:

<http://wiki.apache.org/solr/SpellCheckComponent>

<https://cwiki.apache.org/confluence/display/solr/Spell+Checking>

Customizing the "Tag Cloud" facet

**Not yet supported in DSpace 7.0**

```
<!-- Set TagCloud configuration per discovery configuration -->
<property name="tagCloudFacetConfiguration" ref="defaultTagCloudFacetConfiguration"/>
```

Declare the bean (of class: **TagCloudFacetConfiguration**) that holds the configuration for the tag cloud facet.

```
<!--TagCloud configuration bean for homepage discovery configuration-->
<bean id="homepageTagCloudFacetConfiguration" class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.TagCloudFacetConfiguration">
 <!-- Actual configuration of the tagcloud (colors, sorting, etc.) -->
 <property name="tagCloudConfiguration" ref="tagCloudConfiguration"/>
 <!-- List of tagclouds to appear, one for every search filter, one after the
other -->
 <property name="tagCloudFacets">
 <list>
 <ref bean="searchFilterSubject" />
 </list>
 </property>
```

```
</bean>
```

This bean has two properties:

- **tagCloudConfiguration**: is the bean which describes the actual appearance parameters
- **tagCloudFacets**: the search filter facets which will be used for the tag cloud. If you leave the list empty, no tag cloud will appear. If you declare more than one, such number of tag clouds will appear for each search filter, one after the other.

The appearance configuration can have the following properties, as shown in the following bean:

```
<bean id="tagCloudConfiguration" class="org.dspace.discovery.configuration.TagCloudCo
nfiguration">
 <!-- Should display the score of each tag next to it? Default: false --
 >
 <property name="displayScore" value="true"/>
 <!-- Should display the tag as center aligned in the page or left
aligned? Possible values: true | false. Default: true -->
 <property name="shouldCenter" value="true"/>
 <!-- How many tags will be shown. Value -1 means all of them. Default:
-1 -->
 <property name="totalTags" value="-1"/>
 <!-- The letter case of the tags.
Possible values: Case.LOWER | Case.UPPER | Case.CAPITALIZATION
| Case.PRESERVE_CASE | Case.CASE_SENSITIVE
Default: Case.PRESERVE_CASE -->
 <property name="cloudCase" value="Case.PRESERVE_CASE"/>
 <!-- If the 3 CSS classes of the tag cloud should be independent of
score (random=yes) or based on the score. Possible values: true | false . Default:
true-->
 <property name="randomColors" value="true"/>
 <!-- The font size (in em) for the tag with the lowest score. Possible
values: any decimal. Default: 1.1 -->
 <property name="fontFrom" value="1.1"/>
 <!-- The font size (in em) for the tag with the lowest score. Possible
values: any decimal. Default: 3.2 -->
 <property name="fontTo" value="3.2"/>
 <!-- The score that tags with lower than that will not appear in the
tag cloud. Possible values: any integer from 1 to infinity. Default: 0 -->
 <property name="cuttingLevel" value="0"/>
 <!-- The distance (in px) between the tags. Default: 5 -->
 <property name="marginRight" value="5"/>
 <!-- The ordering of the tags (based either on the name or the score of
the tag)
Possible values: Tag.NameComparatorAsc | Tag.NameComparatorDesc
| Tag.ScoreComparatorAsc | Tag.ScoreComparatorDesc
Default: Tag.NameComparatorAsc -->
 <property name="ordering" value="Tag.NameComparatorAsc"/>
</bean>
```

When tagCloud is rendered there are some CSS classes that you can change in order to change the appearance of the tag cloud.

Class	Note
tagcloud	General class for the whole tagcloud
tagcloud_1	Specific tag class for tag of type 1 (based on score)
tagcloud_2	Specific tag class for tag of type 2 (based on score)
tagcloud_3	Specific tag class for tag of type 3 (based on score)

#### Disabling the "Has file(s)" facet

Since DSpace 6, a new "Has file(s)" facet has been enabled by default. This facet shows whether items have or do not have any bitstreams in the "ORIGINAL" bundle.

Should you want to turn this off, you can edit `[dspace]/ config/spring/api/ discovery.xml` to remove the following line from the `defaultConfiguration` and `homepageConfiguration` beans (in the `sidebarFacets` property):

```
<ref bean="searchFilterContentInOriginalBundle"/>
```

Then restart your servlet container.

#### 4.12.3.6 Discovery Solr Index Maintenance

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace index-discovery [-cbhf[r &lt;item handle&gt;]]</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.discovery.IndexClient</code>
Arguments (short and long forms):	Description
	called without any options, will update/clean an existing index
<code>-b</code>	(re)build index, wiping out current one if it exists
<code>-c</code>	clean existing index removing any documents that no longer exist in the db
<code>-f</code>	if updating existing index, force each handle to be reindexed even if uptodate

<code>-h</code>	print this help message
<code>-i &lt;object handle&gt;</code>	Reindex an individual object (and any child objects). When run on an Item, it just reindexes that single Item. When run on a Collection, it reindexes the Collection itself and all Items in that Collection. When run on a Community, it reindexes the Community itself and all sub-Communities, contained Collections and contained Items.
<code>-r &lt;item handle&gt;</code>	remove an Item, Collection or Community from index based on its handle
<code>-s</code>	Rebuild the spellchecker, can be combined with <code>-b</code> and <code>-f</code> .

It is recommended to run maintenance on the Discovery Solr index occasionally (from crontab or your system's scheduler), to prevent your servlet container from running out of memory:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace index-discovery
```

#### 4.12.3.7 Advanced Solr Configuration

Discovery is built as an application layer on top of the Solr open source enterprise search server. Therefore, Solr configuration can be applied to the Solr cores that are shipped with DSpace.

The DSpace Solr instance currently runs several cores (which means indexes in Solr parlance). The "statistics" core is for collection of DSpace usage events for statistical purposes (if you have been collecting statistics for multiple years, you may have chosen to use [sharding](#)(see page 460) and you will see one core per each year collected). The "search" core is used by Discovery for search and faceting, for displaying the collection/community hierarchy and item counts. The "authority" core is used by [SolrAuthority](#)(see page 374) to store information about authors, including their data imported from the ORCID registry.

```
solr
├── search
│ └── conf
│ ├── protwords.txt
│ ├── schema.xml
│ ├── solrconfig.xml
│ ├── stopwords.txt
│ └── synonyms.txt
├── ...
└── statistics
 └── conf
 ├── protwords.txt
 ├── schema.xml
 ├── solrconfig.xml
 ├── stopwords.txt
 └── synonyms.txt
```

## 4.12.4 Multilingual Support

DSpace supports a number of languages & you can even add your own translation. This may also be referred to as Localization (l10n) or Internationalization (i18n).

- [Multilingual Support on the Backend \(REST API\)](#)(see page 544)
  - [Where to find the message catalog](#)(see page 544)
  - [Where to edit the message catalog](#)(see page 544)
  - [Localization of email messages](#)(see page 545)
  - [Metadata localization](#)(see page 545)
  - [Localization of submission-forms.xml](#)(see page 545)
  - [Localization of license.default](#)(see page 545)
- [Multilingual Support on the Frontend \(UI\)](#)(see page 545)

### 4.12.4.1 Multilingual Support on the Backend (REST API)

In order to deploy a multilingual version of DSpace you have to configure two parameters in `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg`:

- *default.locale*, e.g. `default.locale = en`
- *webui.supported.locales*, e.g. `webui.supported.locales = en, de`

The Locales might have the form `country, country_language, country_language_variant`.

According to the languages you wish to support, you have to make sure that all the i18n related files are available.

Where to find the message catalog

The latest **English** message catalog is part of the main DSpace distribution and can be found at: `[dspace-source]/dspace-api/src/main/resources/Messages.properties`

The **different translations** for this message catalog are being managed separately from the DSpace core project, in order to release updates for these files more frequently than the DSpace software itself. Visit the [dspace-api-lang project on Github](#)<sup>499</sup>.

Where to edit the message catalog

In some cases you may want to add additional keys to the message catalog or changing the particular wording of DSpace concepts. For example, you may want to change "Communities" into "Departments". These kind of changes may get automatically overwritten again when you upgrade to the newest version of DSpace. It is therefore advised to keep such changes isolated in the following location: `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/Messages.properties`

After rebuilding DSpace, any messages files placed in this directory will be automatically included in the Server web application. Files of the same name will override any default files. By default, this full directory path may not exist or may be empty. If it does not exist, you can simply create it. You can place any number of translation catalogues in this directory. To add additional translations, just add another copy of the `Messages.properties` file translated into the specific language and country variant you need.

<sup>499</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-api-lang>



For more information about the `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/` directory, and how it may be used to "overlay" (or customize) the default Server Webapp, classes and files, please see: [Advanced Customisation](#) (see page 662)

#### Localization of email messages

All email templates used by DSpace can be found in `[dspace]/config/emails/`

The contents of the emails can be edited and translated.

#### Metadata localization

DSpace associates each metadata field value with a language code (though it may be left empty, e.g. for numeric values).

#### Localization of submission-forms.xml

The display labels for submission-forms.xml are currently not managed in the messages catalogs. To localize this file, you can create versions of this file in the same folders, appending `_COUNTRY` at the end of the filename, before the extension. For example, `submission-forms_de.xml` can be used to translate the submission form labels in German.

There is a known bug that any translated submission forms (e.g. `submission-forms_de.xml`) must include all the form-definitions available in the system. When they are not all included, DSpace will fall back to the default submission forms / locale. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/2827>

#### Localization of license.default

The text in the default submission license (`license.default`) is currently not managed in the messages catalogs. It is translatable by appending `_COUNTRY` at the end of the filename, before the extension like for the localization of the `input-forms.xml`.

### 4.12.4.2 Multilingual Support on the Frontend (UI)

By default, DSpace will look at the user's browser language. If it has a language file in the user's language, it will render the interface in that language. If not, it will default to English or another default that you have configured.

The User Interface translations can be found in the `/src/assets/i18n/` folder of your UI's codebase. You can add additional translations & contribute them back to the project. For details see [DSpace 7 Translation - Internationalization \(i18n\) - Localization \(l10n\)](#)<sup>500</sup>

All translations of the UI are provided in `JSON5`<sup>501</sup> format, which includes support for inline comments.

You can choose which languages you wish to enable/support in your UI by modifying this section of your `environment.prod.ts` configuration file:

```
// Default Language in which the UI will be rendered if the user's browser language
is not an active language
```

<sup>500</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/pages/viewpage.action?pageId=117735441>

<sup>501</sup> <https://json5.org/>

```

defaultLanguage: 'en',
// Languages. DSpace Angular holds a message catalog for each of the following
languages.
// When set to active, users will be able to switch to the use of this language in
the user interface.
languages: [{
 code: 'en',
 label: 'English',
 active: true,
}, {
 code: 'de',
 label: 'Deutsch',
 active: true,
}, {
 code: 'cs',
 label: 'Čeština',
 active: true,
}, {
 code: 'nl',
 label: 'Nederlands',
 active: true,
}],

```

As shown above, the "defaultLanguage" is the language that your UI will use *by default*, if the user's browser has not specified a preferred language

The array of "languages" are all of the additional languages you wish to support.

- The "code" must match the prefix of a `*.json5` language file located in your `/src/assets/i18n/` folder
- The "label" is the text you want to display in the UI language selector (the globe in the header)
- The "active" setting allows you to decide whether that language appears in the UI language selector or not.

Any changes to the language settings require rebuilding & redeploying your UI.

## 4.12.5 IIIF Configuration

- [Overview](#)(see page 547)
- [Enable IIIF Support on Backend](#)(see page 548)
  - [Install a IIIF Image Server](#)(see page 548)
    - [Installing and Configuring Cantaloupe](#)(see page 549)
  - [Required IIIF Configuration](#)(see page 549)
  - [Additional Configuration Options](#)(see page 550)
  - [CORS Configuration](#)(see page 552)
  - [IIIF Search API](#)(see page 552)
- [Enable/Install the Mirador Viewer on Frontend](#)(see page 552)
  - [Configuring Mirador](#)(see page 552)
- [Configure IIIF viewer via Metadata Fields](#)(see page 553)

#### 4.12.5.1 Overview

##### Supported in 7.1 or above

IIIF support was first added to DSpace in version 7.1. It was not available in 7.0 or below.

DSpace supports the [International Image Interoperability Framework \(IIIF\)](https://iiif.io/)<sup>502</sup>. The DSpace REST API implements the [IIIF Presentation API version 2.1.1](https://iiif.io/api/presentation/2.1/)<sup>503</sup>, [IIIF Image API version 2.1.1](https://iiif.io/api/image/2.1/#status-of-this-document)<sup>504</sup>, and the [IIIF Search API version 1.0](https://iiif.io/api/search/1.0/)<sup>505</sup> (experimental). The DSpace Angular frontend uses the [Mirador 3.0](https://projectmirador.org/)<sup>506</sup> viewer.

Administrators can configure IIIF behavior at the Collection, Item, Bundle and Bitstream levels using metadata. To support additional sharing, viewing, comparing, and annotating, DSpace can be configured to share IIIF metadata with external IIIF clients (see [CORS Configuration](#)(see page 0)). IIIF REST endpoints implement the same security protocol as the primary REST API so that DSpace authorization policies are enforced for IIIF access as well.

##### IIIF Image Server

Running IIIF in production requires an IIIF-compatible image server. You are free to use any compatible image server you choose. However, instructions for configuring the [Cantaloupe Image Server](https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/)<sup>507</sup> are included below. A [preconfigured Cantaloupe image server can be started via docker-compose](#)<sup>508</sup> to simplify evaluation and testing.

---

502 <https://iiif.io/>

503 <https://iiif.io/api/presentation/2.1/>

504 <https://iiif.io/api/image/2.1/#status-of-this-document>

505 <https://iiif.io/api/search/1.0/>

506 <https://projectmirador.org/>

507 <https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/>

508 <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/main/dspace/src/main/docker-compose#run-dspace-7-rest-with-a-iiif-image-server-from-your-branch>

Use full screen for better viewing.

☰ Football: team photo #4 (7.1 load)
☰ ⋮ ⌵

**About this item** 🔗

**File name**  
279.jp2

**Format**  
JPEG2000

**Mime Type**  
image/jp2

**File size**  
6 MB


**Checksum**  
034e6aa59bfcfcc363b764d0  
ef8a8afe (MD5)

---

**RESOURCE** ⤴

**Football: team photo #4 (7.1 load)**

Basler, Loren Herman; Curtis, Ralph; Day, Lester; Dimick, Harold; Flegel, Paul; Hoffman; Lawson, M.; Matthews, Robert L.; Medler,



1 of 1 • Page 1

#### 4.12.5.2 Enable IIIF Support on Backend

DSpace IIIF support is not enabled by default. To enable IIIF, you first need to install a IIIF Image Server, and then update your DSpace configuration as described below.

Install a IIIF Image Server

The [Cantaloupe Image Server](https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/)<sup>509</sup> is currently recommended for use with DSpace, but you are free to use the image server of your choice. [A list of IIIF-compliant image servers](https://iiif.io/apps-demos/#image-servers)<sup>510</sup> is maintained by the IIIF community.

Here is a brief overview of how the IIIF image server works with DSpace.

First, the base path to the image server is defined in `config/modules/iiif.cfg`.

```
iiif.image.server = https://imageserver.mycampus.edu/image-server/cantaloupe/iiif/2/
```

Given this configuration, the IIIF `manifest` returned by the DSpace backend will include an image resource annotation like the following:

<sup>509</sup> <https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/>

<sup>510</sup> <https://iiif.io/apps-demos/#image-servers>

**IIIF Image Resource Annotation**

```
resource: {
 @id: "https://imageserver.mycampus.edu/image-server/cantaloupe/iiif/
2/4b415036-57a8-42f4-a971-c5e982f55f92/full/full/0/default.jpg",
 @type: "dctypes:Image",
 service: {
 @context: "http://iiif.io/api/image/2/context.json",
 @id: "https://imageserver.mycampus.edu/image-server/cantaloupe/iiif/
2/4b415036-57a8-42f4-a971-c5e982f55f92",
 profile: "http://iiif.io/api/image/2/level1.json",
 protocol: "http://iiif.io/api/image"
 },
 format: "image/jp2"
}
```

The Mirador viewer (see below) uses this annotation to communicate with the image server using the IIIF Image API. Finally, notice that the image server needs to retrieve the requested bitstream from DSpace. There are a number of ways to do this and the details vary with the image server chosen. The easiest approach is for the image server to request the bitstream via HTTP and the DSpace API, e.g.:

```
http://dspace.mycampus.edu:8080/server/api/core/bitstreams/4b415036-57a8-42f4-a971-
c5e982f55f92/content
```

**Installing and Configuring Cantaloupe**

The Cantaloupe [getting started page](#)<sup>511</sup> provides installation instructions. The basic installation process is simple.

The simplest way to configure Cantaloupe to retrieve images from DSpace is to use [HTTPSource](#)<sup>512</sup> with the following configuration.

```
HttpSource.BasicLookupStrategy.url_prefix = <dspace-url>/server/api/core/bitstreams/
HttpSource.BasicLookupStrategy.url_suffix = /content
```

**Required IIIF Configuration**

To enable IIIF, edit `config/modules/iiif.cfg` or your `local.cfg` file and set `iiif.enabled` to be `" true" .`

```
iiif.enabled = true
```

In addition, you need to provide the URL for your newly installed IIIF image server. e.g.:

<sup>511</sup> <https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/manual/4.1/getting-started.html>

<sup>512</sup> <https://cantaloupe-project.github.io/manual/5.0/sources.html#HttpSource>

```
iiif.image.server = http://localhost:8182/iiif/2/
```

Finally, update `dspace.cfg` or your `local.cfg` file by adding "iiif" to the default event dispatcher, as shown below:

```
event.dispatcher.default.consumers = versioning, discovery, eperson, iiif
```

With these changes in place, DSpace will be ready to respond to IIIF requests. Restart your DSpace backend (i.e. Tomcat) for these changes to all take effect.

### Additional Configuration Options

The full set of IIIF configuration options can be found in [config/modules/iiif.cfg](#)<sup>513</sup>.

Property	Description
<code>iiif.enabled</code>	Enables the DSpace IIIF service.
<code>iiif.image.server</code>	Base URL path for the IIIF image server. e.g. <a href="http://localhost:8182/iiif/2/">http://localhost:8182/iiif/2/</a>
<code>iiif.document.viewing.hint</code>	Default viewing hint. Can be overridden with the metadata setting described below.
<code>iiif.logo.image</code>	Optional URL for a small image. This will be included in all IIIF manifests.
<code>iiif.cors.allowed-origins</code>	Comma separated list of allowed CORS origins. The list must include the default value: <code>\${dspace.ui.url}</code> .
<code>iiif.metadata.item</code>	Sets the Dublin Core metadata that will be added to the IIIF resource manifest. This property can be repeated.
<code>iiif.metadata.bitstream</code>	Sets the Bitstream metadata that will be added to the IIIF canvas metadata for individual images. This property can be repeated.
<code>iiif.license.uri</code>	Sets the metadata used for information about the resource usage rights.
<code>iiif.attribution</code>	The text to use as attribution in the iiif manifests. Defaults to: <code>\${dspace.name}</code>

<sup>513</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/main/dspace/config/modules/iiif.cfg>

Property	Description
<code>iiif.document.viewing.hint</code>	Either "individuals", "paged" or "continuous". Can be overridden with the metadata setting described below.
<code>iiif.canvas.default-width</code>	Default value for the canvas size. Can be overridden at the item, bundle or bitstream level.
<code>iiif.canvas.default-height</code>	Default value for the canvas size. Can be overridden at the item, bundle or bitstream level.

### Canvas Dimensions

As of 7.2, the canvas dimension options (`iiif.canvas.default-width` and `iiif.canvas.default-height`) are updated with additional behaviors.

- If you do not provide your own default dimensions in `iiif.cfg`, DSpace will attempt to optimize canvas dimensions when dimension metadata is missing from the first bitstream in the item. This will often produce more accurate viewer layouts, but note that it is not sufficient to assure accurate layouts in all cases.
- If you decide to add your own default dimensions in `iiif.cfg` file your dimensions are used for every bitstream that lacks dimension metadata.
- You may also set both default dimensions in `iiif.cfg` to the value `-1`. In this case, DSpace creates accurate default dimensions for every bitstream that lacks dimension metadata. Note that this impacts performance.

It is recommended that `iiif.image.width` and `iiif.image.height` metadata be added to Item, Bundle, or Bitstream metadata to assure accurate layout and top performance. Default dimension configurations are intended to improve the user experience when dimension metadata has not yet been added.

### CORS Configuration

The wildcard "\*" configuration is the default CORS setting for IIIF. With this setting, all remote viewers and applications can retrieve manifests, assuring maximum interoperability. You can restrict CORS origins using the `iiif.cors.allowed-origins` property defined in `iiif.cfg`. Remove the wildcard and add a comma-separated list of origins instead.

### IIIF Search API

DSpace includes a plugin to support the IIIF Search API. This plugin is designed to work specifically with the [Solr OCR Highlighting Plugin](#)<sup>514</sup> and METS/ALTO data. You are welcome to experiment with the plugin. To do so, uncomment the following settings in `config/modules/iiif.cfg`:

```
iiif.search.url = ${solr.server}/word_highlighting
iiif.search.plugin = org.dspace.app.rest.iiif.service.WordHighlightSolrSearch
```

<sup>514</sup><https://dbmdz.github.io/solr-ocrhighlighting/>

Once you have successfully indexed ALTO files using the Solr plugin, you can enable search within a DSpace Item by adding the `iiif.search.enabled` metadata field.

### Indexing Support

Support for indexing OCR files using the the Solr OCR Highlighting Plugin or other services is not currently provided by DSpace. Institutions will need to develop their own approach to indexing their data.

#### 4.12.5.3 Enable/Install the Mirador Viewer on Frontend

The [Mirador 3.0 viewer](#)<sup>515</sup> is included in the `dspace-angular` (UI) source code. Before enabling Mirador, be sure to review [the instructions for installing the Angular frontend](#)(see [page 93](#)) if you haven't already.

To add the Mirador viewer to your DSpace frontend installation, run the following command:

```
This builds and runs the DSpace UI with the Mirador Viewer in a single step
yarn run start:mirador:prod
```

This will build and copy Mirador to your `dist/` directory and start the frontend server.

The actual steps for deploying the Angular UI with Mirador into Production will likely vary with your setup. However, one possible command-line scenario is the following:

```
Build Mirador viewer
yarn run build:mirador
Build DSpace UI for production
yarn run build:prod
Run the DSpace UI with Mirador viewer
yarn run serve:ssr
```

### Running in Development

In the DSpace 7.1 release, the Mirador viewer cannot be used when running in development mode. For now, you need to use a production build.

#### Configuring Mirador

The Mirador viewer is highly configurable. The [Mirador configuration file for DSpace](#)<sup>516</sup> includes a number of settings that you can override manually, including CSS values for styling. Note that some of the Mirador behavior (like the inclusion of thumbnail navigation on the right) is set by the Angular component at runtime. You can choose to override these runtime settings if you like.

<sup>515</sup> <https://projectmirador.org/>

<sup>516</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/mirador-viewer/index.js>



#### 4.12.5.4 Configure IIIF viewer via Metadata Fields

IIIF configuration at the Item-level is quite flexible and is managed using metadata. Canvas sizes, image labels, ranges and other settings are controlled by using the following fields.

##### Required Field

Note that the `dspace.iiif.enabled` metadata field **MUST** be added to the Item and set to "true". Otherwise, the Item display will use the default DSpace view.

Schema	Element	Qualifier	Scope	Description
dspace	iiif	enabled	Item	Stores a boolean text value (true or false) to indicate if the iiif feature is enabled or not for the dspace object. If absent the value is derived from the parent dspace object.
iiif	label		Bitstream	Metadata field used to set the IIIF label associated with the canvas resource otherwise the system will derive one according to the configuration setting or the canvas.naming metadata field.
iiif	description		Item	Metadata field used to set the IIIF description associated with the resource.
iiif	canvas	naming	Item	Metadata field used to set the base label used to name all the canvas in the Item. The canvas label will be generated using the value of this metadata as prefix and the canvas position. e.g. Page 1, Page 2, etc.
iiif	viewing	hint	Item	Metadata field used to set the viewing hint overriding the configuration value if any. Possible values are "individuals" and "paged". Default value: individuals.

Schema	Element	Qualifier	Scope	Description
iiif	image	width	Item, Bundle, or Bitstream	Metadata field used to store the width of an image in pixels. Determines the canvas size.
iiif	image	height	Item, Bundle, or Bitstream	Metadata field used to store the height of an image in pixels. Determines the canvas size.
iiif	toc		Bitstream	Metadata field used to set the position of the iiif resource in the "table of contents" structure.
iiif	search	enabled	Item	Metadata field used to enable the IIIF Search service at the item level. This feature is experimental and requires additional setup.

## 4.12.6 Contextual Help Tooltips

Available in 7.5 or later.

Contextual help tooltips are a feature to provide additional information about how to use DSpace to less experienced users without cluttering the interface for more advanced users who do not need additional instruction.

- [User perspective](#)(see page 555)
- [Adding new tooltips](#)(see page 555)

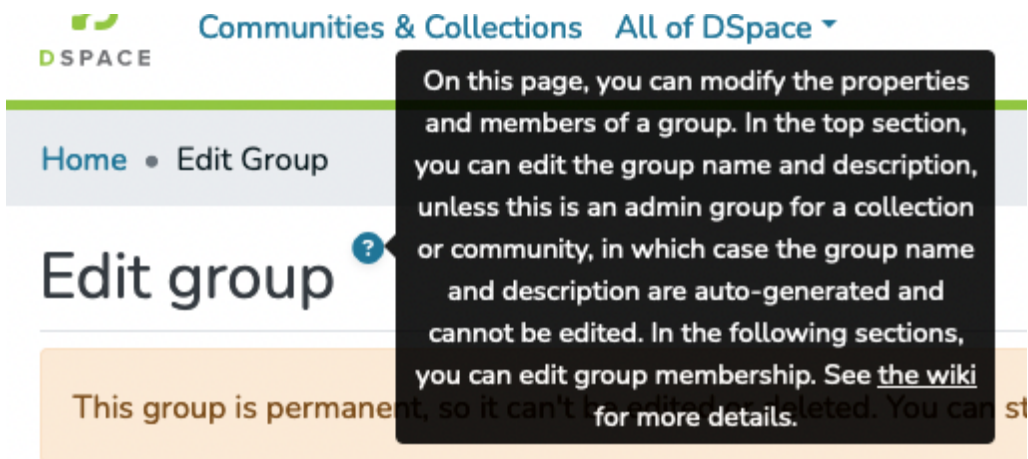
### 4.12.6.1 User perspective

If the user visits a page where contextual help tooltips are available, a "toggle context help" button appears in the header, in between the language switch menu and user profile menu. Clicking this button toggles the visibility of the tooltips on the page (by default, they are invisible).



When tooltip visibility is turned on, similar looking buttons appear on the page where ever a tooltip is available.

Clicking any of these buttons makes a text bubble appear containing the contextual help; clicking anywhere outside of the bubble makes it disappear again.



#### 4.12.6.2 Adding new tooltips

Any HTML element can be given a tooltip by setting the `*dsContextHelp` attribute.

The value assigned to the attribute should be an object of type `ContextHelpDirectiveInput`:

```
export interface ContextHelpDirectiveInput {
 content: string;
 id: string;
 tooltipPlacement?: PlacementArray;
 iconPlacement?: PlacementDir;
}
```

- The mandatory `content` field represents a key in i18n files (`src/assets/i18n/*.json5`). You will need to add a new key to this file to store the help text.
- `id` should be a unique identifier for this tooltip, to distinguish it from other tooltips on the page.
- `tooltipPlacement` (optional) determines where the text bubble appears relative to the help button. Its type is an array of `Placement`s; see the [ng-bootstrap documentation](#)<sup>517</sup> for more information.
- `iconPlacement` (optional) should be assigned either 'left' or 'right', and determines whether the tooltip will be placed on the left or on the right of the element.

This is what the template looks like for the "Edit group" example in the "User Perspective" picture above:

```
<h2 class="border-bottom pb-2">
 <span
 *dsContextHelp="{
 content: 'admin.access-control.groups.form.tooltip.editGroupPage',
 id: 'edit-group-page',
 iconPlacement: 'right',
 tooltipPlacement: ['right', 'bottom']
 }">
```

<sup>517</sup> <https://ng-bootstrap.github.io/#/guides/positioning#api>

```

 }"
 >
 {{messagePrefix + '.head.edit' | translate}}

</h2>

```

### A few important notes:

- Note the use of the `span` tags: setting `\*dsContextHelp` directly on the `h2` element makes the help button appear all the way on the right of the page, instead of directly to the right of the "Edit group" text.
- The 'content' field maps to the i18n key which is used to display the help text. This i18n key's value may include markdown-style **links** (only). At this time, other formatting is not supported. To display a link, use the following markdown syntax in your i18n value:

```
"admin.access-control.groups.form.tooltip.editGroupPage": "This is the text
that would be displayed in the tooltip. And here is a link to the [DSpace 7
documentation](https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC7x/)."
```

## 5 System Administration

This top level node intends to hold all system administration aspects of DSpace including but not limited to:

- Installation
- Upgrading
- Troubleshooting system errors
- Managing Dependencies

In this context System administration is defined as all technical tasks required to get DSpace in a state in which it operates properly so its behaviour is predictable and can be used according to all the guidelines under "Using DSpace".

### 5.1 Introduction to DSpace System Administration

DSpace operates on several levels: as a Java servlet (in a servlet container like Tomcat), cron jobs, and on-demand operations. This section explains many of the on-demand operations. Some of the command operations may be also set up as cron jobs. Many of these operations are performed at the Command Line Interface (CLI) also known as the Unix prompt ( \$ ). Future references will use the term CLI when a command needs to be run at the command line.

Below is the "Command Help Table". This table explains what data is contained in the individual command/help tables in the sections that follow.

Command used:	<i>The directory and where the command is to be found.</i>
Java class:	<i>The actual java program doing the work.</i>
Arguments:	<i>The required/mandatory or optional arguments available to the user.</i>

#### DSpace Command Launcher

Many/most commands and scripts have a simple `[dspace]/bin/dspace <command>` command. See the Application Layer chapter for the details of the [DSpace Command Launcher](#)(see page 0), and the [Command Line Operations](#)(see page 608) guide for common commands.

- [AIP Backup and Restore](#)(see page 559)
  - [DSpace AIP Format](#)(see page 587)
- [Ant targets and options](#)(see page 606)
- [Command Line Operations](#)(see page 608)
  - [Database Utilities](#)(see page 611)
  - [Executing streams of commands](#)(see page 613)
- [Handle.Net Registry Support](#)(see page 613)
- [Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content](#)(see page 617)
  - [ImageMagick Media Filters](#)(see page 633)
- [Performance Tuning DSpace](#)(see page 637)
- [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#)(see page 643)
- [Search Engine Optimization](#)(see page 647)
  - [Google Scholar Metadata Mappings](#)(see page 653)
- [Troubleshooting Information](#)(see page 655)

- [Validating CheckSums of Bitstreams](#)(see page 654)

## 5.2 AIP Backup and Restore

- [Background & Overview](#)(see page 559)
  - [How does this differ from traditional DSpace Backups? Which Backup route is better?](#)(see page 560)
  - [How does this help backup your DSpace to remote storage or cloud services \(like DuraCloud\)?](#)(see page 563)
  - [AIPs are Archival Information Packages](#)(see page 564)
  - [AIP Structure / Format](#)(see page 564)
- [Running the Code](#)(see page 564)
  - [Exporting AIPs](#)(see page 564)
    - [Export Modes & Options](#)(see page 564)
    - [Exporting just a single AIP](#)(see page 564)
    - [Exporting AIP Hierarchy](#)(see page 564)
      - [Exporting Entire Site](#)(see page 565)
  - [Ingesting / Restoring AIPs](#)(see page 565)
    - [Ingestion Modes & Options](#)(see page 565)
      - [The difference between "Submit" and "Restore/Replace" modes](#)(see page 567)
    - [Submitting AIP\(s\) to create a new object](#)(see page 568)
      - [Submitting a Single AIP](#)(see page 568)
      - [Submitting an AIP Hierarchy](#)(see page 568)
      - [Submitting AIP\(s\) while skipping any Collection Approval Workflows](#)(see page 570)
    - [Restoring/Replacing using AIP\(s\)](#)(see page 570)
      - [Default Restore Mode](#)(see page 570)
      - [Restore, Keep Existing Mode](#)(see page 571)
      - [Force Replace Mode](#)(see page 572)
      - [Restoring Entire Site](#)(see page 572)
  - [Cleaning up from a failed import](#)(see page 573)
  - [Performance considerations](#)(see page 574)
  - [Disable User Interaction for Cron](#)(see page 574)
- [Command Line Reference](#)(see page 574)
  - [Additional Packager Options](#)(see page 577)
    - [How to use additional options](#)(see page 582)
- [Configuration in 'dspace.cfg'](#)(see page 583)
  - [AIP Metadata Dissemination Configurations](#)(see page 583)
  - [AIP Ingestion Metadata Crosswalk Configurations](#)(see page 585)
  - [AIP Ingestion EPerson Configurations](#)(see page 585)
  - [AIP Configurations To Improve Ingestion Speed while Validating](#)(see page 585)
- [Common Issues or Error Messages](#)(see page 586)

### 5.2.1 Background & Overview

**AIP Backup & Restore doesn't yet work for Configurable Entities**

Configurable Entities are not fully supported by AIP Backup & Restore. Since Entities are Items, their metadata and files can be exported/imported via AIPs. However, their relationships to other Entities cannot yet be exported (or imported) via AIPs. Therefore, **restoring Entities via AIP Backup & Restore may result in accidental data loss** (namely loss of relationships). See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/2882> for more information.

#### **AIP Backup & Restore functionality only works with the Latest Version of Items**

If you are using the [Item Level Versioning](#) (see page 407) functionality (disabled by default), you must be aware that this "Item Level Versioning" feature is **not yet compatible** with AIP Backup & Restore. **Using them together may result in accidental data loss.** Currently the AIPs that DSpace generates only store the *latest version* of an Item. Therefore, past versions of Items will always be lost when you perform a restore / replace using AIP tools.

Additional background information available in the Open Repositories 2010 Presentation entitled [Improving DSpace Backups, Restores & Migrations](#)<sup>518</sup>

DSpace can backup and restore all of its contents as a set of [AIP Files](#) (see page 587). This includes all Communities, Collections, Items, Groups and People in the system.

This feature came out of a requirement for DSpace to better integrate with [DuraCloud](#)<sup>519</sup>, and other backup storage systems. One of these requirements is to be able to essentially "backup" local DSpace contents into the cloud (as a type of offsite backup), and "restore" those contents at a later time.

Essentially, this means DSpace can export the entire hierarchy (i.e. bitstreams, metadata and relationships between Communities/Collections/Items) into a relatively standard format (a METS-based, [AIP format](#) (see page 587)). This entire hierarchy can also be re-imported into DSpace in the same format (essentially a restore of that content in the same or different DSpace installation).

#### **Benefits for the DSpace community:**

- Allows one to more easily move entire Communities or Collections between DSpace instances.
- Allows for a potentially more consistent backup of this hierarchy (e.g. to DuraCloud, or just to your own local backup system), rather than relying on synchronizing a backup of your Database (stores metadata/relationships) and assetstore (stores files/bitstreams).
- Provides a way for people to more easily get their data out of DSpace (whatever the purpose may be).
- Provides a relatively standard format for people to migrate entire hierarchies (Communities/Collections) from one DSpace to another (or from another system into DSpace).

#### **5.2.1.1 How does this differ from traditional DSpace Backups? Which Backup route is better?**

Traditionally, it has always been recommended to backup and restore DSpace's database and files (also known as the "assetstore") separately. This is described in more detail in the [Storage Layer](#) (see page 859) section of the DSpace System Documentation. The traditional backup and restore route is still a recommended and supported option.

However, the new AIP Backup & Restore option seeks to try and resolve many of the complexities of a traditional backup and restore. The below table details some of the differences between these two valid Backup and Restore options.

<sup>518</sup> <http://www.slideshare.net/tdonohue/improving-dspace-backups-restores-migrations>

<sup>519</sup> <http://www.duracloud.org>

	<b>Traditional Backup &amp; Restore (Database and Files)</b>	<b>AIP Backup &amp; Restore</b>
<b>Supported Backup/Restore Types</b>		
Can Backup & Restore all DSpace Content easily	Yes (Requires two backups/restores – one for Database and one for Files)	Yes (Though, will not backup/restore items which are not officially "in archive")
Can Backup & Restore a Single Community/Collection/Item easily	No (It is possible, but requires a strong understanding of DSpace database structure & folder organization in order to only backup & restore metadata/files belonging to that single object)	Yes
Backups can be used to move one or more Community/Collection/Items to another DSpace system easily.	No (Again, it is possible, but requires a strong understanding of DSpace database structure & folder organization in order to only move metadata/files belonging to that object)	Yes
Can Backup & Restore <a href="#">Item Versions</a> (see page 407)	Yes (Requires two backups/restores – one for Database and one for Files)	<b>No</b> (Currently, AIP Backup & Restore is not fully compatible with <a href="#">Item Level Versioning</a> (see page 407). AIP Backup & Restore can only backup/restore the <i>latest version</i> of an Item)
Can Backup & Restore <a href="#">Configurable Entities</a> (see page 198)	Yes (Requires two backups/restores – one for Database and one for Files)	<b>No</b> (Currently, AIP Backup & Restore is not fully compatible with Configurable Entities. AIP Backup & Restore can only backup/restore the metadata & files of the Entity, but cannot backup/restore relationships to other Entities)
<b>Supported Object Types During Backup &amp; Restore</b>		
Supports backup/restore of all Communities/Collections/Items (including metadata, files, logos, etc.)	Yes	Yes



Supports backup/restore of all People/Groups/Permissions	Yes	Yes
Supports backup/restore of all Collection-specific Item Templates	Yes	Yes
Supports backup/restore of all Collection Harvesting settings (only for Collections which pull in all Items via OAI-PMH or OAI-ORE)	Yes	No (This is a known issue. All previously harvested Items will be restored, but the OAI-PMH/OAI-ORE harvesting settings will be lost during the restore process.)
Supports backup/restore of all Withdrawn (but not deleted) Items	Yes	Yes
Supports backup/restore of Item Mappings between Collections	Yes	Yes (During restore, the AIP Ingester may throw a false "Could not find a parent DSpaceObject" error (see <a href="#">Common Issues or Error Messages</a> (see page 586)), if it tries to restore an Item Mapping to a Collection that it hasn't yet restored. But this error can be safely bypassed using the 'skipIfParentMissing' flag (see <a href="#">Additional Packager Options</a> (see page 577) for more details).
Supports backup/restore of all in-process, uncompleted Submissions (or those currently in an approval workflow)	Yes	No (AIPs are only generated for objects which are completed and considered "in archive")
Supports backup/restore of Items using custom Metadata Schemas & Fields	Yes	Yes (Custom Metadata Fields will be automatically recreated. Custom Metadata Schemas must be manually created first, in order for DSpace to be able to recreate custom fields belonging to that schema. See <a href="#">Common Issues or Error Messages</a> (see page 586) for more details.)

Supports backup/restore of all local DSpace Configurations and Customizations	Yes (if you backup your <b>entire</b> DSpace directory as part of backing up your files)	Not by default (unless you also backup parts of your DSpace directory – note, you wouldn't need to backup the '[dspace]/assetstore' folder again, as those files are already included in AIPs)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Based on your local institutions needs, you will want to choose the backup & restore process which is most appropriate to you. You may also find it beneficial to use both types of backups on different time schedules, in order to keep to a minimum the likelihood of losing your DSpace installation settings or its contents. For example, you may choose to perform a Traditional Backup once per week (to backup your local system configurations and customizations) and an AIP Backup on a daily basis. Alternatively, you may choose to perform daily Traditional Backups and only use the AIP Backup as a "permanent archives" option (perhaps performed on a weekly or monthly basis).

#### Don't Forget to Backup your Configurations and Customizations

If you choose to use the AIP Backup and Restore option, do not forget to also backup your local DSpace configurations and customizations. Depending on how you manage your own local DSpace, these configurations and customizations are likely in one or more of the following locations:

- `[dspace]` - The DSpace installation directory (Please note, if you also use the AIP Backup & Restore option, you do **not** need to backup your `[dspace]/assetstore` directory, as those files already exist in your AIPs).
- `[dspace-source]` - The DSpace source directory

#### 5.2.1.2 How does this help backup your DSpace to remote storage or cloud services (like DuraCloud)?

While AIP Backup and Restore is primarily a way to export your DSpace content objects to a local filesystem (or mounted drive), it can also be used as the basis for ensuring your content is safely backed up in a remote location (e.g. [DuraCloud](http://www.duracloud.org/)<sup>520</sup> or other cloud backup services).

Simply put, these AIPs can be generated and then replicated off to remote storage or a cloud backup service for safe keeping. You can then pull them down either as an entire set, or individually, in order to restore one or more objects into your DSpace instance. While you could simply backup your entire DSpace database and "assetstore" to a cloud service, you'd have to download the **entire** database backup again in order to restore any content. With AIPs, you can instead just download the individual AIP files you need (which can decrease your I/O costs, if any exist) for that restoration.

This upload/download of your AIPs to a backup location can be managed in a manual fashion (e.g. via your own custom code or shell scripts), or you can use a DSpace [Replication Task Suite](https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/ReplicationTaskSuite)<sup>521</sup> add-on to help ease this process

The Replication Task Suite add-on for DSpace allows you the ability to backup and restore DSpace contents to/from AIPs via the DSpace Administrative Web Interface. It also includes "connectors" to the [DuraCloud](http://www.duracloud.org/)<sup>522</sup> API, so you can configure it to automatically backup/retrieve your AIPs to/from DuraCloud.

<sup>520</sup> <http://www.duracloud.org/>

<sup>521</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/ReplicationTaskSuite>

<sup>522</sup> <http://www.duracloud.org/>

Installing this add-on means you can now easily backup and restore DSpace to DuraCloud (or other systems) simply via the DSpace Administrative Web Interface. More information on installing and configuring this add-on can be found on the [Replication Task Suite](#)<sup>523</sup> page.

## Makeup and Definition of AIPs

### 5.2.1.3 AIPs are Archival Information Packages

- AIP is a package describing **one archival object** in DSpace.
  - The **archival object** may be a single **Item, Collection, Community, or Site** (Site AIPs contain site-wide information). Bitstreams are included in an Item's AIP.
  - Each AIP is logically self-contained, can be restored without rest of the archive. (So you could restore a single Item, Collection or Community)
  - Collection or Community AIPs do **not** include all child objects (e.g. Items in those Collections or Communities), as each AIP only describes **one** object. However, these container AIPs do contain references (links) to all child objects. These references can be used by DSpace to automatically restore all referenced AIPs when restoring a Collection or Community.
  - AIPs are only generated for objects which are currently in the "in archive" state in DSpace. This means that in-progress, uncompleted submissions are not described in AIPs and cannot be restored after a disaster. Permanently removed objects will also no longer be exported as AIPs after their removal. However, withdrawn objects will continue to be exported as AIPs, since they are still considered under the "in archive" status.
  - AIPs with identical contents will always have identical [checksums](#)<sup>524</sup>. This provides a basic means of validating whether the contents within an AIP have changed. For example, if a Collection's AIP has the same checksum at two different points in time, it means that Collection has not changed during that time period.
  - AIP profile favors completeness and accuracy rather than presenting the semantics of an object in a standard format. It conforms to the quirks of DSpace's internal object model rather than attempting to produce a universally understandable representation of the object. When possible, an AIP tries to use common standards to express objects.
  - An AIP *can* serve as a DIP (Dissemination Information Package) or SIP (Submission Information Package), especially when transferring custody of objects to another DSpace implementation.
  - In contrast to SIP or DIP, the AIP should include all available DSpace structural and administrative metadata, and basic provenance information. AIPs also describe some basic system level information (e.g. Groups and People).

### 5.2.1.4 AIP Structure / Format

Generally speaking, an AIP is an Zip file containing a METS manifest and all related content bitstreams.

For more specific details of AIP format / structure, along with examples, please see [DSpace AIP Format](#)(see page 587).

---

<sup>523</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/ReplicationTaskSuite>

<sup>524</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Checksum>

## 5.2.2 Running the Code

### 5.2.2.1 Exporting AIPs

#### Export Modes & Options

All AIP Exports are done by using the Dissemination Mode ( `-d` option) of the `packager` command.

There are two types of AIP Dissemination you can perform:

- [Single AIP](#)(see page 564) (default, using `-d` option) - Exports just an AIP describing a single DSpace object. So, if you ran it in this default mode for a Collection, you'd just end up with a single Collection AIP (which would not include AIPs for all its child Items)
- [Hierarchy of AIPs](#)(see page 564) (using the `-d --all` or `-d -a` option) - Exports the requested AIP describing an object, plus the AIP for all child objects. Some examples follow:
  - For a Site - this would export **all** Communities, Collections & Items within the site into AIP files (in a provided directory)
  - For a Community - this would export that Community and all SubCommunities, Collections and Items into AIP files (in a provided directory)
  - For a Collection - this would export that Collection and all contained Items into AIP files (in a provided directory)
  - For an Item – this just exports the Item into an AIP as normal (as it already contains its Bitstreams/ Bundles by default)

#### Exporting just a single AIP

To export in single AIP mode (default), use this "packager" command template:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -t AIP -e <eperson> -i <handle> <file-path>
```

for example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -i 4321/4567 aip4567.zip
```

The above code will export the object of the given handle (4321/4567) into an AIP file named "aip4567.zip". This will **not** include any child objects for Communities or Collections.

#### Exporting AIP Hierarchy

To export an AIP hierarchy, use the `-a` (or `--all`) package parameter.

For example, use this 'packager' command template:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -a -t AIP -e <eperson> -i <handle> <file-path>
```

for example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -i 4321/4567 aip4567.zip
```

The above code will export the object of the given handle (4321/4567) into an AIP file named "aip4567.zip". In addition it would export all children objects to the same directory as the "aip4567.zip" file. The child AIP files are all named using the following format:

- File Name Format: `<Obj-Type>@<Handle-with-dashes>.zip`
  - e.g. COMMUNITY@123456789-1.zip, COLLECTION@123456789-2.zip, ITEM@123456789-200.zip
  - This general file naming convention ensures that you can easily locate an object to restore by its name (assuming you know its Object Type and Handle).
- Alternatively, if object doesn't have a Handle, it uses this File Name Format: `<Obj-Type>@internal-id-<DSpace-ID>.zip` (e.g. ITEM@internal-id-234.zip)

AIPs are only generated for objects which are currently in the "in archive" state in DSpace. This means that in-progress, uncompleted submissions are not described in AIPs and cannot be restored after a disaster.

### Exporting Entire Site

To export an entire DSpace Site, pass the packager the Handle `<site-handle-prefix>/0`. For example, if your site prefix is "4321", you'd run a command similar to the following:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -d -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -i 4321/0 sitewide-aip.zip
```

Again, this would export the DSpace Site AIP into the file "sitewide-aip.zip", and export AIPs for **all** Communities, Collections and Items into the same directory as the Site AIP.

## 5.2.2.2 Ingesting / Restoring AIPs

### Ingestion Modes & Options

Ingestion of AIPs is a bit more complex than Dissemination, as there are several different "modes" available:

1. **Submit/Ingest Mode**(see page 568) ( `-s` option, default) – submit AIP(s) to DSpace in order to create a new object(s) (i.e. AIP is treated like a SIP – Submission Information Package)
2. **Restore Mode**(see page 570) ( `-r` option) – restore pre-existing object(s) in DSpace based on AIP(s). This also attempts to restore all handles and relationships (parent/child objects). This is a specialized type of "submit", where the object is created with a known Handle, known UUID and known relationships.
3. **Replace Mode**(see page 572) ( `-r -f` option) – replace existing object(s) in DSpace based on AIP(s). This also attempts to restore all handles and relationships (parent/child objects). This is a specialized type of "restore" where the contents of existing object(s) is replaced by the contents in the AIP(s). By default, if a normal "restore" finds the object already exists, it will back out (i.e. rollback all changes) and report which object already exists.

Again, like export, there are two types of AIP Ingestion you can perform (using any of the above modes):

- **Single AIP** (default) - Ingests just an AIP describing a single DSpace object. So, if you ran it in this default mode for a Collection AIP, you'd just create a DSpace Collection from the AIP (but not ingest any of its child objects)

- **Hierarchy of AIPs** (by including the `--all` or `-a` option after the mode) - Ingests the requested AIP describing an object, plus the AIP for all child objects. Some examples follow:
  - For a Site - this would ingest **all** Communities, Collections & Items based on the located AIP files
  - For a Community - this would ingest that Community and all SubCommunities, Collections and Items based on the located AIP files
  - For a Collection - this would ingest that Collection and all contained Items based on the located AIP files
  - For an Item – this just ingest the Item (including all Bitstreams & Bundles) based on the AIP file.

The difference between "Submit" and "Restore/Replace" modes

It's worth understanding the primary differences between a Submission (specified by `-s` parameter) and a Restore (specified by `-r` parameter).

- **Submission Mode**(see page 568) (`-s` mode) - creates a new object (AIP is treated like a SIP)
  - By default, a new Handle is always assigned
    - However, you can force it to use the handle specified in the AIP by specifying `-o ignoreHandle=false` as one of your parameters
  - By default, a new Parent object **must** be specified (using the `-p` parameter). This is the location where the new object will be created.
    - However, you can force it to use the parent object specified in the AIP by specifying `-o ignoreParent=false` as one of your parameters
  - By default, will respect a Collection's Workflow process when you submit an Item to a Collection
    - However, you can specifically *skip* any workflow approval processes by specifying `-w` parameter.
  - **Always** adds a new Deposit License to Items
  - **Always** adds new DSpace System metadata to Items (includes new "dc.date.accessioned", "dc.date.available", "dc.date.issued" and "dc.description.provenance" entries)
  - **WARNING:** Submission mode may not be able to maintain Item Mappings between Collections. Because these mappings are recorded via the Collection Handles, mappings may be restored improperly if the Collection handle has changed when moving content from one DSpace instance to another.
- **Restore / Replace Mode**(see page 570) (`-r` mode) - restores a previously existing object (as if from a backup)
  - By default, the Handle specified in the AIP is restored
    - However, for restores, you can force a new handle to be generated by specifying `-o ignoreHandle=true` as one of your parameters. (NOTE: Doesn't work for *replace* mode as the new object always retains the handle of the replaced object)
    - **i** Restore/Replace restores Handles as well as UUIDs. (NOTE: *UUID restoration only possible in 7.1 or above*)
  - By default, the object is restored under the Parent specified in the AIP
    - However, for restores, you can force it to restore under a different parent object by using the `-p` parameter. (NOTE: Doesn't work for *replace* mode, as the new object always retains the parent of the replaced object)
  - **Always** skips any Collection workflow approval processes when restoring/replacing an Item in a Collection
  - **Never** adds a new Deposit License to Items (rather it restores the previous deposit license, as long as it is stored in the AIP)

- **Never** adds new DSpace System metadata to Items (rather it just restores the metadata as specified in the AIP)

### Changing Submission/Restore Behavior

It is possible to change some of the default behaviors of both the Submission and Restore/Replace Modes. Please see the [Additional Packager Options](#)(see page 577) section below for a listing of command-line options that allow you to override some of the default settings described above.

Submitting AIP(s) to create a new object

The Submission mode ( `-s` ) always creates a new object with a newly assigned handle. In addition by default it respects all existing Collection approval workflows (so items may require approval unless the workflow is skipped by using the `-w` option). For information about how the "Submission Mode" differs from the "Replace / Restore mode", see [The difference between "Submit" and "Restore/Replace" modes](#)(see page 567) above.

Submitting a Single AIP

### AIPs treated as SIPs

This option allows you to essentially use an AIP as a SIP (Submission Information Package). The default settings will create a new DSpace object (with a new handle and a new parent object, if specified) from your AIP.

To ingest a single AIP and create a new DSpace object under a parent of your choice, specify the `-p` (or `--parent` ) package parameter to the command. Also, note that you are running the `packager` in `-s` (submit) mode.

*NOTE:* This only ingests the single AIP specified. It does **not** ingest all children objects.

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -s -t AIP -e <eperson> -p <parent-handle> <file-path>
```

If you leave out the `-p` parameter, the AIP package ingester will attempt to install the AIP under the same parent it had before. As you are also specifying the `-s` (submit) parameter, the `packager` will assume you want a new Handle to be assigned (as you are effectively specifying that you are submitting a **new** object). If you want the object to retain the Handle specified in the AIP, you can specify the `-o ignoreHandle=false` option to force the packager to *not* ignore the Handle specified in the AIP.

Submitting an AIP Hierarchy

### AIPs treated as SIPs

This option allows you to essentially use a set of AIPs as SIPs (Submission Information Packages). The default settings will create a new DSpace object (with a new handle and a new parent object, if specified) from each AIP

To ingest an AIP hierarchy from a directory of AIPs, use the `-a` (or `--all` ) package parameter.

For example, use this 'packager' command template:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -s -a -t AIP -e <eperson> -p <parent-handle> <file-path>
```

for example:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -s -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -p 4321/12 aip4567.zip
```

The above command will ingest the package named "aip4567.zip" as a child of the specified Parent Object (handle="4321/12"). The resulting object is assigned a new Handle (since `-s` is specified). In addition, any child AIPs referenced by "aip4567.zip" are also recursively ingested (a new Handle is also assigned for each child AIP).

Another example – **Ingesting a Top-Level Community** (by using the Site Handle, `<site-handle-prefix>/0`):

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -s -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -p 4321/0 community-aip.zip
```

The above command will ingest the package named "community-aip.zip" as a **top-level community** (i.e. the specified parent is "4321/0" which is a Site Handle). Again, the resulting object is assigned a new Handle. In addition, any child AIPs referenced by "community-aip.zip" are also recursively ingested (a new Handle is also assigned for each child AIP).

### May want to skip Collection Approvals Workflows

Please note: If you are submitting a larger amount of content (e.g. multiple Communities/Collections) to your DSpace, you may want to tell the 'packager' command to skip over any existing Collection approval workflows by using the `-w` flag. By default, all Collection approval workflows will be respected. This means if the content you are submitting includes a Collection with an enabled workflow, you may see the following occur:

1. First, the Collection will be created & its workflow enabled
2. Second, each Item belonging to that Collection will be created & placed into the workflow approval process

Therefore, if this content has already received some level of approval, you may want to submit it using the `-w` flag, which will skip any workflow approval processes. For more information, see [Submitting AIP\(s\) while skipping any Collection Approval Workflows](#)(see page 570).

### Item Mappings may not be maintained when submitting an AIP hierarchy

When an Item is mapped to one or more Collections, this mapping is recorded in the AIP using the mapped Collection's handle. Unfortunately, since the submission mode (`-s`) assigns **new handles** to all objects in the hierarchy, this may mean that the mapped Collection's handle will have changed (or even that a different Collection will be available at the original mapped Collection's handle). DSpace does not have a way to uniquely identify Collections other than by handle, which means that item mappings are only able



to be retained when the Collection handle is *also retained*.

If you encounter this issue, there are a few possible workarounds:

1. Use the restore/replace mode (-r) instead, as it will retain existing Collection Handles. Unfortunately though, this may not work if the content is being moved from a Test DSpace to a Production DSpace, as these existing handles may not be valid.
2. OR, use the submission mode with the "--o ignoreHandle=false". This will also retain existing Collection Handles. Unfortunately though, this may not work if the content is being moved from a Test DSpace to a Production DSpace, as these existing handles may not be valid.
3. OR, remove all existing Item Mappings and re-export AIPs (without Item Mappings). Then, import the hierarchy into the new DSpace instance (again without Item Mappings). Finally, recreate the necessary Item Mappings using a different tool, e.g. the [Batch Metadata Editing](#) (see page 387) tool supports bulk editing of Collection memberships/mappings.

### Missing Groups or EPeople cannot be created when submitting an individual Community or Collection AIP

Please note, if you are using AIPs to move an entire Community or Collection from one DSpace to another, there is a known issue (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4477>) that the new DSpace instance will be unable to (re-)create any DSpace Groups or EPeople which are referenced by a Community or Collection AIP. The reason is that the Community or Collection AIP itself doesn't contain enough information to create those Groups or EPeople (rather that info is stored in the SITE AIP, for usage during [Full Site Restores](#) (see page 572)).

However, there are two possible ways to get around this known issue:

- **EITHER**, you can manually recreate all referenced Groups/EPeople in the new DSpace that you are submitting the Community or Collection AIP into.
- **OR**, you can temporarily disable the import of Group/EPeople information when submitting the Community or Collection AIP to the new DSpace. This would mean that after you submit the AIP to the new DSpace, you'd have to manually go in and add in any special permissions (as needed). To disable the import of Group/EPeople information, add these settings to your `dspace.cfg` file, and re-run the submission of the AIP with these settings in place:

```
mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.crosswalk.METSRIGHTS = NIL
mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.crosswalk.DSPACE-ROLES = NIL
```

- Don't forget to remove these settings after you import your Community or Collection AIP. *Leaving them in place will mean that every time you import an AIP, all of its Group/EPeople/Permissions would be ignored.*

### Submitting AIP(s) while skipping any Collection Approval Workflows

By default, the Submission mode ( `-s` ) always respects existing Collection approval workflows. So, if a Collection has a workflow, then a newly submitted Item will be placed into that workflow process (rather than immediately appearing in DSpace).

However, if you'd like to skip all workflow approval processes you can use the `-w` flag to do so. For example, the following command will skip any Collection approval workflows and immediately add the Item to a Collection.

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -s -w -t AIP -e <eperson> -p <parent-handle> <file-path>
```

This `-w` flag may also be used when [Submitting an AIP Hierarchy](#) (see page 568). For example, if you are migrating one or more Collections/Communities from one DSpace to another, you may choose to submit those AIPs with the `-w` option enabled. This will ensure that, if a Collection has a workflow approval process enabled, all its Items are available immediately rather than being all placed into the workflow approval process.

### Restoring/Replacing using AIP(s)

**Restoring** is slightly different than just **submitting**. When restoring, we make every attempt to restore the object as it **used to be** (including its handle, parent object, etc.). For more information about how the "Replace/Restore Mode" differs from the "Submit mode", see [The difference between "Submit" and "Restore/Replace" modes](#) (see page 567) above.

There are currently three restore modes:

1. **Default Restore Mode** (see page 570) (`-r`) = Attempt to restore object (and optionally children). Rollback all changes if any object is found to already exist.
2. **Restore, Keep Existing Mode** (see page 571) (`-r -k`) = Attempt to restore object (and optionally children). If an object is found to already exist, skip over it (and all children objects), and continue to restore all other non-existing objects.
3. **Force Replace Mode** (see page 572) (`-r -f`) = Restore an object (and optionally children) and **overwrite** any existing objects in DSpace. Therefore, if an object is found to already exist in DSpace, its contents are replaced by the contents of the AIP. *WARNING: This mode is potentially dangerous as it will permanently destroy any object contents that do not currently exist in the AIP. You may want to perform a secondary backup, unless you are sure you know what you are doing!*

### Default Restore Mode

By default, the restore mode (`-r` option) will throw an error and rollback all changes if any object is found to already exist. The user will be informed if which object already exists within their DSpace installation.

**Restore a Single AIP:** Use this 'packager' command template to restore a single object from an AIP (not including any child objects):

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -t AIP -e <eperson> <AIP-file-path>
```

**Restore a Hierarchy of AIPs:** Use this 'packager' command template to restore an object from an AIP along with all child objects (from their AIPs):

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -t AIP -e <eperson> <AIP-file-path>
```

For example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

Notice that unlike `-s` option (for submission/ingesting), the `-r` option does not require the Parent Object (`-p` option) to be specified if it can be determined from the package itself.

In the above example, the package "aip4567.zip" is restored to the DSpace installation with the Handle provided within the package itself (and added as a child of the parent object specified within the package itself). In addition, any child AIPs referenced by "aip4567.zip" are also recursively ingested (the `-a` option specifies to also restore all child AIPs). They are also restored with the Handles & Parent Objects provided with their package. If any object is found to already exist, all changes are rolled back (i.e. nothing is restored to DSpace)

### Highly Recommended to Update Database Sequences after a Large Restore

In some cases, when you restore a large amount of content to your DSpace, the internal database counts (called "sequences") may get out of sync with the Handles of the content you just restored. As a best practice, it is **highly recommended to always** re-run the "update-sequences" script on your DSpace database after a larger scale restore. This database script should be run while DSpace is stopped (you may either stop Tomcat or just the DSpace webapps). PostgreSQL/Oracle must be running. Simply run:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace database update-sequences
```

### More Information on using Default Restore Mode with Community/Collection AIPs

- Using the Default Restore Mode without the `-a` option, will only restore the **metadata** for that specific Community or Collection. No child objects will be restored.
- Using the Default Restore Mode with the `-a` option, will only successfully restore a Community or Collection if that object along with any child objects (Sub-Communities, Collections or Items) do not already exist. In other words, if any objects belonging to that Community or Collection already exist in DSpace, the Default Restore Mode will report an error that those object(s) could not be recreated. If you encounter this situation, you will need to perform the restore using either the [Restore, Keep Existing Mode](#)(see page 571) or the [Force Replace Mode](#)(see page 572) (depending on whether you want to keep or replace those existing child objects).

### Restore, Keep Existing Mode

When the "Keep Existing" flag (`-k` option) is specified, the restore will attempt to skip over any objects found to already exist. It will report to the user that the object was found to exist (and was not modified or changed). It will then continue to restore all objects which do not already exist.

One special case to note: If a Collection or Community is found to already exist, its child objects are also skipped over. So, this mode will not auto-restore items to an existing Collection.

**Restore a Hierarchy of AIPs:** Use this 'packager' command template to restore an object from an AIP along with all child objects (from their AIPs):

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -k -t AIP -e <eperson> <AIP-file-path>
```

For example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -k -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

In the above example, the package "aip4567.zip" is restored to the DSpace installation with the Handle provided within the package itself (and added as a child of the parent object specified within the package itself). In addition, any child AIPs referenced by "aip4567.zip" are also recursively restored (the `-a` option specifies to also restore all child AIPs). They are also restored with the Handles & Parent Objects provided with their package. If any object is found to already exist, it is skipped over (child objects are also skipped). All non-existing objects are restored.

#### Force Replace Mode

When the "Force Replace" flag (`-f` option) is specified, the restore will **overwrite** any objects found to already exist in DSpace. In other words, existing content is deleted and then replaced by the contents of the AIP(s).

#### May also be useful in some specific restoration scenarios

This mode may also be used to restore missing objects which refer to existing objects. For example, if you are restoring a missing Collection which had existing Items linked to it, you can use this mode to auto-restore the Collection and update those existing Items so that they again link back to the newly restored Collection.

#### Potential for Data Loss

Because this mode actually **destroys** existing content in DSpace, it is potentially dangerous and may result in data loss! You may wish to perform a secondary full backup (assetstore files & database) before attempting to replace any existing object(s) in DSpace.

**Replace using a Single AIP:** Use this 'packager' command template to replace a single object from an AIP (not including any child objects):

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -f -t AIP -e <eperson> <AIP-file-path>
```

**Replace using a Hierarchy of AIPs:** Use this 'packager' command template to replace an object from an AIP along with all child objects (from their AIPs):

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -a -f -t AIP -e <eperson> <AIP-file-path>
```

For example:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE packager -r -a -f -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

In the above example, the package "aip4567.zip" is restored to the DSpace installation with the Handle provided within the package itself (and added as a child of the parent object specified within the package itself). In addition, any child AIPs referenced by "aip4567.zip" are also recursively ingested. They are also restored with the Handles & Parent Objects provided with their package. *If any object is found to already exist, its contents are replaced by the contents of the appropriate AIP.*

If any error occurs, the script attempts to rollback the entire replacement process.

#### Restoring Entire Site

In order to restore an entire Site from a set of AIPs, you must do the following:

1. Install a completely "fresh" version of DSpace by following the [Installation instructions in the DSpace Manual](#)(see page 559)
  - At this point, you should have a completely empty, but fully-functional DSpace installation. You will need to create an initial Administrator user in order to perform this restore (as a full-restore can only be performed by a DSpace Administrator).
2. Once DSpace is installed, run the following command to restore all its contents from AIPs

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -f -t AIP -e <eperson> -i <site-handle-prefix>/0 -o skipIfParentMissing=true /full/path/to/your/site-aip.zip
```

- a. While the " `-o skipIfParentMissing=true` " flag is optional, it is often necessary whenever you are performing a large hierarchical site restoration. Please see the [Additional Packager Options](#)(see page 577) section below.

Please note the following about the above restore command:

- Notice that you are running this command in "Force Replace" mode ( `-r -f` ). This is necessary as your empty DSpace install will already include a few default groups (Administrators and Anonymous) and your initial administrative user. You need to replace these groups in order to restore your prior DSpace contents completely.
- `<eperson>` should be replaced with the Email Address of the initial Administrator (who you created when you reinstalled DSpace).
- `<site-handle-prefix>` should be replaced with your DSpace site's assigned Handle Prefix. This is equivalent to the `handle.prefix` setting in your `dspace.cfg`
- `/full/path/to/your/site-aip.zip` is the full path to the AIP file which represents your DSpace SITE. This file will be named whatever you named it when you actually [exported your entire site](#)(see page 565). All other AIPs are assumed to be referenced from this SITE AIP (in most cases, they should be in the same directory as that SITE AIP).

#### Highly Recommended to Update Database Sequences after a Large Restore

In some cases, when you restore a large amount of content to your DSpace, the internal database counts (called "sequences") may get out of sync with the Handles of the content you just restored. As a best practice, it is **highly recommended to always** re-run the "update-sequences" script on your DSpace database after a larger scale restore. This database script should be run while DSpace is stopped (you may either stop Tomcat or just the DSpace webapps). PostgreSQL/Oracle must be running. Simply run:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace database update-sequences
```

#### 5.2.2.3 Cleaning up from a failed import

Sometimes your packager import of AIP packages can fail, due to lack of memory (see below for advice on better performance, please use `JAVA_OPTS` to set your memory higher than the default). If that happens, DSpace by design will leave the bitstreams it **did** import successfully, but they will be orphaned, and will just occupy space in your assetstore. The standard DSpace cleanup cron job will clean up these orphaned bitstreams, however, you can also clean them up manually by running the following command:

**Clean up after a failed import**

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace cleanup -v
```

## 5.2.2.4

## Performance considerations

When importing large structures like the whole site or a large collection/community, keep in mind that this can require a lot of memory, more than the default amount of heap allocated to the command-line launcher (256 Mb: `JAVA_OPTS="-Xmx256m -Dfile.encoding=UTF-8"`). This memory must be allocated in addition to the normal amount of memory allocated to Tomcat. For example, a site of 2500 fulltext items (2 Gb altogether) requires 5 Gb of maximum heap space and takes around 1 hour, including import and indexing.

You can raise the limit for a single run of the packager command by specifying memory options in the `JAVA_OPTS` environment variable, e.g.:

```
JAVA_OPTS="-Xmx4096m -Dfile.encoding=UTF-8" /dspace/bin/dspace packager -u -r -a -f
-t AIP -e dspace@example.com -i 123456789/0 sitewide-aip.zip
```

If the importer runs out of heap memory, it will crash either with "java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: GC overhead limit exceeded", which can be suppressed by adding "-XX:-UseGCOverheadLimit" to `JAVA_OPTS`, or with "java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: Java heap space". You can increase the allocated heap memory and try again, but keep in mind that although no changes were made in the database, the unsuccessfully imported files are still left in the assetstore (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5593>).

## 5.2.2.5 Disable User Interaction for Cron

If you wish to run any of the following commands from a cron job (or similar), then you may wish to **disable all user interaction** using the `-u` (`--no-user-interaction`) flag. For example, supposing you wanted to perform a full Site Backup (see [Exporting Entire Site](#)(see page 565) above) via a cronjob, you could simply run that command passing it the "-u" flage like this:

```
Perform a full site backup to AIPs(with user interaction disabled) every Sunday at
1:00AM
NOTE: Make sure to replace "123456789" with your actual Handle Prefix, and
"admin@myu.edu" with your Administrator account email.
0 1 * * * [dspace]/bin/dspace packager -u -d -a -t AIP -e admin@myu.edu -i 123456789/
0 [full-path-to-backup-folder]/sitewide-aip.zip
```

## 5.2.3 Command Line Reference

The following flags are valid to pass to the `[dspace]/bin/dspace packager` command:

Flag	Ingest or Export	Description / Usage
<code>-a (--all)</code>	both ingest and export	<i>For Ingest:</i> recursively ingest all child AIPs (referenced from this AIP). <i>For Export:</i> recursively export all child objects (referenced from this parent object)
<code>-d (--disseminate)</code>	export-only	This flag simply triggers the export of AIPs from the system. See <a href="#">Exporting AIPs</a> (see page 564)
<code>-e (-eperson) [email-address]</code>	ingest-only	The email address of the EPerson who is ingesting the AIPs. Oftentimes this should be an Administrative account.
<code>-f (--force-replace)</code>	ingest-only	Ingest the AIPs in " <a href="#">Force Replace Mode</a> (see page 572)" (must be specified in conjunction with <code>-r</code> flag), where existing objects will be replaced by the contents of the AIP.
<code>-h (--help)</code>	both ingest and export	Return help information. You should specify with <code>-t</code> for additional package specific help information
<code>-i (--identifier) [handle]</code>	both ingest and export	<i>For Ingest:</i> Only valid in " <a href="#">Force Replace Mode</a> (see page 572)". In that mode this is the identifier of the object to replace. <i>For Export:</i> The identifier of the object to export to an AIP
<code>-k (--keep-existing)</code>	ingest-only	Specifies to use " <a href="#">Restore, Keep Existing Mode</a> (see page 571)" during ingest (must be specified in conjunction with <code>-r</code> flag). In this mode, existing objects in DSpace will NOT be replaced by their AIPs, but missing objects will be restored from AIPs.

Flag	Ingest or Export	Description / Usage
<code>-o (--option) [setting]=[value]</code>	both ingest and export	This flag is used to pass <a href="#">Additional Packager Options</a> (see page 577) to the Packager command. Each type of packager may define its own custom Additional Options. For AIPs, the valid options are documented in the <a href="#">Additional Packager Options</a> (see page 577) section below. This is repeatable (e.g. <code>-o [setting1]=[value] -o [setting2]=value</code> )
<code>-p (--parent) [handle]</code>	ingest only	Handle(s) of the parent Community or Collection to into which an AIP should be ingested. This may be repeatable.
<code>-r (--restore)</code>	ingest only	Specifies that this ingest is either " <a href="#">Restore Mode</a> (see page 570)" (when standalone), " <a href="#">Restore, Keep Existing Mode</a> (see page 571)" (when used with <code>-k</code> flag) or " <a href="#">Force Replace Mode</a> (see page 572)" (when used with <code>-f</code> flag)
<code>-s (--submit)</code>	ingest only	Specifies that this ingest is in " <a href="#">Submit Mode</a> (see page 568)" where an AIP is treated as a <b>new</b> object and assigned a new Handle/Identifier, etc.
<code>-t (--type) [package-type]</code>	both ingest and export	Specifies the type of package which is being ingested or exported. This controls which Ingestor or Disseminator class is called. For AIPs, this is <b>always</b> set to " <code>-t AIP</code> "
<code>-u (--no-user-interaction)</code>	both ingest and export	Skips over all user interaction (e.g. question prompts). This flag can be used when running the packager from a script or cron job to bypass all user interaction. See also <a href="#">Disable User Interaction for Cron</a> (see page 574)

### 5.2.3.1 Additional Packager Options

In addition to the various "modes" settings described under "[Running the Code](#)(see page 564)" above, the AIP Packager supports the following packager options. These options allow you to better tweak how your AIPs are processed (especially during ingests/restores/replaces).



Option	Ingest or Export	Default Value	Description
<code>createMetadataFields</code> = <code>[value]</code>	ingest-only	true	Tells the AIP ingester to automatically create any metadata fields which are found to be <b>missing</b> from the DSpace Metadata Registry. When 'true', this means as each AIP is ingested, new fields may be added to the DSpace Metadata Registry if they don't already exist. When 'false', an AIP ingest will fail if it encounters a metadata field that doesn't exist in the DSpace Metadata Registry. (NOTE: This will <b>not</b> create missing DSpace Metadata <i>Schemas</i> . If a schema is found to be missing, the ingest will always fail.)
<code>filterBundles</code> = <code>[value]</code>	export-only	defaults to exporting all Bundles	<p>This option can be used to limit the Bundles which are exported to AIPs for each DSpace Item. By default, all file Bundles will be exported into Item AIPs. You could use this option to limit the size of AIPs by only exporting certain Bundles. <i>WARNING: any bundles <b>not</b> included in AIPs will obviously be unable to be restored.</i> This option can be run in two ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Exclude Bundles:</b> By default, you can provide a comma-separated list of bundles to be excluded from AIPs (e.g. "TEXT, THUMBNAIL")</li> <li>• <b>Include Bundles:</b> If you prepend the list with the "+" symbol, then the list specifies the bundles to be <b>included</b> in AIPs (e.g. "+ORIGINAL,LICENSE" would only include those two bundles). This second option is identical to using "includeBundles" option described below.</li> </ul> <p>(NOTE: If you choose to no longer export LICENSE or CC_LICENSE bundles, you will also need to disable the License Dissemination Crosswalks in the <code>aip.disseminate.rightsMD</code> configuration for the changes to take affect)</p>

Option	Ingest or Export	Default Value	Description
<code>ignoreHandle=[value]</code>	ingest-only	Restore/Replace Mode defaults to 'false', Submit Mode defaults to 'true'	If 'true', the AIP ingester will ignore any Handle specified in the AIP itself, and instead create a new Handle during the ingest process (this is the default when running in Submit mode, using the <code>-s</code> flag). If 'false', the AIP ingester attempts to restore the Handles specified in the AIP (this is the default when running in Restore/replace mode, using the <code>-r</code> flag).
<code>ignoreParent=[value]</code>	ingest-only	Restore/Replace Mode defaults to 'false', Submit Mode defaults to 'true'	If 'true', the AIP ingester will ignore any Parent object specified in the AIP itself, and instead ingest under a new Parent object (this is the default when running in Submit mode, using the <code>-s</code> flag). The new Parent object must be specified via the <code>-p</code> flag (run <code>dspace packager -h</code> for more help). If 'false', the AIP ingester attempts to restore the object directly under its old Parent (this is the default when running in Restore/replace mode, using the <code>-r</code> flag).

Option	Ingest or Export	Default Value	Description
<code>includeBundles</code> <code>= [value]</code>	export-only	defaults to "all"	<p>This option can be used to limit the Bundles which are exported to AIPs for each DSpace Item. By default, all file Bundles will be exported into Item AIPs. You could use this option to limit the size of AIPs by only exporting certain Bundles. <i>WARNING: any bundles <b>not</b> included in AIPs will obviously be unable to be restored.</i> This option expects a comma separated list of bundle names (e.g. "ORIGINAL,LICENSE,CC_LICENSE,METADAT A"), or "all" if all bundles should be included.</p> <p>(See "filterBundles" option above if you wish to exclude particular Bundles. However, this "includeBundles" option <b>cannot</b> be used at the same time as "filterBundles".)</p> <p>(NOTE: If you choose to no longer export LICENSE or CC_LICENSE bundles, you will also need to disable the License Dissemination Crosswalks in the <code>aip.disseminate.rightsMD</code> configuration for the changes to take affect)</p>
<code>manifestOnly=[value]</code>	both ingest and export	false	<p>If 'true', the AIP Disseminator will only import/export a METS Manifest XML file (i.e. result will be an unzipped 'mets.xml' file), instead of a full AIP. This METS Manifest contains URI references to all content files, but does <i>not</i> contain any content files. <b>This option is experimental and is meant for debugging purposes only. It should never be set to 'true' if you want to be able to restore content files.</b> Again, please note that when you use this option, the final result will be an XML file, NOT the normal ZIP-based AIP format.</p>

Option	Ingest or Export	Default Value	Description
<code>passwords=[value]</code>	export-only	false	If 'true' (and the 'DSPACE-ROLES' crosswalk is enabled, see <a href="#">#AIP Metadata Dissemination Configurations</a> (see page 583)), then the AIP Disseminator will export user password hashes (i.e. encrypted passwords) into Site AIP's METS Manifest. This would allow you to restore user's passwords from Site AIP. If 'false', then user password hashes are not stored in Site AIP, and passwords cannot be restored at a later time.
<code>skipIfParentMissing=[value]</code>	ingest-only	false	If 'true', ingestion will skip over any "Could not find a parent DSpaceObject" errors that are encountered during the ingestion process (Note: those errors will still be logged as "warning" messages in your DSpace log file). If you are performing a full site restore (or a restore of a larger Community/Collection hierarchy), you may encounter these errors if you have a larger number of Item mappings between Collections (i.e. Items which are mapped into several collections at once). When you are performing a recursive ingest, skipping these errors should not cause any problems. Once the missing parent object is ingested it will automatically restore the Item mapping that caused the error. For more information on this "Could not find a parent DSpaceObject" error see <a href="#">Common Issues or Error Messages</a> (see page 586).
<code>unauthorized=[value]</code>	export-only	<i>unspecified</i>	If 'skip', the AIP Disseminator will skip over any unauthorized Bundle or Bitstream encountered (i.e. it will not be added to the AIP). If 'zero', the AIP Disseminator will add a Zero-length "placeholder" file to the AIP when it encounters an unauthorized Bitstream. If unspecified (the default value), the AIP Disseminator will throw an error if an unauthorized Bundle or Bitstream is encountered.

Option	Ingest or Export	Default Value	Description
<code>updatedAfter=[value]</code>	export-only	<i>unspecified</i>	This option works as a basic form of "incremental backup". This option requires that an <a href="#">ISO-8601 date</a> <sup>525</sup> is specified. When specified, the AIP Disseminator will only export Item AIPs which have a last-modified date <b>after</b> the specified ISO-8601 date. This option has no affect on the export of Site, Community or Collection AIPs as DSpace does not record a last-modified date for Sites, Communities or Collections. For example, when this option is specified during a full-site export, the AIP Disseminator will export the Site AIP, all Community AIPs, all Collection AIPs, and only Item AIPs modified after that date and time.
<code>validate=[value]</code>	both ingest and export	Export defaults to 'true', Ingest defaults to 'false'	If 'true', every METS file in AIP will be validated before ingesting or exporting. By default, DSpace will validate everything on export, but will skip validation during import. Validation on export will ensure that all exported AIPs properly conform to the METS profile (and will throw errors if any do not). Validation on import will ensure every METS file in every AIP is first validated before importing into DSpace (this will cause the ingestion processing to take longer, but tips on speeding it up can be found in the " <a href="#">AIP Configurations To Improve Ingestion Speed while Validating</a> (see page 585)" section below). <i>DSpace recommends minimally validating AIPs on export. Ideally, you should validate both on export and import, but import validation is disabled by default in order to increase the speed of AIP restores.</i>

### How to use additional options

These options can be passed in two main ways:

#### From the Command Line

From the command-line, you can add the option to your command by using the `-o` or `--option` parameter.

---

<sup>525</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO\\_8601](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_8601)

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -t AIP -o [option1]=[value] -o [option2]=[value]
-e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

For example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace packager -r -a -t AIP -o ignoreParent=false -o
createMetadataFields=false -e admin@myu.edu aip4567.zip
```

### Via the Java API call

If you are programmatically calling the `org.dspace.content.packager.DSpaceAIPIngester` from your own custom script, you can specify these options via the `org.dspace.content.packager.PackageParameters` class.

As a basic example:

```
PackageParameters params = new PackageParameters();
params.addProperty("createMetadataFields", "false");
params.addProperty("ignoreParent", "true");
```

## 5.2.4 Configuration in 'dspace.cfg'

The following new configurations relate to AIPs:

### 5.2.4.1 AIP Metadata Dissemination Configurations

The following configurations allow you to specify what metadata is stored within each METS-based AIP. In 'dspace.cfg', the general format for each of these settings is:

- `aip.disseminate.<setting> = <mdType>:<DSpace-crosswalk-name> [, ...]`
  - `<setting>` is the setting name (see below for the full list of valid settings)
  - `<mdType>` is optional. It allows you to specify the value of the `@MDTYPE` or `@OTHERMDTYPE` attribute in the corresponding METS element.
  - `<DSpace-crosswalk-name>` is required. It specifies the name of the DSpace Crosswalk which should be used to generate this metadata.
  - Zero or more `<label-for-METS>:<DSpace-crosswalk-name>` may be specified for each setting

#### AIP Metadata Recommendations

It is recommended to **minimally** use the default settings when generating AIPs. DSpace can only restore information that is included within an AIP. Therefore, if you choose to no longer include some information in an AIP, DSpace will no longer be able to restore that information from an AIP backup

The default settings in 'dspace.cfg' are:

- `aip.disseminate.techMD` - Lists the DSpace Crosswalks (by name) which should be called to populate the `<techMD>` section of the METS file within the AIP (Default: `PREMIS`, `DSPACE-ROLES` )
  - The `PREMIS` crosswalk generates PREMIS metadata for the object specified by the AIP
  - The `DSPACE-ROLES` crosswalk exports DSpace Group / EPerson information into AIPs in a DSpace-specific XML format. Using this crosswalk means that AIPs can be used to recreated Groups & People within the system. (NOTE: The `DSPACE-ROLES` crosswalk should be used alongside the `METSrights` crosswalk if you also wish to restore the *permissions* that Groups/People have within the System. See below for more info on the `METSrights` crosswalk.)
- `aip.disseminate.sourceMD` - Lists the DSpace Crosswalks (by name) which should be called to populate the `<sourceMD>` section of the METS file within the AIP (Default: `AIP-TECHMD` )
  - The AIP-TECHMD Crosswalk generates technical metadata (in DIM format) for the object specified by the AIP
- `aip.disseminate.digiprovMD` - Lists the DSpace Crosswalks (by name) which should be called to populate the `<digiprovMD>` section of the METS file within the AIP (Default: `None`)
- `aip.disseminate.rightsMD` - Lists the DSpace Crosswalks (by name) which should be called to populate the `<rightsMD>` section of the METS file within the AIP (Default: `DSpaceDepositLicense:DSPACE_DEPLICENSE`, `CreativeCommonsRDF:DSPACE_CCRDF`, `CreativeCommonsText:DSPACE_CCTEXT`, `METSrights` )
  - The `DSPACE_DEPLICENSE` crosswalk ensures the DSpace Deposit License is referenced/stored in AIP
  - The `DSPACE_CCRDF` crosswalk ensures any Creative Commons RDF Licenses are reference/stored in AIP
  - The `DSPACE_CCTEXT` crosswalk ensures any Creative Commons Textual Licenses are referenced/stored in AIP
  - The `METSrights` crosswalk ensures that Permissions/Rights on DSpace Objects (Communities, Collections, Items or Bitstreams) are referenced/stored in AIP. Using this crosswalk means that AIPs can be used to restore permissions that a particular Group or Person had on a DSpace Object. (NOTE: The `METSrights` crosswalk should always be used in conjunction with the `DSPACE-ROLES` crosswalk (see above) or a similar crosswalk. The `METSrights` crosswalk can only restore permissions, and cannot re-create Groups or EPeople in the system. The `DSPACE-ROLES` can actually re-create the Groups or EPeople as needed.)
- `aip.disseminate.dmd` - Lists the DSpace Crosswalks (by name) which should be called to populate the `<dmdSec>` section of the METS file within the AIP (Default: `MODS`, `DIM`)
  - The MODS crosswalk translates the DSpace descriptive metadata (for this object) into MODS. As MODS is a relatively "standard" metadata schema, it may be useful to include a copy of MODS metadata in your AIPs if you should ever want to import them into another (non-DSpace) system.
  - The DIM crosswalk just translates the DSpace internal descriptive metadata into an XML format. This XML format is proprietary to DSpace, but stores the metadata in a format similar to Qualified Dublin Core.

### 5.2.4.2 AIP Ingestion Metadata Crosswalk Configurations

The following configurations allow you to specify what DSpace Crosswalks are used during the ingestion/restoration of AIPs. These configurations also allow you to ignore areas of the METS file (in the AIP) if you do not want that area to be restored.

In `dspace.cfg`, the general format for each of these settings is:

- `mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.crosswalk.<mdType> = <DSpace-crosswalk-name>`
  - `<mdType>` is the type of metadata as specified in the METS file. This corresponds to the value of the `@MDTYPE` attribute (of that metadata section in the METS). When the `@MDTYPE` attribute is "OTHER", then the `<mdType>` corresponds to the `@OTHERMDTYPE` attribute value.
  - `<DSpace-crosswalk-name>` specifies the name of the DSpace Crosswalk which should be used to ingest this metadata into DSpace. You can specify the "NULLSTREAM" crosswalk if you specifically want this metadata to be ignored (and skipped over during ingestion).

By default, the settings in `dspace.cfg` are:

```
mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.crosswalk.DSpaceDepositLicense = NULLSTREAM
mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.crosswalk.CreativeCommonsRDF = NULLSTREAM
mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.crosswalk.CreativeCommonsText = NULLSTREAM
```

The above settings tell the ingester to **ignore** any metadata sections which reference DSpace Deposit Licenses or Creative Commons Licenses. These metadata sections can be safely ignored as long as the "LICENSE" and "CC\_LICENSE" bundles are included in AIPs (which is the default setting). As the Licenses are included in those Bundles, they will already be restored when restoring the bundle contents.

#### More Info on Default Crosswalks used

If unspecified in the above settings, the AIP ingester will automatically use the Crosswalk which is named the same as the `@MDTYPE` or `@OTHERMDTYPE` attribute for the metadata section. For example, a metadata section with an `@MDTYPE="PREMIS"` will be processed by the DSpace Crosswalk named "PREMIS".

### 5.2.4.3 AIP Ingestion EPerson Configurations

The following setting determines whether the AIP Ingester should create an EPerson (if necessary) when attempting to restore or ingest an Item whose Submitter cannot be located in the system. By default it is set to "false", as for AIPs the creation of EPeople (and Groups) is generally handled by the `DSPACE-ROLES` crosswalk (see [#AIP Metadata Dissemination Configurations](#) (see page 583) for more info on `DSPACE-ROLES` crosswalk.)

- `mets.dspaceAIP.ingest.createSubmitter = false`

### 5.2.4.4 AIP Configurations To Improve Ingestion Speed while Validating

It is recommended to validate all AIPs on ingestion (when possible). But validation can be extremely slow, as each validation request first must download all referenced Schema documents from various locations on the web (sometimes as many as 10 schemas may be necessary to download in order to validate a single METS file). To make



matters worse, the same schema will be re-downloaded each time it is used (i.e. it is not cached locally). So, if you are validating just 20 METS files which each reference 10 schemas, that results in 200 download requests.

In order to perform validations in a speedy fashion, you can pull down a local copy of **all** schemas. Validation will then use this local cache, which can sometimes increase the speed up to 10 x.

To use a local cache of XML schemas when validating, use the following settings in 'dspace.cfg'. The general format is:

- `mets.xsd.<abbreviation> = <namespace> <local-file-name>`
  - `<abbreviation>` is a unique abbreviation (of your choice) for this schema
  - `<namespace>` is the Schema namespace
  - `<local-file-name>` the full name of the cached schema file (which should reside in your `[dspace]/config/schemas/` directory, by default this directory does not exist – you will need to create it)

The default settings are all commented out. But, they provide a full listing of all schemas currently used during validation of AIPs. In order to utilize them, uncomment the settings, download the appropriate schema file, and save it to your `[dspace]/config/schemas/` directory (by default this directory does not exist – you will need to create it) using the specified file name:

```
#mets.xsd.mets = http://www.loc.gov/METS/ mets.xsd
#mets.xsd.xlink = http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink xlink.xsd
#mets.xsd.mods = http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3 mods.xsd
#mets.xsd.xml = http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace xml.xsd
#mets.xsd.dc = http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/ dc.xsd
#mets.xsd.dcterms = http://purl.org/dc/terms/ dcterms.xsd
#mets.xsd.premis = http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis PREMIS.xsd
#mets.xsd.premisObject = http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis PREMIS-Object.xsd
#mets.xsd.premisEvent = http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis PREMIS-Event.xsd
#mets.xsd.premisAgent = http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis PREMIS-Agent.xsd
#mets.xsd.premisRights = http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis PREMIS-Rights.xsd
```

## 5.2.5 Common Issues or Error Messages

The below table lists common fixes to issues you may encounter when backing up or restoring objects using AIP Backup and Restore.

Issue / Error Message	How to Fix this Problem
Ingest/Restore Error: "Group Administrator already exists"	If you receive this problem, you are likely attempting to <a href="#">Restore an Entire Site</a> (see page 572), but are not running the command in Force Replace Mode ( <code>-r -f</code> ). Please see the section on <a href="#">Restoring an Entire Site</a> (see page 572) for more details on the flags you should be using.

Issue / Error Message	How to Fix this Problem
Ingest/Restore Error: "Unknown Metadata Schema encountered (mycustomschema)"	If you receive this problem, one or more of your Items is using a custom metadata schema which DSpace is currently not aware of (in the example, the schema is named "mycustomschema"). Because DSpace AIPs do not contain enough details to recreate the missing Metadata Schema, you must create it manually via the DSpace Admin UI. <b>Please note that you only need to create the Schema. You do not need to manually create all the fields belonging to that schema, as DSpace will do that for you as it restores each AIP.</b> Once the schema is created in DSpace, re-run your restore command. DSpace will automatically re-create all fields belonging to that custom metadata schema as it restores each Item that uses that schema.
Ingest Error: "Could not find a parent DSpaceObject referenced as 'xxx/xxx'"	When you encounter this error message it means that an object could not be ingested/restored as it belongs to a <b>parent</b> object which doesn't currently exist in your DSpace instance. During a full restore process, this error can be skipped over and treated as a warning by specifying the <code>'-o skipIfParentMissing=true'</code> option (see <a href="#">Additional Packager Options</a> (see page 577)). If you have a larger number of Items which are mapped to multiple Collections, the AIP Ingestor will sometimes attempt to restore an item mapping before the <b>Collection itself</b> has been restored (thus throwing this error). Luckily, this is not anything to be concerned about. As soon as the Collection is restored, the Item Mapping which caused the error will also be automatically restored. So, if you encounter this error during a full restore, it is safe to bypass this error message using the <code>'-o skipIfParentMissing=true'</code> option. All your Item Mappings should still be restored correctly.
Submit Error: SQLException: ERROR: duplicate key value violates unique constraint "handle_handle_key"	This error means that while submitting one or more AIPs, DSpace encountered a Handle conflict. This is a general error the may occur in DSpace if your Handle sequence has somehow become out-of-date. However, it's easy to fix. Just run the <code>[dspace]/bin/dspace database update-sequences</code>

## 5.2.6 DSpace AIP Format

- [Makeup and Definition of AIPs](#)(see page 588)
  - [AIPs are Archival Information Packages.](#)(see page 588)
  - [General AIP Structure / Examples](#)(see page 589)

- Customizing What Is Stored in Your AIPs(see page 590)
- AIP Details: METS Structure(see page 590)
- Metadata in METS(see page 594)
  - DIM (DSpace Intermediate Metadata) Schema(see page 594)
    - DIM Descriptive Elements for Item objects(see page 594)
    - DIM Descriptive Elements for Collection objects(see page 594)
    - DIM Descriptive Elements for Community objects(see page 595)
    - DIM Descriptive Elements for Site objects(see page 595)
  - MODS Schema(see page 595)
  - AIP Technical Metadata Schema (AIP-TECHMD)(see page 597)
    - AIP Technical Metadata for Item(see page 597)
    - AIP Technical Metadata for Bitstream(see page 598)
    - AIP Technical Metadata for Collection(see page 598)
    - AIP Technical Metadata for Community(see page 598)
    - AIP Technical Metadata for Site(see page 598)
  - PREMIS Schema(see page 598)
    - PREMIS Metadata for Bitstream(see page 600)
  - DSPACE-ROLES Schema(see page 600)
    - Example of DSPACE-ROLES Schema for a SITE AIP(see page 601)
    - Example of DSPACE-ROLES Schema for a Community or Collection(see page 603)
  - METSRights Schema(see page 603)
    - Example of METSRights Schema for an Item(see page 603)
    - Example of METSRights Schema for a Collection(see page 605)
    - Example of METSRights Schema for a Community(see page 606)

### 5.2.6.1 Makeup and Definition of AIPs

#### AIPs only store the Latest Version of Items

If you are using the [Item Level Versioning](#)(see page 407) functionality (disabled by default), you must be aware that this "Item Level Versioning" feature is **not yet compatible** with AIP Backup & Restore. **Using them together may result in accidental data loss.** Currently the AIPs that DSpace generates only store the *latest version* of an Item. Therefore, past versions of Items will always be lost when you perform a restore / replace using AIP tools.

AIPs are Archival Information Packages.

- AIP is a package describing **one archival object** in DSpace.
  - The **archival object** may be a single **Item, Collection, Community, or Site** (Site AIPs contain site-wide information). Bitstreams are included in an Item's AIP.
  - Each AIP is logically self-contained, can be restored without rest of the archive. (So you could restore a single Item, Collection or Community)
  - Collection or Community AIPs do **not** include all child objects (e.g. Items in those Collections or Communities), as each AIP only describes **one** object. However, these container AIPs do contain references (links) to all child objects. These references can be used by DSpace to automatically restore all referenced AIPs when restoring a Collection or Community.
  - AIPs are only generated for objects which are currently in the "in archive" state in DSpace. This means that in-progress, uncompleted submissions are not described in AIPs and cannot be restored after a disaster. Permanently removed objects will also no longer be exported as AIPs after their removal. However, withdrawn objects will continue to be exported as AIPs, since they are still considered under the "in archive" status.

- AIPs with identical contents will always have identical [checksums](#)<sup>526</sup>. This provides a basic means of validating whether the contents within an AIP have changed. For example, if a Collection's AIP has the same checksum at two different points in time, it means that Collection has not changed during that time period.
- AIP profile favors completeness and accuracy rather than presenting the semantics of an object in a standard format. It conforms to the quirks of DSpace's internal object model rather than attempting to produce a universally understandable representation of the object. When possible, an AIP tries to use common standards to express objects.
- An AIP *can* serve as a DIP (Dissemination Information Package) or SIP (Submission Information Package), especially when transferring custody of objects to another DSpace implementation.
- In contrast to SIP or DIP, the AIP should include all available DSpace structural and administrative metadata, and basic provenance information. AIPs also describe some basic system level information (e.g. Groups and People).

### General AIP Structure / Examples

Generally speaking, an AIP is a Zip file containing a [METS](#)<sup>527</sup> manifest and all related content bitstreams, license files and any other associated files.

Some examples include:

- Site AIP (Sample: [SITE-example.zip](#)<sup>528</sup>)
  - METS contains basic metadata about DSpace Site and persistent IDs referencing all Top Level Communities
  - METS also contains a list of all Groups and EPeople information defined in the DSpace system. (NOTE: By default, user passwords are not stored in AIPs, unless you specify the 'passwords' flag. See [Additional Packager Options](#)(see page 577).)
- Community AIP (Sample: [COMMUNITY@123456789-1.zip](#)<sup>529</sup>)
  - METS contains all metadata for Community and persistent IDs referencing all members (SubCommunities or Collections). Package may also include a Logo file, if one exists.
  - METS contains any Group information for Community-specific groups (e.g. `COMMUNITY_<ID>_ADMIN` group).
  - METS contains all Community permissions/policies (translated into [METSRights schema](#)<sup>530</sup>)
- Collection AIP (Sample: [COLLECTION@123456789-2.zip](#)<sup>531</sup>)
  - METS contains all metadata for Collection and persistent IDs referencing all members (Items). Package may also include a Logo file, if one exists.
  - METS contains any Group information for Collection-specific groups (e.g. `COLLECTION_<ID>_ADMIN`, `COLLECTION_<ID>_SUBMIT`, etc.).
  - METS contains all Collection permissions/policies (translated into [METSRights schema](#)<sup>532</sup>)
  - If the Collection has an Item Template, the METS will also contain all the metadata for that Item Template.
- Item AIP (Sample: [ITEM@123456789-8.zip](#)<sup>533</sup>)
  - METS contains all metadata for Item and references to all Bundles and Bitstreams. Package also includes all Bitstream files.

---

526 <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Checksum>

527 <https://www.loc.gov/standards/mets/METSOverview.v2.html>

528 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566793/SITE-example.zip?api=v2&modificationDate=1540318723714&version=1>

529 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566793/COMMUNITY-123456789-1.zip?api=v2&modificationDate=1540318723706&version=1>

530 <http://www.loc.gov/standards/rights/METSRights.xsd>

531 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566793/COLLECTION-123456789-2.zip?api=v2&modificationDate=1540318723696&version=1>

532 <http://www.loc.gov/standards/rights/METSRights.xsd>

533 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566793/ITEM-123456789-8.zip?api=v2&modificationDate=1540318723708&version=1>

- METS contains all Item/Bundle/Bitstream permissions/policies (translated into [METSRights schema](#)<sup>534</sup>)

#### Notes:

- Bitstreams and Bundles are second-class archival objects; they are recorded in the context of an Item.
- BitstreamFormats are not even second-class; they are described implicitly within Item technical metadata, and reconstructed from that during restoration
- EPeople are only defined in Site AIP, but may be referenced from Community or Collection AIPs
- Groups may be defined in Site AIP, Community AIP or Collection AIP. Where they are defined depends on whether the Group relates specifically to a single Community or Collection, or is just a general site-wide group.

#### What is NOT in AIPs

- DSpace Site configurations ([dspace]/config/ directory) or customizations (themes, stylesheets, etc) are not described in AIPs
- DSpace Database model (or customizations therein) is not described in AIPs
- Any objects which are not currently in the "In Archive" state are not described in AIPs. This means that in-progress, unfinished submissions are never included in AIPs.

#### Customizing What Is Stored in Your AIPs

If you choose, you can customize exactly what information is stored in your AIPs. However, you should be aware that you can only restore information which is stored within your AIPs. If you choose to remove information from your AIPs, you will be unable to restore it later on (unless you are also backing up your entire DSpace database and assetstore folder).

#### AIP Recommendations

It is recommended to minimally use the default settings when generating AIPs. DSpace can only restore information that is included within an AIP. Therefore, if you choose to no longer include some information in an AIP, DSpace will no longer be able to restore that information from an AIP backup

There are two ways to go about customizing your AIP format:

1. You can [customize your dspace.cfg settings pertaining to AIP generation](#)(see page 583). These configurations will allow you to specify exactly which DSpace Crosswalks will be called when generating the AIP METS manifest.
2. You can export your AIPs using one of the [special options/flags](#)(see page 577).

#### 5.2.6.2 AIP Details: METS Structure

This METS Structure is based on the structure decided for the original [AipPrototype](#)<sup>535</sup>, developed as part of the MIT & UCSD PLEDGE project.

- `mets` element
  - `@PROFILE` fixed value="http://www.dspace.org/schema/aip/1.0/mets.xsd" (this is how we identify an AIP manifest)

<sup>534</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/rights/METSRights.xsd>

<sup>535</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/AipPrototype>

- `@OBJID` URN-format persistent identifier (i.e. Handle) if available, or else a unique identifier. (e.g. "hdl:123456789/1")
- `@LABEL` title if available
- `@TYPE` DSpace object type, one of "DSpace ITEM", "DSpace COLLECTION", "DSpace COMMUNITY" or "DSpace SITE".
- `@ID` is a globally unique identifier, built using the Handle and the Object type (e.g. `dspace-COLLECTION-hdl:123456789/3` ).
- `mets/metsHdr` element
  - `@LASTMODDATE` last-modified date for a DSpace Item, or nothing for other objects.
  - `agent` element:
    - `@ROLE` = "CUSTODIAN",
    - `@TYPE` = "OTHER",
    - `@OTHERTYPE` = "DSpace Archive",
    - `name` = Site handle. (Note: The Site Handle is of the format `[handle_prefix]/0` , e.g. "123456789/0")
  - `agent` element:
    - `@ROLE` = "CREATOR",
    - `@TYPE` = "OTHER",
    - `@OTHERTYPE` = "DSpace Software",
    - `name` = "DSpace [version]" (Where "[version]" is the specific version of DSpace software which created this AIP, e.g. "1.7.0")
- `mets/dmdSec` element(s)
  - By default, two `dmdSec` elements are included for all AIPs:
    - i. object's descriptive metadata crosswalked to MODS (specified by `mets/dmdSec/mdWrap@MDTYPE="MODS"` ). See [#MODS Schema](#)(see page 595) section below for more information.
    - ii. object's descriptive metadata in DSpace native DIM intermediate format, to serve as a complete and precise record for restoration or ingestion into another DSpace. Specified by `mets/dmdSec/mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="DIM"` . See [#DIM \(DSpace Intermediate Metadata\) Schema](#)(see page 594) section below for more information.
  - For Collection AIPs, additional `dmdSec` elements may exist which describe the Item Template for that Collection. Since an Item template is not an actual Item (i.e. it only includes metadata), it is stored within the Collection AIP. The Item Template's `dmdSec` elements will be referenced by a `div @TYPE="DSpace ITEM Template"` in the METS `structMap` .
  - When the `mdWrap @TYPE` value is `OTHER` , the element *MUST* include a value for the `@OTHERTYPE` attribute which names the crosswalk that produced (or interprets) that metadata, e.g. `DIM` .
- `mets/amdSec` element(s)
  - One or more `amdSec` elements are include for all AIPs. The first `amdSec` element contains administrative metadata (technical, source, rights, and provenance) for the entire archival object.

Additional `amdSec` elements may exist to describe parts of the archival object (e.g. Bitstreams or Bundles in an Item).

- `techMD` elements. By default, two types of `techMD` elements may be included:
  - `PREMIS` metadata about an object may be included here (*currently only specified for Bitstreams (files)*). Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="PREMIS"`. See [#PREMIS Schema \(see page 598\)](#) section below for more information.
  - `DSPACE-ROLES` metadata may appear here to describe the Groups or EPeople related to this object (*currently only specified for Site, Community and Collection*). Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="DSPACE-ROLES"`. See [#DSPACE-ROLES Schema \(see page 600\)](#) section below for more information.
- `rightsMD` elements. By default, there are four possible types of `rightsMD` elements which may be included:
  - `METSrights` metadata may appear here to describe the permissions on this object. Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="METSRIGHTS"`. See [#METSrights Schema \(see page 603\)](#) section below for more information.
  - `DspaceDepositLicense` if the object is an Item and it has a deposit license, it is contained here. Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="DspaceDepositLicense"`.
  - `CreativeCommonsRDF` If the object is an Item with a Creative Commons license expressed in RDF, it is included here. Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="CreativeCommonsRDF"`.
  - `CreativeCommonsText` If the object is an Item with a Creative Commons license in plain text, it is included here. Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="CreativeCommonsText"`.
- `sourceMD` element. By default, there is only one type of `sourceMD` element which may appear:
  - `AIP-TECHMD` metadata may appear here. This stores basic technical/source metadata about in object in a DSpace native format. Specified by `mdWrap@MDTYPE="OTHER", @OTHERMDTYPE="AIP-TECHMD"`. See [#AIP Technical Metadata Schema \(AIP-TECHMD\) \(see page 597\)](#) section below for more information.
- `digiprovmD` element.
  - *Not used at this time.*
- `mets/fileSec` element
  - For ITEM objects:
    - Each distinct Bundle in an Item goes into a `fileGrp`. The `fileGrp` has a `@USE` attribute which corresponds to the Bundle name.
    - Bitstreams in bundles become `file` elements under `fileGrp`.
    - `mets/fileSec/fileGrp/file` elements
      - Set `@SIZE` to length of the bitstream. There is a redundant value in the `<techMD>` but it is more accessible here.

- Set `@MIMETYPE` , `@CHECKSUM` , `@CHECKSUMTYPE` to corresponding bitstream values. There is redundant info in the `<techMD>`. (For DSpace, the `@CHECKSUMTYPE="MD5"` at all times)
  - SET `@SEQ` to bitstream's SequenceID if it has one.
  - SET `@ADMID` to the list of `<amdSec>` element(s) which describe this bitstream.
- For COLLECTION and COMMUNITY objects:
  - *Only* if the object has a *logo bitstream*, there is a `fileSec` with one `fileGrp` child of `@USE="LOGO"` .
  - The `fileGrp` contains one `file` element, representing the logo Bitstream. It has the same `@MIMETYPE` , `@CHECKSUM` , `@CHECKSUMTYPE` attributes as the Item content bitstreams, but does NOT include metadata section references (e.g. `@ADMID` ) or a `@SEQ` attribute.
  - See the main `structMap` for the `fptr` reference to this logo file.
- `mets/structMap` - Primary structure map, `@LABEL="DSpace Object"` , `@TYPE="LOGICAL"`
  - For ITEM objects:
    - i. Top-Level `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace Object Contents"` .
      - For every Bitstream in Item it contains a `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace BITSTREAM"` . Each Bitstream `div` has a single `fptr` element which references the bitstream location.
      - If Item has primary bitstream, put it in `structMap/div/fptr` (i.e. directly under the `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace Object Contents"` )
  - For COLLECTION objects:
    - i. Top-Level `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace Object Contents"` .
      - For every Item in the Collection, it contains a `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace ITEM"` . Each Item `div` has up to two child `mptr` elements:
        - a. One linking to the Handle of that Item. Its `@LOCTYPE="HANDLE"` , and `@xlink:href` value is the raw Handle.
        - b. (Optional) one linking to the location of the local AIP for that Item (if known). Its `@LOCTYPE="URL"` , and `@xlink:href` value is a relative link to the AIP file on the local filesystem.
      - If Collection has a Logo bitstream, there is an `fptr` reference to it in the very first `div` .
      - If the Collection includes an Item Template, there will be a `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace ITEM Template"` within the very first `div` . This `div @TYPE="DSpace ITEM Template"` must have a `@DMDID` specified, which links to the `dmdSec` element(s) that contain the metadata for the Item Template.
  - For COMMUNITY objects:
    - i. Top-Level `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace Object Contents"` .
      - For every Sub-Community in the Community it contains a `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace COMMUNITY"` . Each Community `div` has up to two `mptr` elements:



- a. One linking to the Handle of that Community. Its `@LOCTYPE="HANDLE"` , and `@xlink:href` value is the raw Handle.
  - b. (Optional) one linking to the location of the local AIP file for that Community (if known). Its `@LOCTYPE="URL"` , and `@xlink:href` value is a relative link to the AIP file on the local filesystem.
- For every Collection in the Community there is a `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace COLLECTION"` . Each Collection `div` has up to two `mptr` elements:
  - a. One linking to the Handle of that Collection. Its `@LOCTYPE="HANDLE"` , and `@xlink:href` value is the raw Handle.
  - b. (Optional) one linking to the location of the local AIP file for that Collection (if known). Its `@LOCTYPE="URL"` , and `@xlink:href` value is a relative link to the AIP file on the local filesystem.
- If Community has a Logo bitstream, there is an `fptr` reference to it in the very first `div` .
- For SITE objects:
  - i. Top-Level `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace Object Contents"` .
    - For every Top-level Community in Site, it contains a `div` with `@TYPE="DSpace COMMUNITY"` . Each Item `div` has up to two child `mptr` elements:
      - a. One linking to the Handle of that Community. Its `@LOCTYPE="HANDLE"` , and `@xlink:href` value is the raw Handle.
      - b. (Optional) one linking to the location of the local AIP for that Community (if known). Its `@LOCTYPE="URL"` , and `@xlink:href` value is a relative link to the AIP file on the local filesystem.
- `mets/structMap` - Structure Map to indicate object's Parent, `@LABEL="Parent"` , `@TYPE="LOGICAL"`
  - Contains one `div` element which has the unique attribute value `TYPE="AIP Parent Link"` to identify it as the older of the *parent pointer*.
    - It contains a `mptr` element whose `xlink:href` attribute value is the raw Handle of the parent object, e.g. `1721.1/4321` .

### 5.2.6.3 Metadata in METS

The following tables describe how various metadata schemas are populated (via DSpace Crosswalks) in the METS file for an AIP.

#### DIM (DSpace Intermediate Metadata) Schema

[DIM Schema](#)<sup>536</sup> is essentially a way of representing DSpace internal metadata structure in XML. DSpace's internal metadata is very similar to a Qualified Dublin Core in its structure, and is primarily meant for descriptive metadata. However, DSpace's metadata allows for custom elements, qualifiers or schemas to be created (so it is extendable to any number of schemas, elements, qualifiers). These custom fields/schemas may or may not be able to be translated into normal Qualified Dublin Core. So, the DIM Schema must be able to express metadata schemas, elements or qualifiers which may or may not exist within Qualified Dublin Core.

---

<sup>536</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceIntermediateMetadata>

In the METS structure, DIM metadata always appears within a `dmdSec` inside an `<mdWrap MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="DIM">` element. For example:

```
<dmdSec ID="dmdSec_2190">
 <mdWrap MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="DIM">
 ...
 </mdWrap>
</dmdSec>
```

By default, DIM metadata is always included in AIPs. It is controlled by the following configuration in your `dspace.cfg`:

```
aip.disseminate.dmd = MODS, DIM
```

#### DIM Descriptive Elements for Item objects

As all DSpace Items already have user-assigned DIM (essentially Qualified Dublin Core) metadata fields, those fields are just exported into the [DIM Schema](#)<sup>537</sup> within the METS file.

#### DIM Descriptive Elements for Collection objects

For Collections, the following fields are translated to the DIM schema:

DIM Metadata Field	Database field or value
dc.description	'introductory_text' field
dc.description.abstract	'short_description' field
dc.description.tableofcontents	'side_bar_text' field
dc.identifier.uri	Collection's handle
dc.provenance	'provenance_description' field
dc.rights	'copyright_text' field
dc.rights.license	'license' field
dc.title	'name' field

<sup>537</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceIntermediateMetadata>

## DIM Descriptive Elements for Community objects

For Communities, the following fields are translated to the DIM schema:

DIM Metadata Field	Database field or value
dc.description	'introductory_text' field
dc.description.abstract	'short_description' field
dc.description.tableofcontents	'side_bar_text' field
dc.identifier.uri	Handle of Community
dc.rights	'copyright_text' field
dc.title	'name' field

## DIM Descriptive Elements for Site objects

For the Site Object, the following fields are translated to the DIM schema:

Metadata Field	Value
dc.identifier.uri	Handle of Site (format: <code>[handle_prefix]/0</code> )
dc.title	Name of Site (from <code>dspace.cfg</code> 'dspace.name' config)

## MODS Schema

By default, all DSpace descriptive metadata (DIM) is also translated into the [MODS Schema](#)<sup>538</sup> by utilizing DSpace's `MODSDisseminationCrosswalk`. DSpace's DIM to MODS crosswalk is defined within your `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/mods.properties` configuration file. This file allows you to customize the MODS that is included within your AIPs.

For more information on the MODS Schema, see <http://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/mods-schemas.html>

In the METS structure, MODS metadata always appears within a `dmdSec` inside an `<mdWrap` `MDTYPE="MODS">` element. For example:

```
<dmdSec ID="dmdSec_2189">
 <mdWrap MDTYPE="MODS">
 ...
```

<sup>538</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/>

```
</mdWrap>
</dmdSec>
```

By default, MODS metadata is always included in AIPs. It is controlled by the following configuration in your `dspace.cfg`:

```
aip.disseminate.dmd = MODS, DIM
```

The MODS metadata is included within your AIP to support interoperability. It provides a way for other systems to interact with or ingest the AIP without needing to understand the DIM Schema. You may choose to disable MODS if you wish, however this may decrease the likelihood that you'd be able to easily ingest your AIPs into a non-DSpace system (unless that non-DSpace system is able to understand the DIM schema). When restoring/ingesting AIPs, DSpace will always first attempt to restore DIM descriptive metadata. Only if no DIM metadata is found, will the MODS metadata be used during a restore.

#### AIP Technical Metadata Schema (AIP-TECHMD)

The AIP Technical Metadata Schema is a way to translate technical metadata about a DSpace object into the [DIM Schema](#)<sup>539</sup>. It is kept separate from DIM as it is considered technical metadata rather than descriptive metadata.

In the METS structure, AIP-TECHMD metadata always appears within a `sourceMD` inside an `<mdWrap` `MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="AIP-TECHMD">` element. For example:

```
<amdSec ID="amd_2191">
 ...
 <sourceMD ID="sourceMD_2198">
 <mdWrap MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="AIP-TECHMD">
 ...
 </mdWrap>
 </sourceMD>
 ...
</amdSec>
```

By default, AIP-TECHMD metadata is always included in AIPs. It is controlled by the following configuration in your `dspace.cfg`:

```
aip.disseminate.sourceMD = AIP-TECHMD
```

#### AIP Technical Metadata for Item

Metadata Field	Value
dc.contributor	Submitter's email address

<sup>539</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpaceIntermediateMetadata>

Metadata Field	Value
dc.identifier.uri	Handle of Item
dc.relation.isPartOf	Owning Collection's Handle ( <i>as a URN</i> )
dc.relation.isReferencedBy	All other Collection's this item is linked to ( <i>Handle URN of each non-owner</i> )
dc.rights.accessRights	" <i>WITHDRAWN</i> " if item is withdrawn

## AIP Technical Metadata for Bitstream

Metadata Field	Value
dc.title	Bitstream's name/title
dc.title.alternative	Bitstream's source
dc.description	Bitstream's description
dc.format	Bitstream Format Description
dc.format.medium	Short Name of Format
dc.format.mimetype	MIMEType of Format
dc.format.supportlevel	System Support Level for Format (necessary to recreate Format during restore, if the format isn't know to DSpace by default)
dc.format.internal	Whether Format is internal (necessary to recreate Format during restore, if the format isn't know to DSpace by default)

- Outstanding Question: Why are we recording the file format support status? That's a DSpace property, rather than an Item property. Do DSpace instances rely on objects to tell them their support status?
  - Possible answer (from Larry Stone): Format support and other properties of the BitstreamFormat are recorded here in case the Item is restored in an empty DSpace that doesn't have that format yet, and the relevant bits of the format entry have to be reconstructed from the AIP. --lcs

## AIP Technical Metadata for Collection

Metadata Field	Value
dc.identifier.uri	Handle of Collection
dc.relation.isPartOf	Owning Community's Handle ( <i>as a URN</i> )
dc.relation.isReferencedBy	All other Communities this Collection is linked to ( <i>Handle URN of each non-owner</i> )

## AIP Technical Metadata for Community

Metadata Field	Value
dc.identifier.uri	Handle of Community
dc.relation.isPartOf	Handle of Parent Community ( <i>as a URN</i> )

## AIP Technical Metadata for Site

Metadata Field	Value
dc.identifier.uri	Site Handle (format: <code>[handle_prefix]/0</code> )

## PREMIS Schema

At this point in time, the [PREMIS Schema](http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis/)<sup>540</sup> is only used to represent technical metadata about DSpace Bitstreams (i.e. Files). The PREMIS metadata is generated by DSpace's `PREMISCrosswalk`. Only the [PREMIS Object Entity Schema](http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis/schemas.html)<sup>541</sup> is used.

In the METS structure, PREMIS metadata always appears within a `techMD` inside an `<mdWrap MDTYPE="PREMIS">` element. PREMIS metadata is **always** wrapped within a `<premis:premis>` element. For example:

```
<amdSec ID="amd_2209">
 ...
 <techMD ID="techMD_2210">
 <mdWrap MDTYPE="PREMIS">
 <premis:premis>
 ...
 </premis:premis>
 </mdWrap>
 </techMD>
</amdSec>
```

<sup>540</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis/>

<sup>541</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/premis/schemas.html>

```

 </premis:premis>
 </mdWrap>
 </techMD>
 ...
 </amdSec>

```

Each Bitstream (file) has its own `amdSec` within a METS manifest. So, there will be a separate PREMIS `techMD` for each Bitstream within a single Item.

By default, PREMIS metadata is always included in AIPs. It is controlled by the following configuration in your `dspace.cfg`:

```
aip.disseminate.techMD = PREMIS, DSPACE-ROLES
```

### PREMIS Metadata for Bitstream

The following Bitstream information is translated into PREMIS for each DSpace Bitstream (file):

Metadata Field	Value
<premis:objectIdentifier>	Contains Bitstream direct URL
<premis:objectCategory>	Always set to "File"
<premis:fixity>	Contains MD5 Checksum of Bitstream
<premis:format>	Contains File Format information of Bistream
<premis:originalName>	Contains original name of file

### DSPACE-ROLES Schema

All DSpace Groups and EPeople objects are translated into a custom `DSPACE-ROLES` XML Schema. This XML Schema is a very simple representation of the underlying DSpace database model for Groups and EPeople. The `DSPACE-ROLES` Schemas is generated by DSpace's `RoleCrosswalk`.

Only the following DSpace Objects utilize the DSPACE-ROLES Schema in their AIPs:

- Site AIP – all Groups and EPeople are represented in DSPACE-ROLES Schema
- Community AIP – only Community-based groups (e.g. `COMMUNITY_1_ADMIN`) are represented in DSPACE-ROLES Schema
- Collection AIP – only Collection-based groups (e.g. `COLLECTION_2_ADMIN`, `COLLECTION_2_SUBMIT`, etc.) are represented in DSPACE-ROLES Schema

In the METS structure, DSPACE-ROLES metadata always appears within a `techMD` inside an `<mdWrap MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="DSPACE-ROLES">` element. For example:

```

<amdSec ID="amd_2068">
 ...
 <techMD ID="techMD_2070">
 <mdWrap MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="DSPACE-ROLES">
 ...
 </mdWrap>
 </techMD>
 ...
</amdSec>

```

By default, DSPACE-ROLES metadata is always included in AIPs. It is controlled by the following configuration in your `dspace.cfg`:

```
aip.disseminate.techMD = PREMIS, DSPACE-ROLES
```

Example of DSPACE-ROLES Schema for a SITE AIP

Below is a general example of the structure of a DSPACE-ROLES XML file, as it would appear in a SITE AIP.

```

<DSpaceRoles>
 <Groups>
 <Group ID="1" Name="Administrator">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="0" Name="Anonymous" />
 <Group ID="70" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/57_ADMIN">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="75" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/57_DEFAULT_READ">
 <MemberGroups>
 <MemberGroup ID="0" Name="Anonymous" />
 </MemberGroups>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="71" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/57_SUBMIT">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="72" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/57_WORKFLOW_STEP_1">
 <MemberGroups>
 <MemberGroup ID="1" Name="Administrator" />
 </MemberGroups>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="73" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/57_WORKFLOW_STEP_2">
 <MemberGroups>

```



```

 <MemberGroup ID="1" Name="Administrator" />
 </MemberGroups>
</Group>
<Group ID="8" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/6703_DEFAULT_READ" />
<Group ID="9" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_ADMIN">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
</Group>
</Groups>
<People>
 <Person ID="1">
 <Email>bsmith@myu.edu</Email>
 <Netid>bsmith</Netid>
 <FirstName>Bob</FirstName>
 <LastName>Smith</LastName>
 <Language>en</Language>
 <CanLogin />
 </Person>
 <Person ID="2">
 <Email>jjones@myu.edu</Email>
 <FirstName>Jane</FirstName>
 <LastName>Jones</LastName>
 <Language>en</Language>
 <CanLogin />
 <SelfRegistered />
 </Person>
</People>
</DSpaceRoles>

```

### Why are there Group Names with Handles?

You may have noticed several odd looking group names in the above example, where a Handle is embedded in the name (e.g. "COLLECTION\_hdl:123456789/57\_SUBMIT"). This is a translation of a Group name which included a Community or Collection *Internal ID* (e.g. "COLLECTION\_45\_SUBMIT"). Since you are exporting these Groups outside of DSpace, the *Internal ID* may no longer be valid or be understandable. Therefore, before export, these Group names are all translated to include an externally understandable identifier, in the form of a Handle. If you use this AIP to restore your groups later, they will be translated back to the normal DSpace format (i.e. the handle will be translated back to the new *Internal ID*).

### Orphaned Groups are Renamed on Export

If a Group name includes a Community or Collection *Internal ID* (e.g. "COLLECTION\_45\_SUBMIT"), and that Community or Collection no longer exists, then the Group is considered "Orphaned".

- In 1.8.2 and above, the Group is renamed using the following format: "ORPHANED\_[object-type]\_GROUP\_[obj-id]\_[group-type]" (e.g. "ORPHANED\_COLLECTION\_GROUP\_10\_ADMIN").
- Prior to 1.8.2, the Group was renamed with a random key: "GROUP\_[random-hex-key]\_[object-type]\_[group-type]" (e.g. "GROUP\_123eb3a\_COLLECTION\_ADMIN"). *This old format was discontinued as giving the groups a randomly generated name caused the SITE AIP to have a different checksum every time it was regenerated (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4492>).*

The reasoning is that we were unable to translate an *Internal ID* into an *External ID* (i.e. Handle). If we are unable to do that translation, re-importing or restoring a group with an *old* internal ID could cause conflicts or instability in your DSpace system. In order to avoid such conflicts, these groups are renamed using a random, unique key.

#### Example of DSPACE-ROLES Schema for a Community or Collection

Below is a general example of the structure of a DSPACE-ROLES XML file, as it would appear in a Community or Collection AIP.

This specific example is for a Collection, which has associated Administrator, Submitter, and Workflow approver groups. In this very simple example, each group only has one Person as a member of it. Please notice that the Person's information (Name, NetID, etc) is NOT contained in this content (however they are available in the DSPACE-ROLES example for a SITE, as shown above)

```
<DSpaceRoles>
 <Groups>
 <Group ID="9" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_ADMIN" Type="ADMIN">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="13" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_SUBMIT" Type="SUBMIT">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="2" Name="jjones@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="10" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_WORKFLOW_STEP_1" Type="WORKFLOW_S
TEP_1">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="11" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_WORKFLOW_STEP_2" Type="WORKFLOW_S
TEP_2">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="2" Name="jjones@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 <Group ID="12" Name="COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_WORKFLOW_STEP_3" Type="WORKFLOW_S
TEP_3">
 <Members>
 <Member ID="1" Name="bsmith@myu.edu" />
 </Members>
 </Group>
 </Groups>
</DSpaceRoles>
```

## METSRights Schema

All DSpace Policies (permissions on objects) are translated into the [METSRights schema](#)<sup>542</sup>. This is different than the above DSPACE-ROLES schema, which only represents Groups and People objects. Instead, the METSRights schema is used to translate the permission statements (e.g. a group named "Library Admins" has Administrative permissions on a Community named "University Library"). But the METSRights schema doesn't represent who is a member of a particular group (that is defined in the DSPACE-ROLES schema, as described above).

### **METSRights should always be used with DSPACE-ROLES**

The METSRights Schema must be used in conjunction with the DSPACE-ROLES Schema for Groups, People and Permissions to all be restored properly. As mentioned above, the METSRights metadata can only be used to restore permissions (i.e. DSpace policies). The DSPACE-ROLES metadata must also exist if you wish to restore the actual Group or EPeople objects to which those permissions apply.

All DSpace Object's AIPs (except for the SITE AIP) utilize the METSRights Schema in order to define what permissions people and groups have on that object. Although there are several sections to the METSRights Schema, DSpace AIPs *only* use the `<RightsDeclarationMD>` section, as this is what is used to describe rights on an object.

In the METS structure, METSRights metadata always appears within a `rightsMD` inside an `<mdWrap` `MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="METSRIGHTS">` element. For example:

```
<amdSec ID="amd_2068">
 ...
 <rightsMD ID="rightsMD_2074">
 <mdWrap MDTYPE="OTHER" OTHERMDTYPE="METSRIGHTS">
 ...
 </mdWrap>
 </rightsMD>
 ...
</amdSec>
```

By default, METSRights metadata is always included in AIPs. It is controlled by the following configuration in your `dspace.cfg`:

```
aip.disseminate.rightsMD = DSpaceDepositLicense:DSPACE_DEPLICENSE, \
 CreativeCommonsRDF:DSPACE_CCRDF, CreativeCommonsText:DSPACE_CCTEXT, METSRIGHTS
```

### Example of METSRights Schema for an Item

An Item AIP will almost always contain several METSRights metadata sections within its METS Manifest. A separate METSRights metadata section is used to describe the permissions on:

- the Item itself
- each Bundle (group of files) in the Item
- each Bitstream (file) within an Item's bundle

<sup>542</sup> <http://www.loc.gov/standards/rights/METSRights.xsd>

Below is an example of a METSRights sections for a publicly visible Bitstream, Bundle or Item. Notice it specifies that the "GENERAL PUBLIC" has the permission to DISCOVER or DISPLAY this object.

```
<rights:RightsDeclarationMD xmlns:rights="http://cosimo.stanford.edu/sdr/metsrights/"
RIGHTSCATEGORY="LICENSED">
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="GENERAL PUBLIC">
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="false" DELETE="false"
 />
 </rights:Context>
</rights:RightsDeclarationMD>
```

As of DSpace 3, DSpace policies/permissions may also have a "start-date" or "end-date" (to support [Embargo](#)(see [page 172](#)) functionality). Such a policy on an Item may look like this. Notice it specifies that the "GENERAL PUBLIC" has the permission to DISCOVER or DISPLAY this object *starting on* 2015-01-01, while the Group "Staff" has permission to DISCOVER or DISPLAY this object *until* 2015-01-01.

```
<rights:RightsDeclarationMD xmlns:rights="http://cosimo.stanford.edu/sdr/metsrights/"
RIGHTSCATEGORY="LICENSED">
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="GENERAL PUBLIC" start-date="2015-01-01" in-effect="fa
lse">
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="false" DELETE="false"
 />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP" end-date="2015-01-01" in-effect="true">
 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">Staff</rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="false" DELETE="false"
 />
 </rights:Context>
</rights:RightsDeclarationMD>
```

#### Example of METSRights Schema for a Collection

A Collection AIP contains one METSRights section, which describes the permissions different Groups or People have within the Collection

Below is an example of a METSRights sections for a publicly visible Collection, which also has an Administrator group, a Submitter group, and a group for each of the three DSpace workflow approval steps. You'll notice that each of the groups is provided with very specific permissions within the Collection. Submitters & Workflow approvers can "ADD CONTENTS" to a collection (but cannot delete the collection). Administrators have full rights.

```
<rights:RightsDeclarationMD xmlns:rights="http://cosimo.stanford.edu/sdr/metsrights/"
RIGHTSCATEGORY="LICENSED">
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP">
 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_SUBMIT</
rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="true" DELETE="false"
OTHER="true" OTHERPERMITTYPE="ADD CONTENTS" />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP">
```

```

 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_WORKFLOW_STEP_3</
rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="true" DELETE="false"
OTHER="true" OTHERPERMITTYPE="ADD CONTENTS" />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP">
 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_WORKFLOW_STEP_2</
rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="true" DELETE="false"
OTHER="true" OTHERPERMITTYPE="ADD CONTENTS" />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP">
 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_WORKFLOW_STEP_1</
rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="true" DELETE="false"
OTHER="true" OTHERPERMITTYPE="ADD CONTENTS" />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP">
 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">COLLECTION_hdl:123456789/2_ADMIN</
rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" COPY="true" DUPLICATE="true"
MODIFY="true" DELETE="true" PRINT="true" OTHER="true" OTHERPERMITTYPE="ADMIN" />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="GENERAL PUBLIC">
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="false" DELETE="false"
/>
 </rights:Context>
</rights:RightsDeclarationMD>

```

#### Example of METSRights Schema for a Community

A Community AIP contains one METSRights section, which describes the permissions different Groups or People have within that Community.

Below is an example of a METSRights sections for a publicly visible Community, which also has an Administrator group. As you'll notice, this content looks very similar to the Collection METSRights section (as described above)

```

<rights:RightsDeclarationMD xmlns:rights="http://cosimo.stanford.edu/sdr/metsrights/"
RIGHTSCATEGORY="LICENSED">
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="MANAGED_GRP">
 <rights:UserName USERTYPE="GROUP">COMMUNITY_hdl:123456789/10_ADMIN</
rights:UserName>
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" COPY="true" DUPLICATE="true"
MODIFY="true" DELETE="true" PRINT="true" OTHER="true" OTHERPERMITTYPE="ADMIN" />
 </rights:Context>
 <rights:Context CONTEXTCLASS="GENERAL PUBLIC">
 <rights:Permissions DISCOVER="true" DISPLAY="true" MODIFY="false" DELETE="false"
/>
 </rights:Context>
</rights:RightsDeclarationMD>

```

## 5.3 Ant targets and options

- [Options](#)(see page 606)
- [Targets](#)(see page 608)

### Ant targets should be run as the service user

A word of warning: in order to ensure proper permissions and file ownership are maintained, you are advised to run these ant targets as the service user (commonly 'dspace' or 'tomcat'). Running them as any other user may cause permission problems

### 5.3.1 Options

DSpace allows three property values to be set using the `-D<property>=<value>` option. They may be used in other contexts than noted below, but take care to understand how a particular property will affect a target's outcome.

#### overwrite

Whether to overwrite configuration files in `[dspace]/config`. If true, files from `[dspace]/config` and subdirectories are backed up with `.old` extension and new files are installed from `[dspace-src]/dspace/config` and subdirectories; if false, existing config files are untouched, and new files are written beside them with `.new` extension.

Possible values:	true, false
Default:	true
Context:	update, init_configs

#### config

If a path is specified, ant uses values from the specified file and installs it in `[dspace]/config` in the appropriate contexts.

Possible values:	path to configuration file to be used
Default:	<code>[dspace-src]/config/dspace.cfg</code>
Context:	update, update_configs, update_code, update_webapps, init_configs, fresh_install, test_database, setup_database, load_registries, clean_database

#### wars

If true, builds .war files; if false, no .war files are built.	
Possible values:	true, false
Default:	true
Context:	update, update_webapps, fresh_install

### 5.3.2 Targets

Target	Effect
<b>update</b>	Creates backup copies of the [dspace]/bin, /etc, /lib, and /webapps directories with the form /<directory>.bak-<date-time>. Creates new copies of [dspace]/config, /etc, and /lib directories. Does not affect data files or the database. (See <i>overwrite</i> , <i>config</i> , <i>war</i> options.)
<b>update_configs</b>	Updates the [dspace]/config directory with new configuration files. (See <i>config</i> option.)
<b>update_code</b>	Creates backup copies of the [dspace]/bin, /etc, and /lib directories with the form /<directory>.bak-<date-time>. Creates new copies of [dspace]/config, /etc, and /lib directories. (See <i>config</i> option.)
<b>update_webapps</b>	Updates [dspace]/webapps directory. (See <i>config</i> , <i>war</i> options.)
<b>init_configs</b>	Writes configuration files to [dspace]/config. (See <i>overwrite</i> , <i>config</i> options.)
<b>install_code</b>	Deletes existing [dspace]/bin, /lib, and /etc directories, and installs new copies; overwrites /solr application files, leaving data intact. (See <i>config</i> option.)
<b>fresh_install</b>	Performs a fresh installation of the software, including the database & config. (See <i>config</i> , <i>war</i> options.)
<b>test_database</b>	Tests database connection using parameters specified in dspace.cfg. (See <i>config</i> option.)
<b>clean_backups</b>	Removes [dspace]/bin, /etc, /lib, and /webapps directories with .bak* extensions.

## 5.4 Command Line Operations

- [Executing command line operations](#)(see page 608)
- [Available operations](#)(see page 608)
  - [General use](#)(see page 608)
  - [Legacy statistics](#)(see page 610)
  - [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 611)

The DSpace command launcher or CLI interface offers the execution of different maintenance operations. As most of these are already documented in related parts of the documentation, this page is mainly intended to provide an overview of all available CLI operations, with links to the appropriate documentation.

### 5.4.1 Executing command line operations

The CLI interface is found at `[dspace]/bin/dspace` . Execute it without arguments or with the `-h` option to see all available operations. Execute `dspace op -h` to see details about the `op` operation.

Examples:

```
bin/dspace -h
```

```
bin/dspace cleanup -h
```

```
bin/dspace cleanup
```

```
bin/dspace cleanup --verbose
```

### 5.4.2 Available operations

#### 5.4.2.1 General use

- [bitstore-migrate](#)(see page 868): Migrate all files (bitstreams) from one assetstore (bitstore) to another
- [checker](#)(see page 654): Run the checksum checker
- [checker-emailer](#)(see page 654): Send emails related to the checksum checker
- `classpath`: Calculate and display the DSpace classpath
- [cleanup](#)(see page 859): Remove deleted bitstreams from the assetstore
- [community-filiator](#)(see page 424): Tool to manage community and sub-community relationships
- `create-administrator`: Create a DSpace administrator account (see [Installing DSpace](#)(see page 78))
- [curate](#)(see page 703): Perform curation tasks on DSpace objects
- [database](#)(see page 611): Perform various tasks / checks of the DSpace database
- [doi-organiser](#)(see page 401): Transmit information about DOIs to the registration agency.
- `dsprop`: View the value of a DSpace property from any configuration file (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724))
- `dsrun`: Run a (DSpace) Java class directly (used mainly for test purposes)
- [embargo-lifter](#)(see page 179): Pre DSpace 3.0 embargo manager tool used to check, list and lift embargoes
- [export](#)(see page 308): Export items or collections



- [filter-media](#)(see page 617): Perform the media filtering to extract full text from documents and to create thumbnails
- [generate-sitemaps](#): Generate search engine and html sitemaps (see [Search Engine Optimization](#)(see page 647))
- [harvest](#): Manage the OAI-PMH harvesting of external collections (see [OAI](#)(see page 250) harvesting docs)
- [import](#): Import items into DSpace (see [Importing and Exporting Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 308))
- [index-authority](#)<sup>543</sup>: import authorities and keep SOLR authority index up to date
- [index-discovery](#)(see page 522): Update [Discovery](#)(see page 522) (Solr) search and browse Index
- [itemupdate](#): Item update tool for altering metadata and bitstream content in items (see [Updating Items via Simple Archive Format](#)(see page 421))
- [make-handle-config](#)(see page 608): Run the handle server simple setup command
- [metadata-export](#)(see page 387): Export metadata for batch editing
- [metadata-import](#)(see page 387): Import metadata after batch editing
- [migrate-embargo](#)(see page 174): Embargo manager tool used to migrate old version of Embargo to the new one included in dspace3
- [oai](#)<sup>544</sup>: OAI script manager
- [packager](#)(see page 321): Execute a packager
- [process-cleaner](#): Delete old Processes from the system
- [rdfizer](#)(see page 231): tool to convert contents to RDF
- [read](#)(see page 613) : execute a stream of commands from a file or pipe
- [registry-loader](#): Load entries into a registry (see [Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries](#)(see page 814))
- [structure-builder](#): Build DSpace community and collection structure (see [Exporting and Importing Community and Collection Hierarchy](#)(see page 301))
- [sub-daily](#)(see page 185): Send daily subscription notices
- [test-email](#)(see page 608): Test the DSpace email server settings are OK
- [update-handle-prefix](#)(see page 608): Update handle records and metadata when moving from one Handle prefix to another
- [user](#)(see page 180): Create, List, Update, Delete EPerson (user) records
- [validate-date](#)(see page 709): Test date-time format rules
- [version](#)(see page 655): Show DSpace version and other troubleshooting information

#### 5.4.2.2 Legacy statistics

##### **DSpace 7.0 does not yet support**

Legacy/log based statistics are not available in DSpace 7.0. They are under discussion as this feature is not widely used. Tentatively they are scheduled for a possible release/replacement in 7.1, see [DSpace Release 7.0 Status](#)<sup>545</sup>

Legacy statistics parse the DSpace log files and compile information based on the "[dspace]/config/dstat.cfg" configuration file. They are no longer actively maintained, but still exist in the codebase because there is information they report on that is not yet accessible in (or replaced by) [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447). Where possible, we recommend using [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) and/or [Google Analytics](#)(see page 471) for more accurate data.

- [stat-general](#): Compile the general statistics
- [stat-initial](#): Compile the initial statistics
- [stat-monthly](#): Compile the monthly statistics

<sup>543</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC6x/ORCID+Integration#ORCIDIntegration-Importingexistingauthors&keepingtheindexuptodate>

<sup>544</sup> [https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC6x/OAI+2.0+Server#OAI2.0Server-OAIManager\(SolrDataSource\)](https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC6x/OAI+2.0+Server#OAI2.0Server-OAIManager(SolrDataSource))

<sup>545</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Release+7.0+Status>

- `stat-report-general`: Create the general statistics report
- `stat-report-initial`: Create the initial statistics report
- `stat-report-monthly`: Create the monthly statistics report

### 5.4.2.3 SOLR Statistics

Scripts for the statistics that are stored in [SOLR](#)([see page 447](#)):

- `solr-export-statistics`([see page 460](#)): Export Solr statistics data to CSV (for backup or moving to another server)
- `solr-import-statistics`([see page 460](#)): Import Solr statistics data from CSV (for restoration, or moving to another server)
- `solr-reindex-statistics`([see page 460](#)): Reindex Solr statistics data (for upgrades or updates to Solr schema)
- `stats-log-converter`([see page 447](#)): Convert `dspace.log` files ready for import into solr statistics
- `stats-log-importer`([see page 447](#)): Import previously converted log files into solr statistics
- `stats-util`([see page 447](#)): Statistics Client for Maintenance of Solr Statistics Indexes

### 5.4.3 Database Utilities

This command can be used at any time to manage or upgrade the Database. It will also assist in troubleshooting PostgreSQL and Oracle connection issues with the database.

<b>Command used:</b>	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace database</code>
<b>Java class:</b>	<code>org.dspace.storage.rdbms.DatabaseUtils</code>
<b>Valid Arguments:</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>test</code>	Test the database connection settings (in <code>[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg</code> or <code>local.cfg</code> ) are OK and working properly. This command also validates the database version is compatible with DSpace.
<code>info</code>	Provide detailed information about the DSpace database itself. This includes the database type, version, driver, schema, and any successful/failed/pending database migrations.  This command, along with "test", is very useful in debugging issues with your database.

<p><code>migrate</code></p>	<p>Migrate the database to the latest version (if not already on the latest version). This uses <a href="#">FlywayDB</a><sup>546</sup> along with embedded migrations scripts to automatically update your database to the latest version.</p> <p>Additional 'migrate' options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "<code>migrate ignored</code>" will run a migration which <i>also includes</i> any database migrations which are flagged as "Ignored" (or "Skipped") by the "info" command. If these "Ignored" migrations succeed, they will now be noted (in the "info" command) as having run "Out Of Order" (i.e. they were successful, but they were executed out of the normal, numerical order).</li> <li>• "<code>migrate force</code>" (<i>available in 7.1 and later</i>) will run a migration <i>even when no new migrations exist</i> (i.e. no migrations are currently flagged as "Pending" when using the "info" command). This can be used to force the post-migration ("callback") scripts to run. Normally, these post-migration scripts only run after a new migrations are applied. They will (re-)initialize your database with required objects, like the "Site" object, default groups (Administrator/Anonymous) and default metadata registry and bitstream format registry entries.</li> </ul>
<p><code>repair</code></p>	<p>Attempt to "repair" any migrations which are flagged as "Failed" by the "info" command and/or resolve failed checksum validation. This runs the <a href="#">FlywayDB repair command</a><sup>547</sup>.</p> <p>Please note however, this will NOT automatically repair corrupt or broken data in your database. It merely tries to re-run previously "Failed" migrations and/or realign the checksums of the applied migrations to the ones of the available migrations.</p>
<p><code>skip</code></p>	<p>(<i>Available in 7.5 and later</i>) Allows you to "skip" individual database migrations. Skipping a migration will flag it as having run successfully (either "Success" or "Out of Order" status), but the migration <i>will not be executed</i>.</p> <p><b>WARNING:</b> You should <i>ONLY</i> skip migrations which are no longer required or have become obsolete. Skipping a REQUIRED migration may result in DSpace failing to startup or function properly. The only fix to that scenario would be to run the migration manually (by executing the SQL directly on the database). Therefore, this "skip" command should <i>ONLY</i> be used when the migration is known to be obsolete or no longer valid. All other usages are unsupported.</p>
<p><code>update-sequences</code></p>	<p>Update database sequences after running a bulk ingest (e.g. <a href="#">AIP Backup and Restore</a>(see page 559)) or data migration.</p>
<p><code>validate</code></p>	<p>Validate the checksums of all previously run database migrations. This runs the <a href="#">FlywayDB 'validate' command</a><sup>548</sup>.</p>

<sup>546</sup> <http://Flywaydb.org>

<sup>547</sup> <https://flywaydb.org/documentation/command/repair>

<sup>548</sup> <https://flywaydb.org/documentation/command/validate>

<code>clean</code>	<p>Completely and permanently delete all tables and data in this database. <b>WARNING:</b> There is no turning back! If you run this command, you will lose your entire database and all its contents.</p> <p>This command is only useful for testing or for reverting your database to a "fresh install" state (e.g. running "<code>dspace database clean</code>" followed by "<code>dspace database migrate</code>" will return your database to a fresh install state)</p> <p>By default the 'clean' command is <b>disabled</b> (to avoid accidental data loss). In order to enable it, you must first set <code>db.cleanDisabled=false</code> in either your local.cfg or dspace.cfg.</p>
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 5.4.4 Executing streams of commands

You can pass a sequence of commands into the `dspace` command-line tool using the `read` command.

Execute commands...	this way
...from a file	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace read a-command-file</code>
...in a pipeline	<pre>some-other-command   [dspace]/bin/dspace read - some-other-command   [dspace]/bin/dspace read</pre>

## 5.5 Handle.Net Registry Support

DSpace comes with support for CNRI's [Handle.Net Registry \(HNR\)](https://www.handle.net/)<sup>549</sup>. This feature is *completely optional*, as DSpace functions the same with or without using a Handle Server/Registry.

A few things to keep in mind:

- You'll notice that while you've been playing around with a test server, DSpace has apparently been creating (fake) handles for you looking like `hdl:123456789/24` and so forth. These aren't really Handles, since the global Handle system doesn't actually know about them, and lots of other DSpace test installs will have created the same IDs. They're only really Handles once you've registered a prefix with CNRI (see below) and have correctly set up the Handle server included in the DSpace distribution. This Handle server communicates with the rest of the global Handle infrastructure so that anyone that understands Handles can find the Handles your DSpace has created.
- If you want to use the Handle system, you'll need to set up a Handle server. One is included with DSpace.

---

<sup>549</sup> <https://handle.net/>

- If you want to use the Handle system, you'll need to obtain a Handle prefix from [the central CNRI Handle site](#)<sup>550</sup>. This requires a small yearly fee to CNRI
- Again, all of this is **completely optional**. But, the key benefit is that it provides you with persistent, permanent URLs (of the form `https://hdl.handle.net/[prefix]/[suffix]`) for every object within your DSpace site. Those persistent URLs may be useful for citations or even during upgrades/migrations, as DSpace + Handle.Net ensures that these URLs always go to the right object, even if your site's main URL changes.

A Handle server runs as a separate process that receives TCP requests from other Handle servers, and issues resolution requests to a global server or servers if a Handle entered locally does not correspond to some local content. The Handle protocol is based on TCP, so it will need to be installed on a server that can send and receive TCP on port 2641.

You can either use a Handle server running on the same machine as DSpace, or you can install it on a separate machine. Installing it on the same machine is a little bit easier. If you install it on a separate machine, you can use one Handle server for more than one DSpace installation.

- [To install your Handle resolver on the host where DSpace runs](#)(see page 614)
- [To install a Handle resolver on a separate machine](#)(see page 615)
- [To install a Handle resolver on a separate machine using template handles](#)(see page 616)
- [Updating Existing Handle Prefixes](#)(see page 616)

### 5.5.1 To install your Handle resolver on the host where DSpace runs

We recommend configuring your Handle server **without a passphrase**, as the current DSpace `start-handle-server` scripts do not yet support startup with a passphrase.

If you choose to set a passphrase, you may need to start the Handle Server via: `[dspace]\bin\dspace dsrun net.handle.server.Main [dspace]\handle-server`

1. To configure your DSpace installation to run the handle server, run the following command:

```
[dspace]/bin/make-handle-config
```

- a. If you are using Windows, the proper command is:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace dsrun net.handle.server.SimpleSetup [dspace]/handle-server
```

Ensure that `[dspace]/handle-server` matches whatever you have in `dspace.cfg` for the `handle.dir` property. You will need to answer a series of questions to configure the server. For the most part, you can use the default options, except you should choose to **not** encrypt your certificates when prompted.

2. Edit the resulting `[dspace]/handle-server/config.dct` file to include the following lines in the "server\_config" clause:

<sup>550</sup> <http://www.handle.net/>

```
"storage_type" = "CUSTOM"
"storage_class" = "org.dspace.handle.HandlePlugin"
"enable_txn_queue" = "no"
```

This tells the Handle server to get information about individual Handles from the DSpace code and to disable transaction replication. If you used the `make-handle-config` script, these should already be set in your `config.dct` file.

3. Once the configuration file has been generated, you will need to go to <https://hdl.handle.net/4263537/5014><sup>551</sup> to upload the generated `sitebndl.zip` file. The upload page will ask you for your contact information. An administrator will then create the naming authority/prefix on the root service (known as the Global Handle Registry), and notify you when this has been completed. You will not be able to continue the handle server installation until you receive further information concerning your naming authority.
4. When CNRI has sent you your naming authority prefix, you will need to edit the `config.dct` file. The file will be found in `[/dspace]/handle-server`. Look for `"300:0.NA/123456789"`. Replace 123456789 with the assigned naming authority prefix sent to you. Also change the value of `handle.prefix` in `[/dspace]/config/local.cfg` from `"123456789"` to your assigned naming authority prefix, so that DSpace will use that prefix in assigning new Handles.
5. Now start your handle server (as the `dspace` user):

```
[dspace]/bin/start-handle-server
```

- a. If you are using Windows, there is a corresponding `'start-handle-server.bat'` script:

```
[dspace]/bin/start-handle-server.bat
```

Note that since the DSpace code manages individual Handles, administrative operations such as Handle creation and modification aren't supported by DSpace's Handle server.

## 5.5.2 To install a Handle resolver on a separate machine

### Not yet supported in DSpace 7

The option to run the Handle resolver on a separate machine is not yet available in DSpace 7 codebase. See this ticket: DS-4314

The Handle server you use must be dedicated to resolve Handles from DSpace. You cannot use a Handle server that is in use with other software already. You can use CNRI's Handle Software -- all you have to do is to add to it a plugin that is provided by DSpace. The following instructions were tested with CNRI's Handle software version 9.1.0. You can do the following steps on another machine than the machine DSpace runs on, but you have to copy some files from the machine on which DSpace is installed.

1. Download the CNRI Handle Software: <http://www.handle.net/download.html><sup>552</sup>. In the tarball you'll find an `README.txt` with installation instructions -- follow it.
2. After installing the CNRI Handle Software you should have two directories: one that contains the CNRI software and one that contains the configuration of your local Handle Server. For the rest of this instruction

<sup>551</sup> <http://hdl.handle.net/4263537/5014>

<sup>552</sup> <http://www.handle.net/download.html>

we assume that the directory containing the CNRI Software is `/hs/handle-9.1.0` and the directory containing the configuration of your local server is `/hs/srv_1`. (We use the same paths here as CNRI's README.txt.)

3. Download the plugin from <https://github.com/DSpace/Remote-Handle-Resolver/releases>. Select a release. You can get the source and build it yourself, or just use the JAR file included in the release. In either case, once you have a `dspace-remote-handle-resolver-VERSION.jar`, copy it to the directory containing the CNRI software (`/hs/handle-9.1.0/lib`).
4. Create the directory `/hs/srv_1/logs`.
5. Create the following two files in `/hs/srv_1`.

#### log4j-handle-plugin.properties

```
log4j.rootCategory=INFO, A1
log4j.appender.A1=org.apache.log4j.DailyRollingFileAppender
log4j.appender.A1.File=/hs/srv_1/logs/handle-plugin.log
log4j.appender.A1.DatePattern= '.' yyyy-MM-dd
log4j.appender.A1.layout=org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout
log4j.appender.A1.layout.ConversionPattern=%d %-5p %c @ %m%n
log4j.logger.org.apache.axis.handlers.http.HTTPAuthHandler=INFO
```

Change the path in the third line, if necessary.

#### handle-dspace-plugin.cfg

```
dspace.handle.endpoint1 = http://example.org/dspace/handleresolver
```

If you run more than one DSpace Installation, you may add more DSpace Endpoints. Just increase the number at the end of the key for each: `endpoint2`, `endpoint3` ....

6. Edit the file `/hs/srv_1/config.dct` to include the following lines in the `"server_config"` clause:

```
"storage_type" = "CUSTOM"
"storage_class" = "org.dspace.handle.MultiRemoteDSpaceRepositoryHandlePlugin"
```

7. Edit `/hs/handle-9.1.0/bin/hdl`:
  - a. Find a line that contains `exec java ... net.handle.server.Main ...`
  - b. Add `"-Dlog4j.configuration=file:///hs/srv_1/log4j-handle-plugin.properties -Ddspace.handle.plugin.configuration=/hs/srv_1/handle-dspace-plugin.cfg"` right in front of `net.handle.server.Main`.
8. If your handle server is running, restart it.

**Please note:** The Handle Server will only start if it is able to connect to at least one running DSpace Installation. It only resolves the handles of the DSpace Installations that were running when it was started.

### 5.5.3 To install a Handle resolver on a separate machine using template handles

Instead of using the described plugin above, you can configure a Handle server (version 8+) to resolve handles based on a template. Template handle require less configuration than the plugin, and do not require an additional download. However, there are two things to keep in mind when using template handles:

1. Handles that don't exist will still generate a Handle record with a URL, even though resolving that URL will show an error page.
2. Handle records can only be generated based on the handle and the template. If you need to look up information in DSpace in or to generate the correct url for a given handle, you will need to use a storage plugin instead.

The Handle server you use must be dedicated to resolve Handles from DSpace. You cannot use a Handle server that is in use with other software already. The following instructions were tested with CNRI's Handle software version 9.1.0.

1. Download the CNRI Handle Software: <https://www.handle.net/download.html>.
2. In the tarball you'll find an `README.txt` with installation instructions. Follow the directions to install and configure your Handle server. Importantly, make sure your prefixes are set correctly in the "auto\_homed\_prefixes" setting.
3. Edit the `server's config.dct` file to include the following line in the " `server_config` " clause:

```
"namespace" = "<namespace><template delimiter '/'><value type='URL' index='1'
data='https://demo.dspace.org/handle/${handle}' /></template></namespace>"
```

In the "namespace" section, replace "https://demo.dspace.org/handle/" with the url endpoint for your DSpace server. The "\${handle}" part of the template will be replaced with the full handle to be resolved.

4. If your handle server is running, restart it.

This configuration is a minimal example of how to configure template handles for DSpace. For more details about configuring template handles, see the [Handle Technical Manual, Chapter 11](#)<sup>553</sup> (PDF download).

### 5.5.4 Updating Existing Handle Prefixes

If you need to update the handle prefix on items created before the CNRI registration process you can run the `[dspace]/bin/dspace update-handle-prefix script`. You may need to do this if you loaded items prior to CNRI registration (e.g. setting up a demonstration system prior to migrating it to production). The script takes the current and new prefix as parameters. For example:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace update-handle-prefix 123456789 1303
```

This script will change any handles currently assigned prefix 123456789 to prefix 1303, so for example handle 123456789/23 will be updated to 1303/23 in the database.

<sup>553</sup> <https://hdl.handle.net/20.1000/113>



## 5.6 Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content

- [MediaFilters: Transforming DSpace Content](#)(see page 617)
  - [Overview](#)(see page 617)
  - [Available Media Filters](#)(see page 617)
  - [Enabling/Disabling MediaFilters](#)(see page 629)
  - [Executing \(via Command Line\)](#)(see page 630)
  - [Creating Custom MediaFilters](#)(see page 631)
    - [Creating a simple Media Filter](#)(see page 631)
    - [Creating a Dynamic or "Self-Named" Format Filter](#)(see page 631)
  - [Configuration parameters](#)(see page 633)

### 5.6.1 MediaFilters: Transforming DSpace Content

#### 5.6.1.1 Overview

DSpace can apply filters or transformations to files/bitstreams, creating new content. Filters are included that extract text for **full-text searching**, and create **thumbnails** for items that contain images. The media filters are controlled by the `dspace filter-media` script which traverses the asset store, invoking all configured `MediaFilter` or `FormatFilter` classes on files/bitstreams (see [Configuring Media Filters](#)(see page 759) for more information on how they are configured).

#### 5.6.1.2 Available Media Filters

Below is a listing of all currently available Media Filters, and what they actually do:

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
Text Extractor (7.3 or above)	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.TikaTextExtractionFilter</code>	As of 7.3, all text extraction for Full text indexing takes place in a single filter. This filter uses <a href="#">Apache Tika</a> <sup>554</sup> which supports a wide variety of formats (e.g. Microsoft products, PDF,	Adobe PDF, Microsoft formats (Word, PPT, Excel), CSV, HTML, RTF, Text, Open Document formats (Text, Spreadsheet, Presentation)	yes

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
		HTML, Text, etc). Additional formats may be configured from the Tika supported formats list at <a href="https://tika.apache.org/2.3.0/formats.html">https://tika.apache.org/2.3.0/formats.html</a>		

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
PDF Text Extractor (7.2 or below)	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFFilter</code>	extracts the full text of Adobe PDF documents (only if text-based or OCR'd) for full text indexing. (Uses the <a href="http://pdfbox.apache.org/">Apache PDFBox</a> <sup>555</sup> tool)	Adobe PDF	yes

---

<sup>555</sup> <http://pdfbox.apache.org/>

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
HTML Text Extractor (7.2 or below)	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.HTMLFilter</code>	extracts the full text of HTML documents for full text indexing. (Uses <a href="#">Swing's HTML Parser</a> <sup>556</sup> )	HTML, Text	yes

---

<sup>556</sup> <http://java.sun.com/products/jfc/tsc/articles/bookmarks/>

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
Word Text Extractor (7.2 or below)	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PoiWordFilter</code>	extracts the full text of Microsoft Word and Microsoft Word XML documents for full text indexing. (Uses the <a href="https://poi.apache.org/">"Apache POI"</a> <sup>557</sup> tools.)	Microsoft Word, Microsoft Word XML	yes

---

<sup>557</sup> <https://poi.apache.org/>

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
Excel Text Extractor (7.2 or below)	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ExcelFilter</code>	extracts the full text of Microsoft Excel documents for full text indexing. (Uses the <a href="https://poi.apache.org/">"Apache POI"</a> <sup>558</sup> tools.)	Microsoft Excel, Microsoft Excel XML	yes

---

558 <https://poi.apache.org/>

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
PowerPoint Text Extractor (7.2 or below)	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PowerPointFilter</code>	extracts the full text of slides and notes in Microsoft PowerPoint and PowerPoint XML documents for full text indexing. (Uses the <a href="http://poi.apache.org">Apache POI</a> <sup>559</sup> tools.)	Microsoft PowerPoint, Microsoft PowerPoint XML	yes

---

559 <http://poi.apache.org>



Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
PDFBox JPEG Thumbnail	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFBoxThumbnail</code>	creates thumbnail images of the first page of PDF files	Adobe PDF	yes
JPEG Thumbnail	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.JPEGFilter</code>	creates thumbnail images of GIF, JPEG and PNG files	BMP, GIF, JPEG, image/png	yes

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
Branded Preview JPEG	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter</code>	creates a branded preview image for GIF, JPEG and PNG files	BMP, GIF, JPEG, image/png	no
ImageMagick Image Thumbnail Generator	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickImageThumbnailFilter</code>	Uses ImageMagick to generate thumbnails for image bitstreams. Requires installation of <a href="http://www.imagemagick.org/">ImageMagick</a> <sup>560</sup> on your	BMP, GIF, image/png, JPEG, TIFF, JPEG, JPEG2000	no

---

<sup>560</sup> <http://www.imagemagick.org/>

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
		server . See <a href="#">ImageMagick Media Filter</a> S(see page 633).		
ImageMagick PDF Thumbnail Generator	<code>org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickPdfThumbnailFilter</code>	Uses ImageMagick and Ghostscript to generate thumbnails for PDF bitstreams. Requires installation of <a href="#">ImageMagick</a> <sup>561</sup>	Adobe PDF	no

<sup>561</sup> <http://www.imagemagick.org/>

Name	Java Class	Function	Default input formats	Enabled by Default?
		and <a href="#">Ghostscript</a> <sup>562</sup> on your server. See <a href="#">Image Magic Media Filter</a> S(see <a href="#">page 633</a> ).		

Please note that the `filter-media` script will automatically update the DSpace search index by default.

### 5.6.1.3 Enabling/Disabling MediaFilters

The media filter plugin configuration `filter.plugins` in `dspace.cfg` contains a list of all enabled media/format filter plugins (see [Configuring Media Filters](#)(see [page 759](#)) for more information). By modifying the value of `filter.plugins` you can disable or enable MediaFilter plugins. The `filter.plugins` setting can be set multiple times to enable multiple filters. Each filter must be enabled via its name (see "Name" column in the table above).

```
Enable the default Text Extractor (for 7.3 or above)
filter.plugins = Text Extractor

Enable the JPEG thumbnail creator
filter.plugins = JPEG Thumbnail

Enable the PDF thumbnail creator
```

<sup>562</sup> <http://www.ghostscript.com/>

```
filter.plugins = PDFBox JPEG Thumbnail
```

#### 5.6.1.4 Executing (via Command Line)

The media filter system is intended to be run from the command line (or regularly as a cron task):

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media
```

With no options, this traverses the asset store, applying media filters to bitstreams, and skipping bitstreams that have already been filtered.

##### Available Command-Line Options:

- **Help:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -h`
  - Display help message describing all command-line options.
- **Force mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -f`
  - Apply filters to ALL bitstreams, even if they've already been filtered. If they've already been filtered, the previously filtered content is overwritten.
- **Identifier mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -i 123456789/2`
  - Restrict processing to the community, collection, or item named by the identifier - by default, all bitstreams of all items in the repository are processed. The identifier must be a Handle, not a DB key. This option may be combined with any other option.
- **Maximum mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -m 1000`
  - Suspend operation after the specified maximum number of items have been processed - by default, no limit exists. This option may be combined with any other option.
- **Plugin mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -p "PDF Text Extractor","Word Text Extractor"`
  - Apply ONLY the filter plugin(s) listed (separated by commas). By default all named filters listed in the `filter.plugins` field of `dspace.cfg` are applied. This option may be combined with any other option. *WARNING:* multiple plugin names must be separated by a comma (i.e. ',') and NOT a comma followed by a space (i.e. ', ').
- **Skip mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -s 123456789/9,123456789/100`
  - SKIP the listed identifiers (separated by commas) during processing. The identifiers must be Handles (not DB Keys). They may refer to items, collections or communities which should be skipped. This option may be combined with any other option. *WARNING:* multiple identifiers must be separated by a comma (i.e. ',') and NOT a comma followed by a space (i.e. ', ').
  - NOTE: If you have a large number of identifiers to skip, you may maintain this list, one identifier per line, within a separate file (e.g. `filter-skiplist.txt`). Use the following format to call the program.
    - `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -s $(paste -sd, - < filter-skiplist.txt)`
- **Verbose mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace filter-media -v`
  - Print all extracted text and other filter details to STDOUT.

### 5.6.1.5 Creating Custom MediaFilters

Adding your own filters is done by creating a class which *implements* the `org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter` interface. See the [Creating a new Media/Format Filter](#) (see [page 0](#)) topic and comments in the source file `FormatFilter.java` for more information. In theory filters could be implemented in any programming language (C, Perl, etc.) However, they need to be invoked by the Java code in the Media Filter class that you create.

#### Creating a simple Media Filter

New Media Filters **must implement** the `org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter` interface. More information on the methods you need to implement is provided in the `FormatFilter.java` source file. For example:

```
public class MySimpleMediaFilter implements FormatFilter
```

Alternatively, you could extend the `org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MediaFilter` class, which just defaults to performing no pre/post-processing of bitstreams before or after filtering.

```
public class MySimpleMediaFilter extends MediaFilter
```

You must give your new filter a "name", by adding it and its name to the `plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter` field in `dspace.cfg`. In addition to naming your filter, make sure to specify its input formats in the `filter.<class path>.inputFormats` config item. Note the input formats must match the `short description` field in the Bitstream Format Registry (i.e. `bitstreamformatregistry` table).

```
plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = \
 org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MySimpleMediaFilter = My Simple Text Filter, \ ...

filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MySimpleMediaFilter.inputFormats =
 Text
```

If you neglect to define the `inputFormats` for a particular filter, the `MediaFilterManager` will never call that filter, since it will never find a bitstream which has a format matching that filter's input format(s).

If you have a complex Media Filter class, which actually performs different filtering for different formats (e.g. conversion from Word to PDF **and** conversion from Excel to CSV), you should define this as described in [Chapter 13.3.2.2](#).

#### Creating a Dynamic or "Self-Named" Format Filter

If you have a more complex Media/Format Filter, which actually performs **multiple** filtering or conversions for different formats (e.g. conversion from Word to PDF **and** conversion from Excel to CSV), you should have define a class which implements the `FormatFilter` interface, while also extending the [Chapter 13.3.2.2 SelfNamedPlugin](#) class. For example:

```
public class MyComplexMediaFilter extends SelfNamedPlugin implements
FormatFilter
```

Since `SelfNamedPlugins` are self-named (as stated), they must provide the various names the plugin uses by defining a `getPluginNames()` method. Generally speaking, each "name" the plugin uses should correspond to a

different type of filter it implements (e.g. "Word2PDF" and "Excel2CSV" are two good names for a complex media filter which performs both Word to PDF and Excel to CSV conversions).

Self-Named Media/Format Filters are also configured differently in *dspace.cfg*. Below is a general template for a Self Named Filter (defined by an imaginary *MyComplexMediaFilter* class, which can perform both Word to PDF and Excel to CSV conversions):

```
#Add to a list of all Self Named filters
plugin.selfnamed.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = \
 org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MyComplexMediaFilter
#Define input formats for each "named" plugin this filter implements
 filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MyComplexMediaFilter.Word2PDF.inputFormats
= Microsoft Word
 filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MyComplexMediaFilter.Excel2CSV.inputFormats
= Microsoft Excel
```

As shown above, each Self-Named Filter class must be listed in the `plugin.selfnamed.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter` item in *dspace.cfg*. In addition, each Self-Named Filter **must** define the input formats for *each named plugin* defined by that filter. In the above example the *MyComplexMediaFilter* class is assumed to have defined two named plugins, `Word2PDF` and `Excel2CSV`. So, these two valid plugin names ("Word2PDF" and "Excel2CSV") **must** be returned by the `getPluginNames()` method of the *MyComplexMediaFilter* class.

These named plugins take different input formats as defined above (see the corresponding *inputFormats* setting).

If you neglect to define the `inputFormats` for a particular named plugin, the `MediaFilterManager` will never call that plugin, since it will never find a bitstream which has a format matching that plugin's input format(s).

For a particular Self-Named Filter, you are also welcome to define additional configuration settings in *dspace.cfg*. To continue with our current example, each of our imaginary plugins actually results in a different output format (Word2PDF creates "Adobe PDF", while Excel2CSV creates "Comma Separated Values"). To allow this complex Media Filter to be even more configurable (especially across institutions, with potential different "Bitstream Format Registries"), you may wish to allow for the output format to be customizable for each named plugin. For example:

```
#Define output formats for each named plugin
filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MyComplexMediaFilter.Word2PDF.output Format = Adobe
PDF
filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MyComplexMediaFilter.Excel2CSV.outputFormat = Comma
Separated Values
```

Any custom configuration fields in *dspace.cfg* defined by your filter are ignored by the *MediaFilterManager*, so it is up to your custom media filter class to read those configurations and apply them as necessary. For example, you could use the following sample Java code in your *MyComplexMediaFilter* class to read these custom *outputFormat* configurations from *dspace.cfg*:

```
#Get "outputFormat" configuration from dspace.cfg
```

```
String outputFormat =
ConfigurationManager.getProperty(MediaFilterManager.FILTER_PREFIX + "." +
MyComplexMediaFilter.class.getName() + "." + this.getPluginInstanceName() +
".outputFormat");
```

### 5.6.1.6 Configuration parameters

<b>Property</b>	<b>textextractor.max-chars</b> (only in 7.3 or above)
Example Value	textextractor.max-chars = 100000
Informational Note	By default, the "Text Extractor" only extracts the first 100,000 characters of text for full-text indexing. This setting allows you to increase or decrease that default. Set to -1 for no maximum. Keep in mind that larger values (or -1) are more likely to encounter <code>OutOfMemoryException</code> errors when extracting text from very large files. In those scenarios, you may wish to consider instead enabling "textextractor.use-temp-file" below to better control memory usage.
<b>Property</b>	<b>textextractor.use-temp-file</b> (only in 7.3 or above)
Example Value	textextractor.use-temp-file = false
Informational Note	By default, the "Text Extractor" will perform all text extraction in memory (i.e. <code>textextractor.use-temp-file=false</code> ). This ensures text extraction runs quickly, but it has the risk of hitting <code>OutOfMemoryException</code> errors if you either increase "textextractor.max-chars" or simply don't have much available memory on the server. In those scenarios, you can set "textextractor.use-temp-file=true" in order to tell the text extraction process to extract all text using a temporary file. This <i>decreases</i> the memory usage of the text extraction process, but will run slightly slower.
<b>Property</b>	<b>filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.publicPermission</b>
Example Value	filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.publicPermission = JPEGFilter
Informational Note	By default mediafilter derivatives / thumbnails inherit the permissions of the parent bitstream, but you can override this, in case you want to make publicly accessible derivative / thumbnail content, typically the thumbnails of objects for the browse list. List the MediaFilter names that would get public accessible permissions. Any media filters not listed will instead inherit the permissions of the parent bitstream.



## 5.6.2 ImageMagick Media Filters

### 5.6.2.1 ImageMagic Media Filters

- [ImageMagic Media Filters](#)(see page 633)
  - [Overview](#)(see page 633)
  - [Installation](#)(see page 633)
  - [DSpace Configuration](#)(see page 633)
    - [Thumbnail Dimensions](#)(see page 634)
    - [Conversion Utility Path](#)(see page 634)
    - [Overwriting Existing Thumbnails](#)(see page 634)
    - [Flatten](#)(see page 634)
    - [ICC Profiles](#)(see page 636)
    - [Override ImageMagick Default Density](#)(see page 636)
  - [Additional Customization](#)(see page 636)
  - [Possible Errors / Issues](#)(see page 637)
    - ["convert.im6: not authorized" errors](#)(see page 637)

#### Overview

The ImageMagick Media Filters provide consistent, high quality thumbnails for image bitstreams and PDF bitstreams.

These filters require a separate software installation of the conversion utilities (ImageMagick and Ghostscript).

The media filters use the library [im4java](#)<sup>563</sup> to invoke the conversion utilities. This library constructs a conversion command launches a sub-process to perform the generation of media files.

#### Installation

- Install [ImageMagick](#)<sup>564</sup> on your server
- If you wish to generate PDF thumbnails, install [Ghostscript](#)<sup>565</sup> on your server
- The ImageMagick and Ghostscript executables should be accessible from the same directory (e.g. `/usr/bin`)

#### DSpace Configuration

In the **filter.plugins** section of your **dspace.cfg** file, uncomment the ImageMagick media filter definition.

```
ImageMagick Image Thumbnail, ImageMagick PDF Thumbnail, \
```

This will activate the following settings which are already present in **dspace.cfg**:

<sup>563</sup> <http://sourceforge.net/projects/im4java/>

<sup>564</sup> <http://www.imagemagick.org/>

<sup>565</sup> <http://www.ghostscript.com/>

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickImageThumbnailFilter = ImageMagick Image
Thumbnail, \
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickPdfThumbnailFilter = ImageMagick PDF
Thumbnail
```

These media filters contain the several properties which can be configured.

### Thumbnail Dimensions

The following properties are used to define the dimensions of the generated thumbnails:

```
maximum width and height of generated thumbnails
thumbnail.maxwidth = 80
thumbnail.maxheight = 80
```

### Conversion Utility Path

The following property provides a path to the ImageMagick and GhostScript utilities.

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.ProcessStarter = /usr/bin
```

### Overwriting Existing Thumbnails

The ImageMagick media filters can differentiate thumbnails created by the DSpace default thumbnail generator and thumbnails that were manually uploaded by a user. The media filter reads the bitstream description field to make this determination. A regular expression can be provided to define the set of thumbnails that should be overwritten by the ImageMagick thumbnail generator. Thumbnail descriptions matching this pattern will be overwritten even if the `-f` option is not passed to the filter media process.

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.replaceRegex = ^Generated
Thumbnail$
```

The ImageMagick media filter will use the bitstream description field to identify bitstreams that it has created using the following setting. Bitstreams containing this label will be overwritten only if the `-f` filter is applied.

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.bitstreamDescription = IM
Thumbnail
```

Thumbnail descriptions that do not match either of the patterns listed above are presumed to be manually uploaded thumbnails. These thumbnails will not be replaced even if the `-f` option is passed to the filter media process.

### Flatten

DSpace uses the JPEG format for thumbnails. While JPEG doesn't support transparency, PDF, PNG and other formats do. As those formats are used as outgoing material in DSpace, DSpace has to care about transparency during the generation of the thumbnails. In combinations of specific versions of ImageMagick and Ghostscript it

may occur that completely transparent areas will become black. As a solution ImageMagick recommends to flatten images extracted from PDFs before they are stored as JPEG.

Since DSpace 5.2 the ImageMagick media filter flattens thumbnails extracted from PDFs. If you run into problems caused by flattening of the extracted images, you can switch the flattening off by setting the following property in `dspace.cfg` to false:

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.flatten = false
```

### ICC Profiles

PDFs optimized for physical printing often use the CMYK color space. On the web, however, the de facto color system is sRGB. By default, DSpace's ImageMagick-based thumbnailing system will create thumbnails that use the same color space as the source PDF. Most web browsers are not able to correctly display images that use the CMYK color space, which leads to images with visibly inaccurate colors.

If you are using Ghostscript version 9 or above, it is possible for DSpace to correctly convert images from CMYK to sRGB by providing it with appropriate ICC color profiles to use during thumbnail creation. Default ones are provided by most Ghostscript installations (version 9 or above). The following configuration options tell DSpace where those ICC profiles are located.

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.cmyk_profile = /usr/share/ghostscript/9.18/iccprofiles/default_cmyk.icc
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.srgb_profile = /usr/share/ghostscript/9.18/iccprofiles/default_rgb.icc
```

You may need to adjust those paths for your OS or the version of Ghostscript that you have.

Providing ICC profiles to ImageMagick is optional. If these configuration properties are unset, no profiles will be supplied to ImageMagick, and thumbnails produced from PDFs using the CMYK color space will also use CMYK. The transformation from CMYK to RGB is optional.

### Override ImageMagick Default Density

It is possible to override ImageMagick's default density of 72 DPI when creating PDF thumbnails. This increases the quality of resulting thumbnails at the expense of slightly longer execution times and higher memory usage. Any integer over 72 will help, but recommend 144 for a "2x" supersample. See the following configuration option in `dspace.cfg` :

```
org.dspace.app.mediafilter.ImageMagickThumbnailFilter.density = 144
```

The effect is most notable on PDFs with a lot of text, gradients, or curved lines. See the [pull request<sup>566</sup>](#) implementing this feature for more information and comparisons.

### Additional Customization

The ImageMagick conversion software provides a large number of conversion options. Subclasses of these media filters could be written to take advantage of the additional conversion properties available in the software.

---

<sup>566</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/8553>

Note: The PDF thumbnail generator is hard-coded to generate a thumbnail from the first page of the PDF.

#### Possible Errors / Issues

"convert.im6: not authorized" errors

On Ubuntu (possibly other OSes), you may see errors like these when attempting to generate PDF thumbnails:

```
ERROR filtering, skipping bitstream:
 Item Handle: 1234/5678
 Bundle Name: ORIGINAL
 File Size: 30406135
 Checksum: c1df4b3a4755e9bed956383b61fc5042 (MD5)
 Asset Store: 0
org.im4java.core.CommandException: org.im4java.core.CommandException: convert.im6:
not authorized `/tmp/impdfthumb6294641076817830415.pdf' @ error/constitute.c/
ReadImage/454.

OR

org.im4java.core.CommandException: convert-im6.q16: attempt to perform an operation
not allowed by the security policy 'PDF' @ error/constitute.c/IsCoderAuthorized/421
```

These may be caused by a change in your ImageMagick policy configuration on your server.

In Ubuntu, the default "policy.xml" was recently updated to **exclude** all Ghostscript formats (including PDF, PS, etc). See this ticket: <https://bugs.launchpad.net/ubuntu/+source/imagemagick/+bug/1796563>

- This exclusion was implemented to workaround a security vulnerability in Ghostscript reported here: <https://www.kb.cert.org/vuls/id/332928>
- This vulnerability looks like it *may have been* fixed in Ghostscript v9.25: <https://www.ghostscript.com/doc/9.25/News.htm> (Still pending verification – see launchpad ticket linked above)

The newly added lines in the `/etc/ImageMagick/policy.xml` are these ones:

```
<!-- disable ghostscript format types -->
<policy domain="coder" rights="none" pattern="PS" />
<policy domain="coder" rights="none" pattern="EPS" />
<policy domain="coder" rights="none" pattern="PDF" />
<policy domain="coder" rights="none" pattern="XPS" />
```

If you wish to re-enable ImageMagick to process Ghostscript format types, you can simply comment out those lines in the configuration file. Be aware that, as the fix to this vulnerability is not yet verified, you should only do so at your own risk.

## 5.7 Performance Tuning DSpace

- [Bare Minimum Requirements](#)(see page 638)

- Performance Tuning the Frontend (UI)(see page 638)
  - Use "cluster mode" of PM2 to avoid Node.js using a single CPU(see page 638)
  - Give Node.js more memory(see page 639)
- Performance Tuning the Backend (REST API)(see page 640)
  - Give Tomcat More Memory(see page 640)
    - Give Tomcat More Java Heap Memory(see page 640)
    - Give Tomcat More Java PermGen Memory(see page 640)
    - Choosing the size of memory spaces allocated to DSpace Backend(see page 641)
  - Give the Command Line Tools More Memory(see page 642)
    - Give the Command Line Tools More Java Heap Memory(see page 642)
    - Give the Command Line Tools More Java PermGen Space Memory(see page 642)
- Give PostgreSQL Database More Memory(see page 642)
- Performance Tuning Solr(see page 642)

The software DSpace relies on does not come out of the box optimized for large repositories. Here are some tips to make it all run faster.

## 5.7.1 Bare Minimum Requirements

As of this writing, DSpace 7 is likely to require 4GB of memory at a *bare minimum*. However, with that little memory, you may quickly hit memory issues with any significant user activity or bulk uploading. So, *we recommend running DSpace with at least 8-12GB* (or more for very large or very active sites).

This minimum would roughly include...

- 2GB of memory for the Frontend (UI) / Node.js. Highly active sites will need more.
- 1GB of memory for the Backend (REST API) / JVM / Tomcat. Highly active sites will need more.
- 512MB of memory for PostgreSQL database. Highly active sites will need more.
- 512MB of memory for Solr. Highly active sites may need more.
- Extra memory may be required for command line scripts (which get kicked off in a separate JVM)

Keep in mind, because the frontend & backend can be run on separate servers, you can split this memory across two (or more) servers. You can even choose to run PostgreSQL or Solr either alongside the backend or on their own dedicated server.

DSpace does not normally require large amounts of CPU. However, you likely will either want to run the frontend/backend on separate servers (therefore separate CPUs), or have a single server with ~4 CPU cores (at a minimum). Again, highly active sites may require additional CPU power. CPU is most often necessary for the frontend's Serve Side Rendering (see "cluster mode" notes below regarding the UI) and for any batch processing / command line scripts on backend.

## 5.7.2 Performance Tuning the Frontend (UI)

### 5.7.2.1 Use "cluster mode" of PM2 to avoid Node.js using a single CPU

If you are using PM2 to run the User Interface, you may want to start it using PM2's "Cluster Mode". This allows Node.js applications to be scaled across multiple CPUs by using the [Node.js cluster module](https://pm2.keymetrics.io/docs/usage/cluster-mode/)<sup>567</sup>. See the PM2 Cluster Mode documentation at <https://pm2.keymetrics.io/docs/usage/cluster-mode/>

---

<sup>567</sup> <https://nodejs.org/api/cluster.html>

There are two ways to enable cluster mode. Choose one.

1. First, is by adding the "exec\_mode" and "instances" settings to your JSON configuration as follows. The "exec\_mode" setting enables cluster mode, while the "instances" setting allows you to customize how many CPUs are available to PM2 ("max" = all CPUs, but you also can specify a number.)

```
dspace-ui.json

{
 "apps": [
 {
 "name": "dspace-ui",
 "cwd": "/full/path/to/dspace-ui-deploy",
 "script": "dist/server/main.js",
 "instances": "max",
 "exec_mode": "cluster",
 "env": {
 "NODE_ENV": "production"
 }
 }
]
}
```

Then, start (or restart) your site as normal (e.g. `pm2 start dspace-ui.json`)

2. Alternatively, you can pass in the "-i" flag with either "max" or a number to tell PM2 to run in cluster mode across that many CPUs:

```
Start the "dspace-ui" app & cluster it across all available CPUs
pm2 start dspace-ui.json -i max
```

### 5.7.2.2 Give Node.js more memory

On machines with >2GB of memory available, Node will only use a maximum of 2GB of memory by default (see <https://github.com/nodejs/node/issues/28202>). This 2GB of memory should be enough to build & run the User Interface, but it's possible that highly active sites may require 4GB or more.

If you want to increase the memory available to Node.js, you can set the NODE\_OPTIONS environment variable:

```
Increase memory limit to 4GB
NODE_OPTIONS=--max_old_space_size=4096
```

## 5.7.3 Performance Tuning the Backend (REST API)

### 5.7.3.1 Give Tomcat More Memory

Give Tomcat More Java Heap Memory

#### Java Heap Memory Recommendations

At the time of writing, DSpace recommends you should give Tomcat  $\geq$  512MB of Java Heap Memory to ensure optimal DSpace operation. Most larger sized or highly active DSpace installations however tend to allocate more like 1024MB (1GB) to 2048MB (2G) or more of Java Heap Memory.

Performance tuning in Java basically boils down to memory. If you are seeing "`java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: Java heap space`" errors, this is a sure sign that Tomcat isn't being provided with enough Heap Memory.

Tomcat is especially memory hungry, and will benefit from being given lots of RAM. To set the amount of memory available to Tomcat, use either the `JAVA_OPTS` or `CATALINA_OPTS` environment variable, e.g:

```
CATALINA_OPTS=-Xmx512m -Xms512m
```

OR

```
JAVA_OPTS=-Xmx512m -Xms512m
```

The above example sets the maximum Java Heap memory to 512MB.

#### Difference between JAVA\_OPTS and CATALINA\_OPTS

You can use either environment variable. `JAVA_OPTS` is also used by other Java programs (besides just Tomcat). `CATALINA_OPTS` is *only used* by Tomcat. So, if you only want to tweak the memory available to Tomcat, it is recommended that you use `CATALINA_OPTS`. If you set **both** `CATALINA_OPTS` and `JAVA_OPTS`, Tomcat will default to using the settings in `CATALINA_OPTS`.

If the machine is dedicated to DSpace a decent rule of thumb is to give tomcat half of the memory on your machine. **At a minimum, you should give Tomcat  $\geq$  512MB of memory for optimal DSpace operation.** (NOTE: As your DSpace instance gets larger in size, you may need to increase this number to the several GB range.) The latest guidance is to also set `-Xms` to the same value as `-Xmx` for server applications such as Tomcat.

Give Tomcat More Java PermGen Memory

#### Java PermGen Memory Recommendations

At the time of writing, DSpace recommends you should give Tomcat  $\geq$  128MB of PermGen Space to ensure optimal DSpace operation.

If you are seeing " `java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: PermGen space` " errors, this is a sure sign that Tomcat is running out PermGen Memory. (More info on PermGen Space: [http://blogs.sun.com/fkieviet/entry/classloader\\_leaks\\_the\\_dreaded\\_java](http://blogs.sun.com/fkieviet/entry/classloader_leaks_the_dreaded_java))

To increase the amount of PermGen memory available to Tomcat (default=64MB), use either the `JAVA_OPTS` or `CATALINA_OPTS` environment variable, e.g:

```
CATALINA_OPTS=-XX:MaxPermSize=128m
```

OR

```
JAVA_OPTS=-XX:MaxPermSize=128m
```

The above example sets the maximum PermGen memory to 128MB.

#### Difference between `JAVA_OPTS` and `CATALINA_OPTS`

You can use either environment variable. `JAVA_OPTS` is also used by other Java programs (besides just Tomcat). `CATALINA_OPTS` is *only used* by Tomcat. So, if you only want to tweak the memory available to Tomcat, it is recommended that you use `CATALINA_OPTS`. If you set **both** `CATALINA_OPTS` and `JAVA_OPTS`, Tomcat will default to using the settings in `CATALINA_OPTS`.

Please note that you can obviously set **both** Tomcat's Heap space and PermGen Space together similar to:  
`CATALINA_OPTS=-Xmx512m -Xms512m -XX:MaxPermSize=128m`

On an Ubuntu machine (10.04) at least, the file `/etc/default/tomcat6` appears to be the best place to put these environmental variables.

#### Choosing the size of memory spaces allocated to DSpace Backend

psi-probe is a webapp that can be deployed in DSpace and be used to watch memory usage of the other webapps deployed in the same instance of Tomcat (in our case, the DSpace server webapp).

1. Download the latest version of psi-probe from <https://github.com/psi-probe/psi-probe>
2. Unzip probe.war into [dspace]/webapps/

```
cd [dspace]/webapps/
unzip ~/probe-3.1.0.zip
unzip probe.war -d probe
```



3. Add a Context element in Tomcat's configuration, and make it privileged (so that it can monitor the other webapps):

EITHER in `$CATALINA_HOME/conf/server.xml`

```
<Context docBase="[dspace]/webapps/probe" privileged="true" path="/probe" />
```

OR in `$CATALINA_HOME /conf/Catalina/localhost/probe.xml`

```
<Context docBase="[dspace]/webapps/probe" privileged="true" />
```

4. Edit `$CATALINA_HOME/conf/tomcat-users.xml` to add a user for logging into psi-probe (see more in <https://github.com/psi-probe/psi-probe/wiki/InstallationApacheTomcat>)

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='utf-8'?>
<tomcat-users>
 <user username="admin" password="t0psecret" roles="manager" />
</tomcat-users>
```

5. Restart Tomcat
6. Open <http://yourdspace.com:8080/probe/> (edit domain and port number as necessary) in your browser and use the username and password from tomcat-users.xml to log in.

In the "System Information" tab, go to the "Memory utilization" menu. Note how much memory Tomcat is using upon startup and use a slightly higher value than that for the `-Xms` parameter (initial Java heap size). Watch how big the various memory spaces get over time (hours or days), as you run various common DSpace tasks that put load on memory, including indexing, reindexing, importing items into the oai index etc. These maximum values will determine the `-Xmx` parameter (maximum Java heap size). Watching PS Perm Gen grow over time will let you choose the value for the `-XX:MaxPermSize` parameter.

### 5.7.3.2 Give the Command Line Tools More Memory

#### Give the Command Line Tools More Java Heap Memory

Similar to Tomcat, you may also need to give the DSpace Java-based command-line tools more Java Heap memory. If you are seeing " `java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: Java heap space` " errors, when running a command-line tool, this is a sure sign that it isn't being provided with enough Heap Memory.

By default, DSpace only provides 256MB of maximum heap memory to its command-line tools.

If you'd like to provide **more** memory to command-line tools, you can do so via the `JAVA_OPTS` environment variable (which is used by the `[dspace]/bin/dspace` script). Again, it's the same syntax as above:

```
JAVA_OPTS=-Xmx512m -Xms512m
```

This is especially useful for big batch jobs, which may require additional memory.

You can also edit the `[dspace]/bin/dspace` script and add the environmental variables to the script directly.

#### Give the Command Line Tools More Java PermGen Space Memory

Similar to Tomcat, you may also need to give the DSpace Java-based command-line tools more PermGen Space. If you are seeing " `java.lang.OutOfMemoryError: PermGen space` " errors, when running a command-line tool, this is a sure sign that it isn't being provided with enough PermGen Space.

By default, Java only provides 64MB of maximum PermGen space.

If you'd like to provide **more** PermGen Space to command-line tools, you can do so via the `JAVA_OPTS` environment variable (which is used by the `[dspace]/bin/dspace` script). Again, it's the same syntax as above:

```
JAVA_OPTS=-XX:MaxPermSize=128m
```

This is especially useful for big batch jobs, which may require additional memory.

Please note that you can obviously set **both** Java's Heap space and PermGen Space together similar to:

```
JAVA_OPTS=-Xmx512m -Xms512m -XX:MaxPermSize=128m
```

### 5.7.4 Give PostgreSQL Database More Memory

On many Linux distros PostgreSQL comes out of the box with an incredibly conservative configuration - it uses only 8Mb of memory! To put some more fire in its belly edit the `shared_buffers` parameter in `postgresql.conf`. The memory usage is 8KB multiplied by this value. The advice in the Postgres docs is not to increase it above 1/3 of the memory on your machine.

#### For More PostgreSQL Tips

For more hints/tips with PostgreSQL configurations and performance tuning, see also:

- [PostgresPerformanceTuning](#)<sup>568</sup>
- [PostgresqlConfiguration](#)<sup>569</sup>

### 5.7.5 Performance Tuning Solr

Solr has it's own detailed documentation with recommendations for "[Taking Solr to Production](#)<sup>570</sup>". We recommend following the recommendations from Solr, especially related to "Ulimit settings" (for Unix-based systems) and "Avoiding Swapping" (for Unix-based systems). See the Solr documentation for more details.

<sup>568</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/PostgresPerformanceTuning>

<sup>569</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/PostgresqlConfiguration>

<sup>570</sup> [https://solr.apache.org/guide/8\\_11/taking-solr-to-production.html](https://solr.apache.org/guide/8_11/taking-solr-to-production.html)

## 5.8 Scheduled Tasks via Cron

Several DSpace features **require** that a script is run regularly (via cron, or similar). Some of these features include:

- the [e-mail subscription feature](#) (see page 185) that alerts users of new items being deposited;
- the ['media filter' tool](#) (see page 617), that generates thumbnails of images and extracts the full-text of documents for indexing;
- the (optional) ['checksum checker'](#) (see page 654) that tests the bitstreams in your repository for corruption;
- and the (optional) [registration of DOIs](#) (see page 396) using DataCite as registration agency.

There are some optional periodic tasks as well:

- [Updating the geolocation database](#) (see page 447) used to enrich usage statistics. At this writing, the database publisher issues monthly updates.

These regularly scheduled tasks should be setup via either [cron](#)<sup>571</sup> (for Linux/Mac OSX) or [Windows Task Scheduler](#)<sup>572</sup> (for Windows).

### 5.8.1 Recommended Cron Settings

If you are on Linux or Mac OSX, **you should add these cron settings under the OS account which is running Tomcat (and owns the [dspace] installation directory)**. For example, login as that user and type the following to edit the user's crontab.

```
crontab -e
```

While every DSpace installation is unique, in order to get the most out of DSpace, we highly recommend enabling these basic cron settings (the settings are described in the comments):

```
SAMPLE CRONTAB FOR A PRODUCTION DSPACE
You obviously may wish to tweak this for your own installation,
but this should give you an idea of what you likely wish to schedule via cron.
##
NOTE: You may also need to add additional sysadmin related tasks to your crontab
(e.g. zipping up old log files, or even removing old logs, etc).

#-----
GLOBAL VARIABLES
#-----
Full path of your local DSpace Installation (e.g. /home/dspace or /dspace or
similar)
MAKE SURE TO CHANGE THIS VALUE!!!
DSPACE = [dspace]

Shell to use
SHELL=/bin/sh
```

<sup>571</sup> <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cron>

<sup>572</sup> <http://windows.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/schedule-task>

```

Add all major 'bin' directories to path
PATH=/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/sbin:/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin

Set JAVA_OPTS with defaults for DSpace Cron Jobs.
Only provides 512MB of memory by default (which should be enough for most sites).
JAVA_OPTS="-Xmx512M -Xms512M -Dfile.encoding=UTF-8"

#-----
HOURLY TASKS (Recommended to be run multiple times per day, if possible)
At a minimum these tasks should be run daily.
#-----

Send information about new and changed DOIs to the DOI registration agency
NOTE: ONLY NECESSARY IF YOU REGISTER DOIS USING DATACITE AS REGISTRATION AGENCY
(Disabled by default)
0 4,12,20 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace doi-organiser -u -q ; [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-
organiser -s -q ; [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-organiser -r -q ; [dspace]/bin/dspace doi-
organiser -d -q

#-----
DAILY TASKS
(Recommended to be run once per day. Feel free to tweak the scheduled times below.)
#-----

Update the OAI-PMH index with the newest content at midnight every day
REQUIRED to update content available in OAI-PMH (However, it can be removed if you
do not enable OAI-PMH)
0 0 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace oai import > /dev/null

Clean and Update the Discovery indexes at midnight every day
(This ensures that any deleted documents are cleaned from the Discovery search/
browse index)
RECOMMENDED to ensure your search/browse index stays fresh.
0 0 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace index-discovery > /dev/null

run the index-authority script once a day at 12:45 to ensure the Solr Authority
cache is up to date
45 0 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace index-authority > /dev/null

Cleanup Web Spiders from DSpace Statistics Solr Index at 01:00 every day
(This removes any known web spiders from your usage statistics)
RECOMMENDED if you are running Solr Statistics.
0 1 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace stats-util -i

Send out "daily" update subscription e-mails at 02:00 every day
(This sends an email to any users who have "subscribed" to a Community/Collection,
notifying them of newly added content.)
REQUIRED for daily "Email Subscriptions" to work properly.
0 2 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace subscription-send -f D

Run the media filter at 03:00 every day.
(This task ensures that thumbnails are generated for newly add images,

```

```

and ensures full text search is available for newly added PDF/Word/PPT/HTML
documents)
REQUIRED for Thumbnails to be generated & full-text indexing to work.
0 3 * * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace filter-media

#-----
WEEKLY TASKS
(Recommended to be run once per week, but can be run more or less frequently, based
on your local needs/policies)
#-----
Send out "weekly" update subscription e-mails at 02:00 every Sunday
(This sends an email to any users who have "subscribed" to a Community/Collection,
notifying them of newly added content.)
REQUIRED for weekly "Email Subscriptions" to work properly.
0 2 * * 0 $DSPACE/bin/dspace subscription-send -f W

Run the checksum checker at 04:00 every Sunday
By default it runs through every file (-l) and also prunes old results (-p)
(This re-verifies the checksums of all files stored in DSpace. If any files have
been changed/corrupted, checksums will differ.)
OPTIONAL, but useful if you want to enable regular regular checksum validation of
files stored in DSpace.
0 4 * * 0 $DSPACE/bin/dspace checker -l -p
NOTE: LARGER SITES MAY WISH TO USE DIFFERENT OPTIONS. The above "-l" option tells
DSpace to check *everything*.
If your site is very large, you may need to only check a portion of your content
per week. The below commented-out task
would instead check all the content it can within *one hour*. The next week it
would start again where it left off.
0 4 * * 0 $DSPACE/bin/dspace checker -d 1h -p
Mail the results of the checksum checker (see above) to the configured "mail.admin"
at 05:00 every Sunday.
(This ensures the system administrator is notified whether any checksums were found
to be different.)
0 5 * * 0 $DSPACE/bin/dspace checker-emailer

#-----
MONTHLY TASKS
(Recommended to be run once per month, but can be run more or less frequently,
based on your local needs/policies)
#-----
Send out "monthly" update subscription e-mails at 02:00, on the first of every
month
(This sends an email to any users who have "subscribed" to a Community/Collection,
notifying them of newly added content.)
REQUIRED for monthly "Email Subscriptions" to work properly.
0 2 1 * * $DSPACE/bin/dspace subscription-send -f M

Permanently delete any bitstreams flagged as "deleted" in DSpace, on the first of
every month at 01:00
(This ensures that any files which were deleted from DSpace are actually removed
from your local filesystem.

```

```
By default they are just marked as deleted, but are not removed from the
filesystem.)
REQUIRED to fully remove deleted content files from the "assetstore" folder
0 1 1 * * $DSpace/bin/dspace cleanup > /dev/null
```

## 5.9 Search Engine Optimization

Please be aware that individual search engines also have their own guidelines and recommendations for inclusion. While the guidelines below apply to **most** DSpace sites, you may also wish to review these guidelines for specific search engines:

- "[Indexing Repositories: Pitfalls and Best Practices](#)<sup>573</sup>" talk from Anurag Acharya (co-creator of Google Scholar) presented at the Open Repositories 2015 conference
- [Google Scholar Inclusion Guidelines](#)<sup>574</sup>
- [Bing Webmaster Guidelines](#)<sup>575</sup>

### 5.9.1 Ensuring your DSpace is indexed

Anyone who has analyzed traffic to their DSpace site (e.g. using Google Analytics or similar) will notice that a significant (and in many cases a majority) of visitors arrive via a search engine such as Google or Yahoo. Hence, to help maximize the impact of content and thus encourage further deposits, it is important to ensure that your DSpace instance is indexed effectively.

DSpace comes with tools that ensure major search engines (Google, Bing, Yahoo, Google Scholar) are able to easily and effectively index all your content. However, many of these tools provide some basic setup. Here's how to ensure your site is indexed.

For the optimum indexing, you should:

1. [Keep your DSpace up to date.](#)(see page 647) We are constantly adding new indexing improvements in new releases
2. [Ensure your DSpace is visible to search engines.](#)(see page 648)
3. [Ensure the user interface is using server-side rendering](#)(see page 648) (*enabled by default*)
4. [Ensure the sitemaps feature is enabled](#)(see page 649). (*enabled by default*)
5. [Ensure your robots.txt allows access to item "splash" pages and full text.](#)(see page 649)
6. [Ensure item metadata appears in HTML headers correctly.](#)(see page 652)
7. [Avoid redirecting file downloads to Item landing pages](#)(see page 652)
8. [Turn OFF any generation of PDF cover pages](#)(see page 653)
9. As an aside, it's worth noting that [OAI-PMH is generally not useful to search engines](#)(see page 653). OAI-PMH has its own uses, but do not expect search engines to use it.

#### 5.9.1.1 Keep your DSpace up to date

We are constantly adding new indexing improvements to DSpace. In order to ensure your site gets all of these improvements, you should strive to keep it up-to-date. For example:

- As of DSpace 7.0, Sitemaps are enabled by default (see below)

<sup>573</sup> <http://www.or2015.net/wp-content/uploads/2015/06/or-2015-anurag-google-scholar.pdf>

<sup>574</sup> <https://scholar.google.com/intl/en-US/scholar/inclusion.html>

<sup>575</sup> <http://www.bing.com/webmaster/help/webmaster-guidelines-30fba23a>

- As of DSpace 5.0, the DSpace robots.txt file now includes references to [Sitemaps](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5302)(see page 0) by default (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5302>), and also blocks known bad bots (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5701>).
- As of DSpace 4.0, DSpace has provided several enhancements, which were requested by the Google Scholar team. These included providing users (and web indexers) a way to browse content by the date it was added to DSpace (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4851>), ensuring the "dc.date.issued" field is set more accurately (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4850>), and enhancing the logic behind the "citation\_pdf\_url" HTML <meta> tag (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4852>)
- As of DSpace 1.7, DSpace has improved how its Item-level metadata is made available to Google Scholar. For the 1.7.0 release, the DSpace Developers worked directly with the Google Scholar developers, to ensure DSpace is generating the "citation\_\*" HTML "<meta>" tags (i.e. Highwire Press tags) that Google Scholar recommends in their [Indexing Guidelines](#)<sup>576</sup>.
- As of DSpace 1.5, DSpace has support for sitemaps (both simple HTML pages of links, as well as the [sitemaps.org protocol](https://sitemaps.org)<sup>577</sup>). It also includes item metadata in the HTML HEAD element of item display pages, ensuring that the metadata can be effectively indexed no matter what changes you might have made to your DSpace's layout or style.
- As of DSpace 1.4, DSpace has support for the "if-modified-since" HTTP header. This basically means that if an item (or bitstream therein) has not changed since the last time a search engine's crawler indexed it, that item/bitstream does not have to be re-retrieved, sparing your server.

Additional minor improvements / bug fixes have been made to more recent releases of DSpace.

### 5.9.1.2 Ensure your DSpace is visible to search engines

First ensure your DSpace instance is visible, e.g. with: <https://www.google.com/webmasters/tools/sitestatus>

If your site is not indexed at all, all search engines have a way to add your URL, e.g.:

- Google: <http://www.google.com/addurl>
- Yahoo: <http://siteexplorer.search.yahoo.com/submit>
- Bing: <http://www.bing.com/docs/submit.aspx>

### 5.9.1.3 Ensure the user interface is using server-side rendering

In DSpace 7, server-side rendering is *enabled by default*. However, it's important to ensure you do not disable it in production.

Because the DSpace user interface is based on Angular.io (which is a javascript framework), you **MUST** have server-side rendering enabled (which is the default) for search engines to fully index your side. Server-side rendering allows your site to still function even when Javascript is turned *off* in a user's browser. Some web crawlers do not support Javascript, so they will only interact with this server-side rendered content.

DSpace use [Angular Universal](#)<sup>578</sup> for server-side rendering, and it's enabled by default in Production mode via this configuration in `src/environments/environment.production.ts`:

```
// Angular Universal Settings
universal: {
 preboot: true,
 ...
```

<sup>576</sup> <http://scholar.google.com/intl/en/scholar/inclusion.html>

<sup>577</sup> <http://sitemaps.org/>

<sup>578</sup> <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

```
},
```

Per the frontend [Installation instructions](#)(see page 78), you must also be running your production frontend/UI via either `yarn run serve:ssr` or `yarn start`.

For information, see "Universal (Server-side Rendering) settings" in [User Interface Configuration](#)(see page 478)

You can test whether server-side rendering is enabled by temporarily disabling JavaScript in your browser (usually this is in the settings of the Developer Tools) and attempting to access your DSpace site. All basic browse/search functionality should work with JavaScript disabled. (However, all dynamic menus or actions obviously will not work, as all pages will be static HTML.)

#### 5.9.1.4 Ensure the sitemaps feature is enabled

As of DSpace 7, sitemaps are *enabled by default and automatically update on a daily basis*. This is the recommended setup to prefer proper indexing. So, there's nothing you need to do unless you wish to either change their schedule, or disable them.

In the `dspace.cfg`, the Sitemap generation schedule is controlled by this setting

```
By default, sitemaps regenerate daily at 1:15am server time
sitemap.cron = 0 15 1 * * ?
```

You can modify this schedule by using the Cron syntax defined at <https://www.quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.3.0/org/quartz/CronTrigger.html>. Any modifications can be placed in your `local.cfg`.

If you want to disable this automated scheduler, you can either comment it out, or set it to a single "-" (dash) in your `local.cfg`

```
This disables the automatic updates
sitemap.cron = -
```

Again, we **highly recommend** keeping them enabled. However, you may choose to disable this scheduler if you wish to define these in your local system cron settings.

Once you've enabled your sitemaps, they will be accessible at the following URLs:

- HTML Sitemaps: `${dspace.ui.url}/sitemap_index.html`
- XML Sitemaps: `${dspace.ui.url}/sitemap_index.xml`

So, for example, if your `"dspace.ui.url = https://mysite.org"` in your `"dspace.cfg"` configuration file, then the HTML Sitemaps would be at: `"http://mysite.org/sitemap_index.html"`

By default, the Sitemap URLs also will appear in your UI's `robots.txt` (in order to announce them to search engines):

```
The URL to the DSpace sitemaps
XML sitemap is listed first as it is preferred by most search engines
Sitemap: [dspace.ui.url]/sitemap_index.xml
Sitemap: [dspace.ui.url]/sitemap_index.html
```



The generate-sitemaps command

If you wanted to generate your sitemaps manually, you can use a commandline tool to do so.

**WARNING:** Keep in mind, you do NOT need to run these manually in most situations, as sitemaps are autoupdated on a regular schedule (see documentation above)

```
Commandline option (run from the backend)
[dspace]/bin/dspace generate-sitemaps
```

This command accepts several options:

Option	meaning
-h --help	Explain the arguments and options.
-s --no_sitemaps	Do not generate a sitemap in sitemaps.org format.
-b -no_htmlmap	Do not generate a sitemap in htmlmap format.
-a --ping_all	Notify all configured search engines that new sitemaps are available.
-p <i>URL</i> --ping <i>URL</i>	Notify the given URL that new sitemaps are available. The URL of the new sitemap will be appended to the value of <i>URL</i> .

You can configure the list of "all search engines" by setting the value of `sitemap.engineurls` in `dspace.cfg`.

### 5.9.1.5 Create a good robots.txt

As of 7.5, DSpace's robots.txt file can be found in the UI's codebase at "src/robots.txt.ejs". This is an "embedded javascript template" (ejs) file, which simply allows for us to insert variable values into the "robots.txt" at runtime. It can be edited as a normal text file.

The trick here is to minimize load on your server, but without actually blocking anything vital for indexing. Search engines need to be able to index item, collection and community pages, and all bitstreams within items – full-text access is critically important for effective indexing, e.g. for citation analysis as well as the usual keyword searching.

If you have restricted content on your site, search engines will not be able to access it; they access all pages as an anonymous user.

Ensure that your robots.txt file is at the top level of your site: i.e. at <http://repo.foo.edu/robots.txt>, and NOT e.g. <http://repo.foo.edu/dspace/robots.txt>. If your DSpace instance is served from e.g. <http://repo.foo.edu/dspace/>, you'll need to add /dspace to all the paths in the examples below (e.g. /dspace/browse-subject).

#### NEVER BLOCK THESE PATHS

Some URLs can be disallowed without negative impact, but be ABSOLUTELY SURE the following URLs can be reached by crawlers, i.e. DO NOT put these on Disallow: lines, or your DSpace instance might not be indexed properly.

- /bitstreams
- /browse/\* (UNLESS USING SITEMAPS)
- /collections
- /communities
- /community-list (UNLESS USING SITEMAPS)
- /entities/\*
- /handle
- /items

#### Example good robots.txt

DSpace 7 comes with an example robots.txt file (which is copied below). As of 7.5, this file can be found at "src/robots.txt.ejs" in the DSpace 7 UI. This is an "embedded javascript template" (ejs) file, which simply allows for us to insert variable values into the "robots.txt" at runtime. It can be edited as a normal text file.

The highly recommended settings are uncommented. Additional, optional settings are displayed in comments – based on your local configuration you may wish to enable them by uncommenting the corresponding "Disallow:" line.

```
The URL to the DSpace sitemaps
XML sitemap is listed first as it is preferred by most search engines
NOTE: The <%= origin %> variables below will be replaced by the fully qualified URL
of your site at runtime.
Sitemap: <%= origin %>/sitemap_index.xml
Sitemap: <%= origin %>/sitemap_index.html

#####
Default Access Group
(NOTE: blank lines are not allowable in a group record)
#####
User-agent: *
Disable access to Discovery search and filters; admin pages; processes; submission;
workspace; workflow & profile page
Disallow: /search
Disallow: /admin/*
Disallow: /processes
Disallow: /submit
Disallow: /workspaceitems
Disallow: /profile
```

```

Disallow: /workflowitems

Optionally uncomment the following line ONLY if sitemaps are working
and you have verified that your site is being indexed correctly.
Disallow: /browse/*
#
If you have configured DSpace (Solr-based) Statistics to be publicly
accessible, then you may not want this content to be indexed
Disallow: /statistics
#
You also may wish to disallow access to the following paths, in order
to stop web spiders from accessing user-based content
Disallow: /contact
Disallow: /feedback
Disallow: /forgot
Disallow: /login
Disallow: /register

NOTE: The default robots.txt also includes a large number of recommended settings
to avoid misbehaving bots.
For brevity, they have been removed from this example, but can be found in src/
robots.txt.ejs

```

WARNING: for your additional disallow statements to be recognized under the `User-agent: *` group, they *cannot be separated by white lines* from the declared `user-agent: *` block. A white line indicates the start of a new user agent block. Without a leading user-agent declaration on the first line, blocks are ignored. Comment lines are allowed and will not break the user-agent block.

This is OK:

```

User-agent: *
Disable access to Discovery search and filters; admin pages; processes
Disallow: /search
Disallow: /admin/*
Disallow: /processes

```

This is **not OK**, as the two lines at the bottom will be completely ignored.

```

User-agent: *
Disable access to Discovery search and filters; admin pages; processes
Disallow: /search

Disallow: /admin/*
Disallow: /processes

```

To identify if a specific user agent has access to a particular URL, you can use [this handy robots.txt tester](#)<sup>579</sup>.

For more information on the robots.txt format, please see the [Google Robots.txt documentation](#)<sup>580</sup>.

<sup>579</sup> <http://www.frobee.com/robots-txt-check>

<sup>580</sup> [https://developers.google.com/webmasters/control-crawl-index/docs/robots\\_txt](https://developers.google.com/webmasters/control-crawl-index/docs/robots_txt)

### 5.9.1.6 Ensure Item Metadata appears in the HTML HEAD

It's possible to greatly customize the look and feel of your DSpace, which makes it harder for search engines, and other tools and services such as [Zotero](#)<sup>581</sup>, [Connotea](#)<sup>582</sup> and [SIMILE Piggy Bank](#)<sup>583</sup>, to correctly pick out item metadata fields. To address this, DSpace includes item metadata in the <head> element of each item's HTML display page.

```
<meta name="DC.type" content="Article" />
<meta name="DCTERMS.contributor" content="Tansley, Robert" />
```

If you have heavily customized your metadata fields away from Dublin Core, you can modify the service which generates these elements by modifying <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/core/metadata/metadata.service.ts>

### Google Scholar Metadata in HTML HEAD

In addition to Dublin Core <meta> tags in the HTML HEAD, DSpace also includes Google Scholar specific metadata fields in each item's HTML display page.

```
<meta property="citation_author" content="Tansley, Robert; Donohue, Timothy"/>
<meta property="citation_title" content="Ensuring your DSpace is indexed" />
```

These meta tags are the "Highwire Press tags" which [Google Scholar recommends](#)<sup>584</sup>. If you have heavily customized your metadata fields, or wish to change the default "mappings" to these Highwire Press tags, you may do so by modifying <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/blob/main/src/app/core/metadata/metadata.service.ts> (see for example the "setCitationAuthorTags()" method in that service class)

Much more information is available in the Configuration section on [Google Scholar Metadata Mappings](#)(see page 653).

### 5.9.1.7 Avoid redirecting file downloads to Item landing pages

Make sure that you never redirect "direct file downloads" (i.e. users who directly jump to downloading a file, often from a search engine) to the associated Item's splash/landing page. In the past, some DSpace sites have added these custom URL redirects in order to facilitate capturing statistics via Google Analytics or similar.

While these URL redirects may seem harmless, they may be flagged as [cloaking](#)<sup>585</sup> or spam by Google, Google Scholar and other major search engines. This may hurt your site's search engine ranking or even cause your entire site to be flagged for removal from the search engine.

If you have these URL redirects in place, it is highly recommended to remove them immediately. If you created these redirects to facilitate capturing download statistics in Google Analytics, you should consider upgrading to DSpace 5.0 or above, which is able to automatically record bitstream downloads in Google Analytics (see <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5454>) without the need for any URL redirects.

---

581 <http://www.zotero.org/>

582 <http://www.connotea.org/>

583 [http://simile.mit.edu/wiki/Piggy\\_Bank](http://simile.mit.edu/wiki/Piggy_Bank)

584 <http://scholar.google.com/intl/en/scholar/inclusion.html#indexing>

585 <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cloaking>

### 5.9.1.8 Turn OFF any generation of PDF cover pages

While DSpace offers a [PDF Citation Cover Page](#)<sup>586</sup> option, this option may affect your content's visibility in search engines like Google Scholar. Google Scholar (and possibly other search engines) specifically extracts metadata by analyzing the contents of the first page of a PDF. Dynamically inserting a custom cover page can break the metadata extraction techniques of Google Scholar and may result in all or much of your site being dropped from the Google Scholar search engine.

For more information, please see the "[Indexing Repositories: Pitfalls and Best Practices](#)<sup>587</sup>" talk from Anurag Acharya (co-creator of Google Scholar) presented at the [Open Repositories 2015 conference](#)<sup>588</sup>.

### 5.9.1.9 In general, OAI-PMH is not useful to Search Engines

Feel free to support OAI-PMH, but be aware that in general it is not useful for search engines:

- No reliable way to determine OAI-PMH base URL for a DSpace site.
- No standard or predictable way to get to item display page or full text from an OAI-PMH record, making effective indexing and presenting meaningful results difficult.
- In most cases provides only access to simple Dublin Core, a subset of available metadata.
- **NOTE:** Back in 2008, Google officially announced they were [retiring support for OAI-PMH based Sitemaps](#)<sup>589</sup>. So, OAI-PMH will no longer help you get better indexing through Google. Instead, you should be using the DSpace 'generate-sitemaps' feature described above.

T

## 5.9.2 Google Scholar Metadata Mappings

While DSpace 7.0 supports Google Scholar `meta` tags, they are no longer configurable & are currently hardcoded into the User Interface codebase. Configurability may be coming back in a later 7.x release (based on user feedback), see <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/issues/1198>

Google Scholar, in crawling sites, prefers [Highwire Press tags](#)<sup>590</sup>. This schema contains names which are all prefixed by the string "citation\_", and provide various metadata about the article/item being indexed.

In DSpace, there is a mapping facility to connect metadata fields with these citation fields in HTML. In order to enable this functionality, the switch needs to be flipped in `dspace.cfg`:

```
google-metadata.enable = true
```

Once the feature is enabled, the mapping is configured by a separate configuration file located here:

```
[dspace]/config/crosswalks/google-metadata.properties
```

<sup>586</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC5x/PDF+Citation+Cover+Page>

<sup>587</sup> <http://www.or2015.net/wp-content/uploads/2015/06/or-2015-anurag-google-scholar.pdf>

<sup>588</sup> <http://www.or2015.net>

<sup>589</sup> <http://googlewebmastercentral.blogspot.com/2008/04/retiring-support-for-oai-pmh-in.html>

<sup>590</sup> <http://scholar.google.com/intl/en/scholar/inclusion.html#indexing>

This file contains name/value pairs linking meta-tags with DSpace metadata fields. E.g...

```
google.citation_title = dc.title
google.citation_publisher = dc.publisher
google.citation_author = dc.author | dc.contributor.author | dc.creator
```

There is further documentation in this configuration file explaining proper syntax in specifying which metadata fields to use. If a value is omitted for a meta-tag field, the meta-tag is simply not included in the HTML output.

The values for each item are interpolated when the item is viewed, and the appropriate meta-tags are included in the HTML head tag, on both the Brief Item Display and the Full Item Display in the UI.

Note: In DSpace 5, the field `google.citation_authors` was changed to `google.citation_author`.

## 5.10 Troubleshooting Information

You can quickly get some basic information about the DSpace version and the products supporting it by using the `[dspace]/bin/dspace version` command.

```
$ bin/dspace version
DSpace version: 4.0-SNAPSHOT
SCM revision: da53991b6b7e9f86c2a7f5292e3c2e9606f9f44c
SCM branch: UNKNOWN
OS: Linux(amd64) version 3.7.10-gentoo
Discovery enabled.
Lucene search enabled.
JRE: Oracle Corporation version 1.7.0_21
Ant version: Apache Ant(TM) version 1.8.4 compiled on June 25 2012
Maven version: 3.0.4
DSpace home: /home/dspace
$
```

**To troubleshoot a specific error, see our [Troubleshoot an error](#)<sup>591</sup> guide**

## 5.11 Validating CheckSums of Bitstreams

- [Checksum Checker](#)(see page 655)
  - [Checker Execution Mode](#)(see page 656)
  - [Checker Results Pruning](#)(see page 658)
  - [Checker Reporting](#)(see page 658)
  - [Cron or Automatic Execution of Checksum Checker](#)(see page 658)
  - [Automated Checksum Checkers' Results](#)(see page 658)
  - [Database Query](#)(see page 659)

---

<sup>591</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Troubleshoot+an+error>

### 5.11.1 Checksum Checker

Checksum Checker is program that can run to verify the checksum of every item within DSpace. Checksum Checker was designed with the idea that most System Administrators will run it from the cron. Depending on the size of the repository choose the options wisely.

Command used:	<code>[dspace]/bin/dspace checker</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dspace.app.checker.ChecksumChecker</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms):	Description
<code>-L</code> or <code>--continuous</code>	Loop continuously through the bitstreams
<code>-a</code> or <code>--handle</code>	Specify a handle to check
<code>-b &lt;bitstream-ids&gt;</code>	Space separated list of bitstream IDs
<code>-c</code> or <code>--count</code>	Check count
<code>-d</code> or <code>--duration</code>	Checking duration
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Calls online help
<code>-l</code> or <code>--looping</code>	Loop once through bitstreams
<code>-p &lt;prune&gt;</code>	Prune old results (optionally using specified properties file for configuration)
<code>-v</code> or <code>--verbose</code>	Report all processing

There are three aspects of the Checksum Checker's operation that can be configured:

- the execution mode
  - the logging output
  - the policy for removing old checksum results from the database
- The user should refer to Chapter 5. Configuration for specific configuration keys in the *dspace.cfg* file.

### 5.11.1.1 Checker Execution Mode

Execution mode can be configured using command line options. Information on the options are found in the previous table above. The different modes are described below.

Unless a particular bitstream or handle is specified, the Checksum Checker will always check bitstreams in order of the least recently checked bitstream. (Note that this means that the most recently ingested bitstreams will be the last ones checked by the Checksum Checker.)

#### Available command line options

- **Limited-count mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -c` To check a specific number of bitstreams. The `-c` option if followed by an integer, the number of bitstreams to check. Example: `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -c 10` This is particularly useful for checking that the checker is executing properly. The Checksum Checker's default execution mode is to check a single bitstream, as if the option was `-c 1`
- **Duration mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -d` To run the Check for a specific period of time with a time argument. You may use any of the time arguments below: Example: `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -d 2h` (Checker will run for 2 hours)

s	Seconds
m	Minutes
h	Hours
d	Days
w	Weeks
y	Years

The checker will keep starting new bitstream checks for the specific durations, so actual execution duration will be slightly longer than the specified duration. Bear this in mind when scheduling checks.

- **Specific Bitstream mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -b` Checker will only look at the internal bitstream IDs. Example: `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -b 112 113 4567` Checker will only check bitstream IDs 112, 113 and 4567.
- **Specific Handle mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -a` Checker will only check bitstreams within the Community, Community or the item itself. Example: `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -a 123456/999` Checker will only check this handle. If it is a Collection or Community, it will run through the entire Collection or Community.
- **Looping mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -l` or `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -L` There are two modes. The lowercase 'e'l' (-l) specifies to check every bitstream in the repository once. This is recommended for smaller repositories who are able to loop through all their content in just a few hours maximum. An uppercase 'L' (-L) specifies to continuously loops through the repository. This is not



recommended for most repository systems. **Cron Jobs.** For large repositories that cannot be completely checked in a couple of hours, we recommend the `-d` option in cron.

- **Pruning mode:** `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -p` The Checksum Checker will store the result of every check in the `checksum_history` table. By default, successful checksum matches that are eight weeks old or older will be deleted when the `-p` option is used. (Unsuccessful ones will be retained indefinitely). Without this option, the retention settings are ignored and the database table may grow rather large!

### 5.11.1.2 Checker Results Pruning

As stated above in "Pruning mode", the `checksum_history` table can get rather large, and that running the checker with the `-p` assists in the size of the `checksum_history` being kept manageable. The amount of time for which results are retained in the `checksum_history` table can be modified by one of two methods:

1. Editing the retention policies in `[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg` See Chapter 5 Configuration for the property keys. OR
2. Pass in a properties file containing retention policies when using the `-p` option. To do this, create a file with the following two property keys:

```
checker.retention.default = 10y
checker.retention.CHECKSUM_MATCH = 8w
```

You can use the table above for your time units. At the command line: `[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -p retention_file_name <ENTER>`

### 5.11.1.3 Checker Reporting

Checksum Checker uses `log4j` to report its results. By default it will report to a log called `[dspace]/log/checker.log`, and it will report only on bitstreams for which the newly calculated checksum does not match the stored checksum. To report on all bitstreams checked regardless of outcome, use the `-v` (verbose) command line option:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace checker -l -v
```

(This will loop through the repository once and report in detail about every bitstream checked.)

To change the location of the log, or to modify the prefix used on each line of output, edit the `[dspace]/config/templates/log4j.properties` file and run `[dspace]/bin/install_configs`.

### 5.11.1.4 Cron or Automatic Execution of Checksum Checker

You should schedule the Checksum Checker to run automatically, based on how frequently you backup your DSpace instance (and how long you keep those backups). The size of your repository is also a factor. For very large repositories, you may need to schedule it to run for an hour (e.g. `-d 1h` option) each evening to ensure it makes it through your entire repository within a week or so. Smaller repositories can likely get by with just running it weekly.

**Unix, Linux, or MAC OS.** You can schedule it by adding a cron entry similar to the following to the crontab for the user who installed DSpace:

```
0 4 * * 0 [dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE checker -d2h -p
```

The above cron entry would schedule the checker to run the checker every Sunday at 400 (4:00 a.m.) for 2 hours. It also specifies to 'prune' the database based on the retention settings in *dSPACE.cfg*.

**Windows OS.** You will be unable to use the checker shell script. Instead, you should use Windows Schedule Tasks to schedule the following command to run at the appropriate times:

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE checker -d2h -p
```

(This command should appear on a single line).

### 5.11.1.5 Automated Checksum Checkers' Results

Optionally, you may choose to receive automated emails listing the Checksum Checkers' results to the email address specified in the `mail.admin` configuration property. Schedule it to run **after** the Checksum Checker has completed its processing (otherwise the email may not contain all the results). As of DSpace 4.1, an email is only generated if the selected report contains at least one bitstream needing attention.

Command used:	<code>[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE checker-emailer</code>
Java class:	<code>org.dSPACE.checker.DailyReportEmailer</code>
Arguments short and (long) forms):	Description
<code>-a</code> or <code>--All</code>	Send all the results (everything specified below)
<code>-d</code> or <code>--Deleted</code>	Send E-mail report for all bitstreams set as deleted for today.
<code>-m</code> or <code>--Missing</code>	Send E-mail report for all bitstreams not found in assetstore for today.
<code>-c</code> or <code>--Changed</code>	Send E-mail report for all bitstreams where checksum has been changed for today.
<code>-u</code> or <code>--Unchanged</code>	Send the Unchecked bitstream report.
<code>-n</code> or <code>--Not Processed</code>	Send E-mail report for all bitstreams set to longer be processed for today.
<code>-h</code> or <code>--help</code>	Help

You can also combine options (e.g. `-m -c`) for combined reports.

**Cron.** Follow the same steps above as you would running checker in cron. Change the time but match the regularity. Remember to schedule this **after** Checksum Checker has run. For an example cron setup, see [Scheduled Tasks via Cron](#) (see page 643).

### 5.11.1.6 Database Query

A query like the following can be used to check the results of the checker (Postgres):

```
SELECT *
FROM checksum_history
WHERE date_trunc('day', process_start_date) = CURRENT_DATE
AND result != 'CHECKSUM_MATCH'
AND result != 'BITSTREAM_MARKED_DELETED';
```

Example of a more detailed query:

```
SELECT
 ch.process_start_date,
 ch.process_end_date,
 ch.result,
 ch.checksum_expected,
 ch.checksum_calculated,
 b.bitstream_id,
 bfr.short_description,
 b.store_number,
 substring(b.internal_id for 2) || '/' || substring(b.internal_id from 3 for 2) ||
 '/' || substring(b.internal_id from 5 for 2) || '/' || b.internal_id AS
 bitstream_path,
 hi.handle AS item_handle,
 hc.handle AS collection_handle
FROM checksum_history ch
JOIN bitstream b
ON ch.bitstream_id = b.uuid
JOIN bitstreamformatregistry bfr
ON b.bitstream_format_id = bfr.bitstream_format_id
LEFT JOIN bundle2bitstream bb
ON b.uuid = bb.bitstream_id
LEFT JOIN item2bundle ib
ON bb.bundle_id = ib.bundle_id
LEFT JOIN item i
ON ib.item_id = i.uuid
LEFT JOIN handle hi
ON i.uuid = hi.resource_id
AND hi.resource_type_id = 2
LEFT JOIN handle hc
ON i.owning_collection = hc.resource_id
AND hc.resource_type_id = 3
WHERE ch.result != 'CHECKSUM_MATCH'
```

```
AND date_trunc('day', process_start_date) = CURRENT_DATE
ORDER BY ch.check_id DESC;
```

## 6 DSpace Development

This section contains information on how to modify, extend and customize the DSpace source code.

- [Advanced Customisation](#)(see page 662)
- [REST API](#)(see page 666)
- [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#)(see page 669)
- [Curation Tasks](#)(see page 703)
- [Development Tools Provided by DSpace](#)(see page 709)
- [Services to support Alternative Identifiers](#)(see page 709)
- [Batch Processing](#)(see page 714)
- [Workflow](#)(see page 715)

### 6.1 Advanced Customisation

If you are looking for ways to override specific classes or resources in DSpace (specifically in the backend), this page provides a guide for how to do so.

- [Additions module](#)(see page 662)
- [Server Webapp Overlay](#)(see page 662)
- [Rest \(Deprecated\) Webapp Overlay](#)(see page 663)

#### 6.1.1 Additions module

Location: `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/additions/`

This module may be used to store dspace-api changes, custom plugins, etc. Classes placed in `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/additions` will override those located in the `[dspace-source]/dspace-api`

This module may be used to override classes across *all* webapps located in `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/` directory, as well as in the command line interface. Therefore, this modules is for global overrides only. If you have overrides specific to a single webapp, use the "Maven WAR Overlays" option below.

#### 6.1.2 Server Webapp Overlay

Location: `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/`

This module overlay directory allows you to override any classes, resources or files available (by default) in the Server Webapp. This includes overriding files of any of the following source directories:

- `[dspace-source]/dspace-oai/` (Bundled into the Server Webapp as a JAR)
- `[dspace-source]/dspace-rdf/` (Bundled into the Server Webapp as a JAR)
- `[dspace-source]/dspace-server-webapp/` (The Server Webapp itself)
- `[dspace-source]/dspace-sword/` (Bundled into the Server Webapp as a JAR)
- `[dspace-source]/dspace-swordv2/` (Bundled into the Server Webapp as a JAR)

Java classes placed in `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/` will override classes (of the same path/name) in any of the above modules.

You can also override resources (i.e. any files under a `/src/main/resources/` directory) which are embedded in one of the JARs by putting them under `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/`. For example, to override the "`[dspace-source]/dspace-oai/src/main/resources/templates/index.twig.html`" file embedded in the `dspace-oai.jar`, you'd place your own version at `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/templates/index.twig.html`. This results in the resource/file being copied over into the `WEB-INF/classes/` subdirectory of the "server" webapp, and in that location it will override any file of the same name embedded in a JAR (per Servlet Spec 3.0).

### 6.1.3 Rest (Deprecated) Webapp Overlay

Location: `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/rest`

If you have chosen to install the deprecated REST API v6 webapp, you can similarly override any classes/files of that separate webapp by just placing those files in the `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/rest/` directory

### 6.1.4 DSpace Service Manager

- [Introduction](#) (see page 663)
- [Configuration](#) (see page 663)
  - [Configuring Addons to Support Spring Services](#) (see page 663)
  - [Configuration Priorities](#) (see page 664)
    - [Configuring a new Addon](#) (see page 664)
      - [Addon located as resource in jar](#) (see page 664)
      - [Addon located in the \[dspace\]/config/spring directory](#) (see page 664)
    - [The Core Spring Configuration](#) (see page 665)
    - [Utilizing Autowiring to minimize configuration complexity.](#) (see page 665)
  - [Accessing the Services Via Service Locator / Java Code](#) (see page 665)
- [Architectural Overview](#) (see page 665)
  - [Service Manager Startup in Webapplications and CLI](#) (see page 665)
- [Tutorials](#) (see page 665)

#### 6.1.4.1 Introduction

The DSpace Spring Service Manager supports overriding configuration at many levels.

#### 6.1.4.2 Configuration

##### Configuring Addons to Support Spring Services

Configuring Addons to support Spring happens at two levels. Default Spring configuration is available in the DSpace JAR or WAR resources directory and allows the addon developer to inject configuration into the service manager at

load time. The second level is in the deployed [dSPACE]/config/spring directory where configurations can be provided on an add-on module by add-on module basis.

This latter method requires the add-on to implement a `SpringLoader` to identify the location to look for Spring configuration and a place configuration files into that location. This can be seen inside the current [dSPACE-source]/config/modules/spring.cfg

### Configuration Priorities

The ordering of the loading of Spring configuration is the following:

1. `configPath = "spring/spring-dspace-applicationContext.xml"` relative to the current classpath
2. `addonResourcePath = "classpath*:spring/spring-dspace-addon-*-services.xml"` relative to the current classpath
3. `coreResourcePath = "classpath*:spring/spring-dspace-core-services.xml"` relative to the current classpath
4. Finally, an array of `SpringLoader` API implementations that are checked to verify "config/spring/module" can actually be loaded by its existence on the classpath. The configuration of these `SpringLoader` API classes can be found in `dSPACE.dir/config/modules/spring.cfg`.

### Configuring a new Addon

There are 2 ways to create a new Spring add-on: a new Spring file can be located in the resources directory or in the configuration [dSPACE]/config/spring directory. A Spring file can also be located in both of these locations but the configuration directory gets preference and will override any configurations located in the resources directory.

#### Addon located as resource in jar

In the resources directory of a certain module, a Spring file can be added if it matches the following pattern: "spring/spring-dspace-addon-\*-services.xml". An example of this can be found in the `dSPACE-discovery-solr` block in the DSpace trunk. ( `spring-dspace-addon-discovery-services.xml` )

Wherever this jar is loaded in a Maven module, the Spring files will be processed into services.

#### Addon located in the [dSPACE]/config/spring directory

This directory has the following subdirectories in which Spring files can be placed:

- `api`: when placed in this module the Spring files will always be processed into services (since all of the DSpace modules are dependent on the API).
- `discovery`: when placed in this module the Spring files will only be processed when the discovery library is present

The reason why there is a separate directory is that if a service cannot be loaded, the kernel will crash and DSpace will not start.

### Configuring an additional subdirectory for a custom module

So you need to indeed create a new directory in [dSPACE]/config/spring. Next you need to create a class that inherits from the "org.dSPACE.kernel.config.SpringLoader". This class only contains one method named `getResourcePaths()`. What we do now at the moment is implement this in the following manner:

```
@Override
public String[] getResourcePaths(ConfigurationService configurationService) {
 StringBuffer filePath = new StringBuffer();
 filePath.append(configurationService.getProperty("dSPACE.dir"));
 filePath.append(File.separator);
 filePath.append("config");
 filePath.append(File.separator);
}
```

```

filePath.append("spring");
filePath.append(File.separator);
filePath.append("{module.name}"); //Fill in the module name in this string
filePath.append(File.separator);
try {

 //By adding the XML_SUFFIX here it doesn't matter if there should be some
 kind of spring.xml.old file in there it will only load in the active ones.
 return new String[]{new
File(filePath.toString().toURI().toURL().toString() + XML_SUFFIX};
} catch (MalformedURLException e) {
 return new String[0];
}
}

```

After the class has been created you will also need to add it to the "spring.springloader.modules" property located in the [dspace]/config/modules/spring.cfg.

The Spring service manager will check this property to ensure that only the interface implementations which it can find the class for are loaded in.

By doing this way we give some flexibility to the developers so that they can always create their own Spring modules and then Spring will not crash when it can't find a certain class.

## The Core Spring Configuration

Utilizing Autowiring to minimize configuration complexity.

Please see the following tutorials:

- [DSpace Spring Services Tutorial](#)<sup>592</sup>
- [The TAO of DSpace Services](#)<sup>593</sup>

## Accessing the Services Via Service Locator / Java Code

Please see the following tutorials:

- [DSpace Spring Services Tutorial](#)<sup>594</sup>
- [The TAO of DSpace Services](#)<sup>595</sup>

### 6.1.4.3 Architectural Overview

Please see Architectural Overview here: [DSpace Services Framework](#)(see page 853)

## Service Manager Startup in Webapplications and CLI

Please see the [DSpace Services Framework](#)(see page 853)

<sup>592</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Spring+Services+Tutorial>

<sup>593</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/The+TAO+of+DSpace+Services>

<sup>594</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Spring+Services+Tutorial>

<sup>595</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/The+TAO+of+DSpace+Services>



#### 6.1.4.4 Tutorials

Several good Spring / DSpace Services Tutorials are already available:

- [DSpace Spring Services Tutorial](#)<sup>596</sup>
- [The TAO of DSpace Services](#)<sup>597</sup>

## 6.2 REST API

- [Overview](#)(see page 666)
- [REST Contract / Documentation](#)(see page 666)
- [REST Configuration](#)(see page 666)
  - [REST Spring Boot Configuration](#)(see page 668)
- [Technical Design](#)(see page 669)
- [DSpace 7 Demo REST-API HAL Browser](#)(see page 669)

### 6.2.1 Overview

The REST API for DSpace is provided as part of the "server" webapp ( `[dspace-source]/dspace-server-webapp/` ). It is available on the `/api/` subpath of that webapp (i.e. `${dspace.server.url}/api/` ), though a human browseable/searchable interface (using the [HAL Browser](#)<sup>598</sup>) is also available at the root path (i.e. `${dspace.server.url}` ).

The REST API only responds in JSON at this time.

### 6.2.2 REST Contract / Documentation

**The REST Contract is maintained in GitHub at** <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/README.md>

This contract provides detailed information on how to interact with the API, what endpoints are available, etc. All features/capabilities of the DSpace UI are available in this API.

### 6.2.3 REST Configuration

The following REST API configurations are provided in `[dspace]/config/rest.cfg` and may be overridden in your local.cfg

Property:	<code>rest.cors.allowed-origins</code>
Example Value:	<code>rest.cors.allowed-origins = \${dspace.ui.url}</code>

<sup>596</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Spring+Services+Tutorial>

<sup>597</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/The+TAO+of+DSpace+Services>

<sup>598</sup> <https://github.com/mikekelly/hal-browser>

<p>Informational Note:</p>	<p>Allowed Cross-Origin-Resource-Sharing (CORS) origins (in "Access-Control-Allow-Origin" header). Only these origins (client URLs) can successfully authenticate with your REST API. Defaults to <code>\${dspace.ui.url}</code> if unspecified (as the UI must have access to the REST API). If you customize that setting, MAKE SURE TO include <code>\${dspace.ui.url}</code> in that setting if you wish to continue trusting the UI.</p> <p>Multiple allowed origin URLs may be comma separated (or this configuration can be defined multiple times). Wildcard value (*) is NOT SUPPORTED.</p> <p>Keep in mind any URLs added to this setting must be <i>an exact match with the origin</i>: mode (http vs https), domain, port, and subpath(s) all must match.. So, for example, these URLs are all considered different origins: "http://myspace.edu", "http://myspace.edu:4000" (different port), "https://myspace.edu" (http vs https), "https://myapp.myspace.edu" (different domain), and "https://myspace.edu/myapp" (different subpath).</p> <p><i>NOTE:</i> If you modify this value to allow additional UIs to access your REST API, then you may also need to modify <code>proxies.trusted.ipranges</code> to trust the IP address of each UI. Modifying trusted proxies is only necessary if the <code>X-FORWARDED-FOR</code> header must be trusted from each additional UIs. (The DSpace UI currently requires the <code>X-FORWARDED-FOR</code> header to be trusted). By default, <code>proxies.trusted.ipranges</code> will only trust the IP address of the <code>\${dspace.ui.url}</code> configuration.</p> <p>(Requires reboot of servlet container, e.g. Tomcat, to reload)</p>
<p>Property:</p>	<pre>rest.cors.allow-credentials</pre>
<p>Example Value:</p>	<pre>rest.cors.allow-credentials = true</pre>
<p>Informational Note:</p>	<p>Whether or not to allow credentials (e.g. cookies) sent by the client/browser in CORS requests (in "Access-Control-Allow-Credentials" header).</p> <p>For DSpace, this MUST be set to "true" to support CSRF checks (which use Cookies) and external authentication via Shibboleth (and similar). Defaults to "true" if unspecified. (Requires reboot of servlet container, e.g. Tomcat, to reload)</p>
<p>Property:</p>	<pre>rest.projections.full.max</pre>
<p>Example Value:</p>	<pre>rest.projections.full.max = 2</pre>
<p>Informational Note:</p>	<p>This property determines the max embeddepth for a FullProjection. This is also used by the SpecificLevelProjection as a fallback in case the property is defined on the bean. Usually, this should be kept as-is for best performance.</p>

Property:	<code>rest.projection.specificLevel.maxEmbed</code>
Example Value:	<code>rest.projection.specificLevel.maxEmbed = 5</code>
Informational Note:	This property determines the max embed depth for a SpecificLevelProjection. Usually, this should be kept as-is for best performance.
Property:	<code>rest.properties.exposed</code>
Example Value:	<code>rest.properties.exposed = plugin.named.org.dspace.curate.CurationTask</code> <code>rest.properties.exposed = google.analytics.key</code>
Informational Note:	Define which configuration properties are exposed through the <code>http://&lt;dspace.server.url&gt;/api/config/properties/</code> REST API endpoint.  If a rest request is made for a property which exists, but isn't listed here, the server will respond that the property wasn't found. This property can be defined multiple times to allow access to multiple configuration properties.  Generally, speaking, it is ONLY recommended to expose configuration settings where they are necessary for the UI or client, as exposing too many configurations could be a security issue. This is why we only expose the two above settings by default.

### 6.2.3.1 REST Spring Boot Configuration

Because the REST API is a Spring Boot web application, you can also configure or override *any* Spring Boot settings in your local.cfg. DSpace's default Spring Boot configuration can be found in `[src]/dspace-server-webapp/src/main/resources/application.properties`. A few common settings from Spring Boot which you may wish to override in your local.cfg include:

Property:	<code>spring.servlet.multipart.max-file-size</code>
Example Value:	<code>spring.servlet.multipart.max-file-size = 512MB</code>
Informational Note:	Per <a href="#">Spring Boot docs</a> <sup>599</sup> , this setting specifies the maximum size of file that can be uploaded via Spring Boot (and therefore via the DSpace REST API). A value of "-1" removes any limit. DSpace sets this to 512MB by default.

<sup>599</sup> [https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#\\_tuning\\_file\\_upload\\_limits](https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#_tuning_file_upload_limits)

Property:	<code>spring.servlet.multipart.max-request-size</code>
Example Value:	<code>spring.servlet.multipart.max-request-size = 512MB</code>
Informational Note:	Per <a href="#">Spring Boot docs</a> <sup>600</sup> , this setting specifies the maximum size of a single request via Spring Boot (and therefore via the DSpace REST API). That means if multiple files are uploaded at once, this is the maximum total size of all files. A value of "-1" removes any limit. DSpace sets this to 512MB by default.

## 6.2.4 Technical Design

The REST API & Server Webapp are built on [Spring Boot](#)<sup>601</sup> and [Spring HATEOAS](#)<sup>602</sup>, using [Spring Security](#)<sup>603</sup>. It also aligns with [Spring Data REST](#)<sup>604</sup> (though at this time it doesn't use it directly because of incompatibility with the DSpace data model).

The REST API is stateless, aligns with [HATEOAS \(Hypertext as the Engine of Application State\)](#)<sup>605</sup> principles, returning [HAL formatted JSON](#)<sup>606</sup>. This allows the REST API to be easily browsable/interactable via third-party tools that understand HAL & HATEOAS, such as the [HAL Browser](#)<sup>607</sup>. [JSON Web Tokens \(JWT\)](#)<sup>608</sup> are used to store state/session information between requests.

For better security, the REST API requires usage of [CSRF tokens](#)<sup>609</sup> for all modifying requests.

More information can be found in the REST Contract at <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/README.md#rest-design-principles>

## 6.2.5 DSpace 7 Demo REST-API HAL Browser

- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/><sup>610</sup>
- <https://api7.dspace.org/server/#/server/api>

## 6.3 REST API v6 (deprecated)

- [What is DSpace REST API \(v4-v6\)](#)(see page 670)
  - [Installing the REST API \(v4-v6\)](#)(see page 670)
    - [Disabling SSL](#)(see page 670)
  - [REST Endpoints](#)(see page 670)
    - [Index / Authentication](#)(see page 672)

<sup>600</sup> [https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#\\_tuning\\_file\\_upload\\_limits](https://spring.io/guides/gs/uploading-files/#_tuning_file_upload_limits)

<sup>601</sup> <https://spring.io/projects/spring-boot>

<sup>602</sup> <https://spring.io/projects/spring-hateoas>

<sup>603</sup> <https://spring.io/projects/spring-security>

<sup>604</sup> <https://spring.io/projects/spring-data-rest>

<sup>605</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HATEOAS>

<sup>606</sup> [http://stateless.co/hal\\_specification.html](http://stateless.co/hal_specification.html)

<sup>607</sup> <https://github.com/mikekelly/hal-browser>

<sup>608</sup> <https://jwt.io/>

<sup>609</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/RestContract/blob/main/csrf-tokens.md>

<sup>610</sup> <https://api7.dspace.org/server/#/server/api>

- [Shibboleth Apache configuration for the REST API](#)(see page 676)
- [Communities](#)(see page 678)
- [Collections](#)(see page 678)
- [Items](#)(see page 679)
- [Bitstreams](#)(see page 679)
- [Handle](#)(see page 679)
- [Hierarchy](#)(see page 679)
- [Schema and Metadata Field Registry](#)(see page 679)
- [Report Tools](#)(see page 679)
- [Model - Object data types](#)(see page 679)
- [Introduction to Jersey for developers](#)(see page 681)
- [Configuration for DSpace REST](#)(see page 681)
- [Recording Proxy Access by Tools](#)(see page 681)
- [Additional Information](#)(see page 683)

#### **This documentation describes the old, deprecated REST API**

This documentation describes the deprecated DSpace v4-6 REST API. This old API is still available in DSpace 7, but will be removed in DSpace 8.

**We highly recommend all users migrate scripts/tools to use the new [REST API](#)**(see page 666). This API is no longer actively supported or maintained.

### 6.3.1 What is DSpace REST API (v4-v6)

The REST API module provides a programmatic interface to DSpace Communities, Collections, Items, and Bitstreams.

DSpace 4 introduced the initial REST API, which did not allow for authentication, and provided only READ-ONLY access to publicly accessible Communities, Collections, Items, and Bitstreams. DSpace 5 builds off of this and allows authentication to access restricted content, as well as allowing Create, Edit and Delete on the DSpace Objects. DSpace 5 REST API also provides improved pagination over resources and searching. There has been a minor drift between the DSpace 4 REST API and the DSpace 5 REST API, so client applications will need to be targeted per version.

#### 6.3.1.1 Installing the REST API (v4-v6)

The REST API deploys as a standard webapp for your servlet container / tomcat. For example, depending on how you deploy webapps, one way would be to alter tomcat-home/conf/server.xml and add:

```
<Context path="/rest" docBase="/dspace/webapps/rest" />
```

In DSpace 4, the initial/official Jersey-based REST API was added to DSpace. The DSpace 4 REST API provides READ-ONLY access to DSpace Objects.

In DSpace 5, the REST API adds authentication, allows Creation, Update, and Delete to objects, can access restricted materials if authorized, and it requires SSL.

## Disabling SSL

For localhost development purposes, SSL can add additional getting-started difficulty, so security can be disabled. To disable DSpace REST's requirement to require security/ssl, alter `[dspace]/webapps/rest/WEB-INF/web.xml` or `[dspace-source]/dspace-rest/src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/web.xml` and comment out the `<security-constraint>` block, and restart your servlet container. Production usages of the REST API should use SSL, as authentication credentials should not go over the internet unencrypted.

### 6.3.1.2 REST Endpoints

The REST API is modeled after the DSpace Objects of Communities, Collections, Items, and Bitstreams. The API is not a straight database schema dump of these entities, but provides some wrapping that makes it easy to follow relationships in the API output.

#### HTTP Header: Accept

Note: You must set your request header's "Accept" property to either JSON (`application/json`) or XML (`application/xml`) depending on the format you prefer to work with.

Example usage from command line in XML format with pretty printing:

```
curl -s -H "Accept: application/xml" http://localhost:8080/rest/communities | xmllint --format -
```

Example usage from command line in JSON format with pretty printing:

```
curl -s -H "Accept: application/json" http://localhost:8080/rest/communities | python -m json.tool
```

For this documentation, we will assume that the URL to the "REST" webapp will be <http://localhost:8080/rest/> for production systems, this address will be slightly different, such as: <https://demo.dspace.org/rest/>. The path to an endpoint, will go after the `/rest/`, such as `/rest/communities`, all-together this is: <http://localhost:8080/rest/communities>

Another thing to note is that there are Query Parameters that you can tack on to the end of an endpoint to do extra things. The most commonly used one in this API is `?expand`. Instead of every API call defaulting to giving you every possible piece of information about it, it only gives a most commonly used set by default and gives the more "expensive" information when you deliberately request it. Each endpoint will provide a list of available expands in the output, but for getting started, you can start with `?expand=all`, to make the endpoint provide all of its information (parent objects, metadata, child objects). You can include multiple expands, such as: `?expand=collections,subCommunities`.

Two other query parameters of note are `limit` and `offset`. Endpoints which return arrays of objects, such as `/communities`, are "paginated": the full list is broken into "pages" which start at `offset` from the beginning of the list and contain at most `limit` elements. By repeated queries you can retrieve any portion of the array or all of it. Offsets begin at zero. So, to retrieve the sixth through tenth elements of the full list of Collections, you could do this:

```
curl -s -H "Accept: application/json" http://localhost:8080/rest/collections?
offset=5&limit=5
```

## Index / Authentication

REST API Authentication has changed in DSpace 6.x. It now uses a `JSESSIONID` cookie (see below). The previous (5.x) authentication scheme using a `rest-dspace-token` is no longer supported.

Method	Endpoint	Description
GET	/	REST API static documentation page

Method	Endpoint	Description
POST	/login	<p>Login to the REST API using a DSpace EPerson (user). It returns a <code>JSESSIONID</code> cookie, that can be used for future authenticated requests.</p> <p><i>Example Request:</i></p> <pre># Can use either POST or GET (POST recommended). Must pass the parameters "email" and "password". curl -v -X POST --data "email=admin@dspace.org&amp;password=myspass" https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/login</pre> <p><i>Example Response:</i></p> <pre>HTTP/1.1 200 OK Set-Cookie: JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB1B8; Path=/rest/; Secure; HttpOnly</pre> <p><i>Example of using JSESSIONID cookie for subsequent (authenticated) requests:</i></p> <pre>curl -v --cookie "JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB1B8" https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/status # This should return &lt;authenticated&gt;true&lt;/authenticated&gt;, and information about the authenticated user session</pre> <p>Invalid email/password combinations will receive an <code>HTTP 401 Unauthorized</code> response.</p> <p><i>Please note, special characters need to be HTTP URL encoded.</i></p> <p><i>For example, an email address like <code>dspace demo+admin@gmail.com</code> (notice the + special character) would need to be encoded as <code>dspace demo%2Badmin@gmail.com</code>.</i></p>



Method	Endpoint	Description
GET	/shibboleth-login	<p>Login to the REST API using Shibboleth authentication. In order to work, this requires <a href="#">additional Apache configuration</a>(see page 0). To authenticate, execute the following steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Call the REST Shibboleth login point with a Cookie jar:</li></ol> <pre>curl -v -L -c cookiejar "https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/shibboleth-login"</pre> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>2. This should take you again to the IdP login page. You can submit this form using curl using the same cookie jar. However this is IdP dependant so we cannot provide an example here.</li><li>3. Once you submit the form using curl, you should be taken back to the /rest/shibboleth-login URL which will return you the JSESSIONID.</li><li>4. Using that JSESSIONID, check if you have authenticated successfully:</li></ol> <pre>curl -v "http://localhost:8080/dspace-rest/status" --cookie "JSESSIONID=0633C6379266A283E53F65DF8EF61AB9"</pre>

Method	Endpoint	Description
POST	/logout	<p>Logout from the REST API, by providing a <code>JSESSIONID</code> cookie. After being posted this cookie will no longer work.</p> <p><i>Example Request:</i></p> <pre>curl -v -X POST --cookie "JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB 1B8" https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/logout</pre> <p>After posting a logout request, cookie is invalidated and the "/status" path should show you as unauthenticated (even when passing that same cookie). For example:</p> <pre>curl -v --cookie "JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB 1B8" https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/status # This should show &lt;authenticated&gt;false&lt;/ authenticated&gt;</pre> <p>Invalid token will result in HTTP 400 Invalid Request</p>
GET	/test	<p>Returns string "REST api is running", for testing that the API is up.</p> <p><i>Example Request:</i></p> <pre>curl https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/test</pre> <p><i>Example Response:</i></p> <pre>REST api is running.</pre>

Method	Endpoint	Description
GET	/status	<p>Receive information about the currently authenticated user token, or the API itself (e.g. version information).</p> <p><i>Example Request (XML by default):</i></p> <pre>curl -v --cookie "JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB 1B8" https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/status</pre> <p><i>Example Request (JSON):</i></p> <pre>curl -v -H "Accept: application/json" -- cookie "JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB 1B8" https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/status</pre> <p><i>Example JSON Response:</i></p> <pre>{   "okay":true,   "authenticated":true,   "email":"admin@dspace.org",   "fullname":"DSpace Administrator",   "sourceVersion":"6.0",   "apiVersion":"6" }</pre>

### Shibboleth Apache configuration for the REST API

Before Shibboleth authentication for the REST API will work, you need to secure the `/rest/shibboleth-login` endpoint. Add this configuration section to your Apache HTTPD Shibboleth configuration:

```
<Location "/rest/shibboleth-login">
 AuthType shibboleth
 ShibRequireSession On
 # Please note that setting ShibUseHeaders to "On" is a potential security
 risk.
 # You may wish to set it to "Off". See the mod_shib docs for details about
 this setting:
 # https://wiki.shibboleth.net/confluence/display/SHIB2/
 NativeSPApacheConfig#NativeSPApacheConfig-AuthConfigOptions
 # Here's a good guide to configuring Apache + Tomcat when this setting is
 "Off":
```

```
https://www.switch.ch/de/aai/support/serviceproviders/sp-access-
rules.html#javaapplications
ShibUseHeaders On
require valid-user
</Location>
```

You can test your configuration in 3 different ways:

1. Using a web browser:
  - a. Go to `https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/shibboleth-login`, this should redirect you to the login page of your IdP if you don't have a Shibboleth session yet.
  - b. Enter your test credentials and this should take you back to the `/rest/shibboleth-login` URL. You should then see a blank page but in the response headers, the JSESSIONID cookie should be present.
  - c. Then go to `/rest/status` and you should see information on the current authenticated ePerson.
2. Using curl without a Shibboleth Session
  - a. Call the REST Shibboleth login point with a Cookie jar:

```
curl -v -L -c cookiejar "https://dspace.myu.edu/rest/shibboleth-login"
```

- b. This should take you again to the IdP login page. You can submit this form using curl using the same cookie jar. However this is IdP dependant so I cannot provide an example here.
- c. Once you submit the form using curl, you should be taken back to the `/rest/shibboleth-login` URL which will return you the JSESSIONID.
- d. Using that JSESSIONID, check if you have authenticated successfully:

```
curl -v "https://dspace.myu.edu/dspace-rest/status" --cookie
"JSESSIONID=0633C6379266A283E53F65DF8EF61AB9"
```

3. Using curl with a Shibboleth Session (cookie)
  - a. When you post the Shibboleth login form, the Shibboleth daemon on the **DSpace server** also returns you a Shibboleth Cookie. This cookie looks like `_shibsession_64656661756c7468747470733a2f2f7265706f7369746f72792e636172646966666d65742e61632e756b2f73686962626f6c657468=_a8d3ad20d8b655250c7357f7ac0e2910;`. You can also grab this cookie from your browser.
  - b. Double check that the cookie you took is valid:

```
curl -v 'https://dspace-url/Shibboleth.sso/Session' -H 'Cookie:
_shibsession_64656661756c7468747470733a2f2f7265706f7369746f72792e636172646966666d65742e61632e756b2f73686962626f6c657468=_a8d3ad20d8b655250c7357f7ac0e2910;'
```

- c. This should give you information if the Shibboleth session is valid and on the number of attributes.
- d. Use this cookie to obtain a Tomcat JSESSIONID:

```
curl -v 'https://dspace-url/rest/shibboleth-login' -H 'Cookie:
_shibsession_64656661756c7468747470733a2f2f7265706f7369746f72792e636172646
966666d65742e61632e756b2f73686962626f6c657468=_a8d3ad20d8b655250c7357f7ac0
e2910;'
```

- e. Use the returned JSESSIONID to check if you have authenticated successfully:

```
curl -v "http://dspace-url/rest/status" --cookie
"JSESSIONID=0633C6379266A283E53F65DF8EF61AB9"
```

## Communities

Communities in DSpace are used for organization and hierarchy, and are containers that hold sub-Communities and Collections. (ex: Department of Engineering)

- GET /communities - Returns array of all communities in DSpace.
- GET /communities/top-communities - Returns array of all top communities in DSpace.
- GET /communities/{communityId} - Returns community.
- GET /communities/{communityId}/collections - Returns array of collections of community.
- GET /communities/{communityId}/communities - Returns array of subcommunities of community.
- POST /communities - Create new community at top level. You must post community.
- POST /communities/{communityId}/collections - Create new collections in community. You must post Collection.
- POST /communities/{communityId}/communities - Create new subcommunity in community. You must post Community.
- PUT /communities/{communityId} - Update community. You must put Community
- DELETE /communities/{communityId} - Delete community.
- DELETE /communities/{communityId}/collections/{collectionId} - Delete collection in community.
- DELETE /communities/{communityId}/communities/{communityId2} - Delete subcommunity in community.

## Collections

Collections in DSpace are containers of Items. (ex: Engineering Faculty Publications)

- GET /collections - Return all collections of DSpace in array.
- GET /collections/{collectionId} - Return collection with id.
- GET /collections/{collectionId}/items - Return all items of collection.
- POST /collections/{collectionId}/items - Create posted item in collection. You must post an Item

```
curl -v -H "Content-Type: application/json"
--cookie "JSESSIONID=6B98CF8648BCE57DCD99689FE77CB1B8"
--data "{\"metadata\": [{\"key\": \"dc.title\", \"value\": \"Testing Item\"},
{\"key\": \"dc.contributor.author\", \"value\": \"Jane Smith\"}]}"
https://dspace-url/rest/[collection-uuid]/items
```

- POST /collections/find-collection - Find collection by passed name.
- PUT /collections/{collectionId} - Update collection. You must put Collection.
- DELETE /collections/{collectionId} - Delete collection from DSpace.
- DELETE /collections/{collectionId}/items/{itemId} - Delete item in collection.

## Items

Items in DSpace represent a "work" and combine metadata and files, known as Bitstreams.

- GET /items - Return list of items.
- GET /items/{item id} - Return item.
- GET /items/{item id}/metadata - Return item metadata.
- GET /items/{item id}/bitstreams - Return item bitstreams.
- POST /items/find-by-metadata-field - Find items by metadata entry. You must post a MetadataEntry.
- POST /items/{item id}/metadata - Add metadata to item. You must post an array of MetadataEntry.
- POST /items/{item id}/bitstreams - Add bitstream to item. You must post a Bitstream.
- PUT /items/{item id}/metadata - Update metadata in item. You must put a MetadataEntry.
- DELETE /items/{item id} - Delete item.
- DELETE /items/{item id}/metadata - Clear item metadata.
- DELETE /items/{item id}/bitstreams/{bitstream id} - Delete item bitstream.

## Bitstreams

Bitstreams are files. They have a filename, size (in bytes), and a file format. Typically in DSpace, the Bitstream will be the "full text" article, or some other media. Some files are the actual file that was uploaded (tagged with `bundleName:ORIGINAL`), others are DSpace-generated files that are derivatives or renditions, such as text-extraction, or thumbnails. You can download files/bitstreams. DSpace doesn't really limit the type of files that it takes in, so this could be PDF, JPG, audio, video, zip, or other. Also, the logo for a Collection or a Community, is also a Bitstream.

- GET /bitstreams - Return all bitstreams in DSpace.
- GET /bitstreams/{bitstream id} - Return bitstream.
- GET /bitstreams/{bitstream id}/policy - Return bitstream policies.
- GET /bitstreams/{bitstream id}/retrieve - Return data of bitstream.
- POST /bitstreams/{bitstream id}/policy - Add policy to item. You must post a ResourcePolicy
- PUT /bitstreams/{bitstream id}/data - Update data/file of bitstream. You must put the data
- PUT /bitstreams/{bitstream id} - Update metadata of bitstream. You must put a Bitstream, does not alter the file/data
- DELETE /bitstreams/{bitstream id} - Delete bitstream from DSpace.
- DELETE /bitstreams/{bitstream id}/policy/{policy\_id} - Delete bitstream policy.

You can access the parent object of a Bitstream (normally an Item, but possibly a Collection or Community when it is its logo) through: `/bitstreams/:bitstreamID?expand=parent`

As the documentation may state "You must post a ResourcePolicy" or some other object type, this means that there is a structure of data types, that your XML or JSON must be of type, when it is posted in the body.

## Handle

In DSpace, Communities, Collections, and Items typically get minted a Handle Identifier. You can reference these objects in the REST API by their handle, as opposed to having to use the internal item-ID.

- GET /handle/{handle-prefix}/{handle-suffix} - Returns a Community, Collection, or Item object that matches that handle.

## Hierarchy

Assembling a full representation of the community and collection hierarchy using the communities and collections endpoints can be inefficient. Retrieve a lightweight representation of the nested community and collection hierarchy. Each node of the hierarchy contains minimal information (id, handle, name).

- GET /hierarchy - Retrieve a lightweight representation of the nested community and collection hierarchy.

#### Schema and Metadata Field Registry

- GET /registries/schema - Return the list of schemas in the registry
- GET /registries/schema/{schema\_prefix} - Returns the specified schema
- GET /registries/schema/{schema\_prefix}/metadata-fields/{element} - Returns the metadata field within a schema with an unqualified element name
- GET /registries/schema/{schema\_prefix}/metadata-fields/{element}/{qualifier} - Returns the metadata field within a schema with a qualified element name
- POST /registries/schema/ - Add a schema to the schema registry
- POST /registries/schema/{schema\_prefix}/metadata-fields - Add a metadata field to the specified schema
- GET /registries/metadata-fields/{field\_id} - Return the specified metadata field
- PUT /registries/metadata-fields/{field\_id} - Update the specified metadata field
- DELETE /registries/metadata-fields/{field\_id} - Delete the specified metadata field from the metadata field registry
- DELETE /registries/schema/{schema\_id} - Delete the specified schema from the schema registry

Note: since the schema object contains no data fields, the following method has not been implemented: PUT /registries/schema/{schema\_id}

#### Report Tools

Reporting Tools that allow a repository manager to audit a collection for metadata consistency and bitstream consistency. See [REST Based Quality Control Reports](#)(see page 683) for more information.

[Collection Report Tool on demo.dspace.org](#)<sup>611</sup>

[Metadata Query Tool on demo.dspace.org](#)<sup>612</sup>

- GET /reports - Return a list of report tools built on the rest api
- GET /reports/{nickname} - Return a redirect to a specific report
- GET /filters - Return a list of use case filters available for quality control reporting
- GET /filtered-collections - Return collections and item counts based on pre-defined filters
- GET /filtered-collections/{collection\_id} - Return items and item counts for a collection based on pre-defined filters
- GET /filtered-items - Retrieve a set of items based on a metadata query and a set of filters

#### 6.3.1.3 Model - Object data types

Here are all of the data types, not all fields are necessary or supported when posting/putting content, but the output contains this information:

---

<sup>611</sup> <https://demo.dspace.org/rest/static/reports/index.html>

<sup>612</sup> <https://demo.dspace.org/rest/static/reports/query.html>

## Community Object

```
{
 "id":456,"name":"Reports Community","handle":"10766/10213","type":"community","link":"/rest/communities/456","expand":
 [
 "parentCommunity","collections","subCommunities","logo","all"],"logo":null,"parentCommunity":null,"copyrightText":"","introductoryText":"","shortDescription":"Collection contains materials pertaining to the Able Family","sidebarText":"","countItems":3,"subcommunities":[],"collections":[]}
}
```

## Collection Object

```
{
 "id":730,"name":"Annual Reports Collection","handle":"10766/10214","type":"collection","link":"/rest/collections/730","expand":
 [
 "parentCommunityList","parentCommunity","items","license","logo","all"],"logo":null,"parentCommunity":null,"parentCommunityList":[],"items":
 [],"license":null,"copyrightText":"","introductoryText":"","shortDescription":"","sidebarText":"","numberItems":3}
}
```

## Item Object

```
{
 "id":14301,"name":"2015 Annual Report","handle":"123456789/13470","type":"item","link":"/rest/items/14301","expand":
 [
 "metadata","parentCollection","parentCollectionList","parentCommunityList","bitstreams","all"],"lastModified":"2015-01-12
 15:44:12.978","parentCollection":null,"parentCollectionList":null,"parentCommunityList":null,"bitstreams":null,"archived":"true","withdrawn":"false"}
}
```

## Bitstream Object

```
{
 "id":47166,"name":"appearance and physiology 100 percent copied from wikipedia.pdf","handle":null,"type":"bitstream","link":"/rest/bitstreams/47166","expand":
 [
 "parent","policies","all"],"bundleName":"ORIGINAL","description":"","format":"Adobe PDF","mimeType":"application/pdf","sizeBytes":129112,"parentObject":null,"retrieveLink":"/bitstreams/47166/retrieve","checksum":
 {"value":"62778292a3a6dccb2662a2bfca3b86e","checksumAlgorithm":"MD5"},"sequenceId":1,"policies":null}
}
```

## ResourcePolicy Object

```
[
 {
 "id":317127,"action":"READ","epersonId":-1,"groupId":0,"resourceId":47166,"resourceType":"bitstream","rpDescription":null,"rpName":null,"rpType":"TYPE_INHERITED","startDate":null,"endDate":null}
]
}
```

## MetadataEntry Object

```
{
 "key":"dc.description.abstract","value":"This is the description abstract","language": null}
}
```

## User Object

```
{
 "email":"test@dspace.org","password":"pass"}
}
```

## Status Object

```
{
 "okay":true,"authenticated":true,"email":"test@dspace.org","fullName":"DSpace Test User","token":"6d45daaa-7b02-4ae7-86de-a960838fae5c"}
}
```



## 6.3.2 Introduction to Jersey for developers

The REST API for DSpace is implemented using Jersey, the reference implementation of the Java standard for building RESTful Web Services (JAX-RS 1). That means this API should be easier to expand and maintain than other API approaches, as this approach has been widely adopted in the industry. If this client documentation does not fully answer about how an endpoint works, it is helpful to look directly at the [Java REST API code](#)<sup>613</sup>, to see how it is implemented. The code typically has required parameters, optional parameters, and indicates the type of data that will be responded.

There was no central `ProviderRegistry` that you have to declare your path. Instead, the code is driven by annotations, here is a list of annotations used in the code for `CommunitiesResource.java`:

- `@Path("/communities")`, which then allows it to be routed to <http://localhost:8080/communities>, this is then the base path for all the requests within this class.
- `@GET`, which indicates that this method responds to GET http requests
- `@POST`, which indicates that this method responds to POST http requests
- `@PUT`, which indicates that this method responds to PUT http requests
- `@DELETE`, which indicates that this method responds to DELETE http requests
- `@Path("/{community_id}")`, the path is appended to the class level `@Path` above, this one uses a variable `{community_id}`. The total endpoint would be <http://localhost:8080/rest/communities/123>, where 123 is the ID.
- `@Consumes({ MediaType.APPLICATION_JSON, MediaType.APPLICATION_XML })`, this indicates that this request expects input of either JSON or XML. Another endpoint accepts HTML input.
- `@PathParam("community_id") Integer communityId`, this maps the path placeholder variable `{community_id}` to Java `int communityID`
- `@QueryParam("userIP") String user_ip`, this maps a query param like `?userIP=8.8.4.4` to Java `String user_id` variable, and `user_id == "8.8.4.4"`

## 6.3.3 Configuration for DSpace REST

Property	<code>rest.stats</code>
Example Value	true
Informational Note	Boolean value indicates whether statistics should be recorded for access via the REST API; Defaults to 'false'.

## 6.3.4 Recording Proxy Access by Tools

For the purpose of more accurate statistics, a web-based tool may specify who is using it, by adding parameters to the request:

<sup>613</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/master/dspace-rest/src/main/java/org/dspace/rest>

```
http://localhost:8080/rest/items/:ID?
userIP=ip&userAgent=userAgent&xforwardedfor=xforwardedfor
```

If no parameters are given, the details of the HTTP request's sender are used in statistics. This enables tools to record the details of their user rather than themselves.

### 6.3.5 Additional Information

Additional information can be found in the [README for dspace-rest](#)<sup>614</sup>, and in the GitHub [Pull Request for DSpace REST \(Jersey\)](#)<sup>615</sup>.

Usage examples can be found at: <https://github.com/BrunoNZ/dspace-rest-requests>

### 6.3.6 REST Based Quality Control Reports

- [Tutorial](#)(see page 683)
- [Summary](#)(see page 684)
- [API Calls Used in these Reports](#)(see page 684)
- [Report Screen Shots](#)(see page 684)
  - [Collection QC Report](#)(see page 684)
  - [Metadata Query Report](#)(see page 684)
- [Installation and Configuration](#)(see page 684)
  - [Installing in DSpace 6](#)(see page 684)
  - [Disabling the REST Reports](#)(see page 684)
  - [Configuring Access of the Reporting Tools](#)(see page 684)
  - [Configure the REST Reports that can be requested by name](#)(see page 686)
  - [Configure Item handle resolution](#)(see page 686)
  - [Enable User Authentication \(Password AuthN only\) for REST reports](#)(see page 686)
  - [Configure the database-specific format for a regex expression](#)(see page 687)
  - [Configure the sets of filters of interest to your repository managers](#)(see page 687)
  - [Other filter configuration settings](#)(see page 687)
  - [Enabling Sort-able Report Tables](#)(see page 688)
  - [Installing in DSpace 5](#)(see page 688)

#### **DSpace 7.0 only supports this when using the older, deprecated REST API v6**

In DSpace 7.0, REST Quality Control Reports are currently only supported if you also install the old [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#)(see page 669) webapp. Tentative plans to migrate these reports to support the new [REST API](#)(see page 666) have begun in <https://jira.lyrasis.org/browse/DS-4301>.

#### 6.3.6.1 Tutorial

##### **DSpace REST Report Tool Tutorial**

<sup>614</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/tree/master/dspace-rest>

<sup>615</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/323>

The following repository contains a tutorial demonstrating the usage of the REST Base Report Tools:  
<https://github.com/terrywbrady/restReportTutorial/blob/master/README.md>

### 6.3.6.2 Summary

These reports utilize the DSpace REST API to provide a Collection Manager with

- an overview of their collections
- a tool to query metadata for consistency

When deploying the DSpace REST API, an institution may choose to make the API publicly accessible or to restrict access to the API.

If these reports are deployed in a protected manner, the reporting tools can be configured to bypass DSpace authorization when reporting on collections and items.

### 6.3.6.3 API Calls Used in these Reports

[REST Reports - Summary of API Calls](#)(see page 701)

### 6.3.6.4 Report Screen Shots

Collection QC Report

[Query Tool](#)

#### DSpace REST QC Client

Filters

Collection Report

URL to current search

Num	Community	Collection	Num Items	Matches all specified filters
			964	964
1	aaa	aaa	<a href="#">9</a>	<a href="#">9</a>
2	Bioethics Research Library	Acadia Institute Bioethics Interview Collection	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
3	Student Scholarship	African Studies Program Honors Theses	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
4	University Archives	AJCU Photographs Collection	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
5	Angelica: Art and Culture	Angelica (Digital Images Only)	<a href="#">50</a>	<a href="#">50</a>
6	Rare Books	Annotated Magna Cartas	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
7	Bioethics Research Library	Archival Collection Finding Aids	<a href="#">1</a>	<a href="#">1</a>
8	University Archives	Audio Archives	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
9	Bioethics Research Library	Bioethical Issues: Scope Notes Archive	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
10	Bioethics Research Library	BioethicsLine	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
11	Bioethics Research Library	Bioethics Newsletters Digital Archive	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
12	Bioethics Research Library	Bioethics Syllabus Exchange Repository	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
13	Student Scholarship	Carroll Round Proceedings	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
14	Graduate Theses and Dissertations	Center for Contemporary Arab Studies	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
15	Graduate Theses and Dissertations	Center for Eurasian, Russian and East European Studies	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">2</a>

[REST Reports - Collection Report Screenshots with Annotated API Calls](#)(see page 689)

## Metadata Query Report

[Collection Filter](#)

### DSpace REST Query Client

› Collection Selector

› Metadata Field Queries

Pre-defined Queries New Query ▼

Any Field ▼ exists ▼   +

Run Item Query

› Limit/Paginate Queries

› Filters

› Additional data to return

› Item Results

[REST Reports - Metadata Query Screenshots with Annotated API Calls](#)(see page 696)

### 6.3.6.5 Installation and Configuration

#### Installing in DSpace 6

This code is part of the DSpace 6 code base.

#### Disabling the REST Reports

The REST reports will be enabled by default in DSpace 6. To disable the execution of these reports, remove the following line from `dspace-rest/src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/web.xml`

#### Enable/disable report resources in the REST API

```
<servlet-mapping>
 <servlet-name>default</servlet-name>
 <url-pattern>/static/*</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping>
```

#### Configuring Access of the Reporting Tools

The reports can be configured with anonymous access or the reports can be configured to bypass authorization checks.

Bypassing authorization checks allows collection owners to view the status of all items in the repository without authenticating through the REST API. This option is recommended **if you have secured access to your REST API**.

If your REST API is publicly accessible, deploy the reports with anonymous access and consider providing an authorization token for access to the report calls.

### Configure Authorization for REST Reports

```
Enable/disable authorization for the reporting tools.
By default, the DSpace REST API will only return communities/collections/items that
are accessible to a particular user.
If the REST API has been deployed in a protected manner, the reporting tools can be
configured to bypass authorization checks.
This will allow all items/collections/communities to be returned to the report
user.
Set the rest-reporting-authenticate option to false to bypass authorization
rest.reporting-authenticate = false
```

Configure the REST Reports that can be requested by name

```
Configure the report pages that can be requested by name
Create a map of named reports that are available to a report tool user
Each map entry should be prefixed with rest-report-url
The map key is a name for a report
The map value is a URL to a report page
A list of available reports will be available with the call /rest/reports.
If a request is sent to /rest/reports/[report key], the request will be re-directed
to the specified URL
#
This project currently contains 2 sample reports. Eventually, additional reports
could be introduced through this mechanism.
rest.report-url.collections = /rest/static/index.html
rest.report-url.item-query = /rest/static/query.html
```

Configure Item handle resolution

Enable the appropriate path to use to resolve an item handle **restReport.js**. (Depends on <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/1366/files>)

### Item Handle Resolution

```
this.ROOTPATH = "/handle/"
```

Enable User Authentication (Password AuthN only) for REST reports

Override the following function in your report file to enable/disable password AuthN for the REST reports. (Depends on <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/1369>)

This setting can be found in **restReport.js**

**Enable/Disable Password AuthN**

```
//disable this setting if Password Authentication is not supported
this.makeAuthLink = function(){return true;};
```

Configure the database-specific format for a regex expression

```
The REST Report Tools may pass a regular expression test to the database.
The following configuration setting will construct a SQL regular expression test
appropriate to your database engine
rest.regex-clause = text_value ~ ?
```

Configure the sets of filters of interest to your repository managers

```
A filter contains a set of tests that will be applied to an item to determine its
inclusion in a particular report.
Private items and withdrawn items are frequently excluded from DSpace reports.
Additional filters can be configured to examine other item properties.
For instance, items containing an image bitstream often have different requirements
from a item containing a PDF.
The DSpace REST reports come with a variety of filters that examine item
properties, item bitstream properties,
and item authorization policies. The existing filters can be used as an example to
construct institution specific filters
that will test conformity to a set of institutional policies.
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.rest.filter points to a list of classes that contain
available filters.
Each class must implement the ItemFilterList interface.
ItemFilterDefs: Filters that examine simple item and bitstream type
properties
ItemFilterDefsMisc: Filters that examine bitstream mime types and dependencies
between bitstreams
ItemFilterDefsMeta: Filters that examine metadata properties
ItemFilterDefsPerm: Filters that examine item and bitstream authorization
policies
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.rest.filter.ItemFilterList = \
 org.dspace.rest.filter.ItemFilterDefs,\
 org.dspace.rest.filter.ItemFilterDefsMisc,\
 org.dspace.rest.filter.ItemFilterDefsPerm

org.dspace.rest.filter.ItemFilterDefsMeta,\
```

Other filter configuration settings

The configuration file contains other settings that will control the behavior of the filters that you have enabled.

### Enabling Sort-able Report Tables

1. Install sortable.js <http://www.kryogenix.org/code/browser/sortable/>
2. Add to /dspace/modules/rest/src/main/webapp/static/reports
3. Include sortable.js in index.html and query.html

#### Uncomment the following in index.html and query.html

```
<!-- <script src="sortable.js"></script> -->
```

4. Enable sortable in the report code in restCollReport.js and restQueryReport.js

#### CHANGE

```
var CollReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 //If sortable.js is included, uncomment the following
 //this.hasSortable = function(){return true;}

var QueryReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 //If sortable.js is included, uncomment the following
 //this.hasSortable = function(){return true;}
```

#### CHANGE TO

```
var CollReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 //If sortable.js is included, uncomment the following
 this.hasSortable = function(){return true;}

var QueryReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 //If sortable.js is included, uncomment the following
 this.hasSortable = function(){return true;}
```

### Installing in DSpace 5

This feature is not a part of the DSpace 5 code base. Please see the following notes to enable a DSpace 5 compatible version of these reports.

1. Install <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/pull/1568>
2. Change the following code into restCollReport.js and restQuery.js to pull the correct id for each DSpace Object

**Change the following in restCollReport.js and restQuery.js**

```
var CollReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 var QueryReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
```

**Change TO**

```
var CollReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 this.getId = function(obj) {return obj.id;}
 var QueryReport = function() {
 Report.call(this);
 this.getId = function(obj) {return obj.id;}
```

## 6.3.6.6 REST Reports - Collection Report Screenshots with Annotated API Calls

**DSpace 7.0 only supports this when using the older, deprecated REST API v6**

In DSpace 7.0, REST Quality Control Reports are currently only supported if you also install the old [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#)(see page 669) webapp. Tentative plans to migrate these reports to support the new [REST API](#)(see page 666) have begun in <https://jira.lyrasis.org/browse/DS-4301>.

## Initial Report Display

**API Call**

/rest/filtered-collections?limit=25&expand=topCommunity&offset=0

Query Tool

**DSpace REST QC Client**

Filters

Show Collections

General

None  All

Item Property Filters

Is Item - always true  Withdrawn Items

Available Items - Not Withdrawn  Discoverable Items - Not Private

Not Discoverable - Private Item  Matches all specified filters

Basic Bitstream Filters

Item has Multiple Original Bitstreams  Item has No Original Bitstreams

Item has One Original Bitstream

Bitstream Filters by MIME Type

Item has a Doc Original Bitstream (PDF, Office, Text, HTML, XML, etc)  Item has an Image Original Bitstream

Item has multiple types of Original Bitstreams (Doc, Image, Other)  Item has a PDF Original Bitstream

Item has unusually small PDF  Item has JPG Original Bitstream

Has document bitstream without TEXT Item  Has unusually large PDF

Supported MIME Type Filters

Item Image Bitstreams are Supported  Item has Image Bitstream that is Unsupported

Item Document Bitstreams are Supported  Item has Document Bitstream that is Unsupported

Bitstream Bundle Filters

Has bitstream in an unsupported bundle  Has unusually small thumbnail

Has original bitstream without  Has invalid thumbnail name (assumes



Select Filters of Interest

**API Call**

/rest/filters

[Query Tool](#)

**DSpace REST QC Client**

Filters

Collection Report

URL to current search

			Num Items	Item has Multiple Original Bitstreams	Item has One Original Bitstream	Matches all specified filters
Num	Community	Collection	964	163	624	0
1	aaa	aaa	9	0	9	0
2	Bioethics Research Library	Acadia Institute Bioethics Interview Collection	2	0	2	0
3	Student Scholarship	African Studies Program Honors Theses	2	0	2	0
4	University Archives	AJCU Photographs Collection	2	0	2	0
5	Angelica: Art and Culture	Angelica (Digital Images Only)	50	0	14	0
6	Rare Books	Annotated Magna Cartas	2	0	2	0
7	Bioethics Research Library	Archival Collection Finding Aids	1	0	1	0
8	University Archives	Audio Archives	2	0	0	0
9	Bioethics Research Library	Bioethical Issues: Scope Notes Archive	2	1	1	0
10	Bioethics Research Library	BioethicsLine	2	0	0	0
11	Bioethics Research Library	Bioethics Newsletters Digital Archive	2	0	2	0
12	Bioethics Research Library	Bioethics Syllabus Exchange Repository	2	0	2	0
13	Student Scholarship	Carroll Round Proceedings	2	0	2	0

View Filtered Counts

**API Call**

/rest/filtered-collections/{collection\_id}?limit=500&filters=has\_multiple\_originals.has\_one\_original

[Query Tool](#)**DSpace REST QC Client**

› Filters

▼ Collection Report

URL to current search

Num	Community	Collection	Num Items	Item has Multiple Original Bitstreams	Item has One Original Bitstream	Matches all specified filters
			964	163	624	0
1	<a href="#">aaa</a>	<a href="#">aaa</a>	<a href="#">9</a>	0	<a href="#">9</a>	0
2	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Acadia Institute Bioethics Interview Collection</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
3	<a href="#">Student Scholarship</a>	<a href="#">African Studies Program Honors Theses</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
4	<a href="#">University Archives</a>	<a href="#">AJCU Photographs Collection</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
5	<a href="#">Angelica: Art and Culture</a>	<a href="#">Angelica (Digital Images Only)</a>	<a href="#">50</a>	0	<a href="#">14</a>	0
6	<a href="#">Rare Books</a>	<a href="#">Annotated Magna Cartas</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
7	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Archival Collection Finding Aids</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	0	<a href="#">1</a>	0
8	<a href="#">University Archives</a>	<a href="#">Audio Archives</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	0	0
9	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Bioethical Issues: Scope Notes Archive</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	0
10	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">BioethicsLine</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	0	0
11	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Bioethics Newsletters Digital Archive</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
12	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Bioethics Syllabus Exchange Repository</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
13	<a href="#">Student Scholarship</a>	<a href="#">Carroll Round Proceedings</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0

## View Items of Interest

[Query Tool](#)

## DSpace REST QC Client

Filters

Collection Report

URL to current search

Num	Community	Collection	Num Items	Item has Multiple Original Bitstreams	Item has One Original Bitstream	Matches all specified filters
			964	163	624	0
1	<a href="#">aaa</a>	<a href="#">aaa</a>	<a href="#">9</a>	0	<a href="#">9</a>	0
2	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Acadia Institute Bioethics Interview Collection</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
3	<a href="#">Student Scholarship</a>	<a href="#">African Studies Program Honors Theses</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
4	<a href="#">University Archives</a>	<a href="#">AJCU Photographs Collection</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
5	<a href="#">Angelica: Art and Culture</a>	<a href="#">Angelica (Digital Images Only)</a>	<a href="#">50</a>	0	<a href="#">14</a>	0
6	<a href="#">Rare Books</a>	<a href="#">Annotated Magna Cartas</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
7	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Archival Collection Finding Aids</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	0	<a href="#">1</a>	0
8	<a href="#">University Archives</a>	<a href="#">Audio Archives</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	0	0
9	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Bioethical Issues: Scope Notes Archive</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	<a href="#">1</a>	0
10	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">BioethicsLine</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	0	0
11	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Bioethics Newsletters Digital Archive</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
12	<a href="#">Bioethics Research Library</a>	<a href="#">Bioethics Syllabus Exchange Repository</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0
13	<a href="#">Student Scholarship</a>	<a href="#">Carroll Round Proceedings</a>	<a href="#">2</a>	0	<a href="#">2</a>	0

**API Call**

```
/rest/filtered-collections/{collection_id}?expand=items&limit=100&filters=has_one_original&offset=0
```

[Query Tool](#)

## DSpace REST QC Client

› Filters

› Collection Report

▼ Item Results

› Additional data to return

▼ Results

**has\_one\_original Items in Angelica (Digital Images Only) (1 - 14)**

URL to current search

Export for Metadata Update

Num	id	Handle	dc.title
1	02e0bfa6-cbdd-4c64-8175-a463f198a99b	<a href="#">10822/683546</a>	Soviet Pavilion, International Exposition of Decorative Arts, Paris
2	043e92c9-fb4d-4662-97c2-2fe31d4d8def	<a href="#">10822/683536</a>	Eight Red Rectangles
3	47f5d9d1-effd-4d62-9681-15577edc93df	<a href="#">10822/683527</a>	Apartment Block, Boulogne-Billancourt, Paris General View
4	58b5f290-3433-45c4-9ff2-dbc4f2f8cff	<a href="#">10822/562857</a>	Meeting of Abraham and Melchizedek

Select additional fields to display

### API Call

`/rest/registries/schema`

[Query Tool](#)

## DSpace REST QC Client

▸ Filters

▸ Collection Report

▾ Item Results

▾ Additional data to return

Refresh Items

- dc.creator
- dc.date
- dc.date.accessioned
- dc.date.available
- dc.date.copyright
- dc.date.created
- dc.date.issued
- dc.date.submitted
- dc.identifier

▸ Results

### View Updated Results

#### API Call

```
/rest/filtered-collections/{collection_id}?
expand=items,metadata&limit=100&filters=has_one_original&offset=0&show_fields[]=dc.date.created&sh
ow_fields[]=dc.date.issued
```

[Query Tool](#)

## DSpace REST QC Client

› Filters

› Collection Report

▼ Item Results

› Additional data to return

▼ Results

**has\_one\_original Items in Angelica (Digital Images Only) (1 - 14)**

[URL to current search](#)

[Export for Metadata Update](#)

Num	id	Handle	dc.title	dc.date.created	dc.date.issued
1	02e0bfa6-cbdd-4c64-8175-a463f198a99b	<a href="#">10822/683546</a>	Soviet Pavilion, International Exposition of Decorative Arts, Paris	1925	2013-11-15
2	043e92c9-fb4d-4662-97c2-2fe31d4d8def	<a href="#">10822/683536</a>	Eight Red Rectangles	No Date	2013-11-15
3	47f5d9d1-effd-4d62-9681-15577edc93df	<a href="#">10822/683527</a>	Apartment Block, Boulogne-Billancourt, Paris General View	1934	2013-11-15
4	58b5f290-3433-45c4-9ff2-dbc4f2f8cff	<a href="#">10822/562857</a>	Meeting of Abraham and Melchizedek	No Date	2013-11-15

Download CSV File for Metadata Update

[Query Tool](#)

**DSpace REST QC Client**

Filters

Collection Report


Item Results

Additional data to return

Results

**has\_one\_original Items in Angelica (Digital Images Only) (1 - 14)**

URL to current search

Export for Metadata Update 

Num	id	Handle	dc.title	dc.date.created	dc.date.issued
1	02e0bfa6-cbdd-4c64-8175-a463f198a99b	<a href="#">10822/683546</a>	Soviet Pavilion, International Exposition of Decorative Arts, Paris	1925	2013-11-15
2	043e92c9-fb4d-4662-97c2-2fe31d4d8def	<a href="#">10822/683536</a>	Eight Red Rectangles	No Date	2013-11-15
3	47f5d9d1-effd-4d62-9681-15577edc93df	<a href="#">10822/683527</a>	Apartment Block, Boulogne-Billancourt, Paris General View	1934	2013-11-15
4	58b5f290-3433-45c4-9ff2-dbc4f2f8cff	<a href="#">10822/562857</a>	Meeting of Abraham and Melchizedek	No Date	2013-11-15

CSV File ready compatible with DSpace Metadata Update

```
"id","dc.title","dc.date.created","dc.date.issued"
"02e0bfa6-cbdd-4c64-8175-a463f198a99b","Soviet Pavilion, International Exposition of Decorative Arts, Paris","1925","2013-11-15"
"043e92c9-fb4d-4662-97c2-2fe31d4d8def","Eight Red Rectangles","No Date","2013-11-15"
"47f5d9d1-effd-4d62-9681-15577edc93df","Apartment Block, Boulogne-Billancourt, Paris General View","1934","2013-11-15"
"58b5f290-3433-45c4-9ff2-dbc4f2f8cff","Meeting of Abraham and Melchizedek","No Date","2013-11-15"
"600a441e-fcd8-477b-b2a0-1b11eca97d35","Art Institute of Chicago Detail: Wing Detail: Wall MODEL","2005","2013-11-15"
"6401d1d0-3b67-46ab-892a-49549cd84fe3","Ascension","1801","2013-11-15"
"97c920e8-eebd-4548-95af-3c676d0f5c57","DuBarry Pavillion PLAN","1780","2013-11-15"
"a0e75f49-aa3a-4be7-9b13-48bad53a7a51","Saint Stefano Rotondo Detail: Entrance Portico","No Date","2013-11-15"
"b725a94f-5b86-472a-9a1c-58204f660703","Abbey du Thoronet PLAN","1146","2013-11-15"
"cd7dd096-5207-44e1-b480-f114a8ce8458","Soviet Pavilion, International Exposition of Decorative Arts, Paris","1925","2013-11-15"
"d44f90df-b20e-4ba5-a9c5-cd731868e79b","Mata Hari","1906","2013-11-15"
"dd74c102-4617-470f-ab42-c61caf230e88","Sistine Chapel Detail: Interior c1500","1473","2013-11-15"
"e5538842-a919-4ecc-ad16-2cf66993c031","Rheims Cathedral UNDER RESTORATION","1250","2013-11-15"
"eeeb25b9-463d-417b-9f2c-c791f78a69c9","Amiens Cathedral Notre-Dame PLAN","1220","2013-11-15"
```

6.3.6.7 REST Reports - Metadata Query Screenshots with Annotated API Calls

**DSpace 7.0 only supports this when using the older, deprecated REST API v6**

In DSpace 7.0, REST Quality Control Reports are currently only supported if you also install the old [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#)(see page 669) webapp. Tentative plans to migrate these reports to support the new [REST API](#)(see page 666) have begun in <https://jira.lyrasis.org/browse/DS-4301>.

[Collection Filter](#)

## DSpace REST Query Client

▶ Collection Selector

▼ Metadata Field Queries

Pre-defined Queries

Any Field   +

Run Item Query

▶ Limit/Paginate Queries

▶ Filters

▶ Additional data to return

▶ Item Results

### Set collections to Query

#### API Call

/rest/hierarchy

## DSpace REST Query Client

▼ Collection Selector

--Reports on the Institute on Human Values in Medicine  
--Founders of Bioethics Scholarly Publications Archive  
--BioethicsLine  
--Office of Technology Assessment Reports Collection  
--Ethics and Intellectual Disability Newsletter Collection  
--Publications of the National Reference Center for Bioethics Literature  
--GeorgetownX: Introduction to Bioethics MOOC Archive  
--Archive and Special Collections (including US Bioethics Commissions)  
--Bioethics Literature and Resources  
--Publications and Materials of the Bioethics Research Library  
Digital and Special Collections @ Georgetown University  
--Special Collections Catalog  
--Manuscripts Collections  
----French Anti-Communist Propaganda Posters from Paix et Liberté  
----Photograph Selections from Manuscripts Collections  
----Roosevelt Civil War Envelopes Collection

▼ Metadata Field Queries



Pre-defined Queries are Available

### DSpace REST Query Client

The screenshot shows the 'Metadata Field Queries' section of the DSpace REST Query Client. A dropdown menu is open under 'Pre-defined Queries', listing various query options. The 'Has No dc.identifier.uri' option is highlighted in blue. Other options include 'New Query', 'Has compound subject', 'Has compound dc.contributor.author', 'Has compound dc.creator', 'Has URL in dc.description', 'Has full text in dc.description.provenance', 'Has non-full text in dc.description.provenance', 'Has empty metadata', 'Has unbreaking metadata in description', 'Has XML entity in metadata', and 'Has non-ascii character in metadata'. The interface also shows a 'Run Item Query' button and a sidebar with expandable sections like 'Limit/Paginate Queries', 'Filters', 'Additional data to return', and 'Item Results'.

Multiple Metadata Fields can be Queried

**API Call**  
/rest/registries/schema

### DSpace REST Query Client

The screenshot shows the 'Metadata Field Queries' section with two queries added. The first query is 'Has compound dc.creator'. The second query is 'dc.subject.\* contains politic'. The third query is 'dc.creator matches .\*Krogh.\*'. A dropdown menu is open under the second query, showing options like 'exists', 'does not exist', 'equals', 'does not equal', 'like', 'not like', 'contains', 'does not contain', 'matches', and 'does not match'. The 'matches' option is highlighted in blue. The interface also shows a 'Run Item Query' button and a sidebar with expandable sections like 'Limit/Paginate Queries', 'Filters', 'Additional data to return', and 'Item Results'.

Apply Filters if Desired

**API Call**  
/rest/filters

### DSpace REST Query Client

Collection Selector  
 Metadata Field Queries  
 Limit/Paginate Queries  
 Filters

**Run Item Query**

General  None  All

Item Property Filters

Is Item - always true     Withdrawn Items  
 Available Items - Not Withdrawn     Discoverable Items - Not Private  
 Not Discoverable - Private Item     Matches all specified filters

Basic Bitstream Filters

Item has Multiple Original Bitstreams     Item has No Original Bitstreams  
 Item has One Original Bitstream

Bitstream Filters by MIME Type

Item has a Doc Original Bitstream (PDF, Office, Text, HTML, XML, etc)     Item has an Image Original Bitstream  
 Item has multiple types of Original     Has Other Bitstream Types (not Doc or Image)  
 Item has a PDF Original Bitstream

### Select Additional Fields to Display

**API Call**

`/rest/registries/schema`

### DSpace REST Query Client

Collection Selector  
 Metadata Field Queries  
 Limit/Paginate Queries  
 Filters  
 Additional data to return

dc.subject  
 dc.subject.classification  
 dc.subject.ddc  
 dc.subject.lcc  
 dc.subject.lcsh  
 dc.subject.mesh  
 dc.subject.other  
 dc.title

**Run Item Query**

Item Results

### View Results

**API Call**

`rest/filtered-items?`

`query_field[]=dc.subject.*&query_field[]=dc.creator&query_op[]=contains&q`  
`uery_op[]=matches&query_val[]=politic&query_val[]=. *Krogh.*`

```
&collSel[]=
&limit=100&offset=0
&expand=parentCollection,metadata
&filters=is_withdrawn,is_discoverable
&show_fields[]=dc.subject&show_fields[]=dc.subject.other
```

Limit/Paginate Queries

Filters

Additional data to return

Item Results

**(dc.subject.\* contains politic) and (dc.creator matches .\*Krogh.\*) (1 - 10 of 10 unfiltered; displaying 10 filtered)**

URL to current search

Num	id	collection	Item Handle	dc.title	dc.subject	dc.subject.other
1	4b57a6bb-01ce-144e5-abe4-1972e2ce417e	Dean Peter Krogh Foreign Affairs Digital Archives_Videos	10822/552649	Religion's role in world affairs		Society, Culture and Religion Role of Religion in Foreign Policy Resurgence of Religion
2	52f8e2d1-c6ea-442a-ade4-2108ae91cc1	Dean Peter Krogh Foreign Affairs Digital Archives_Videos	10822/552712	A conversation with journalist Theodore White		Cold War International Economics, Trade and Business United States Role in the World Trade Economics Ronald Reagan Nuclear Weapons
3	d98209ca-3aa3-4e85-9898-79fe8160c769	Dean Peter Krogh Foreign Affairs Digital Archives_Videos	10822/552503	After Desert Storm		Conflict and War Defense and National Security Energy Policy Gulf War Desert Storm Democracy in the Middle East Energy Dependence United States Foreign Policy in the Middle East Cold War Defense and National

Export as CSV for DSpace Metadata Update Process

Item Results

**(dc.subject.\* contains politic) and (dc.creator matches .\*Krogh.\*) (1 - 10 of 10 unfiltered; displaying 10 filtered)**

URL to current search

Num	id	collection	Item Handle	dc.title	dc.subject	dc.subject.other
1	4b57a6bb-01ce-144e5-abe4-1972e2ce417e	Dean Peter Krogh Foreign Affairs Digital Archives_Videos	10822/552649	Religion's role in world affairs		Society, Culture and Religion Role of Religion in Foreign Policy Resurgence of Religion
2	52f8e2d1-c6ea-442a-ade4-2108ae91cc1	Dean Peter Krogh Foreign Affairs Digital Archives_Videos	10822/552712	A conversation with journalist Theodore White		Cold War International Economics, Trade and Business United States Role in the World Trade Economics Ronald Reagan Nuclear Weapons
3	d98209ca-3aa3-4e85-9898-79fe8160c769	Dean Peter Krogh Foreign Affairs Digital Archives_Videos	10822/552503	After Desert Storm		Conflict and War Defense and National Security Energy Policy Gulf War Desert Storm Democracy in the Middle East Energy Dependence United States Foreign Policy in the Middle East

download (35) Show all downloads...

```

1 "id","collection","dc.title","dc.subject","dc.subject.other"
2 "5b57a8bb-01ce-44e5-abe4-1972e2ce417e","10822/552494","Religion's role in world affairs","", "Society, Culture and Religion|Role of Religion in Foreign Policy|Resurgence of Religion"
3 "52f2e2d1-c6ea-4d2a-adea-2108ae791cc1","10822/552494","A conversation with journalist Theodore White","", "Cold War|International Economics, Trade and Business|United States Role in the World|Trade|Economics|Ronald Reagan|Nuclear Weapons"
4 "d98209ca-3aa3-4e85-9898-79fe8160c769","10822/552494","After Desert Storm","", "Conflict and War|Defense and National Security|Energy Policy|Gulf War|Desert Storm|Democracy in the Middle East|Energy Dependence|United States Foreign Policy in the Middle East"
5 "d30d5a1c-bb61-4a2a-98f3-e44282212b4b","10822/552494","New world disorder : the United States in search of a role","", "Cold War|Defense and National Security|United States Role in the World|Communism|New World Order|European Union|National Security|Economics|Balance of Power|Strategic Arms Reduction Treaty (START)|Arms Control|Nuclear Weapons"
6 "6849b1ba-d956-4efe-b41e-72edde96da28","10822/552494","Islam and politics","", "Democracy|Society, Culture and Religion|Islamism|the Rise of Political Islam"
7 "eb10f2ab-f7a9-4702-b996-1a6ad18a7185","10822/552494","Impact of the television mini-series Amerika", "", "Cold War|Media and Communications|Amerika|Cold War|Television"
8 "8e7507e-1bd1-4c4e-9a11-4c9fe2d0a722","10822/552494","Hotspots on the horizon","", "Conflict and War|Defense and National Security|United States Role in the World|American Hegemony|Threats to United States Security|North Korea Nuclear Program|Kashmir"
9 "0d30a4f1-e254-4e03-8d49-85dc11802227","10822/552494","Intelligence community : time for reform","", "Defense and National Security|Intelligence|Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)|National Security|Terrorism|Cold War"
10 "8810e34-84d2-4547-b622-bc0da8f0711","10822/552494","The China card","", "International Diplomacy|Geopolitics|China"
11 "ba044ae3-4963-4a2a-9f9c-59dcf4ddc68b","10822/552494","The Middle East : war in the Gulf","", "Energy Policy|Defense and National Security|Gulf War|Desert Storm|Democracy in the Middle East|Energy Dependence|United States Foreign Policy in the Middle East"

```

### 6.3.6.8 REST Reports - Summary of API Calls

- [GET /rest - Summary of API Calls](#)(see page 701)
- [GET /rest/reports - List of Available Reports](#)(see page 701)
- [GET /rest/reports/\[report name\] - Redirect to a Specific Report](#)(see page 701)
- [GET /rest/filters - Return filters to apply to a list of items](#)(see page 701)
- [GET /rest/filtered-collections - Return collections and item counts based on pre-defined filters](#)(see page 701)
- [GET /rest/filtered-collections/{collection\\_id} - Return items and item counts for a collection based on pre-defined filters](#)(see page 703)
- [GET /rest/filtered-items - Retrieve a set of items based on a metadata query and a set of filters](#)(see page 703)

#### **DSpace 7.x only supports this when using the older, deprecated REST API v6**

In DSpace 7.0, REST Quality Control Reports are currently only supported if you also install the old [REST API v6 \(deprecated\)](#)(see page 669) webapp. Tentative plans to migrate these reports to support the new [REST API](#)(see page 666) have begun in <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/7641>

#### GET /rest - Summary of API Calls

The response from this call includes the set of REST report calls that are available.

- [GET /reports - Return a list of report tools built on the rest api](#)
- [GET /reports/{nickname} - Return a redirect to a specific report](#)
- [GET /filters - Return a list of use case filters available for quality control reporting](#)
- [GET /filtered-collections - Return collections and item counts based on pre-defined filters](#)
- [GET /filtered-collections/{collection\\_id} - Return items and item counts for a collection based on pre-defined filters](#)
- [GET /filtered-items - Retrieve a set of items based on a metadata query and a set of filters](#)

GET /rest/reports - List of Available Reports

The response from this call includes the set of reports that are available

- **collection:** /rest/static/index.html
- **item-query:** /rest/static/query.html

GET /rest/reports/[report name] - Redirect to a Specific Report

This will re-direct to the configured report

GET /rest/filters - Return filters to apply to a list of items

The response will return the list of available filters. These have been configured in rest.cfg.

**Run Item Query**

General

None  All

Item Property Filters

Is Item - always true  Withdrawn Items

Available Items - Not Withdrawn  Discoverable Items - Not Private

Not Discoverable - Private Item  Matches all specified filters

Basic Bitstream Filters

Item has Multiple Original Bitstreams  Item has No Original Bitstreams

Item has One Original Bitstream

Bitstream Filters by MIME Type

Item has a Doc Original Bitstream (PDF, Office, Text, HTML, XML, etc)  Item has an Image Original Bitstream

Item has multiple types of Original Bitstreams (Doc, Image, Other)  Has Other Bitstream Types (not Doc or Image)

Has unusually small PDF  Item has a PDF Original Bitstream

Has document bitstream without TEXT item  Item has JPG Original Bitstream

Has unusually large PDF

Supported MIME Type Filters

Item Image Bitstreams are Supported  Item has Image Bitstream that is Unsupported

Item Document Bitstreams are Supported  Item has Document Bitstream that is Unsupported

Bitstream Bundle Filters

Has bitstream in an unsupported bundle  Has unusually small thumbnail

Has original bitstream without thumbnail  Has invalid thumbnail name (assumes one thumbnail for each original)

Has non generated thumbnail  Doesn't have a license

Has documentation in the license bundle

Permission Filters

Item has Restricted Original Bitstream  Item has Restricted Thumbnail

Item has Restricted Metadata

GET /rest/filtered-collections - Return collections and item counts based on pre-defined filters

This request is similar to the call /rest/collections except that it allows the user to supply a comma separated list of filters to apply to the collection.

The response will contain

- The total count of items for each collection
- The count of items that match each filter
- The count of items that match all filters combined

GET /rest/filtered-collections/{collection\_id} - Return items and item counts for a collection based on pre-defined filters

This request is similar to the call /rest/collections/{collection\_id} except that it allows the user to supply a comma separated list of filters to apply to the collection.

The response will contain

- The total count of items for the collection
- The count of items that match each filter
- The count of items that match all filters combined

When combined with the expand=items parameter, this call will return the set of items that match a filter or set of filters. It may be necessary to paginate through these results.

GET /rest/filtered-items - Retrieve a set of items based on a metadata query and a set of filters

This request allows a collection owner to construct a complex metadata query against specific metadata fields applying a number of comparison operators.

The search features of DSpace allow an end user to discover items via search. This command allows the collection owner to audit and enforce metadata consistency within a collection.

The query will consist of the following components

- Metadata Field Query
  - Field(s) to be searched
  - Search operator
  - Search value (if applicable)
- Collection scope (optional)
  - Comma separated list of collections to search
- Filters
  - A comma separated list of item filters that will be applied to all results.
  - It may be necessary to paginate through results when applying a highly selective filter

## 6.4 Curation Tasks

- [Writing your own tasks](#)(see page 703)
- [Task Output and Reporting](#)(see page 704)
  - [Status Code](#)(see page 704)
  - [Result String](#)(see page 705)
  - [Reporting Stream](#)(see page 705)
  - [Accessing task output in calling code](#)(see page 705)
- [Task Properties](#)(see page 705)
- [Task Annotations](#)(see page 706)
- [Scripted Tasks](#)(see page 706)
  - [Interface](#)(see page 706)
    - [performDso\(\)](#) vs. [performId\(\)](#)(see page 707)

### 6.4.1 Writing your own tasks

A task is just a java class that can contain arbitrary code, but it must have 2 properties:

First, it must provide a no argument constructor, so it can be loaded by the PluginManager. Thus, all tasks are 'named' plugins, with the taskname being the plugin name.

Second, it must implement the interface `org.dspace.curate.CurationTask`

The `CurationTask` interface is almost a "tagging" interface, and only requires a few very high-level methods be implemented. The most significant is:

```
int perform(DSpaceObject dso);
```

The return value should be a code describing one of 4 conditions:

- 0 : SUCCESS the task completed successfully
- 1 : FAIL the task failed (it is up to the task to decide what 'counts' as failure - an example might be that the virus scan finds an infected file)
- 2 : SKIPPED the task could not be performed on the object, perhaps because it was not applicable
- -1 : ERROR the task could not be completed due to an error

If a task extends the `AbstractCurationTask` class, that is the only method it needs to define.

## 6.4.2 Task Output and Reporting

Few assumptions are made by CS about what the 'outcome' of a task may be (if any) - it could e.g. produce a report to a temporary file, it could modify DSpace content silently, etc. But the CS runtime does provide a few pieces of information whenever a task is performed:

### 6.4.2.1 Status Code

This is returned to CS by any of a task's `perform` methods. The complete list of values, defined in `Curator`, is:

value	symbol	meaning
-3	CURATE_NOTASK	CS could not find the requested task
-2	CURATE_UNSET	task did not return a status code because it has not yet run
-1	CURATE_ERROR	task could not be performed
0	CURATE_SUCCESS	task performed successfully
1	CURATE_FAIL	task performed, but failed
2	CURATE_SKIP	task not performed due to object not being eligible

In the administrative UI, this code is translated into the word or phrase configured by the `ui.statusmessages` property (discussed in [Curation System](#) (see page 213)) for display.

### 6.4.2.2 Result String

The task may set a string indicating details of the outcome:

```
curator.setResult("Item " + item.getID() + " was painted " + color);
```

CS does not interpret or assign result strings; the task does it. A task may choose not to assign a result, but the "best practice" for tasks is to assign one whenever possible. Code which invokes `Curator.getResult()` may use the result string for display or any other purpose.

### 6.4.2.3 Reporting Stream

For very fine-grained information, a task may write to a *reporting* stream. Unlike the result string, there is no limit to the amount of data that may be pushed to this stream.

```
curator.report("Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,\n");
curator.report("consectetur adipiscing elit,\n");
curator.report("sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua.\n");
```

### 6.4.2.4 Accessing task output in calling code

The status code, reporting stream, and the result string are accessed (or set) by methods on the Curator object:

```
Curator curator = new Curator();
curator.setReporter(new OutputStreamWriter(System.out));
curator.addTask("vscan").curate(coll);
int status = curator.getStatus("vscan");
String result = curator.getResult("vscan");
```

## 6.4.3 Task Properties

Task code may configure itself using `ConfigurationService` in the normal manner, or by the use of "task properties". See [Curation System - Task Properties](#) (see page 213) for discussion of the issues for which task properties were invented. Any code which extends `AbstractCurationTask` has access to its configured task properties.

The entire "API" for task properties is:

```
public String taskProperty(String name);
public int taskIntProperty(String name, int defaultValue);
```



```
public long taskLongProperty(String name, long defaultValue);
public boolean taskBooleanProperty(String name, boolean default);
```

## 6.4.4 Task Annotations

CS looks for, and will use, certain java annotations in the task Class definition that can help it invoke tasks more intelligently. An example may explain best. Since tasks operate on DSOs that can either be simple (Items) or containers (Collections, and Communities), there is a fundamental problem or ambiguity in how a task is invoked: if the DSO is a collection, should the CS invoke the task on each member of the collection, or does the task "know" how to do that itself? The decision is made by looking for the `@Distributive` annotation: if present, CS assumes that the task will manage the details, otherwise CS will walk the collection, and invoke the task on each member. The java class would be defined:

```
@Distributive
public class MyTask implements CurationTask
```

A related issue concerns how non-distributive tasks report their status and results: the status will normally reflect only the last invocation of the task in the container, so important outcomes could be lost. If a task declares itself `@Suspendable`, however, the CS will cease processing when it encounters a FAIL status. When used in the UI, for example, this would mean that if our virus scan is running over a collection, it would stop and return status (and result) to the scene on the first infected item it encounters. You can even tune `@Suspendable` tasks more precisely by annotating what invocations you want to suspend on. For example:

```
@Suspendable(invoked=Curator.Invoked.INTERACTIVE)
public class MyTask implements CurationTask
```

would mean that the task would suspend if invoked in the UI, but would run to completion if run on the command-line.

Only a few annotation types have been defined so far, but as the number of tasks grow, we can look for common behavior that can be signaled by annotation. For example, there is a `@Mutative` type: that tells CS that the task may alter (mutate) the object it is working on.

## 6.4.5 Scripted Tasks

DSpace 1.8 introduced limited (and somewhat experimental) support for deploying and running tasks written in languages other than Java. Since version 6, Java has provided a standard way (API) to invoke so-called scripting or dynamic language code that runs on the java virtual machine (JVM). Scripted tasks are those written in a language accessible from this API. See [Curation System - Scripted Tasks](#)<sup>(see page 213)</sup> for information on configuring and running scripted tasks.

### 6.4.5.1 Interface

Scripted tasks must implement a slightly different interface than the `CurationTask`<sup>616</sup> interface used for Java tasks. The appropriate interface for scripting tasks is `ScriptedTask`<sup>617</sup> and has the following methods:

<sup>616</sup> [https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/dspace-3\\_x/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/curate/CurationTask.java](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/dspace-3_x/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/curate/CurationTask.java)

<sup>617</sup> [https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/dspace-3\\_x/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/curate/ScriptedTask.java](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/dspace-3_x/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/curate/ScriptedTask.java)

```
public void init(Curator curator, String taskId) throws IOException;
public int performDso(DSpaceObject dso) throws IOException;
public int performId(Context ctx, String id) throws IOException;
```

The difference is that `ScriptedTask` has separate `perform` methods for DSO and identifier. The reason for that is that some scripting languages (e.g. Ruby) don't support method overloading.

`performDso()` vs. `performId()`

You may have noticed that the `ScriptedTask` interface has both `performDso()` and `performId()` methods, but only `performDso` is ever called when curator is launched from command line.

There are a class of use-cases in which we want to construct or create new DSOs (`DSpaceObject`) given an identifier in a task. In these cases, there may be no live DSO to pass to the task.

You actually **can** get curation system to call `performId()` if you queue a task then process the queue - when reading the queue all CLI has is the handle to pass to the task.

## 6.4.6 Curation tasks in Jython

As mentioned in the "Scripted Tasks" chapter of [Curation Tasks](#)(see page 703), you can write your curation tasks in several languages, including Jython (a flavour of Python running on JVM).

Instructions are outdated and unproven in DSpace 7.x

### 6.4.6.1 Setting up scripted tasks in Jython

1. Download the latest Jython installer jar (e.g. `jython-installer-2.7.1.jar`<sup>618</sup>) from <http://www.jython.org/downloads.html>
2. Get `jython.jar` and the `Lib` directory.
  - a. either unzip the installer jar:
 

```
unzip -d [dspace]/lib/ jython-installer-2.7.1.jar jython.jar Lib/
unzip -d [dspace]/webapps/server/WEB-INF/lib/ jython-installer-2.7.1.jar jython.jar Lib/
```
  - b. or use it to install Jython:
 

```
java -jar jython-installer-2.7.1.jar --console
```

Note: Installation location doesn't matter, this is not necessary for DSpace. You can safely delete it after you retrieve `jython.jar` and `Lib`.
3. Install Jython to DSpace classpaths (step 2a already did this for you):
  - a. The goal is to put `jython.jar` and the `jython Lib/` directory into **every** DSpace classpath you intend to use, so it must be installed in **both** `[dspace]/lib` and the webapp that deploys to Tomcat (if you want to run from the UI) - `[dspace]/webapps/server/WEB-INF/lib/`. There are no special maven/pom extensions - just copy in the jar and `Lib/`.

<sup>618</sup> <http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=org/python/jython-installer/2.7.1/jython-installer-2.7.1.jar>

- b. You **can** use symlinks if you wish as long as `allowLinking` (Tomcat <=7<sup>619</sup>, Tomcat 8<sup>620</sup>) is set to true in that context's configuration. However, be warned that [Tomcat documentation lists `allowLinking="true"` as a possible security concern](#)<sup>621</sup>.
  - c. Note: Older versions of Jython mention the need for `jython-engine.jar` to implement JSR-223. Don't worry about that, new Jython versions, e.g. 2.7.1 don't require this.
4. Configure the curation framework to be aware of your new task(s):
    - a. set up the location of scripted tasks in the curation system. This means simply adding a property to `[dspace]/config/modules/curate.cfg`:
 

```
script.dir=${dspace.dir}/ctscripts
```
    - b. in this directory, create a text file named " `task.catalog` ". This is a Java properties file where lines beginning with '#' are comments. Add a line for each task you write. The syntax is following:

```
logical task name = script engine name|file name|constructor invocation
mytask=python|mytask.py|MyTask()
```

Notes:

- **don't** put spaces around the pipe character or you'll get an error similar to this one:
 

```
ERROR org.dspace.curate.TaskResolver @ Script engine: 'python '
is not installed
```
  - The "script engine name" is whatever name (or alias) jython registers in the JVM. You can use both "python" and "jython" as engine name (tested on jython 2.7.1).
  - The logical task name can't conflict with existing (java) task names, but otherwise any single-word token can be used.
  - The file name is just the script file name in the `script.dir` directory
  - "constructor invocation" is the language specific way to create an object that implements the task interface - it's `ClassName()` for Python
- c. If you want pretty names in the UI, configure other `curate.cfg` properties - see " `ui.tasknames` " (or groups etc)
5. Write your task.

In the directory configured above, create your task (with the name configured in " `task.catalog` "). The basic requirement of any scripted task is that it implements the `ScriptedTask`<sup>622</sup> Java interface. So for our example, the `mytask.py` file might look like this:

```
from org.dspace.curate import ScriptedTask

class MyTask(ScriptedTask):
 def init(self, curator, taskName):
 print "initializing with Jython"

 def performDso(self, dso):
 print "perform on dso"
```

<sup>619</sup> [http://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-7.0-doc/config/context.html#Standard\\_Implementation](http://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-7.0-doc/config/context.html#Standard_Implementation)

<sup>620</sup> <http://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-8.0-doc/config/resources.html>

<sup>621</sup> <https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-8.0-doc/security-howto.html#Context>

<sup>622</sup> [https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/dspace-3\\_x/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/curate/ScriptedTask.java](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/dspace-3_x/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/curate/ScriptedTask.java)

```

 return 0

 def performId(self, context, id):
 print "perform on id %s" % (id)
 return 0

```

#### 6. Invoke the task.

You can do this the same way you would invoke any task (from command line, in the admin UI, etc). The advantage of scripting is that you do not need to restart your servlet container to test changes; each task's source code is reloaded when you launch the task, so you can just put the updated script in place. Example of invocation from command line:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace curate -t mytask -i 123456789/123 -r -
```

Note: "`-r -`" means that the script's standard output will be directed to the console. You can read more details in the "On the command line" chapter of the [Curation Tasks](#)(see page 703) page.

#### 6.4.6.2 See also

- [Curation Tasks](#)(see page 703) page in the official documentation
- [Nailgun](#)<sup>623</sup> - for speeding up repeated runs of a dspace command from the command line  
Note: since DSpace 4.0, there's a solution for running dspace CLI commands in batch: [Executing streams of commands](#)<sup>624</sup>
- [Jython webapp for DSpace](#)<sup>625</sup> - general purpose (not curation task) webapp written in Jython, optionally with access to DSpace API

## 6.5 Development Tools Provided by DSpace

### 6.5.1 Date parser tester

Some parts of DSpace use a custom date/time parser ( `org.dspace.util.MultiFormatDateParser` ) which is driven by a table of regular expressions, so it can match any of a variety of formats. The table is found in `config/spring/api/discovery-solr.xml` . To test new and altered rules, you can use the DSpace command line tool's `validate-date` command. You can simply pass it a date/time string on the command line ( `dspace validate-date 01-01-2015` ). You can pipe a stream of strings to be validated, one per line ( `dspace validate-date < test.data` ). Or you can have it prompt you for each string to be tested ( `dspace validate-date` ).

## 6.6 Services to support Alternative Identifiers

Together with the [Item Level Versioning](#)(see page 407) an Identifier Service was introduced that make it possible to integrate new Identifiers. Currently the Identifier Service is used for Items only, but this may be changed in future versions of DSpace. Identifiers used for different versions are an very important point as part of an versioning

<sup>623</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Nailgun>

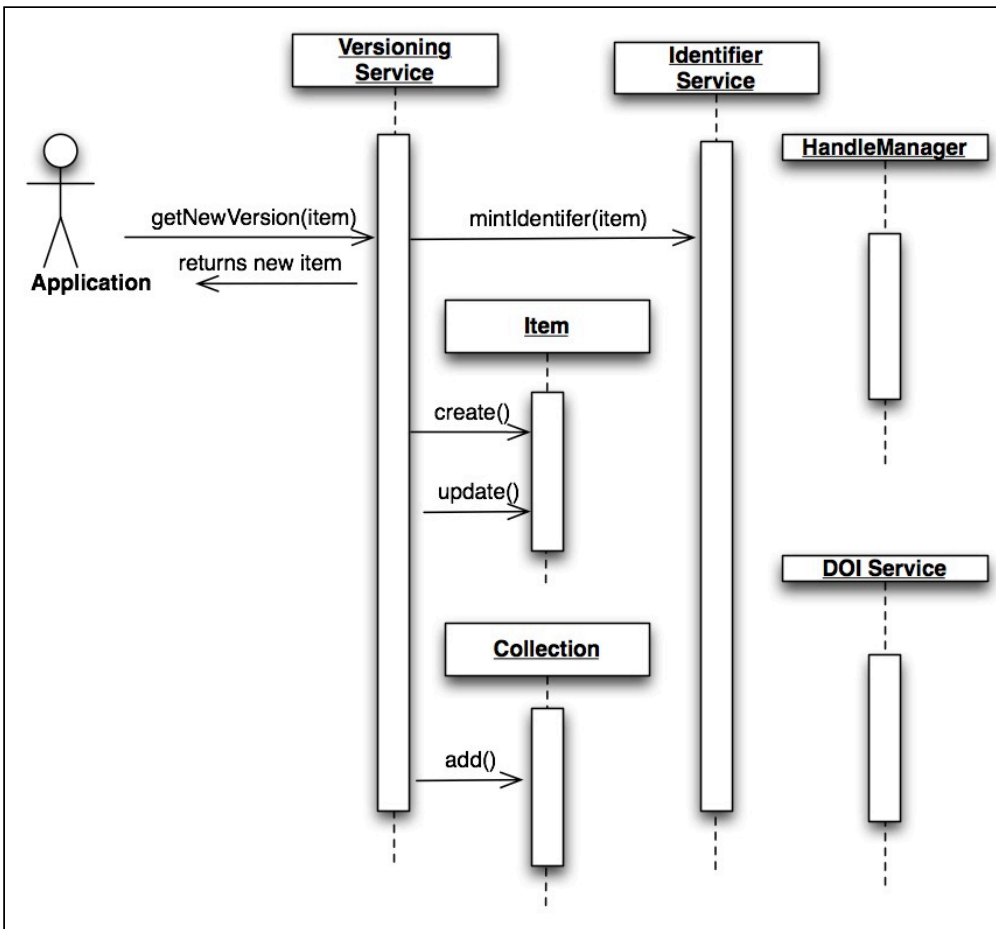
<sup>624</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSDOC4x/Executing+streams+of+commands>

<sup>625</sup> <https://wiki.duraspace.org/display/DSPACE/Jython+webapp+for+DSpace>

strategy. The following documentation describes the Identifier Service in the context of Item Level Versioning, nevertheless the Identifier Service is also used for Items when the Item Level Versioning is switched off.

### 6.6.1 Versioning and Identifier Service

DSpace Item Versioning is encapsulated as an Extensible Service that may be reimplemented by the local repository maintainers to produce alternate versioning behaviors and Identifier Schemes. Versioning Services layer on top of IdentifierServices dedicated to Encoding, Resolution, Minting and Registration of Identifiers for specific DSpace Items. It is through this highly extensible layering of functionality where local developers can alter the versioning behavior and introduce their own local enhancements. The DSpace Service Manager, based on the Spring Framework, provides the key leverage for this flexibility.



#### 6.6.1.1 Versioning Service

The *Versioning Service* will be responsible for the replication of one or more Items when a new version is requested. The new version will not yet be preserved in the Repository, it will be preserved when the databases transactional window is completed, thus when errors arise in the *versioning* process, the database will be properly kept in its original state and the application will alert that an exception has occurred that is in need of correction.

The *Versioning Service* will rely on a generic *IdentifierService* that is described below for minting and registering any identifiers that are required to track the revision history of the Items.

```

public interface VersioningService {

 Version createNewVersion(Context c, int itemId);

 Version createNewVersion(Context c, int itemId, String summary);

 void removeVersion(Context c, int versionID);

 void removeVersion(Context c, Item item);

 Version getVersion(Context c, int versionID);

 Version restoreVersion(Context c, int versionID);

 Version restoreVersion(Context c, int versionID, String summary);

 VersionHistory findVersionHistory(Context c, int itemId);

 Version updateVersion(Context c, int itemId, String summary);

 Version getVersion(Context c, Item item);

}

```

### 6.6.1.2 Identifier Service

The Identifier Service maintains an extensible set of *IdentifierProvider* services that are responsible for two important activities in Identifier management:

1. Resolution: *IdentifierService* act in a manner similar to the existing HandleManager in DSpace, allowing for resolution of DSpace Items from provided identifiers.
2. Minting: Minting is the act of reserving and returning an identifier that may be used with a specific DSpaceObject.
3. Registering: Registering is the act of recording the existence of a minted identifier with an external persistent resolver service. These services may reside on the local machine (HandleManager) or exist as external services (PURL or EZID DOI registration services)

```

public interface IdentifierService {

 /**
 *
 * @param context
 * @param dso
 * @param identifier
 * @return
 */
 String lookup(Context context, DSpaceObject dso, Class<? extends
Identifier> identifier);

 /**
 *

```

```

 * This will resolve a DSpaceObject based on a provided Identifier. The
 Service will interrogate the providers in
 * no particular order and return the first successful result discovered.
 If no resolution is successful,
 * the method will return null if no object is found.
 *
 * TODO: Verify null is returned.
 *
 * @param context
 * @param identifier
 * @return
 * @throws IdentifierNotFoundException
 * @throws IdentifierNotResolvableException
 */
 DSpaceObject resolve(Context context, String identifier) throws
 IdentifierNotFoundException, IdentifierNotResolvableException;

 /**
 *
 * Reserves any identifiers necessary based on the capabilities of all
 providers in the service.
 *
 * @param context
 * @param dso
 * @throws org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeException
 * @throws java.sql.SQLException
 * @throws IdentifierException
 */
 void reserve(Context context, DSpaceObject dso) throws AuthorizeException,
 SQLException, IdentifierException;

 /**
 *
 * Used to Reserve a Specific Identifier (for example a Handle,
 hdl:1234.5/6) The provider is responsible for
 * Detecting and Processing the appropriate identifier, all Providers are
 interrogated, multiple providers
 * can process the same identifier.
 *
 * @param context
 * @param dso
 * @param identifier
 * @throws org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeException
 * @throws java.sql.SQLException
 * @throws IdentifierException
 */
 void reserve(Context context, DSpaceObject dso, String identifier) throws
 AuthorizeException, SQLException, IdentifierException;

 /**
 *
 * @param context

```

```

 * @param dso
 * @return
 * @throws org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeException
 * @throws java.sql.SQLException
 * @throws IdentifierException
 */
 void register(Context context, DSpaceObject dso) throws AuthorizeException,
 SQLException, IdentifierException;

 /**
 *
 * Used to Register a Specific Identifier (for example a Handle,
 hdl:1234.5/6) The provider is responsible for
 * Detecting and Processing the appropriate identifier, all Providers are
 interrogated, multiple providers
 * can process the same identifier.
 *
 * @param context
 * @param dso
 * @param identifier
 * @return
 * @throws org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeException
 * @throws java.sql.SQLException
 * @throws IdentifierException
 */
 void register(Context context, DSpaceObject dso, String identifier) throws
 AuthorizeException, SQLException, IdentifierException;

 /**
 * Delete (Unbind) all identifiers registered for a specific DSpace item.
 Identifiers are "unbound" across
 * all providers in no particular order.
 *
 * @param context
 * @param dso
 * @throws org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeException
 * @throws java.sql.SQLException
 * @throws IdentifierException
 */
 void delete(Context context, DSpaceObject dso) throws AuthorizeException,
 SQLException, IdentifierException;

 /**
 * Used to Delete a Specific Identifier (for example a Handle,
 hdl:1234.5/6) The provider is responsible for
 * Detecting and Processing the appropriate identifier, all Providers are
 interrogated, multiple providers
 * can process the same identifier.
 *
 * @param context
 * @param dso
 * @param identifier

```



```

 * @throws org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeException
 * @throws java.sql.SQLException
 * @throws IdentifierException
 */
 void delete(Context context, DSpaceObject dso, String identifier) throws
 AuthorizeException, SQLException, IdentifierException;
}

```

## 6.7 Batch Processing

In the current DSpace design, the database transactions are in most of the cases relatively long: from Context creation to the moment the Context is completed. Especially when doing batch processing, that transaction can become very long. The new data access layer introduced in DSpace 6 which is based on Hibernate has built-in cache and auto-update mechanisms. But these mechanisms do not work well with long transactions and even have an exponentially adverse-effect on performance.

Therefore we added a new method `enableBatchMode()` to the DSpace Context class which tells our database connection that we are going to do some batch processing. The database connection (Hibernate in our case) can then optimize itself to deal with a large number of inserts, updates and deletes. Hibernate will then not postpone update statements anymore which is better in the case of batch processing. The method `isBatchModeEnabled()` lets you check if the current Context is in "batch mode".

When dealing with a lot of records, it is also important to deal with the size of the (Hibernate) cache. A large cache can also lead to decreased performance and eventually to "out of memory" exceptions. To help developers to better manage the cache, a method `getCacheSize()` was added to the DSpace Context class that will give you the number of database records currently cached by the database connection. Another new method `uncacheEntity(ReloadableEntity entity)` will allow you to clear the cache (of a single object) and free up (heap) memory. The `uncacheEntity()` method may be used to immediately remove an object from heap memory once the batch processing is finished with it. Besides the `uncacheEntity()` method, the `commit()` method in the DSpace Context class will also clear the cache, flush all pending changes to the database and commit the current database transaction. The database changes will then be visible to other threads.

BUT `uncacheEntity()` and `commit()` come at a price. After calling this method all previously fetched entities (hibernate terminology for database record) are "detached" (pending changes are not tracked anymore) and cannot be combined with "attached" entities. If you change a value in a detached entity, Hibernate will not automatically push that change to the database. If you still want to change a value of a detached entity or if you want to use that entity in combination with attached entities (e.g. adding a bitstream to an item) after you have cleared the cache, you first have to reload that entity. Reloading means asking the database connection to re-add the entity from the database to the cache and get a new object reference to the required entity. From then on, it is important that you use that new object reference. To simplify the process of reloading detached entities, we've added a `reloadEntity(ReloadableEntity entity)` method to the DSpace Context class with a new interface `ReloadableEntity`. This method will give the user a new "attached" reference to the requested entity. All DSpace Objects and some extra classes implement the `ReloadableEntity` interface so that they can be easily reloaded.

Examples on how to use these new methods can be found in the `IndexClient` class. But to summarize, when batch processing it is important that:

1. You put the Context into batch processing mode using the method:

```
boolean originalMode = context.isBatchModeEnabled();
context.enableBatchMode(true);
```

2. Perform necessary batch operations, being careful to call `uncacheEntity()` whenever you complete operations on each object. Alternatively, you can `commit()` the context once the object cache reaches a particular size (see `getCacheSize()`). Remember, once an object is "uncached", you will have to reload it (see `reloadEntity()`) before you can work with it again:

```
final Iterator<Item> itemIterator = itemService.findByCollection(context,
collection);

// Loop through all items
while (itemIterator.hasNext()) {
 // Get access to next Item
 Item item = itemIterator.next();

 ... do something with Item ...

 // To prevent memory issues, discard Item from the cache after processing
 context.uncacheEntity(item);
}

// Remember: calling commit() will decache all objects
context.commit();

// So, if you need to reuse your Collection *post* commit(), you'd have to
// reload it
Collection collection = context.reloadEntity(collection);
```

3. When you're finished with processing the records, you put the context back into its original mode:

```
context.enableBatchMode(originalMode);
```

## 6.8 Workflow

### 6.8.1 Configuration

#### 6.8.1.1 Main workflow configuration

As of DSpace 7, the `workflow.xml` configuration file has been migrated to use Spring Bean syntax (instead of a custom XML format). The structure of this XML has changed. If you need help migrating your old `workflow.xml` file (which started with a `<wf-config>` tag) to the new format (using `<bean>` tags), an XSLT script is available: [workflow-migration.xsl](#)<sup>626</sup>

The workflow main configuration can be found in the `workflow.xml` file, located in `[dspace]/config/spring/api/workflow.xml`. An example of this workflow configuration file can be found below.

```
<beans>
 <bean class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.XmlWorkflowFactoryImpl">
 <property name="workflowMapping">
 <util:map>
 <entry key="defaultWorkflow" value-ref="defaultWorkflow"/>
<!-- <entry key="123456789/4" value-ref="selectSingleReviewer"/>-->
<!-- <entry key="123456789/5" value-ref="scoreReview"/>-->
 </util:map>
 </property>
 </bean>

 <!--Standard DSpace workflow-->
 <bean name="defaultWorkflow" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow">
 <property name="firstStep" ref="reviewstep"/>
 <property name="steps">
 <util:list>
 <ref bean="reviewstep"/>
 <ref bean="editstep"/>
 <ref bean="finaleditstep"/>
 </util:list>
 </property>
 </bean>

 <bean id="{workflow.id}627"
 class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow">
 <!-- Another workflow configuration-->
 </bean>

 <!-- Role beans. See below. -->

 <!-- Step beans. See below. -->
```

626 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/download/attachments/104566678/workflow-migration.xsl?api=v2&modificationDate=1622152622820&version=1>

627 <http://workflow.id>

```
</beans>
```

workflowFactory bean (org.dspace.xmlworkflow.XmlWorkflowFactoryImpl)

The workflow map contains a mapping between collections in DSpace and a workflow configuration, and is defined by the `workflowMapping` property of the workflow factory. Similar to the configuration of the submission process, the mapping can be done based on the handle of the collection. The mapping with "defaultWorkflow" as the value for the collection mapping, will be used for the collections not occurring in other mapping tags. Each mapping is defined by a "entry" element with two attributes:

- `key`: can either be a collection handle or "defaultWorkflow"
- `value-ref`: the value of this attribute points to one of the workflow configurations defined by the "Workflow" beans

workflow beans (org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Workflow)

The workflow bean is a repeatable XML element and represents one workflow process. It requires the following:

- "name" attribute: a unique name used for the identification of the workflow and used in the workflow to collection mapping
- "firstStep" property: the identifier of the first step of the workflow. This step will be the entry point of this workflow-process. When a new item has been committed to a collection that uses this workflow, the step configured in the "firstStep" property will be the first step the item will go through.
- "steps" property: a list of all steps within this workflow (in the order they will be processed).

role beans (org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role)

Each workflow step has defined "role" property. A role represents one or more existing DSpace EPersons or Groups and can be used to assign them to one or more steps in the workflow process. One role is represented by one "role" bean and has the following:

- "id" attribute: a unique identifier (in one workflow process) for the role
- "description" property: optional attribute to describe the role
- "scope" property: optional attribute that is used to find our group and must have one of the following values, which are defined as constant fields of `org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role.Scope` :
  - **COLLECTION**: The collection value specifies that the group will be configured at the level of the collection. This type of groups is the same as the type that existed in the original workflow system. In case no value is specified for the scope attribute, the workflow framework assumes the role is a collection role.
  - **REPOSITORY**: The repository scope uses groups that are defined at repository level in DSpace. The name attribute should exactly match the name of a group in DSpace.
  - **ITEM**: The item scope assumes that a different action in the workflow will assign a number of EPersons or Groups to a specific workflow-item in order to perform a step. These assignees can be different for each workflow item.
- "name" property: The name specified in the name attribute of a role will be used to lookup an eperson group in DSpace. The lookup will depend on the scope specified in the "scope" attribute:

- **COLLECTION:** The workflow framework will look for a group containing the name specified in the name attribute and the ID of the collection for which this role is used.
- **REPOSITORY:** The workflow framework will look for a group with the same name as the name specified in the `name` attribute.
- **ITEM:** in case the item scope is selected, the name of the role attribute is not required.

```
<bean id="reviewer" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role">
 <property name="scope" value="#{ T(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.Role.Scope).COLLECTION}"/>
</bean>
 <property name="name" value="Reviewer"/>
 <property name="description" value="The people responsible for this step are able
to edit the metadata of incoming submissions, and then accept or reject them."/>
</bean>
```

#### step beans (org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Step)

The step element represents one step in the workflow process. A step represents a number of actions that must be executed by one specified role. In case no `role` attribute is specified, the workflow framework assumes that the DSpace system is responsible for the execution of the step and that no user interface will be available for each of the actions in this step. The step element has the following in order to further configure it:

- "`name`" attribute: The name attribute specifies a unique identifier for the step. This identifier will be used when configuring other steps in order to point to this step. This identifier can also be used when configuring the start step of the workflow item.
- "`userSelectionMethod`" property: This attribute defines the `UserSelectionAction` that will be used to determine how to attach users to this step for a workflow-item. The value of this attribute must refer to the identifier of an action bean in the workflow-actions.xml. Examples of the user attachment to a step are the currently used system of a task pool or as an alternative directly assigning a user to a task.
- "`role`" property: optional attribute that must point to the `id` attribute of a role element specified for the workflow. This role will be used to define the persons and groups used by the `userSelectionMethod`.
- `RequiredUsers`

```
<bean name="reviewstep" class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.Step">
 <property name="userSelectionMethod" ref="claimaction"/>
 <property name="role" ref="reviewer"/>
 <property name="outcomes">
 <util:map>
 <entry key="#{ T(org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.ActionResult).OUTCOME
_COMPLETE}"
 value-ref="editstep"/>
 </util:map>
 </property>
 <property name="actions">
 <util:list>
 <ref bean="reviewaction"/>
 </util:list>
 </property>
</bean>
```

Each step contains a number of actions that the workflow item will go through. In case the action has a user interface, the users responsible for the execution of this step will have to execute these actions before the workflow item can proceed to the next action or the end of the step.

There is also an optional subsection that can be defined for a step part called " `outcomes` ". This can be used to define outcomes for the step that differ from the one specified in the `nextStep` attribute. Each action returns an integer depending on the result of the action. The default value is "0" and will make the workflow item proceed to the next action or to the end of the step.

In case an action returns a different outcome than the default "0", the alternative outcomes will be used to lookup the next step. The " `outcomes` " element contains a number of steps, each having a status attribute. This status attribute defines the return value of an action. The value of the element will be used to lookup the next step the workflow item will go through in case an action returns that specified status.

### 6.8.1.2 Workflow actions configuration

#### API configuration

The workflow actions configuration is located in the `[dspace]/config/spring/api/` directory and is named " `workflow-actions.xml` ". This configuration file describes the different Action Java classes that are used by the workflow framework. Because the workflow framework uses Spring framework for loading these action classes, this configuration file contains Spring configuration.

This file contains the beans for the actions and user selection methods referred to in the `workflow.xml` . In order for the workflow framework to work properly, each of the required actions must be part of this configuration.

```
<beans
 xmlns="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans"
 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xmlns:util="http://www.springframework.org/schema/util"
 xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans http://
www.springframework.org/schema/beans/spring-beans-2.0.xsd
 http://www.springframework.org/schema/util http://
www.springframework.org/schema/util/spring-util-2.0.xsd">

 <!-- At the top are our bean class identifiers --->
 <bean id="{action.api.id628}" class="{class.path}" scope="prototype"/>
 <bean id="{action.api.id629.2}" class="{class.path}" scope="prototype"/>

 <!-- Below the class identifiers come the declarations for our actions/
userSelectionMethods -->

 <!-- Use class workflowActionConfig for an action -->
 <bean id="{action.id630}"
class="oorg.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.WorkflowActionConfig" scope="prototype">
```

<sup>628</sup> <http://action.api.id>

<sup>629</sup> <http://action.api.id>

<sup>630</sup> <http://action.id>

```

 <constructor-arg type="java.lang.String" value="{action.id631

```

Two types of actions are configured in this Spring configuration file:

- User selection action: This type of action is always the first action of a step and is responsible for the user selection process of that step. In case a step has no role attached, no user will be selected and the `NoUserSelectionAction` is used.
- Processing action: This type of action is used for the actual processing of a step. Processing actions contain the logic required to execute the required operations in each step. Multiple processing actions can be defined in one step. These user and the workflow item will go through these actions in the order they are specified in the workflow configuration unless an alternative outcome is returned by one of them.

### User Selection Action

Each user selection action that is used in the workflow configuration refers to a bean definition in the `workflow-actions.xml` file. In order to define a new user selection action, the following XML code is used:

```

<bean id="{action.api.id636.2}"
class="org.dspace.xmlworkflow.state.actions.UserSelectionActionConfig" scope="prototype
">
 <constructor-arg type="java.lang.String" value="{action.api.id637.2}"/>

 <property name="processingAction" ref="{user.selection.bean.id638

```

This bean defines a new `UserSelectionActionConfig` and the following child tags:

---

631 <http://action.id>  
 632 <http://action.api.id>  
 633 <http://action.api.id>  
 634 <http://action.api.id>  
 635 <http://user.selection.bean.id>  
 636 <http://action.api.id>  
 637 <http://action.api.id>  
 638 <http://user.selection.bean.id>

- `constructor-arg`: This is a constructor argument containing the ID of the task. This is the same as the `id` attribute of the bean and is used by the workflow configuration to refer to this action.
- property `processingAction` : This tag refers the the ID of the API bean, responsible for the implementation of the API side of this action. This bean should also be configured in this XML.
- property `requiresUI` : In case this property is true, the workflow framework will expect a user interface for the action. Otherwise the framework will automatically execute the action and proceed to the next one.

### Processing Action

Processing actions are configured similarly to the user selection actions. The only difference is that these processing action beans are implementations of the `WorkflowActionConfig` class instead of the `UserSelectionActionConfig` class.

## 6.8.2 Authorizations

Currently, the authorizations are always granted and revoked based on the tasks that are available for certain users and groups. The types of authorization policies that is granted for each of these is always the same:

- READ
- WRITE
- ADD
- DELETE

## 6.8.3 Database

The workflow uses a separate metadata schema named `workflow` . The fields this schema contains can be found in the `[dspace]/config/registries` directory and in the file `workflow-types.xml` . This schema is only used when using the score reviewing system at the moment, but one could always use this schema if metadata is required for custom workflow steps.

The following tables have been added to the DSpace database. All tables are prefixed with 'cwf\_' to avoid any confusion with the existing workflow related database tables:

### 6.8.3.1 cwf\_workflowitem

The `cwf_workflowitem` table contains the different workflowitems in the workflow. This table has the following columns:

- `workflowitem_id`: The identifier of the workflowitem and primary key of this table
- `item_id`: The identifier of the DSpace item to which this workflowitem refers.
- `collection_id`: The collection to which this workflowitem is submitted.
- `multiple_titles`: Specifies whether the submission has multiple titles (important for submission steps)
- `published_before`: Specifies whether the submission has been published before (important for submission steps)
- `multiple_files`: Specifies whether the submission has multiple files attached (important for submission steps)



### 6.8.3.2 cwf\_collectionrole

The `cwf_collectionrole` table represents a workflow role for one collection. This type of role is the same as the roles that existed in the original workflow meaning that for each collection a separate group is defined to describe the role. The `cwf_collectionrole` table has the following columns:

- `collectionrol_id`: The identifier of the collectionrole and the primary key of this table
- `role_id`: The identifier/name used by the workflow configuration to refer to the collectionrole
- `collection_id`: The collection identifier for which this collectionrole has been defined
- `group_id`: The group identifier of the group that defines the collection role

### 6.8.3.3 cwf\_workflowitemrole

The `cwf_workflowitemrole` table represents roles that are defined at the level of an item. These roles are temporary roles and only exist during the execution of the workflow for that specific item. Once the item is archived, the `workflowitemrole` is deleted. Multiple rows can exist for one `workflowitem` with e.g. one row containing a group and a few containing epersons. All these rows together make up the `workflowitemrole`. The `cwf_workflowitemrole` table has the following columns:

- `workflowitemrole_id`: The identifier of the `workflowitemrole` and the primary key of this table
- `role_id`: The identifier/name used by the workflow configuration to refer to the `workflowitemrole`
- `workflowitem_id`: The `cwf_workflowitem` identifier for which this `workflowitemrole` has been defined
- `group_id`: The group identifier of the group that defines the `workflowitemrole` role
- `eperson_id`: The eperson identifier of the eperson that defines the `workflowitemrole` role

### 6.8.3.4 cwf\_pooltask

The `cwf_pooltask` table represents the different task pools that exist for a `workflowitem`. These task pools can be available at the beginning of a step and contain all the users that are allowed to claim a task in this step. Multiple rows can exist for one task pool containing multiple groups and epersons. The `cwf_pooltask` table has the following columns:

- `pooltask_id`: The identifier of the `pooltask` and the primary key of this table
- `workflowitem_id`: The identifier of the `workflowitem` for which this task pool exists
- `workflow_id`: The identifier of the workflow configuration used for this `workflowitem`
- `step_id`: The identifier of the step for which this task pool was created
- `action_id`: The identifier of the action that needs to be displayed/executed when the user selects the task from the task pool
- `eperson_id`: The identifier of an eperson that is part of the task pool
- `group_id`: The identifier of a group that is part of the task pool

### 6.8.3.5 cwf\_claimtask

The `cwf_claimtask` table represents a task that has been claimed by a user. Claimed tasks can be assigned to users or can be the result of a claim from the task pool. Because a step can contain multiple actions, the claimed task defines the action at which the user has arrived in a particular step. This makes it possible to stop working halfway the step and continue later. The `cwf_claimtask` table contains the following columns:

- `claimtask_id`: The identifier of the `claimtask` and the primary key of this table
- `workflowitem_id`: The identifier of the `workflowitem` for which this task exists
- `workflow_id`: The id of the workflow configuration that was used for this `workflowitem`
- `step_id`: The step that is currently processing the `workflowitem`

- `action_id`: The action that should be executed by the owner of this claimtask
- `owner_id`: References the `eperson` that is responsible for the execution of this task

#### 6.8.3.6 `cwf_in_progress_user`

The `cwf_in_progress_user` table keeps track of the different users that are performing a certain step. This table is used because some steps might require multiple users to perform the step before the `workflowitem` can proceed.

The `cwf_in_progress_user` table contains the following columns:

- `in_progress_user_id`: The identifier of the in progress user and the primary key of this table
- `workflowitem_id`: The identifier of the `workflowitem` for which the user is performing or has performed the step.
- `user_id`: The identifier of the `eperson` that is performing or has performed the task
- `finished`: Keeps track of the fact that the user has finished the step or is still in progress of the execution

## 7 DSpace Reference

- [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)
- [DSpace Item State Definitions](#)(see page 808)
- [Directories and Files](#)(see page 810)
- [Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries](#)(see page 814)
- [Architecture](#)(see page 825)
  - [Application Layer](#)(see page 826)
  - [Business Logic Layer](#)(see page 828)
  - [DSpace Services Framework](#)(see page 853)
  - [Storage Layer](#)(see page 859)
- [History](#)(see page 870)
  - [Changes in 7.x](#)(see page 870)
  - [Changes in 6.x](#)(see page 872)
  - [Changes in 5.x](#)(see page 873)
  - [Changes in 4.x](#)(see page 874)
  - [Changes in 3.x](#)(see page 875)
  - [Changes in 1.8.x](#)(see page 877)
  - [Changes in 1.7.x](#)(see page 877)
  - [Changes in 1.6.x](#)(see page 878)
  - [Changes in 1.5.x](#)(see page 878)
  - [Changes in 1.4.x](#)(see page 881)
  - [Changes in 1.3.x](#)(see page 883)
  - [Changes in 1.2.x](#)(see page 885)
  - [Changes in 1.1.x](#)(see page 889)

### 7.1 Configuration Reference

There are a numbers of ways in which DSpace may be configured and/or customized. This chapter of the documentation will discuss the configuration of the software and will also reference customizations that may be performed in the chapter following.

For ease of use, the Configuration documentation is broken into several parts:

- [General Configuration](#)(see page 726) - addresses general conventions used with configuring the `local.cfg` file, `dspace.cfg` and other configuration files which use similar conventions.
- [The local.cfg Configuration Properties File](#)(see page 731) - describes how to use the `local.cfg` file to store all your locally customized configurations
- [The dspace.cfg Configuration Properties File](#)(see page 734) - specifies the basic `dspace.cfg` file settings (these settings specify the default configuration for DSpace)
- [Optional or Advanced Configuration Settings](#)(see page 805) - contain other more advanced settings that are optional in the `dspace.cfg` configuration file.

The full table of contents follows:

- [General Configuration](#)(see page 726)
  - [Configuration File Syntax](#)(see page 727)
    - [Special Characters](#)(see page 727)
    - [Specifying Multiple Values for Properties](#)(see page 727)
    - [Including other Property Files](#)(see page 728)
  - [Configuration Scheme for Reloading and Overriding](#)(see page 728)

- Why are there multiple copies of some config files?(see page 730)
- The local.cfg Configuration Properties File(see page 731)
- The dspace.cfg Configuration Properties File(see page 734)
  - Main DSpace Configurations(see page 734)
  - General Solr Configuration(see page 736)
  - DSpace Database Configuration(see page 737)
    - To provide the database connection pool externally(see page 739)
  - DSpace Email Settings(see page 739)
    - Wording of E-mail Messages(see page 743)
      - Templates can set message headers(see page 743)
- File Storage(see page 744)
- Logging Configuration(see page 744)
- General Plugin Configuration(see page 747)
- Configuring the Search Engine(see page 747)
- Handle Server Configuration(see page 747)
- Delegation Administration: Authorization System Configuration(see page 748)
- Inheritance of collection default policy (since 7.1)(see page 756)
- Login as feature(see page 757)
- Restricted Item Visibility Settings(see page 757)
- Proxy Settings(see page 757)
- Configuring Media Filters(see page 759)
- Crosswalk and Packager Plugin Settings(see page 762)
  - Configurable MODS Dissemination Crosswalk(see page 762)
  - XSLT-based Crosswalks(see page 764)
    - Testing XSLT Crosswalks(see page 765)
  - Configurable Qualified Dublin Core (QDC) dissemination crosswalk(see page 766)
  - Configuring Crosswalk Plugins(see page 767)
  - Configuring Packager Plugins(see page 767)
- Event System Configuration(see page 767)
- Embargo(see page 770)
- Checksum Checker Settings(see page 771)
- Item Export and Download Settings(see page 772)
- Subscription Emails(see page 773)
- Hiding Metadata(see page 774)
- Settings for the Submission Process(see page 774)
- Configuring the Sherpa/RoMEO Integration(see page 774)
- Configuring Creative Commons License(see page 776)
- WEB User Interface Configurations(see page 778)
- Browse Index Configuration(see page 780)
  - Defining the storage of the Browse Data(see page 780)
  - Defining the Indexes(see page 780)
  - Defining Sort Options(see page 784)
  - Other Browse Options(see page 785)
  - Browse Index Authority Control Configuration(see page 786)
  - Tag cloud(see page 786)
- Links to Other Browse Contexts(see page 788)
- Submission License Substitution Variables(see page 789)
- Syndication Feed (RSS) Settings(see page 790)
- OpenSearch Support(see page 793)
- Content Inline Disposition Threshold(see page 796)
- Multi-file HTML Document/Site Settings(see page 796)
- Sitemap Settings(see page 797)
- Authority Control Settings(see page 798)

- [Configuring Multilingual Support](#)(see page 800)
  - [Setting the Default Language for the Application](#)(see page 800)
  - [Supporting More Than One Language](#)(see page 800)
    - [Changes in dspace.cfg](#)(see page 800)
    - [Related Files](#)(see page 800)
- [Upload File Settings](#)(see page 802)
- [SFX Server \(OpenURL\)](#)(see page 802)
- [Controlled Vocabulary Settings](#)(see page 804)
- [Optional or Advanced Configuration Settings](#)(see page 805)
  - [The Metadata Format and Bitstream Format Registries](#)(see page 805)
    - [Metadata Format Registries](#)(see page 805)
    - [Bitstream Format Registry](#)(see page 806)
  - [Configuring Usage Instrumentation Plugins](#)(see page 806)
    - [The Passive Plugin](#)(see page 806)
    - [The Tab File Logger Plugin](#)(see page 806)
  - [Behavior of the workflow system](#)(see page 806)
  - [Recognizing Web Spiders \(Bots, Crawlers, etc.\)](#)(see page 806)
- [Command-line Access to Configuration Properties](#)(see page 808)

### 7.1.1 General Configuration

In the following sections you will learn about the different configuration files that you will need to edit so that you may make your DSpace installation work.

DSpace provides a number of textual configuration files which may be used to configure your site based on local needs. These include:

- `[dspace]/config/dspace.cfg` : The primary configuration file, which contains the main configurations for DSpace.
- `[dspace]/config/modules/*.cfg` : Module configuration files, which are specific to various modules/features within DSpace.
- `[dspace]/config/local.cfg` : A (optional, but highly recommended) localized copy of configurations/settings specific to your DSpace (see [The local.cfg Configuration Properties File](#)(see page 731) below)
- Additional feature-specific configuration files also exist under `[dspace]/config/`, some of these include:
  - `default.license` : the default deposit license used by DSpace during the submission process (see [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) documentation)
  - `hibernate.cfg.xml` : The Hibernate class configuration for the DSpace database (almost never requires changing)
  - `item-submission.xml` : the default item submission process for DSpace (see [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) documentation)
  - `launcher.xml` : The configuration of the DSpace command-line "launcher" ( `[dspace]/bin/dspace` , see the [DSpace Command Launcher](#)(see page 0) documentation)
  - `log4j2.xml` : The default logging settings for DSpace log files (usually placed in `[dspace]/log` )

- `submission-forms.xml` : The default deposit forms for DSpace, used by `item-submission.xml` (see [Submission User Interface](#)(see page 338) documentation)

As most of these configurations are detailed in other areas of the DSpace documentation (see links above), this section concentrates primarily on the "\*.cfg" configuration files (namely `dspace.cfg` and `local.cfg`).

### 7.1.1.1 Configuration File Syntax

We will use the `dspace.cfg` as our example for input conventions used throughout the system. These same input conventions apply to all DSpace \*.cfg files.

All DSpace \*.cfg files use the [Apache Commons Configuration properties file syntax](#)<sup>639</sup>. This syntax is very similar to a standard Java properties file, with a few notable enhancements described below.

- Comments all start with a "#" symbol. These lines are ignored by DSpace.
- Other settings appear as property/value pairs of the form: `property.name = property value`
- Certain special characters (namely commas) MUST BE escaped. See the "Special Characters" section below
- Values assigned in the same \*.cfg file are "additive", and result in an array of values. See "Specifying Multiple Values for Properties" below.

Some property defaults are "commented out". That is, they have a "#" preceding them, and the DSpace software ignores the config property. This may cause the feature not to be enabled, or, cause a default property to be used.

The property value may contain references to other configuration properties, in the form `${property.name}`. A property may not refer to itself. Examples:

```
dspace.dir = /path/to/dspace
dspace.name = My DSpace

property.name will be equal to "My DSpace is great!"
property.name = ${dspace.name} is great!

property2.name will be equal to "/path/to/dspace/rest/of/path"
property2.name = ${dspace.dir}/rest/of/path

However, this will result in an ERROR, as the property cannot reference itself
property3.name = ${property3.name}
```

### Special Characters

Certain characters in \*.cfg files are considered special characters, and **must** be escaped in any values. The most notable of these special characters include:

- Commas (,) : as they represent lists or arrays of values (see "Specifying Multiple Values for Properties" below)
- Backslashes (\) : as this is the escape character

This means that if a particular setting needs to use one of these special characters in its value, it must be escaped. Here's a few examples:

<sup>639</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_properties.html](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_properties.html)

```

WRONG SETTING
This setting is INVALID. DSpace is expecting your site name to be a single value,
But, this setting would create an array of two values: "DSpace" and "My
Institution"
dspace.name = DSpace, My Institution

CORRECT SETTING (commas is escaped)
Instead, if the name of your DSpace includes a comma, you need to escape it with
"\,"
dspace.name = DSpace\, My Institution

WRONG SETTING
As the backslash is the escape character, this won't work
property.name = \some\path

CORRECT SETTING
If you want a literal backslash, you need to escape it with "\\\"
So, the below value will be returned as "\some\path"
property.name = \\some\\path

```

Additional examples of escaping special characters are provided in the documentation of the [Apache Commons Configuration properties file syntax](#)<sup>640</sup>.

### Specifying Multiple Values for Properties

Because DSpace supports the [Apache Commons Configuration properties file syntax](#)<sup>641</sup>, it is much easier to specify multiple values for a single setting. All you have to do is repeat the same property name multiple times in the same `*.cfg` file.

For example:

```

The below settings define *two* AuthenticationMethods that will be enabled, LDAP
and Password authentication
Notice how the same property name is simply repeated, and passed different values.
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.LDAPAuthentication
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication

Alternatively, you can also define them as a comma-separated list
(In this scenario, you would NOT escape the comma, as you want them to be
considered multiple values)
So, this single line is exactly equivalent to the settings above:
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.LDAPAuthentication,
org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication

```

<sup>640</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_properties.html](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_properties.html)

<sup>641</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_properties.html](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_properties.html)

Please be aware that this ONLY works if you are reusing the exact same configuration in the same configuration file. This causes the values to be "additive" (i.e they are appended to the same list).

However, as you'll see below, the `local.cfg` file always *overrides* settings elsewhere. So, if the above "AuthenticationMethod" plugin was specified in both your `authentication.cfg` and your `local.cfg`, the value(s) in your `local.cfg` would *override* the defaults in your `authentication.cfg` (more on that below).

Additional examples of creating lists or arrays of values are provided in the documentation of the [Apache Commons Configuration properties file syntax](#)<sup>642</sup>.

### Including other Property Files

Because DSpace supports the [Apache Commons Configuration properties file syntax](#)<sup>643</sup>, it also can include/embed property files within other property files by using the "include=" setting.

For example, the `dspace.cfg` includes/embeds all of the default `config/modules/*.cfg` files via a series of "include=" settings near the bottom of the `dspace.cfg`. As an example, here's a small subset of those include calls:

```
defines our modules subdirectory
module_dir = modules

The following lines include specific "authentication*.cfg" files inside your
dspace.cfg
This essentially "embeds" their configurations into your dspace.cfg,
treating them as if they were a single configuration file.
include = ${module_dir}/authentication.cfg
include = ${module_dir}/authentication-ip.cfg
include = ${module_dir}/authentication-ldap.cfg
include = ${module_dir}/authentication-password.cfg
include = ${module_dir}/authentication-shibboleth.cfg
```

This ability to include properties files within others is very powerful, as it allows you to inherit settings from other files, or subdivide large configuration files. Be aware that this essentially causes DSpace to treat all included configurations *as if they were part of the parent file*. This means that, in the above example, as far as DSpace is concerned, all the settings contained within the `authentication*.cfg` files "appear" as though they are specified in the main `dspace.cfg`.

This ability to include other files is also possible with the `local.cfg` file, should you want to subdivide your localized settings into several locally specific configuration files.

### 7.1.1.2 Configuration Scheme for Reloading and Overriding

#### Known limitations to reloadable configurations

<sup>642</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_properties.html](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_properties.html)

<sup>643</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_properties.html](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_properties.html)



While the DSpace API supports dynamically reloading configurations, the user or machine interfaces *may* still cache some configuration settings. This means that while the API layer may reload a new value, that new value may not always affect/change the behavior of your user interface (until you restart Tomcat). Also, please be aware that all DSpace configuration values loaded into Spring beans (for example configurations that appear in Spring XML configuration files or in @Value annotations) **are cached by Spring**. This means that they will not be reloadable within Spring beans until Tomcat is restarted.

Because DSpace supports the [Apache Commons Configuration](#)<sup>644</sup>, its configurations can now be reloaded without restarting your servlet container (e.g. Tomcat). By default, DSpace checks for changes to any of its runtime configuration files every 5 seconds. If a change has been made, the configuration file is reloaded. The 5 second interval is configurable in the `config-definition.xml` (which defines the configuration scheme DSpace uses).

Additionally, DSpace provides the ability to easily override default configuration settings (in `dspace.cfg` or `modules/*.cfg`) using a local.`cfg` file (see [The local.cfg Configuration Properties File](#)<sup>(see page 731)</sup>) or using System Properties / Environment Variables.

Both of these features are defined in DSpace's default "configuration scheme" or "configuration definition" in the `[dspace]/config/config-definition.xml` file. This file defines the Apache Commons Configuration settings that DSpace utilizes by default. It is a valid "configuration definition" file as defined by Apache Commons Configuration. See their [Configuration Definition File Documentation](#)<sup>645</sup> for more details.

You are welcome to customize the `config-definition.xml` to customize your local configuration scheme as you see fit. Any customizations to this file will require restarting your servlet container (e.g. Tomcat).

By default, the DSpace `config-definition.xml` file defines the following configuration scheme:

- *Configuration File Syntax/Sources*: All DSpace configurations are loaded via Properties files (using the [Configuration File Syntax](#)<sup>(see page 727)</sup> detailed above)
  - Note: Apache Commons Configuration does support other configuration sources such as XML configurations or database configurations (see its [Overview documentation](#)<sup>646</sup>). At this time, DSpace does not utilize these other sorts of configurations by default. However, it would be possible to customize your local `config-definition.xml` to load settings from other locations.
- *Configuration Files/Sources*: By default, only two configuration files are loaded into Apache Commons Configuration for DSpace:
  - `local.cfg` (see [The local.cfg Configuration Properties File](#)<sup>(see page 731)</sup> documentation below)
  - `dspace.cfg` (NOTE: all `modules/*.cfg` are loaded by `dspace.cfg` via "`include=`" statements at the end of that configuration file. They are essentially treated as sub-configs which are embedded/included into the `dspace.cfg`)
- *Configuration Override Scheme*: The configuration override scheme is defined as follows. Configurations specified in earlier locations will automatically override any later values:
  - System Properties ( `-D[setting]=[value]` ) override all other options
  - Environment Variables
  - `local.cfg`
  - `dspace.cfg` (and all `modules/*.cfg` files) contain the default values for all settings.
- *Configuration Auto-Reload*: By default, all configuration files are automatically checked every 5 seconds for changes. If they have changed, they are automatically reloaded.

<sup>644</sup> <http://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/>

<sup>645</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration\\_definition\\_file\\_reference](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration_definition_file_reference)

<sup>646</sup> <https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/overview.html>

For more information on customizing our default config-definition.xml file, see the Apache Commons Configuration [documentation on the configuration definition file](#)<sup>647</sup>. Internally, DSpace simply uses the `DefaultConfigurationBuilder` class provided by Apache Commons Configuration to initialize our configuration scheme (and load all configuration files).

#### Customizing the default configuration scheme

Because the `config-definition.xml` file is just a Configuration Definition file for Apache Commons Configuration, you can also choose to customize the above configuration scheme based on your institution's local needs. This includes, but is not limited to, changing the name of "local.cfg", adding additional configuration files/sources, or modifying the override or auto-reload schemes. For more information, see the [Configuration Definition File Documentation](#)<sup>648</sup> from Apache Commons Configuration.

#### 7.1.1.3 Why are there multiple copies of some config files?

It is important to remember that there are **multiple copies of each configuration files in an installation of DSpace**. The primary ones to be aware of are:

1. The "source" configuration file(s) are found under in `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/` or subdirectories. This also includes the `[dspace-source]/local.cfg`
2. The "runtime" configuration file(s) that are found in `[dspace]/config/`

The DSpace server (webapp) and command line programs only look at the *runtime* configuration file(s).

When you are revising/changing your configuration values, it may be tempting to *only edit the runtime file*. **DO NOT** do this. Whenever you rebuild DSpace, it will "reset" your runtime configuration to whatever is in your source directories (the previous runtime configuration is copied to a date suffixed file, should you ever need to restore it).

Instead, we recommend to **always make the same changes to the source version** of the configuration file in addition to the runtime file. In other words, the source and runtime files should always be identical / kept in sync.

One way to keep the two files in synchronization is to edit your files in `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/` and then run the following commands to rebuild DSpace and install the updated configs:

```
cd [dspace-source]/dspace/
mvn package
cd [dspace-source]/dspace/target/dspace-installer
ant update_configs
```

This will copy the source configuration files into the runtime (`[dspace]/config`) directory. Another option to manually sync the files by copying them to each directory.

Please note that there are additional "ant" commands to help with configuration management:

- "ant update\_configs" ==> Moves existing configs in `[dspace]/config/` to \*.old files and replaces them with what is in `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/`

<sup>647</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration\\_definition\\_file\\_reference](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration_definition_file_reference)

<sup>648</sup> [https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto\\_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration\\_definition\\_file\\_reference](https://commons.apache.org/proper/commons-configuration/userguide/howto_combinedbuilder.html#Configuration_definition_file_reference)

- "ant -Doverwrite=false update\_configs" ==> Leaves existing configs in `[dspace]/config/` intact. Just copies new configs from `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/` over to `*.new` files.

## 7.1.2 The `local.cfg` Configuration Properties File

### **build.properties has been replaced by local.cfg**

As of DSpace 6 and above, the old "`build.properties`" configuration file has been replaced by this new "`local.cfg`" configuration file. For individuals who are familiar with the old `build.properties` file, this new `local.cfg` differs in a few key ways:

- Unlike `build.properties`, the `local.cfg` file can be used to override ANY setting in any other configuration file (`dspace.cfg` or `modules/*.cfg`). To override a default setting, simply copy the configuration into your `local.cfg` and change its value(s).
- Unlike `build.properties`, the `local.cfg` file is not utilized during the compilation process (e.g. mvn package). But, it is automatically copied alongside the final `dspace.cfg` into your installation location (`[dspace]/config/`), where it overrides default DSpace settings with your locally specific settings *at runtime*.
- Like `build.properties`, the `local.cfg` file is expected to be specified in the source directory by default (`[dspace-source]`). There is an example (`[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg.EXAMPLE`) provided which you can use to create a `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg`.

### **Many configurations have changed names between DSpace 5 (and below) and DSpace 6 (and above)**

If you are upgrading from an earlier version of DSpace, you will need to be aware that *many* configuration names/keys have changed. Because Apache Commons Configuration allows for auto-overriding of configurations, all configuration names/keys in different `*.cfg` files MUST be uniquely named (otherwise accidental, unintended overriding may occur).

In order to create this powerful ability to override configurations in your `local.cfg`, all `modules/*.cfg` files had their configurations **renamed** to be prepended with the module name. As a basic example, all the configuration settings within the `modules/oai.cfg` configuration now start with `"oai."`.

Additionally, while the `local.cfg` may look *similar* to the old `build.properties`, many of its configurations have slightly different names. *So, simply copying your build.properties into a local.cfg will NOT work.*

This means that DSpace 5.x (or below) configurations are NOT guaranteed compatible with DSpace 6. While you obviously can use your old configurations as a reference, you will need to start with fresh copy of all configuration files, and reapply any necessary configuration changes (this has always been the recommended procedure). However, as you'll see below, you'll likely want to do that anyways in order to take full advantage of the new `local.cfg` file.

It is possible to easily override default DSpace configurations (from `dspace.cfg` or `modules/*.cfg` files) in your own `local.cfg` configuration file.

An example `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg.EXAMPLE` is provided with DSpace. The example only provides a few key configurations which most DSpace sites are likely to need to customize. However, you may add (or remove) any other configuration to your `local.cfg` to customize it as you see fit.

To get started, simply create your own `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/local.cfg` based on the example, e.g.

```
cd [dspace-source]/dspace/config/
cp local.cfg.EXAMPLE local.cfg
```

You can then begin to edit your `local.cfg` with your local settings for DSpace. There are a few key things to note about the `local.cfg` file:

- **Override any default configurations:** Any setting in your `local.cfg` will automatically OVERRIDE a setting of the same name in the `dspace.cfg` or any `modules/*.cfg` file. This also means that you can copy ANY configuration (from `dspace.cfg` or any `modules/*.cfg` file) into your `local.cfg` to specify a new value.
  - For example, specifying `dspace.url` in `local.cfg` will override the default value of `dspace.url` in `dspace.cfg`.
  - Also, specifying `oai.solr.url` in `local.cfg` will override the default value of `oai.solr.url` in `config/modules/oai.cfg`
- **Configuration Syntax:** The `local.cfg` file uses the Apache Commons Configuration Property file syntax (like all `*.cfg` files). For more information see the section on [Configuration File Syntax](#) (see page 727) above.
  - This means the `local.cfg` also supports enhanced features like the ability to include other config files (via `"include="` statements).
- **Override local.cfg via System Properties:** As needed, you also are able to OVERRIDE settings in your `local.cfg` by specifying them as System Properties or Environment Variables.
  - For example, if you wanted to change your `dspace.dir` in development/staging environment, you could specify it as a System Property (e.g. `-Ddspace.dir=[new-location]`). This new value will override any value in *both* `local.cfg` and `dspace.cfg`.

When you build DSpace (e.g. `mvn package`), this `local.cfg` file will be automatically copied to `[dspace]/config/local.cfg`. Similar to the `dspace.cfg`, the "runtime" configuration (used by DSpace) is the one in `[dspace]/config/local.cfg`. See the [Why are there multiple copies of some config files?](#) (see page 730) question above for more details on the runtime vs source configuration.

Here's a very basic example of settings you could place into your `local.cfg` file (with inline comments):

```
This is a simple example local.cfg file which shows off options
```

```

for creating your own local.cfg

This overrides the default value of "dspace.dir" in dspace.cfg
dspace.dir = C:/dspace/

This overrides the default value of "dspace.server.url" in dspace.cfg
dspace.server.url = https://dspace.myuniversity.edu/server

The overrides the default "dspace.ui.url" setting it to the same value as my
"baseUrl" above
dspace.ui.url = https://dspace.myuniversity.edu

If our database settings are the same as the default ones in dspace.cfg,
then, we may be able to simply customize the db.username and db.password
db.username = myuser
db.password = mypassword

For DSpace, we want the LDAP and Password authentication plugins enabled
This overrides the default AuthenticationMethod in /config/modules/
authentication.cfg
Since we specified the same key twice, these two values are appended (see
Configuration File Syntax above)
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.LDAPAuthentication
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.authenticate.AuthenticationMethod =
org.dspace.authenticate.PasswordAuthentication

We also can reference other configurations in values.
For instance, we can set the "mail.admin" and the "feedback.recipient" to be the
same email
mail.admin = myemail@myuniversity.edu
feedback.recipient = ${mail.admin}

For the example, we'll override the default oai.path in /config/modules/oai.cfg
This puts our OAI-PMH interface at ${dspace.server.url}/oaipmh
oai.path = oaipmh

We'll also override the default oai.solr.url in /config/modules/oai.cfg
Notice here we're referencing a configuration (solr.server) that only exists in
dspace.cfg
This is allowed. Your local.cfg can reference configs from other *.cfg files.
oai.solr.url = ${solr.server}/oaipmh

Finally, this local.cfg also supports adding "include=" statements, to include
additional local configuration files.
In this example, a local-rest.cfg and local-curate.cfg (in the same directory)
will automatically be included as part of this local.cfg.
This allows you to subdivide you local configs in as many (or few) config files
as you desire.
include = local-rest.cfg
include = local-curate.cfg

```

### 7.1.3 The `dspace.cfg` Configuration Properties File

#### Any `dspace.cfg` setting can be overridden in your `local.cfg`

Remember, *any* of the below `dspace.cfg` settings can be copied into your `local.cfg` configuration file and overridden (see page 731). So, rather than editing the `dspace.cfg` (or any of the `modules/*.cfg`), it's recommended to simply override the default values in your `local.cfg`. That way, your `local.cfg` can serve as the record of which configurations you have actually tweaked in your DSpace, which may help to simplify future upgrades.

The `dspace.cfg` contains basic information about a DSpace installation, including system path information, network host information, and other like items. It is the default configuration file for DSpace, used by DSpace when it is actively running. However, as noted above, any of these default configurations may be overridden in your own `local.cfg` configuration file.

#### 7.1.3.1 Main DSpace Configurations

Property:	<code>dspace.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>/dspace</code>
Informational Note:	Root directory of DSpace installation. Omit the trailing slash '/'. Note that this setting is used by default in other settings, e.g. <code>assetstore.dir</code> . <i>(On Windows be sure to use forward slashes for the directory path! For example: "C:/dspace" is a valid path for Window.)</i>
Property:	<code>dspace.server.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>http://dspacetest.myu.edu:8080</code>
Informational Note:	Main URL at which DSpace backend ("server" webapp) is publicly available. If using port 80 (HTTP) or 443 (HTTPS), you may omit the port number. Otherwise the port number must be included. <b>Do not include a trailing slash (' / ')</b> . In Production, you must use HTTPS if you wish to access the REST API from a different server/domain.
Property:	<code>dspace.ui.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>dspace.ui.url = http://dspacetest.myu.edu:4000</code>

Informational note	<p>Main URL at which the DSpace frontend (Angular User Interface) is publicly available. If using port 80 (HTTP) or 443 (HTTPS), you may omit the port number. Otherwise the port number must be included. <b>Do not include a trailing slash (' / ')</b>. In Production, you should be using HTTPS for security purposes.</p> <p>This URL should match the URL you type in the browser to access your User Interface. In the backend, this URL is primarily used to build UI-based URLs in sitemaps, email messages, etc. Therefore, it need not be set on initial installation, but it should be configured as soon as your user interface is installed. If you are not using the DSpace UI (and running the backend "headless"), this may be set to the URL of whatever you consider your primary "user interface".</p>
Property:	<code>dspace.name</code>
Example Value:	<code>dspace.name = DSpace at My University</code>
Informational Note:	Short and sweet site name, used in e-mails, exports and machine interfaces (e.g. OAI-PMH). It is not currently used by the Angular UI.

### 7.1.3.2 General Solr Configuration

DSpace uses Solr<sup>649</sup> for various indexing purposes, and uses a pool of open connections to manage communication with Solr. These properties configure the connections between DSpace and Solr.

See also the additional Solr configuration properties for specific indexes such as search, statistics, authority and OAI PMH.

Property:	<code>solr.server</code>
Example Value:	<code>solr.server = http://localhost:8983/solr</code>
Informational Note:	Base URL to the Solr server. Specific indexes append to this value.
Property:	<code>solr.client.maxTotalConnections</code>
Example Value:	<code>solr.client.maxTotalConnections = 20</code>
Informational Note:	The maximum number of connections that will be opened between DSpace and Solr.

---

<sup>649</sup> <https://solr.apache.org/>

Property:	<code>solr.client.maxPerRoute</code>
Example Value:	<code>solr.client.maxPerRoute = 15</code>
Informational Note:	The maximum number of connections that will be opened between DSpace and a specific Solr instance (if you have more than one).
Property:	<code>solr.client.keepAlive</code>
Example Value:	<code>solr.client.keepAlive = 5000</code>
Informational Note:	The default amount of time that a connection in use will be held open, in milliseconds. Solr may specify a different keep-alive interval and it will be obeyed.
Property:	<code>solr.client.timeToLive</code>
Example Value:	<code>solr.client.timeToLive = 600</code>
Informational Note:	The maximum amount of time before an open connection will be closed when idle, in seconds. New connections will be opened as needed, subject to the above limits.

### 7.1.3.3 DSpace Database Configuration

Many of the database configurations are software-dependent. That is, it will be based on the choice of database software being used. Currently, DSpace properly supports PostgreSQL and Oracle.

#### **Oracle Support Deprecated - Will no longer be supported in 2023**

Oracle support has been deprecated in DSpace. It will no longer be supported as of June/July 2023. See <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/8214>

We recommend all users install DSpace on PostgreSQL (see above)

Property:	<code>db.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.url = jdbc:postgresql://localhost:5432/dspace</code>



Informational Note:	The above value is the default value when configuring with PostgreSQL. When using Oracle, use this value: <code>jdbc.oracle.thin:@//host:port/dspace</code>
Property:	<code>db.username</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.username = dspace</code>
Informational Note:	In the installation directions, the administrator is instructed to create the user "dspace" who will own the database "dspace".
Property:	<code>db.password</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.password = dspacepassword</code>
Informational Note:	This is the password that was prompted during the installation process (cf. 3.2.3. Installation)
Property:	<code>db.schema</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.schema = public</code>
Informational Note:	<p>If your database contains multiple schemas, you can avoid problems with retrieving the definitions of duplicate objects by specifying the schema name here that is used for DSpace by uncommenting the entry. This property is optional.</p> <p>For PostgreSQL databases, this is often best set to "public" (default schema). For Oracle databases, the schema is usually equivalent to the username of your database account. So, for Oracle, this may be set to <code>\${db.username}</code> in most scenarios.</p>
Property:	<code>db.maxconnections</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.maxconnections = 30</code>
Informational Note:	Maximum number of Database connections in the connection pool
Property:	<code>db.maxwait</code>

Example Value:	<code>db.maxwait = 5000</code>
Informational Note:	Maximum time to wait before giving up if all connections in pool are busy (in milliseconds).
Property:	<code>db.maxidle</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.maxidle = -1</code>
Informational Note:	Maximum number of idle connections in pool. (-1 = unlimited)
Property:	<code>db.cleanDisabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>db.cleanDisabled = true</code>
Informational Note:	This is a developer-based setting which determines whether you are allowed to run <code>./dspace database clean</code> to completely delete all content and tables in your database. This should always be set to "true" in Production to protect against accidentally deleting all your content by running that command. (Default is set to true)

To provide the database connection pool externally

Alternately, you may supply a configured connection pool out of JNDI. The object must be named `jdbc/dspace` (the full path is `java:comp/env/jdbc/dspace`). DSpace will always look up this name and, if found, will use the returned object as its database connection pool. If not found, the above `db.*` properties will be used to create the pool.

If you are using Tomcat, then the object might be defined using a `<Resource>` element, or connected to a `<Resource>` child of `<GlobalNamingResources>` using a `<ResourceLink>` element. See your Servlet container's documentation for details of configuring the JNDI initial context. For example, Tomcat provides a useful [JNDI Datasource How-to](#)<sup>650</sup>

Earlier releases of DSpace provided a configuration property `db.jndi` to specify the name to be looked up, but that has been removed. The name is specified in `config/spring/api/core-hibernate.xml` if you really need to change it.

#### 7.1.3.4 DSpace Email Settings

The configuration of email is simple and provides a mechanism to alert the person(s) responsible for different features of the DSpace software.

---

<sup>650</sup> <https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-9.0-doc/jndi-datasource-examples-howto.html>

DSpace will look up a `javax.mail.Session` object in JNDI and, if found, will use that to send email. Otherwise it will create a `Session` using some of the properties detailed below.

Property:	<code>mail.server</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.server = smtp.my.edu</code>
Informational Note:	The address on which your outgoing SMTP email server can be reached.
Property:	<code>mail.server.username</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.server.username = myusername</code>
Informational Note:	SMTP mail server authentication username, if required. This property is optional.
Property:	<code>mail.server.password</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.server.password = mypassword</code>
Informational Note:	SMTP mail server authentication password, if required. This property is optional.
Property:	<code>mail.server.port</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.server.port = 25</code>
Informational Note:	The port on which your SMTP mail server can be reached. By default, port 25 is used. Change this setting if your SMTP mailserver is running on another port. This property is optional.
Property:	<code>mail.from.address</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.from.address = dspace-noreply@myu.edu</code>
Informational Note:	The "From" address for email. Change the 'myu.edu' to the site's host name.
Property:	<code>feedback.recipient</code>

Example Value:	<code>feedback.recipient = dspace-help@myu.edu</code>
Informational Note:	When a user clicks on the feedback link/feature, the information will be sent to the email address of choice. This configuration is currently limited to only one recipient. This is also the email address displayed on the contacts page.
Property:	<code>mail.admin</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.admin = dspace-help@myu.edu</code>
Example Value:	Email address of the general site administrator (Webmaster). System notifications/reports and other sysadmin emails are sent to this email address.
Property:	<code>mail.admin.name</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.admin.name = DSpace Administrator</code>
Example Value:	Name associated with the <code>mail.admin</code> email address.
Property:	<code>alert.recipient</code>
Example Value:	<code>alert.recipient = john.doe@myu.edu</code>
Informational Note:	Enter the recipient for server errors and alerts. This property is optional and defaults to the <code>\${mail.admin}</code> setting
Property:	<code>registration.notify</code>
Example Value:	<code>registration.notify = mike.smith@myu.edu</code>
Informational Note:	Enter the recipient that will be notified when a new user registers on DSpace. This property is optional & defaults to no value.
Property:	<code>mail.charset</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.charset = UTF-8</code>

Informational Note:	Set the default mail character set. This may be over-ridden by providing a line inside the email template '#set(\$charset = "encoding")'. Otherwise this default is used.
Property:	<code>mail.allowed.referrers</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.allowed.referrers = localhost</code>
Informational Note:	A comma separated list of hostnames that are allowed to refer browsers to email forms. This property is optional. <b>UNSUPPORTED in DSpace 7.0</b>
Property:	<code>mail.extraproperties</code>
Example Value:	<pre>mail.extraproperties = mail.smtp.socketFactory.port=465, \     mail.smtp.socketFactory.class=javax.net.ssl. SSLSocketFactory, \     mail.smtp.socketFactory.fallback=false</pre>
Informational Note:	If you need to pass extra settings to the Java mail library. Comma separated, equals sign between the key and the value. This property is optional.
Property:	<code>mail.server.disabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.server.disabled = false</code>
Informational Note:	An option is added to disable the mailserver. By default, this property is set to 'false'. By setting value to 'true', DSpace will not send out emails. It will instead log the subject of the email which should have been sent. This is especially useful for development and test environments where production data is used when testing functionality. This property is optional.
Property:	<code>mail.session.name</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.session.name = myDSpace</code>

Informational Note:	Specifies the name of a <code>javax.mail.Session</code> object stored in JNDI under <code>java:comp/env/mail</code> . The default value is "Session".
Property:	<code>default.language</code>
Example Value:	<code>default.language = en_US</code>
Informational Note:	If no other language is explicitly stated in the <code>submission-forms.xml</code> , the default language will be attributed to the metadata values. See also <a href="#">Multilingual Support</a> (see page 544)
Property:	<code>mail.message.headers</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.message.headers = subject</code> <code>mail.message.headers = charset</code>
Informational Note:	When processing a message template, setting a Velocity variable whose name is one of the values of this configuration property will add or replace a message header of the same name, using the value of the variable as the header's value. See "Templates can set message headers".
Property:	<code>mail.welcome.enabled</code>
Example Value:	<code>mail.welcome.enabled = true</code>
Informational Note:	Enable a "welcome letter" to the newly-registered user. By default this is <code>false</code> . See the <code>welcome</code> email template.

### Wording of E-mail Messages

Sometimes DSpace automatically sends e-mail messages to users, for example, to inform them of a new work flow task, or as a subscription e-mail alert. The wording of e-mails can be changed by editing the relevant file in `[dspace]/config/emails`. Each file is commented. Be careful to keep the right number 'placeholders' (e.g. `params[2]`) for the template's positional parameters.

Each file is a [Velocity](#)<sup>651</sup> template. You can use the full [Velocity Template Language](#)<sup>652</sup> to help you customize messages. There are two Velocity variables pre-defined by DSpace when processing an e-mail template:

<sup>651</sup> <https://velocity.apache.org/>

<sup>652</sup> <https://velocity.apache.org/engine/1.7/vtl-reference.html>

- `params` is the array of message parameters provided by the DSpace code which is sending the message. These are indexed by number, starting at zero.
- `config` is the table of DSpace configuration properties (such as `dspace.name`). These are looked up using `config.get(property name)`.

### Sample message template

```
This is a comment. It will not be part of the message.
This is the body of the message. The code which sends it supplied two parameters: ${params[0]} and ${params[1]}.
The name of this DSpace instance is ${config.get('dspace.name')} and you can browse it at ${config.get('dspace.url')}.
```

Also see the template `config/emails/register` for an example of each.

**Note:** You should replace the contact-information "`dspace-help@myu.edu`<sup>653</sup> or call us at xxx-555-xxxx" with your own contact details in:

```
config/emails/change_password
config/emails/register
```

Templates can set message headers

A template can set specific message headers by defining Velocity variables which have been enabled for this use by naming them as values of the DSpace configuration property `mail.message.headers`. In most cases the name of the Velocity variable will become the header's name, and the value of the variable, the header's value. For example: `#set(My-Header, "Hello World!")` in a template will result in the message having a header `My-Header: Hello World!` if DSpace's `mail.message.headers` includes "My-Header".

A few Velocity variable names are special in DSpace email templates:

name	meaning
subject	supplies the Subject: header's value.
charset	sets the <code>charset</code> parameter of the <code>Content-Type:</code> header of the bodypart, when there is a single bodypart. It also causes the subject value to be treated as being encoded in this charset. If not set, the charset defaults to US-ASCII as specified in RFC 2046. If there are multiple bodyparts, all are assumed to be encoded in US-ASCII and <code>charset</code> has no effect on them.

---

<sup>653</sup> <mailto:dspace-help@myu.edu>

**Sample message template**

```
This is a comment. It will not be part of the sent message.
#set($subject = "This will be the Subject: of the message")
This is the body of the message.
```

### 7.1.3.5 File Storage

Beginning with DSpace 6, your file storage location (aka bitstore) is now defined in the `[dspace]/config/spring/api/bitstore.xml` Spring configuration file. By default it is defined as the `[dspace]/assetstore/`. More information on modifying your file storage location can be found at [Configuring the Bitstream Store](#) (see page 866) in the [Storage Layer](#) (see page 859) documentation.

DSpace supports multiple options for storing your repository bitstreams (uploaded files). The files are not stored in the database, instead they are provided via a configured "assetstore" or "bitstore".

By default, the assetstore is simply a directory on your server ( `[dspace]/assetstore/` ) under which bitstreams (files) are stored by DSpace.

At this time, DSpace supports two primary locations for storing your files:

1. Your local filesystem (used by default), specifically under the `[dspace]/assetstore/` directory
2. OR, [Amazon S3](#)<sup>654</sup> (requires your own Amazon S3 account)

More information on configuring or customizing the storage location of your files can be found in the [Storage Layer](#) (see page 859) documentation.

### 7.1.3.6 Logging Configuration

Logging configuration has now moved to `${dspace.dir}/config/log4j2.xml`

Property:	<code>log.init.config</code>
Example Value:	<code>log.init.config = \${dspace.dir}/config/log4j2.xml</code>

<sup>654</sup> <https://aws.amazon.com/s3/>



Informational Note:	<p>This is where your logging configuration file is located. You may override the default log4j configuration by providing your own. Existing alternatives are:</p> <pre style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;">log.init.config = \${dspace.dir}/config/log4j2.xml log.init.config = \${dspace.dir}/config/log4j2-console.xml</pre>
Property:	<code>log.dir</code> ( <i>defined in log4j2.xml</i> )
Example value:	<code>log.dir = \${log4j:configParentLocation}/../log</code>
Informational Note:	<p>This is where to put the DSpace logs. The default setting (shown above) writes all DSpace logs to the <code>\${dspace.dir}/log/</code> directory.</p>
Property:	<code>loglevel.dspace</code> ( <i>defined in log4j2.xml</i> )
Example value:	<code>loglevel.dspace = INFO</code>
Informational Note:	<p>Log level for all DSpace-specific code (<code>org.dspace.*</code> packages). By default, DSpace only provides general INFO logs (in order to keep log sizes reasonable). As necessary, you can temporarily change this setting to any of the following (ordered for most information to least): DEBUG, INFO, WARN, ERROR, FATAL</p> <p>Please be aware we do not recommend running at the DEBUG level in Production for significant periods of time, as it will cause the logs to be extremely large in size.</p>
Property:	<code>loglevel.other</code> ( <i>defined in log4j2.xml</i> )
Example value:	<code>loglevel.other = INFO</code>
Informational Note:	<p>Log level for other third-party tools/APIs used by DSpace (non-DSpace specific code). By default, DSpace only provides general INFO logs (in order to keep log sizes reasonable). As necessary, you can temporarily change this setting to any of the following (ordered for most information to least): DEBUG, INFO, WARN, ERROR, FATAL</p> <p>Please be aware we do not recommend running at the DEBUG level in Production for significant periods of time, as it will cause the logs to be extremely large in size.</p>

### 7.1.3.7 General Plugin Configuration

<b>Property:</b>	<code>plugin.classpath</code>
Example Value:	<code>/opt/dspace/plugins/aPlugin.jar:/opt/dspace/moreplugins</code>
Informational Note:	Search path for third-party plugin classes. This is a colon-separated list of directories and JAR files, each of which will be searched for plugin classes after looking in all the places where DSpace classes are found. In this way you can designate one or more locations for plugin files which will not be affected by DSpace upgrades.

### 7.1.3.8 Configuring the Search Engine

DSpace's search module is also known as "Discovery" and utilizes Apache Solr for indexing. It provides up-to-date features, such as filtering/faceting, hit highlighting, search snippets, etc. Detailed documentation is available for customization, see [Discovery](#)(see page 522).

### 7.1.3.9 Handle Server Configuration

The CNRI Handle system is a 3rd party service for maintaining persistent URL's. For a nominal fee, you can register a handle prefix for your repository. As a result, your repository items will be also available under the links [<<handle prefix>>/<<item id>>](http://handle.net/). As the base url of your repository might change or evolve, the persistent handle.net URL's secure the consistency of links to your repository items. For complete information regarding the Handle server, the user should consult [Handle.Net Registry Support](#)(see page 613).

Property:	<code>handle.canonical.prefix</code>
Example Value	<code>handle.canonical.prefix = http://hdl.handle.net/ handle.canonical.prefix = \${dspace.ui.url}/ handle/</code>

Informational Note:	Canonical Handle URL prefix. By default, DSpace is configured to use <a href="http://hdl.handle.net/">http://hdl.handle.net/</a> as the canonical URL prefix when generating <code>dc.identifier.uri</code> during submission, and in the 'identifier' displayed in item record pages. If you do not subscribe to CNRI's handle service, you can change this to match the persistent URL service you use, or you can force DSpace to use your site's URL, e.g. <code>handle.canonical.prefix = \${dspace.ui.url}/handle/</code> . Note that this will not alter <code>dc.identifier.uri</code> metadata for existing items (only for subsequent submissions).
Property:	<code>handle.prefix</code>
Example Value	<code>handle.prefix = 1234.56789</code>
Informational Note:	The default installed by DSpace is <code>123456789</code> but you will replace this upon receiving a handle from CNRI.
Property:	<code>handle.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>handle.dir = \${dspace.dir}/handle-server</code>
Informational Note:	The default files, as shown in the Example Value is where DSpace will install the files used for the Handle Server.
Property	<code>handle.additional.prefixes</code>
Example Value	<code>handle.additional.prefixes = 1234.56789.0, 1234.56789.1, 987</code>
Informational Note:	List any additional prefixes that need to be managed by this handle server. For example, any handle prefixes that came from an external repository whose items have now been added to this DSpace. Multiple additional prefixes may be added in a comma separated list.

### 7.1.3.10 Delegation Administration: Authorization System Configuration

It is possible to delegate the administration of Communities and Collections. This functionality eliminates the need for an Administrator Superuser account for these purposes. An EPerson that will be attributed Delegate Admin rights for a certain community or collection will also "inherit" the rights for underlying collections and items. As a result, a community admin will also be collection admin for all underlying collections. Likewise, a collection admin will also gain admin rights for all the items owned by the collection.

Authorization to execute the functions that are allowed to user with WRITE permission on an object will be attributed to be the ADMIN of the object (e.g. community/collection/admin will be always allowed to edit metadata of the object). The default will be "true" for all the configurations.

Community Administration: Subcommunities and Collections	
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.create-subelement</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.create-subelement = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to create subcommunities or collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.delete-subelement</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.delete-subelement = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to delete subcommunities or collections.
Community Administration: Policies and The group of administrators	
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.policies</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.policies = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate the community policies.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.admin-group</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.admin-group = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to edit the group of community admins.
Community Administration: Collections in the above Community	

Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.policies</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.policies = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate the policies for underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.template-item</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.template-item = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate the item template for underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.submitters</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.submitters = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate the group of submitters for underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.workflows</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.workflows = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate the workflows for underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.admin-group</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.collection.admin-group = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate the group of administrators for underlying collections.
Community Administration: Items Owned by Collections in the Above Community	

Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.delete</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.delete = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to delete items in underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.withdraw</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.withdraw = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to withdraw items in underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.reinstate</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.reinstate = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to reinstate items in underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.policies</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.policies = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administrate item policies in underlying collections.
Community Administration: Bundles of Bitstreams, related to items owned by collections in the above Community	
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.create-bitstream</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.create-bitstream = true</code>

Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to create additional bitstreams in items in underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.delete-bitstream</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.delete-bitstream = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to delete bitstreams from items in underlying collections.
Property:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.cc-license</code>
Example Value:	<code>core.authorization.community-admin.item.cc-license = true</code>
Informational Note:	Authorization for a delegated community administrator to administer licenses from items in underlying collections.
Collection Administration: The properties for collection administrators work similar to those of community administrators, with respect to collection administration.	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>core.authorization.collection-admin.policies core.authorization.collection-admin.template-item core.authorization.collection-admin.submitters core.authorization.collection-admin.workflows core.authorization.collection-admin.admin-group</pre> </div>

<p>Collection Administration: Item owned by the above Collection. The properties for collection administrators work similar to those of community administrators, with respect to administration of items in underlying collections.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"><pre>core.authorization.collection-admin.item.delete core.authorization.collection-admin.item.withdraw core.authorization.collection-admin.item.reinstantiate core.authorization.collection-admin.item.policies</pre></div>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------



<p>Collection Administrators: Bundles of bitstreams, related to items owned by collections in the above Community. The properties for collection administrators work similar to those of community administrators, with respect to administration of bitstreams related to items in underlying collections.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><pre>core.authorization.collection-admin.item.create-bitstream core.authorization.collection-admin.item.delete-bitstream core.authorization.collection-admin.item-admin.cc-license</pre></div>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<p>Item Administration. The properties for item administrators work similar to those of community and collection administrators, with respect to administration of items in underlying collections.</p>	<pre>core.authorization.item-admin.policies</pre>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

<p>Item Administration: Bundles of bitstreams, related to items owned by collections in the above Community. The properties for item administrators work similar to those of community and collection administrators, with respect to administration of bitstreams related to items in underlying collections.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <pre>core.authorization.item-admin.create-bitstream core.authorization.item-admin.delete-bitstream core.authorization.item-admin.cc-license</pre> </div>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 7.1.3.11 Inheritance of collection default policy (since 7.1)

Property:	core.authorization.installitem.inheritance-read.append-mode
Example Value:	core.authorization.installitem.inheritance-read.append-mode = false
Informational Note:	<p>Determine if the DEFAULT READ policies of the collection should be always appended to the policies of the new item (property set to <b>true</b>) or used only when no other READ policy has been defined in the submission process (property set to <b>false</b>). Please note that also in append mode an open access default policy will be NOT inherited if other policies have been defined in the submission (i.e. if the item was restricted)</p>

### 7.1.3.12 Login as feature

Property:	<code>webui.user.assumelogin</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.user.assumelogin = true</code>
Informational Note:	Determine if super administrators (those whom are in the Administrators group) can login as another user from the "edit eperson" page. This is useful for debugging problems in a running DSpace instance, especially in the workflow process. The default value is false, i.e., no one may assume the login of another user.

### 7.1.3.13 Restricted Item Visibility Settings

By default RSS feeds and subscription emails will include ALL items regardless of permissions set on them. If you wish to only expose items through these channels where the ANONYMOUS user is granted READ permission, then set the following options to false.

Property:	<code>harvest.includerestricted.rss</code>
Example Value:	<code>harvest.includerestricted.rss = true</code>
Informational Note:	When set to 'true' (default), items that haven't got the READ permission for the ANONYMOUS user, will be included in RSS feeds anyway.
Property:	<code>harvest.includerestricted.subscription</code>
Example Value:	<code>harvest.includerestricted.subscription = true</code>
Informational Note:	When set to true (default), items that haven't got the READ permission for the ANONYMOUS user, will be included in Subscription emails anyway.

### 7.1.3.14 Proxy Settings

These settings for proxy are commented out by default. Uncomment and specify both properties if proxy server is required for external http requests. Use regular host name without port number.

Property:	<code>http.proxy.host</code>
-----------	------------------------------

Example Value	<code>http.proxy.host = proxy.myu.edu</code>
Informational Note	Enter the host name without the port number. <i>Only currently used for Creative Commons licensing feature (to contact their API), and Sitemap generation (to ping search server regarding updates)</i>
Property:	<code>http.proxy.port</code>
Example Value	<code>http.proxy.port = 2048</code>
Informational Note	Enter the port number for the proxy server. <i>Only currently used for Creative Commons licensing feature (to contact their API), and Sitemap generation (to ping search server regarding updates)</i>
Property	<code>useProxies</code>
Example Value:	<code>useProxies = true</code>
Informational Note:	<p>As of DSpace 7 (and above), this setting defaults to <b>true</b>. If "useProxies" is enabled, the authentication and statistics logging code will read the X-Forwarded-For header in order to determine the correct client IP address.</p> <p>As the User Interface uses <a href="https://angular.io/guide/universal">Angular Universal</a><sup>655</sup> (for SEO support), the proxy server that comes with Angular Universal is always enabled. By default, only your local server (127.0.0.1) and the public IP address of `dspace.ui.url` are "trusted" as a proxy. If your DSpace instance is protected by external proxy server, you may need to update the "proxies.trusted.ipranges" property below.</p> <p>This also affects IPAuthentication, and should be enabled for that to work properly if your installation uses a proxy server.</p>
Property	<code>proxies.trusted.ipranges</code>
Example Value:	<code>proxies.trusted.ipranges = 127.0.0.1</code>

---

655 <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

Informational Note:	By default, only proxies running on localhost (127.0.0.1) and the <code>dspace.ui.url</code> (public IP address) are "trusted". This allows our Angular User Interface to communicate with the REST API via a trusted proxy, which is required for <a href="#">Angular Universal</a> <sup>656</sup> (for SEO support). You can specify a range by only listing the first three ip-address blocks, e.g. 128.177.243 You can list multiple IP addresses or ranges by comma-separating them.
Property	<code>proxies.trusted.include_ui_ip</code>
Example Value:	<code>proxies.trusted.include_ui_ip = true</code>
Informational Note:	This setting specifies whether to automatically trust IP address of the <code>dspace.ui.url</code> as a proxy. By default, this is always set to true to ensure the UI is fully trusted by the backend. However, if you are not using the Angular UI, you may choose to set this to "false" in order to only trust proxies running on localhost (127.0.0.1) by default.
Property	<code>server.forward-headers-strategy</code>
Example Value:	<code>server.forward-headers-strategy = FRAMEWORK</code>
Informational Note:	This is a Spring Boot setting which may be overridden/specified in your <code>local.cfg</code> . By default, Spring Boot does not automatically use X-Forwarded-* Headers when generating links (and similar) in the REST API. When using a proxy in front of the REST API, you may need to modify this setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NATIVE = allows your web server to natively support standard Forwarded headers</li> <li>• FRAMEWORK = enables Spring Framework's built in filter to manage these headers in Spring Boot. (This value may be useful to set for DSpace if you find that X-Forwarded headers are not working)</li> <li>• NONE = default value. Forwarded headers are ignored</li> </ul> For more information see the Spring Boot docs at <a href="https://docs.spring.io/spring-boot/docs/current/reference/html/howto.html#howto-use-behind-a-proxy-server">https://docs.spring.io/spring-boot/docs/current/reference/html/howto.html#howto-use-behind-a-proxy-server</a>

### 7.1.3.15 Configuring Media Filters

Media or Format Filters are classes used to generate derivative or alternative versions of content or bitstreams within DSpace. For example, the PDF Media Filter will extract textual content from PDF bitstreams, the JPEG Media Filter can create thumbnails from image bitstreams.

---

<sup>656</sup> <https://angular.io/guide/universal>

Media Filters are configured as Named Plugins, with each filter also having a separate configuration setting (in *dspace.cfg*) indicating which formats it can process. The default configuration is shown below.

Property:	<code>filter.plugins</code>
Example Value:	<pre>filter.plugins = PDF Text Extractor filter.plugins = Html Text Extractor filter.plugins = Word Text Extractor filter.plugins = JPEG Thumbnail</pre>
Informational Note:	This setting lists the names of all enabled MediaFilter or FormatFilter plugins. To enable multiple plugins, list them on separate lines (as shown above) or provide a comma separated list.
Property:	<code>plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter</code>
Example Value:	<pre>plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFFilter = PDF Text Extractor plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = org.dspace.app.mediafilter.HTMLFilter = HTML Text Extractor plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = org.dspace.app.mediafilter.WordFilter = Word Text Extractor plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = org.dspace.app.mediafilter.JPEGFilter = JPEG Thumbnail plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter = org.dspace.app.mediafilter.BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter = Branded Preview JPEG</pre>
Informational Note:	Assign "human-understandable" names to each filter. These names are used to enable/disable plugins using "filter.plugins" setting above. As with the previous setting, multiple plugins can be listed here on separate lines (or comma separated)

Property:	<pre>filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFFilter.inputFormats filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.HTMLFilter.inputFormats filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.WordFilter.inputFormats filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.JPEGFilter.inputFormats filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter.inputFormats</pre>
Example Value:	<pre>filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFFilter.inputFormats = Adobe PDF filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.HTMLFilter.inputFormats = HTML, Text filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.WordFilter.inputFormats = Microsoft Word filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.JPEGFilter.inputFormats = BMP, GIF, JPEG, \ image/png filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter.inputFormats = BMP, \ GIF, JPEG, image/png</pre>
Informational Note:	Configure each filter's input format(s). These must match format names in the DSpace file format registry.
Property:	<code>filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.publicPermission</code>
Example Value:	<code>filter.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.publicPermission = JPEGFilter</code>
	Optionally, configure filter(s) which should <b>always</b> create publicly accessible bitstreams (e.g. useful if you want thumbnails to always be publicly accessible). By default, any bitstreams created by a filter will inherit the same permissions as the original file (e.g. if original image is access restricted, then thumbnail will also be access restricted by default).
Property:	<code>pdffilter.largepdfs</code>
Example Value:	<code>pdffilter.largepdfs = true</code>



Informational Note:	It this value is set for "true", all PDF extractions are written to temp files as they are indexed. This is slower, but helps to ensure that PDFBox software DSpace uses does not eat up all your memory.
Property:	<code>pdffilter.skiponmemoryexception</code>
Example Value:	<code>pdffilter.skiponmemoryexception = true</code>
Informational Note:	If this value is set for "true", PDFs which still result in an "Out of Memory" error from PDFBox are skipped over. These problematic PDFs will never be indexed until memory usage can be decreased in the PDFBox software.

Names are assigned to each filter using the

`plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter` field (e.g. by default the PDFFilter is named "PDF Text Extractor").

Finally, the appropriate `filter.<class path>.inputFormats` defines the valid input formats which each filter can be applied. These format names **must match** the `short description` field of the Bitstream Format Registry.

You can also implement more dynamic or configurable Media/Format Filters which extend `SelfNamedPlugin`.

#### More Information on MediaFilters

For more information on Media/Format Filters, see the section on [Mediafilters for Transforming DSpace Content](#)(see page 617).

### 7.1.3.16 Crosswalk and Packager Plugin Settings

The subsections below give configuration details based on the types of crosswalks and packager plugins you need to implement.

#### More Information on Packers & Crosswalks

For more information on using Packers and Crosswalks, see the section on [Importing and Exporting Content via Packages](#)(see page 321).

#### Configurable MODS Dissemination Crosswalk

The MODS crosswalk is a self-named plugin. To configure an instance of the MODS crosswalk, add a property to the DSpace configuration starting with "`crosswalk.mods.properties.`"; the final word of the property name becomes the plugin's name. For example, a property name `crosswalk.mods.properties.MODS` defines a crosswalk plugin named "`MODS`".

The value of this property is a path to a separate properties file containing the configuration for this crosswalk. The pathname is relative to the DSpace configuration directory, i.e. the `config` subdirectory of the DSpace install directory. Example from the `dspace.cfg` file:

Properties:	<code>crosswalk.mods.properties.MODS</code> <code>crosswalk.mods.properties.mods</code>
Example Values:	<code>crosswalk.mods.properties.MODS = crosswalks/ mods.properties</code> <code>crosswalk.mods.properties.mods = crosswalks/ mods.properties</code>
Informational Note:	This defines a crosswalk named MODS whose configuration comes from the file <code>[dspace]/config/crosswalks/ mods.properties</code> . (In the above example, the lower-case name was added for OAI-PMH)

The MODS crosswalk properties file is a list of properties describing how DSpace metadata elements are to be turned into elements of the MODS XML output document. The property name is a concatenation of the metadata schema, element name, and optionally the qualifier. For example, the `contributor.author` element in the native Dublin Core schema would be: `dc.contributor.author`. The value of the property is a line containing two segments separated by the vertical bar ("`|`" or "`|_`"): The first part is an XML fragment which is copied into the output document. The second is an XPath expression describing where in that fragment to put the value of the metadata element. For example, in this property:

```
dc.contributor.author = <mods:name>
 <mods:role>
 <mods:roleTerm type="text">author</mods:roleTerm>
 </mods:role>
 <mods:namePart>%s</mods:namePart>
</mods:name>
```

Some of the examples include the string "`%s`" in the prototype XML where the text value is to be inserted, but don't pay any attention to it, it is an artifact that the crosswalk ignores. For example, given an author named *Jack Florey*, the crosswalk will insert

```
<mods:name>
 <mods:role>
 <mods:roleTerm type="text">author</mods:roleTerm>
 </mods:role>
 <mods:namePart>Jack Florey</mods:namePart>
</mods:name>
```

into the output document. Read the example configuration file for more details.

## XSLT-based Crosswalks

The XSLT crosswalks use XSL stylesheet transformation (XSLT) to transform an XML-based external metadata format to or from DSpace's internal metadata. XSLT crosswalks are much more powerful and flexible than the configurable MODS and QDC crosswalks, but they demand some esoteric knowledge (XSL stylesheets). Given that, you can create all the crosswalks you need just by adding stylesheets and configuration lines, without touching any of the Java code.

The default settings in the `dspace.cfg` file for submission crosswalk:

Properties:	<code>crosswalk.submission.MODS.stylesheet</code>
Example Value:	<code>crosswalk.submission.MODS.stylesheet = crosswalks/mods-submission.xsl</code>
Informational Note:	Configuration XSLT-driven submission crosswalk for MODS

As shown above, there are three (3) parts that make up the properties "key":

```
crosswalk.submission.PluginName.stylesheet =
 1 2 3 4
```

`crosswalk` first part of the property key.

`submission` second part of the property key.

`PluginName` is the name of the plugin. The *path* value is the path to the file containing the crosswalk stylesheet (relative to `/[dspace]/config`).

Here is an example that configures a crosswalk named "LOM" using a stylesheet in `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/d-lom.xsl`:

```
crosswalk.submission.LOM.stylesheet = crosswalks/d-lom.xsl
```

A dissemination crosswalk can be configured by starting with the property key `crosswalk.dissemination`. Example:

```
crosswalk.dissemination.PluginName.stylesheet = path
```

The *PluginName* is the name of the plugin (!). The *path* value is the path to the file containing the crosswalk stylesheet (relative to `/[dspace]/config`).

You can make two different plugin names point to the same crosswalk, by adding two configuration entries with the same path:

```
crosswalk.submission.MyFormat.stylesheet = crosswalks/myformat.xslt
crosswalk.submission.almost_DC.stylesheet = crosswalks/myformat.xslt
```

The dissemination crosswalk must also be configured with an XML Namespace (including prefix and URI) and an XML schema for its output format. This is configured on additional properties in the DSpace configuration:

```
crosswalk.dissemination.PluginName.namespace.Prefix = namespace-URI
crosswalk.dissemination.PluginName.schemaLocation = schemaLocation value
```

For example:

```
crosswalk.dissemination.qdc.namespace.dc = http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/
crosswalk.dissemination.qdc.namespace.dcterms = http://purl.org/dc/terms/
crosswalk.dissemination.qdc.schemaLocation = http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/ \
http://dublincore.org/schemas/xmls/qdc/2003/04/02/qualifieddc.xsd
```

If you remove all XSLTDisseminationCrosswalks please disable the XSLTDisseminationCrosswalk in the list of selfnamed plugins. If no XSLTDisseminationCrosswalks are configured but the plugin is loaded the PluginManager will log an error message ("Self-named plugin class "org.dspace.content.crosswalk.XSLTDisseminationCrosswalk" returned null or empty name list!").

### Testing XSLT Crosswalks

The XSLT crosswalks will automatically reload an XSL stylesheet that has been modified, so you can edit and test stylesheets without restarting DSpace. You can test a crosswalk by using a command-line utility. To test a dissemination crosswalk you have to run:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace dsrun org.dspace.content.crosswalk.XSLTDisseminationCrosswalk
<plugin name> <handle> [output-file]
```

For example, you can test the marc plugin on the handle 123456789/3 with:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace dsrun org.dspace.content.crosswalk.XSLTDisseminationCrosswalk
marc 123456789/3
```

Information from the script will be printed to stderr while the XML output of the dissemination crosswalk will be printed to stdout. You can give a third parameter containing a filename to write the output into a file, but be careful: the file will be overwritten if it exists.

Testing a submission crosswalk works quite the same way. Use the following command-line utility, it calls the crosswalk plugin to translate an XML document you submit, and displays the resulting intermediate XML (DIM). Invoke it with:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace dsrun
org.dspace.content.crosswalk.XSLTIngestionCrosswalk [-l] <plugin name> <input-
file>
```

where *<plugin name>* is the name of the crosswalk plugin to test (e.g. "LOM"), and *<input-file>* is a file containing an XML document of metadata in the appropriate format.

Add the `-l` option to pass the ingestion crosswalk a list of elements instead of a whole document, as if the List form of the `ingest()` method had been called. This is needed to test ingesters for formats like DC that get called with lists of elements instead of a root element.

#### Configurable Qualified Dublin Core (QDC) dissemination crosswalk

The QDC crosswalk is a self-named plugin. To configure an instance of the QDC crosswalk, add a property to the DSpace configuration starting with "`crosswalk.qdc.properties.`"; the final word of the property name becomes the plugin's name. For example, a property name `crosswalk.qdc.properties.QDC` defines a crosswalk plugin named "`QDC`".

The following is from `dspace.cfg` file:

Properties:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.namespace.qdc.dc</code>
Example Value:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.namespace.qdc.dc = http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1_</code>
Properties:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.namespace.qdc.dcterms</code>
Example Value:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.namespace.qdc.dc = http://purl.org/dc/terms/_</code>
Properties:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.schemaLocation.QDC</code>
Example Value:	<pre>crosswalk.qdc.schemaLocation.QDC = http:// www.purl.org/dc/terms \     http://dublincore.org/schemas/xmls/qdc/ 2006/01/06/dcterms.xsd \     http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1 \     http://dublincore.org/schemas/xmls/qdc/ 2006/01/06/dc.xsd</pre>
Properties:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.properties.QDC</code>
Example Value:	<code>crosswalk.qdc.properties.QDC = crosswalks/QDC.properties</code>
Informational Note:	Configuration of the QDC Crosswalk dissemination plugin for Qualified DC. (Add lower-case name for OAI-PMH. That is, change QDC to qdc.)}}

In the property key "`crosswalk.qdc.properties.QDC`" the value of this property is a path to a separate properties file containing the configuration for this crosswalk. The pathname is relative to the DSpace configuration directory `/[dspace]/config`. Referring back to the "Example Value" for this property key, one has `crosswalks/qdc.properties` which defines a crosswalk named `QDC` whose configuration comes from the file `[dspace]/config/crosswalks/qdc.properties`.

You will also need to configure the namespaces and schema location strings for the XML output generated by this crosswalk. The namespaces properties names are formatted:

```
crosswalk.qdc.namespace.prefix = uri
```

where *prefix* is the namespace prefix and *uri* is the namespace URI. See the above Property and Example Value keys as the default `dspace.cfg` has been configured.

The QDC crosswalk properties file is a list of properties describing how DSpace metadata elements are to be turned into elements of the Qualified DC XML output document. The property name is a concatenation of the metadata schema, element name, and optionally the qualifier. For example, the `contributor.author` element in the native Dublin Core schema would be: `dc.contributor.author`. The value of the property is an XML fragment, the element whose value will be set to the value of the metadata field in the property key.

For example, in this property:

```
dc.coverage.temporal = <dcterms:temporal />
```

the generated XML in the output document would look like, e.g.:

```
<dcterms:temporal>Fall, 2005</dcterms:temporal>
```

### Configuring Crosswalk Plugins

Ingestion crosswalk plugins are configured as named or self-named plugins for the interface `org.dspace.content.crosswalk.IngestionCrosswalk`. Dissemination crosswalk plugins are configured as named or self-named plugins for the interface `org.dspace.content.crosswalk.DisseminationCrosswalk`.

You can add names for existing crosswalks, add new plugin classes, and add new configurations for the configurable crosswalks as noted below.

### Configuring Packager Plugins

Package ingester plugins are configured as named or self-named plugins for the interface `org.dspace.content.packager.PackageIngester`. Package disseminator plugins are configured as named or self-named plugins for the interface `org.dspace.content.packager.PackageDisseminator`.

You can add names for the existing plugins, and add new plugins, by altering these configuration properties. See the [Plugin Manager architecture](#) (see page 724) for more information about plugins.

### 7.1.3.17 Event System Configuration

If you are unfamiliar with the Event System in DSpace, and require additional information with terms like "Consumer" and "Dispatcher" please refer to [EventSystemPrototype](#)<sup>657</sup>.

Property:	<code>event.dispatcher.default.class</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.dispatcher.default.class = org.dspace.event.BasicDispatcher</code>
Informational Note:	This is the default synchronous dispatcher (Same behavior as traditional DSpace).
Property:	<code>event.dispatcher.default.consumers</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.dispatcher.default.consumers = search, browse, eperson</code>
Informational Note:	This is the default synchronous dispatcher (Same behavior as traditional DSpace).
Property:	<code>event.dispatcher.noindex.class</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.dispatcher.noindex.class = org.dspace.event.BasicDispatcher</code>
Informational Note:	The noindex dispatcher will not create search or browse indexes (useful for batch item imports).
Property:	<code>event.dispatcher.noindex.consumers</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.dispatcher.noindex.consumers = eperson</code>
Informational Note:	The noindex dispatcher will not create search or browse indexes (useful for batch item imports).
Property:	<code>event.consumer.discovery.class</code>

<sup>657</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/EventSystemPrototype>

Example Value:	<code>event.consumer.discovery.class = org.dspace.discovery.IndexEventConsumer</code>
Informational Note:	Consumer to maintain the search/browse (Discovery) index.
Property:	<code>event.consumer.discovery.filters</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.consumer.discovery.filters = Community   Collection   Item   Bundle   Site+Add   Create   Modify   Modify_Metadata   Delete   Remove</code>
Informational Note:	Consumer to maintain the search/browse (Discovery) index.
Property:	<code>event.consumer.eperson.class</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.consumer.eperson.class = org.dspace.eperson.EPersonConsumer</code>
Informational Note:	Consumer related to EPerson changes
Property:	<code>event.consumer.eperson.filters</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.consumer.eperson.filters = EPerson+Create</code>
Informational Note:	Consumer related to EPerson changes
Property:	<code>event.consumer.test.class</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.consumer.test.class = org.dspace.event.TestConsumer</code>
Informational Note:	Test consumer for debugging and monitoring. <b>Commented out by default.</b>



Property:	<code>event.consumer.test.filters</code>
Example Value:	<code>event.consumer.test.filters = All+All</code>
Informational Note:	Test consumer for debugging and monitoring. <b>Commented out by default.</b>
Property:	<code>testConsumer.verbose</code>
Example Value:	<code>testConsumer.verbose = true</code>
Informational Note:	Set this to true to enable testConsumer messages to standard output. <b>Commented out by default.</b>

### 7.1.3.18 Embargo

DSpace embargoes utilize standard metadata fields to hold both the "terms" and the "lift date". Which fields you use are configurable, and no specific metadata element is dedicated or predefined for use in embargo. Rather, you specify exactly what field you want the embargo system to examine when it needs to find the terms or assign the lift date.

Property:	<code>embargo.field.terms</code>
Example Value:	<code>embargo.field.terms = SCHEMA.ELEMENT.QUALIFIER</code>
Informational Note:	Embargo terms will be stored in the item metadata. This property determines in which metadata field these terms will be stored. An example could be <code>dc.embargo.terms</code>
Property:	<code>embargo.field.lift</code>
Example Value:	<code>embargo.field.lift = SCHEMA.ELEMENT.QUALIFIER</code>
Informational Note:	The Embargo lift date will be stored in the item metadata. This property determines in which metadata field the computed embargo lift date will be stored. You may need to create a DC metadata field in your Metadata Format Registry if it does not already exist. An example could be <code>dc.embargo.liftdate</code>
Property:	<code>embargo.terms.open</code>

Example Value:	<code>embargo.terms.open = forever</code>
Informational Note:	You can determine your own values for the <code>embargo.field.terms</code> property (see above). This property determines what the string value will be for indefinite embargos. The string in terms field to indicate indefinite embargo.
Property:	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoSetter</code>
Example Value:	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoSetter = org.dspace.embargo.DefaultEmbargoSetter</code>
Informational Note:	To implement the business logic to set your embargos, you need to override the <code>EmbargoSetter</code> class. If you use the value <code>DefaultEmbargoSetter</code> , the default implementation will be used.
Property:	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoLifter</code>
Example Value:	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.embargo.EmbargoLifter = org.dspace.embargo.DefaultEmbargoLifter</code>
Informational Note:	To implement the business logic to lift your embargos, you need to override the <code>EmbargoLifter</code> class. If you use the value <code>DefaultEmbargoLifter</code> , the default implementation will be used.

#### More Embargo Details

More details on Embargo configuration, including specific examples can be found in the [Embargo](#)(see page 172) section of the documentation.

#### 7.1.3.19 Checksum Checker Settings

DSpace comes with a Checksum Checker script ( `[dspace]/bin/dspace_checker` ) which can be scheduled to verify the checksum of every item within DSpace. Since DSpace calculates and records the checksum of every file submitted to it, this script is able to determine whether or not a file has been changed (either manually or by some sort of corruption or virus). The idea being that the earlier you can identify a file has changed, the more likely you'd be able to recover it (assuming it was not a wanted change).

Property:	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.checker.BitstreamDispatcher</code>
-----------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Example Value:	<code>plugin.single.org.dspace.checker.BitstreamDispatcher = org.dspace.checker.SimpleDispatcher</code>
Informational Note:	The Default dispatcher is case non is specified.
Property:	<code>checker.retention.default</code>
Example Value:	<code>checker.retention.default = 10y</code>
Informational Note:	This option specifies the default time frame after which all checksum checks are removed from the database (defaults to 10 years). This means that after 10 years, all successful or unsuccessful matches are removed from the database.
Property:	<code>checker.retention.CHECKSUM_MATCH</code>
Example Value:	<code>checker.retention.CHECKSUM_MATCH = 8w</code>
Informational Note:	This option specifies the time frame after which a successful match will be removed from your DSpace database (defaults to 8 weeks). This means that after 8 weeks, all successful matches are automatically deleted from your database (in order to keep that database table from growing too large).

#### More Checksum Checking Details

For more information on using DSpace's built-in Checksum verification system, see the section on [Validating CheckSums of Bitstreams](#)(see page 654).

### 7.1.3.20 Item Export and Download Settings

It is possible for an authorized user to request a complete export and download of a DSpace item in a compressed zip file. This zip file may contain the following:

dublin\_core.xml

license.txt

contents (*listing of the contents*)

handle file itself and the extract file if available

The configuration settings control several aspects of this feature:

Property:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.work.dir</code>
-----------	-------------------------------------------------

Example Value:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.work.dir = \${dspace.dir}/exports</code>
Informational Note:	The directory where the exports will be done and compressed.
Property:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.download.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.download.dir = \${dspace.dir}/exports/download</code>
Informational Note	The directory where the compressed files will reside and be read by the downloader.
Property:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.life.span.hours</code>
Example Value:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.life.span.hours = 48</code>
Informational Note	The length of time in hours each archive should live for. When new archives are created this entry is used to delete old ones.
Property:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.max.size</code>
Example Value:	<code>org.dspace.app.itemexport.max.size = 200</code>
Informational Note	The maximum size in Megabytes (Mb) that the export should be. This is enforced before the compression. Each bitstream's size in each item being exported is added up, if their cumulative sizes are more than this entry the export is not kicked off.

### 7.1.3.21 Subscription Emails

DSpace, through some advanced installation and setup, is able to send out an email to collections that a user has subscribed. The user who is subscribed to a collection is emailed each time an item id added or modified. The following property key controls whether or not a user should be notified of a modification.

Property:	<code>eperson.subscription.onlynew</code>
Example Value:	<code>eperson.subscription.onlynew = true</code>

Informational Note:	For backwards compatibility, the subscription emails by default include any modified items. The property key is COMMENTED OUT by default.
---------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 7.1.3.22 Hiding Metadata

It is now possible to hide metadata from public consumption that is only available to the Administrator.

Property:	<code>metadata.hide.dc.description.provenance</code>
Example Value:	<code>metadata.hide.dc.description.provenance = true</code>
Informational Note:	<p>Hides the metadata in the property key above except to the administrator. Fields named here are hidden in the following places UNLESS the logged-in user is an Administrator:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. REST API (and therefore the UI)</li> <li>2. RDF (everywhere as there is currently no possibility to authenticate)</li> <li>3. OAI-PMH server (everywhere as there is currently no possibility to authenticate)</li> </ol> <p>To designate a field as hidden, add a property here in the form:  <code>metadata.hide.SCHEMA.ELEMENT.QUALIFIER = true</code> .</p> <p>This default configuration hides the <code>dc.description.provenance</code> field, since that usually contains email addresses which ought to be kept private and is mainly of interest to administrators.</p>

### 7.1.3.23 Settings for the Submission Process

Property:	<code>webui.submit.upload.required</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.submit.upload.required = true</code>
Informational Note:	Whether or not a file is <b>required</b> to be uploaded during the "Upload" step in the submission process. The default is true. If set to "false", then the submitter (human being) has the option to skip the uploading of a file.

### 7.1.3.24 Configuring the Sherpa/RoMEO Integration

DSpace has integration with the [Sherpa/RoMEO API](#)<sup>658</sup> in order to allow importing data from Sherpa/RoMEO during the submission. You must register for a free API key (see below for details).

Property:	sherpa.romeo.url
Example Value:	sherpa.romeo.url = <a href="https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/cgi/retrieve">https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/cgi/retrieve</a>
Informational Note:	The Sherpa/RoMEO endpoint.
Property:	sherpa.romeo.apikey
Example Value:	sherpa.romeo.apikey = YOUR-API-KEY
Informational Note:	<p>Allow to use a specific API key to raise the usage limit (500 calls/day for unregistered user).</p> <p>You MUST register for a free api access key at <a href="https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/api/">https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/api/</a></p>

The functionality rely on understanding to which Journal (ISSN) is related the submitting item. This is done out of box looking to some item metadata but a different strategy can be used as for example look to a metadata authority in the case that the Sherpa/RoMEO autocomplete for Journal is used (see [AuthorityControlSettings](#)(see page 798))

The strategy used to discover the Journal related to the submission item is defined in the spring file **/config/spring/api/sherpa.xml**

```
<bean class="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.SHERPASubmitConfigurationService"
 id="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.SHERPASubmitConfigurationService">
 <property name="issnItemExtractors">
 <list>
 <bean class="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.MetadataValueISSNExtractor">
 <property name="metadataList">
 <list>
 <value>dc.identifier.issn</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 </bean>
 <!-- Use the follow if you have the SHERPARoMEOJournalTitle enabled
 <bean class="org.dspace.app.sherpa.submit.MetadataAuthorityISSNExtrac
tor">
 <property name="metadataList">
 <list>
```

<sup>658</sup> <https://v2.sherpa.ac.uk/romeo/>

```

 <value>dc.title.alternative</value>
 </list>
 </property>
 </bean> -->
</list>
</property>
</bean>

```

### 7.1.3.25 Configuring Creative Commons License

The following configurations are for the Creative Commons license step in the submission process. Submitters are given an opportunity to select a Creative Commons license to accompany the item. Creative Commons licenses govern the use of the content. For further details, refer to the Creative Commons website at <http://creativecommons.org><sup>659</sup>.

Creative Commons licensing is optionally available and may be configured for any given collection that has a defined submission sequence, or be part of the "default" submission process. This process is described in the [Submission User Interface](#) (see page 338) section of this manual. There is a Creative Commons step already defined, but it is commented out, so enabling Creative Commons licensing is typically just a matter of uncommenting that step.

When enabled, the Creative Commons public API is utilized. This allows DSpace to store metadata references to the selected CC license, while also storing the CC License as a bitstream. The following CC License information are captured:

- The URL of the CC License is stored in the "dc.rights.uri" metadata field (or whatever field is configured in the "cc.license.uri" setting below)
- The name of the CC License is stored in the "dc.rights" metadata field (or whatever field is configured in the "cc.license.name" setting below). This only occurs if "cc.submit.setname=true" (default value)
- The RDF version of the CC License is stored in a bitstream named "license\_rdf" in the CC-LICENSE bundle (as long as "cc.submit.addbitstream=true", which is the default value)

**The following configurations (in `dspace.cfg`) relate to the Creative Commons license process:**

Property:	<code>cc.api.rooturl</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.api.rooturl = http://api.creativecommons.org/rest/1.5</code>
Informational Note:	Generally will never have to assign a different value - this is the base URL of the Creative Commons service API.
Property:	<code>cc.license.uri</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.license.uri = dc.rights.uri</code>

<sup>659</sup> <http://creativecommons.org/>

Informational Note:	The field that holds the Creative Commons license URI.
Property:	<code>cc.license.name</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.license.name = dc.rights</code>
Informational Note:	The field that holds the Creative Commons license Name.
Property:	<code>cc.submit.setname</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.submit.setname = true</code>
Informational Note:	If true, the license assignment will add the field configured with the "cc.license.name" with the name of the CC license; if false, only "cc.license.uri" field is added.
Property:	<code>cc.submit.addbitstream</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.submit.addbitstream = true</code>
Informational Note:	If true, the license assignment will add a bitstream with the CC license RDF; if false, only metadata field(s) are added.
Property:	<code>cc.license.classfilter</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.license.classfilter = recombomark</code>
Informational Note:	This list defines the values that will be excluded from the license (class) selection list, as defined by the web service at the URL: <a href="http://api.creativecommons.org/rest/1.5/classes">http://api.creativecommons.org/rest/1.5/classes</a>
Property:	<code>cc.license.jurisdiction</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.license.jurisdiction = nz</code>



Informational Note:	Should a jurisdiction be used? If so, which one? See <a href="http://creativecommons.org/international/">http://creativecommons.org/international/</a> for a list of possible codes (e.g. nz = New Zealand, uk = England and Wales, jp = Japan)  Commenting out this field will cause DSpace to select the latest, unported CC license (currently version 4.0). However, as Creative Commons 4.0 does not provide jurisdiction specific licenses, if you specify this setting, your DSpace will continue to use older, Creative Commons 3.0 jurisdiction licenses.
Property	<code>cc.license.locale</code>
Example Value:	<code>cc.license.locale = en</code>
Informational Note:	Locale to be used (in the form: language or language_country), e.g. "en" or "en_US" If no default locale is defined the Creative Commons default locale will be used.

### 7.1.3.26 WEB User Interface Configurations

#### General Web User Interface Configurations

Property:	<code>webui.licence_bundle.show</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.licence_bundle.show = false</code>
Informational Note:	Sets whether to display the contents of the license bundle (often just the deposit license in the standard DSpace installation). <b>UNSUPPORTED in DSpace 7.0</b>
Property:	<code>thumbnail.maxwidth</code>
Example Value:	<code>thumbnail.maxwidth = 80</code>
Informational Note:	This property sets the maximum width of generated thumbnails that are being displayed on item pages.
Property:	<code>thumbnail.maxheight</code>
Example Value:	<code>thumbnail.maxheight = 80</code>

Informational Note:	This property sets the maximum height of generated thumbnails that are being displayed on item pages.
Property:	<code>webui.preview.maxwidth</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.maxwidth = 600</code>
Informational Note:	This property sets the maximum width for the preview image. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.preview.maxheight</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.maxheight = 600</code>
Informational Note:	This property sets the maximum height for the preview image. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.preview.brand</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.brand = My Institution Name</code>
Informational Note:	This is the brand text that will appear with the image. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.preview.brand.abbrev</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.brand.abbrev = MyOrg</code>
Informational Note:	An abbreviated form of the full Branded Name. This will be used when the preview image cannot fit the normal text. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.preview.brand.height</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.brand.height = 20</code>
Informational Note:	The height (in px) of the brand. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter

Property:	<code>webui.preview.brand.font</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.brand.font = SansSerif</code>
Informational Note:	This property sets the font for your Brand text that appears with the image. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.preview.brand.fontpoint</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.brand.fontpoint = 12</code>
Informational Note:	This property sets the font point (size) for your Brand text that appears with the image. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.preview.dc</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.preview.dc = rights</code>
Informational Note:	The Dublin Core field that will display along with the preview. This field is optional. Only used for BrandedPreviewJPEGFilter
Property:	<code>webui.strengths.cache</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.strengths.cache = false</code>
Informational Note:	When showing the strengths (i.e. item counts), should they be counted in real time, or fetched from the cache. Counts fetched in real time will perform an actual count of the index contents every time a page with this feature is requested, which may not scale. If you set the property key is set to cache ("true"), the counts will be cached on first load. <b>UNSUPPORTED in DSpace 7.0</b>

### 7.1.3.27 Browse Index Configuration

The browse indexes for DSpace can be extensively configured. These configurations are used by [Discovery](#)<sup>660</sup>. This section of the configuration allows you to take control of the indexes you wish to browse, and how you wish to present the results. The configuration is broken into several parts: defining the indexes, defining the fields upon which users can sort results, defining truncation for potentially long fields (e.g. authors), setting cross-links between different browse contexts (e.g. from an author's name to a complete list of their items), how many recent submissions to display, and configuration for item mapping browse.

<sup>660</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC5x/Discovery>

Property:	<code>webui.browse.index.&lt;n&gt;</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.browse.index.1 = dateissued:item:dateissued</code> <code>webui.browse.index.2 =</code> <code>author:metadata:dc.contributor.*,dc.creator:text</code>
Informational Note:	This is an example of how one "Defines the Indexes". See " <a href="#">Defining the Indexes</a> (see page 780)" in the next sub-section.
Property:	<code>webui.itemlist.sort-option.&lt;n&gt;</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.itemlist.sort-option.1 =</code> <code>title:dc.title:title</code>
Informational Note:	This is an example of how one "Defines the Sort Options". See " <a href="#">Defining Sort Options</a> (see page 784)" in the following sub-section.

### Defining the storage of the Browse Data

Optionally, you may configure a custom implementation use for the Browse DAOs both for read operations (create/update operations are handled by Event Consumers). However, as of DSpace 6, DSpace only includes one out-of-the-box option:

- SOLR Browse Engine (SOLR DAOs), default since DSpace 4.0 - This enables Apache Solr to be utilized as a backend for all browsing of DSpace. This option requires that you have [Discovery](#)(see page 522) (Solr search/browse engine) enabled in your DSpace.

Property:	<code>browseDAO.class</code>
Example Value:	<code>browseDAO.class = org.dspace.browse.SolrBrowseDAO</code>
Informational Note:	This property configures the Java class that is used for READ operations by the Browse System. <b>You need to have <a href="#">Discovery</a>(see page 522) enabled (this is the default since DSpace 4.0) to use the Solr Browse DAOs</b>

### Defining the Indexes

If you make changes in this section be sure to update your SOLR indexes running the Discovery Maintenance Script, see [Discovery](#)(see page 522)

DSpace comes with four default indexes pre-defined: author, title, date issued, and subjects. Users may also define additional indexes or re-configure the current indexes for different levels of specificity. For example, the default entries that appear in the `dspace.cfg` as default installation:

```
webui.browse.index.1 = dateissued:item:dateissued
webui.browse.index.2 = author:metadata:dc.contributor.*,dc.creator:text
webui.browse.index.3 = title:item:title
webui.browse.index.4 = subject:metadata:dc.subject.*:text
#webui.browse.index.5 = dateaccessioned:item:dateaccessioned
```

There are two types of indexes which are provided in this default integration:

- "item" indexes which have a format of `webui.browse.index.<n> = <index-name> : item : <sort-type> : (asc | desc)`
- "metadata" indexes which have a format of `webui.browse.index.<n> = <index-name> : metadata : <comma-separated-list-of-metadata-fields> : (date | text) : (asc | dec) : <sort-type>`

Please notice that the punctuation is paramount in typing this property key in the `dspace.cfg` file. The following table explains each element:

Element	Definition and Options (if available)
<code>webui.browse.index.&lt;n&gt;</code>	<i>n</i> is the index number. The index numbers must start from 1 and increment continuously by 1 thereafter. Deviation from this will cause an error during install or a configuration update. So anytime you add a new browse index, remember to increase the number. (Commented out index numbers may be used over again).
<code>&lt;index-name&gt;</code>	The name by which the index will be identified. In order for the DSpace UI to display human-friendly description for this index, you'll need to update the UI's language packs (e.g. <code>src/assets/i18n/en.json5</code> ) to include a key using this index name, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>browse.metadata.&lt;index-name&gt; = "MyField",</code></li> <li>• <code>browse.metadata.&lt;index-name&gt;.breadcrumbs = "Browse by MyField",</code></li> </ul>

Element	Definition and Options (if available)
<code>(metadata   item)</code>	<p>Only two options are available: " <code>metadata</code> " or " <code>item</code> "</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• " <code>metadata</code> " indexes allow you to index all items based on one or more metadata fields. The list of fields should be provided as part of the "metadata" configuration. Only items which have values for these fields will appear in this index (e.g. if you have a "metadata" index for " <code>dc.subject.*</code> ", an item will not appear in that browse/search if it doesn't have a " <code>dc.subject.*</code> " value). The browse index will have to parts: first it lists all values of the specified metadata fields. If the user select one of these values the index lists all items in which the specified metadata field is assigned with the selected value. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Note: If you set a <code>&lt;sort-type&gt;</code> to be used, this sort type is not used on the values of the metadata fields but on the order of the items when listing all items that have a specific value of the metadata field.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• " <code>item</code> " indexes provide you with a browseable list of ALL items in the site, sorted by a particular metadata field. The field this index is sorted by is referenced by <code>&lt;sort-option-name&gt;</code> (which should refer to a corresponding " <code>webui.itemlist.sort-option.&lt;n&gt;</code> " setting... see <a href="#">Defining Sort Options</a>(see page 784) below for more information)</li> </ul>
<code>&lt;schema-prefix&gt;</code>	(Only for "metadata" indexes) The schema used for the field to be index. First part of a metadata field name. The default is dc (for Dublin Core).
<code>&lt;element&gt;</code>	(Only for "metadata" indexes) The schema element. Second part of a metadata field name. In Dublin Core, for example, the author element is referred to as "Contributor". The user should consult the default Dublin Core Metadata Registry table in Appendix A.
<code>&lt;qualifier&gt;</code>	(Only for "metadata" indexes) This is the qualifier to the <code>&lt;element&gt;</code> component. Third part of a metadata field name. The user has two choices: an asterisk "*" or a proper qualifier of the element. The asterisk is a wildcard and causes DSpace to index all types of the schema element. For example, if you have the element "contributor" and the qualifier "*" then you would index all contributor data regardless of the qualifier. Another example, you have the element "subject" and the qualifier "lcs" would cause the indexing of only those fields that have the qualifier "lcs". (This means you would only index Library of Congress Subject Headings and not all data elements that are subjects.)

Element	Definition and Options (if available)
<code>&lt;sort-type&gt;</code>	<p>(Optional, should be set for "item" indexes) This refers to the sort type / data type of the field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>date</code> the index type will be treated as a date object and sorted as such</li> <li><code>text</code> the index type will be treated as plain text and sorted as such</li> <li>(any other value refers to a custom <code>&lt;sort-type&gt;</code> which should be defined in a corresponding <code>webui.itemlist.sort-option.&lt;n&gt;</code> setting. See <a href="#">Defining Sort Options</a>(see page 784) below for more information.)</li> </ul>
<code>&lt;sort-order&gt;</code>	<p>(Optional) The default sort order. Choose <code>asc</code> (ascending) or <code>desc</code> (descending). Ascending is the default value, but descending may be useful for date-based indexes (e.g. to display most recent submissions first)</p>

### Defining Sort Options

If you make changes in this section be sure to update your SOLR indexes running the Discovery Maintenance Script, see [Discovery](#)(see page 522)

Sort options/types will be available when browsing a list of items (either on " `item` " index type above or after selecting a specific value for "metadata" indexes). You can define an arbitrary number of fields to sort on. For example, the default entries that appear in the `dspace.cfg` as default installation:

```
webui.itemlist.sort-option.1 = title:dc.title:title
webui.itemlist.sort-option.2 = dateissued:dc.date.issued:date
webui.itemlist.sort-option.3 = dateaccessioned:dc.date.accessioned:date
```

The format of each entry is `web.browse.sort-option.<n> = <sort-type-name>:<schema-prefix>.<element>.<qualifier>:<datatype>` . Please notice the punctuation used between the different elements. The following table explains the each element:

Element	Definition and Options (if available)
<code>webui.itemlist.sort-option.&lt;n&gt;</code>	<code>n</code> is an arbitrary number you choose.
<code>&lt;sort-type-name&gt;</code>	The name by which the sort option will be identified. This is the name by which it is referred in the "webui.browse.index" settings (see <a href="#">Defining the Indexes</a> (see page 780)).

Element	Definition and Options (if available)
<code>&lt;schema-prefix&gt;</code>	The schema used for the field to be sorted on in the index. The default is dc (for Dublin Core).
<code>&lt;element&gt;</code>	The schema element. In Dublin Core, for example, the author element is referred to as "Contributor". The user should consult the default Dublin Core Metadata Registry table in Appendix A.
<code>&lt;qualifier&gt;</code>	This is the qualifier to the <code>&lt;element&gt;</code> component. The user has two choices: an asterisk "*" or a proper qualifier of the element.
<code>&lt;datatype&gt;</code>	This refers to the datatype of the field: <code>date</code> the sort field will be treated as a date object <code>text</code> the sort field will be treated as plain text. <code>title</code> the sort field will be treated like a title, which will include a link to the item page

#### Other Browse Options

We set other browse values in the following section.

Property:	<code>webui.browse.metadata.show-freq. &lt; n &gt;</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.browse.metadata.show-freq.1 = false</code>
Informational Note:	This enable/disable the show of frequencies (count) in metadata browse <code>&lt;n&gt;</code> refers to the browse configuration. As default frequencies are shown for all metadata browse
Property:	<code>plugin.named.org.dspace.sort.OrderFormatDelegate</code>
Example Value:	<code>plugin.named.org.dspace.sort.OrderFormatDelegate = \ org.dspace.sort.OrderFormatTitleMarc21=title</code>



Informational Note:	<p>This sets the option for how the indexes are sorted. All sort normalizations are carried out by the OrderFormatDelegate. The plugin manager can be used to specify your own delegates for each datatype. The default datatypes (and delegates) are:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>author = org.dspace.sort.OrderFormatAuthor title  = org.dspace.sort.OrderFormatTitle text   = org.dspace.sort.OrderFormatText</pre> </div> <p>If you redefine a default datatype here, the configuration will be used in preferences to the default. However, if you do not explicitly redefine a datatype, then the default will still be used in addition to the datatypes you do specify. As of DSpace release 1.5.2, the multi-lingual MARC21 title ordering is configured as default, as shown in the example above. To use the previous title ordering (before release 1.5.2), comment out the configuration in your <i>dspace.cfg</i> file.</p>
---------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

#### Browse Index Authority Control Configuration

Property:	<code>webui.browse.index.&lt;n&gt;</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.browse.index.5 = lcAuthor:metadataAuthority:dc.contributor.author:authority</code>
Informational Note:	

#### Tag cloud

Apart from the single (type=metadata) and full (type=item) browse pages, tag cloud is a new way to display the unique values of a metadata field.

To enable “tag cloud” browsing for a specific index you need to declare it in the *dspace.cfg* configuration file using the following option:

Property:	<code>webui.browse.index.tagcloud.&lt;n&gt;</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.browse.index.tagcloud.1 = true</code>

Informational Note:	<p>Enable/Disable tag cloud in browsing for a specific index. ‘n’ is the index number of the specific index which needs to be of type ‘metadata’.</p> <p>Possible values: true, false</p> <p>Default value is false.</p> <p>If no option exists for a specific index, it is assumed to be false.</p> <p>You do not have to re-index discovery when you change this configuration</p> <p><b>UNSUPPORTED in DSpace 7.0</b></p>
---------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Tag cloud configuration

The appearance configuration for the tag cloud is located in the Discovery xml configuration file (*dspace/config/spring/api/discovery.xml*). Without configuring the appearance, the default one will be applied to the tag cloud

In this file, there must be a bean named “*browseTagCloudConfiguration*” of class “*org.dspace.discovery.configuration.TagCloudConfiguration*”. This bean can have any of the following properties. If some is missing, the default value will be applied.

<b>displayScore</b>	Should display the score of each tag next to it? Default: false
<b>shouldCenter</b>	Should display the tag as center aligned in the page or left aligned? Possible values: true   false. Default: true
<b>totalTags</b>	How many tags will be shown. Value -1 means all of them. Default: -1
<b>cloudCase</b>	The letter case of the tags. Possible values: Case.LOWER   Case.UPPER   Case.CAPITALIZATION   Case.PRESERVE_CASE   Case.CASE_SENSITIVE Default: Case.PRESERVE_CASE
<b>randomColors</b>	If the 3 css classes of the tag cloud should be independent of score (random=yes) or based on the score. Possible values: true   false . Default: true
<b>fontFrom</b>	The font size (in em) for the tag with the lowest score. Possible values: any decimal. Default: 1.1
<b>fontTo</b>	The font size (in em) for the tag with the lowest score. Possible values: any decimal. Default: 3.2
<b>cuttingLevel</b>	The score that tags with lower than that will not appear in the rag cloud. Possible values: any integer from 1 to infinity. Default: 0

<b>ordering</b>	The ordering of the tags (based either on the name or the score of the tag) Possible values: Tag.NameComparatorAsc   Tag.NameComparatorDesc   Tag.ScoreComparatorAsc   Tag.ScoreComparatorDesc Default: Tag.GreekNameComparatorAsc
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

When tagCloud is rendered there are some CSS classes that you can change in order to change the tagcloud appearance.

Class	Note
tagcloud	General class for the whole tagcloud
tagcloud_1	Specific tag class for tag of type 1 (based on score)
tagcloud_2	Specific tag class for tag of type 2 (based on score)
tagcloud_3	Specific tag class for tag of type 3 (based on score)

### 7.1.3.28 Links to Other Browse Contexts

We can define which fields link to other browse listings. This is useful, for example, to link an author's name to a list of just that author's items. The effect this has is to create links to browse views for the item clicked on. If it is a "single" type, it will link to a view of all the items which share that metadata element in common (i.e. all the papers by a single author). If it is a "full" type, it will link to a view of the standard full browse page, starting with the value of the link clicked on.

Property:	<code>webui.browse.link.&lt;n&gt;</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.browse.link.1 = author:dc.contributor.*</code>
Informational Note:	This is used to configure which fields should link to other browse listings. This should be associated with the name of one of the browse indexes ( <code>webui.browse.index.n</code> ) with a metadata field listed in <code>webui.itemlist.columns</code> above. If this condition is not fulfilled, cross-linking will not work. Note also that crosslinking only works for metadata fields not tagged as <code>title</code> in <code>webui.itemlist.columns</code> .

The format of the property key is `webui.browse.link.<n> = <index name>:<display column metadata>` Please notice the punctuation used between the elements.

Element	Definition and Options (if available)
<code>webui.browse.link. <i>n</i></code>	{{ <i>n</i> is an arbitrary number you choose
<code>&lt;index name&gt;</code>	This need to match your entry for the index name from <i>webui.browse.index</i> property key.
<code>&lt;display column metadata&gt;</code>	Use the DC element (and qualifier)

Examples of some browse links used in a real DSpace installation instance:

```
webui.browse.link.1 = author:dc.contributor.*
```

Creates a link for all types of contributors (authors, editors, illustrators, others, etc.)

```
webui.browse.link.2 = subject:dc.subject.lcsh
```

Creates a link to subjects that are Library of Congress only. In this case, you have a browse index that contains only LC Subject Headings

```
webui.browse.link.3 = series:dc.relation.ispartofseries
```

Creates a link for the browse index "Series". Please note this is again, a customized browse index and not part of the DSpace distributed release.

### 7.1.3.29 Submission License Substitution Variables

Property:	<pre>plugin.named.org.dspace.content.license. LicenseArgumentFormatter</pre> <p>(property key broken up for display purposes only)</p>
Example Value:	<pre>plugin.named.org.dspace.content.license.LicenseArgu mentFormatter = \  org.dspace.content.license.SimpleDSpaceObjectLicens eFormatter = collection, \  org.dspace.content.license.SimpleDSpaceObjectLicens eFormatter = item, \  org.dspace.content.license.SimpleDSpaceObjectLicens eFormatter = eperson</pre>

Informational Note:	It is possible to include contextual information in the submission license using substitution variables. The text substitution is driven by a plugin implementation.
---------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 7.1.3.30 Syndication Feed (RSS) Settings

Supported as of 7.3 and above.

Please note that Syndication (RSS/Atom) feeds **require** that [OpenSearch](#) (see page 793) is enabled to function. When enabled, a syndication feed will be available on the DSpace homepage (for entire site), and on each community/collection homepage (specific to that community/collection). Because Syndication Feeds use OpenSearch, all OpenSearch settings also apply to Syndication Feeds.

Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.opensearch.enable = true</code>
Informational Note:	By default, OpenSearch & Syndication feeds are set to true (on) . Change key to "false" to disable. NOTE this setting affects OpenSearch Support as well
Property:	<code>webui.feed.localresolve</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.localresolve = false</code>
Informational Note:	By default, (set to false), URLs returned by the feed will point at the global handle resolver (e.g. <a href="http://hdl.handle.net/123456789/1">http://hdl.handle.net/123456789/1</a> ). If set to <b>true</b> the local server URLs are used (e.g. <a href="http://myserver.myorg/handle/123456789/1">http://myserver.myorg/handle/123456789/1</a> ).
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.title</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.item.title = dc.title</code>
Informational Note:	This property customizes each single-value field displayed in the feed information for each item. Each of the fields takes a <b>single</b> metadata field. The form of the key is <scheme prefix>.<element>.<qualifier> In place of the qualifier, one may leave it blank to exclude any qualifiers or use the wildcard "*" to include all qualifiers for a particular element.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.date</code>

Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.item.date = dc.date.issued</code>
Informational Note:	This property customizes each single-value field displayed in the feed information for each item. Each of the fields takes a <b>single</b> metadata field. The form of the key is <scheme prefix>.<element>.<qualifier> In place of the qualifier, one may leave it blank to exclude any qualifiers or use the wildcard "*" to include all qualifiers for a particular element.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.description</code>
Example Value:	<pre>webui.feed.item.description = dc.title, dc.contributor.author, \     dc.contributor.editor, dc.description.abstract, \     dc.description</pre>
Informational Note:	One can customize the metadata fields to show in the feed for each item's description. Elements are displayed in the order they are specified in <i>dspace.cfg</i> . Like other property keys, the format of this property key is: <i>webui.feed.item.description = &lt;scheme prefix&gt;.&lt;element&gt;.&lt;qualifier&gt;</i> . In place of the qualifier, one may leave it blank to exclude any qualifiers or use the wildcard "*" to include all qualifiers for a particular element.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.author</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.item.author = dc.contributor.author</code>
Informational Note:	The name of field to use for authors (Atom only); repeatable.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.logo.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.logo.url = \${dspace.url}/themes/mysite/images/mysite-logo.png</code>
Informational Note:	Customize the image icon included with the site-wide feeds. This must be an absolute URL.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.dc.creator</code>

Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.item.dc.creator = dc.contributor.author</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property adds <i>structured</i> DC elements as XML elements to the feed description. They are not the same thing as, for example, <i>webui.feed.item.description</i> . Useful when a program or stylesheet will be transforming a feed and wants separate author, description, date, etc.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.dc.date</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.item.dc.date = dc.date.issued</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property adds <i>structured</i> DC elements as XML elements to the feed description. They are not the same thing as, for example, <i>webui.feed.item.description</i> . Useful when a program or stylesheet will be transforming a feed and wants separate author, description, date, etc.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.item.dc.description</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.item.dc.description = dc.description.abstract</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property adds <i>structured</i> DC elements as XML elements to the feed description. They are not the same thing as, for example, <i>webui.feed.item.description</i> . Useful when a program or stylesheet will be transforming a feed and wants separate author, description, date, etc.
Property:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.collections</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.collections = 1811/45183,1811/47223</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property enables Podcast Support on the RSS feed for the specified collection handles. The podcast is iTunes compatible and will expose the bitstreams in the items for viewing and download by the podcast reader. Multiple values are separated by commas. For more on using/enabling Media RSS Feeds to share content via iTunesU, see: <a href="#">Enable Media RSS Feeds</a> <sup>661</sup>
Property:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.communities</code>

---

<sup>661</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Enable+Media+RSS+Feeds>

Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.communities = 1811/47223</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property enables Podcast Support on the RSS feed for the specified community handles. The podcast is iTunes compatible and will expose the bitstreams in the items for viewing and download by the podcast reader. Multiple values are separated by commas. For more on using/enabling Media RSS Feeds to share content via iTunesU, see: <a href="#">Enable Media RSS Feeds</a> <sup>662</sup>
Property:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.mimetypes</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.mimetypes = audio/x-mpeg,application/pdf</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property for Podcast Support, allows you to choose which MIME types of bitstreams are to be enclosed in the podcast feed. Multiple values are separated by commas. For more on using/enabling Media RSS Feeds to share content via iTunesU, see: <a href="#">Enable Media RSS Feeds</a> <sup>663</sup>
Property:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.sourceuri</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.feed.podcast.sourceuri = dc.source.uri</code>
Informational Note:	This optional property for the Podcast Support will allow you to use a value for a metadata field as a replacement for actual bitstreams to be enclosed in the RSS feed. A use case for specifying the external sourceuri would be if you have a non-DSpace media streaming server that has a copy of your media file that you would prefer to have the media streamed from. For more on using/enabling Media RSS Feeds to share content via iTunesU, see: <a href="#">Enable Media RSS Feeds</a> <sup>664</sup>

### 7.1.3.31 OpenSearch Support

[OpenSearch](#)<sup>665</sup> is a small set of conventions and documents for describing and using "search engines", meaning any service that returns a set of results for a query. See extensive description in the [Business Layer section](#)(see page 828) of the documentation.

Please note that [RSS/Atom feeds](#)(see page 790) **require** that OpenSearch is enabled to function.

OpenSearch uses all the configuration properties for DSpace RSS to determine the mapping of metadata fields to feed fields. Note that a new field for authors has been added (used in Atom format only).

<sup>662</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Enable+Media+RSS+Feeds>

<sup>663</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Enable+Media+RSS+Feeds>

<sup>664</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Enable+Media+RSS+Feeds>

<sup>665</sup> <https://opensearch.org/>



Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.enable</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.enable = true/false</code>
Informational Note:	Whether or not OpenSearch is enabled. By default, the feature is enabled to support RSS/Atom feeds. Change to "false" to disable.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.svccontext</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.svccontext = opensearch</code>
Informational Note:	The URL path where OpenSearch is made available on the backend. For example, "opensearch" means it is available at <code>{dspace.server.url}/opensearch</code>
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.uicontext</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.uicontext = simple-search</code>
Informational Note:	Context for HTML request URLs. Change only for non-standard servlet mapping.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.autolink</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.autolink = true</code>
Informational Note:	Present autodiscovery link in every page head.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.validity</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.validity = 48</code>
Informational Note:	Number of hours to retain results before recalculating. This applies to the Manakin interface only.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.shortname</code>

Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.shortname = DSpace</code>
Informational Note:	A short name used in browsers for search service. It should be sixteen (16) or fewer characters.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.longname</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.longname = \${dspace.name}</code>
Informational Note:	A longer name up to 48 characters.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.description</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.description = \${dspace.name}</code> DSpace repository
Informational Note:	Brief service description
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.faviconurl</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.faviconurl = http://</code> <code>www.dspace.org/images/favicon.ico</code>
Informational Note:	Location of favicon for service, if any. They must be 16 x 16 pixels. You can provide your own local favicon instead of the default.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.samplequery</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.samplequery = photosynthesis</code>
Informational Note:	Sample query. This should return results. You can replace the sample query with search terms that should actually yield results in your repository.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.tags</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.tags = IR DSpace</code>

Informational Note:	Tags used to describe search service.
Property:	<code>websvc.opensearch.formats</code>
Example Value:	<code>websvc.opensearch.formats = html,atom,rss</code>
Informational Note:	Result formats offered. Use one or more comma-separated from the list: html, atom, rss. Please note that html is required for auto discovery in browsers to function, and must be the first in the list if present.

### 7.1.3.32 Content Inline Disposition Threshold

The following configuration is used to change the disposition behavior of the browser. That is, when the browser will attempt to open the file or download it to the user-specified location. For example, the default size is 8MB. When an item being viewed is larger than 8MB, the browser will download the file to the desktop (or wherever you have it set to download) and the user will have to open it manually.

Property:	<code>webui.content_disposition_threshold</code>
Example value:	<code>webui.content_disposition_threshold = 8388608</code>
Informational Note:	The default value is set to 8MB. This property key applies to the REST API.

Other values are possible:

4 MB = 4194304 8 MB = 8388608 16 MB = 16777216

### 7.1.3.33 Multi-file HTML Document/Site Settings

The setting is used to configure the "depth" of request for html documents bearing the same name.

Property:	<code>webui.html.max-depth-guess</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.html.max-depth-guess = 3</code>

Informational Note:	<p>When serving up composite HTML items in the UI, how deep can the request be for us to serve up a file with the same name? For example, if one receives a request for "<i>foo/bar/index.html</i>" and one has a bitstream called just "<i>index.html</i>", DSpace will serve up the former bitstream (<i>foo/bar/index.html</i>) for the request if <i>webui.html.max-depth-guess</i> is 2 or greater. If <i>webui.html.max-depth-guess</i> is 1 or less, then DSpace would not serve that bitstream, as the depth of the file is greater. If <i>webui.html.max-depth-guess</i> is zero, the request filename and path must always exactly match the bitstream name. The default is set to 3.</p> <p><b>UNSUPPORTED IN DSpace 7.0</b></p>
---------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 7.1.3.34 Sitemap Settings

To aid web crawlers index the content within your repository, you can make use of sitemaps. For best SEO, Sitemaps are enabled by default and update automatically (see cron setting).

Property:	<code>sitemap.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>sitemap.dir = \${dspace.dir}/sitemaps</code>
Informational Note:	The directory where the generate sitemaps are stored.
Property:	<code>sitemap.engineurls</code>
Example Value:	<code>sitemap.engineurls = <a href="http://www.google.com/webmasters/sitemaps/ping?sitemap=">http://www.google.com/webmasters/sitemaps/ping?sitemap=</a><sup>666</sup></code>
Informational Note:	Comma-separated list of search engine URLs to "ping" when a new Sitemap has been created. Include everything except the Sitemap UL itself (which will be URL-encoded and appended to form the actual URL "pinged"). Add the following to the above parameter if you have an application ID with Yahoo: <a href="http://search.yahooapis.com/SiteExplorerService/V1/updateNotification?appid=REPLACE_ME?url=_">http://search.yahooapis.com/SiteExplorerService/V1/updateNotification?appid=REPLACE_ME?url=_</a> . (Replace the component <i>REPLACE_ME</i> with your application ID). There is no known "ping" URL for MSN/Live search.
Property:	<code>sitemap.cron</code>
Example Value:	<code>sitemap.cron = 0 15 1 * * ?</code>

<sup>666</sup> [http://www.google.com/webmasters/sitemaps/ping?sitemap=\\_](http://www.google.com/webmasters/sitemaps/ping?sitemap=_)

Informational Note:	The DSpace sitemaps are regenerated on a regular basis based on the Cron syntax provided in this configuration. By default, sitemaps are updated daily at 1:15am local time. Cron syntax is defined at <a href="https://www.quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.3.0/org/quartz/CronTrigger.html">https://www.quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.3.0/org/quartz/CronTrigger.html</a> . Remove (comment out) this config to disable the sitemap scheduler. Sitemap scheduler can also be disabled by setting to "-" (single dash) in local.cfg.
---------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 7.1.3.35 Authority Control Settings

Two features fall under the header of Authority Control: Choice Management and Authority Control of Item ("DC") metadata values. Authority control is a fully optional feature in DSpace 1.6. Implemented out of the box are the Library of Congress Names service, and the Sherpa Romeo authority plugin.

For an in-depth description of this feature, please consult: [Authority Control of Metadata Values](#)<sup>667</sup>

Property:	<code>plugin.named.org.dspace.content.authority.ChoiceAuthority</code>
Example Value:	<pre>plugin.named.org.dspace.content.authority.ChoiceAuthority = \   org.dspace.content.authority.SampleAuthority = Sample, \   org.dspace.content.authority.SHERPARoMEOPublisher = SRPublisher, \   org.dspace.content.authority.SHERPARoMEOJournalTitle = SRJournalTitle, \   org.dspace.content.authority.SolrAuthority = SolrAuthorAuthority</pre>
Informational Note:	List of all enabled authority control plugins
Property:	<code>plugin.selfnamed.org.dspace.content.authority.ChoiceAuthority</code>
Example Value:	<pre>plugin.selfnamed.org.dspace.content.authority.ChoiceAuthority = \   org.dspace.content.authority.DCInputAuthority</pre>

<sup>667</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/Authority+Control+of+Metadata+Values>

Property:	<code>lcname.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>lcname.url = <a href="http://alcme.oclc.org/srw/search/lcnaf_">http://alcme.oclc.org/srw/search/lcnaf_</a></code>
Informational Note:	Location (URL) of the Library of Congress Name Service
Property:	<code>sherpa.romeo.url / sherpa.romeo.apikey</code>
Informational Note:	Please refer to the Sherpa/RoMEO Publishers Policy Database Integration section for details about such properties. See <a href="#">Configuring the Sherpa/RoMEO Publishers Policy Database Integration</a> (see page 0)
Property:	<code>orcid.api.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>orcid.api.url = <a href="https://pub.orcid.org/v3.0">https://pub.orcid.org/v3.0</a></code>

Informational Note:	Location (URL) of the ORCID v3 Public API
Property:	<code>authority.minconfidence</code>
Example Value:	<code>authority.minconfidence = ambiguous</code>
Informational Note:	This sets the default lowest confidence level at which a metadata value is included in an authority-controlled browse (and search) index. It is a symbolic keyword, one of the following values (listed in descending order): accepted, uncertain, ambiguous, notfound, failed, rejected, novalue, unset. See <code>org.dspace.content.authority.Choices</code> source for descriptions.

### 7.1.3.36 Configuring Multilingual Support

See [Multilingual Support](#) (see page 544) for more details/examples.

#### Setting the Default Language for the Application

Property:	<code>default.locale</code>
Example Value:	<code>default.locale = en</code>
Informational Note:	The default language for the application is set with this property key. This is a locale according to i18n and might consist of country, country_language or country_language_variant. If no default locale is defined, then the server default locale will be used. The format of a local specifier is described here: <a href="http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.2/docs/api/java/util/Locale.html">http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.2/docs/api/java/util/Locale.html</a>

## Supporting More Than One Language

### Changes in dspace.cfg

Property:	<code>webui.supported.locales</code>
Example Value:	<code>webui.supported.locales = en, de</code>
or perhaps	<code>webui.supported.locales = en, en_ca, de</code>
Informational Note:	<p>All the locales that are supported by this instance of DSpace. Comma separated list.</p> <p><b>UNSUPPORTED IN DSpace 7.0.</b></p> <p><i>However, the DSpace 7 UI has a similar "languages" setting in environment.*.ts</i></p>

The table above, if needed and is used will result in:

- a language switch in the default header
- the user will be enabled to choose his/her preferred language, this will be part of his/her profile
- wording of emails
  - mails to registered users, e.g. alerting service will use the preferred language of the user
  - mails to unregistered users, e.g. suggest an item will use the language of the session
- according to the language selected for the session, using dspace-admin Edit News will edit the news file of the language according to session

### Related Files

If you set `webui.supported.locales` make sure that all the related additional files for each language are available. `LOCALE` should correspond to the locale set in `webui.supported.locales`, e. g.: for `webui.supported.locales = en, de, fr`, there should be:

- `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/`  
`Messages.properties`
  - `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/`  
`Messages_en.properties`
  - `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/`  
`Messages_de.properties`
  - `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/`  
`Messages_fr.properties`
- Files to be localized:
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/modules/server/src/main/resources/`  
`Messages_LOCALE.properties`



- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/submission-forms_LOCALE.xml`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/default_LOCALE.license` – should be pure ASCII
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/change_password_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/feedback_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/internal_error_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/register_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/submit_archive_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/submit_reject_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/submit_task_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/subscription_LOCALE`
- `[dspace-source]/dspace/config/emails/suggest_LOCALE`

### 7.1.3.37 Upload File Settings

Property:	<code>upload.temp.dir</code>
Example Value:	<code>upload.temp.dir = \${dspace.dir}/upload</code>
Informational Note:	This property sets where DSpace temporarily stores uploaded files.

### 7.1.3.38 SFX Server (OpenURL)

SFX Server is an OpenURL Resolver.

Property:	<code>sfx.server.url</code>
Example Value:	<code>sfx.server.url = <a href="http://sfx.myu.edu:8888/sfx?">http://sfx.myu.edu:8888/sfx?</a></code>
	<code>sfx.server.url = <a href="http://worldcatlibraries.org/registry/gateway?">http://worldcatlibraries.org/registry/gateway?</a></code>
Informational Note:	SFX query is appended to this URL. If this property is commented out or omitted, SFX support is switched off.

All the parameters mapping are defined in `[dspace]/config/sfx.xml` file. The program will check the parameters in `sfx.xml` and retrieve the correct metadata of the item. It will then parse the string to your resolver.

For the following example, the program will search the first query-pair which is DOI of the item. If there is a DOI for that item, your retrieval results will be, for example:

<http://researchspace.auckland.ac.nz/handle/2292/5763>

Example. For setting DOI in `sfx.xml`

```
<query-pairs>
 <field>
 <querystring>rft_id=info:doi/</querystring>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>identifier</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier>doi</dc-qualifier>
 </field>
</query-pairs>
```

If there is no DOI for that item, it will search next query-pair based on the `[dspace]/config/sfx.xml` and then so on.

Example of using ISSN, volume, issue for item without DOI

[\[http://researchspace.auckland.ac.nz/handle/2292/4947\]](http://researchspace.auckland.ac.nz/handle/2292/4947)

For parameter passing to the `<querystring>`

```
<querystring>rft_id=info:doi/</querystring>
```

Please refer to these:

[\[http://ocoins.info/cobgbook.html\]](http://ocoins.info/cobgbook.html)

[\[http://ocoins.info/cobg.html\]](http://ocoins.info/cobg.html)

Program assume won't get empty string for the item, as there will at least author, title for the item to pass to the resolver.

For contributor author, program maintains original DSpace SFX function of extracting author's first and last name.

```
<field>
 <querystring>rft.aulast=</querystring>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>contributor</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier>author</dc-qualifier>
</field>
<field>
 <querystring>rft.aufirst=</querystring>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>contributor</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier>author</dc-qualifier>
</field>
```

### 7.1.3.39 Controlled Vocabulary Settings

DSpace now supports controlled vocabularies to confine the set of keywords that users can use while describing items.

The need for a limited set of keywords is important since it eliminates the ambiguity of a free description system, consequently simplifying the task of finding specific items of information.

The controlled vocabulary add-on allows the user to choose from a defined set of keywords organized in a tree (taxonomy) and then use these keywords to describe items while they are being submitted.

We have also developed a small search engine that displays the classification tree (or taxonomy) allowing the user to select the branches that best describe the information that he/she seeks.

The taxonomies are described in XML following this (very simple) structure:

```
<node id="acmccs98" label="ACMCCS98">
 <isComposedBy>
 <node id="A." label="General Literature">
 <isComposedBy>
 <node id="A.0" label="GENERAL"/>
 <node id="A.1" label="INTRODUCTORY AND SURVEY"/>
 </isComposedBy>
 </node>
 </isComposedBy>
</node>
```

You are free to use any application you want to create your controlled vocabularies. A simple text editor should be enough for small projects. Bigger projects will require more complex tools. You may use Protegé to create your taxonomies, save them as OWL and then use a XML Stylesheet (XSLT) to transform your documents to the appropriate format. Future enhancements to this add-on should make it compatible with standard schemas such as OWL or RDF.

New vocabularies should be placed in `[dspace]/config/controlled-vocabularies/` and must be according to the structure described. A validation XML Schema (named `controlledvocabulary.xsd`) is also available in that directory.

Vocabularies need to be associated with the correspondent DC metadata fields. Edit the file `[dspace]/config/input-forms.xml` and place a `"vocabulary"` tag under the `"field"` element that you want to control. Set value of the `"vocabulary"` element to the name of the file that contains the vocabulary, leaving out the extension (the add-on will only load files with extension `"*.xml"`). For example:

```
<field>
 <dc-schema>dc</dc-schema>
 <dc-element>subject</dc-element>
 <dc-qualifier></dc-qualifier>
 <!-- An input-type of twobox MUST be marked as repeatable -->
 <repeatable>true</repeatable>
 <label>Subject Keywords</label>
```

```
<input-type>twobox</input-type>
<hint> Enter appropriate subject keywords or phrases below. </hint>
<required></required>
<vocabulary [closed="false"]>nsi</vocabulary>
</field>
```

The vocabulary element has an optional boolean attribute **closed** that can be used to force input only with the JavaScript of controlled-vocabulary add-on. The default behavior (i.e. without this attribute) is as set **closed="false"**. This allow the user also to enter the value in free way.

The following vocabularies are currently available by default:

- **nsi** - *nsi.xml* - The Norwegian Science Index
- **srs** - *srs.xml* - Swedish Research Subject Categories

## 7.1.4 Optional or Advanced Configuration Settings

The following section explains how to configure either optional features or advanced features that are not necessary to make DSpace "out-of-the-box"

### 7.1.4.1 The Metadata Format and Bitstream Format Registries

The `[dspace]/config/registries` directory contains three XML files. These are used to load the *initial* contents of the Dublin Core Metadata registry and Bitstream Format registry and SWORD metadata registry. After the initial loading (performed by *ant fresh\_install* above), the registries reside in the database; the XML files are not updated.

In order to change the registries, you may adjust the XML files before the first installation of DSpace. On an already running instance it is recommended to change bitstream registries via DSpace admin UI, but the metadata registries can be loaded again at any time from the XML files without difficulty. The changes made via admin UI are not reflected in the XML files.

#### Metadata Format Registries

The default metadata schema is Dublin Core, so DSpace is distributed with a default Dublin Core Metadata Registry. Currently, the system requires that every item have a Dublin Core record.

There is a set of Dublin Core Elements, which is used by the system and should not be removed or moved to another schema. See Appendix: Default Dublin Core Metadata registry.

**Note:** altering a Metadata Registry has no effect on corresponding parts, e.g. item submission interface, item display, item import and vice versa. Every metadata element used in submission interface or item import must be registered before using it.

**Note** also that deleting a metadata element will delete all its corresponding values.

If you wish to add more metadata elements, you can do this in one of two ways. Via the DSpace admin UI you may define new metadata elements in the different available schemas. But you may also modify the XML file (or provide an additional one), and re-import the data as follows:

```
[dspace]/bin/dspace registry-loader -metadata [xml file]
```

The XML file should be structured as follows:

```
<dspace-dc-types>
 <dc-type>
 <schema>dc</schema>
 <element>contributor</element>
 <qualifier>advisor</qualifier>
 <scope_note>Use primarily for thesis advisor.</scope_note>
 </dc-type>
</dspace-dc-types>
```

The set of metadata registry files which is read by the MetadataImporter tool is configured by the `metadata.registry.load` property in `dspace.cfg` or `local.cfg`. If you wish to use the importer to load a new metadata namespace from a new file, you will need to add the path to your new registry file as an additional value of this property before running the tool.

### Bitstream Format Registry

The bitstream formats recognized by the system and levels of support are similarly stored in the bitstream format registry. This can also be edited at install-time via `[dspace]/config/registries/bitstream-formats.xml` or by the administration Web UI. The contents of the bitstream format registry are entirely up to you, though the system requires that the following two formats are present:

- *Unknown*
- *License*

Deleting a format will cause any existing bitstreams of this format to be reverted to the unknown bitstream format.

#### 7.1.4.2 Configuring Usage Instrumentation Plugins

A usage instrumentation plugin is configured as a Spring bean in the `applicationContext.xml` for each of the various user interface web applications. It will require the injection of an instance of `EventService`, which it will use to register itself on the `UsageEvent` bus. See the configuration file for examples.

More than one such plugin may be configured – each will receive all usage events.

If you wish to write your own, it must extend the abstract class `org.dspace.usage.AbstractUsageEventListener`.

#### The Passive Plugin

The Passive plugin is provided as the class `org.dspace.usage.PassiveUsageEventListener`. It absorbs events without effect, and serves as a simple example of how to write a `UsageEvent` listener.

#### The Tab File Logger Plugin

The Tab File Logger plugin is provided as the class `org.dspace.usage.TabFileUsageEventListener`. It writes event records to a file in tab-separated column format. If left unconfigured, it will write to `[DSpace]/log/usage-events.tsv`. To specify the file path, provide an absolute path, or a path relative to `log.dir`, as the value for `usageEvent.tabFileLogger.file` in `dspace.cfg`.

### 7.1.4.3 Behavior of the workflow system

DSpace contains a workflow system to review submissions as described in detail as part of the [architecture of the business logic layer](#)(see page 828) and in [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327). The file `[dspace]/config/modules/workflow.cfg` contains additional properties to configure details of the workflow system.

The property `workflow.reviewer.file-edit` controls whether files may be added/edited/removed during review (set to true) or whether files can be downloaded during review only.

#### `[dspace]/config/modules/workflow.cfg`

```
#Allow the reviewers to add/edit/remove files from the submission
#When changing this property you might want to alert submitters in the license that
reviewers can alter their files
workflow.reviewer.file-edit=false
```

The workflow system will send notifications on new Items waiting to be reviewed to all EPersons that may resolve those. Tasks can be taken to avoid that two EPersons work on the same task at the same time without knowing from each other. When a EPerson returns a task to the pool without resolving it (by accepting or rejecting the submission), another E-Mail is sent. In case you only want to be notified of completely new tasks entering a step of the workflow system, you may switch off notifications on tasks returned to the pool by setting `workflow.notify.retirend.tasks` to false in `config/modules/workflow.cfg` as shown below:

#### `[dspace]/config/modules/workflow.cfg`

```
Notify reviewers about tasks returned to the pool
workflow.notify.returned.tasks = false
```

By default notifications are sent for tasks returned to the pool.

### 7.1.4.4 Recognizing Web Spiders (Bots, Crawlers, etc.)

DSpace can often recognize that a given access request comes from a web spider that is indexing your repository. These accesses can be flagged for separate treatment (perhaps exclusion) in usage statistics. This requires patterns to match against incoming requests. These patterns exist in files that you will find in `config/spiders`.

In the `spiders` directory itself, you will find a number of files provided by `iplists.com`. These files contain network address patterns which have been discovered to identify a number of known indexing services and other spiders. You can add your own files here if you wish to exclude more addresses that you know of. You will need to include your files' names in the list configured in `config/modules/solr-statistics.cfg`. The `iplists.com-*.txt` files can be updated using a tool provided by DSpace. See [SOLR Statistics](#)(see page 447) for details.

In the `spiders` directory you will also find two subdirectories. `agents` contains files filled with regular expressions, one per line. An incoming request's `User-Agent` header is tested with each expression found in any of these files until an expression matches. If there is a match, the request is marked as being from a spider,

otherwise not. `domains` similarly contains files filled with regular expressions which are used to test the domain name from which the request comes. You may add your own files of regular expressions to either directory if you wish to test requests with patterns of your own devising.



## 7.1.5 Command-line Access to Configuration Properties

You can resolve a configuration property name to its value using the command `dspace dsprop -p some.property.name`. The output is undecorated and may be suitable for use in scripts.

The `dsprop` command has these options:

name	argument	meaning
<code>--property</code> <code>-p</code>	name	the name of the desired configuration property. This option is required.
<code>--module</code> <code>-m</code>	name	the name of the module in which the property is found. If omitted, the value of <code>--property</code> is the entire name. If used, the name will be composed as <code>module.property</code> . For example, " <code>-m dspace -p url</code> " will look up the value of <code>dspace.url</code> .
<code>--raw</code> <code>-r</code>		if used, this prevents the substitution of other property values into the value of the requested property.  It is also useful to see all of the property values when a specific property has an <b>array of values</b> (i.e. the configuration supports specifying multiple values). Otherwise, by default, <code>dsprop</code> may only return the first value in the array.
<code>--help</code> <code>-h</code> <code>-?</code>		Display help similar to this table.

## 7.2 DSpace Item State Definitions

### Workspace item

An item that is under submission and active edit by an authorized user. The workspace item is visible only to the submitter and the system administrators. (Currently there is no simple way to find/browse such items other than

with the direct item ID or to use the supervisor functionality). Using the [supervisor functionality](#) (see page 367), a system admin can allow other authorized user to see/edit the item in the workspace state.

Expected use cases:

- Self deposit
- Collaboration over an in-progress submission for a small group of researchers. (This use case is implemented only with major limitations, using the supervision feature – concurrency, lack of delegation: supervision must be defined by the system administrators, etc.)

### Workflow Item

An item that is under review for quality control and policy compliance. The workflow item is visible to the original submitter (currently only basic metadata are visible out-of-box in the myspace summary list), users assigned to the specific workflow step where the item resides, and system administrators. (Currently there is no simple way to find/browse such items other than with the direct item ID or to use the abort workflow functionality).

Expected use cases:

- Quality control
- Improvements to the bibliographic record (metadata available in workflow can be different than those asked of the submitter)
- Check of policy / copyright

### Withdrawn item

It is the removal of an Item from the archive. However, a withdrawn item is still available to Administrative users (and may optionally be restored to the archive at a later date). A withdrawn item disappears from DSpace (except from Administrative screens) and the item appears to be deleted.

Expected use cases:

- Staging area for item to be removed when copyright issues arise with publisher. If the copyright issue is confirmed, the item will be permanently deleted or kept in the withdrawn state for future reference.
- Logical deletion delegated to community/collection admin, where permanent deletion is reserved to system administrators
- Logical deletion, where permanent deletion is not an option for an organization
- Removal of an old version of an item, forcing redirect to a new up-to-date version of the item (this use case is not currently implemented out-of-box in DSpace, see )

### Non-Discoverable item (also known as Private item)

A non-discoverable (or "private") item is one that is simply **hidden** from all search/browse/OAI results, and is therefore only accessible via direct link (or bookmark). By default, all Items are *discoverable*, meaning they will appear in search/browse/OAI results.

It's important to clarify that non-discoverable items *may or may not be access restricted*. It is possible for an Item to be anonymously visible, but non-discoverable, so that you can only access the item if you are given a link to it.

This state should only refer to the discoverable nature of the item. A non-discoverable (or "private") item will not be included in any system that aims to help users to find items. So it will not appear in:

- Browse
- Recent submission
- Search result



- OAI-PMH (at least for the ListRecords and ListIdentifiers verb; though the OAI-PMH specification is not clear about inconsistent implementation of the ListRecords and GetRecord verb)
- REST list and search methods

It should be accessible under the actual Authorization Policies of DSpace using direct URL or query method such as:

- Splash page access (i.e. /handle/<xxxxx>/<yyyyy>)
- OAI-PMH GetRecord verb
- REST direct access /rest/item/<item-id> or equivalent

Expected use cases:

- Provide a light rights awareness feature where discovery is not enabled for search and/or browse
- Hide “special items” such as repository presentations, guides or support materials
- Hide an old version of an Item in cases where real versioning is not appropriate or liked
- Hide specific types of item such as “Item used to record Journal record: Journal Title, ISSN, Publisher etc.” used as authority file for metadata (dc.relation.ispartof) of “normal item”

### Archived/Published item

An item that is in a stable state, available in the repository under the defined Authorization Policies. Changes to these items are possible only for a restricted group of users (administrators) and should produce versioning according to the Institution's policy.

#### Embargoed Item (see page 0)

Are a special case of Archived/Published Item. The item has some time based access policy attached to it and/or the underlying bitstreams. Specifically, read permission for someone (EPerson Group) starting from a defined date. Typically embargo is applied to the bitstreams so that "fulltext" has initially very limited access (normally administrators or other "repository staff" groups) and only after a defined date will the fulltext become visible to all users (Anonymous group). This scenario is used to implement typical "embargo requirements" from publishers -- see [Delayed Open Access](#)<sup>668</sup>.

If the metadata of the item should be visible only to a specific group of users, it is possible to define an embargo policy also for the ITEM itself. A READ policy for a specific group will mean that only the users in that group will be able to access the item splash page. Note that the DSpace REST API & UI is fully rights aware (see [Discovery](#)(see page 522) documentation for more information, especially the section on "Access Rights Awareness"), meaning that an embargoed item is hidden automatically until the embargo expires.

## 7.3 Directories and Files

- [Overview](#)(see page 810)
- [Source Directory Layout](#)(see page 810)
- [Installed Directory Layout](#)(see page 812)
- [Contents of Server Web Application](#)(see page 812)
- [Log Files](#)(see page 813)
  - [log4j2.xml File](#)(see page 814)

---

<sup>668</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Delayed\\_open\\_access](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Delayed_open_access)

### 7.3.1 Overview

A complete DSpace installation consists of three separate directory trees:

- **The source directory::** This is where (surprise!) the source code lives. Note that the config files here are used only during the initial install process. After the install, config files should be changed in the install directory. It is referred to in this document as *[dspace-source]*.
- **The install directory::** This directory is populated during the install process and also by DSpace as it runs. It contains config files, command-line tools (and the libraries necessary to run them), and usually -- although not necessarily -- the contents of the DSpace archive (depending on how DSpace is configured). After the initial build and install, changes to config files should be made in this directory. It is referred to in this document as *[dspace]*.
- **The web deployment directory::** This directory is generated by the web server the first time it finds a *dspace.war* file in its *webapps* directory. It contains the unpacked contents of *dspace.war*, i.e. the JSPs and java classes and libraries necessary to run DSpace. Files in this directory should never be edited directly; if you wish to modify your DSpace installation, you should edit files in the source directory and then rebuild. The contents of this directory aren't listed here since its creation is completely automatic. It is usually referred to in this document as *[tomcat]/webapps/dspace*.

### 7.3.2 Source Directory Layout

- *[dspace-source]*
  - *LICENSE* - DSpace source code license.
  - *README* - Obligatory basic information file.
  - *dspace/* - Directory which contains all build and configuration information for DSpace
    - *bin/* - Some shell and Perl scripts for running DSpace command-line tasks. Primary among them is the '*dspace*' [commandline utility](#)(see page 608)
    - *config/* - Configuration files:
      - *local.cfg.EXAMPLE* - an example "*local.cfg*(see page 731)" file, which can be used to store all your local configuration overrides. See [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724).
      - *controlled-vocabularies/* - Fixed, limited vocabularies used in metadata entry
      - *crosswalks/* - Metadata crosswalks - property files or XSL stylesheets
      - *emails/* - Text and layout templates for emails sent out by the system.
      - *entities/* - Configuration files for [Configurable Entities](#)(see page 198)
      - *modules/* - Configurations for modules / individual features within DSpace
      - *registries/* - **Initial** contents of the bitstream format registry and Dublin Core element/qualifier registry. These are only used on initial system setup, after which they are maintained in the database.
      - *spring/* - Spring XML configurations used by DSpace for various features.
      - *dspace.cfg* - The Main [DSpace configuration](#)(see page 724) file
      - *dc2mods.cfg* - Mappings from Dublin Core metadata to [MODS](#)<sup>669</sup> for the METS export.
      - *default.license* - The default license that users must grant when submitting items.
      - *dstat.cfg* , *dstat.map* - Configuration for statistical reports.
      - *submission-forms.xml* , *item-submission.xml* - [Submission UI configuration files](#)(see page 338)
    - *modules/* - The Web UI modules "overlay" directory. DSpace uses Maven to automatically look here for any customizations you wish to make to DSpace Web interfaces. See also [Advanced Customisation](#)(see page 662)
    - *solr/* - Solr configuration files for all Solr indexes used by DSpace.

---

669 <http://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/>

- *src/* - Maven configurations for DSpace System. This directory contains the Maven and Ant build files for DSpace.
- *target/* - (Only exists after building DSpace) This is the location Maven uses to build your DSpace installation package.
  - *dspace-installer* - The location of the DSpace Installation Package (which can then be installed by running *ant update*)
- The Source Release contains the following additional directories :-
  - *dspace-api* - Java API source module (to build the *dspace-api.jar*)
  - *dspace-oai* - [OAI-PMH](#)([see page 250](#)) source module (to build to *dspace-oai.jar*)
  - *dspace-rdf* - [RDF](#)([see page 231](#)) source module (to build to *dspace-rdf.jar*)
  - *dspace-rest* - [REST API v6](#) ([deprecated](#))([see page 669](#)) source module
  - *dspace-server-webapp* - Primary backend webapp which hosts the [REST API](#)([see page 666](#)), along with any other enabled modules (OAI, RDF, SWORD, etc).
  - *dspace-services* - Common Services module
  - *dspace-sword* - [SWORD](#)([see page 290](#)) (Simple Web-service Offering Repository Deposit) deposit service source module
  - *dspace-swordv2* - [SWORDv2](#)([see page 275](#)) source module
  - *pom.xml* - DSpace Parent Project definition

### 7.3.3 Installed Directory Layout

Below is the basic layout of a DSpace installation using the default configuration. These paths can be configured if necessary.

- *[dspace]*
  - *assetstore/* - assetstore files. This is where all the files uploaded into DSpace are stored by default. See [Storage Layer](#)([see page 859](#)).
  - *bin/* - shell scripts for DSpace command-line tasks. Primary among them is the '[dspace](#)' [commandline utility](#)([see page 608](#))
  - *config/* - configuration, with sub-directories as above
  - *etc/* - Administrative and database management files
  - *exports/* - temporary storage for any export packages
  - *handle-server/* - Handles server files and configuration
  - *imports/* - temporary storage for any import packages
  - *lib/* - JARs, including *dspace-api.jar*, containing the DSpace classes
  - *log/* - Log files
  - *reports/* - Reports generated by statistical report generator
  - *solr/* - Solr search/browse indexes
  - *triplestore/* - RDF triple store index files (when enabled)
  - *upload/* - temporary directory used during file uploads etc.
  - *webapps/* - location where DSpace installs all Web Applications

### 7.3.4 Contents of Server Web Application

DSpace's Ant build file creates a *webapps/server/* directory with the following structure:

- *server/*
  - *index.html* - Root page of the third party HAL Browser (used to browse/search [REST API](#)([see page 666](#)))
  - *login.html* - (Custom) Login page for HAL Browser (supporting DSpace authentication plugins)
  - *js/* - Javascript overrides for HAL Browser (main HAL Browser code is brought in via Spring REST dependencies)

### 7.3.5 Log Files

The first source of potential confusion is the log files. Since DSpace uses a number of third-party tools, problems can occur in a variety of places. Below is a table listing the main log files used in a typical DSpace setup. The locations given are defaults, and might be different for your system depending on where you installed DSpace and the third-party tools. The ordering of the list is roughly the recommended order for searching them for the details about a particular problem or error.

Log File	What's In It
<i>[dspace]/log/dspace.log.yyyy-mm-dd</i>	Main DSpace log file. This is where the DSpace code writes a simple log of events and errors that occur within the DSpace code. You can control the verbosity of this by editing the <i>[dspace-source]/config/templates/log4j.properties</i> file and then running "ant init_configs".
<i>[dspace]/log/handle-plugin.log</i>	The Handle server runs as a separate process from the DSpace Web UI (which runs under Tomcat's JVM). Due to a limitation of log4j's 'rolling file appenders', the DSpace code running in the Handle server's JVM must use a separate log file. The DSpace code that is run as part of a Handle resolution request writes log information to this file. You can control the verbosity of this by editing <i>[dspace-source]/config/templates/log4j-handle-plugin.properties</i> .
<i>[dspace]/log/handle-server.log</i>	This is the log file for CNRI's Handle server code. If a problem occurs within the Handle server code, before DSpace's plug-in is invoked, this is where it may be logged.
<i>[tomcat]/logs/catalina.out</i>	This is where Tomcat's standard output is written. Many errors that occur within the Tomcat code are logged here. For example, if Tomcat can't find the DSpace code ( <i>dspace.jar</i> ), it would be logged in <i>catalina.out</i> .
<i>[tomcat]/logs/hostname_log.yyyy-mm-dd.txt</i>	If you're running Tomcat stand-alone (without Apache), it logs some information and errors for specific Web applications to this log file. <i>hostname</i> will be your host name (e.g. <i>dspace.myu.edu</i> ) and <i>yyyy-mm-dd</i> will be the date.
<i>[tomcat]/logs/apache_log.yyyy-mm-dd.txt</i>	If you're using Apache, Tomcat logs information about Web applications running through Apache ( <i>mod_webapp</i> ) in this log file ( <i>yyyy-mm-dd</i> being the date.)
<i>[apache]/error_log</i>	Apache logs to this file. If there is a problem with getting <i>mod_webapp</i> working, this is a good place to look for clues. Apache also writes to several other log files, though <i>error_log</i> tends to contain the most useful information for tracking down problems.

<i>PostgreSQL log</i>	PostgreSQL also writes a log file. This one doesn't seem to have a default location, you probably had to specify it yourself at some point during installation. In general, this log file rarely contains pertinent information--PostgreSQL is pretty stable, you're more likely to encounter problems with connecting via JDBC, and these problems will be logged in <i>dspace.log</i> .
-----------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### 7.3.5.1 log4j2.xml File.

the file `[dspace]/config/log4j2.xml` controls how and where log files are created. There are three sets of configurations in that file, called A1, and A2. These are used to control the logs for DSpace (as a whole), and the checksum checker respectively. As implied by the name, this configuration use Log4j v2. For more information on syntax, see <https://logging.apache.org/log4j/2.x/manual/configuration.html>

## 7.4 Metadata and Bitstream Format Registries

- [Default Dublin Core Metadata Registry \(DC\)](#)(see page 814)
- [Dublin Core Terms Registry \(DCTERMS\)](#)(see page 818)
- [Local Metadata Registry \(local\)](#)(see page 822)
- [Default Bitstream Format Registry](#)(see page 822)

### 7.4.1 Default Dublin Core Metadata Registry (DC)

The default DSpace Dublin Core Metadata Registry was originally derived from the 15 Dublin Core elements. This registry initializes the default schema, where **dc** is used to identify the namespace. As this registry is meant to track the Dublin Core standard, it's recommended that the local DSpace administrator not add/remove metadata fields from this namespace; the "local" namespace should be used instead (see below).

element	qualifier	scope note
contributor		A person, organization, or service responsible for the content of the resource. Catch-all for unspecified contributors.
contributor	advisor	Use primarily for thesis advisor.
contributor	author <sup>1</sup>	Author(s) of the work (used by default)
contributor	editor	
contributor	illustrator	
contributor	other	

element	qualifier	scope note
coverage	spatial	Spatial characteristics of content.
coverage	temporal	Temporal characteristics of content.
creator		May be used as an alternative to "contributor.author"
date		Use qualified form if possible.
date	accessioned <sup>1</sup>	Date DSpace takes possession of item.
date	available <sup>1</sup>	Date or date range item became available to the public.
date	copyright	Date of copyright.
date	created	Date of creation or manufacture of intellectual content if different from date.issued.
date	issued <sup>1</sup>	Date of publication or distribution.
date	submitted	Recommend for theses/dissertations.
identifier		Catch-all for unambiguous identifiers not defined by qualified form; use identifier.other for a known identifier common to a local collection instead of unqualified form.
identifier	citation <sup>2</sup>	Human-readable, standard bibliographic citation of non-DSpace format of this item
identifier	govdoc <sup>2</sup>	A government document number
identifier	isbn <sup>2</sup>	International Standard Book Number
identifier	issn <sup>2</sup>	International Standard Serial Number
identifier	sici	Serial Item and Contribution Identifier
identifier	ismn <sup>2</sup>	International Standard Music Number

element	qualifier	scope note
identifier	other <sup>2</sup>	A known identifier type common to a local collection.
identifier	uri <sup>1</sup>	Uniform Resource Identifier
description <sup>1</sup>		Catch-all for any description not defined by qualifiers.
description	abstract <sup>1</sup>	Abstract or summary.
description	provenance <sup>1</sup>	The history of custody of the item since its creation, including any changes successive custodians made to it.
description	sponsorship <sup>2</sup>	Information about sponsoring agencies, individuals, or contractual arrangements for the item.
description	statementofresponsibility	To preserve statement of responsibility from MARC records.
description	tableofcontents	A table of contents for a given item.
description	uri	Uniform Resource Identifier pointing to description of this item.
format <sup>2</sup>		Catch-all for any format information not defined by qualifiers.
format	extent <sup>2</sup>	Size or duration.
format	medium <sup>2</sup>	Physical medium.
format	mimetype <sup>2</sup>	Registered MIME type identifiers.
language		Catch-all for non-ISO forms of the language of the item, accommodating harvested values.
language	iso <sup>2</sup>	Current ISO standard for language of intellectual content, including country codes (e.g. "en_US").

<b>element</b>	<b>qualifier</b>	<b>scope note</b>
<b>publisher<sup>2</sup></b>		Entity responsible for publication, distribution, or imprint.
relation		Catch-all for references to other related items.
relation	isformatof	References additional physical form.
relation	ispartof	References physically or logically containing item.
relation <sup>1</sup>	ispartofseries	Series name and number within that series, if available.
relation	haspart	References physically or logically contained item.
relation	isversionof	References earlier version.
relation	hasversion	References later version.
relation	isbasedon	References source.
relation	isreferencedby	Pointed to by referenced resource.
relation	requires	Referenced resource is required to support function, delivery, or coherence of item.
relation	replaces	References preceding item.
relation	isreplacedby	References succeeding item.
relation	uri	References Uniform Resource Identifier for related item
rights		Terms governing use and reproduction.
rights	uri	References terms governing use and reproduction.
source		Do not use; only for harvested metadata.
source	uri	Do not use; only for harvested metadata.



element	qualifier	scope note
subject <sup>2</sup>		Uncontrolled index term.
subject	classification	Catch-all for value from local classification system. Global classification systems will receive specific qualifier
subject	ddc	Dewey Decimal Classification Number
subject	lcc	Library of Congress Classification Number
subject	lcsh	Library of Congress Subject Headings
subject	mesh	MEdical Subject Headings
subject	other	Local controlled vocabulary; global vocabularies will receive specific qualifier.
title <sup>1</sup>		Title statement/title proper.
title	alternative <sup>2</sup>	Varying (or substitute) form of title proper appearing in item, e.g. abbreviation or translation
type <sup>1</sup>		Nature or genre of content.

<sup>1</sup> Used by several functional areas of DSpace. **DO NOT REMOVE WITHOUT INVESTIGATING THE CONSEQUENCES**

<sup>2</sup> This field is included in the default DSpace Submission User Interface(see page 338). Removing this field from your registry will break the default DSpace submission form.

## 7.4.2 Dublin Core Terms Registry (DCTERMS)

The Dublin Core Terms (DCTERMS) registry was introduced in DSpace 4. This registry initializes an optional metadata schema, where **dcterms** is used to identify the namespace. In DSpace 4, none of these fields are used by any of the system functionality out of the box. The registry and schema were added as a first step to facilitate the future migration of the DSpace specific DC schema, to this schema that complies to current Dublin Core standards.

The main advantage of the DCTERMS schema is that no field name details gets lost during harvesting, as opposed to harvesting of so called "simple" dublin core, where the qualifiers from the above schema are omitted during harvesting.

As this registry is meant to track the Dublin Core Terms standard, it's recommended that the local DSpace administrator not add/remove metadata fields from this namespace; the "local" namespace should be used instead (see below).

<b>term</b>	<b>scope note</b>
abstract	A summary of the resource.
accessRights	Information about who can access the resource or an indication of its security status. May include information regarding access or restrictions based on privacy, security, or other policies.
accrualMethod	The method by which items are added to a collection.
accrualPeriodicity	The frequency with which items are added to a collection.
accrualPolicy	The policy governing the addition of items to a collection.
alternative	An alternative name for the resource.
audience	A class of entity for whom the resource is intended or useful.
available	Date (often a range) that the resource became or will become available.
bibliographicCitation	Recommended practice is to include sufficient bibliographic detail to identify the resource as unambiguously as possible.
conformsTo	An established standard to which the described resource conforms.
contributor	An entity responsible for making contributions to the resource. Examples of a Contributor include a person, an organization, or a service.
coverage	The spatial or temporal topic of the resource, the spatial applicability of the resource, or the jurisdiction under which the resource is relevant.
created	Date of creation of the resource.
creator	An entity primarily responsible for making the resource.
date	A point or period of time associated with an event in the lifecycle of the resource.
dateAccepted	Date of acceptance of the resource.

<b>term</b>	<b>scope note</b>
dateCopyrighted	Date of copyright.
dateSubmitted	Date of submission of the resource.
description	An account of the resource.
educationLevel	A class of entity, defined in terms of progression through an educational or training context, for which the described resource is intended.
extent	The size or duration of the resource.
format	The file format, physical medium, or dimensions of the resource.
hasFormat	A related resource that is substantially the same as the pre-existing described resource, but in another format.
hasPart	A related resource that is included either physically or logically in the described resource.
hasVersion	A related resource that is a version, edition, or adaptation of the described resource.
identifier	An unambiguous reference to the resource within a given context.
instructionalMethod	A process, used to engender knowledge, attitudes and skills, that the described resource is designed to support.
isFormatOf	A related resource that is substantially the same as the described resource, but in another format.
isPartOf	A related resource in which the described resource is physically or logically included.
isReferencedBy	A related resource that references, cites, or otherwise points to the described resource.
isReplacedBy	A related resource that supplants, displaces, or supersedes the described resource.

<b>term</b>	<b>scope note</b>
isRequiredBy	A related resource that requires the described resource to support its function, delivery, or coherence.
issued	Date of formal issuance (e.g., publication) of the resource.
isVersionOf	A related resource of which the described resource is a version, edition, or adaptation.
language	A language of the resource.
license	A legal document giving official permission to do something with the resource.
mediator	An entity that mediates access to the resource and for whom the resource is intended or useful.
medium	The material or physical carrier of the resource.
modified	Date on which the resource was changed.
provenance	A statement of any changes in ownership and custody of the resource since its creation that are significant for its authenticity, integrity, and interpretation.
publisher	An entity responsible for making the resource available.
references	A related resource that is referenced, cited, or otherwise pointed to by the described resource.
relation	A related resource.
replaces	A related resource that is supplanted, displaced, or superseded by the described resource.
requires	A related resource that is required by the described resource to support its function, delivery, or coherence.
rights	Information about rights held in and over the resource.
rightsHolder	A person or organization owning or managing rights over the resource.

term	scope note
source	A related resource from which the described resource is derived.
spatial	Spatial characteristics of the resource.
subject	The topic of the resource.
tableOfContents	A list of subunits of the resource.
temporal	Temporal characteristics of the resource.
title	A name given to the resource.
type	The nature or genre of the resource.
valid	Date (often a range) of validity of a resource.

### 7.4.3 Local Metadata Registry (local)

Editing the DC and DCTERMS schemas is recommended against because it may complicate the upgrade path in case a newer version of DSpace needs to make changes or migrations in these standard metadata fields. Therefore, an empty metadata schema called "local" is provided (since DSpace 6), which can be used by the DSpace administrator as a namespace for custom local metadata fields. Such custom fields would be anything that does not fit into DC or DCTERMS. Future DSpace migrations will not touch fields in the "local" namespace.

element	qualifier	scope note
<empty by default>		<fields to be populated by DSpace administrator if needed>

### 7.4.4 Default Bitstream Format Registry

Mimetype	Short Description	Description	Support Level	Internal	Extensions
application/octet-stream <sup>1</sup>	Unknown	Unknown data format	Unknown	false	
text/plain <sup>1</sup>	License	Item-specific license agreed upon to submission	Known	true	

application/marc	MARC	Machine-Readable Cataloging records	Known	false	
application/mathematica	Mathematica	Mathematica Notebook	Known	false	ma
application/msword	Microsoft Word	Microsoft Word	Known	false	doc
application/pdf	Adobe PDF	Adobe Portable Document Format	Known	false	pdf
application/postscript	Postscript	Postscript Files	Known	false	ai, eps, ps
application/sgml	SGML	SGML application (RFC 1874)	Known	false	sgm, sgml
application/vnd.ms-excel	Microsoft Excel	Microsoft Excel	Known	false	xls
application/vnd.ms-powerpoint	Microsoft Powerpoint	Microsoft Powerpoint	Known	false	ppt
application/vnd.ms-project	Microsoft Project	Microsoft Project	Known	false	mpd, mpp, mpx
application/vnd.visio	Microsoft Visio	Microsoft Visio	Known	false	vsd
application/wordperfect5.1	WordPerfect	WordPerfect 5.1 document	Known	false	wpd
application/x-dvi	TeX dvi	TeX dvi format	Known	false	dvi
application/x-filemaker	FMP3	Filemaker Pro	Known	false	fm
application/x-latex	LateX	LaTeX document	Known	false	latex
application/x-photoshop	Photoshop	Photoshop	Known	false	pdd, psd

application/x-tex	TeX	Tex/LaTeX document	Known	false	tex
audio/basic	audio/basic	Basic Audio	Known	false	au, snd
audio/x-aiff	AIFF	Audio Interchange File Format	Known	false	aif, aifc, aiff
audio/x-mpeg	MPEG Audio	MPEG Audio	Known	false	abs, mpa, mpega
audio/x-pn-realaudio	RealAudio	RealAudio file	Known	false	ra, ram
audio/x-wav	WAV	Broadcast Wave Format	Known	false	wav
image/gif	GIF	Graphics Interchange Format	Known	false	gif
image/jpeg	JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group/JPEG File Interchange Format (JFIF)	Known	false	jpeg, jpg
image/png	image/png	Portable Network Graphics	Known	false	png
image/tiff	TIFF	Tag Image File Format	Known	false	tif, tiff
image/x-ms-bmp	BMP	Microsoft Windows bitmap	Known	false	bmp
image/x-photo-cd	Photo CD	Kodak Photo CD image	Known	false	pcd
text/css	CSS	Cascading Style Sheets	Known	false	css
text/html	HTML	Hypertext Markup Language	Known	false	htm, html
text/plain	Text	Plain Text	Known	false	asc, txt
text/richtext	RTF	Rich Text Format	Known	false	rtf

text/xml	XML	Extensible Markup Language	Known	false	xml
video/mpeg	MPEG	Moving Picture Experts Group	Known	false	mpe, mpeg, mpg
video/quicktime	Video Quicktime	Video Quicktime	Known	false	mov, qt

<sup>1</sup> Used by several functional areas of DSpace. **DO NOT REMOVE WITHOUT INVESTIGATING THE CONSEQUENCES**

## 7.5 Architecture

- [Overview](#)(see page 825)

### 7.5.1 Overview

The DSpace system is organized into three layers, each of which consists of a number of components.

- **Application Layer** - All external/public facing interfaces/tools. These include the Web User Interface, [REST API](#)(see page 666), [OAI-PMH](#)(see page 250), [RDF](#)(see page 231), and [SWORD \(v1\)](#)(see page 290) and [v2](#)(see page 275) interfaces. Also includes the [Command Line](#)(see page 608) interface, and various tools that can be used to import/export data to/from DSpace.
- **Business Logic Layer** - Primarily the Java API layer ([dspace-source]/dspace-api and dspace-services), which provides the core business logic for all the various application interfaces.
- **Storage Layer** - A subset of the dspace-api (*org.dspace.storage.\* classes*) whose role is to manage all content storage (metadata, relationships, bitstreams) for all business layer objects. This layer is provides access to a relational database (Postgres or Oracle usually) via [Hibernate ORM](#)<sup>670</sup> & using [FlywayDB](#)<sup>671</sup> for migrations/updates. It also defines a custom BitStoreService for storing files (bitstreams) via storage plugins (currently supporting filesystem storage or Amazon S3 storage).

### DSpace System Architecture

The storage layer is responsible for physical storage of metadata and content. The business logic layer deals with managing the content of the archive, users of the archive (e-people), authorization, and workflow. The application layer contains components that communicate with the world outside of the individual DSpace installation, for example the Web user interface and the [Open Archives Initiative](#)<sup>672</sup> protocol for metadata harvesting service.

Each layer only invokes the layer below it; the application layer may not use the storage layer directly, for example. Each component in the storage and business logic layers has a defined public API. The union of the APIs of those components are referred to as the Storage API (in the case of the storage layer) and the DSpace Java API (in the case of the business logic layer), and the DSpace REST API (in the case of the application layer). In the Application Layer, it's worth noting that the Web User Interface only accesses DSpace via the REST API.

It is important to note that each layer is *trusted*. Although the logic for *authorising actions* is in the business logic layer, the system relies on individual applications in the application layer to correctly and securely *authenticate* e-

<sup>670</sup> <https://hibernate.org/orm/>

<sup>671</sup> <https://flywaydb.org/>

<sup>672</sup> <http://www.openarchives.org/>



people. If a 'hostile' or insecure application were allowed to invoke the Java API directly, it could very easily perform actions as any e-person in the system.

The reason for this design choice is that authentication methods will vary widely between different applications, so it makes sense to leave the logic and responsibility for that in these applications.

The source code is organized to cohere very strictly to this three-layer architecture.

The storage and business logic layer APIs are extensively documented with Javadoc-style comments. Generate the HTML version of these by entering the `[dspace-source]/dspace` directory and running:

```
mvn javadoc:javadoc
```

The resulting documentation will be at `[dspace-source]dspace-api/target/site/apidocs/index.html`. The package-level documentation of each package usually contains an overview of the package and some example usage. This information is not repeated in this architecture document; this and the Javadoc APIs are intended to be used in parallel.

The REST API provides not only JavaDocs, but also a public contract. See [REST API](#)(see page 666).

Each layer is described in a separate section:

- [Storage Layer](#)(see page 859)
  - RDBMS
  - Bitstream Store
- [Business Logic Layer](#)(see page 828)
  - Core Classes
  - Content Management API
  - Workflow System
  - Administration Toolkit
  - E-person/Group Manager
  - Authorisation
  - Handle Manager/Handle Plugin
  - Search
  - Browse API
  - History Recorder
  - Checksum Checker
- [Application Layer](#)(see page 826)
  - Web User Interface
  - OAI-PMH Data Provider
  - Item Importer and Exporter
  - Transferring Items Between DSpace Instances
  - Registration
  - METS Tools
  - Media Filters
  - Sub-Community Management

## 7.5.2 Application Layer

The following explains the components of the Application Layer.

- [Web User Interface](#)(see page 827)
  - [Web UI Files](#)(see page 827)
- [REST API](#)(see page 827)

- [OAI-PMH Data Provider](#)(see page 827)
- [RDF / Linked Data Provider](#)(see page 827)
- [SWORD v1 Service / Server](#)(see page 827)
- [SWORD v2 Service / Server](#)(see page 827)
- [DSpace Command Line Launcher](#)(see page 827)
  - [Command Launcher Structure](#)(see page 827)

### 7.5.2.1 Web User Interface

The DSpace Web UI is the largest and most-used component in the application layer. As of DSpace 7, it has been rebuilt on [Angular.io](https://angular.io)<sup>673</sup> communicating via the [REST API](#)(see page 666) to the rest of DSpace.

#### Web UI Files

The web User Interface code is managed in a separate GitHub Project:

<https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/>

Quick setup and configuration instructions can be found in the README of that project.

### 7.5.2.2 REST API

This component defines the main public API of the Application Layer. See [REST API](#)(see page 666) section of the documentation.

### 7.5.2.3 OAI-PMH Data Provider

See [OAI](#)(see page 250) section of the documentation

### 7.5.2.4 RDF / Linked Data Provider

See [Linked \(Open\) Data](#)(see page 231) section of the documentation

### 7.5.2.5 SWORD v1 Service / Server

See [SWORDv1 Server](#)(see page 290) section of the documentation

### 7.5.2.6 SWORD v2 Service / Server

See [SWORDv2 Server](#)(see page 275) section of the documentation

### 7.5.2.7 DSpace Command Line Launcher

The DSpace Command Launcher brings together the various command and scripts into a standard-practice for running CLI runtime programs. See [Command Line Operations](#)(see page 608)

---

<sup>673</sup> <https://angular.io/>

## Command Launcher Structure

There are two components to the command launcher: the `dspace` script and the `launcher.xml`. The DSpace command calls a java class which in turn refers to `launcher.xml` that is stored in the `[dspace]/config` directory

`launcher.xml` is made of several components:

- `<command>` begins the stanza for a command
- `<name>_name of command_</name>` the name of the command that you would use.
- `<description>_the description of the command_</description>`
- `<step> </step>` User arguments are parsed and tested.
- `<class>_<the java class that is being used to run the CLI program>_</class>`

See [Command Line Operations](#)(see page 608) for additional details.

## 7.5.3 Business Logic Layer

- [Core Classes](#)(see page 829)
  - [The Configuration Service](#)(see page 829)
  - [Constants](#)(see page 829)
  - [Context](#)(see page 830)
  - [Email](#)(see page 831)
  - [LogManager](#)(see page 831)
  - [Utils](#)(see page 832)
- [Content Management API](#)(see page 832)
  - [Other Classes](#)(see page 833)
  - [Modifications](#)(see page 833)
  - [What's In Memory?](#)(see page 834)
  - [Dublin Core Metadata](#)(see page 834)
  - [Support for Other Metadata Schemas](#)(see page 834)
  - [Packager Plugins](#)(see page 836)
- [Plugin Service](#)(see page 836)
  - [Concepts](#)(see page 836)
  - [Using the Plugin Service](#)(see page 837)
    - [Types of Plugin](#)(see page 837)
    - [Self-Named Plugins](#)(see page 837)
    - [Obtaining a Plugin Instance](#)(see page 838)
    - [Lifecycle Management](#)(see page 838)
    - [Getting Meta-Information](#)(see page 838)
  - [Implementation](#)(see page 838)
    - [LegacyPluginServiceImpl Class](#)(see page 838)
    - [SelfNamedPlugin Class](#)(see page 839)
    - [Errors and Exceptions](#)(see page 839)
  - [Configuring Plugins](#)(see page 840)
    - [Configuring Singleton \(Single\) Plugins](#)(see page 840)
    - [Configuring Sequence of Plugins](#)(see page 840)
    - [Configuring Named Plugins](#)(see page 841)
  - [Use Cases](#)(see page 841)
    - [Managing the MediaFilter plugins transparently](#)(see page 842)
    - [A Singleton Plugin](#)(see page 842)
    - [Plugin that Names Itself](#)(see page 842)
    - [Stackable Authentication](#)(see page 843)
- [Workflow System](#)(see page 843)

- [Administration Toolkit](#)(see page 844)
- [E-person/Group Manager](#)(see page 845)
- [Authorization](#)(see page 845)
  - [Special Groups](#)(see page 845)
  - [Miscellaneous Authorization Notes](#)(see page 847)
- [Handle Manager/Handle Plugin](#)(see page 847)
- [Search](#)(see page 847)
  - [Harvesting API](#)(see page 848)
- [Browse API](#)(see page 848)
  - [Using the API](#)(see page 849)
- [Checksum checker](#)(see page 850)
- [OpenSearch Support](#)(see page 850)
- [Embargo Support](#)(see page 852)
  - [What is an Embargo?](#)(see page 852)
  - [Embargo Model and Life-Cycle](#)(see page 852)

### 7.5.3.1 Core Classes

The *org.dspace.core* package provides some basic classes that are used throughout the DSpace code.

#### The Configuration Service

The configuration service is responsible for reading the main *dspace.cfg* properties file, managing the 'template' configuration files for other applications such as Apache, and for obtaining the text for e-mail messages.

The system is configured by editing the relevant files in `[dspace]/config`, as described in the configuration section.

**When editing configuration files for applications that DSpace uses, such as Apache Tomcat, you may want to edit the copy in `[dspace-source]` and then run `ant update` or `ant overwrite_configs` rather than editing the 'live' version directly!** This will ensure you have a backup copy of your modified configuration files, so that they are not accidentally overwritten in the future.

The *ConfigurationService* class can also be invoked as a command line tool:

- `[dspace]/bin/dspace dsprop property.name` This writes the value of *property.name* from *dspace.cfg* to the standard output, so that shell scripts can access the DSpace configuration. If the property has no value, nothing is written.

For many more details on configuration in DSpace, see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)

#### Constants

This class contains constants that are used to represent types of object and actions in the database. For example, authorization policies can relate to objects of different types, so the *resourcepolicy* table has columns *resource\_id*, which is the internal ID of the object, and *resource\_type\_id*, which indicates whether the object is an item, collection, bitstream etc. The value of *resource\_type\_id* is taken from the *Constants* class, for example *Constants.ITEM*.

Here are a some of the most commonly used constants you might come across:

#### *DSpace types*

- Bitstream: 0
- Bundle: 1

- Item: 2
- Collection: 3
- Community: 4
- Site: 5
- Group: 6
- Eperson: 7

#### *DSpace actions*

- Read: 0
- Write: 1
- Delete: 2
- Add: 3
- Remove: 4

Refer to the [org.dspace.core.Constants](#)<sup>674</sup> for all of the Constants.

#### Context

The *Context* class is central to the DSpace operation. Any code that wishes to use the any API in the business logic layer must first create itself a *Context* object. This is akin to opening a connection to a database (which is in fact one of the things that happens.)

A context object is involved in most method calls and object constructors, so that the method or object has access to information about the current operation. When the context object is constructed, the following information is automatically initialized:

- A connection to the database. This is a transaction-safe connection. i.e. the 'auto-commit' flag is set to false.
- A cache of content management API objects. Each time a content object is created (for example *Item* or *Bitstream*) it is stored in the *Context* object. If the object is then requested again, the cached copy is used. Apart from reducing database use, this addresses the problem of having two copies of the same object in memory in different states.

The following information is also held in a context object, though it is the responsibility of the application creating the context object to fill it out correctly:

- The current authenticated user, if any
- Any 'special groups' the user is a member of. For example, a user might automatically be part of a particular group based on the IP address they are accessing DSpace from, even though they don't have an e-person record. Such a group is called a 'special group'.
- Any extra information from the application layer that should be added to log messages that are written within this context. For example, the Web UI adds a session ID, so that when the logs are analyzed the actions of a particular user in a particular session can be tracked.
- A flag indicating whether authorization should be circumvented. This should only be used in rare, specific circumstances. For example, when first installing the system, there are no authorized administrators who would be able to create an administrator account! As noted above, the public API is *trusted*, so it is up to applications in the application layer to use this flag responsibly.

Typical use of the context object will involve constructing one, and setting the current user if one is authenticated. Several operations may be performed using the context object. If all goes well, *complete* is called to commit the changes and free up any resources used by the context. If anything has gone wrong, *abort* is called to roll back any changes and free up the resources.

You should always *abort* a context if *any* error happens during its lifespan; otherwise the data in the system may be left in an inconsistent state. You can also *commit* a context, which means that any changes are written to the database, and the context is kept active for further use.

---

<sup>674</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/blob/master/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/core/Constants.java>

## Email

Sending e-mails is pretty easy. Just use the configuration manager's *getEmail* method, set the arguments and recipients, and send.

The e-mail texts are stored in `[dspace]/config/emails`. They are processed by the standard *java.text.MessageFormat*. At the top of each e-mail are listed the appropriate arguments that should be filled out by the sender. Example usage is shown in the *org.dspace.core.Email* Javadoc API documentation.

## LogManager

The log manager consists of a method that creates a standard log header, and returns it as a string suitable for logging. Note that this class does not actually write anything to the logs; the log header returned should be logged directly by the sender using an appropriate Log4J call, so that information about where the logging is taking place is also stored.

The level of logging can be configured on a per-package or per-class basis by editing `[dspace]/config/Log4j.properties`. You will need to stop and restart Tomcat for the changes to take effect.

A typical log entry looks like this:

```
2002-11-11 08:11:32,903 INFO org.dspace.app.webui.servlet.DSpaceServlet @
anonymous:session_id=BD84E7C194C2CF4BD0EC3A6CAD0142BB:view_item:handle=1721.1/1686
```

This is breaks down like this:

Date and time, milliseconds	2002-11-11 08:11:32,903
Level ( <i>FATAL</i> , <i>WARN</i> , <i>INFO</i> or <i>DEBUG</i> )	<i>INFO</i>
Java class	<i>org.dspace.app.webui.servlet.DSpaceServlet</i>
	@
User email or <i>anonymous</i>	<i>anonymous</i>
	:
Extra log info from context	<i>session_id=BD84E7C194C2CF4BD0EC3A6CAD0142BB</i>
	:
Action	<i>view_item</i>
	:
Extra info	<i>handle=1721.1/1686</i>

The above format allows the logs to be easily parsed and analyzed. The `[dspace]/bin/log-reporter` script is a simple tool for analyzing logs. Try:

```
[dspace]/bin/log-reporter --help
```

It's a good idea to 'nice' this log reporter to avoid an impact on server performance.

## Utils

*Utils* contains miscellaneous utility methods that are required in a variety of places throughout the code, and thus have no particular 'home' in a subsystem.

### 7.5.3.2 Content Management API

The content management API package *org.dspace.content* contains Java classes for reading and manipulating content stored in the DSpace system. This is the API that components in the application layer will probably use most.

Classes corresponding to the main elements in the DSpace data model (*Community*, *Collection*, *Item*, *Bundle* and *Bitstream*) are sub-classes of the abstract class *DSpaceObject*. The *Item* object handles the Dublin Core metadata record.

Each class generally has one or more static *find* methods, which are used to instantiate content objects. Constructors do not have public access and are just used internally. The reasons for this are:

- "Constructing" an object may be misconstrued as the action of creating an object in the DSpace system, for example one might expect something like:

```
Context dsContent = new Context();
Item myItem = new Item(context, id)
```

to construct a brand new item in the system, rather than simply instantiating an in-memory instance of an object in the system.

- *find* methods may often be called with invalid IDs, and return *null* in such a case. A constructor would have to throw an exception in this case. A *null* return value from a static method can in general be dealt with more simply in code.
- If an instantiation representing the same underlying archival entity already exists, the *find* method can simply return that same instantiation to avoid multiple copies and any inconsistencies which might result.

*Collection*, *Bundle* and *Bitstream* do not have *create* methods; rather, one has to create an object using the relevant method on the container. For example, to create a collection, one must invoke *createCollection* on the community that the collection is to appear in:

```
Context context = new Context();
Community existingCommunity = Community.find(context, 123);
Collection myNewCollection = existingCommunity.createCollection();
```

The primary reason for this is for determining authorization. In order to know whether an e-person may create an object, the system must know which container the object is to be added to. It makes no sense to create a collection outside of a community, and the authorization system does not have a policy for that.

Items are first created in the form of an implementation of *InProgressSubmission*. An *InProgressSubmission* represents an item under construction; once it is complete, it is installed into the main archive and added to the relevant collection by the *InstallItem* class. The *org.dspace.content* package provides an implementation of *InProgressSubmission* called *WorkspaceItem*; this is a simple implementation that contains some fields used by the Web submission UI. The *org.dspace.workflow* also contains an implementation called *WorkflowItem* which represents a submission undergoing a workflow process.

In the previous chapter there is an overview of the item ingest process which should clarify the previous paragraph. Also see the section on the workflow system.

*Community* and *BitstreamFormat* do have static *create* methods; one must be a site administrator to have authorization to invoke these.

### Other Classes

Classes whose name begins *DC* are for manipulating Dublin Core metadata, as explained below.

The *FormatIdentifier* class attempts to guess the bitstream format of a particular bitstream. Presently, it does this simply by looking at any file extension in the bitstream name and matching it up with the file extensions associated with bitstream formats. Hopefully this can be greatly improved in the future!

The *ItemIterator* class allows items to be retrieved from storage one at a time, and is returned by methods that may return a large number of items, more than would be desirable to have in memory at once.

The *ItemComparator* class is an implementation of the standard *java.util.Comparator* that can be used to compare and order items based on a particular Dublin Core metadata field.

### Modifications

When creating, modifying or for whatever reason removing data with the content management API, it is important to know when changes happen in-memory, and when they occur in the physical DSpace storage.

Primarily, one should note that no change made using a particular *org.dspace.core.Context* object will actually be made in the underlying storage unless *complete* or *commit* is invoked on that *Context*. If anything should go wrong during an operation, the context should always be aborted by invoking *abort*, to ensure that no inconsistent state is written to the storage.

Additionally, some changes made to objects only happen in-memory. In these cases, invoking the *update* method lines up the in-memory changes to occur in storage when the *Context* is committed or completed. In general, methods that change any metadata field only make the change in-memory; methods that involve relationships with other objects in the system line up the changes to be committed with the context. See individual methods in the API Javadoc.

Some examples to illustrate this are shown below:

```
Context context = new Context();
Bitstream b = Bitstream.find(context, 1234);
b.setName("newfile.txt");
b.update();
context.complete();
```

**Will change storage**



<pre>Context context = new Context(); Bitstream b = Bitstream.find(context, 1234); b.setName("newfile.txt"); b.update(); context.abort();</pre>	<p><b>Will not</b> change storage (context aborted)</p>
<pre>Context context = new Context(); Bitstream b = Bitstream.find(context, 1234); b.setName("newfile.txt"); context.complete();</pre>	<p>The new name <b>will not</b> be stored since <i>update</i> was not invoked</p>
<pre>Context context = new Context(); Bitstream bs = Bitstream.find(context, 1234); Bundle bnd = Bundle.find(context, 5678); bnd.add(bs); context.complete();</pre>	<p>The bitstream <b>will</b> be included in the bundle, since <i>update</i> doesn't need to be called</p>

### What's In Memory?

Instantiating some content objects also causes other content objects to be loaded into memory.

Instantiating a *Bitstream* object causes the appropriate *BitstreamFormat* object to be instantiated. Of course the *Bitstream* object does not load the underlying bits from the bitstream store into memory!

Instantiating a *Bundle* object causes the appropriate *Bitstream* objects (and hence *BitstreamFormats*) to be instantiated.

Instantiating an *Item* object causes the appropriate *Bundle* objects (etc.) and hence *BitstreamFormats* to be instantiated. All the Dublin Core metadata associated with that item are also loaded into memory.

The reasoning behind this is that for the vast majority of cases, anyone instantiating an item object is going to need information about the bundles and bitstreams within it, and this methodology allows that to be done in the most efficient way and is simple for the caller. For example, in the Web UI, the servlet (controller) needs to pass information about an item to the viewer (JSP), which needs to have all the information in-memory to display the item without further accesses to the database which may cause errors mid-display.

You do not need to worry about multiple in-memory instantiations of the same object, or any inconsistencies that may result; the *Context* object keeps a cache of the instantiated objects. The *find* methods of classes in *org.dspace.content* will use a cached object if one exists.

It may be that in enough cases this automatic instantiation of contained objects reduces performance in situations where it is important; if this proves to be true the API may be changed in the future to include a *loadContents* method or somesuch, or perhaps a Boolean parameter indicating what to do will be added to the *find* methods.

When a *Context* object is completed, aborted or garbage-collected, any objects instantiated using that context are invalidated and should not be used (in much the same way an AWT button is invalid if the window containing it is destroyed).

## Dublin Core Metadata

The *Metadatum* class is a simple container that represents a single Dublin Core-like element, optional qualifier, value and language. Note that since DSpace 1.4 the *MetadataValue* and associated classes are preferred (see Support for Other Metadata Schemas). The other classes starting with *DC* are utility classes for handling types of data in Dublin Core, such as people's names and dates. As supplied, the DSpace registry of elements and qualifiers corresponds to the [Library Application Profile](#)<sup>675</sup> for Dublin Core. It should be noted that these utility classes assume that the values will be in a certain syntax, which will be true for all data generated within the DSpace system, but since Dublin Core does not always define strict syntax, this may not be true for Dublin Core originating outside DSpace.

Below is the specific syntax that DSpace expects various fields to adhere to:

Element	Qualifier	Syntax	Helper Class
<i>date</i>	Any or unqualified	ISO 8601 in the UTC time zone, with either year, month, day, or second precision. Examples: <code>_2000 2002-10 2002-08-14 1999-01-01T14:35:23Z _</code>	<i>DCDate</i>
<i>contributor</i>	Any or unqualified	In general last name, then a comma, then first names, then any additional information like "Jr.". If the contributor is an organization, then simply the name. Examples: <code>_Doe, John Smith, John Jr. van Dyke, Dick Massachusetts Institute of Technology _</code>	<i>DCPersonName</i>
<i>language</i>	<i>iso</i>	A two letter code taken ISO 639, followed optionally by a two letter country code taken from ISO 3166. Examples: <code>_en fr en_US –</code>	<i>DCLanguage</i>
<i>relation</i>	<i>ispartofseries</i>	The series name, following by a semicolon followed by the number in that series. Alternatively, just free text. <code>_MIT-TR; 1234 My Report Series; ABC-1234 NS1234 _</code>	<i>DCSeriesNumber</i>

## Support for Other Metadata Schemas

To support additional metadata schemas a new set of metadata classes have been added. These are backwards compatible with the DC classes and should be used rather than the DC specific classes wherever possible. Note that hierarchical metadata schemas are not currently supported, only flat schemas (such as DC) are able to be defined.

The *MetadataField* class describes a metadata field by schema, element and optional qualifier. The value of a *MetadataField* is described by a *MetadataValue* which is roughly equivalent to the older *Metadatum* class. Finally the *MetadataSchema* class is used to describe supported schemas. The DC schema is supported by default. Refer to the javadoc for method details.

<sup>675</sup> <http://www.dublincore.org/documents/2002/09/24/library-application-profile/>

## Packager Plugins

The Packager plugins let you *ingest* a package to create a new DSpace Object, and *disseminate* a content Object as a package. A package is simply a data stream; its contents are defined by the packager plugin's implementation.

To ingest an object, which is currently only implemented for Items, the sequence of operations is:

1. Get an instance of the chosen *PackageIngester* plugin.
2. Locate a Collection in which to create the new Item.
3. Call its *ingest* method, and get back a *WorkspaceItem*.  
The packager also takes a *PackageParameters* object, which is a property list of parameters specific to that packager which might be passed in from the user interface.

Here is an example package ingestion code fragment:

```
Collection collection = find target collection
 InputStream source = ...;
 PackageParameters params = ...;
 String license = null;

 PackageIngester sip = (PackageIngester) PluginManager
 .getNamedPlugin(PackageIngester.class, packageType);

 WorkspaceItem wi = sip.ingest(context, collection, source, params, license);
```

Here is an example of a package dissemination:

```
OutputStream destination = ...;
 PackageParameters params = ...;
 DSpaceObject dso = ...;

 PackageIngester dip = (PackageDisseminator) PluginManager
 .getNamedPlugin(PackageDisseminator.class, packageType);

 dip.disseminate(context, dso, params, destination);
```

### 7.5.3.3 Plugin Service

In DSpace 6, the old "PluginManager" was replaced by `org.dspace.core.service.PluginService` which performs the same activities/actions.

The PluginService is a very simple component container. It creates and organizes components (plugins), and helps select a plugin in the cases where there are many possible choices. It also gives some limited control over the life cycle of a plugin.

#### Concepts

The following terms are important in understanding the rest of this section:

- **Plugin Interface** A Java interface, the defining characteristic of a plugin. The consumer of a plugin asks for its plugin by interface.
- **Plugin** a.k.a. Component, this is an instance of a class that implements a certain interface. It is interchangeable with other implementations, so that any of them may be "plugged in", hence the name. A Plugin is an instance of any class that implements the plugin interface.
- **Implementation class** The actual class of a plugin. It may implement several plugin interfaces, but must implement at least one.
- **Name** Plugin implementations can be distinguished from each other by name, a short String meant to symbolically represent the implementation class. They are called "named plugins". Plugins only need to be named when the caller has to make an active choice between them.
- **SelfNamedPlugin class** Plugins that extend the *SelfNamedPlugin* class can take advantage of additional features of the Plugin Manager. Any class can be managed as a plugin, so it is not necessary, just possible.
- **Reusable** Reusable plugins are only instantiated once, and the Plugin Manager returns the same (cached) instance whenever that same plugin is requested again. This behavior can be turned off if desired.

## Using the Plugin Service

### Types of Plugin

The Plugin Service supports three different patterns of usage:

1. **Singleton Plugins** There is only one implementation class for the plugin. It is indicated in the configuration. This type of plugin chooses an implementation of a service, for the entire system, at configuration time. Your application just fetches the plugin for that interface and gets the configured-in choice. See the `getSinglePlugin()` method.
2. **Sequence Plugins** You need a sequence or series of plugins, to implement a mechanism like Stackable Authentication or a pipeline, where each plugin is called in order to contribute its implementation of a process to the whole. The Plugin Manager supports this by letting you configure a sequence of plugins for a given interface. See the `getPluginSequence()` method.
3. **Named Plugins** Use a named plugin when the application has to choose one plugin implementation out of many available ones. Each implementation is bound to one or more names (symbolic identifiers) in the configuration. The name is just a string to be associated with the combination of implementation class and interface. It may contain any characters except for comma (,) and equals (=). It may contain embedded spaces. Comma is a special character used to separate names in the configuration entry. Names must be unique within an interface: No plugin classes implementing the same interface may have the same name. Think of plugin names as a controlled vocabulary – for a given plugin interface, there is a set of names for which plugins can be found. The designer of a Named Plugin interface is responsible for deciding what the name means and how to derive it; for example, names of metadata crosswalk plugins may describe the target metadata format. See the `getNamedPlugin()` method and the `getAllPluginNames()` methods.

### Self-Named Plugins

Named plugins can get their names either from the configuration or, for a variant called self-named plugins, from within the plugin itself.

Self-named plugins are necessary because one plugin implementation can be configured itself to take on many "personalities", each of which deserves its own plugin name. It is already managing its own configuration for each of these personalities, so it makes sense to allow it to export them to the Plugin Manager rather than expecting the plugin configuration to be kept in sync with its own configuration.

An example helps clarify the point: There is a named plugin that does crosswalks, call it *CrosswalkPlugin*. It has several implementations that crosswalk some kind of metadata. Now we add a new plugin which uses XSL stylesheet transformation (XSLT) to crosswalk many types of metadata – so the single plugin can act like many different plugins, depending on which stylesheet it employs.

This XSLT-crosswalk plugin has its own configuration that maps a Plugin Name to a stylesheet – it has to, since of course the Plugin Manager doesn't know anything about stylesheets. It becomes a self-named plugin, so that it reads its configuration data, gets the list of names to which it can respond, and passes those on to the Plugin Manager.

When the Plugin Service creates an instance of the XSLT-crosswalk, it records the Plugin Name that was responsible for that instance. The plugin can look at that Name later in order to configure itself correctly for the Name that created it. This mechanism is all part of the *SelfNamedPlugin* class which is part of any self-named plugin.

### Obtaining a Plugin Instance

The most common thing you will do with the Plugin Service is obtain an instance of a plugin. To request a plugin, you must always specify the plugin interface you want. You will also supply a name when asking for a named plugin.

A sequence plugin is returned as an array of `_Object_s` since it is actually an ordered list of plugins.

See the `getSinglePlugin()`, `getPluginSequence()`, `getNamedPlugin()` methods.

### Lifecycle Management

When *PluginService* fulfills a request for a plugin, a new instance is always created.

### Getting Meta-Information

The *PluginService* can list all the names of the Named Plugins which implement an interface. You may need this, for example, to implement a menu in a user interface that presents a choice among all possible plugins. See the `getAllPluginNames()` method.

Note that it only returns the plugin name, so if you need a more sophisticated or meaningful "label" (i.e. a key into the I18N message catalog) then you should add a method to the plugin itself to return that.

### Implementation

Note: The *PluginService* refers to interfaces and classes internally only by their names whenever possible, to avoid loading classes until absolutely necessary (i.e. to create an instance). As you'll see below, self-named classes still have to be loaded to query them for names, but for the most part it can avoid loading classes. This saves a lot of time at start-up and keeps the JVM memory footprint down, too. As the Plugin Manager gets used for more classes, this will become a greater concern.

The only downside of "on-demand" loading is that errors in the configuration don't get discovered right away. The solution is to call the `checkConfiguration()` method after making any changes to the configuration.

### LegacyPluginServiceImpl Class

The *LegacyPluginServiceImpl* class is the default *PluginService* implementation. While it is possible to implement your own version of *PluginService*, no other implementations are provided with DSpace

Here are the public methods, followed by explanations:

- `Object getSinglePlugin(Class interfaceClass)` - Returns an instance of the singleton (single) plugin implementing the given interface. There must be exactly one single plugin configured for this interface, otherwise the *PluginConfigurationError* is thrown. Note that this is the only "get plugin" method

which throws an exception. It is typically used at initialization time to set up a permanent part of the system so any failure is fatal. See the *plugin.single* configuration key for configuration details.

- `Object[] getPluginSequence(Class interfaceClass)` - Returns instances of all plugins that implement the interface *interfaceClass*, in an *Array*. Returns an empty array if there are no matching plugins. The order of the plugins in the array is the same as their class names in the configuration's value field. See the *plugin.sequence* configuration key for configuration details.
- `Object getNamedPlugin(Class interfaceClass, String name)` - Returns an instance of a plugin that implements the interface *interfaceClass* and is bound to a name matching name. If there is no matching plugin, it returns null. The names are matched by *String.equals()*. See the *plugin.named* and *plugin.selfnamed* configuration keys for configuration details.
- `String[] getAllPluginNames(Class interfaceClass)` - Returns all of the names under which a named plugin implementing the interface *interfaceClass* can be requested (with *getNamedPlugin()*). The array is empty if there are no matches. Use this to populate a menu of plugins for interactive selection, or to document what the possible choices are. The names are NOT returned in any predictable order, so you may wish to sort them first. Note: Since a plugin may be bound to more than one name, the list of names this returns does not represent the list of plugins. To get the list of unique implementation classes corresponding to the names, you might have to eliminate duplicates (i.e. create a Set of classes).

### SelfNamedPlugin Class

A named plugin implementation must extend this class if it wants to supply its own Plugin Name(s). See Self-Named Plugins for why this is sometimes necessary.

```
abstract class SelfNamedPlugin
{
 // Your class must override this:
 // Return all names by which this plugin should be known.
 public static String[] getPluginNames();

 // Returns the name under which this instance was created.
 // This is implemented by SelfNamedPlugin and should NOT be
 // overridden.
 public String getPluginInstanceName();
}
```

### Errors and Exceptions

```
public class PluginConfigurationError extends Error
{
 public PluginConfigurationError(String message);
}
```

An error of this type means the caller asked for a single plugin, but either there was no single plugin configured matching that interface, or there was more than one. Either case causes a fatal configuration error.

```
public class PluginInstantiationException extends RuntimeException
{
```

```

 public PluginInstantiationException(String msg, Throwable cause)
}

```

This exception indicates a fatal error when instantiating a plugin class. It should only be thrown when something unexpected happens in the course of instantiating a plugin, e.g. an access error, class not found, etc. Simply not finding a class in the configuration is not an exception.

This is a *RuntimeException* so it doesn't have to be declared, and can be passed all the way up to a generalized fatal exception handler.

### Configuring Plugins

All of the Plugin Service's configuration comes from the DSpace Configuration Service (see [Configuration Reference](#)(see page 724)). You can configure these characteristics of each plugin:

1. **Interface:** Classname of the Java interface which defines the plugin, including package name. e.g. *org.dspace.app.mediafilter.FormatFilter*
2. **Implementation Class:** Classname of the implementation class, including package. e.g. *org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFFilter*
3. **Names:** (Named plugins only) There are two ways to bind names to plugins: listing them in the value of a *plugin.named.interface* key, or configuring a class in *plugin.selfnamed.interface* which extends the *SelfNamedPlugin* class.
4. **Reusable option:** (Optional) This is declared in a *plugin.reusable* configuration line. Plugins are reusable by default, so you only need to configure the non-reusable ones.

### Configuring Singleton (Single) Plugins

This entry configures a Single Plugin for use with `getSinglePlugin()`:

```
plugin.single.interface = classname
```

For example, this configures the class *org.dspace.checker.SimpleDispatcher* as the plugin for interface *org.dspace.checker.BitstreamDispatcher*:

```
plugin.single.org.dspace.checker.BitstreamDispatcher=org.dspace.checker.SimpleDispatc
her
```

### Configuring Sequence of Plugins

This kind of configuration entry defines a Sequence Plugin, which is bound to a sequence of implementation classes. The key identifies the interface, and the value is a comma-separated list of classnames:

```
plugin.sequence.interface = classname, ...
```

The plugins are returned by `getPluginSequence()` in the same order as their classes are listed in the configuration value.

For example, this entry configures Stackable Authentication with three implementation classes:

```
plugin.sequence.org.dspace.eperson.AuthenticationMethod = \
 org.dspace.eperson.X509Authentication, \
 org.dspace.eperson.PasswordAuthentication, \
```

```
edu.mit.dspace.MITSpecialGroup
```

## Configuring Named Plugins

There are two ways of configuring named plugins:

1. **Plugins Named in the Configuration** A named plugin which gets its name(s) from the configuration is listed in this kind of entry: `_plugin.named.interface = classname = name [ , name.. ] [ classname = name.. ]_`The syntax of the configuration value is: `classname`, followed by an equal-sign and then at least one plugin name. Bind more names to the same implementation class by adding them here, separated by commas. Names may include any character other than comma (,) and equal-sign (=). For example, this entry creates one plugin with the names GIF, JPEG, and image/png, and another with the name TeX:

```
plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MediaFilter = \
 org.dspace.app.mediafilter.JPEGFilter = GIF, JPEG, image/png \
 org.dspace.app.mediafilter.TeXFilter = TeX
```

This example shows a plugin name with an embedded whitespace character. Since comma (,) is the separator character between plugin names, spaces are legal (between words of a name; leading and trailing spaces are ignored). This plugin is bound to the names "Adobe PDF", "PDF", and "Portable Document Format".

```
plugin.named.org.dspace.app.mediafilter.MediaFilter = \
 org.dspace.app.mediafilter.TeXFilter = TeX \
 org.dspace.app.mediafilter.PDFFilter = Adobe PDF, PDF, Portable Document
Format
```

NOTE: Since there can only be one key with `plugin.named.` followed by the interface name in the configuration, all of the plugin implementations must be configured in that entry.

2. **Self-Named Plugins** Since a self-named plugin supplies its own names through a static method call, the configuration only has to include its interface and classname: `plugin.selfnamed.interface = classname [ , classname.. ]` The following example first demonstrates how the plugin class, `XsltDisseminationCrosswalk` is configured to implement its own names "MODS" and "DublinCore". These come from the keys starting with `crosswalk.dissemination.stylesheet.`. The value is a stylesheet file. The class is then configured as a self-named plugin:

```
crosswalk.dissemination.stylesheet.DublinCore = xwalk/TESTDIM-2-DC_copy.xml
crosswalk.dissemination.stylesheet.MODS = xwalk/mods.xml

plugin.selfnamed.crosswalk.org.dspace.content.metadata.DisseminationCrosswalk =
\
 org.dspace.content.metadata.MODSDisseminationCrosswalk, \
 org.dspace.content.metadata.XsltDisseminationCrosswalk
```

NOTE: Since there can only be one key with `plugin.selfnamed.` followed by the interface name in the configuration, all of the plugin implementations must be configured in that entry. The `MODSDisseminationCrosswalk` class is only shown to illustrate this point.

## Use Cases

Here are some usage examples to illustrate how the Plugin Service works.



## Managing the MediaFilter plugins transparently

The MediaFilterService implementation relies heavily on the Plugin Service. The MediaFilter classes become plugins named in the configuration. Refer to the [Configuration Reference](#) (see page 724) for further details.

### A Singleton Plugin

This shows how to configure and access a single anonymous plugin, such as the BitstreamDispatcher plugin:

Configuration:

```
plugin.single.org.dspace.checker.BitstreamDispatcher=org.dspace.checker.SimpleDispatcher
```

The following code fragment shows how dispatcher, the service object, is initialized and used:

```
BitstreamDispatcher dispatcher =
(BitstreamDispatcher)PluginManager.getSinglePlugin(BitstreamDispatcher.class);

int id = dispatcher.next();

while (id != BitstreamDispatcher.SENTINEL)
{
 /*
 * do some processing here
 */

 id = dispatcher.next();
}
```

### Plugin that Names Itself

This crosswalk plugin acts like many different plugins since it is configured with different XSL translation stylesheets. Since it already gets each of its stylesheets out of the DSpace configuration, it makes sense to have the plugin give PluginService the names to which it answers instead of forcing someone to configure those names in two places (and try to keep them synchronized).

Here is the configuration file listing both the plugin's own configuration and the *PluginService* config line:

```
crosswalk.dissemination.stylesheet.DublinCore = xwalk/TESTDIM-2-DC_copy.xsl
crosswalk.dissemination.stylesheet.MODS = xwalk/mods.xsl

plugin.selfnamed.org.dspace.content.metadata.DisseminationCrosswalk = \
org.dspace.content.metadata.XsltDisseminationCrosswalk
```

This look into the implementation shows how it finds configuration entries to populate the array of plugin names returned by the *getPluginNames()* method. Also note, in the *getStylesheet()* method, how it uses the plugin name that created the current instance (returned by *getPluginInstanceName()*) to find the correct stylesheet.

```
public class XsltDisseminationCrosswalk extends SelfNamedPlugin
{
```

```

....
private final String prefix =
"crosswalk.dissemination.stylesheet.";
....
public static String[] getPluginNames()
{
 List aliasList = new ArrayList();
 Enumeration pe = ConfigurationManager.propertyNames();

 while (pe.hasMoreElements())
 {
 String key = (String)pe.nextElement();
 if (key.startsWith(prefix))
 aliasList.add(key.substring(prefix.length()));
 }
 return (String[])aliasList.toArray(new
String[aliasList.size()]);
}

// get the crosswalk stylesheet for an instance of the plugin:
private String getStylesheet()
{
 return ConfigurationManager.getProperty(prefix +
getPluginInstanceName());
}
}

```

### Stackable Authentication

The Stackable Authentication mechanism needs to know all of the plugins configured for the interface, in the order of configuration, since order is significant. It gets a Sequence Plugin from the Plugin Manager. Refer to the Configuration Section on Stackable Authentication for further details.

#### 7.5.3.4 Workflow System

The primary classes are:

<i>org.dspace.content.WorkspaceItem</i>	contains an Item before it enters a workflow
<i>org.dspace.workflow.WorkflowItem</i>	contains an Item while in a workflow
<i>org.dspace.workflow.WorkflowService</i>	responds to events, manages the WorkflowItem states. There are two implementations, the traditional, default workflow (described below) and <a href="#">Configurable Workflow</a> (see page 327).
<i>org.dspace.content.Collection</i>	contains List of defined workflow steps
<i>org.dspace.eperson.Group</i>	people who can perform workflow tasks are defined in EPerson Groups

<code>org.dspace.core.Email</code>	used to email messages to Group members and submitters
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------

The default workflow system models the states of an Item in a state machine with 5 states (SUBMIT, STEP\_1, STEP\_2, STEP\_3, ARCHIVE.) These are the three optional steps where the item can be viewed and corrected by different groups of people. Actually, it's more like 8 states, with STEP\_1\_POOL, STEP\_2\_POOL, and STEP\_3\_POOL. These pooled states are when items are waiting to enter the primary states. Optionally, you can also choose to enable the enhanced, [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327), if you wish to have more control over your workflow steps/states. (Note: the remainder of this description relates to the traditional, default workflow. For more information on the Configurable Workflow option, visit [Configurable Workflow](#)(see page 327).)

The WorkflowService is invoked by events. While an Item is being submitted, it is held by a Workspaceltem. Calling the start() method in the WorkflowService converts a Workspaceltem to a WorkflowItem, and begins processing the WorkflowItem's state. Since all three steps of the workflow are optional, if no steps are defined, then the Item is simply archived.

Workflows are set per Collection, and steps are defined by creating corresponding entries in the List named workflowGroup. If you wish the workflow to have a step 1, use the administration tools for Collections to create a workflow Group with members who you want to be able to view and approve the Item, and the workflowGroup[0] becomes set with the ID of that Group.

If a step is defined in a Collection's workflow, then the WorkflowItem's state is set to that step\_POOL. This pooled state is the WorkflowItem waiting for an EPerson in that group to claim the step's task for that WorkflowItem. The WorkflowManager emails the members of that Group notifying them that there is a task to be performed (the text is defined in config/emails,) and when an EPerson goes to their 'My DSpace' page to claim the task, the WorkflowManager is invoked with a claim event, and the WorkflowItem's state advances from STEP\_x\_POOL to STEP\_x (where x is the corresponding step.) The EPerson can also generate an 'unclaim' event, returning the WorkflowItem to the STEP\_x\_POOL.

Other events the WorkflowService handles are advance(), which advances the WorkflowItem to the next state. If there are no further states, then the WorkflowItem is removed, and the Item is then archived. An EPerson performing one of the tasks can reject the Item, which stops the workflow, rebuilds the Workspaceltem for it and sends a rejection note to the submitter. More drastically, an abort() event is generated by the admin tools to cancel a workflow outright.

### 7.5.3.5 Administration Toolkit

The `org.dspace.administer` package contains some classes for administering a DSpace system that are not generally needed by most applications.

The `CreateAdministrator` class is a simple command-line tool, executed via `[dspace]/bin/dspace create-administrator`, that creates an administrator e-person with information entered from standard input. This is generally used only once when a DSpace system is initially installed, to create an initial administrator who can then use the Web administration UI to further set up the system. This script does not check for authorization, since it is typically run before there are any e-people to authorize! Since it must be run as a command-line tool on the server machine, generally this shouldn't cause a problem. A possibility is to have the script only operate when there are no e-people in the system already, though in general, someone with access to command-line scripts on your server is probably in a position to do what they want anyway!

The `DCType` class is similar to the `org.dspace.content.BitstreamFormat` class. It represents an entry in the Dublin Core type registry, that is, a particular element and qualifier, or unqualified element. It is in the `administer` package because it is only generally required when manipulating the registry itself. Elements and qualifiers are specified as literals in `org.dspace.content.Item` methods and the `org.dspace.content.Metadatum` class. Only administrators may modify the Dublin Core type registry.

The *org.dspace.administer.RegistryLoader* class contains methods for initializing the Dublin Core type registry and bitstream format registry with entries in an XML file. Typically this is executed via the command line during the build process (see *build.xml* in the source.) To see examples of the XML formats, see the files in *config/registries* in the source directory. There is no XML schema, they aren't validated strictly when loaded in.

### 7.5.3.6 E-person/Group Manager

DSpace keeps track of registered users with the *org.dspace.eperson.EPerson* class. The class has methods to create and manipulate an *EPerson* such as get and set methods for first and last names, email, and password. (Actually, there is no *getPassword()* method, an MD5 hash of the password is stored, and can only be verified with the *checkPassword()* method.) There are find methods to find an *EPerson* by email (which is assumed to be unique,) or to find all *EPerson* in the system.

The *EPerson* object should probably be reworked to allow for easy expansion; the current *EPerson* object tracks pretty much only what MIT was interested in tracking - first and last names, email, phone. The access methods are hardcoded and should probably be replaced with methods to access arbitrary name/value pairs for institutions that wish to customize what *EPerson* information is stored.

Groups are simply lists of *EPerson* objects. Other than membership, *Group* objects have only one other attribute: a name. Group names must be unique, so (for groups associated with workflows) we have adopted naming conventions where the role of the group is its name, such as *COLLECTION\_100\_ADD*. Groups add and remove *EPerson* objects with *addMember()* and *removeMember()* methods. One important thing to know about groups is that they store their membership in memory until the *update()* method is called - so when modifying a group's membership don't forget to invoke *update()* or your changes will be lost! Since group membership is used heavily by the authorization system a fast *isMember()* method is also provided.

Two specific groups are created when DSpace is installed: Administrator (which can bypass authorization) and Anonymous (which is assigned to all sessions that are not logged in). The code expects these groups to exist. They cannot be renamed or deleted.

Another kind of Group is also implemented in DSpace, special Groups. The *Context* object for each session carries around a List of Group IDs that the user is also a member of, currently the MITUser Group ID is added to the list of a user's special groups if certain IP address or certificate criteria are met.

### 7.5.3.7 Authorization

The primary classes are:

<i>org.dspace.authorize.AuthorizeService</i>	does all authorization, checking policies against Groups
<i>org.dspace.authorize.ResourcePolicy</i>	defines all allowable actions for an object
<i>org.dspace.eperson.Group</i>	all policies are defined in terms of <i>EPerson</i> Groups

The authorization system is based on the classic 'police state' model of security; no action is allowed unless it is expressed in a policy. The policies are attached to resources (hence the name *ResourcePolicy*), and detail who can perform that action. The resource can be any of the DSpace object types, listed in *org.dspace.core.Constants* (*BITSTREAM*, *ITEM*, *COLLECTION*, etc.) The 'who' is made up of *EPerson* groups. The actions are also in *Constants.java* (*READ*, *WRITE*, *ADD*, etc.) The only non-obvious actions are *ADD* and *REMOVE*, which are authorizations for container objects. To be able to create an Item, you must have *ADD* permission in a Collection, which contains Items. (Communities, Collections, Items, and Bundles are all container objects.)

Currently most of the read policy checking is done with items, communities and collections are assumed to be openly readable, but items and their bitstreams are checked. Separate policy checks for items and their bitstreams enables policies that allow publicly readable items, but parts of their content may be restricted to certain groups.

Three new attributes have been introduced in the *ResourcePolicy* class as part of the DSpace [Embargo](#)<sup>676</sup> Contribution:

- *rpname*: resource policy name
- *rptype*: resource policy type
- *rpdescription*: resource policy description

While *rpname* and *rpdescription* are fields manageable by the users the *rptype* is a field managed by the system. It represents a type that a resource policy can assume between the following:

- TYPE\_SUBMISSION: all the policies added automatically during the submission process
- TYPE\_WORKFLOW: all the policies added automatically during the workflow stage
- TYPE\_CUSTOM: all the custom policies added by users
- TYPE\_INHERITED: all the policies inherited by the *DSO* father.

An custom policy, created for the purpose of creating an embargo could look like:

```
policy_id: 4847
resource_type_id: 2
resource_id: 89
action_id: 0
eperson_id:
epersongroup_id: 0
start_date: 2013-01-01
end_date:
rpname: Embargo Policy
rpdescription: Embargoed through 2012
rptype: TYPE_CUSTOM
```

The *AuthorizeService* class'

*authorizeAction(Context, object, action)* is the primary source of all authorization in the system. It gets a list of all of the *ResourcePolicies* in the system that match the object and action. It then iterates through the policies, extracting the *EPerson* Group from each policy, and checks to see if the *EPersonID* from the *Context* is a member of any of those groups. If all of the policies are queried and no permission is found, then an *AuthorizeException* is thrown. An *authorizeAction()* method is also supplied that returns a boolean for applications that require higher performance.

*ResourcePolicies* are very simple, and there are quite a lot of them. Each can only list a single group, a single action, and a single object. So each object will likely have several policies, and if multiple groups share permissions for actions on an object, each group will get its own policy. (It's a good thing they're small.)

### Special Groups

All users are assumed to be part of the public group (ID=0.) DSpace admins (ID=1) are automatically part of all groups, much like super-users in the Unix OS. The *Context* object also carries around a List of special groups, which are also first checked for membership. These special groups are used at MIT to indicate membership in the MIT community, something that is very difficult to enumerate in the database! When a user logs in with an MIT certificate or with an MIT IP address, the login code adds this MIT user group to the user's *Context*.

<sup>676</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC4x/Embargo>

## Miscellaneous Authorization Notes

Where do items get their read policies? From the their collection's read policy. There once was a separate item read default policy in each collection, and perhaps there will be again since it appears that administrators are notoriously bad at defining collection's read policies. There is also code in place to enable policies that are timed, have a start and end date. However, the admin tools to enable these sorts of policies have not been written.

### 7.5.3.8 Handle Manager/Handle Plugin

The *org.dspace.handle* package contains two classes; *HandleService* is used to create and look up Handles, and *HandlePlugin* is used to expose and resolve DSpace Handles for the outside world via the CNRI Handle Server code.

Handles are stored internally in the *handle* database table in the form:

*1721.123/4567*

Typically when they are used outside of the system they are displayed in either URI or "URL proxy" forms:

```
hdl:1721.123/4567
http://hdl.handle.net/1721.123/4567
```

It is the responsibility of the caller to extract the basic form from whichever displayed form is used.

The *handle* table maps these Handles to resource type/resource ID pairs, where resource type is a value from *org.dspace.core.Constants* and resource ID is the internal identifier (database primary key) of the object. This allows Handles to be assigned to any type of object in the system, though as explained in the functional overview, only communities, collections and items are presently assigned Handles.

*HandleService* contains static methods for:

- Creating a Handle
- Finding the Handle for a *DSpaceObject*, though this is usually only invoked by the object itself, since *DSpaceObject* has a *getHandle* method
- Retrieving the *DSpaceObject* identified by a particular Handle
- Obtaining displayable forms of the Handle (URI or "proxy URL").  
*HandlePlugin* is a simple implementation of the Handle Server's *net.handle.hdl.lib.HandleStorage* interface. It only implements the basic Handle retrieval methods, which get information from the *handle* database table. The CNRI Handle Server is configured to use this plug-in via its *config.dct* file.

Note that since the Handle server runs as a separate JVM to the DSpace Web applications, it uses a separate 'Log4J' configuration, since Log4J does not support multiple JVMs using the same daily rolling logs. This alternative configuration is located at `[dspace]/config/log4j-handle-plugin.properties`. The `[dspace]/bin/start-handle-server` script passes in the appropriate command line parameters so that the Handle server uses this configuration.

In addition to Handles, DSpace also provides basic support for DOIs (Digital Object Identifiers). For more information visit [DOI Digital Object Identifier](#) (see page 396).

### 7.5.3.9 Search

DSpace's search code is a simple, configurable API which currently wraps Apache Solr. See [Discovery](#) (see page 522) for more information on how to customize the default search settings, etc.

## Harvesting API

The *org.dspace.search* package also provides a 'harvesting' API. This allows callers to extract information about items modified within a particular timeframe, and within a particular scope (all of DSpace, or a community or collection.) Currently this is used by the Open Archives Initiative metadata harvesting protocol application, and the e-mail subscription code.

The *Harvest.harvest* is invoked with the required scope and start and end dates. Either date can be omitted. The dates should be in the ISO8601, UTC time zone format used elsewhere in the DSpace system.

*HarvestedItemInfo* objects are returned. These objects are simple containers with basic information about the items falling within the given scope and date range. Depending on parameters passed to the *harvest* method, the *containers* and *item* fields may have been filled out with the IDs of communities and collections containing an item, and the corresponding *Item* object respectively. Electing not to have these fields filled out means the harvest operation executes considerably faster.

In case it is required, *Harvest* also offers a method for creating a single *HarvestedItemInfo* object, which might make things easier for the caller.

### 7.5.3.10 Browse API

The browse API uses the same underlying technology as the Search API (Apache Solr, see also [Discovery](#)(see page 522)). It maintains indexes of dates, authors, titles and subjects, and allows callers to extract parts of these:

- **Title:** Values of the Dublin Core element **title** (unqualified) are indexed. These are sorted in a case-insensitive fashion, with any leading article removed. For example: "The DSpace System" would appear under 'D' rather than 'T'.
- **Author:** Values of the **contributor** (any qualifier or unqualified) element are indexed. Since *contributor* values typically are in the form 'last name, first name', a simple case-insensitive alphanumeric sort is used which orders authors in last name order. Note that this is an index of *authors*, and not *items by author*. If four items have the same author, that author will appear in the index only once. Hence, the index of authors may be greater or smaller than the index of titles; items often have more than one author, though the same author may have authored several items. The author indexing in the browse API does have limitations:
  - Ideally, a name that appears as an author for more than one item would appear in the author index only once. For example, 'Doe, John' may be the author of tens of items. However, in practice, author's names often appear in slightly differently forms, for example:

```
Doe, John
Doe, John Stewart
Doe, John S.
```

Currently, the above three names would all appear as separate entries in the author index even though they may refer to the same author. In order for an author of several papers to be correctly appear once in the index, each item must specify *exactly* the same form of their name, which doesn't always happen in practice.

- Another issue is that two authors may have the same name, even within a single institution. If this is the case they may appear as one author in the index. These issues are typically resolved in libraries with *authority control records*, in which are kept a 'preferred' form of the author's name, with extra information (such as date of birth/death) in order to distinguish between authors of the same name. Maintaining such records is a huge task with many issues, particularly when metadata is received from faculty directly rather than trained library catalogers.
- **Date of Issue:** Items are indexed by date of issue. This may be different from the date that an item appeared in DSpace; many items may have been originally published elsewhere beforehand. The Dublin Core field

used is **date.issued**. The ordering of this index may be reversed so 'earliest first' and 'most recent first' orderings are possible. Note that the index is of *items by date*, as opposed to an index of *dates*. If 30 items have the same issue date (say 2002), then those 30 items all appear in the index adjacent to each other, as opposed to a single 2002 entry. Since dates in DSpace Dublin Core are in ISO8601, all in the UTC time zone, a simple alphanumeric sort is sufficient to sort by date, including dealing with varying granularities of date reasonably. For example:

```
2001-12-10
2002
2002-04
2002-04-05
2002-04-09T15:34:12Z
2002-04-09T19:21:12Z
2002-04-10
```

- **Date Accessioned:** In order to determine which items most recently appeared, rather than using the date of issue, an item's accession date is used. This is the Dublin Core field **date.accessioned**. In other aspects this index is identical to the date of issue index.
- **Items by a Particular Author:** The browse API can perform is to extract items by a particular author. They do not have to be primary author of an item for that item to be extracted. You can specify a scope, too; that is, you can ask for items by author X in collection Y, for example. This particular flavor of browse is slightly simpler than the others. You cannot presently specify a particular subset of results to be returned. The API call will simply return all of the items by a particular author within a certain scope. Note that the author of the item must *exactly* match the author passed in to the API; see the explanation about the caveats of the author index browsing to see why this is the case.
- **Subject:** Values of the Dublin Core element **subject** (both unqualified and with any qualifier) are indexed. These are sorted in a case-insensitive fashion.

### Using the API

The API is generally invoked by creating a *BrowseScope* object, and setting the parameters for which particular part of an index you want to extract. This is then passed to the relevant *Browse* method call, which returns a *BrowseInfo* object which contains the results of the operation. The parameters set in the *BrowseScope* object are:

- How many entries from the index you want
- Whether you only want entries from a particular community or collection, or from the whole of DSpace
- Which part of the index to start from (called the *focus* of the browse). If you don't specify this, the start of the index is used
- How many entries to include before the *focus* entry

To illustrate, here is an example:

- We want **7** entries in total
- We want entries from collection *x*
- We want the focus to be 'Really'
- We want **2** entries included before the focus.

The results of invoking *Browse.getItemsByTitle* with the above parameters might look like this:

```
Rabble-Rousing Rabbis From Sardinia
Reality TV: Love It or Hate It?
FOCUS> The Really Exciting Research Video
Recreational Housework Addicts: Please Visit My House
```



Regional Television Variation Studies  
 Revenue Streams  
 Ridiculous Example Titles: I'm Out of Ideas

Note that in the case of title and date browses, *Item* objects are returned as opposed to actual titles. In these cases, you can specify the 'focus' to be a specific item, or a partial or full literal value. In the case of a literal value, if no entry in the index matches exactly, the closest match is used as the focus. It's quite reasonable to specify a focus of a single letter, for example.

Being able to specify a specific item to start at is particularly important with dates, since many items may have the same issue date. Say 30 items in a collection have the issue date 2002. To be able to page through the index 20 items at a time, you need to be able to specify exactly which item's 2002 is the focus of the browse, otherwise each time you invoked the browse code, the results would start at the first item with the issue date 2002.

Author browses return *String* objects with the actual author names. You can only specify the focus as a full or partial literal *String*.

Another important point to note is that presently, the browse indexes contain metadata for all items in the main archive, regardless of authorization policies. This means that all items in the archive will appear to all users when browsing. Of course, should the user attempt to access a non-public item, the usual authorization mechanism will apply. Whether this approach is ideal is under review; implementing the browse API such that the results retrieved reflect a user's level of authorization may be possible, but rather tricky.

#### 7.5.3.11 Checksum checker

Checksum checker is used to verify every item within DSpace. While DSpace calculates and records the checksum of every file submitted to it, the checker can determine whether the file has been changed. The idea being that the earlier you can identify a file has changed, the more likely you would be able to record it (assuming it was not a wanted change).

`org.dspace.checker.CheckerCommand` class, is the class for the checksum checker tool, which calculates checksums for each bitstream whose ID is in the *most\_recent\_checksum* table, and compares it against the last calculated checksum for that bitstream.

#### 7.5.3.12 OpenSearch Support

DSpace is able to support [OpenSearch](https://opensearch.org/)<sup>677</sup>. For those not acquainted with the standard, a very brief introduction, with emphasis on what possibilities it holds for current use and future development.

OpenSearch is a small set of conventions and documents for describing and using 'search engines', meaning any service that returns a set of results for a query. It is nearly ubiquitous, but also nearly invisible, in modern web sites with search capability. If you look at the page source of Wikipedia, Facebook, CNN, etc you will find buried a link element declaring OpenSearch support. It is very much a lowest-common-denominator abstraction (think Google box), but does provide a means to extend its expressive power. This first implementation for DSpace supports *none* of these extensions, many of which are of potential value, so it should be regarded as a foundation, not a finished solution. So the short answer is that DSpace appears as a 'search-engine' to OpenSearch-aware software.

Another way to look at OpenSearch is as a RESTful web service for search, very much like SRW/U, but considerably simpler. This comparative loss of power is offset by the fact that it is widely supported by web tools and players: browsers understand it, as do large metasearch tools.

#### How Can It Be Used

---

<sup>677</sup> <https://opensearch.org/>

- **Browser Integration:** Many recent browsers (IE7+, FF2+) can detect, or 'autodiscover', links to the document describing the search engine. Thus you can easily add your or other DSpace instances to the drop-down list of search engines in your browser. This list typically appears in the upper right corner of the browser, with a search box. In Firefox, for example, when you visit a site supporting OpenSearch, the color of the drop-down list widget changes color, and if you open it to show the list of search engines, you are offered an opportunity to add the site to the list. IE works nearly the same way but instead labels the web sites 'search providers'. When you select a DSpace instance as the search engine and enter a search, you are simply sent to the regular search results page of the instance.
- **Flexible, interesting RSS Feeds.** Because one of the formats that OpenSearch specifies for its results is RSS (or Atom), you can turn any search query into an RSS feed. So if there are keywords highly discriminative of content in a collection or repository, these can be turned into a URL that a feed reader can subscribe to. Taken to the extreme, one could take any search a user makes, and dynamically compose an RSS feed URL for it in the page of returned results. To see an example, if you have a DSpace with OpenSearch enabled, try:

```
http://dspace.mysite.edu/open-search/?query=<your query>
```

The default format returned is Atom 1.0, so you should see an Atom document containing your search results.

- You can extend the syntax with a few other parameters, as follows:

Parameter	Values
format	atom, rss, html
scope	handle of a collection or community to restrict the search to
rpp	number indicating the number of results per page (i.e. per request)
start	number of page to start with (if paginating results)
sort_by	number indicating sorting criteria (same as DSpace advanced search values)

Multiple parameters may be specified on the query string, using the "&" character as the delimiter, e.g.:

```
http://dspace.mysite.edu/open-search/?query=<your query>&format=rss&scope=123456789/1
```

- Cheap metasearchSearch aggregators like A9 (Amazon) recognize OpenSearch-compliant providers, and so can be added to metasearch sets using their UIs. Then you site can be used to aggregate search results with others.

Configuration is through the `dspace.cfg` file. See [OpenSearch Support](#)(see page 793) for more details.

### 7.5.3.13 Embargo Support

#### What is an Embargo?

An embargo is a temporary access restriction placed on content, commencing at time of accession. Its scope or duration may vary, but the fact that it eventually expires is what distinguishes it from other content restrictions. For example, it is not unusual for content destined for DSpace to come with permanent restrictions on use or access based on license-driven or other IP-based requirements that limit access to institutionally affiliated users. Restrictions such as these are imposed and managed using standard administrative tools in DSpace, typically by attaching specific policies to Items or Collections, Bitstreams, etc. The embargo functionality introduced in 1.6, however, includes tools to automate the imposition and removal of restrictions in managed timeframes.

#### Embargo Model and Life-Cycle

Functionally, the embargo system allows you to attach 'terms' to an item before it is placed into the repository, which express how the embargo should be applied. What do 'we mean by terms' here? They are really any expression that the system is capable of turning into (1) the time the embargo expires, and (2) a concrete set of access restrictions. Some examples:

"2020-09-12" - an absolute date (i.e. the date embargo will be lifted)"6 months" - a time relative to when the item is accessioned"forever" - an indefinite, or open-ended embargo"local only until 2015" - both a time and an exception (public has no access until 2015, local users OK immediately)"Nature Publishing Group standard" - look-up to a policy somewhere (typically 6 months)

These terms are 'interpreted' by the embargo system to yield a specific date on which the embargo can be removed or 'lifted', and a specific set of access policies. Obviously, some terms are easier to interpret than others (the absolute date really requires none at all), and the 'default' embargo logic understands only the most basic terms (the first and third examples above). But as we will see below, the embargo system provides you with the ability to add in your own 'interpreters' to cope with any terms expressions you wish to have. This date that is the result of the interpretation is stored with the item and the embargo system detects when that date has passed, and removes the embargo ("lifts it"), so the item bitstreams become available. Here is a more detailed life-cycle for an embargoed item:

1. **Terms Assignment.** The first step in placing an embargo on an item is to attach (assign) 'terms' to it. If these terms are missing, no embargo will be imposed. As we will see below, terms are carried in a configurable DSpace metadata field, so assigning terms just means assigning a value to a metadata field. This can be done in a web submission user interface form, in a SWORD deposit package, a batch import, etc. - anywhere metadata is passed to DSpace. The terms are not immediately acted upon, and may be revised, corrected, removed, etc, up until the next stage of the life-cycle. Thus a submitter could enter one value, and a collection editor replace it, and only the last value will be used. Since metadata fields are multivalued, theoretically there can be multiple terms values, but in the default implementation only one is recognized.
2. **Terms interpretation/imposition.** In DSpace terminology, when an item has exited the last of any workflow steps (or if none have been defined for it), it is said to be 'installed' into the repository. At this precise time, the 'interpretation' of the terms occurs, and a computed 'lift date' is assigned, which like the terms is recorded in a configurable metadata field. It is important to understand that this interpretation happens only once, (just like the installation), and cannot be revisited later. Thus, although an administrator can assign a new value to the metadata field holding the terms after the item has been installed, this will have no effect on the embargo, whose 'force' now resides entirely in the 'lift date' value. For this reason, you cannot embargo content already in your repository (at least using standard tools). The other action taken at installation time is the actual imposition of the embargo. The default behavior here is simply to remove the read policies on all the bundles and bitstreams except for the "LICENSE" or "METADATA" bundles. See the section on *Extending Embargo Functionality* for how to alter this behavior. Also note that since these policy changes occur before installation, there is no time during which embargoed content is 'exposed' (accessible

by non-administrators). The terms interpretation and imposition together are called 'setting' the embargo, and the component that performs them both is called the embargo 'setter'.

3. **Embargo Period.** After an embargoed item has been installed, the policy restrictions remain in effect until removed. This is not an automatic process, however: a 'lifter' must be run periodically to look for items whose 'lift date' is past. Note that this means the effective removal of an embargo is **not** the lift date, but the earliest date after the lift date that the lifter is run. Typically, a nightly cron-scheduled invocation of the lifter is more than adequate, given the granularity of embargo terms. Also note that during the embargo period, all metadata of the item remains visible. This default behavior can be changed. One final point to note is that the 'lift date', although it was computed and assigned during the previous stage, is in the end a regular metadata field. That means, if there are extraordinary circumstances that require an administrator (or collection editor, anyone with edit permissions on metadata) to change the lift date, they can do so. Thus, they can 'revise' the lift date without reference to the original terms. This date will be checked the next time the 'lifter' is run. One could immediately lift the embargo by setting the lift date to the current day, or change it to 'forever' to indefinitely postpone lifting.
4. **Embargo Lift.** When the lifter discovers an item whose lift date is in the past, it removes (lifts) the embargo. The default behavior of the lifter is to add the resource policies *that would have been added* had the embargo not been imposed. That is, it replicates the standard DSpace behavior, in which an item inherits its policies from its owning collection. As with all other parts of the embargo system, you may replace or extend the default behavior of the lifter (see section V. below). You may wish, e.g. to send an email to an administrator or other interested parties, when an embargoed item becomes available.
5. **Post Embargo.** After the embargo has been lifted, the item ceases to respond to any of the embargo life-cycle events. The values of the metadata fields reflect essentially historical or provenance values. With the exception of the additional metadata fields, they are indistinguishable from items that were never subject to embargo.

#### More Embargo Details

More details on Embargo configuration, including specific examples can be found in the [Embargo](#)<sup>678</sup> section of the documentation.

## 7.5.4 DSpace Services Framework

- [Architectural Overview](#)(see page 854)
  - [DSpace Kernel](#)(see page 854)
    - [Kernel registration](#)(see page 854)
  - [Service Manager](#)(see page 855)
- [Basic Usage](#)(see page 855)
  - [Standalone Applications](#)(see page 855)
  - [Application Frameworks \(Spring, Guice, etc.\)](#)(see page 856)
  - [Web Applications](#)(see page 856)
- [Providers and Plugins](#)(see page 856)
  - [Activators](#)(see page 856)
  - [Provider Stacks](#)(see page 857)
- [Core Services](#)(see page 857)
  - [Caching Service](#)(see page 857)
  - [Configuration Service](#)(see page 857)
  - [EventService](#)(see page 857)
  - [RequestService](#)(see page 857)
  - [SessionService](#)(see page 858)

<sup>678</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC4x/Embargo>

- [Examples](#)(see page 858)
  - [Configuring Event Listeners](#)(see page 858)
- [Tutorials](#)(see page 858)

The DSpace Services Framework is a backporting of the DSpace 2.0 Development Group's work in creating a reasonable and abstractable "Core Services" layer for DSpace components to operate within. The Services Framework represents a "best practice" for new DSpace architecture and implementation of extensions to the DSpace application. DSpace Services are best described as a "Simple Registry" where plugins can be "looked up" or located. The DS2 ([DSpace 2.0](#)<sup>679</sup>) core services are the main services that make up a DS2 system. These includes services for things like user and permissions management and storage and caching. These services can be used by any developer writing DS2 plugins (e.g. statistics), providers (e.g. authentication), or user interfaces.

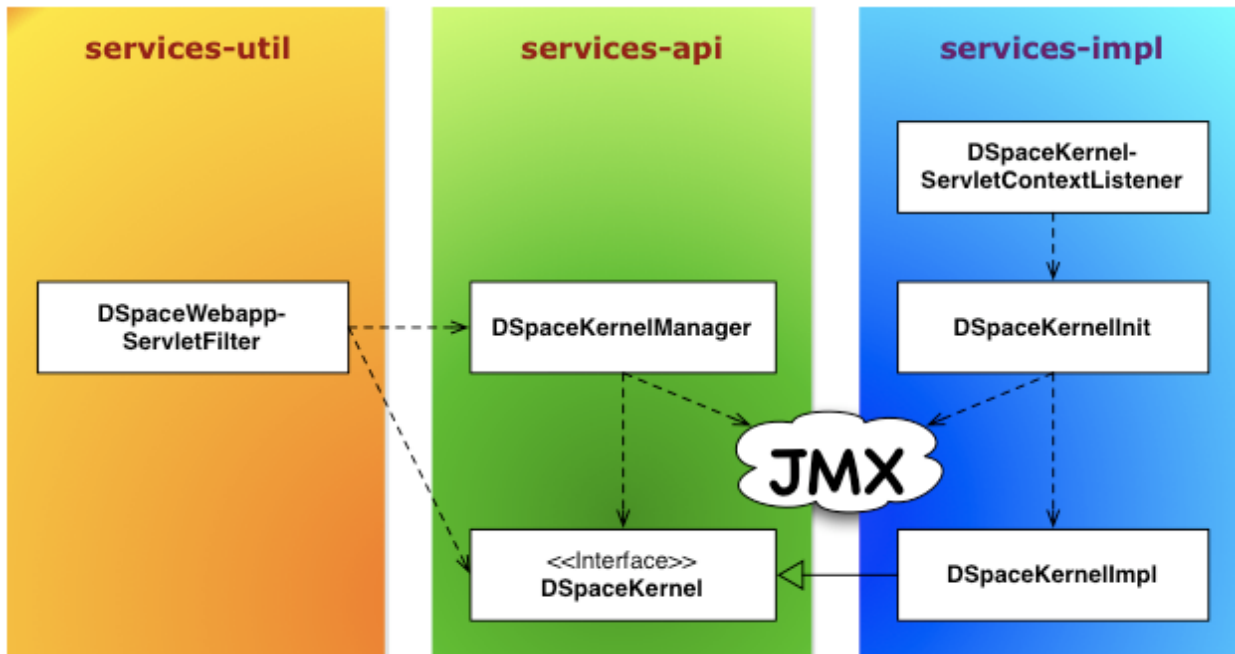
### 7.5.4.1 Architectural Overview

#### DSpace Kernel

The DSpace Kernel manages the start up and access services in the DSpace Services framework. It is meant to allow for a simple way to control the core parts of DSpace and allow for flexible ways to startup the kernel. For example, the kernel can be run inside a single webapp along with a frontend UI or it can be started as part of the servlet container so that multiple webapps can use a single kernel (this increases speed and efficiency). The kernel is also designed to happily allow multiple kernels to run in a single servlet container using identifier keys.

#### Kernel registration

The kernel will automatically register itself as an MBean when it starts up so that it can be managed via [JMX](#)<sup>680</sup>. It allows startup and shutdown and provides direct access to the ServiceManager and the ConfigurationService. All the other core services can be retrieved from the ServiceManager by their APIs.



679 [http://wiki.dspace.org/index.php/DSpace\\_2.0](http://wiki.dspace.org/index.php/DSpace_2.0)

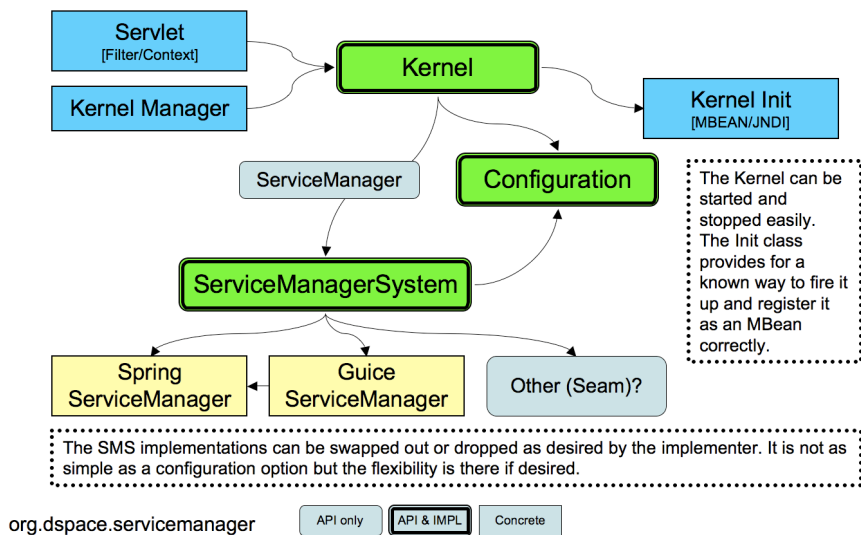
680 <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/tech/docs-jsp-135989.html>

## Service Manager

The ServiceManager abstracts the concepts of service lookups and lifecycle control. It also manages the configuration of services by allowing properties to be pushed into the services as they start up (mostly from the ConfigurationService). The ServiceManagerSystem abstraction allows the DSpace ServiceManager to use different systems to manage its services. The current implementations include Spring and Guice. This allows DSpace 2 to have very little service management code but still be flexible and not tied to specific technology. Developers who are comfortable with those technologies can consume the services from a parent Spring ApplicationContext or a parent Guice Module. The abstraction also means that we can replace Spring/Guice or add other dependency injection systems later without requiring developers to change their code. The interface provides simple methods for looking up services by interface type for developers who do not want to have to use or learn a dependency injection system or are using one which is not currently supported.

# DSpace 2 Service Manager

(DS2 Kernel / Service Manager)



The DS2 kernel is compact so it can be completely started up in a unit test (technically integration test) environment. (This is how we test the kernel and core services currently). This allows developers to execute code against a fully functional kernel while developing and then deploy their code with high confidence.

### 7.5.4.2 Basic Usage

To use the Framework you must begin by instantiating and starting a DSpaceKernel. The kernel will give you references to the ServiceManager and the ConfigurationService. The ServiceManager can be used to get references to other services and to register services which are not part of the core set.

Access to the kernel is provided via the Kernel Manager through the DSpace object, which will locate the kernel object and allow it to be used.

### Standalone Applications

For standalone applications, access to the kernel is provided via the Kernel Manager and the DSpace object which will locate the kernel object and allow it to be used.

```

/* Instantiate the Utility Class */
DSpace dspace = new DSpace();

/* Access get the Service Manager by convenience method */
ServiceManager manager = dspace.getServiceManager();

/* Or access by convenience method for core services */
EventService service = dspace.getEventService();

```

The DSpace launcher (

```
bin/dspace
```

) initializes a kernel before dispatching to the selected command.

Application Frameworks (Spring, Guice, etc.)

Similar to [Standalone Applications](#) (see page 855), but you can use your framework to instantiate an `org.dspace.utils.DSpace` object.

```
<bean id="dspace" class="org.dspace.utils.DSpace"/>
```

Web Applications

In web applications, the kernel can be started and accessed through the use of Servlet Filter/ContextListeners which are provided as part of the DSpace 2 utilities. Developers don't need to understand what is going on behind the scenes and can simply write their applications and package them as webapps and take advantage of the services which are offered by DSpace 2.

### 7.5.4.3 Providers and Plugins

For developers (how we are trying to make your lives easier): The DS2 ServiceManager supports a plugin/provider system which is runtime hot-swappable. The implementor can register any service/provider bean or class with the DS2 kernel ServiceManager. The ServiceManager will manage the lifecycle of beans (if desired) and will instantiate and manage the lifecycle of any classes it is given. This can be done at any time and does not have to be done during Kernel startup. This allows providers to be swapped out at runtime without disrupting the service if desired. The goal of this system is to allow DS2 to be extended without requiring any changes to the core codebase or a rebuild of the code code.

Activators

Developers can provide an activator to allow the system to startup their service or provider. It is a simple interface with 2 methods which are called by the ServiceManager to startup the provider(s) and later to shut them down. These simply allow a developer to run some arbitrary code in order to create and register services if desired. It is the method provided to add plugins directly to the system via configuration as the activators are just listed in the configuration file and the system starts them up in the order it finds them.

## Provider Stacks

Utilities are provided to assist with stacking and ordering providers. Ordering is handled via a priority number such that 1 is the highest priority and something like 10 would be lower. 0 indicates that priority is not important for this service and can be used to ensure the provider is placed at or near the end without having to set some arbitrarily high number.

### 7.5.4.4 Core Services

The core services are all behind APIs so that they can be reimplemented without affecting developers who are using the services. Most of the services have plugin/provider points so that customizations can be added into the system without touching the core services code. For example, let's say a deployer has a specialized authentication system and wants to manage the authentication calls which come into the system. The implementor can simply implement an `AuthenticationProvider` and then register it with the DS2 kernel's `ServiceManager`. This can be done at any time and does not have to be done during Kernel startup. This allows providers to be swapped out at runtime without disrupting the DS2 service if desired. It can also speed up development by allowing quick hot redeloys of code during development.

#### Caching Service

Provides for a centralized way to handle caching in the system and thus a single point for configuration and control over all caches in the system. Provider and plugin developers are strongly encouraged to use this rather than implementing their own caching. The caching service has the concept of scopes so even storing data in maps or lists is discouraged unless there are good reasons to do so.

#### Configuration Service

The `ConfigurationService` controls the external and internal configuration of DSpace 2. It reads `Properties` files when the kernel starts up and merges them with any dynamic configuration data which is available from the services. This service allows settings to be updated as the system is running, and also defines listeners which allow services to know when their configuration settings have changed and take action if desired. It is the central point to access and manage all the configuration settings in DSpace 2.

Manages the configuration of the DSpace 2 system. Can be used to manage configuration for providers and plugins also.

#### EventService

Handles events and provides access to listeners for consumption of events.

#### RequestService

In DS2 a request is an atomic transaction in the system. It is likely to be an HTTP request in many cases but it does not have to be. This service provides the core services with a way to manage atomic transactions so that when a request comes in which requires multiple things to happen they can either all succeed or all fail without each service attempting to manage this independently. In a nutshell this simply allows identification of the current request and the ability to discover if it succeeded or failed when it ends. Nothing in the system will enforce usage of the service, but we encourage developers who are interacting with the system to make use of this service so they know if the request they are participating in with has succeeded or failed and can take appropriate actions.



## SessionService

In DS2 a session is like an HttpSession (and generally is actually one) so this service is here to allow developers to find information about the current session and to access information in it. The session identifies the current user (if authenticated) so it also serves as a way to track user sessions. Since we use HttpSession directly it is easy to mirror sessions across multiple servers in order to allow for no-interruption failover for users when servers go offline.

### 7.5.4.5 Examples

#### Configuring Event Listeners

Event Listeners can be created by overriding the the EventListener interface:

In Spring:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<beans>

 <bean id="dspace" class="org.dspace.utils.DSpace"/>

 <bean id="dspace.eventService"
 factory-bean="dspace"
 factory-method="getEventService"/>

 <bean class="org.my.EventListener">
 <property name="eventService" >
 <ref bean="dspace.eventService"/>
 </property>
 </bean>
</beans>
```

(org.my.EventListener will need to register itself with the EventService, for which it is passed a reference to that service via the eventService property.)

or in Java:

```
DSpace dspace = new DSpace();

EventService eventService = dspace.getEventService();

EventListener listener = new org.my.EventListener();
eventService.registerEventListener(listener);
```

(This registers the listener externally – the listener code assumes it is registered.)

### 7.5.4.6 Tutorials

Several tutorials on Spring / DSpace Services are available:

- [DSpace Spring Services Tutorial](#)<sup>681</sup>
- [The TAO of DSpace Services](#)<sup>682</sup>

## 7.5.5 Storage Layer

In this section, we explain the storage layer: the database structure, maintenance, and the bitstream store and configurations. The bitstream store, also known as assetstore or bitstore, holds the uploaded, ingested, or generated files (documents, images, audio, video, datasets, ...), where as the database holds all of the metadata, organization, and permissions of content.

- [RDBMS / Database Structure](#)(see page 859)
  - [Maintenance and Backup](#)(see page 861)
  - [Configuring the RDBMS Component](#)(see page 861)
  - [Custom RDBMS tables, columns or views](#)(see page 861)
- [Bitstream Store](#)(see page 863)
  - [Cleanup](#)(see page 865)
  - [Backup](#)(see page 865)
  - [Configuring the Bitstream Store](#)(see page 866)
    - [Configuring Traditional Storage](#)(see page 866)
    - [Configuring Amazon S3 Storage](#)(see page 867)
  - [Migrate BitStores](#)(see page 868)

### 7.5.5.1 RDBMS / Database Structure

DSpace uses a relational database to store all information about the organization of content, metadata about the content, information about e-people and authorization, and the state of currently-running workflows.

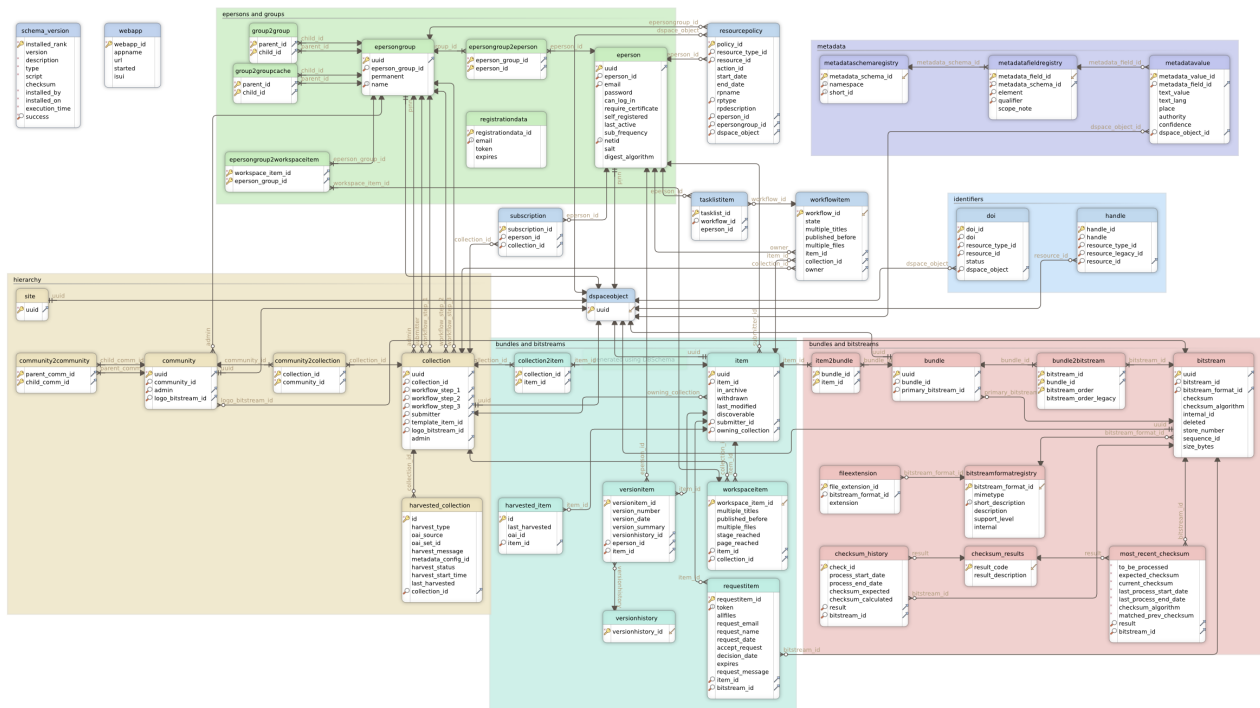
**DSpace 6 database schema** (Postgres). Right-click the image and choose "Save as" to save in full resolution. Instructions on updating this schema diagram are in [How to update database schema diagram](#)<sup>683</sup>.

---

<sup>681</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/DSpace+Spring+Services+Tutorial>

<sup>682</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSPACE/The+TAO+of+DSpace+Services>

<sup>683</sup> <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC/How+to+update+database+schema+diagram>



- DSpace uses [FlywayDB](#)<sup>684</sup> to perform automated database initialization and upgrades. Flyway's role is to initialize the database tables (and default content) prior to Hibernate initialization.
  - The `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.DatabaseUtils` class manages all Flyway API calls, and executes the SQL migrations under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.sqlmigration` package and the Java migrations under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.migration` package.
  - Once all database migrations have run, a series of [Flyway Callbacks](#)<sup>685</sup> are triggered to initialize the (empty) database with required default content. For example, callbacks exist for adding default DSpace Groups (`GroupServiceInitializer`), default Metadata & Format Registries (`DatabaseRegistryUpdater`), and the default Site object (`SiteServiceInitializer`). All Callbacks are under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms` package.
  - While Flyway is automatically initialized and executed during startup, various [Database Utilities](#)<sup>686</sup> are also available on the command line. These utilities allow you to manually trigger database upgrades or check the status of your database.
- DSpace uses [Hibernate ORM](#)<sup>687</sup> as the object relational mapping layer between the DSpace database and the DSpace code.
  - The main Hibernate configuration can be found at `[dspace]/config/hibernate.cfg.xml`
  - Hibernate initialization is triggered via Spring (beans) defined `[dspace]/config/spring/api/core-hibernate.xml`. This Spring configuration pulls in some settings from [DSpace Configuration](#)<sup>688</sup>, namely all Database (db.\*) settings defined there.

684 <https://flywaydb.org/>

685 <https://flywaydb.org/documentation/callbacks.html>

686 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC6x/Database+Utilities>

687 <http://hibernate.org/orm/>

688 <https://wiki.lyrasis.org/display/DSDOC6x/Configuration+Reference>

- All DSpace Object Classes provide a DAO (Data Access Object) implementation class that extends a GenericDAO interface defined in `org.dspace.core.GenericDAO` class. The default (abstract) implementation is in `org.dspace.core.AbstractHibernateDAO` class.
- The DSpace Context object (`org.dspace.core.Context`) provides access to the configured `org.dspace.core.DBConnection` (Database Connection), which is `HibernateDBConnection` by default. The `org.dspace.core.HibernateDBConnection` class provides access to the Hibernate Session interface (`org.hibernate.Session`) and its Transactions.
  - Each Hibernate Session opens a single database connection when it is created, and holds onto it until the Session is closed. A Session may consist of one or more Transactions. Sessions are NOT thread-safe (so individual objects cannot be shared between threads).
  - Hibernate will intelligently cache objects in the current Hibernate Session (on object access), allowing for optimized performance.
  - DSpace provides methods on the Context object to specifically remove (`Context.uncacheEntity()`) or reload (`Context.reloadEntity()`) objects within Hibernate's Session cache.
  - DSpace also provides special Context object "modes" to optimize Hibernate performance for read-only access (`Mode.READ_ONLY`) or batch processing (`Mode.BATCH_EDIT`). These modes can be specified when constructing a new Context object.

Most of the functionality that DSpace uses can be offered by any standard SQL database that supports transactions. However, at this time, DSpace only provides Flyway migration scripts for PostgreSQL<sup>689</sup> and Oracle<sup>690</sup> (and has only been tested with those database backends). Additional database backends should be possible, but would minimally require creating custom Flyway migration scripts for that database backend.

## Maintenance and Backup

When using PostgreSQL, it's a good idea to perform regular 'vacuuming' of the database to optimize performance. By default, PostgreSQL performs [automatic vacuuming](#)<sup>691</sup> on your behalf. However, if you have this feature disabled, then we recommend scheduling the `vacuumdb`<sup>692</sup> command to run on a regular basis.

```
clean up the database nightly
40 2 * * * /usr/local/pgsql/bin/vacuumdb --analyze dspace > /dev/null 2>&1
```

**Backups:** The DSpace database can be backed up and restored using usual [PostgreSQL Backup and Restore](#)<sup>693</sup> methods, for example with `pg_dump`<sup>694</sup> and `psql`<sup>695</sup>. However when restoring a database, you will need to perform these additional steps:

<sup>689</sup> <http://www.postgresql.org/>

<sup>690</sup> <http://www.oracle.com/database/>

<sup>691</sup> <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/runtime-config-autovacuum.html>

<sup>692</sup> <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-vacuumdb.html>

<sup>693</sup> <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/backup.html>

<sup>694</sup> <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-pgdump.html>

<sup>695</sup> <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/static/app-psql.html>

- After restoring a backup, you will need to reset the primary key generation sequences so that they do not produce already-used primary keys. Do this by executing the SQL in `[dspace]/etc/postgres/update-sequences.sql`, for example with:

```
psql -U dspace -f [dspace]/etc/update-sequences.sql
```

### Configuring the RDBMS Component

The database manager is configured with the following properties in `dspace.cfg`:

<code>db.url</code>	The JDBC URL to use for accessing the database. This should not point to a connection pool, since DSpace already implements a connection pool.
<code>db.driver</code>	JDBC driver class name. Since presently, DSpace uses PostgreSQL-specific features, this should be <code>org.postgresql.Driver</code> .
<code>db.username</code>	Username to use when accessing the database.
<code>db.password</code>	Corresponding password to use when accessing the database.

### Custom RDBMS tables, columns or views

When at all possible, we recommend creating custom database tables or views within a *separate schema* from the DSpace database tables. Since the DSpace database is initialized and upgraded automatically using [Flyway DB](http://flywaydb.org/)<sup>696</sup>, the upgrade process may stumble or throw errors if you've directly modified the DSpace database schema, views or tables. Flyway itself assumes it has full control over the DSpace database schema, and it is not "smart" enough to know what to do when it encounters a locally customized database.

That being said, if you absolutely need to customize your database tables, columns or views, it is possible to create *custom Flyway migration scripts*, which should make your customizations easier to manage in future upgrades. (Keep in mind though, that you may still need to maintain/update your custom Flyway migration scripts if they ever conflict directly with future DSpace database changes. The only way to "future proof" your local database changes is to try and make them as independent as possible, and avoid directly modifying the DSpace database schema as much as possible.)

If you wish to add custom Flyway migrations, they may be added to the following locations:

- Custom Flyway SQL migrations may be added anywhere under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.sqlmigration` package (e.g. `[src]/dspace-api/src/main/resources/org/dspace/storage/rdbms/sqlmigration` or subdirectories)
- Custom Flyway Java migrations may be added anywhere under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.migration` package (e.g. `[src]/dspace-api/src/main/java/org/dspace/storage/rdbms/migration/` or subdirectories)

---

<sup>696</sup> <http://flywaydb.org/>

- Additionally, for backwards support, custom SQL migrations may also be placed in the `[dspace]/etc/[db-type]/` folder (e.g. `[dspace]/etc/postgres/` for a PostgreSQL specific migration script)

Adding Flyway migrations to any of the above location will cause Flyway to auto-discover the migration. It will be run in the order in which it is named. Our DSpace Flyway script naming convention follows Flyway best practices and is as follows:

- SQL script names: `V[version]_[date]__[description].sql`
  - E.g. `V5.0_2014.09.26__DS-1582_Metadata_For_All_Objects.sql` is a SQL migration script created for DSpace 5.x ( `V5.0` ) on Sept 26, 2014 ( `2014_09_24` ). Its purpose was to fulfill the needs of ticket DS-1582, which was to migrate the database in order to support adding metadata on all objects.
  - More examples can be found under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.sqlmigration` package
- Java migration script naming convention: `V[version]_[date]__[description].java`
  - E.g. `V5_0_2014_09_25__DS_1582_Metadata_For_All_Objects_drop_constraint.java` is a Java migration created for DSpace 5.x ( `V5_0` ) on Sept 25, 2014 ( `2014_09_25` ). Its purpose was to fulfill the needs of ticket DS-1582, specifically to drop a few constraints.
  - More examples can be found under the `org.dspace.storage.rdbms.migration` package
- Flyway will execute migrations in order, based on their Version and Date. So, `V1.x` (or `V1_x`) scripts are executed first, followed by `V3.0` (or `V3_0`), etc. If two migrations have the same version number, the date is used to determine ordering (earlier dates are run first).

### 7.5.5.2 Bitstream Store

DSpace offers two means for storing content.

1. Storage in a mounted file system on the server (DSBitStore)
2. Storage using AWS S3 (Simple Storage Service), (S3BitStore).

Both are achieved using a simple, lightweight BitStore API, providing actions of Get, Put, About, Remove. Higher level operations include Store, Register, Checksum, Retrieve, Cleanup, Clone, Migrate. Digital assets are stored on the bitstores by being transferred to the bitstore when it is uploaded or ingested. The exception to this is for "registered" objects, that the assets are put onto the filesystem ahead of time out-of-band, and during ingest, it just maps the database to know where the object already resides. The storage interface is such that additional storage implementations (i.e. other cloud storage providers) can be added with minimal difficulty.

DSBitStore stores content on a path on the filesystem. This could be locally attached normal filesystem, a mounted drive, or a mounted networked filesystem, it will all be treated as a local filesystem. All DSpace needs to be configured with for a filesystem, is the filesystem path, i.e. `/dspace/assetstore`, `/opt/data/assetstore`. The DSBitStore uses a "Directory Scatter" method of storing an asset within 3 levels of subfolders, to minimize any single folder having too many objects for normal filesystem performance.

S3BitStore uses Amazon Web Services S3 (Simple Storage Service) to offer limitless cloud storage into a bucket, and each distinct asset will have a unique key. S3 is a commercial service (costs money), but is available at low price point, and is fully managed, content is automatically replicated, 99.99999999% object durability, integrity checked. Since S3 operates within the AWS network, using other AWS services, such virtual server on EC2 will provide lower network latency than local "on premises" servers. Additionally there could be some in-bound / out-bound bandwidth costs associated with DSpace application server outside of the AWS network communicating with S3, compared to AWS-internal EC2 servers. S3 has a checksum computing operation, in which the S3 service

can return the checksum from the storage service, without having to shuttle the bits from S3, to your application server, and then computing the checksum. S3BitStore requires an S3 bucketName, accessKey, secretKey, and optionally specifying the AWS region, or a subfolder within the bucket.

There can be multiple bitstream stores. Each of these bitstream stores can be traditional storage or S3 storage. This means that the potential storage of a DSpace system is not bound by the maximum size of a single disk or file system and also that filesystem and S3storage can be combined in one DSpace installation. Both filesystem and S3 storage are specified by configuration. Also see [Configuring the Bitstream Store](#) below.

Stores are numbered, starting with zero, then counting upwards. Each bitstream entry in the database has a store number, used to retrieve the bitstream when required. An example of having multiple asset stores configured is that assetstore0 is /dspace/assetstore, when the filesystem gets nearly full, you could then configure a second filesystem path assetstore1 at /data/assetstore1, later, if you wanted to use S3 for storage, assetstore2 could be [s3://dspace-assetstore-xyz](#)(see [page 859](#)). In this example various bitstreams (database objects) refer to different assetstore for where the files reside. It is typically simplest to just have a single assetstore configured, and all assets reside in that one. If policy dictated, infrequently used masters could be moved to slower/cheaper disk, where as access copies are on the fastest storage. This could be accomplished through migrating assets to different stores.

Bitstreams also have an 38-digit internal ID, different from the primary key ID of the bitstream table row. This is not visible or used outside of the bitstream storage manager. It is used to determine the exact location (relative to the relevant store directory) that the bitstream is stored in traditional storage. The first three pairs of digits are the directory path that the bitstream is stored under. The bitstream is stored in a file with the internal ID as the filename.

For example, a bitstream with the internal ID *12345678901234567890123456789012345678* is stored in the directory:

```
[dspace]/assetstore/12/34/56/12345678901234567890123456789012345678
```

The reasons for storing files this way are:

- Using a randomly-generated 38-digit number means that the 'number space' is less cluttered than simply using the primary keys, which are allocated sequentially and are thus close together. This means that the bitstreams in the store are distributed around the directory structure, improving access efficiency.
- The internal ID is used as the filename partly to avoid requiring an extra lookup of the filename of the bitstream, and partly because bitstreams may be received from a variety of operating systems. The original name of a bitstream may be an illegal UNIX filename.
- When storing a bitstream, the *BitstreamStorageService* DOES set the following fields in the corresponding database table row:
  - *bitstream\_id*
  - *size*
  - *checksum*
  - *checksum\_algorithm*
  - *internal\_id*
  - *deleted*
  - *store\_number*
- The remaining fields are the responsibility of the *Bitstream* content management API class.

The bitstream storage manager is fully transaction-safe. In order to implement transaction-safety, the following algorithm is used to store bitstreams:

1. A database connection is created, separately from the currently active connection in the current DSpace context.
2. An unique internal identifier (separate from the database primary key) is generated.
3. The bitstream DB table row is created using this new connection, with the *deleted* column set to *true*.
4. The new connection is *\_commit\_ted*, so the 'deleted' bitstream row is written to the database

5. The bitstream itself is stored in a file in the configured 'asset store directory', with a directory path and filename derived from the internal ID
6. The *deleted* flag in the bitstream row is set to *false*. This will occur (or not) as part of the current *DSpace Context*.

This means that should anything go wrong before, during or after the bitstream storage, only one of the following can be true:

- No bitstream table row was created, and no file was stored
  - A bitstream table row with *deleted=true* was created, no file was stored
  - A bitstream table row with *deleted=true* was created, and a file was stored
- None of these affect the integrity of the data in the database or bitstream store.

Similarly, when a bitstream is deleted for some reason, its *deleted* flag is set to true as part of the overall transaction, and the corresponding file in storage is *not* deleted.

### Cleanup

The above techniques mean that the bitstream storage manager is transaction-safe. Over time, the bitstream database table and file store may contain a number of 'deleted' bitstreams. The *cleanup* method of *BitstreamStorageService* goes through these deleted rows, and actually deletes them along with any corresponding files left in the storage. It only removes 'deleted' bitstreams that are more than one hour old, just in case cleanup is happening in the middle of a storage operation.

This cleanup can be invoked from the command line via the *cleanup* command, which can in turn be easily executed from a shell on the server machine using `[dspace]/bin/dspace cleanup`. You might like to have this run regularly by *cron*, though since DSpace is read-lots, write-not-so-much it doesn't need to be run very often.

```
Clean up any deleted files from local storage on first of the month at 2:40am
40 2 1 * * [dspace]/bin/dspace cleanup > /dev/null 2>&1
```

### Backup

The bitstreams (files) in traditional storage may be backed up very easily by simply 'tarring' or 'zipping' the `[dspace]/assetstore/` directory (or whichever directory is configured in *dspace.cfg*). Restoring is as simple as extracting the backed-up compressed file in the appropriate location.

It is important to note that since the bitstream storage manager holds the bitstreams in storage, and information about them in the database, that a database backup and a backup of the files in the bitstream store must be made at the same time; the bitstream data in the database must correspond to the stored files.

Of course, it isn't really ideal to 'freeze' the system while backing up to ensure that the database and files match up. Since DSpace uses the bitstream data in the database as the authoritative record, it's best to back up the database before the files. This is because it's better to have a bitstream in storage but not the database (effectively non-existent to DSpace) than a bitstream record in the database but not storage, since people would be able to find the bitstream but not actually get the contents.

With DSpace 1.7 and above, there is also the option to backup both files and metadata via the [AIP Backup and Restore](#) (see page 559) feature.



## Configuring the Bitstream Store

### Changed in DSpace 7.4

While the old **bitstore.xml** file (defined at `[dspace]/config/spring/api/bitstore.xml` ) still exists in DSpace 7.4, a new configuration file has been added for configuring the Bitstream Store:

`[dspace]/config/modules/assetstore.cfg`

If you have previously configured **bitstore.xml**, and only have a single assetstore, we recommend resetting **bitstore.xml** to the default configuration, and use the new **assetstore.cfg** file for configuring your Bitstream Store. This is of course very general advice, and your specific situation may require more care, particularly if you have more than one Bitstream Store (see below, and this likely doesn't apply to you, but it could).

BitStores (aka assetstores) are configured with `[dspace]/config/modules/assetstore.cfg`

## Configuring Traditional Storage

By default, DSpace uses a traditional filesystem bitstore of `[dspace]/assetstore/`

To configure traditional filesystem bitstore, as a specific directory, configure the bitstore like this:

```
#-----#
#-----STORAGE CONFIGURATIONS-----#
#-----#
Configuration properties used by the bitstore.xml config file
#
#-----#

assetstore.dir, look at DSPACE/config/spring/api/bitstore.xml for more options
assetstore.dir = ${dspace.dir}/assetstore

Configures the primary store to be local or S3.
This value will be used as `incoming` default store inside the `bitstore.xml`
Possible values are:
- 0: to use the `localStore`;
- 1: to use the `s3Store`.
If you want to add additional assetstores, they must be added to that bitstore.xml
and new values should be provided as key-value pairs in the `stores` map of the
`bitstore.xml` configuration.
assetstore.index.primary = 0
```

This would configure store number 0 named localStore, which is a `DSBitStore` (filesystem), at the filesystem path of `${dspace.dir}/assetstore` (i.e. `[dspace]/assetstore/` )

It is also possible to use multiple local filesystems. The following example is specific to the older **bitstore.xml** configuration, and it should still work, but is un-tested with DSpace 7.4. In the example below, key #0 is localStore

at `${dspace.dir}/assetstore`, and key #1 is `localStore2` at `/data/assetstore2`. Note that `incoming` is set to store "1", which in this case refers to `localStore2`. That means that any new files (bitstreams) uploaded to DSpace will be stored in `localStore2`, but some existing bitstreams may still exist in `localStore`.

```
<bean name="org.dspace.storage.bitstore.BitstreamStorageService" class="org.dspace.storage.bitstore.BitstreamStorageServiceImpl">
 <property name="incoming" value="1"/>
 <property name="stores">
 <map>
 <entry key="0" value-ref="localStore"/>
 <entry key="1" value-ref="localStore2"/>
 </map>
 </property>
</bean>
<bean name="localStore" class="org.dspace.storage.bitstore.DSBitStoreService" scope="singleton">
 <property name="baseDir" value="${dspace.dir}/assetstore"/>
</bean>
<bean name="localStore2" class="org.dspace.storage.bitstore.DSBitStoreService" scope="singleton">
 <property name="baseDir" value="/data/assetstore2"/>
</bean>
```

### Configuring Amazon S3 Storage

To use [Amazon S3](#)<sup>697</sup> as a bitstore, in `assetstore.cfg` point `assetstore.index.primary` to 1, set `assetstore.s3.enabled` to true, and configure it with `awsAccessKey`, `awsSecretKey`, and `bucketName`.

NOTE: Before you can specify these settings, you obviously will have to create an account in the [Amazon AWS](#)<sup>698</sup> console, and create an [IAM](#)<sup>699</sup> user with credentials and privileges to an existing [S3 bucket](#)<sup>700</sup>. You can also use an [IAM Role](#)<sup>701</sup>, which would allow your Amazon EC2 instance to talk directly to your S3 bucket without using any credentials. If you do configure an IAM Role with AWS, you'll still need to provide values for `awsAccessKey` and `awsSecretKey`, but they are un-used by DSpace, and can be anything at all. In the example below, we assume you are using an IAM Role, and are providing the text "use-the-role-please" as the value for these two keys. This is of course not a valid AWS key, for either example.

```
Configures the primary store to be local or S3.
This value will be used as `incoming` default store inside the `bitstore.xml`
Possible values are:
- 0: to use the `localStore`;
- 1: to use the `s3Store`.
If you want to add additional assetstores, they must be added to that bitstore.xml
and new values should be provided as key-value pairs in the `stores` map of the
`bitstore.xml` configuration.
assetstore.index.primary = 1
```

<sup>697</sup> <https://aws.amazon.com/s3/>

<sup>698</sup> <http://aws.amazon.com/>

<sup>699</sup> <https://aws.amazon.com/iam/>

<sup>700</sup> <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UsingBucket.html>

<sup>701</sup> [https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/id\\_roles.html](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/id_roles.html)

```

#-----#
#----- Amazon S3 Specific Configurations -----#
#-----#
The below configurations are only used if the primary storename
is set to 's3Store' or the 's3Store' is configured as a secondary store
in your bitstore.xml

Enables or disables the store initialization during startup, without initialization
the store won't work.
if changed to true, a lazy initialization will be tried on next store usage, be
careful an exception could be thrown
assetstore.s3.enabled = true

For using a relative path (xx/xx/xx/xxx...) set to true, default it false
When true: it splits the path into subfolders, each of these
are 2-chars (2-bytes) length, the last is the filename and could have
at max 3-chars (3-bytes).
When false: is used the absolute path using full filename.
assetstore.s3.useRelativePath = false

S3 bucket name to store assets in. If unspecified, by default DSpace will
create a bucket based on the hostname of `dspace.ui.url` setting.
assetstore.s3.bucketName = your-bucket-name-goes-here

Subfolder to organize assets within the bucket, in case this bucket
is shared. Optional, default is root level of bucket
assetstore.s3.subfolder = your-optional-subfolder-goes-here

please don't use root credentials in production but rely on the aws credentials
default
discovery mechanism to configure them (ENV VAR, EC2 Iam role, etc.)
The preferred approach for security reason is to use the IAM user credentials, but
isn't always possible.
More information about credentials here: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/v1/developer-guide/credentials.html
More information about IAM usage here: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/v1/developer-guide/java-dg-roles.html
assetstore.s3.awsAccessKey = use-the-role-please
assetstore.s3.awsSecretKey = use-the-role-please

If the credentials are left empty,
then this setting is ignored and the default AWS region will be used.
NOTE: AWS is funny about regions, it's probably best to explicitly provide the one
you intend to use,
if you want to keep track of where your bitstreams are
assetstore.s3.awsRegionName = us-west-2

```

The incoming property specifies which assetstore receives incoming assets (i.e. when new files are uploaded, they will be stored in the "incoming" assetstore). This defaults to store 0. NOTE: in the **assetstore.cfg** file, this setting is called **assetstore.index.primary**.

S3BitStore has parameters for `awsAccessKey`, `awsSecretKey`, `bucketName`, `awsRegionName` (optional), and `subfolder` (optional).

- `awsAccessKey` and `awsSecretKey` are created from the [Amazon AWS](#)<sup>702</sup> console. You'll want to create an [IAM](#)<sup>703</sup> user, and generate a Security Credential, which provides you the accessKey and secret. Since you need permission to use S3, you could give this IAM user a quick & dirty policy of `AmazonS3FullAccess` (for all S3 buckets that you own), or for finer grain controls, you can assign an IAM user to have certain permissions to certain resources, such as read/write to a specific subfolder within a specific s3 bucket.
- `bucketName` is a globally unique name that distinguishes your S3 bucket. It has to be unique among all other S3 users in the world.
- `awsRegionName` is a region in AWS where S3 will be stored. Default is US Eastern. Consider distance to primary users, and pricing when choosing the region.
- `subfolder` is a folder within the S3 bucket, where you could organize the assets to be in. If you wanted to re-use a bucket for multiple purposes (`bucketname/assets` vs `bucketname/backups`) or DSpace instances (`bucketname/XYZDSpace` or `bucketname/ABCDSpace` or `bucketname/ABCDSpaceProduction`).

### Migrate BitStores

There is a command line migration tool to move all the assets within a bitstore, to another bitstore. `bin/dspace bitstore-migrate`

---

<sup>702</sup> <http://aws.amazon.com/>

<sup>703</sup> <https://aws.amazon.com/iam/>

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE bitstore-migrate
usage: BitstoreMigrate
 -a,--source <arg> Source assetstore store_number (to lose content). This is a
number such as 0 or 1
 -b,--destination <arg> Destination assetstore store_number (to gain content). This
is a number such as 0 or 1.
 -d,--delete Delete file from losing assetstore. (Default: Keep
bitstream in old assetstore)
 -h,--help Help
 -p,--print Print out current assetstore information
 -s,--size <arg> Batch commit size. (Default: 1, commit after each file
transfer)
```

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE bitstore-migrate -p
store[0] == DSBitStore, which has 2 bitstreams.
store[1] == S3BitStore, which has 2 bitstreams.
Incoming assetstore is store[1]
```

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE bitstore-migrate -a 0 -b 1
```

```
[dSPACE]/bin/dSPACE bitstore-migrate -p
store[0] == DSBitStore, which has 0 bitstreams.
store[1] == S3BitStore, which has 4 bitstreams.
Incoming assetstore is store[1]
```

## 7.6 History

- [Changes in 7.x](#)(see page 870)
- [Changes in 6.x](#)(see page 872)
- [Changes in 5.x](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in 4.x](#)(see page 874)
- [Changes in 3.x](#)(see page 875)
- [Changes in 1.8.x](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in 1.7.x](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in 1.6.x](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in 1.5.x](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in 1.4.x](#)(see page 881)
- [Changes in 1.3.x](#)(see page 883)
- [Changes in 1.2.x](#)(see page 885)
- [Changes in 1.1.x](#)(see page 889)

### 7.6.1 Changes in 7.x

- [Changes in DSpace 7.5](#)(see page 871)
- [Changes in DSpace 7.4](#)(see page 871)
- [Changes in DSpace 7.3](#)(see page 871)
- [Changes in DSpace 7.2](#)(see page 871)
- [Changes in DSpace 7.1.1](#)(see page 871)
- [Changes in DSpace 7.1](#)(see page 871)

- [Changes in DSpace 7.0](#)(see page 871)

#### 7.6.1.1 Changes in DSpace 7.5

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/19?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/67?closed=1>

#### 7.6.1.2 Changes in DSpace 7.4

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/18?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/66?closed=1>

#### 7.6.1.3 Changes in DSpace 7.3

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/17?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/65?closed=1>

#### 7.6.1.4 Changes in DSpace 7.2

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/14?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/37?closed=1>

#### 7.6.1.5 Changes in DSpace 7.1.1

- UI Changes: *(No changes, this was a backend only release. The frontend v7.1 is fully compatible with backend v7.1.1)*
- REST API Changes: *Only included a single commit to fix a severe log4j vulnerability by upgrading to log4j v2.15.0: [Commit 8662d82](https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/commit/8662d82)<sup>704</sup>*

#### 7.6.1.6 Changes in DSpace 7.1

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/12?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/36?closed=1>

#### 7.6.1.7 Changes in DSpace 7.0

##### Changes in 7.0

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/15?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/21?closed=1>

##### Changes in 7.0 Beta 5

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/11?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/35?closed=1>

---

<sup>704</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/commit/8662d82575826d0130b510a215d8055fb106b2b8>

#### Changes in 7.0 Beta 4

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/10?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/33?closed=1>

#### Changes in 7.0 Beta 3

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/9?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/34?closed=1>

#### Changes in 7.0 Beta 2

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/8?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/38?closed=1>

#### Changes in 7.0 Beta 1

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/7?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/32?closed=1>

#### Changes in 7.0 Preview Release (Alpha)

- UI Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/dspace-angular/milestone/16?closed=1>
- REST API Changes: <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/39?closed=1>

## 7.6.2 Changes in 6.x

- [Changes in DSpace 6.4](#)(see page 872)
- [Changes in DSpace 6.3](#)(see page 872)
- [Changes in DSpace 6.2](#)(see page 872)
- [Changes in DSpace 6.1](#)(see page 872)
- [Changes in DSpace 6.0](#)(see page 873)

### 7.6.2.1 Changes in DSpace 6.4

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/27?closed=1>

### 7.6.2.2 Changes in DSpace 6.3

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/25?closed=1>

### 7.6.2.3 Changes in DSpace 6.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/23?closed=1>

### 7.6.2.4 Changes in DSpace 6.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/20?closed=1>

### 7.6.2.5 Changes in DSpace 6.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/9?closed=1>

## 7.6.3 Changes in 5.x

- [Changes in DSpace 5.11](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.10](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.9](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.8](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.7](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.6](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.5](#)(see page 873)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.4](#)(see page 874)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.3](#)(see page 874)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.2](#)(see page 874)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.1](#)(see page 874)
- [Changes in DSpace 5.0](#)(see page 874)

### 7.6.3.1 Changes in DSpace 5.11

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/31?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.2 Changes in DSpace 5.10

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/29?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.3 Changes in DSpace 5.9

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/26?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.4 Changes in DSpace 5.8

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/24?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.5 Changes in DSpace 5.7

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/19?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.6 Changes in DSpace 5.6

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/16?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.7 Changes in DSpace 5.5

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/14?closed=1>



### 7.6.3.8 Changes in DSpace 5.4

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/13?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.9 Changes in DSpace 5.3

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/12?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.10 Changes in DSpace 5.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/10?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.11 Changes in DSpace 5.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/8?closed=1>

### 7.6.3.12 Changes in DSpace 5.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/7?closed=1>

## 7.6.4 Changes in 4.x

- Changes in DSpace 4.10(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.9(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.8(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.7(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.6(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.5(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.4(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.3(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.2(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.1(see page 874)
- Changes in DSpace 4.0(see page 874)

### 7.6.4.1 Changes in DSpace 4.10

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/30?closed=1>

### 7.6.4.2 Changes in DSpace 4.9

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/28?closed=1>

### 7.6.4.3 Changes in DSpace 4.8

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/22?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.4 Changes in DSpace 4.7

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/18?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.5 Changes in DSpace 4.6

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/17?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.6 Changes in DSpace 4.5

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/15?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.7 Changes in DSpace 4.4

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/11?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.8 Changes in DSpace 4.3

This release includes the following security fixes.

- [HIGH SEVERITY] XMLUI Directory Traversal Vulnerabilities (DS-2445<sup>705</sup>)
- [MEDIUM SEVERITY] JSPUI Directory Traversal Vulnerability (DS-2448<sup>706</sup>)
- [LOW SEVERITY] Cross-site scripting (XSS injection) is possible in JSPUI Recent Submissions listings (DS-1702<sup>707</sup>)
- [LOW SEVERITY] Cross-site scripting (XSS injection) is possible in JSPUI Discovery search form (DS-2044<sup>708</sup>)

#### 7.6.4.9 Changes in DSpace 4.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/53?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.10 Changes in DSpace 4.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/56?closed=1>

#### 7.6.4.11 Changes in DSpace 4.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/48?closed=1>

### 7.6.5 Changes in 3.x

- Changes in DSpace 3.6(see page 876)
- Changes in DSpace 3.5(see page 876)
- Changes in DSpace 3.4(see page 876)
- Changes in DSpace 3.3(see page 876)

---

<sup>705</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5806>

<sup>706</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5809>

<sup>707</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5069>

<sup>708</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5410>

- [Changes in DSpace 3.2](#)(see page 876)
- [Changes in DSpace 3.1](#)(see page 876)
- [Changes in DSpace 3.0](#)(see page 876)

#### 7.6.5.1 Changes in DSpace 3.6

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/61?closed=1>

#### 7.6.5.2 Changes in DSpace 3.5

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/60?closed=1>

#### 7.6.5.3 Changes in DSpace 3.4

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/59?closed=1>

This release includes the following security fixes.

- [DS-1702](#)<sup>709</sup> - Cross-site scripting (XSS injection) is possible in JSPUI Recent Submissions listings
- [DS-2044](#)<sup>710</sup> - Cross-site scripting (XSS injection) is possible in JSPUI Discovery search form
- [DS-2445](#)<sup>711</sup> - XMLUI Directory Traversal Vulnerabilities
  - Also resolves related, minor theme access issues [DS-1896](#)<sup>712</sup> and [DS-2130](#)<sup>713</sup>.
- [DS-2448](#)<sup>714</sup> - JSPUI Directory Traversal Vulnerability

#### 7.6.5.4 Changes in DSpace 3.3

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/57?closed=1>

#### 7.6.5.5 Changes in DSpace 3.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/54?closed=1>

This release also includes the following security fix:

- [DS-1603](#)<sup>715</sup> - Resolves a security issue in JSPUI

#### 7.6.5.6 Changes in DSpace 3.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/55?closed=1>

---

<sup>709</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5069>

<sup>710</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5410>

<sup>711</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5806>

<sup>712</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5263>

<sup>713</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5496>

<sup>714</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/5809>

<sup>715</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4971>

### 7.6.5.7 Changes in DSpace 3.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/45?closed=1>

## 7.6.6 Changes in 1.8.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.8.3](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.8.2](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.8.1](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.8.0](#)(see page 877)

### 7.6.6.1 Changes in DSpace 1.8.3

- [DS-1603](#)<sup>716</sup> - Resolves a security issue in JSPUI

### 7.6.6.2 Changes in DSpace 1.8.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/52?closed=1>

### 7.6.6.3 Changes in DSpace 1.8.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/51?closed=1>

### 7.6.6.4 Changes in DSpace 1.8.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/44?closed=1>

## 7.6.7 Changes in 1.7.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.7.3](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.7.2](#)(see page 877)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.7.1](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.7.0](#)(see page 878)

### 7.6.7.1 Changes in DSpace 1.7.3

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/58?closed=1>

### 7.6.7.2 Changes in DSpace 1.7.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/50?closed=1>

---

<sup>716</sup> <https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/issues/4971>

### 7.6.7.3 Changes in DSpace 1.7.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/46?closed=1>

### 7.6.7.4 Changes in DSpace 1.7.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/43?closed=1>

## 7.6.8 Changes in 1.6.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.6.2](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.6.1](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.6.0](#)(see page 878)

### 7.6.8.1 Changes in DSpace 1.6.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/49?closed=1>

### 7.6.8.2 Changes in DSpace 1.6.1

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/47?closed=1>

### 7.6.8.3 Changes in DSpace 1.6.0

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/42?closed=1>

## 7.6.9 Changes in 1.5.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.5.2](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.5.1](#)(see page 878)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.5.0](#)(see page 880)

### 7.6.9.1 Changes in DSpace 1.5.2

<https://github.com/DSpace/DSpace/milestone/40?closed=1>

### 7.6.9.2 Changes in DSpace 1.5.1

#### General Improvements and Bug Fixes in 1.5.1

(Scott Philips)

- (Scott Phillips) Fixed bug where users could not finish registering nor reset their password because the authentication method signatures were changed.
- Jay Paz (SF#1898241) Additional fixes to patch to enable reuse of methods.

- Added the ability to manage sessions with site wide alerts to prevent users from authenticating.
- Fixes a bug where the ability to edit an item during workflow step 2 is not displayed.
- Jay Paz (SF#1898241) Add item Export from jsui and xmlui.
- Added easy support for google analytics statistics
- Added the ability for super admins to login as other users.
- Added an activity viewer to the Control Panel

(Mark Diggory)

- Fix for SF Bug #2082236 Subscription notification (sub-daily) no emails sent
- #2102580 William Hays: Duplicate Handle exception when replacing bitstreams
- #2102617 Sands Fish: X509Authentication fails to assign appropriate specialgroups
- (Sands Fish) Add "Select Primary Bitstream" functionality to submission workflow
- Guard against Community/Collection metadata having only whitespace characters and eliminate cases where null pointer exceptions would be thrown
- Improve DSIndexer logic in both branches to support removal of items from index when withdrawn from repository.
- (Sands Fish) Provides fix for AuthenticationUtil where users ID's are not properly compared.
- Fix NullPointerException cause by nullified Context object in LNI map item to new collection.
- Block Basic Authentication "details" from being exposed in dspace logs.
- (Bill Hays) Close InputStreamReaders explicitly to release any file handles back to OS.
- correct linking on pages when xmlui is the ROOT webapplication
- correct issue with sitemap redirection of mydspace uri.
- Add serlet-api to overlay wars to reduce compile time errors when adding classes
- Correct issues in feed generation
- XMLUI Adjust Advanced Search to use search properties from dspace.cfg.
- Correct bug in Body.toSAX where startElement is called instead of end element.
- Correct issue with libraries being excluded from wars

(Claudia Juergen)

- Fix for SF bug #2090761 Statistics wrong use of dspace.dir for log location
- Fix for SF bug #2081930 xmlui hardcoded strings in EditGroupForm.java
- Fix for SF bug #2080319 jsui hardcoded strings in browse
- Fix for SF bug #2078305 xmlui hardcoded strings used in UI in xmlui-api
- Fix for SF bug #2078324 xmlui hardcoded strings used in UI in General-Handler.xml
- SF patch #2076066 Review in jsui submission non-dc metadata
- SF Bug #1983859 added Foreign Lucene Analyzers to poms
- SF Bug #1989916 - missing LDAP authentication key

(Stuart Lewis)

- #1947036 Patch for SF Bug1896960 SWORD authentication and LDAP + 1989874 LDAPAuthentication pluggable method broken for current users
- Added copying of registration email template to 1.4 to 1.5 upgrade instructions
- Fix for SF bug #2055941 LDAP authentication fails for new users in SWORD and Manakin

(Zuki Ebetsu / Stuart Lewis)

- #1990660 SWORD Service Document are malformed / Corrected Atom publishing MIME types

(Stuart Lewis / Claudia Juergen)

- Updated installation and configuration documents for new statistics script, and removed references to Perl

(Tim Donohue)

- Fix for SF bug #2095402 - Non-interactive Submission Steps don't work in JSPUI 1.5
- Fix for SF bug #2013921 - Movement in Submission Workflow Causes Skipped Steps

- Fix for SF bug #2015988 - Configurable Submission bug in SubmissionController
- Fix for SF bug #2034372 - Resorting Search Results in JSPUI always gives no results
- Updates to Community/Collection Item Counts (i.e. strengths) for XMLUI.
- 1.5 upgrade instructions were missing Metadata Registry updates necessary to support SWORD.

(Graham Triggs)

- Fix various problems with resources potentially not being freed, and other minor fixes suggested by FindBugs
- Replace URLEncoder with StringEscapeUtils for better fix of escaping the hidden query field
- Fix #2034372 - Resorting in JSPUI gives no results
- Fix #1714851 - set `eperson.subscription.onlynew` in `dspace.cfg` to only include items that are new to the repository
- Fix issue where the browse and search indexes will not be updated correctly if you move an Item
- Fix problem with SWORD not accepting multiple concurrent submissions
- Fix #1963060 Authors listed in reverse order
- Fix #1970852 - XMLUI: Browse by Issue Date "Type in Year" doesn't work
- Statistics viewer for XMLUI, based on existing DStat. Note that this generates the view from the analysis files (.dat), does not require HTML report generation.
- Fixed incorrect downloading of bitstream on withdrawn item
- Add JSPUI compatible log messages to XMLUI transformers
- Clean up use of ThreadLocal
- Improved cleanup of database resources when web application is unloaded
- Fix bug #1931799 - duplicate "FROM metadatavalue"
- Fixed Oracle bugs with ILIKE operators and LIMIT/OFFSET clauses

### 7.6.9.3 Changes in DSpace 1.5.0

General Improvements in 1.5.0

- Highly configurable and theme-able new user interface (Manakin).
- Apache Maven-based modular build system.
- LNI (Lightweight Network Interface) service. Allows programmatic ingest of content via WebDAV or SOAP.
- SWORD (Simple Web-service Offering Repository Deposit): repository-standard ingest service using Atom Publishing Protocol.
- Highly configurable item web submission system. All submission steps are configurable not just metadata pages.
- Browse functionality allowing customisation of the available indexes via `dspace.cfg` and pluggable normalisation of the sort strings. Integration with both JSP-UI and XML-UI included.
- Extensible content event notification service.
- Generation of Google and HTML sitemaps

Bug fixes and smaller patches in 1.5.0

- New options for ItemImporter to support bitstream permissions and descriptions.
- 1824710 Fix - Change in Creative Commons RDF.
- 1794700 Fix - Stat-monthly and stat-report-monthly
- 1566820 Patch - Authentication code moved to new `org.dspace.authenticate` package, add IP Auth
- 1670093 Patch - More stable metadata and schema registry import Option to generate community and collection "strength" as a batch job
- 1659868 Patch - Improved database level debugging
- 1620700 Patch - Add Community and Sub-Community to OAI Sets

- 1679972 Fix - OAIDCCrosswalk NPE and invalid character fix, also invalid output prevented
- 1549290 Fix - Suggest Features uses hard coded strings
- 1727034 Fix - Method MetadataField.unique() is incorrect for null values
- 1614546 Fix - Get rid of unused mets\_bitstream\_id column
- 1450491 Patch - i18n configurable multilingualism support
- 1764069 Patch - Replace "String" with "Integer" in PreparedStatement where needed
- 1743188 Patch - for Request #1145499 - Move Items
- 179196 Patch - Oracle SQL in Bitstream Checker
- 1751638 Patch - Set http disposition header to force download of large bitstreams
- 1799575 Patch - New EPersonConsumer event consumer
- 1566572 Patch - Item metadata in XHTML head elements
- 1589429 Patch - "Self-Named" Media Filters (i.e. MediaFilter Plugins) (updated version of this patch)
- 1888652 Patch - Statistics Rewritten In Java
- 1444364 Request - Metadata registry exporter
- 1221957 Request - Admin browser for withdrawn items
- 1740454 Fix - Concurrency
- 1552760 Fix - Submit interface looks bad in Safari
- 1642563 Patch - bin/update-handle-prefix rewritten in Java
- 1724330 Fix - Removes "null" being displayed in community-home.jsp
- 1763535 Patch - Alert DSpace administrator of new user registration
- 1759438 Patch - Multilingualism Language Switch - DSpace Header

## 7.6.10 Changes in 1.4.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.4.1](#)(see page 881)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.4.0](#)(see page 883)

### 7.6.10.1 Changes in DSpace 1.4.1

#### General Improvements in 1.4.1

- Error pages now return appropriate HTTP status codes (e.g. 404 not found)
- Bad filenames in /bitstream/ URLs now result in 404 error – prevents infinite URL spaces confusing crawlers and bad "persistent" bitstream IDs circulating
- Prevent infinite URL spaces in HTMLServlet
- InstallItem no longer sets dc.format.extent, dc.format.mimetype; no longer sets default value for dc.language.iso if one is not present
- Empty values in drop-down submit fields are not added as empty metadata values
- API methods for searching epeople and groups
- Support stats from both 1.3 and 1.4
- [dspace]/bin/update-handle-prefix now runs index-all
- Remove cases of System.out from code executed in webapp
- Change "View Licence" to "View License" in Messages.properties
- dspace.cfg comments changed to indicate what default.language actually means
- HandleServlet and BitstreamServlet support If-Modified-Since requests
- Improved sanity-checking of XSL-based ingest crosswalks
- Remove thumbnail filename from alt-text
- Include item title in HTML title element
- Improvements to help prevent spammers and sploggers
- Make cleanup() commit outstanding work every 100 iterations



- Better handling where email send failed due to wrong address for new user
- Include robots.txt to limit bots navigating author, date and browse by subject pages
- Add css styles for print media
- RSS made more configurable and provide system-wide RSS feed, also moves text to Messages.properties
- Jar file updates (includes required code changes for DSIndexer and DSQuery and new jars fontbox.jar and serializer.jar)
- Various documentation additions and cleanups
- XHTML compliance improvements
- Move w3c valid xhtml boiler image into local repository
- Remove unnecessary Log4j Configuration in CheckerCommand
- Include Windows CLASSPATH in dsrun.bat

#### Bug fixes in 1.4.1

- 1604037 - UIUtil.encodeBitstream() now correctly encodes URLs (no longer incorrectly substitutes '+' for spaces in non-query segment)
- 1592984 - Date comparisons strip time in org.dspace.harvest.Harvest
- 1589902 - Duplicate field checking error on input-forms.xml
- 1596952 - Collection Wizard create Template missing schema
- 1596978 - View unfinished submissions - collection empty
- 1588625 - Incorrect text on item mapper screen
- 1597805 - DIDL Crosswalk: wrong resource management
- 1605635 - NPE in Utils.java
- 1597504 - Search result page shows shortened query string
- 1532389 - Item Templates do not work for non-dc fields
- 1066771 - Metadata edit form dropping DC qualifier
- 1548738 - Multiple Metadata Schema, schema not shown on edit item page
- 1589895 - Not possible to add unqualified Metadata Field
- 1543853 - Statistics do not work in 1.4
- 1541381 - Browse-by-date and browse-by-title not working
- 1556947 - NullPointerException when no user selected to del/edit
- 1554064 - Fix exception handling for ClassCastException in BitstreamServlet
- 1548865 - Browse errors on withdrawn item
- 1554056 - Community/collection handle URL with / redirects to homepage
- 1571490 - UTF-8 encoded characters in licence
- 1571519 - UTF-8 in statistics
- 1544807 - Browse-by-Subject/Author paging mechanism broken
- 1543966 - "Special" groups inside groups bug
- 1480496 - Cannot turn off "ignore authorization" flag!
- 1515148 - Community policies not deleting correctly
- 1556829 - Docs mention old SiteAuthenticator class
- 1606435 - Workflow text out of context
- Fix for bitstream authorization timeout
- Fix to make sure cleanup() doesn't fail with NullPointerException
- Fix for removeBitstream() failing to update primary bitstream
- Fix for Advanced Search ignoring conjunctions for arbitrary number of queries
- Fix minor bug in Harvest.java for Oracle users
- Fix missing title for news editor page
- Small Messages.properties modification (change of DSpace copyright text)
- fix PDFBox tmp file issue
- Fix HttpServletRequest encoding issues
- Fix bug in TableRow toString() method where NPE is thrown if tablename not set
- Update DIDL license and change coding style to DSpace standard

### 7.6.10.2 Changes in DSpace 1.4.0

#### General Improvements in 1.4.0

- Content verification through periodic checksum checking
- Support for branded preview image
- Add/replace Creative Commons in 'edit item' tool
- Customisable item listing columns and browse indices
- Script for updating handle prefixes (e.g. for moving from development to production)
- Configurable boolean search operator
- Controlled vocabulary patch to provide search on classification terms, and addition of terms during submission.
- Add 'visibility' element to input-forms.xml
- Browse by subject feature
- Log4J enhancement to use XML configuration
- QueryArgs class can support any number of fields in advanced search.
- Community names no longer have to be unique
- Enhanced Windows support
- Support for multiple (flat) metadata schemas
- Suggest an item page
- RSS Feeds
- Performance enhancements
- Stackable authentication methods
- Plug-in manager
- Pluggable SIP/DIP support and metadata crosswalks
- Nested groups of e-people
- Expose METS and MPEG-21 DIDL DIPs via OAI-PMH
- Configurable Lucene search analyzer (e.g. for Chinese metadata)
- Support for SMTP servers requiring authentication

#### Bug fixes in 1.4.0

- 1358197 - Edit Item, empty DC fields not removable
- 1363633 - Submission step 1 fails when there are no collections
- 1255264 - Resource policy eperson value was set to wrong column
- 1380494 - Error deleting an item with multiple metadata schema support
- 1443649 - Cannot configure unqualified elements for advanced search index
- 1333687 - Browse-(title|date) fails on withdrawn item
- 1066713 - Two (sub)communities cannot have one name
- 1284055 - Two Communities of same name throws error
- 1035366 - Bitstream size column should be bigint
- 1352257 - Selecting a Group for GroupToGroup while Creating Collection
- 1352226 - Navigation and Sorting in Group List (Select Groups) fails
- 1348276 - Null in collection name causes OAI ListSets to fail
- 1160898 - dspace\_migrate removes Date.Issued from prev published items
- 1261191 - Malformed METS metadata exported

### 7.6.11 Changes in 1.3.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.3.2](#)(see page 884)

- [Changes in DSpace 1.3.1](#)(see page 884)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.3.0](#)(see page 884)

### 7.6.11.1 Changes in DSpace 1.3.2

#### General Improvements in 1.3.2

- DSpace UI XHTML/WAI compliant
- Configure metadata fields shown on simple item display
- Supervisor/workspace help documentation

#### Bug fixes in 1.3.2

- Oracle compatibility fixes
- Item exporter now correctly exports metadata in UTF-8
- fixed to handle 'null' values passed in

### 7.6.11.2 Changes in DSpace 1.3.1

#### Bug fixes in 1.3.1

- 1252153 - Error on fresh install

### 7.6.11.3 Changes in DSpace 1.3.0

#### General Improvements in 1.3.0

- Initial i18n Support for JSPs - Note: the implementation of this feature required changes to almost all JSP pages
- LDAP authentication support
- Log file analysis and report generation
- Configurable item licence viewing
- Supervision order/collaborative workspace administrative tools
- Basic workspace for submissions in progress, with support for supervision
- SRB storage system option
- Updated handle server system
- Database optimisations
- Latest versions of Xerces, Xalan and OAICAT jars
- Various documentation additions and cleanups

#### Bug fixes in 1.3.0

- 1161459 - ItemExporter fails with Too many open files
- 1167373 - Email date field not populated
- 1193948 - New item submit problem
- 1188132 - NullPointerException when Adding EPerson
- 1188016 - Cannot Edit an Eperson
- 1219701 - Unable to open unfinished submission
- 1206836 - community strengths not reflecting sub-community

- 1238262 - Submit UI nav/progress buttons no longer show progress
- 1238276 - Double quote problem in some fields in submit UI
- 1238277 - format support level not shown in "uploaded file" page
- 1242548 - Uploading non-existing files
- 1244743 - Bad lookup key for special case of DC Title in ItemTag.java
- 1245223 - Subscription Emailer fails
- 1247508 - Error when browsing item with no content/bitstream collections
- Set the content type in the HTTP header
- Fix issue where EPerson edit would not work due to form indexing (partial fix)
- POST handling in HTMLServlet
- Missing ContentType directives added to some JSPs
- Name dependency on Collection Admin and Submitter groups fixed
- Fixed OAI-PMH XML encoding

## 7.6.12 Changes in 1.2.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.2.2](#)(see page 885)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.2.1](#)(see page 886)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.2.0](#)(see page 887)

### 7.6.12.1 Changes in DSpace 1.2.2

#### General Improvements in 1.2.2

- Customisable submission forms added
- Configurable number of index terms in Lucene for full-text indexing
- Improved scalability in media filter
- Submit button on collection pages only appears if user has authorisation
- PostgreSQL 8.0 compatibility
- Search scope retention to improve browsing
- Community and collection strengths displayed
- Upgraded OAICat software

#### Bug fixes in 1.2.2

- Fix for Oracle too many cursors problem.
- Fix for UTF-8 encoded searches in advanced search.
- Fix for handling "\" in bitstream names.
- Fix to prevent delete of "unknown" bitstream format
- Fix for ItemImport creating new handles for replaced items

#### Changes in JSPs in 1.2.2

- *collection-home.jsp*changed
- *community-home.jsp*changed
- *community-list.jsp*changed
- *home.jsp*changed
- *dspace-admin/list-formats.jsp*changed
- *dspace-admin/wizard-questions.jsp*changed
- *search/results.jsp*changed

- *submit/cancel.jspchanged*
- *submit/change-file-description.jspchanged*
- *submit/choose-file.jspchanged*
- *submit/complete.jspchanged*
- *submit/creative-commons.jspchanged*
- *submit/edit-metadata.jspnew*
- *submit/get-file-format.jspchanged*
- *submit/initial-questions.jspchanged*
- *submit/progressbar.jspchanged*
- *submit/review.jspchanged*
- *submit/select-collection.jspchanged*
- *submit/show-license.jspchanged*
- *submit/show-uploaded-file.jspchanged*
- *submit/upload-error.jspchanged*
- *submit/upload-file-list.jspchanged*

### 7.6.12.2 Changes in DSpace 1.2.1

#### General Improvements in 1.2.1

- Oracle support added
- Thumbnails in item view can now be switched off/on
- Browse and search thumbnail options
- Improved item importer
  - can now import to multiple collections
  - added --test flag to simulate an import, without actually making any changes
  - added --resume flag to try to resume the import in case the import is aborted
- Configurable fields for the search index
- Script for transferring items between DSpace instances
- Sun library JARs (JavaMail, Java Activation Framework and Servlet) now included in DSpace source code bundle

#### Bug fixes in 1.2.1

- A logo to existing collection can now be added. Fixes SF bug #1065933
- The community logo can now be edited. Fixes SF bug #1035692
- MediaFilterManager doesn't 'touch' every item every time. Fixes SF bug #1015296
- Supported formats help page, set the format support level to "known" as default
- Fixed various database connection pool leaks

#### Changed JSPs in 1.2.1

- *collection-homechanged*
- *community-homechanged*
- *display-itemchanged*
- *dspace-admin/confirm-delete-collectionmoved to tools/ and changed*
- *dspace-admin/confirm-delete-communitymoved to tools/ and changed*
- *dspace-admin/edit-collectionmoved to tools/ and changed*
- *dspace-admin/edit-communitymoved to tools/ and changed*
- *dspace-admin/indexchanged*
- *dspace-admin/upload-logochanged*
- *dspace-admin/wizard-basicinfochanged*

- *dspace-admin/wizard-default-itemchanged*
- *dspace-admin/wizard-permissionschanged*
- *dspace-admin/wizard-questionschanged*
- *help/formats.htmlremoved*
- *help/formatschanged*
- *indexchanged*
- *layout/navbar-adminchanged*

### 7.6.12.3 Changes in DSpace 1.2.0

#### General Improvements in 1.2.0

- Communities can now contain sub-communities
- Items may be included in more than one collection
- Full text extraction and searching for MS Word, PDF, HTML, text documents
- Thumbnails displayed in item view for items that contain images
- Configurable MediaFilter tool creates both extracted text and thumbnails
- Bitstream IDs are now persistent - generated from item's handle and a sequence number
- Creative Commons licenses can optionally be added to items during web submission process

#### Administration

- If you are logged in as administrator, you see admin buttons on item, collection, and community pages
- New collection administration wizard
- Can now administer collection's submitters from collection admin tool
- Delegated administration - new 'collection editor' role - edits item metadata, manages submitters list, edits collection metadata, links to items from other collections, and can withdraw items
- Admin UI moved from /admin to /dspace-admin to avoid conflict with Tomcat /admin JSPs
- New EPerson selector popup makes Group editing much easier
- 'News' section is now editable using admin UI (no more mucking with JSPs)

#### Import/Export/OAI

- New tool that exports DSpace content in AIPs that use METS XML for metadata (incomplete)
- OAI - sets are now collections, identified by Handles ('safe' with /, : converted to \_)
- OAI - contributor.author now mapped to [oai\\_dc:creator](#)<sup>717</sup>

#### Miscellaneous

- Build process streamlined with use of WAR files, symbolic links no longer used, friendlier to later versions of Tomcat
- MIT-specific aspects of UI removed to avoid confusion
- Item metadata now rendered to avoid interpreting as HTML (displays as entered)
- Forms now have no-cache directive to avoid trouble with browser 'back' button
- Bundles now have 'names' for more structure in item's content

#### JSP file changes between 1.1 and 1.2

This list generated with  `cvs -Q rdiff -s -r dspace-1_1 dspace`  and a sprinkling of perl.

- Changed: `dspace/jsp/collection-home.jsp`

---

<sup>717</sup> [http://oai\\_dccreator](http://oai_dccreator)

- Changed: `dspace/jsp/community-home.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/community-list.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/display-item.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/index.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/home.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/styles.css.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/authorize-advanced.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/authorize-collection-edit.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/authorize-community-edit.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/authorize-item-edit.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/authorize-main.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/authorize-policy-edit.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/collection-select.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/community-select.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-delete-collection.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-delete-community.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-delete-dctype.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-delete-eperson.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-delete-format.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-delete-item.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools`: `dspace/jsp/admin/confirm-withdraw-item.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/edit-collection.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/edit-community.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/edit-item-form.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/eperson-browse.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/eperson-confirm-delete.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/eperson-edit.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/eperson-main.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/get-item-id.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/group-edit.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/group-eperson-select.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/group-list.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/index.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/item-select.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/list-communities.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/list-dc-types.jsp`
- Removed: `dspace/jsp/admin/list-epeople.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/list-formats.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace/jsp/tools`: `dspace/jsp/admin/upload-bitstream.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/upload-logo.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin`: `dspace/jsp/admin/workflow-abort-confirm.jsp`
- Moved to `dspace-admin` and changed: `dspace/jsp/admin/workflow-list.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/browse/authors.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/browse/items-by-author.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/browse/items-by-date.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/browse/no-results.jsp`
- New: `dspace-admin/eperson-deletion-error.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/dspace-admin/news-edit.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/dspace-admin/news-main.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/dspace-admin/wizard-basicinfo.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/dspace-admin/wizard-default-item.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/dspace-admin/wizard-permissions.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/dspace-admin/wizard-questions.jsp`

- Changed: `dspace/jsp/components/contact-info.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/error/internal.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/help/formats.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/layout/footer-default.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/layout/header-default.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/layout/navbar-admin.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/layout/navbar-default.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/login/password.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/mydspace/main.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/mydspace/perform-task.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/mydspace/preview-task.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/mydspace/reject-reason.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/mydspace/remove-item.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/register/edit-profile.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/register/inactive-account.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/register/new-password.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/register/registration-form.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/search/advanced.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/search/results.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/cancel.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/submit/cc-license.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/choose-file.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/submit/creative-commons.css`
- New: `dspace/jsp/submit/creative-commons.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/edit-metadata-1.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/edit-metadata-2.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/get-file-format.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/initial-questions.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/progressbar.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/review.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/select-collection.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/show-license.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/show-uploaded-file.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/upload-error.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/upload-file-list.jsp`
- Changed: `dspace/jsp/submit/verify-prune.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/tools/edit-item-form.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/tools/eperson-list.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/tools/itemmap-browse.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/tools/itemmap-info.jsp`
- New: `dspace/jsp/tools/itemmap-main.jsp`

### 7.6.13 Changes in 1.1.x

- [Changes in DSpace 1.1.1](#)(see page 889)
- [Changes in DSpace 1.1](#)(see page 889)



### 7.6.13.1 Changes in DSpace 1.1.1

#### Bug fixes in 1.1.1

- non-administrators can now submit again
- installations now preserve file creation dates, eliminating confusion with upgrades
- authorization editing pages no longer create null entries in database, and no longer handles them poorly (no longer gives blank page instead of displaying policies.)
- registration page Invalid token error page now displayed when an invalid token is received (as opposed to internal server error.) Fixes SF bug #739999
- eperson admin 'recent submission' links fixed for DSpaces deployed somewhere other than at / (e.g. /dspace).
- help pages Link to help pages now includes servlet context (e.g. '/dspace'). Fixes SF bug #738399.

#### Improvements in 1.1.1

- *bin/dspace-info.pl* now checks jsp and asset store files for zero-length files
- *make-release-package* now works with SourceForge CVS
- eperson editor now doesn't display the spurious text 'null'
- item exporter now uses Jakarta's cli command line arg parser (much cleaner)
- item importer improvements:
  - now uses Jakarta's cli command line arg parser (much cleaner)
  - imported items can now be routed through a workflow
  - more validation and error messages before import
  - can now use email addresses and handles instead of just database IDs
  - can import an item to a collection with the workflow suppressed

### 7.6.13.2 Changes in DSpace 1.1

- Fixed various OAI-related bugs; DSpace's OAI support should now be correct. Note that harvesting is now based on the new Item 'last modified' date (as opposed to the Dublin Core *date.available* date.)
- Fixed Handle support--DSpace now responds to naming authority requests correctly.
- Multiple bitstream stores can now be specified; this allows DSpace storage to span several disks, and so there is no longer a hard limit on storage.
- Search improvements:
  - New fielded searching UI
  - Search results are now paged
  - Abstracts are indexed
  - Better use of Lucene API; should stop the number of open file handles getting large
- Submission UI improvements:
  - now insists on a title being specified
  - fixed navigation on file upload page
  - citation & identifier fields for previously published submissions now fixed
- Many Unicode fixes to the database and Web user interface
- Collections can now be deleted
- Bitstream descriptions (if available) displayed on item display page
- Modified a couple of servlets to handle invalid parameters better (i.e. to report a suitable error message instead of an internal server error)
- Item templates now work
- Fixed registration token expiration problem (they no longer expire.)

## 8 Learning DSpace

The DSpace Community Advisory Team (DCAT) is developing this user-facing guide to DSpace 7. All are welcome to participate.

### 8.1 Pages

- [Community and Collection management](#)(see page 892)
  - [Collection Management](#)(see page 893)
    - [Create Collection](#)(see page 892)
    - [Delete Collection](#)(see page 897)
    - [Edit Collection](#)(see page 900)
    - [Export Collection](#)(see page 921)
  - [Community Management](#)(see page 926)
    - [Create a Community](#)(see page 926)
    - [Delete Community](#)(see page 930)
    - [Edit Community](#)(see page 933)
- [Content \(Item\) management](#)(see page 942)
  - [Add item](#)(see page 942)
  - [Delete item](#)(see page 953)
  - [Edit Item](#)(see page 955)
    - [Authorizations \(Manage access to an item\)](#)(see page 958)
    - [Collection Mapper](#)(see page 966)
    - [Edit Bitstream](#)(see page 972)
    - [Edit Metadata](#)(see page 980)
    - [Edit Relationship](#)(see page 989)
    - [Make an Item Private](#)(see page 996)
    - [Move an Item](#)(see page 1001)
    - [Reinstate an item](#)(see page 1005)
    - [Versioned Item](#)(see page 1009)
    - [Withdraw an item](#)(see page 1015)
  - [Embargo an item](#)(see page 1019)
  - [Lease an item](#)(see page 1030)
- [DSpace 7 Demo Quick Start](#)(see page 1040)
- [Management sidebar](#)(see page 1041)
- [Menus](#)(see page 1044)
- [Registry management](#)(see page 1046)
  - [Metadata Registry Management](#)(see page 1047)
- [Request-a-copy](#)(see page 1060)
- [Search - Advanced](#)(see page 1061)
- [Submitter actions](#)(see page 1062)
- [User management](#)(see page 1062)
  - [Add or Manage an E-Person](#)(see page 1062)
  - [Create or manage a user group](#)(see page 1083)

#### 8.1.1 Videos

<https://new.d2t.co/knowledge-center>

## 8.1.2 For repository/DSpace administrators

[Community and Collection management](#)(see page 892)

[Content \(Item\) management](#)(see page 942)

[User management](#)(see page 1062)

[Registry management](#)(see page 1046)

Draft page not yet transferred -

- Administrative search

Pages not yet created; please feel free to add, and start writing, these pages for topics requested by the DCAT DSpace Community Advisory Team:

- Perform curation tasks
- Manage active workflow tasks

## 8.1.3 For submitters

[Submitter actions](#)(see page 1062)

## 8.1.4 For DSpace users

[Request-a-copy](#)(see page 1060)

## 8.1.5 Editing Guidelines

- Crop images before loading.
- Add a border around each image.
- Add an image as "large" if text is small.
- Avoid tables, if possible.

## 8.1.6 Transfer images from Google Doc to the Wiki

1. Download the Google Doc as an HTML file. This will include an images folder.
2. Crop the images, if needed. ([GIMP](#)<sup>718</sup>, free open source; [cropping instructions](#)<sup>719</sup>)
3. Upload those images to the Wiki storage area.

## 8.2 Community and Collection management

Documentation for repository managers.

- [Collection Management](#)(see page 893)
  - [Create Collection](#)(see page 892)
  - [Delete Collection](#)(see page 897)
  - [Edit Collection](#)(see page 900)

---

<sup>718</sup> <https://www.gimp.org/>

<sup>719</sup> [https://www.gimp.org/tutorials/GIMP\\_Quickies/#crop-an-image](https://www.gimp.org/tutorials/GIMP_Quickies/#crop-an-image)

- [Export Collection](#)(see page 921)
- [Community Management](#)(see page 926)
  - [Create a Community](#)(see page 926)
  - [Delete Community](#)(see page 930)
  - [Edit Community](#)(see page 933)

## 8.2.1 Collection Management

The collection is a level within a community or sub-community that holds items. This document provides an overview of creating, editing, and deleting a collection.

The documentation below assumes that the user has the relevant authorizations. For example, the admin menu and edit buttons would appear to a user having collection administration permission.

If you're unsure about collection administration permissions assigned to your account for the target community, contact your system administrator.

- [Create Collection](#)(see page 892)
- [Delete Collection](#)(see page 897)
- [Edit Collection](#)(see page 900)
- [Export Collection](#)(see page 921)

### 8.2.1.1 Create Collection

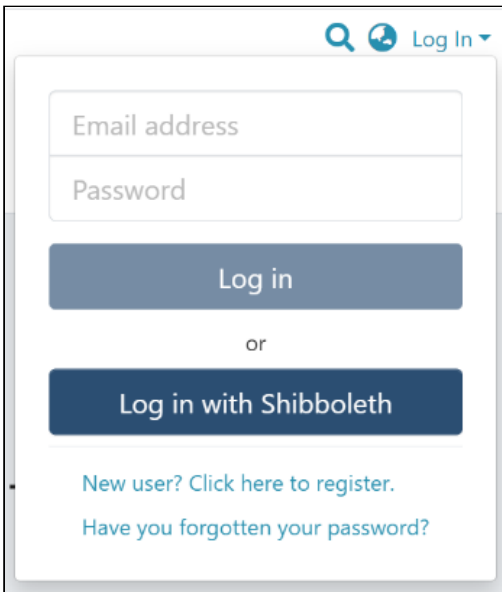
- [Audience](#)(see page 892)
- [Create Collection](#)(see page 892)

Audience

Repository Administrator  
Community Administrator  
Collection Administrator

Create Collection

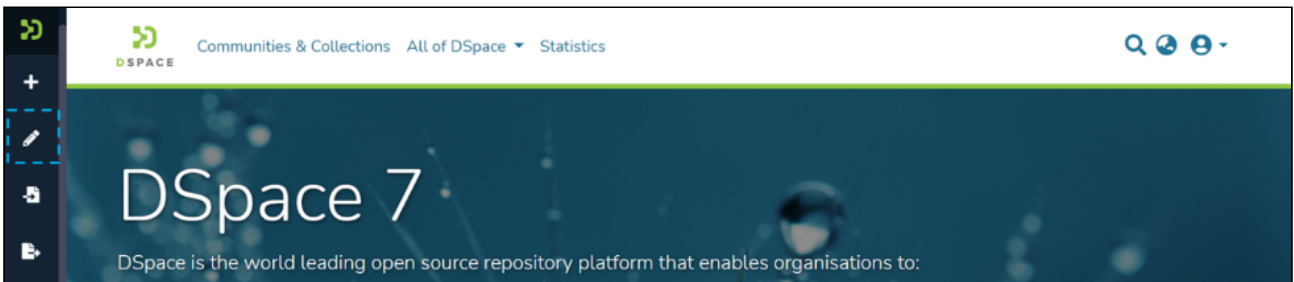
Step 1: Login using your credentials



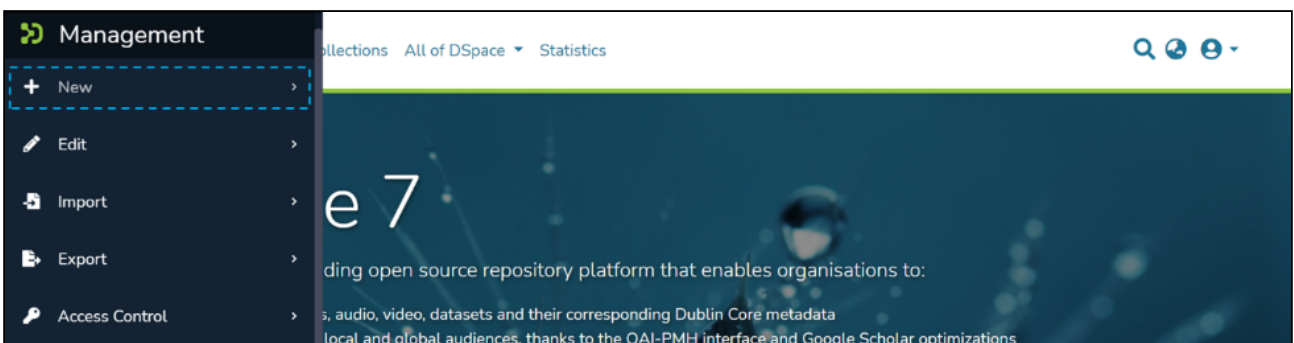
The image shows a login form with the following elements:

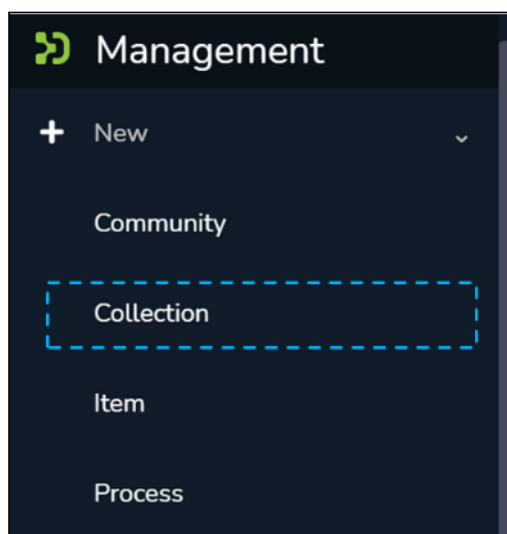
- Search icon, globe icon, and "Log In" dropdown menu at the top right.
- Input field for "Email address".
- Input field for "Password".
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue button labeled "Log in with Shibboleth".
- Two links at the bottom: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?".

Step 2: Rollover your cursor on the “+” sign

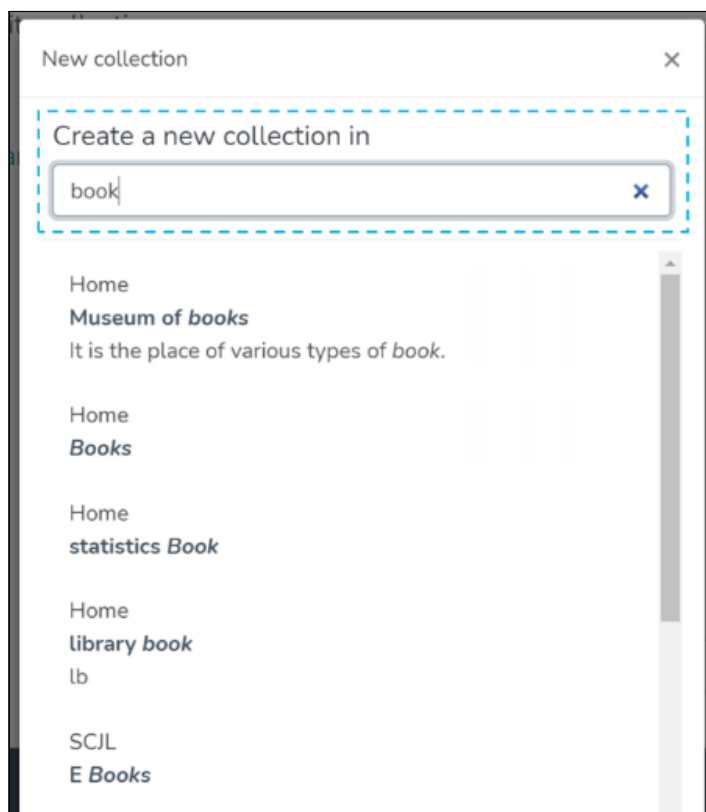


Step 3: Click on “New” and click on “Collection” to proceed with the collection creation process.





Step 4: A pop-up window showing list of communities will appear. Type the community's name in the search field where you want to add this collection. Upon typing a few letters of the community's name, a list of communities having those letters or words will appear. Click on the community name for initiating collection creation.



Step 5: The application will take the user to the create collection form to populate information regarding the collection. Please find below the description of this form.

DSpace  
Communities & Collections All of DSpace

## Create a Collection for Community PruebaWOS

Collection logo

Drop a Collection Logo to upload, or [browse](#)

Name \*

Introductory text (HTML)

Short Description

Copyright text (HTML)

News (HTML)

License

Entity Type

← Back Save

1. **Collection logo** – Click on the ‘browse’ link to select an image file user wants to add as the collection’s logo. It is advisable to maintain uniform dimensions of the logo across the repository.
2. **Name** – Enter the collection’s name here. It is a mandatory field and marked in ‘\*.’
3. **Introduction text (HTML)** – Users can enter introductory text providing an overview of the contents stored in this collection. One can utilize HTML tags to format the text or continue entering the plain text content.
4. **Short Description** – This field can have a one-liner description of the collection that appears with the collection name on the community homepage.
5. **Copyright text (HTML)** – Users can enter copyrights related information here. Fields marked with (HTML) support HTML tags-based formatting.
6. **New (HTML)** – Enter news about this collection. Users can update this by going to this section via edit collection regularly.
7. **License** – Add license-related information here.
8. **Entity Type** – Select Entity from the drop-down that must be uploaded in the collection.
9. **Action Button** – Users can click on the appropriate button as determined. Clicking on the Save button will add the collection into the repository.

Step 6: Click on the ‘Save’ button to complete the Collection creation process. A success prompt will pop up upon collection creation, and the application will automatically open the collection homepage.

The screenshot shows the DSpace interface with a success prompt. The prompt is a green box with a checkmark and the text "Successfully created the Collection". The background shows the "History" collection page with a breadcrumb "Home", the title "History", the permanent URI "https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/2045", and a news item titled "India will celebrate its 75th independence day on August 15th, 2021".

### Success prompt upon collection creation

The screenshot shows the DSpace collection homepage for "History". The breadcrumb is "Home • Books • History". The title "History" is displayed with a pencil icon. Below the title is a stylized Indian flag. The permanent URI is "https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/2045". The description is "This collection holds history books on the Indian freedom movements." Below this is a news item titled "India will celebrate its 75th independence day on August 15th, 2021". The "Browse" section has buttons for "Recent Submissions", "By Title", "By Issue Date", "By Author", and "By Subject". At the bottom, a light blue box contains the text "No items to show".

### Collection homepage



### 8.2.1.2 Delete Collection

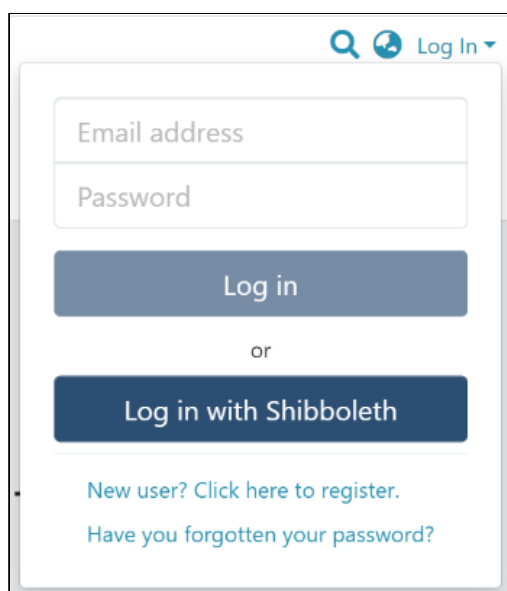
- [Audience](#)(see page 897)
- [Delete Collection](#)(see page 897)

Audience

Repository Administrator  
Community Administrator  
Collection Administrator

Delete Collection

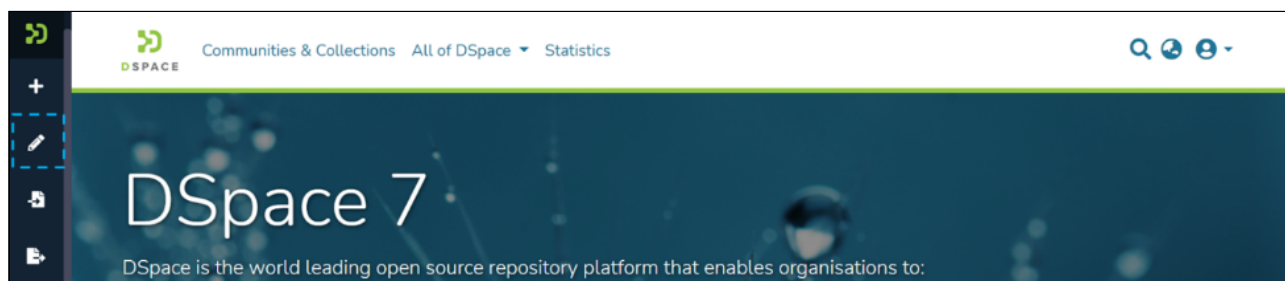
Step 1: Login using your credentials



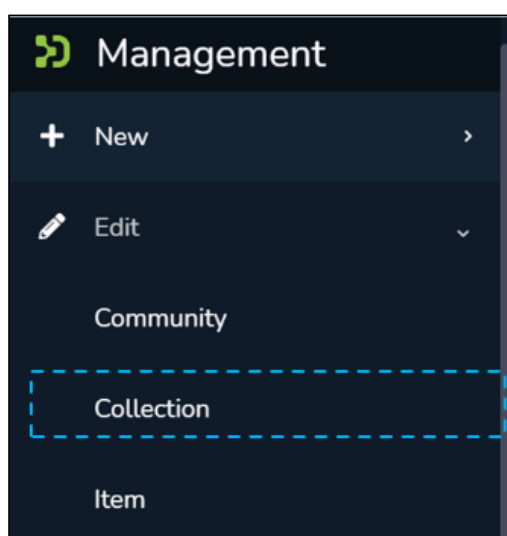
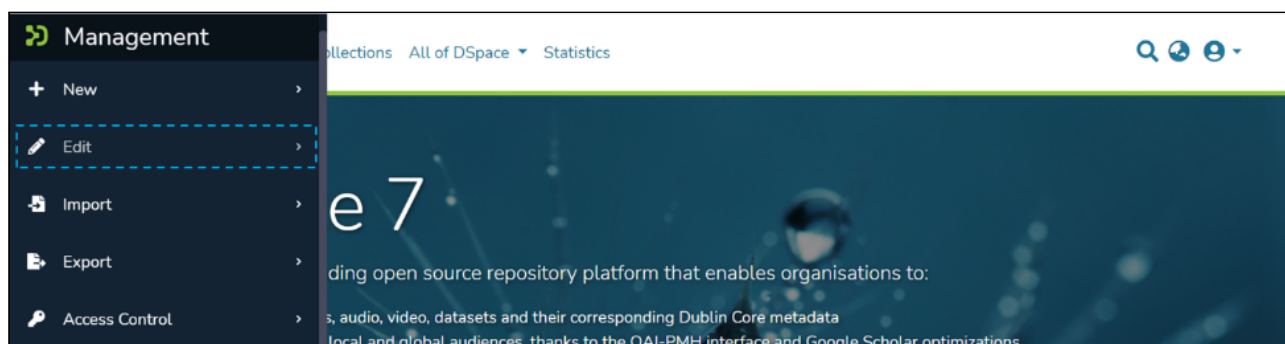
The screenshot shows a login form with the following elements:

- A search icon and a "Log In" dropdown menu in the top right corner.
- An "Email address" input field.
- A "Password" input field.
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue "Log in with Shibboleth" button.
- Two links: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?"

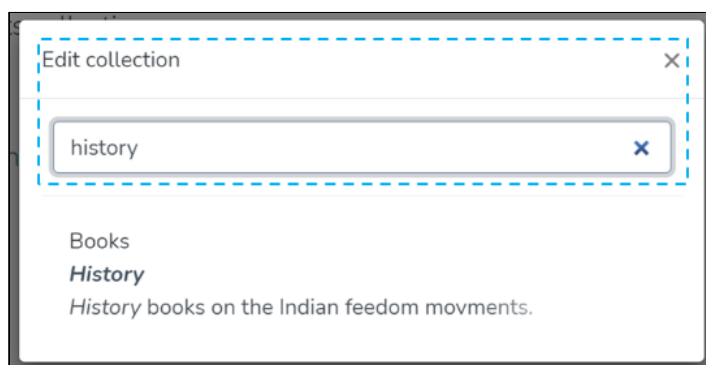
Step 2: There are multiple ways to initiate the delete collection process. One of them is by going to the target collection using Admin options. Rollover your cursor on the "Edit" sign.



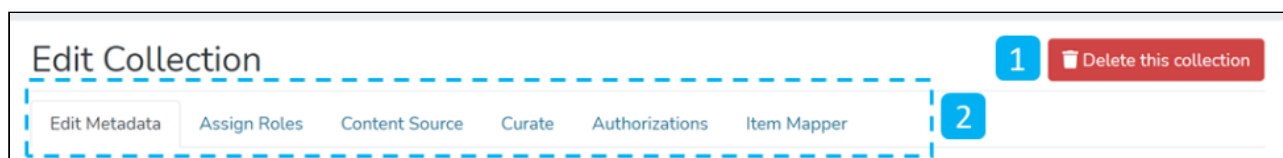
Step 3: Click on "Edit" and click on "Collection" to proceed with the edit collection process.



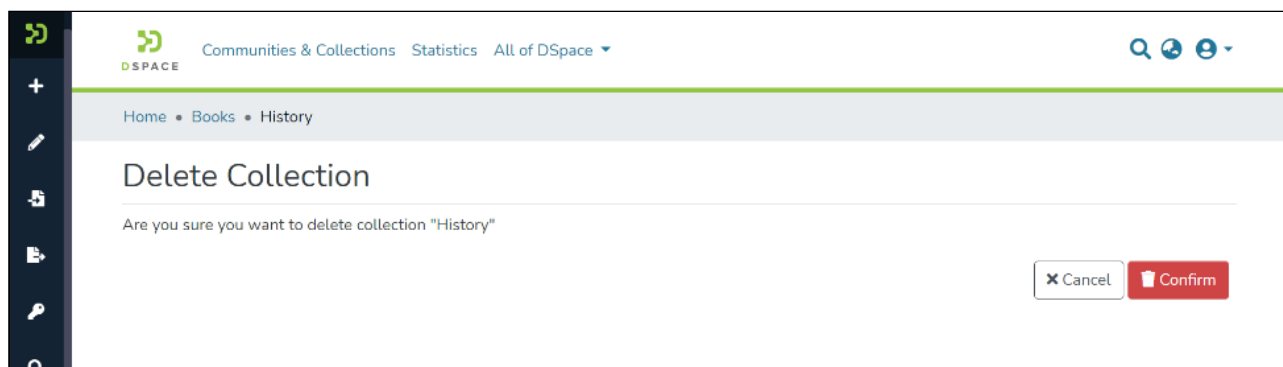
Step 4: A pop-up with the list of collections will appear. Type the Collection's name in the search field you want to delete. A list of collections having typed values will appear upon typing a few letters of the Collection's title. Click on the Collection to continue with the deletion.



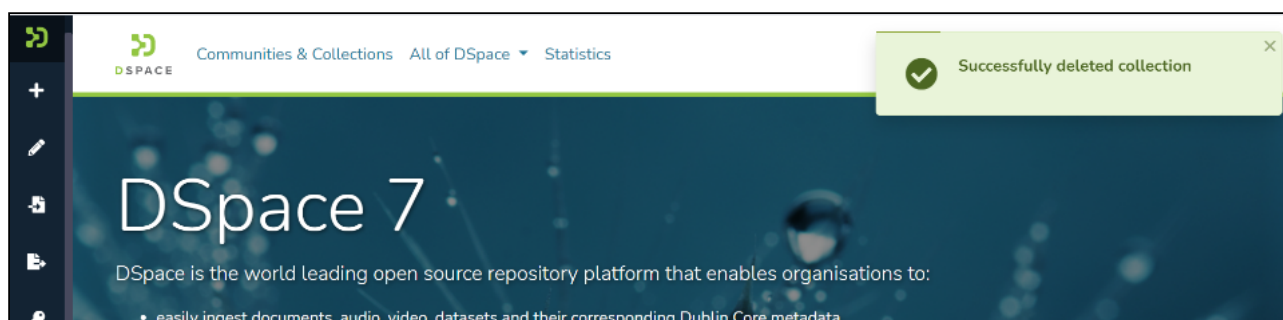
Step 5: The application will take the user to the edit collection form. To initiate the collection deletion, the user must click the 'Delete this collection' button.



Step 6: Click on the Confirm button to continue with the collection deletion or click on the Cancel button to return to the previous page.



Success prompt confirming the deletion will appear, and the DSpace homepage will open.



### 8.2.1.3 Edit Collection

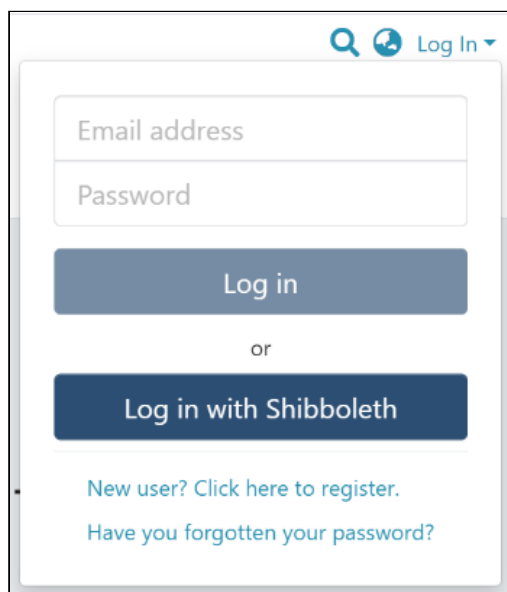
- [Audience](#)(see page 900)
- [Edit Collection](#)(see page 900)
- [Edit Metadata](#)(see page 903)
  - [Template Item](#)(see page 905)
- [Assign Roles](#)(see page 907)
- [Content Source](#)(see page 909)
- [Curate](#)(see page 911)
- [Authorizations](#)(see page 911)
- [Item Mapper](#)(see page 915)
  - [Manage mapped items](#)(see page 915)
  - [Map new items](#)(see page 917)

## Audience

Repository Administrator  
Community Administrator  
Collection Administrator

## Edit Collection

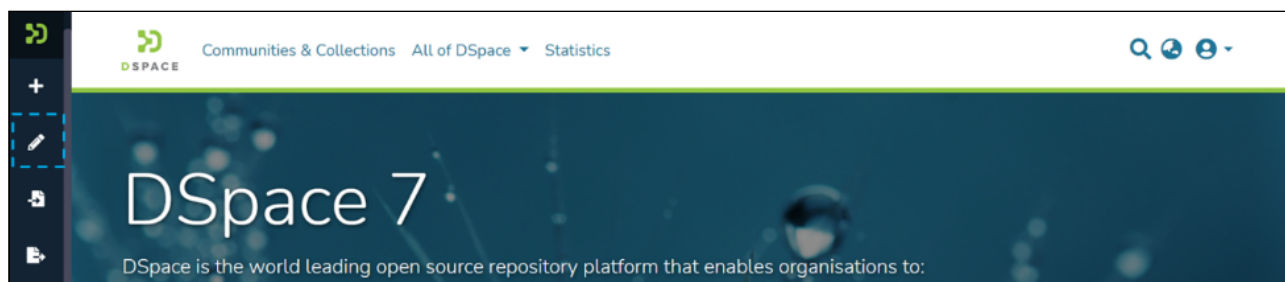
### Step 1: Login using your credentials



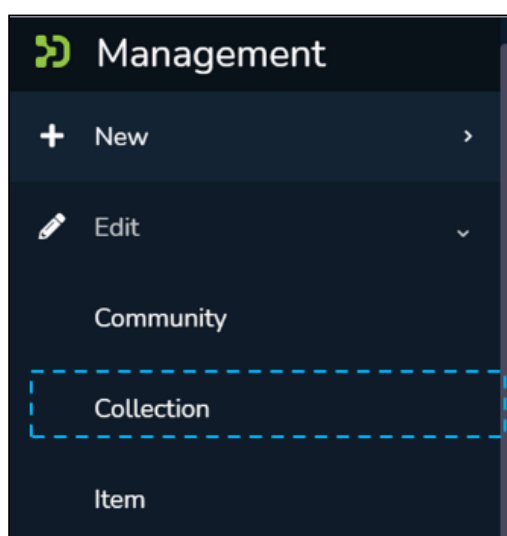
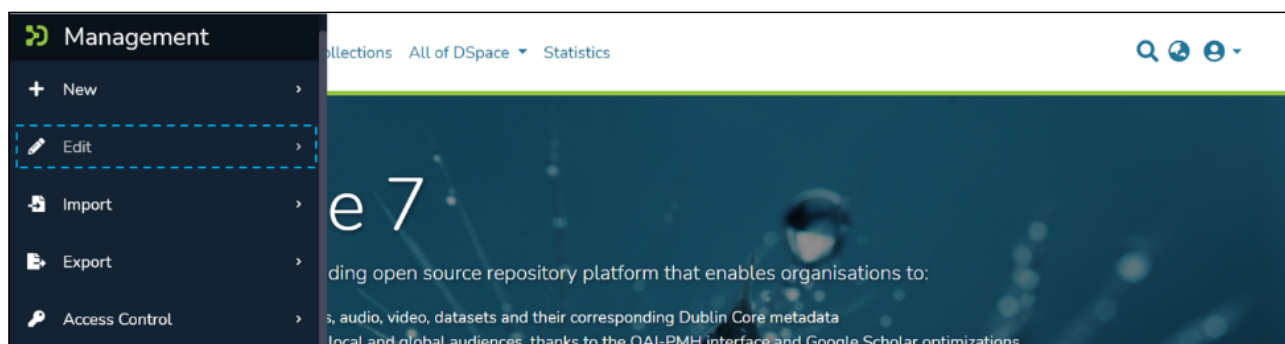
The screenshot shows a login form with the following elements:

- Search and user icons with a "Log In" dropdown menu.
- Input field for "Email address".
- Input field for "Password".
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue button labeled "Log in with Shibboleth".
- Two links: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?"

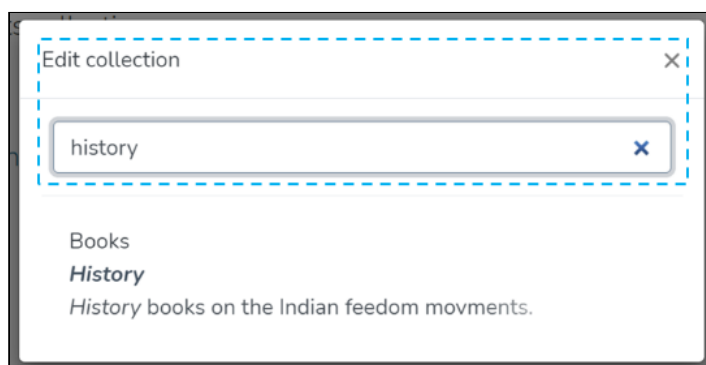
Step 2: There are multiple ways to initiate the Edit collection process. One of them is by going to the target collection using Admin options. Rollover your cursor on the "Edit" sign.



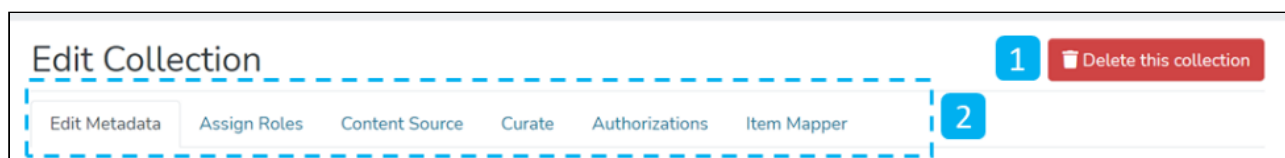
Step 3: Click on "Edit" and click on "Collection" to proceed with the edit collection process.



Step 4: A pop-up window showing list of collections will appear. Type the collection's name in the search field you want to edit. Upon typing a few letters of the collection's name, a list of collections with those letters or words will appear. Click on collection for initiating editing.



Step 5: The application will take the user to the edit collection form. The user can perform a range of actions to edit the collection. Each tab is explained in a separate process in this document.



1. Delete this collection – The button provided for deleting the collection. Detailed steps are explained in the latter part of this document.
2. Tabs – Edit collection has a variety of activities involved, which are grouped in a logical manner across various tabs. Below is the summary of these tabs
  - a. Edit Metadata – Tab covers activities related to editing Collection’s profile information
  - b. Assign Roles – This tab allows users to create specific roles for the collection
  - c. Content Source – This tab enables harvesting the contents from various sources using OAI standards
  - d. Curate – Users can set up various workflows related to content curation in this tab
  - e. Authorizations – Under this tab, users can manage various groups created for managing different access rights and workflows specific to the collection

### Edit Metadata

Step 6: Edit Metadata tab allows users to update the collection’s profile-related information, a.k.a. collection Metadata.

Various actions on this tab are explained immediately after the Edit Metadata illustration is added below.


## Edit Collection Delete this collection

Edit Metadata Assign Roles Content Source Curate Authorizations Item Mapper

Template item

+ Add 1

Collection logo



Name \*

Introductory text (HTML)

Short Description

Copyright text (HTML)

News (HTML)

License

Entity Type

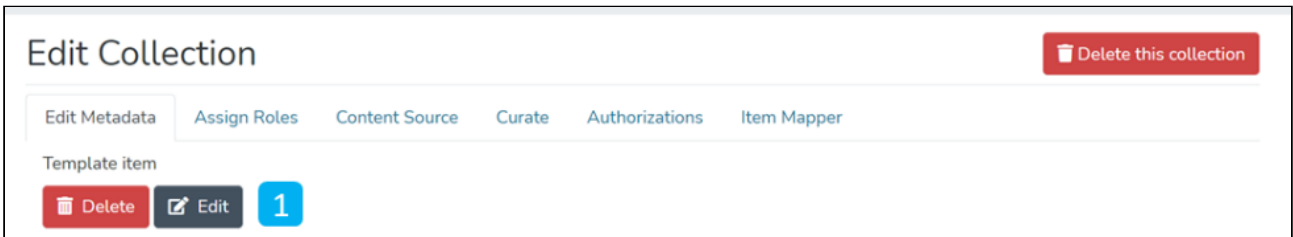
Person

← Back
Save

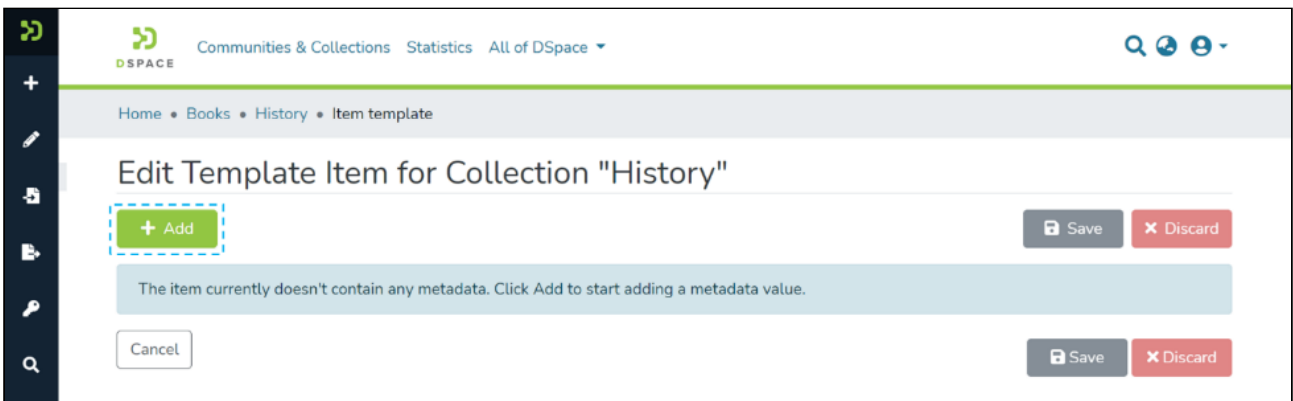
1. Template Item – Users can add metadata elements and values during item submission in this collection. Item submitters can update or delete these pre-populated values during the submission process.
2. Collection logo – Click on the delete button to remove the existing logo or add it if no logo exists.
3. Name – Update the existing collection name in this field.
4. Introduction text (HTML) – Update introductory text if already added or can add new text. One can utilize HTML tags to format the text or continue entering the plain text content.
5. Short Description – Update the collection description or add a fresh short description for the collection.
6. Copyright text (HTML) – Update copyrights related information in this field. Fields marked with (HTML) support HTML tags-based formatting.
7. New (HTML) – Add/Update news specific to this collection in the field.
8. License – Add/Update license-related information here.
9. Entity Type – Once added an entity to the collection, the value remains constant and uneditable.
10. Action Button – Clicking on the Save button will update the metadata information for the collection.

Template Item

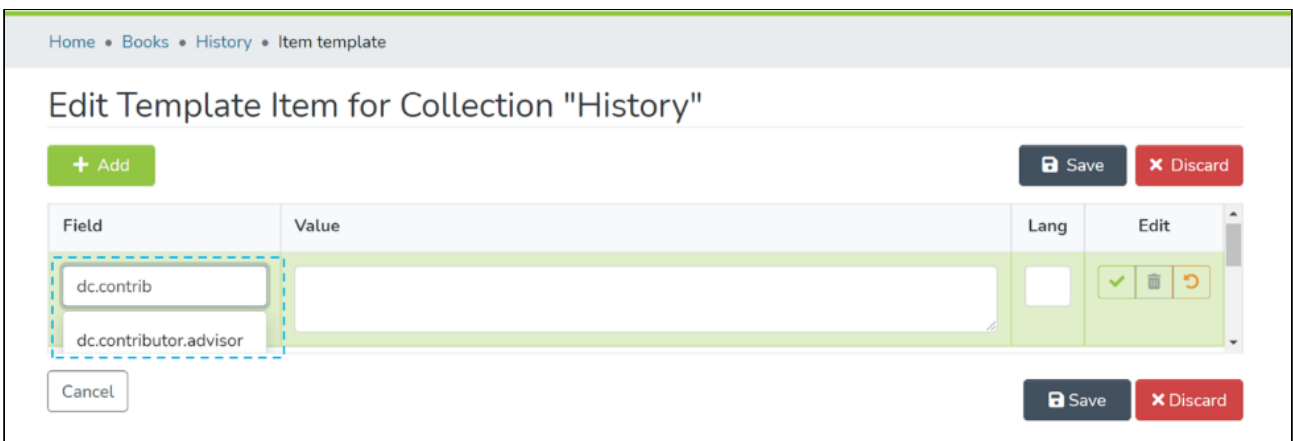
Step 7: Click the 'Edit' button under the Template Item section to add metadata elements with pre-populated values for the item submission process.



Step 8: Click on the Add button to add the metadata element.



Step 9: Users can start typing metadata elements as demonstrated below and select the appropriate component from the drop-down list.



Step 10: Enter the desired value in the Value field, and enter the ISO code of the language used. Then, click on add button for adding the template metadata element.



Home • Books • History • Item template

## Edit Template Item for Collection "History"

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Government of India	en	✓ 🗑️ ↻

Cancel Save Discard

Step 11: Users can click on the action buttons appearing to the right of the element added for updating or deleting the value-added in the element.

Home • Books • History • Item template

## Edit Template Item for Collection "History"

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Government of India	en	✎ 🗑️ ↻

Cancel Save Discard

Step 12: Click on the Save button to finish the template edit process. A pop-up notification confirming successful updates of the metadata element will appear, as demonstrated below.

DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Books • History • Item template

## Edit Template Item for Collection "History"

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Government of India	en	✎ 🗑️ ↻

Cancel Save Discard

✓ **Metadata saved**  
Your changes to this item's metadata were saved.

Step 13: Click on the Save button appearing at the bottom of the Edit Metadata tab to save all updates. A success prompt will appear, and the collection homepage will open.



### Assign Roles

Step 14: This tab helps assign users to roles designed for the collection. These roles include administrative, maker-checker, and content consumption activities. The description for each role is provided below the screenshot.

Edit Metadata Assign Roles Content Source Curate Authorizations Item Mapper

### Administrators

Collection administrators decide who can submit items to the collection, edit item metadata (after submission), and add (map) existing items from other collections to this collection (subject to authorization for that collection).

None

+ Create

### Submitters

The E-People and Groups that have permission to submit new items to this collection.

None

+ Create

### Default item read access

E-People and Groups that can read new items submitted to this collection. Changes to this role are not retroactive. Existing items in the system will still be viewable by those who had read access at the time of their addition.

Default read for incoming items is currently set to Anonymous.

Restrict

### Default bitstream read access

Community administrators can create sub-communities or collections, and manage or assign management for those sub-communities or collections. In addition, they decide who can submit items to any sub-collections, edit item metadata (after submission), and add (map) existing items from other collections (subject to authorization).

Default read for incoming bitstreams is currently set to Anonymous.

Restrict

### Editors

Editors are able to edit the metadata of incoming submissions, and then accept or reject them.

None

+ Create

### Final editors

Final editors are able to edit the metadata of incoming submissions, but will not be able to reject them.

None

+ Create

### Reviewers

Reviewers are able to accept or reject incoming submissions. However, they are not able to edit the submission's metadata.

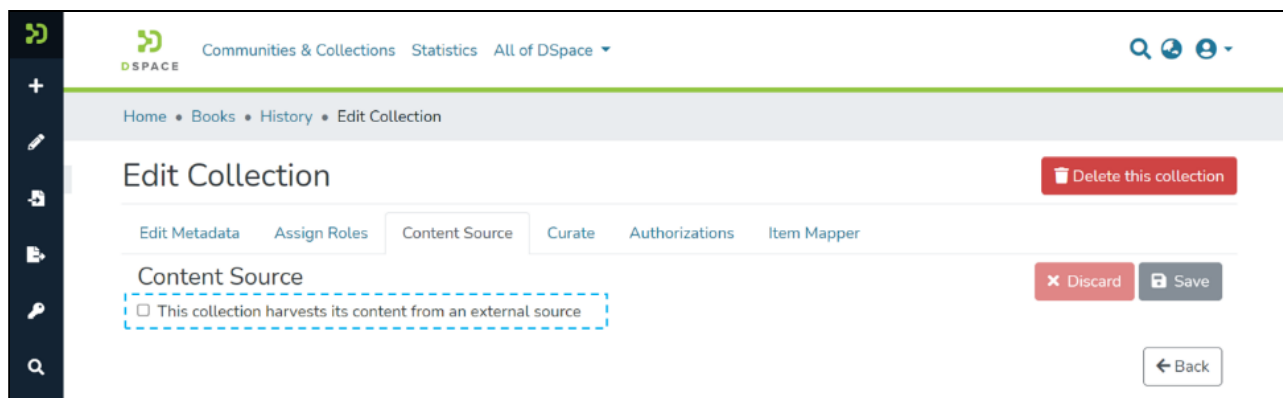
None

+ Create

1. Administrators – The collection administrator can assign rights like item submission, edit item metadata, and map existing items from other collections to this collection. Click the create button to create a dedicated Administrator group for the collection.
2. Submitters – Users or User groups part of this group can submit items to the collection. Click on the create button to add specific users and user groups to perform item submission.
3. Default item read access - E-People and Groups can read new items submitted to this collection. Changes to this role are not retroactive. Existing items in the system will still be viewable by those who had read access at the time of their addition. Click the restrict button to restrict default item read access rights to a specific user group.
4. Default bitstream read access – E-People and Groups added in this section can read bitstreams (attachments) in items by default. Click the restrict button to restrict default bitstream read access rights to a specific user group.
5. Editors - Editors can edit the metadata of submissions and then accept or reject them. Click on the create button to add the workflow step of editing metadata and assigning roles to specific users or user groups.
6. Final editors - Final editors can edit the metadata of incoming submissions but can not reject them. Click the create button to add this workflow step to the collection and assign a role to specific users or user groups.
7. Reviewers - Reviewers can accept or reject incoming submissions. However, they can not edit the metadata. Click the create button to add this workflow step to the collection and assign a role to specific users or user groups.

## Content Source

Step 16: This tab enables harvesting the content from external sources using OAI standards. Users can start harvesting by clicking the checkbox, “This collection harvests its content from an external source.”



Step 17: Users will see various parameters related to OAI-based content harvesting upon clicking the checkbox as explained in the previous step. Below is the explanation of elements appearing under Configure an external source header.

DSpace  
Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • ABC community with multiple subcommunities

## Edit Collection

Delete this collection

Edit Metadata Assign Roles Content Source Curate Authorizations Item Mapper

### Content Source

Discard Save

This collection harvests its content from an external source

#### Configure an external source

OAI Provider \* 1

https://oaktrust.library.tamu.edu/dspace-oai/request

OAI specific set id 2 Metadata Format 3

com\_1969.1\_188322 Simple Dublin Core

Content being harvested

Harvest metadata only 4 Harvest metadata and references to bitstreams (requires ORE support) 5 Harvest metadata and bitstreams (requires ORE support) 6

Discard Save 7

#### Harvest Controls 8

Harvest status: READY  
Harvest start time: N/A  
Last time harvested: N/A  
Harvest info: N/A

Test configuration Import now Reset and reimport 9

Back

1. OAI Provider – Enter the source OAI provider’s URL.
2. OAI specific set id – Enter the set ID to source content.
3. Metadata Format – Select suitable metadata format using the dropdown list, e.g., Simple Dublin Core, Qualified Dublin Core, and DSpace Intermediate metadata.
4. Harvest metadata only – Select this option to harvest only metadata from the source.
5. Harvest metadata and references to bitstreams (requires ORE support) – Click on this option to harvest metadata and reference links to corresponding bitstreams.
6. Harvest metadata and bitstream (requires ORE support) – Use this option to harvest both metadata and corresponding bitstreams into the target repository.
7. Click on the 'Save' button to update harvesting settings.
8. Upon clicking the save button and subject to successful validation of values entered, “Harvest Status” will turn to “Ready,” as demonstrated in the screenshot below.

Harvest Controls

Harvest status: READY

Harvest start time: N/A

Last time harvested: N/A

Harvest info: N/A

Test configuration Import now Reset and reimport

9. After successfully configuring an OAI profile, these buttons will get active, and the user can start harvesting data immediately.

10. Users can click the “Test configuration” button to test settings and see a response message, as demonstrated on the screen below.

The screenshot displays the OAI-PMH configuration page. The OAI Provider field contains the URL `https://oaktrust.library.tamu.edu/dspace-oai/request`. The OAI specific set id field contains `com_1969.1_188322`. The Content being harvested dropdown is set to `Simple Dublin Core`. Three harvest options are available: `Harvest metadata only` (selected), `Harvest metadata and references to bitstreams (requires ORE support)`, and `Harvest metadata and bitstreams (requires ORE support)`. A notification box at the top right states: `The script to test the settings has successfully finished` with details: `Testing basic PMH access: OK Testing ORE support: OK`. Below the harvest options are `Discard` and `Save` buttons. The Harvest Controls section shows `Harvest status: READY`, `Harvest start time: N/A`, `Last time harvested: N/A`, and `Harvest info: N/A`. At the bottom are `Test configuration`, `Import now`, and `Reset and reimport` buttons.

11. Upon successfully testing settings, click on the “Import now” button to harvest metadata immediately.

## Curate

Step 18: The Curate tab provides various workflows for curating items stored in the collection. Below are standard flows, and there can be customized curation workflows as well

1. Profile bitstream formats
2. Check for Required Metadata
3. Check Links in Metadata

Users must select a workflow from the dropdown list and click the “Start” button to initiate the curation process.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Collection' page for 'Approval testing - Editing'. The 'Curate' tab is active, displaying the 'Curate Collection: Approval testing - Editing' section. A 'Task' dropdown menu is set to 'Profile Bitstream Formats', and a 'Start' button is visible below it. A 'Delete this collection' button is located in the top right corner. The breadcrumb trail is `Home • ABC • Approval testing - Editing • Edit Collection`. The page title is `Edit Collection`. The navigation tabs include `Edit Metadata`, `Assign Roles`, `Content Source`, `Curate` (selected), `Authorizations`, and `Item Mapper`. A 'Back' button is located at the bottom right.

## Authorizations

Step 19: Authorizations tab has all the policies defined for the collection. These are in addition to policies created from the “Assign Roles” tab. Key actions available in this tab are explained below.











Home • ABC • Approval testing - Editing • Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

[Delete this collection](#)

[Edit Metadata](#) [Assign Roles](#) [Content Source](#) [Curate](#) [Authorizations](#) [Item Mapper](#)

Policies for Collection 91d306f8-08f1-4018-95b6-86291fdaabfb 1 [+ Add](#) [Delete selected](#)

ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
26185			READ		Anonymous			<span>2</span>  
26186			DEFAULT_ITEM_READ		Anonymous			 
26187			DEFAULT_BITSTREAM_READ		Anonymous			 
26188			ADD		COLLECTION_91d306f8-08f1-4018-95b6-86291fdaabfb_SUBMIT			 
26189			ADD		COLLECTION_91d306f8-08f1-4018-95b6-86291fdaabfb_WORKFLOW_ROLE_editor			 

[← Back](#)

1. Manage Policies – Click the Add button or select policies from the table to create a new policy. Next, click on the Delete selected button for a batch deletion of the policies.
2. Edit policy and members in a policy – Click the edit button to edit an individual policy or click on the group icon to edit the user group.

Step 20: Click on Add button to create a new Authorization policy.











Home • ABC • Approval testing - Editing • Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

[Delete this collection](#)

[Edit Metadata](#) [Assign Roles](#) [Content Source](#) [Curate](#) [Authorizations](#) [Item Mapper](#)

Policies for Collection 91d306f8-08f1-4018-95b6-86291fdaabfb [+ Add](#) [Delete selected](#)

ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
26185			READ		Anonymous			 
26186			DEFAULT_ITEM_READ		Anonymous			 
26187			DEFAULT_BITSTREAM_READ		Anonymous			 
26188			ADD		COLLECTION_91d306f8-08f1-4018-95b6-86291fdaabfb_SUBMIT			 
26189			ADD		COLLECTION_91d306f8-08f1-4018-95b6-86291fdaabfb_WORKFLOW_ROLE_editor			 

[← Back](#)

Step 21: Users can add information in the fields available in this form to the policy and save it by clicking the submit button. Please see the description of each field followed by the below screenshot.



Home / Publications / Publications 2 / A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes / Edit Item

## Create new resource policy for A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes

Name **1**

Description **2**

Select the policy type \* **3**

Select the action type \* **4**

Start Date **5** End Date

Start Date  End Date

The person or group that will be granted the permission **6**

**7**

Metadata    **8**

Now showing 1 - 5 of 129

ID	Name	Action
7cfb9fdd-dc80-48d1-97c5-cdab1b0a3d82	a a	<b>9</b> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
629ab955-2030-4714-a58c-f81e5064cacc	Adeena M K	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
e7cd0aae-ed4a-40a4-8b05-21d9e799a360	Alan Salgado	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
26f1cfe4-3927-4166-9e10-64cae16f30ca	Alejandra Tero	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
babbc343-e603-4428-be4b-062f8d9a6007	Alessandra Bianchi	<input type="button" value="Select"/>

...

- Name:** Enter the Policy name in this field.
- Description:** Enter the Policy description here for future reference and understanding of other users.

3. **Select the policy type:** The user can select one of the following policy classification types from the list
  - a. TYPE\_SUBMISSION: a policy in place during the submission
  - b. TYPE\_WORKFLOW: a policy in place during the approval workflow
  - c. TYPE\_INHERITED: a policy that has been inherited from a container (the collection)
  - d. TYPE\_CUSTOM: a policy defined by the user during the submission or workflow phase
4. **Select the action type:** The user can select one of the following actions from the dropdown list:
  - a. READ
  - b. WRITE
  - c. REMOVE
  - d. ADMIN
  - e. DELETE
  - f. WITHDRAWN\_READ
  - g. DEFAULT\_BITSTREAM\_READ
  - h. DEFAULT\_ITEM\_READ
5. **Start date – end date:** The user can select the start date and end date for using the policy, should they want to apply it for a fixed period.
6. **The ePerson or group that will be granted the permission:** List of users/groups selected for granting permission under the policy
7. **Search for an ePerson / Search for a group:** Select ePerson or group for searching the entity
8. **Search field:** Enter keywords for searching the ePerson/Group
9. **ePerson/Group list:** Click on the select button against the user/group you want to add to the policy
10. **Submit/Cancel button:** Click on the Submit button to complete policy creation or click on the Cancel button to cancel the entire process.

You'll see a confirmation prompt upon successfully creating the policy, as shown below. After that, the user will be back on the Authorizations screen.

Item Mapper

Manage mapped items

Step 22: The item mapper tab allows users to map items from other collections and manage mapped items.

Home • Books • History • Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

[Delete this collection](#)

[Edit Metadata](#) [Assign Roles](#) [Content Source](#) [Curate](#) [Authorizations](#) **Item Mapper**

### Item Mapper - Map Items from Other Collections

Collection: "History"

This is the item mapper tool that allows collection administrators to map items from other collections into this collection. You can search for items from other collections and map them, or browse the list of currently mapped items.

[Browse mapped items](#) [Map new items](#)

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

	Author	Title
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A Randomised Trial Evaluating the Safety and Immunogenicity of the Novel Single Oral Dose Typhoid Vaccine M01ZH09 in Healthy Vietnamese Children
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

[Cancel](#) [Remove selected item mappings](#)

Step 23: You'll see items mapped with collections under the "Browse mapped items" tab. Click on the checkbox appearing with each item to select the item(s) required to be unmapped.

Home • Books • History • Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

[Delete this collection](#)

[Edit Metadata](#) [Assign Roles](#) [Content Source](#) [Curate](#) [Authorizations](#) **Item Mapper**

### Item Mapper - Map Items from Other Collections

Collection: "History"

This is the item mapper tool that allows collection administrators to map items from other collections into this collection. You can search for items from other collections and map them, or browse the list of currently mapped items.

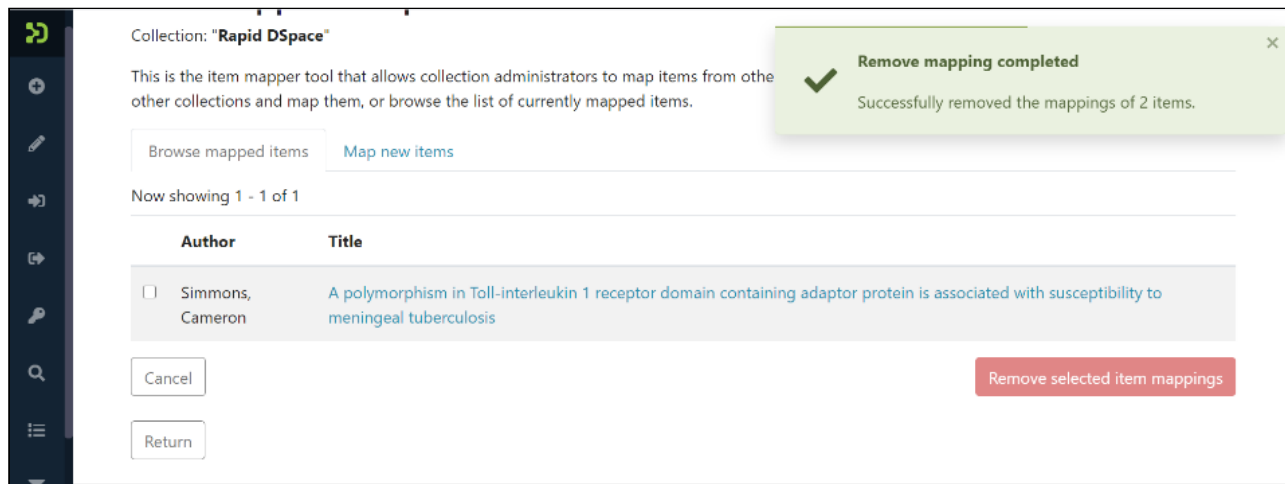
[Browse mapped items](#) [Map new items](#)

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

	Author	Title
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A Randomised Trial Evaluating the Safety and Immunogenicity of the Novel Single Oral Dose Typhoid Vaccine M01ZH09 in Healthy Vietnamese Children
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

[Cancel](#) [Remove selected item mappings](#)

Step 24: After selecting items required to be unmapped, please click on “Remove selected item mappings” to complete the operation. Click on the “Cancel” button on the left of “Remove selected item mappings” to cancel the process.



Collection: "Rapid DSpace"

This is the item mapper tool that allows collection administrators to map items from other collections and map them, or browse the list of currently mapped items.

Browse mapped items [Map new items](#)

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

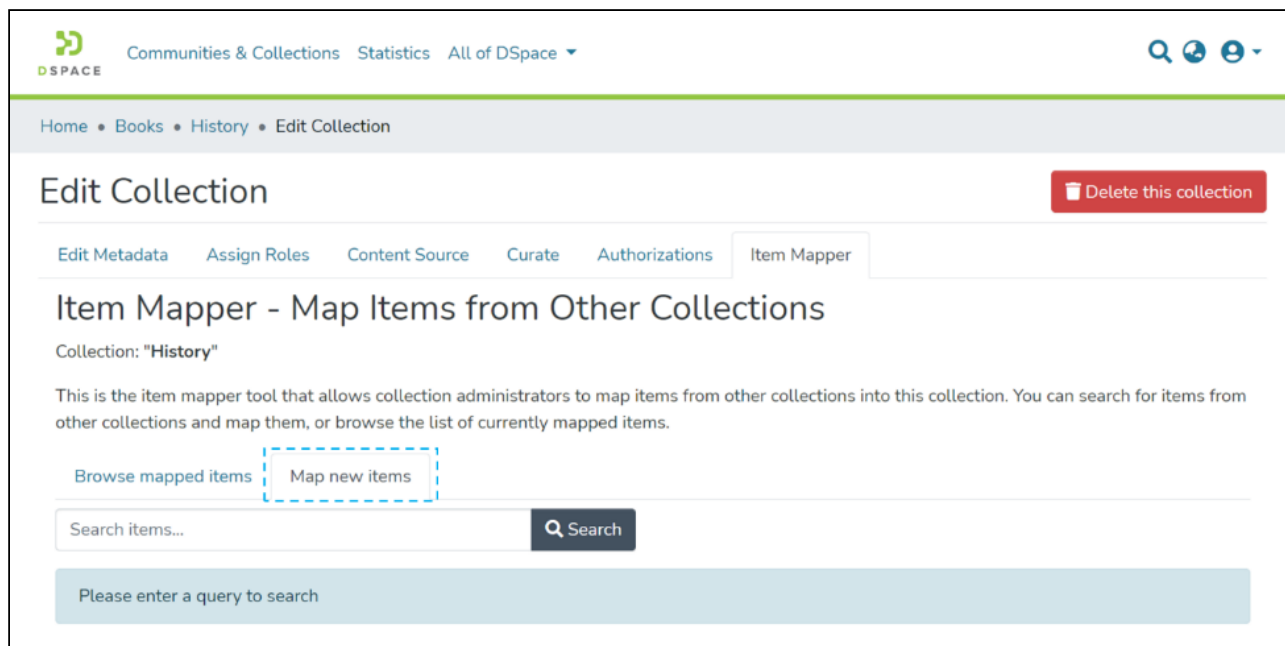
Author	Title
<input type="checkbox"/> Simmons, Cameron	<a href="#">A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis</a>

Cancel Remove selected item mappings

Return

### Map new items

Step 25: Click on the “Map new items” to search items for mapping.



DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Books • History • Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

[Delete this collection](#)

Edit Metadata Assign Roles Content Source Curate Authorizations **Item Mapper**

### Item Mapper - Map Items from Other Collections

Collection: "History"

This is the item mapper tool that allows collection administrators to map items from other collections into this collection. You can search for items from other collections and map them, or browse the list of currently mapped items.

Browse mapped items **Map new items**

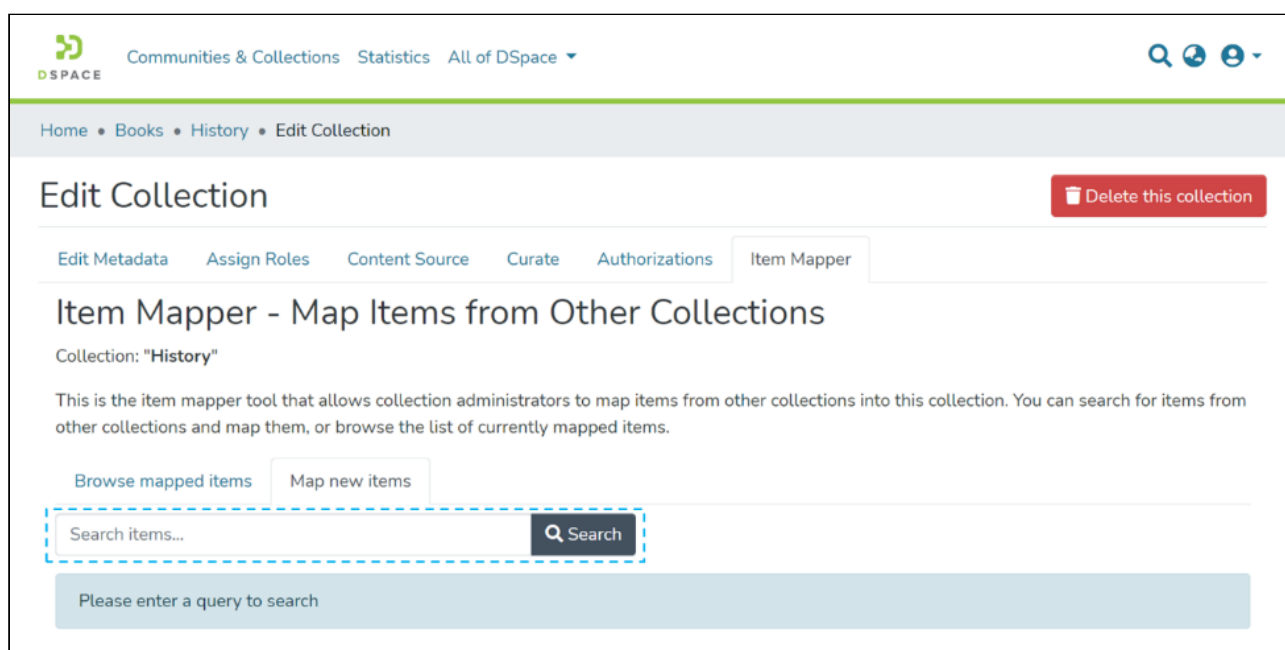
Search items... [Search](#)

Please enter a query to search

Step 26: After confirming the non-existence of the target item in the existing mapped items list, please click on “Map new items.” Then, enter keywords/keyphrases in the search field to search for target items.

Click on the “Search” button as highlighted on the below screen.

You must know that you can enter keywords or keyphrases from any metadata field. Search field under “Map new items” work exactly like the basic search field of DSpace.



The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for editing a collection. At the top, the DSpace logo and navigation links are visible. The breadcrumb trail is "Home • Books • History • Edit Collection". The main heading is "Edit Collection" with a "Delete this collection" button. Below this, there are tabs for "Edit Metadata", "Assign Roles", "Content Source", "Curate", "Authorizations", and "Item Mapper". The "Item Mapper" tab is selected, displaying the title "Item Mapper - Map Items from Other Collections" and the collection name "History". A description explains that this tool allows administrators to map items from other collections. There are two tabs: "Browse mapped items" and "Map new items". The "Map new items" tab is active, showing a search field "Search items..." with a "Search" button. A light blue box below the search field contains the text "Please enter a query to search".

Step 27: Users can select target items from the search results by clicking the checkbox appearing with items.

Home / DSquare Technologies / Rapid DSpace / Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

[Edit Metadata](#)
[Assign Roles](#)
[Content Source](#)
[Curate](#)
[Authorizations](#)
[Item Mapper](#)

### Item Mapper - Map Items from Other Collections

Collection: "Rapid DSpace"

This is the item mapper tool that allows collection administrators to map items from other collections into this collection. You can search for items from other collections and map them, or browse the list of currently mapped items.

[Browse mapped items](#)
[Map new items](#)

infection

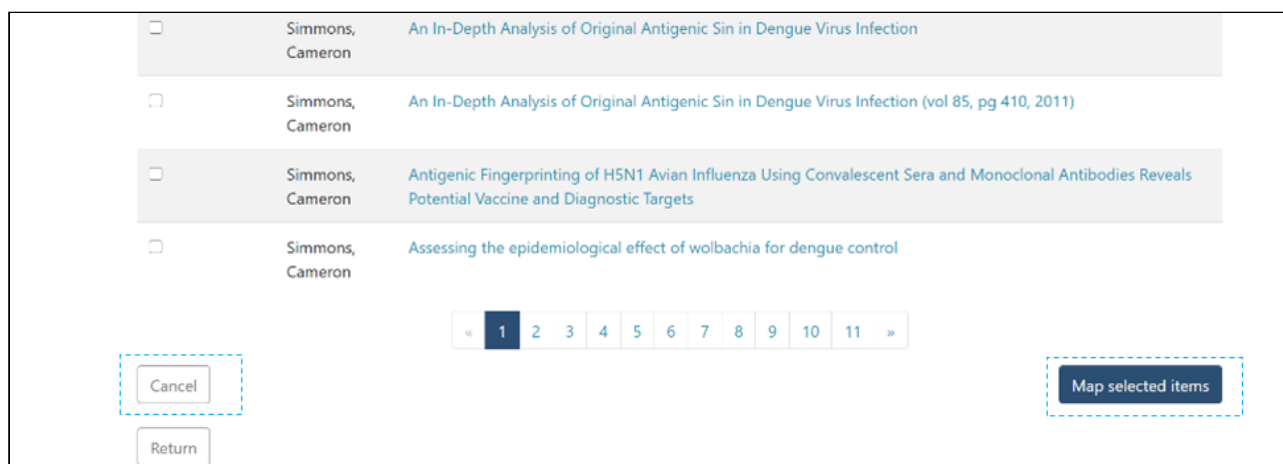
Now showing 1 - 10 of 110

Collection	Author	Title
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A birth cohort study of viral infections in Vietnamese infants and children: study design, methods and characteristics of the cohort
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A cohort study to define the age-specific incidence and risk factors of Shigella diarrhoeal infections in Vietnamese children: a study protocol
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A new class of highly potent, broadly neutralizing antibodies isolated from viremic patients infected with dengue virus
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A Randomized Controlled Trial of Chloroquine for the Treatment of Dengue in Vietnamese Adults
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	A Randomized, Double-Blind Placebo Controlled Trial of Balapiravir, a Polymerase Inhibitor, in Adult Dengue Patients
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	An In-Depth Analysis of Original Antigenic Sin in Dengue Virus Infection
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	An In-Depth Analysis of Original Antigenic Sin in Dengue Virus Infection (vol 85, pg 410, 2011)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	Antigenic Fingerprinting of H5N1 Avian Influenza Using Convalescent Sera and Monoclonal Antibodies Reveals Potential Vaccine and Diagnostic Targets
<input type="checkbox"/>	Simmons, Cameron	Assessing the epidemiological effect of wolbachia for dengue control

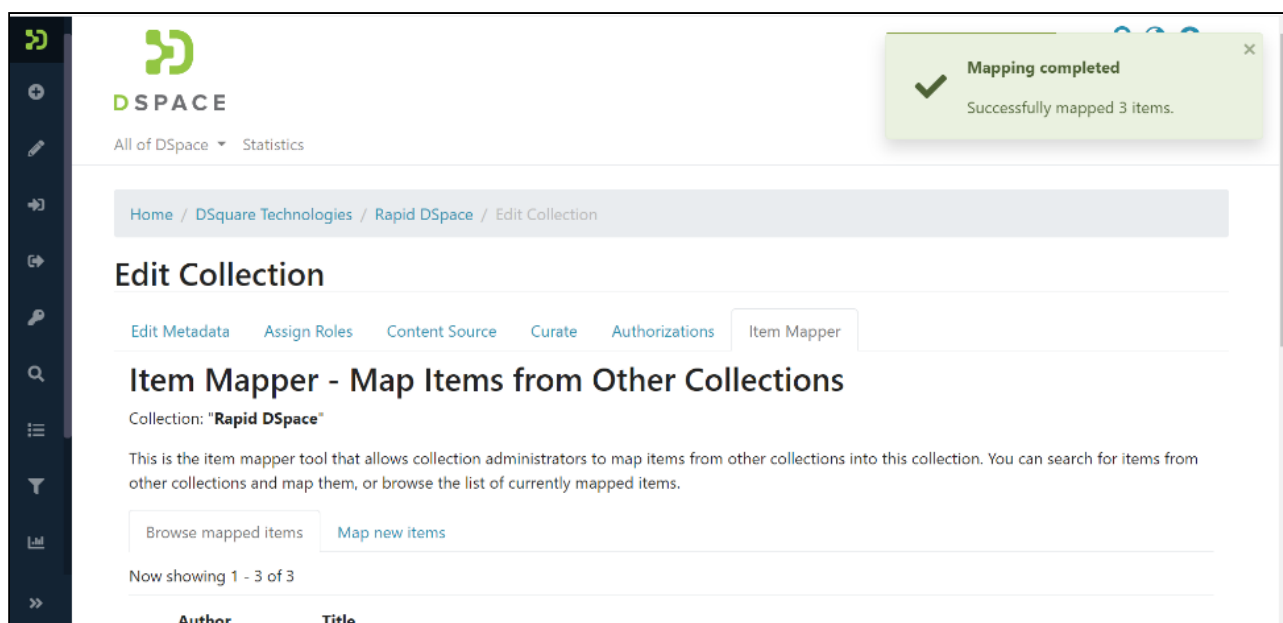
« 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 »

Step 28: After selecting target items, please click on the “Map selected items” button at the bottom of the page to complete the item mapping process.

Click the “Cancel” button to cancel the activity and return to the collection edit page.



Step 29: A prompt confirming successful mapping of items will appear upon completing the task, as demonstrated below.



Mapped items will appear in the collection and under the “Browse mapped items” tab, as demonstrated below.

Home / DSquare Technologies / Rapid DSpace / Edit Collection

## Edit Collection

Edit Metadata Assign Roles Content Source Curate Authorizations **Item Mapper**

### Item Mapper - Map Items from Other Collections

Collection: "Rapid DSpace"

This is the item mapper tool that allows collection administrators to map items from other collections into this collection. You can search for items from other collections and map them, or browse the list of currently mapped items.

Browse mapped items [Map new items](#)

Now showing 1 - 3 of 3

Author	Title
<input type="checkbox"/> Simmons, Cameron	<a href="#">A cohort study to define the age-specific incidence and risk factors of Shigella diarrhoeal infections in Vietnamese children: a study protocol</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> Simmons, Cameron	<a href="#">A Randomized Controlled Trial of Chloroquine for the Treatment of Dengue in Vietnamese Adults</a>
<input type="checkbox"/> Simmons, Cameron	<a href="#">A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis</a>

Cancel Remove selected item mappings

Return

#### 8.2.1.4 Export Collection

DSpace provides a feature of exporting metadata of any collection into CSV format. Users can utilize this CSV file for multiple purposes like creating ad-hoc reports, importing metadata into other systems, or for any use case as per its requirements.

- [Audience](#)(see page 921)
- [Exporting a collection](#)(see page 921)

##### Audience

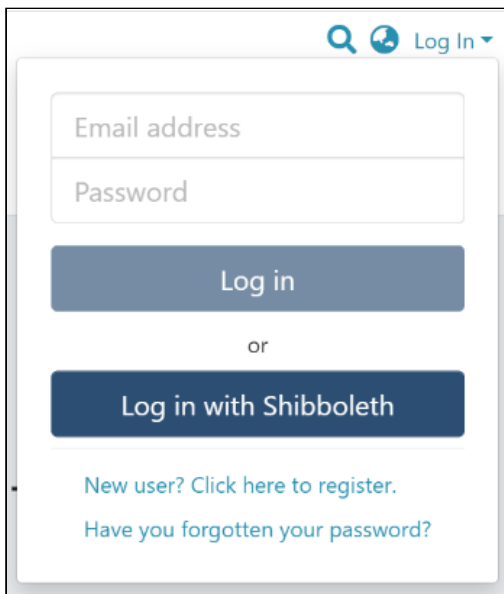
1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator
3. Collection Administrator
4. Basic user

##### Exporting a collection

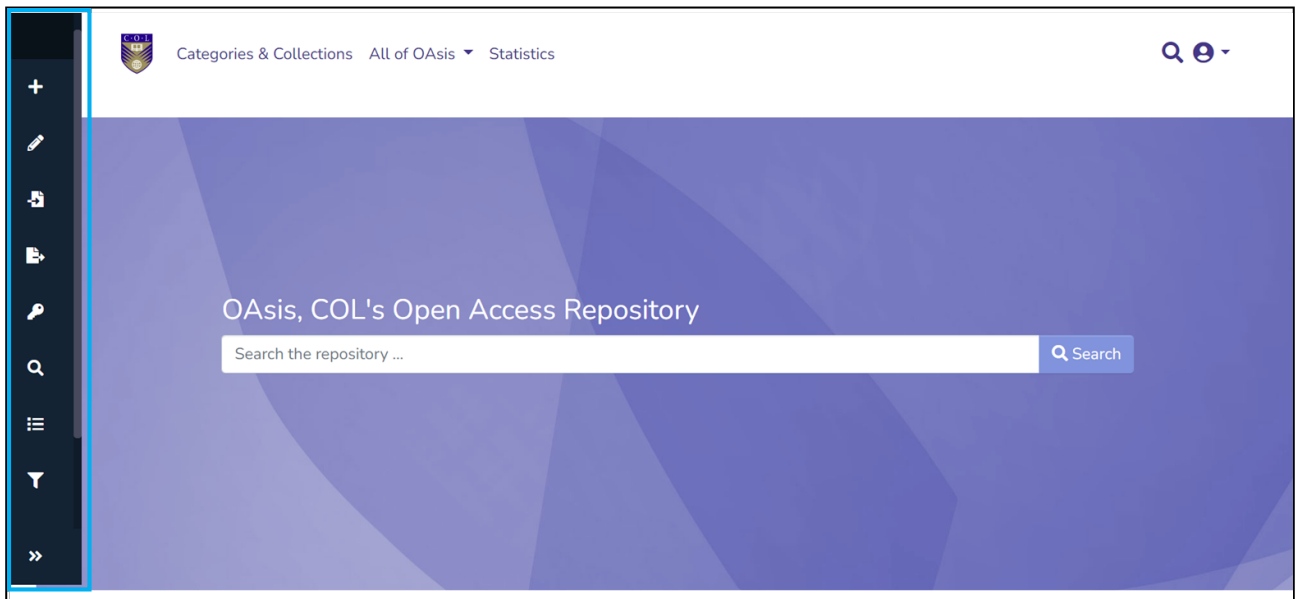
Users log in using their log-in credentials and follow the steps mentioned below to export a collection's metadata.

Step 1: Go to the DSpace home page and click on the "Log In" link at the top right corner of the screen, as illustrated below.

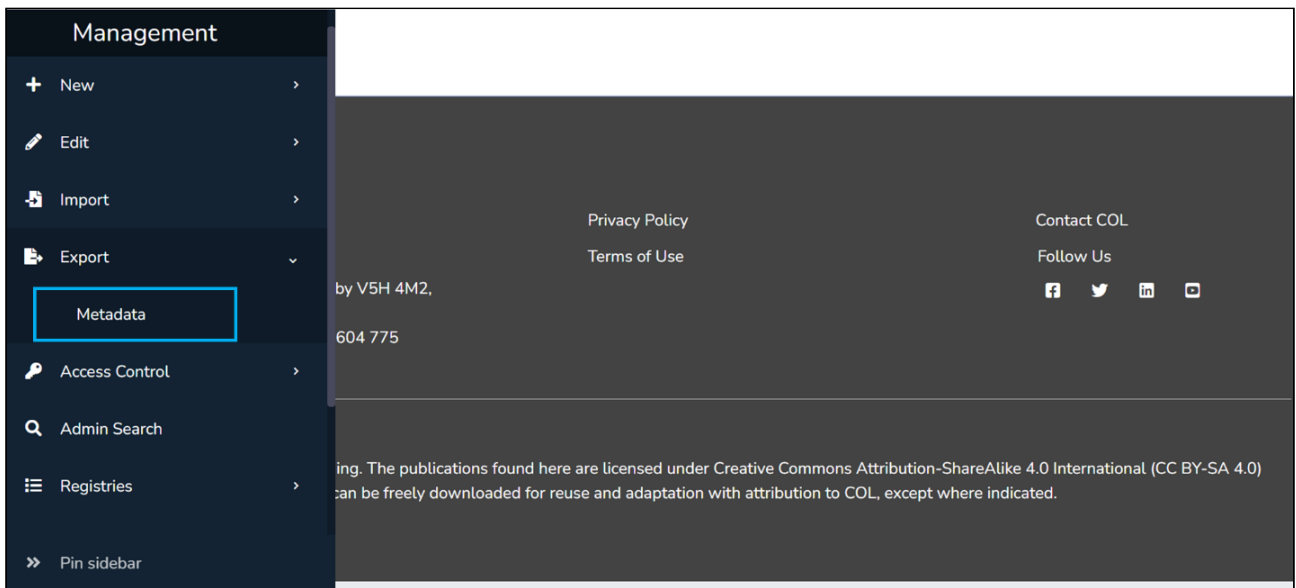




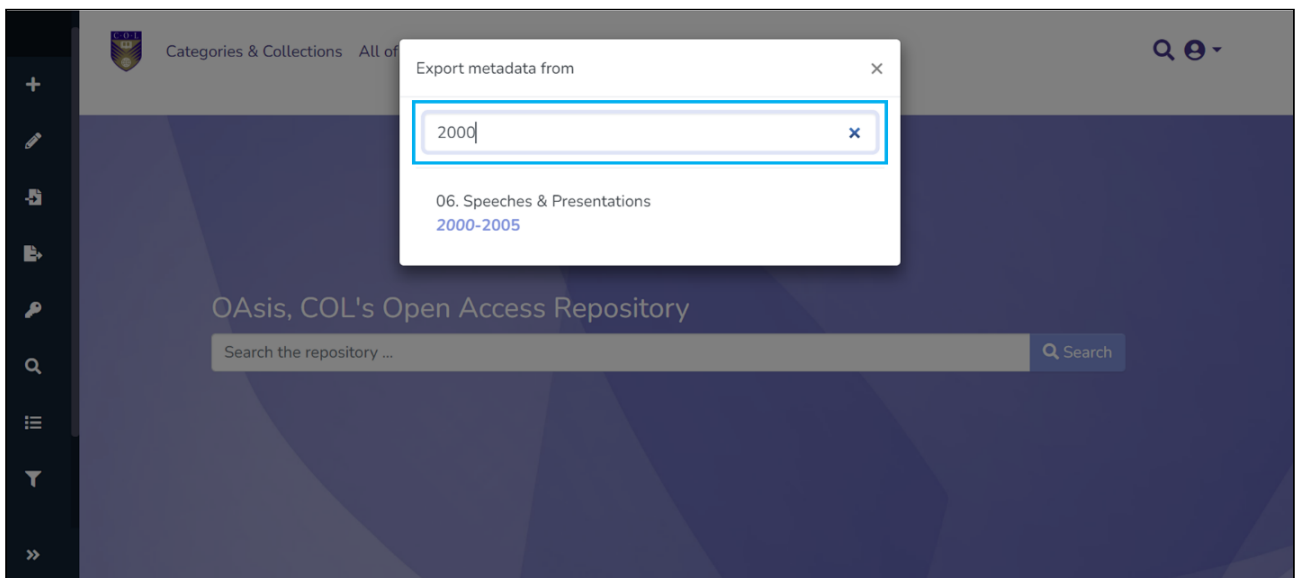
Step 2: Users will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as highlighted in the illustration.



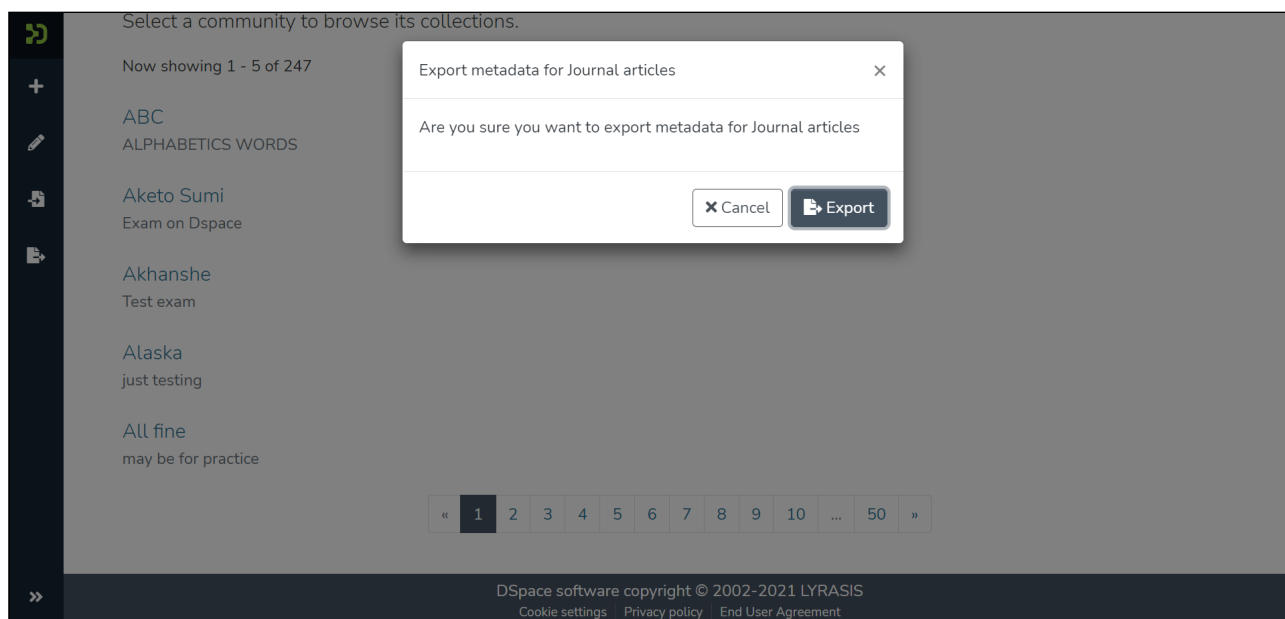
Step 3: Rollover your cursor over the Export menu and click on metadata.



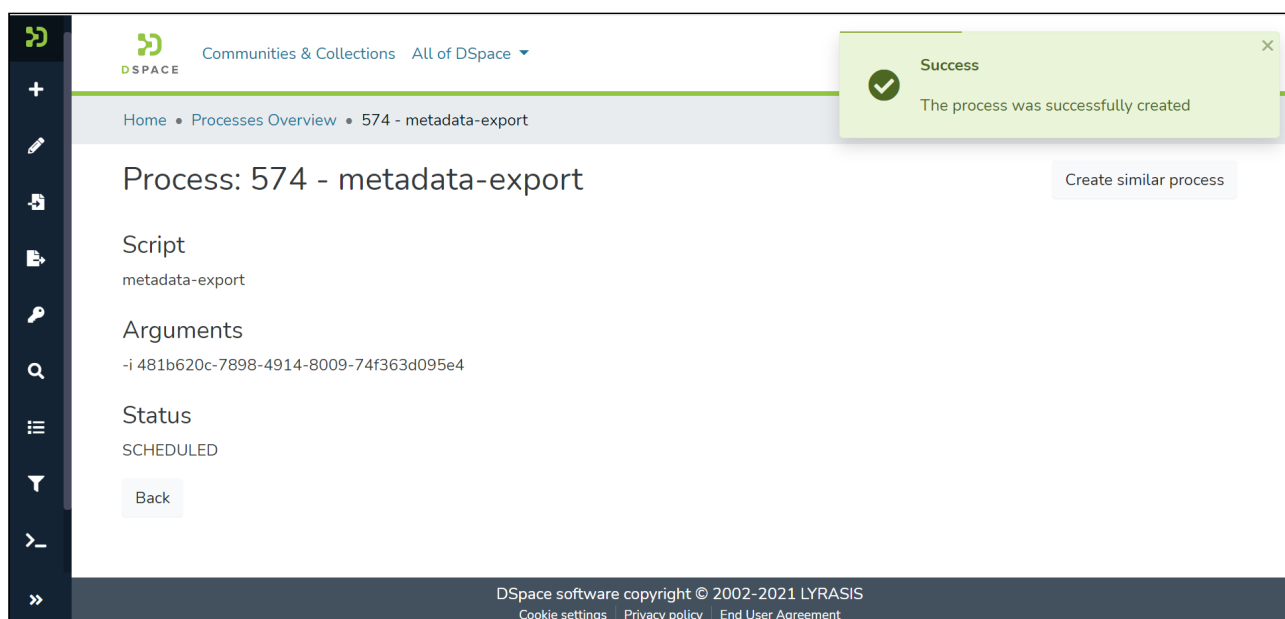
Step 4: Type the collection's name in the textbox and click on the target collection from the list appearing in the popup.



Step 5: Click on the “Export” button in the popup to continue with the item metadata-export or click the “Cancel” button to cancel the process.

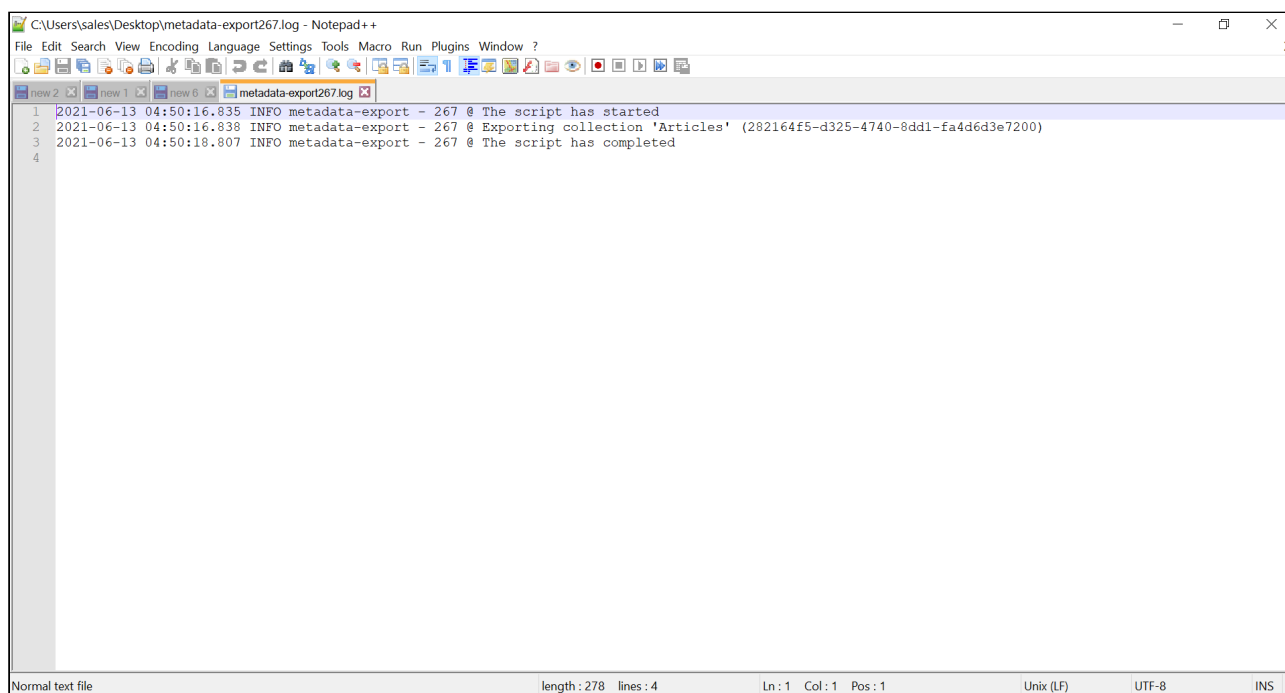


Users will see the success prompt confirming the creation of the export process upon successful completion of the process, or else the application will show the failure promptly.



Step 6: Users will be redirected to the metadata export page with a csv download link, as highlighted in the screenshot below. Click on the link to download the file.





```
C:\Users\sales\Desktop\metadata-export267.log - Notepad++
File Edit Search View Encoding Language Settings Tools Macro Run Plugins Window ?
new 2 new 1 new 6 metadata-export267.log
1 2021-06-13 04:50:16.835 INFO metadata-export - 267 @ The script has started
2 2021-06-13 04:50:16.838 INFO metadata-export - 267 @ Exporting collection 'Articles' (282164f5-d325-4740-8dd1-fa4d6d3e7200)
3 2021-06-13 04:50:18.807 INFO metadata-export - 267 @ The script has completed
4
Normal text file length: 278 lines: 4 Ln: 1 Col: 1 Pos: 1 Unix (LF) UTF-8 INS
```

## 8.2.2 Community Management

The community is the primary storage level in the DSpace's storage hierarchy that holds sub-community and collections. This document provides an overview of creating, editing, and deleting a community. The documentation below assumes that the user has the relevant authorizations. For example, the admin menu and edit buttons would appear to a user having community administration permission.

If you're unsure about community administration permissions assigned to your account for the target community, contact your system administrator.

- [Create a Community](#)(see page 926)
- [Delete Community](#)(see page 930)
- [Edit Community](#)(see page 933)

### 8.2.2.1 Create a Community

- [Audience](#)(see page 926)
- [Create Community](#)(see page 926)

The community is the primary storage level in the DSpace's storage hierarchy that holds sub-community and collections. This document provides an overview of creating, editing, and deleting a community. The documentation below assumes that the user has the relevant authorizations. For example, the admin menu and edit buttons would appear to a user having community administration permission.

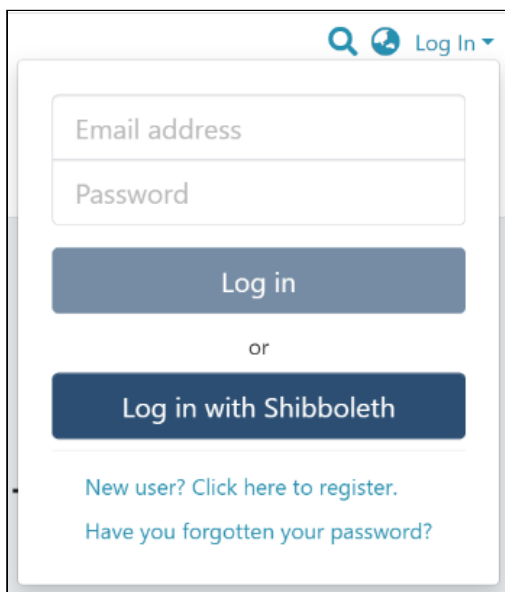
If you're unsure about community administration permissions assigned to your account for the target community, contact your system administrator.

## Audience

1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator

## Create Community

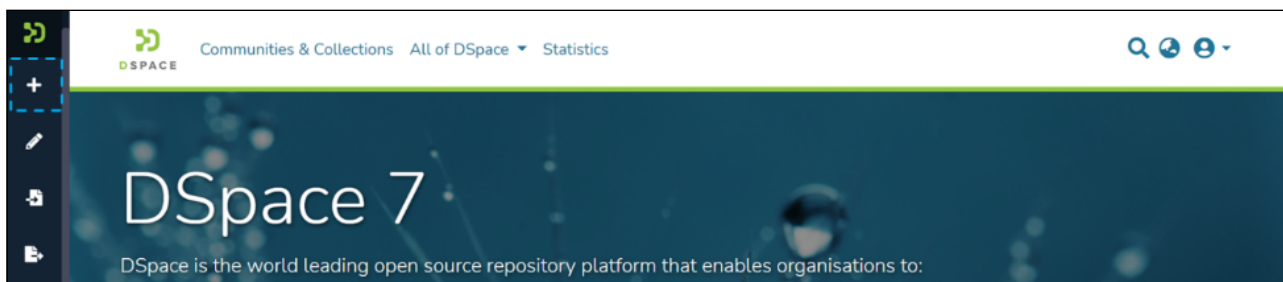
### Step 1: Login using your credentials



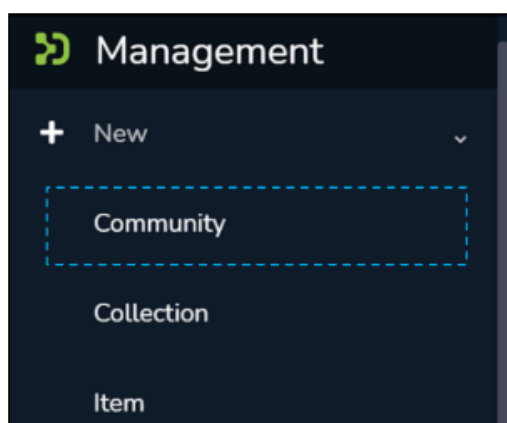
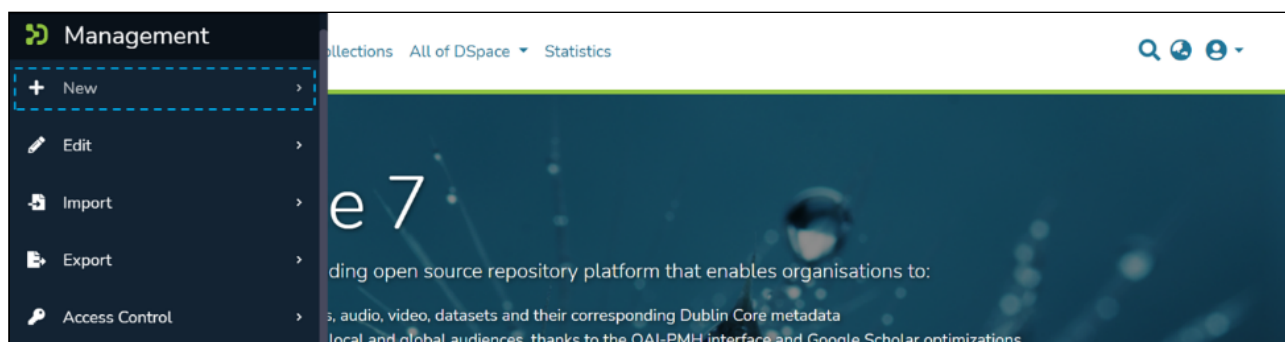
The screenshot shows a login form with the following elements:

- Search and user icons in the top right corner, followed by a "Log In" dropdown menu.
- Two input fields: "Email address" and "Password".
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue button labeled "Log in with Shibboleth".
- Two links at the bottom: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?".

### Step 2: Rollover your cursor on the “+” sign



### Step 3: Click on the “New” link and click on “Community” to proceed with the community creation.



Step 4: A popup providing the option to either create a Parent community or a sub-community will appear, with a list showing existing communities. Create your new community by either:

1. Click on “Create a new top-level community” to create a top-level community.  
... or...
2. Typing the name of the existing parent community in the search field to add a sub-community within. Upon typing a few letters of the community’s name, a list of communities having those letters or words will appear. Click on the community name to create a sub-community.

Step 5: As per the user’s choice in the previous step, the application will open the create community or create a sub-community form to populate information regarding the community’s profile. Below is the explanation of the information that needs to be populated on this form.

It is important to understand that both “Create Community” and “Create Sub-community” forms are identical. The critical difference between both is that the “Create Community” form helps create a top-level community while the latter helps create a sub-community within a community or a sub-community.

The description provided below the following screenshot remains identical for both Community and Sub-community creation.

## Create a Community

Community logo

Drop a Community Logo to upload , or browse 1

Name \* 2

Introductory text (HTML) 3

Short Description 4

Copyright text (HTML) 5

News (HTML) 6

7

1. **Community logo** – Select the community’s logo by clicking on the ‘browse’ link to select an image file. It is advisable to maintain uniform dimensions of the logo across the repository.
2. **Name** – Enter the community’s name. It is marked with ‘\*’ to show it is a mandatory field.
3. **Introductory text (HTML)** – Users can add introductory text providing an overview of the contents stored in the community. One can utilize HTML tags to format the text or continue entering plain text content.
4. **Short Description** – This field can have a one-liner description of the community that appears with the community name in the list of communities on the parent community page (or on the DSpace’s in the case of a top-level community).
5. **Copyright text (HTML)** – Users can enter copyright information here. Fields marked with (HTML) support HTML tag-based formatting.
6. **News (HTML)** – Enter news about this community. Users can update this by regularly going to this section via the editing community.
7. **Action Buttons** – Users can click on the appropriate button as determined. Clicking on the Save button will add the community to the repository.

Step 6: Click on the ‘Save’ button to complete the Community creation. A success prompt will pop up upon community creation, and the user will be re-directed to the community homepage.



DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Indian freedom fight

## Indian freedom fight

Permanent URI for this community <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/2089>

Contents related with Indian freedom fight.

### News

India celebrating it's indenpendence day on 15th August, 2021.

Upload Community logo successful.

Successfully created the Community

### Success prompt upon community creation

Home • Indian freedom fight

## Indian freedom fight

Permanent URI for this community <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/2089>

Contents related with Indian freedom fight.

### News

India celebrating it's indenpendence day on 15th August, 2021.

Browse

Subcommunities and Collections By Title By Issue Date By Author By Subject

ABC Publication

### Community homepage

#### 8.2.2.2 Delete Community

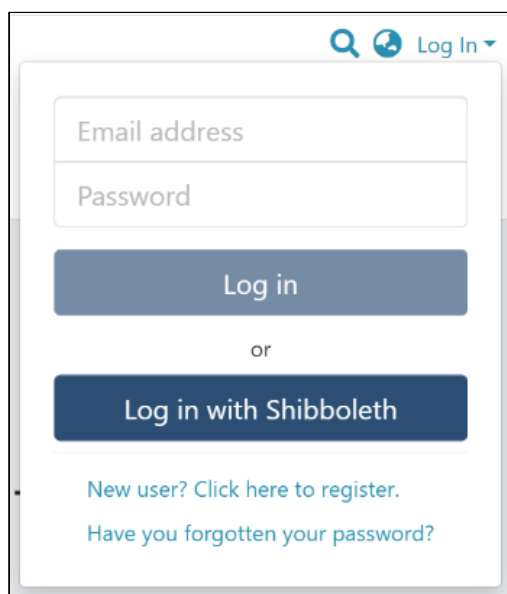
- [Audience](#)(see page 930)
- [Edit Community](#)(see page 930)

## Audience

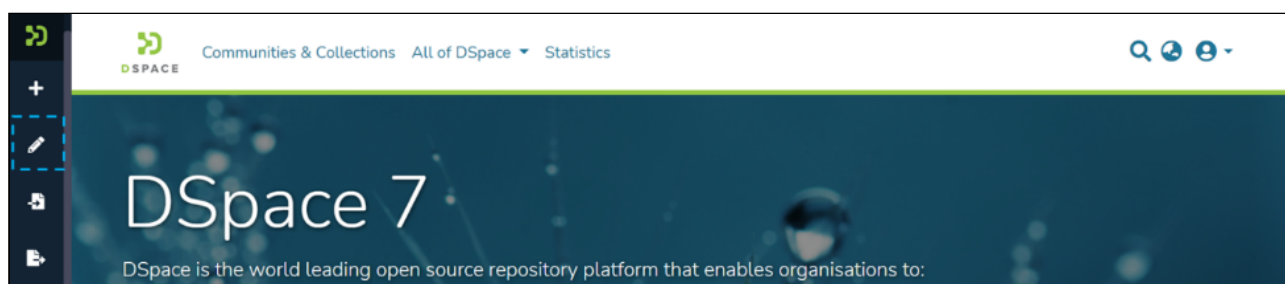
1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator

## Edit Community

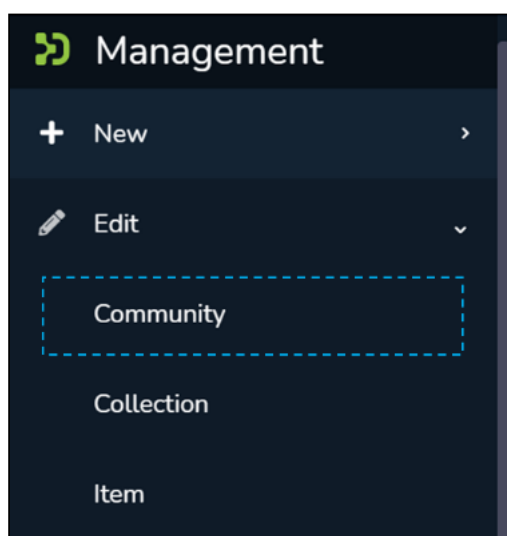
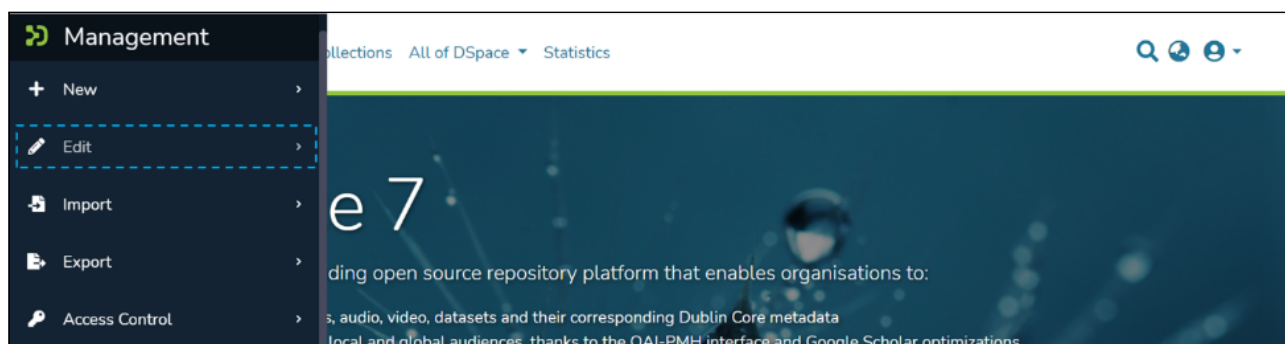
### Step 1: Login using your credentials



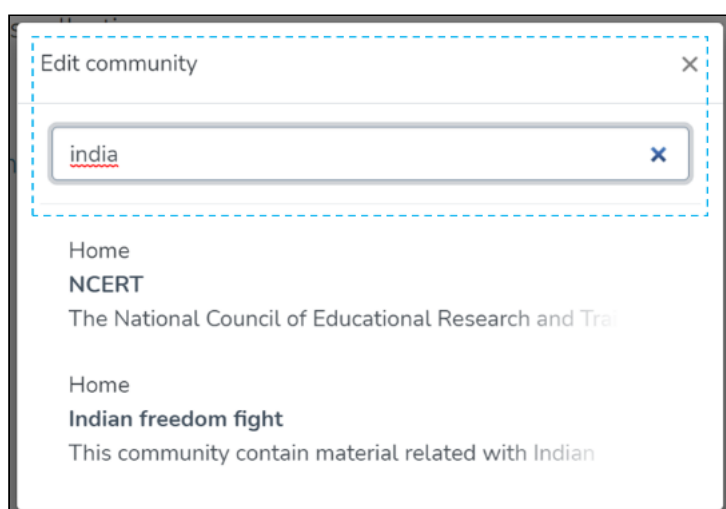
Step 2: There are multiple ways to navigate to the controls to delete a community. One of them is by going to the target community and clicking on the button with the pencil icon next to the community title ie the ‘Edit community’ button. Alternatively, follow the steps provided here.



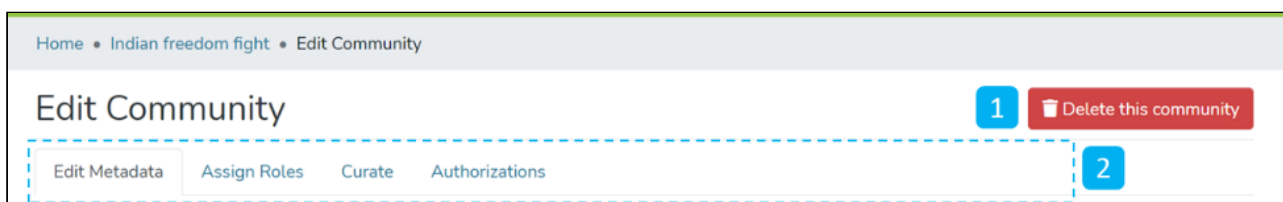
Step 3: Click on “Edit” and click on “Community” to proceed with the edit community process.



Step 4: A popup showing a search box and a list of communities will appear. Type the name of the community you want to edit in the search field. Upon typing a few letters of the community's name, a list of the communities having those letters or words will appear. Click on the target community to initiate editing.



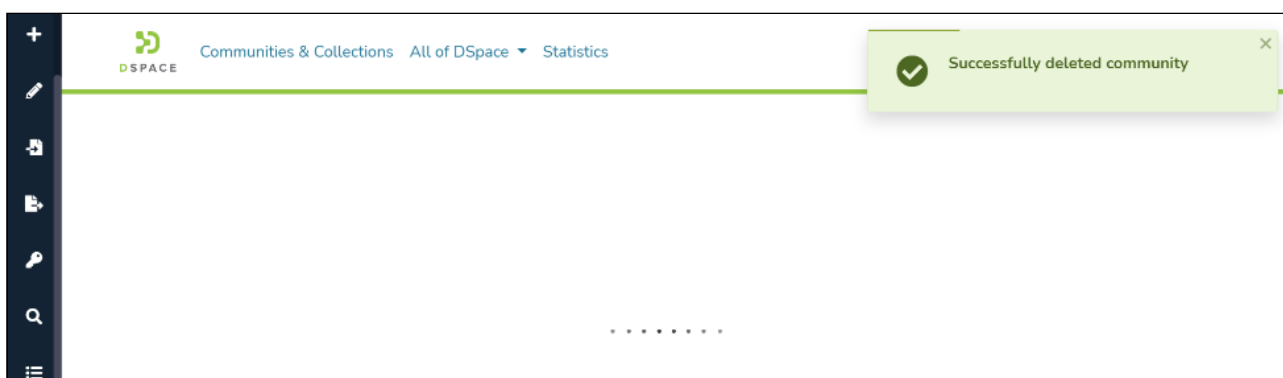
Step 5: The application will take the user to the edit community form. To initiate the community deletion process, the user needs to click on the ‘Delete this community’ button.



Step 6: Click on the Confirm button to continue with the community deletion or click on the Cancel button to return to the previous page.



Users will be re-directed to the homepage of DSpace upon successful completion of the community delete, and a popup confirming the community deletion will appear.



### 8.2.2.3 Edit Community

- [Audience](#)(see page 933)
- [Edit Community](#)(see page 934)
- [Edit Metadata](#)(see page 936)
- [Assign Roles](#)(see page 938)
- [Curate](#)(see page 938)
- [Authorizations](#)(see page 939)

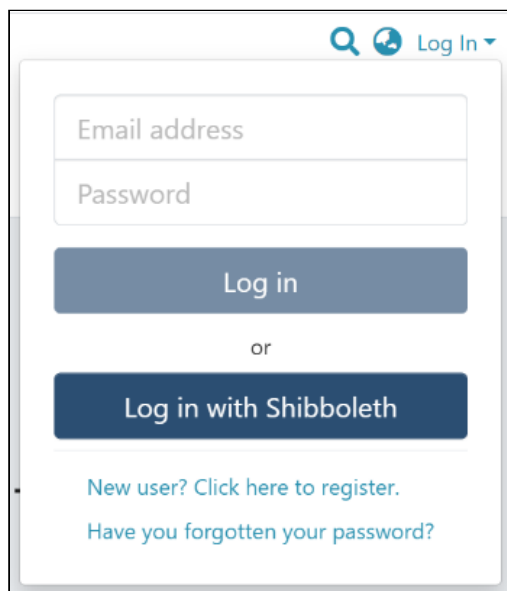
#### Audience

1. Repository Administrator

## 2. Community Administrator

### Edit Community

#### Step 1: Login using your credentials

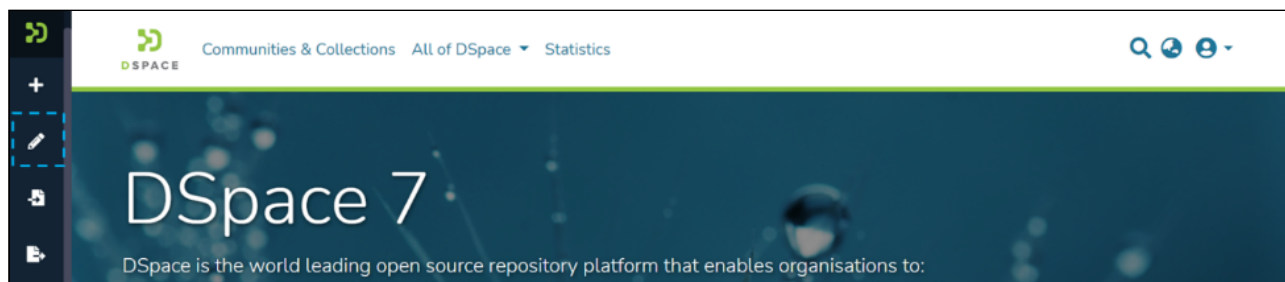


The screenshot shows a login form with the following elements:

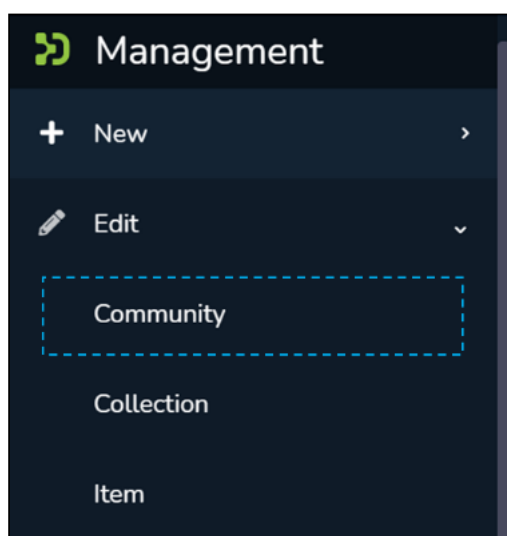
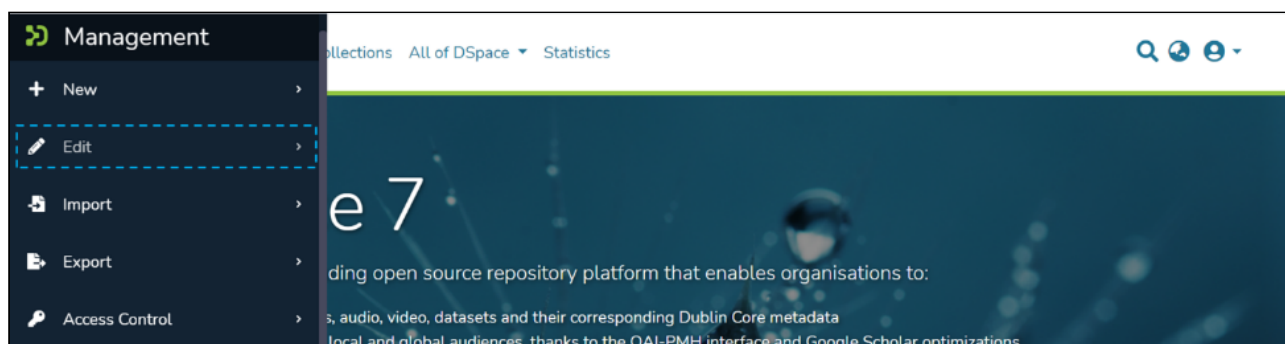
- Search and user icons in the top right corner, followed by a "Log In" link with a dropdown arrow.
- Two input fields: "Email address" and "Password".
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue button labeled "Log in with Shibboleth".
- Two links at the bottom: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?".

Step 2: There are multiple ways to start editing a community. One of them is by going to the target community and clicking on the Edit button, the button with the pencil icon, beside the page title. Alternatively, follow the steps provided here.

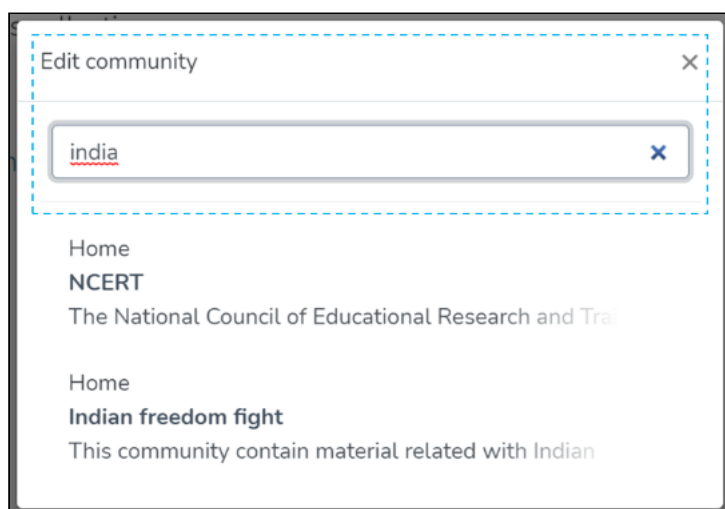
Rollover cursor on the pencil icon in the admin menu.



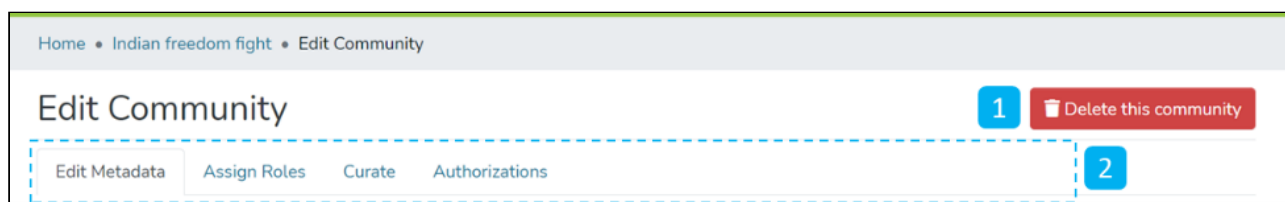
Step 3: Click on "Edit" and click on "Community" to proceed with the edit community process.



Step 4: A popup showing a list of the communities in the DSpace and a search box will appear. If you are already on the page of the community, it will appear at the top of the list, so you can select it by clicking on it. Otherwise, type the name of the community you want to edit in the search field. Upon typing a few letters of the community's name, a list of the community(ies) having those word(s) will appear. Click on the target community to initiate editing.



The application will take the user to the edit community form to perform various actions to edit the community. Each tab is explained in a separate process in this document.



1. Delete this community – The button provided for deleting the community. Detailed steps are explained in the latter part of this page.
2. Tabs – Edit community has a variety of functions, which are grouped logically across various tabs. Below is the summary of these tabs
  - a. Edit Metadata – Tab covers activities related to editing the community’s profile information.
  - b. Assign Roles – This tab allows users to create specific roles for the community, usually, the role of Administrator of the community, see further detail below.
  - c. Curate – Users can set up various workflows related to content curation in this tab
  - d. Authorizations – Under this tab, users can manage various groups and their different access rights in the community, for example, this tab could be used to grant an individual the administrator role, see further detail below.

#### Edit Metadata

The Edit Metadata tab allows users to update the community’s profile-related information, a.k.a. community metadata.

Various actions on this tab are explained immediately after the Edit Metadata illustration is added below.


Home • Indian freedom fight • Edit Community

## Edit Community

[Delete this community](#)

[Edit Metadata](#)
[Assign Roles](#)
[Curate](#)
[Authorizations](#)

Community logo



Name \*

 2

Introductory text (HTML)

 3

Short Description

 4

Copyright text (HTML)

 5

News (HTML)

 6

7 [← Back](#) [Save](#)

1. **Community logo** – Click on the delete button to remove the existing logo. If no logo exists, then a widget allowing the user to add a logo is displayed here.
2. **Name** – Update the existing community's name in this field.
3. **Introduction text (HTML)** – Update introductory text if already added or can add new text. One can utilize HTML tags to format the text or continue entering plain text content.
4. **Short Description** – Update the description of the community or add a fresh short description for the community.
5. **Copyright text (HTML)** – Update copyright-related information in this field. This is usually displayed at the foot of the community landing page. Fields marked with (HTML) support HTML tags-based formatting.
6. **News (HTML)** – Add/Update news specific to this community in the field. This is usually displayed with the heading 'News', underneath the community's introductory text, and above the list of collections and sub-communities.
7. **Action Button** – Clicking on the Save button will update the metadata information for the community.

Click on the 'Save' button to save the information updated in the 'Edit Community' tab. A success prompt will appear, confirming the successful edit of the community.



DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Indian freedom fight

## Indian freedom fight

Permanent URI for this community <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/2089>

Contents related with Indian freedom fight.

### News

India celebrates its independence day on 15th August 2021.

### Assign Roles

This tab allows authorized users to create a Community administrator role. Click on the “create” button to assign a community administrator role.

The roles available on this tab are explained below this illustration.

Home • Indian freedom fight • Edit Community

## Edit Community

Delete this community

Edit Metadata Assign Roles Curate Authorizations

### Administrators

Community administrators can create sub-communities or collections, and manage or assign management for those sub-communities or collections. In addition, they decide who can submit items to any sub-collections, edit item metadata (after submission), and add (map) existing items from other collections (subject to authorization).

None + Create

← Back

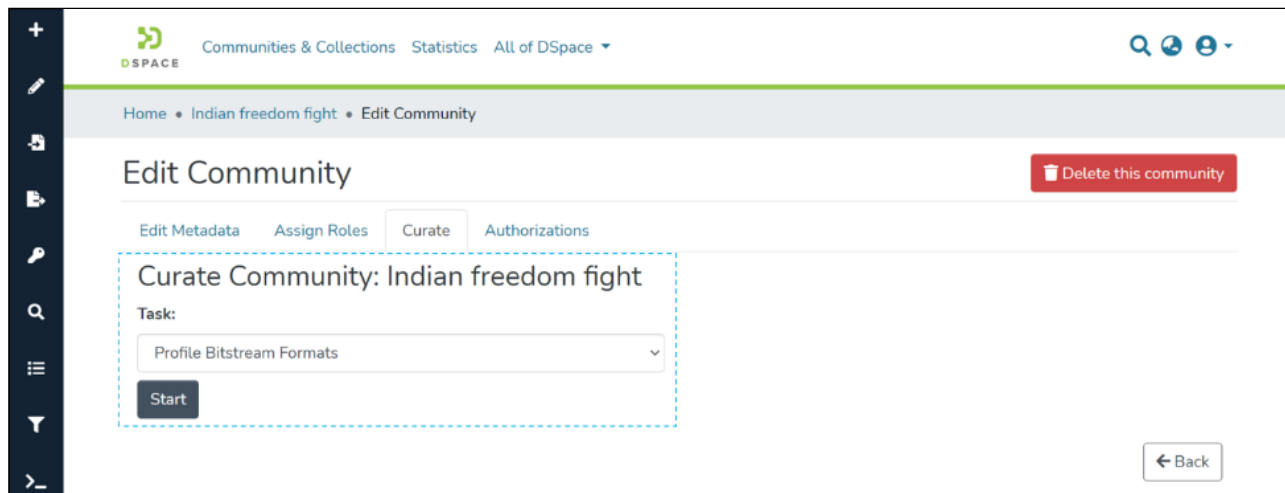
**Administrators** - Community administrators can create and manage sub-communities and collections. This user profile can also assign rights to edit item metadata and map existing items from other collections.

### Curate

This tab provides various workflows for curating items stored in the community. Below are standard flows, and there can be customized curation workflows as well

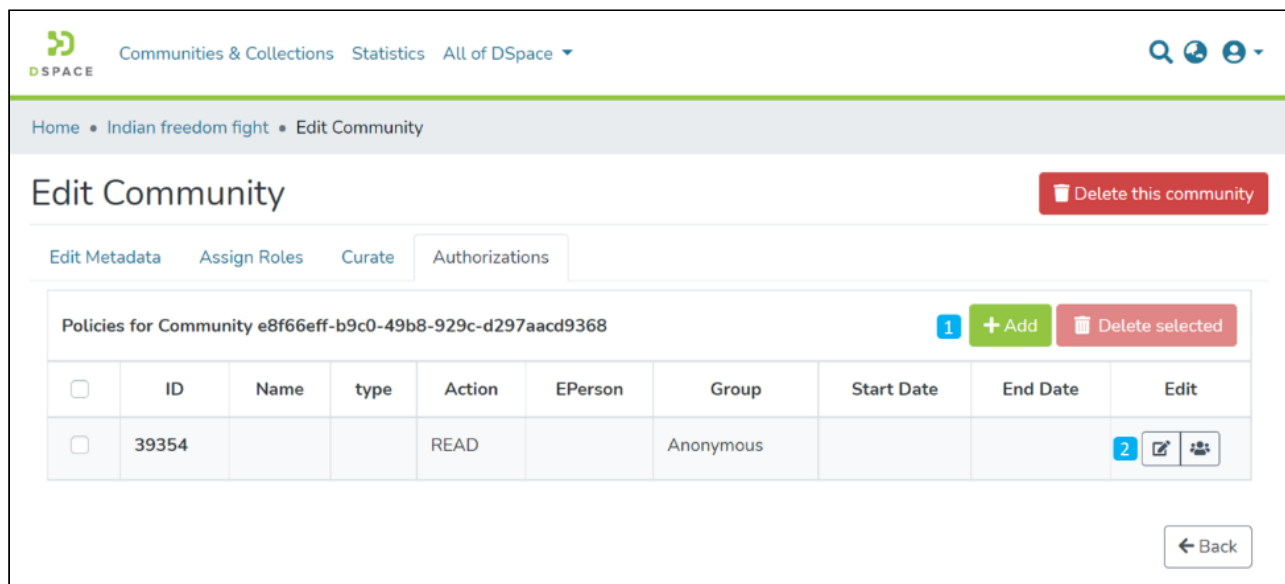
1. Profile bitstream formats
2. Check for Required Metadata
3. Check Links in Metadata

Users must select a workflow from the dropdown list and click the “Start” button to initiate the curation process.



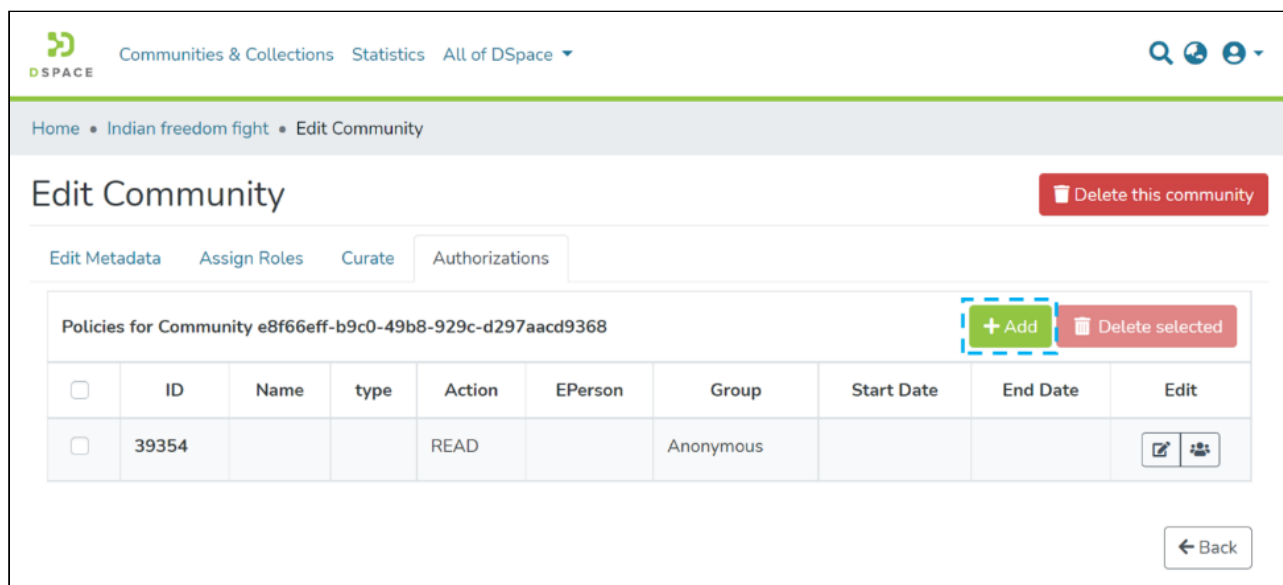
## Authorizations

Users can view and edit community resource policies defined for the community, in the Authorizations tab. Users can create policies in addition to the standard policies created from the Assign Roles tab. Following are the key actions in this tab.





1. Manage Policies
  - Click on the Add button to create a new resource policy or select policies from the table, see further detail below.
  - Alternatively, click on the Delete selected button for a batch deletion of the policies.
2. Edit policy and members in a policy – Click on the edit button to edit an individual policy or click on the group icon to edit the user group eg to add or remove individual ePersons.

Click on Add button to create a new Authorization policy



The screenshot shows the 'Edit Community' interface for the community 'Indian freedom fight'. The 'Authorizations' tab is active, displaying a table of policies for the community ID 'e8f66eff-b9c0-49b8-929c-d297aacd9368'. A '+ Add' button is highlighted with a dashed blue box, indicating where to click to create a new policy.

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	39354			READ		Anonymous			 

Users can enter the information to create the policy and click on the submit button. Please see the description of each field followed by the below screenshot.

Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace ▾

Home • Indian freedom fight • Edit Community

## Edit Community

Delete this community

Edit Metadata
Assign Roles
Curate
Authorizations

### Create new resource policy for Indian freedom fight

Name 1

Description 2

Select the policy type \* 3

Select the action type \* 4

Start Date 5 End Date

Start Date

End Date

The person or group that will be granted the permission 6

Search for a ePerson

Search for a group 7

Metadata 8 Search Browse All

Now showing 1 - 5 of 81

ID	Name	Action
392d83d3-2a75-46a8-a7cf-e43b8136f2fd	ABDOSLAM IL ABDLY	<span style="background-color: #007bff; color: white; padding: 2px 5px; border-radius: 3px;">9</span> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
335647b6-8a52-4ecb-a8c1-7ebabb199bda	Admin DSpace	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
1d68923d-46f7-4e11-ad12-254f1e35c7c3	ALEXANDRE MATE	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
98d406e1-111a-40d7-ae44-d4668d5831d2	Anhad Narad	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
db5830de-52f9-4311-aaa9-69f1be7b0ce6	anu radha	<input type="button" value="Select"/>

« 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 ... 17 »

10 Cancel
Save

← Back

1. **Name:** Enter the Policy name in this field.
2. **Description:** Enter the Policy description here for future reference and understanding of other users.
3. **Select the policy type:** The user can select one of the following policy classification types from the list
  1. TYPE SUBMISSION: a policy in place during the submission
  2. TYPE WORKFLOW: a policy in place during the approval workflow
  3. TYPE INHERITED: a policy that has been inherited from a container (the community)
  4. TYPE CUSTOM: a policy defined by the user during the submission or workflow phase
  - **Select the action type:** The user can select one of the following actions from the dropdown list. For example, select “READ” to assign read rights to the user or user group.:
    1. READ
    2. WRITE
    3. REMOVE
    4. ADMIN
    5. DELETE
    6. WITHDRAWN\_READ (disables item access)
    7. DEFAULT\_BITSTREAM\_READ
    8. DEFAULT\_ITEM\_READ
  - **Start date – end date:** The user can select the start date and end date of the period for which the policy will be active, should they want to apply this policy for a fixed period only. If the start date is left blank, the policy comes into effect immediately.
  - **The ePerson or group that will be granted the permission:** List of users/groups selected for granting permission under the policy
  - **Search for an ePerson / Search for a group:** Select ePerson or group to add
  - **Search field:** Enter keywords for searching the ePerson/Group
  - **ePerson/Group list:** Click on the select button against the user/group you want to add to the policy
  - **Submit/Cancel button:** Click on the Submit button to complete policy creation or click on the Cancel button to cancel the entire process.

Upon successfully creating the policy, you’ll see a confirmation prompt, and the user will be back on the Authorizations screen.

## 8.3 Content (Item) management

Documentation for repository managers.

- [Add item](#)(see page 942)
- [Delete item](#)(see page 953)
- [Edit Item](#)(see page 955)
  - [Authorizations \(Manage access to an item\)](#)(see page 958)
  - [Collection Mapper](#)(see page 966)
  - [Edit Bitstream](#)(see page 972)
  - [Edit Metadata](#)(see page 980)
  - [Edit Relationship](#)(see page 989)
  - [Make an Item Private](#)(see page 996)
  - [Move an Item](#)(see page 1001)
  - [Reinstate an item](#)(see page 1005)
  - [Versioned Item](#)(see page 1009)
  - [Withdraw an item](#)(see page 1015)
- [Embargo an item](#)(see page 1019)
- [Lease an item](#)(see page 1030)

## 8.3.1 Add item

- [Target Audience](#)(see page 942)
- [Overview](#)(see page 942)
- [Submission Form Highlights](#)(see page 943)
- [Item Submission Process](#)(see page 945)

### 8.3.1.1 Target Audience

Content Submitters

### 8.3.1.2 Overview

The item submission process lets authorized users deposit contents using metadata and bitstreams. It primarily consists of components.

1. Target collection where the item needs to be submitted
2. Submission form using which metadata and bitstreams related to the item are submitted
3. The submission form also helps in defining Access rights around an item

## Submission Form Highlights

### 1. Bitstream upload section

This section allows users to upload bitstream(s) by browsing or drag & drop mechanism.

### 2. Target Collection

It is a location where the item will be submitted.

### 3. General Metadata section

Users can define general or primary metadata about an item in this section.

### 4. Additional Metadata section

This section allows users to add secondary or additional metadata.

### 5. Bitstreams Management

Bitstreams uploaded by users list in this section. Using various options, they can further define these bitstreams or remove them from the attachment list.

### 6. Deposit License

Users need to accept the license in this section to submit the item to the repository.

### 7. Manage Item Submission

a. *Discard*: The user can discard the submission by clicking this button. Action will delete all information populated in the form permanently.

b. *Save*: This button helps save information in the submission form and helps resume information update should the process gets interrupted.

c. *Save for Later*: Save information in the MyDSpace section to update later.

d. *Deposit*: Click this button to complete the submission. The item will go to the next step as per the workflow defined for the collection.

The screenshot displays the DSpace submission form for a collection named "03 Revista Trite". The form is divided into several sections:

- Describe:** Contains fields for Author (with "Clear" and "Add" buttons), Title (with "Add" button), Other Titles (with "Add" button), Date of Issue (with year, month, and day dropdowns), and Publisher (with "Add" button).
- Series/Report No.:** Includes fields for Series and Report No. (with "Add" button).
- Identifiers:** Includes fields for ISSN and Identifiers (with "Add" button).
- Type:** A dropdown menu for selecting the type of content.
- Language:** A dropdown menu for selecting the language of the content.
- Subject Keywords:** A field for entering subject keywords.
- Abstract:** A large text area for entering the abstract.
- Sponsors:** A field for entering sponsor information.
- Description:** A field for entering a description.

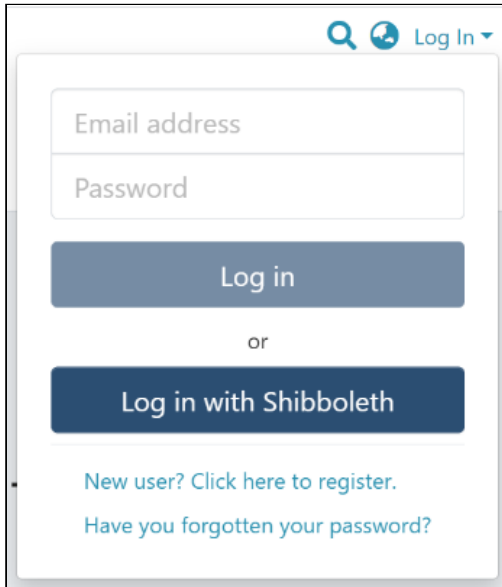
The **Upload Files** section shows two files being uploaded:

- instruction manual template 03.doc (506 KB)
- kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_generation\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf (1.63 MB)

At the bottom, the **Deposit License** section contains a detailed license notice and a checkbox for "I confirm the license above". At the very bottom, there are three buttons: "Discard", "Save", and "Save for later" (with a "Deposit" button partially visible).

### 8.3.1.3 Item Submission Process

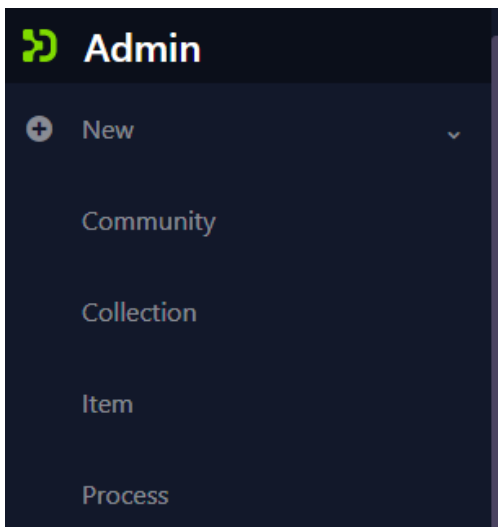
Step 1: Login using your credentials



The screenshot shows a login form with the following elements:

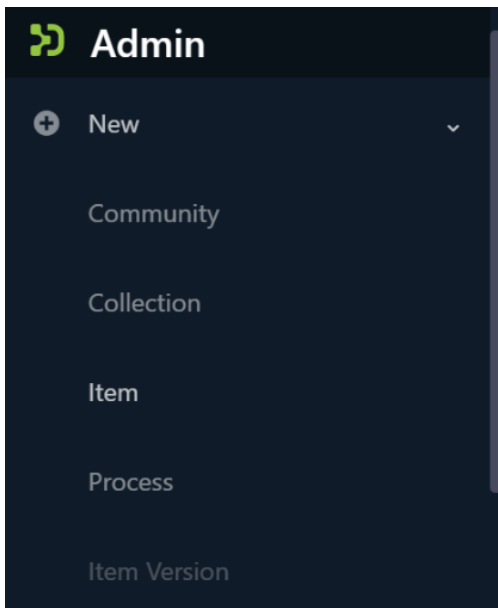
- Search and user icons in the top right corner, followed by a "Log In" link with a dropdown arrow.
- An input field labeled "Email address".
- An input field labeled "Password".
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue button labeled "Log in with Shibboleth".
- Two links at the bottom: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?".

Step 2: Roll over the cursor on the “+” sign

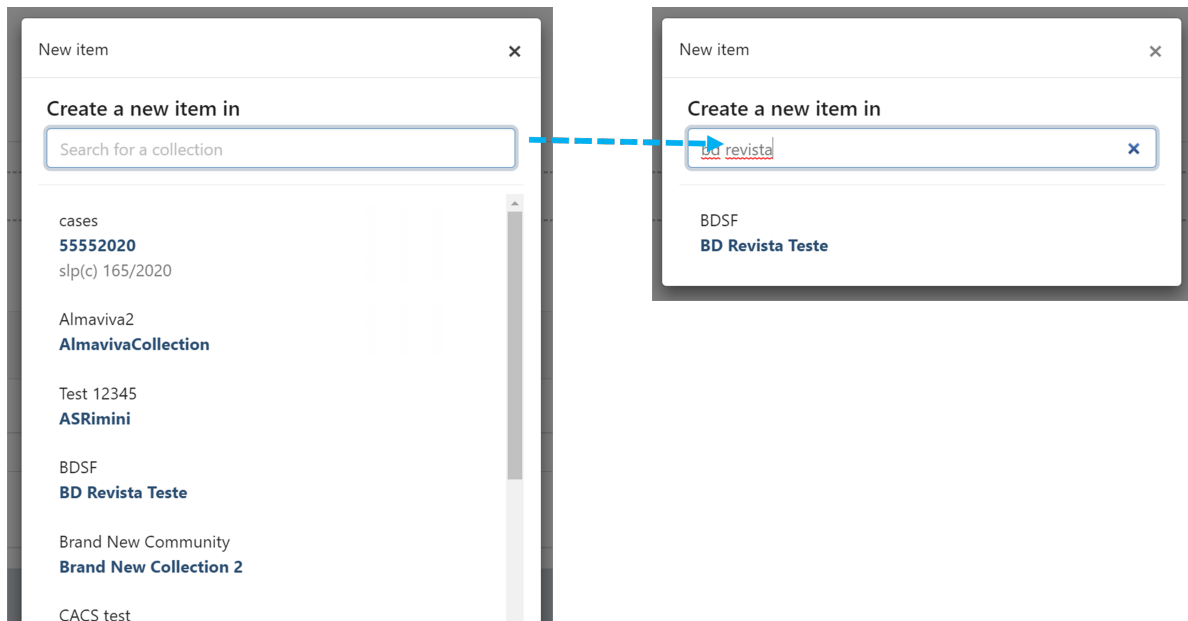


Step 3: Click on “New” and click on “item” for proceeding further in the Item addition process



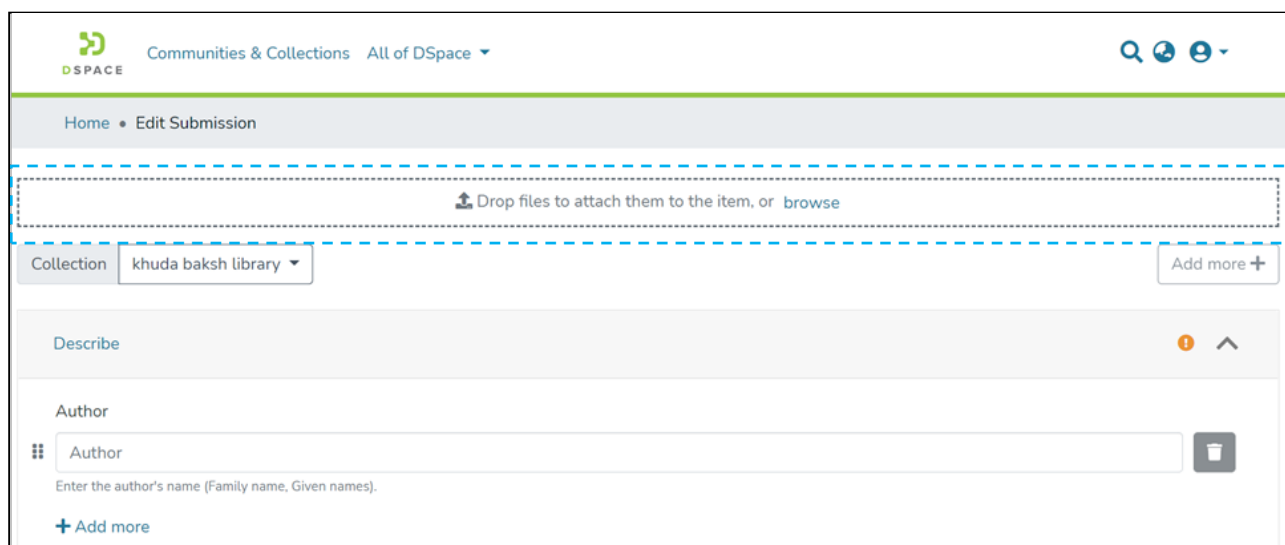


Step 4: A popup window with a collection list will appear. The user can select the target collection by typing its name or scrolling down the collection list. Then, click on the collection to initiate item submission.

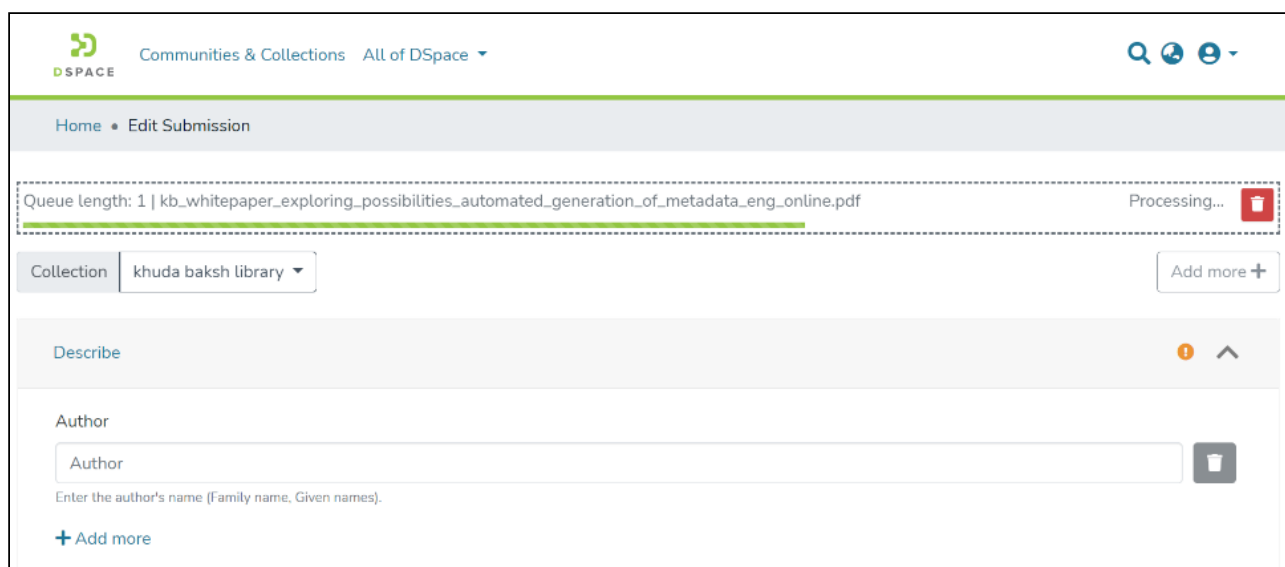


Step 5: Users will see the item submission form after selecting the target collection. The first step is to upload the attachment(s) in the item. In DSpace terminology, an attachment is known as a “bitstream”.

Click on the “browse” link to upload attachment(s). Users can upload multiple files by selecting them together or dragging in the space.



A progress bar showing bitstream upload progress will appear, as demonstrated in the illustration below. In addition, after a successful bitstream upload, a prompt confirming success or failure will appear.



### Bitstream upload in progress

The screenshot shows the DSpace submission interface. At the top left is the DSPACE logo and navigation links: "Communities & Collections" and "All of DSpace". A green notification box in the top right corner displays a checkmark and the text "Upload successful". Below the navigation is a breadcrumb trail: "Home • Edit Submission". A dashed box contains the instruction "Drop files to attach them to the item, or browse". Below this is a "Collection" dropdown menu set to "khuda baksh library" and an "Add more +" button. The "Describe" tab is active, indicated by an orange information icon and an upward arrow. The "Author" field is visible, containing the text "Author" and a trash icon. Below the field is the instruction "Enter the author's name (Family name, Given names)." and a "+ Add more" link.

### Bitstream Upload Successful

Step 6: After bitstream upload, the next step is to describe the item by adding metadata.

Metadata fields marked with “\*” are mandatory, and users need to populate information in these fields to complete the submission mandatorily. A few examples in the standard submission form are Author, Title, and Date of Issue.

This screenshot shows a closer view of the "Describe" section. The "Author" field is filled with "Author" and has a trash icon. Below it is the instruction "Enter the author's name (Family name, Given names)." and a "+ Add more" link. The "Title \*" field is highlighted with a blue arrow, indicating it is a mandatory field, and it contains the text "Title". Below it is the instruction "Enter the main title of the item.". The "Other Titles" field is also visible, containing "Other Titles" and a trash icon. Below it is the instruction "If the item has any alternative titles, please enter them here." and another "+ Add more" link.

Users will notice an alert mark at the top right of the “Describe” tab turning from Amber to green once mandatory fields have values. Below is an illustration showing the state of the “Describe” section having values in all mandatory fields.

Drop files to attach them to the item, or [browse](#)

Collection: khuda baksh library Add more +

**Describe** ✓ ^

**Author**

John Doe 🗑️

Enter the author's name (Family name, Given names).

[+ Add more](#)

**Title \***

Why engineer porous materials? 🗑️

Enter the main title of the item.

**Other Titles**

Other Titles 🗑️

Step 7: The user can further update bitstreams by clicking on Buttons appearing next to the bitstream title.

Collection: BD Revista Teste Add more +

**Upload files** ✓ ^

Here you will find all the files currently in the item. You can update the file metadata and access conditions or **upload additional files just dragging & dropping them everywhere in the page** ✕

No Thumbnail

kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_gene  
ration\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf (1.63 MB) 📄 ✎ 🗑️

kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_generation\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf

**Deposit license** ! ^

NOTE: PLACE YOUR OWN LICENSE HERE This sample license is provided for informational purposes only. NON-EXCLUSIVE DISTRIBUTION LICENSE By signing and submitting this license, you (the author(s) or copyright owner) grants to DSpace University (DSU) the non-exclusive right to reproduce, translate (as defined

Discard Save Save for later Deposit

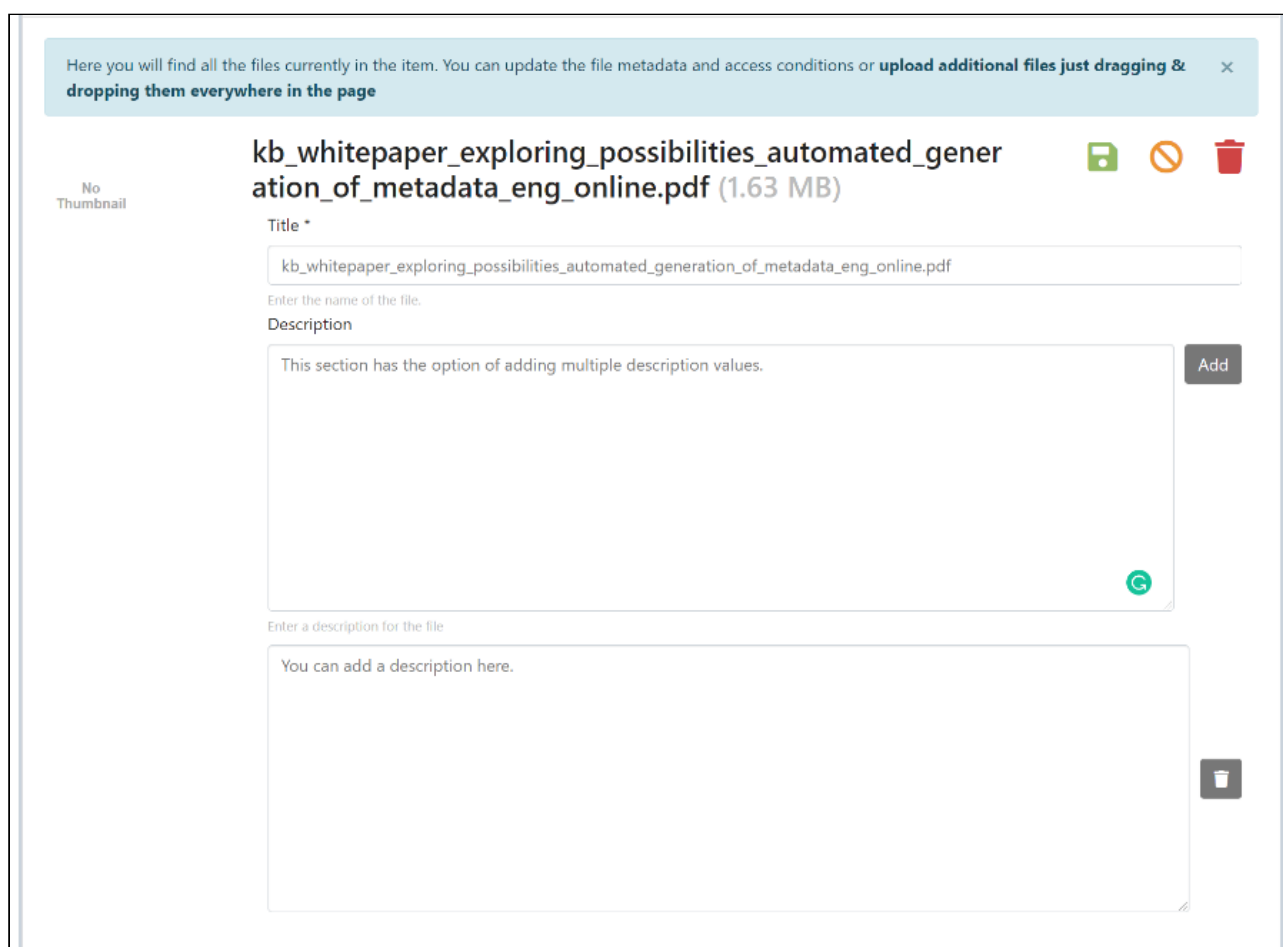
**Download:** Click this button to download bitstream on a local machine.

**Edit:** Update bitstream details and access rights using this button. More explanation is provided below.

**Delete:** Clicking this button will delete the bitstream from the submission form.

Step 8: By clicking the edit button next to the bitstream, users can update bitstream information, as explained below.

Update the bitstream title and add descriptions to describe the attachment further. Please refer to the below illustration demonstrating both functions.



The screenshot displays the DSpace interface for editing a bitstream. At the top, a light blue banner contains the text: "Here you will find all the files currently in the item. You can update the file metadata and access conditions or **upload additional files just dragging & dropping them everywhere in the page**". Below this, the file name "kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_generation\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf (1.63 MB)" is shown with icons for a folder, a prohibition sign, and a trash can. To the left of the file name, it says "No Thumbnail".

The "Title" field is a text input containing the same file name. Below it, a small instruction reads "Enter the name of the file." The "Description" section consists of a large text area with the placeholder text "This section has the option of adding multiple description values." and an "Add" button on the right. Below this, another instruction reads "Enter a description for the file." and a second text area with the placeholder "You can add a description here." and a trash can icon on the right.

Users can define access conditions for the bitstream by selecting the appropriate option from the dropdown list. These options are:

- **Open Access:** Select this option to make the bitstream available without any restriction.

Collection: BD Revista Teste

Access condition type: openaccess

Grant access from \*: From

Grant access until \*: Until

Group \*:

Buttons: Discard, Save, Save for later, Deposit

- Lease: This option is applicable when a user wants to keep bitstream accessible until a specific date in the future. The bitstream will not be available as open-access content after the defined date under the “Grant access until” option.

Collection: BD Revista Teste

Access condition type: lease

Grant access from \*: From

Grant access until \*: Until

Group \*:

Buttons: Discard, Save, Save for later, Deposit

- Embargo: In contrast to a lease, an embargo allow the user to keep bitstream access restricted until a future date. This date is defined in the “Grant access from” field. The bitstream will be available as open-access content to users after this date.

Collection: BD Revista Teste

Access condition type: embargo

Grant access from \*: From [calendar icon]

Grant access until \*: Until [calendar icon]

Group \*: [dropdown menu]

Buttons: Discard, Save, Save for later, Deposit

- Administrator: Select this option if the bitstream's access remains limited to administrators.

Collection: BD Revista Teste

Access condition type: administrator

Grant access from \*: From [calendar icon]

Grant access until \*: Until [calendar icon]

Group \*: [dropdown menu]

Buttons: Discard, Save, Save for later, Deposit

Step 9: Finally, users must click on the “I confirm the license above” checkbox to accept the deposit license and click on the “Deposit” button to complete the item submission.

Collection BD Revista Teste ▾
Add more +

Deposit license ✔ ▲

NOTE: PLACE YOUR OWN LICENSE HERE This sample license is provided for informational purposes only. NON-EXCLUSIVE DISTRIBUTION LICENSE By signing and submitting this license, you (the author(s) or copyright owner) grants to DSpace University (DSU) the non-exclusive right to reproduce, translate (as defined below), and/or distribute your submission (including the abstract) worldwide in print and electronic format and in any medium, including but not limited to audio or video. You agree that DSU may, without changing the content, translate the submission to any medium or format for the purpose of preservation. You also agree that DSU may keep more than one copy of this submission for purposes of security, back-up and preservation. You represent that the submission is your original work, and that you have the right to grant the rights contained in this license. You also represent that your submission does not, to the best of your knowledge, infringe upon anyone's copyright. If the submission contains material for which you do not hold copyright, you represent that you have obtained the unrestricted permission of the copyright owner to grant DSU the rights required by this license, and that such third-party owned material is clearly identified and acknowledged within the text or content of the submission. IF THE SUBMISSION IS BASED UPON WORK THAT HAS BEEN SPONSORED OR SUPPORTED BY AN AGENCY OR ORGANIZATION OTHER THAN DSU, YOU REPRESENT THAT YOU HAVE FULFILLED ANY RIGHT OF REVIEW OR OTHER OBLIGATIONS REQUIRED BY SUCH CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT. DSU will clearly identify your name(s) as the author(s) or owner(s) of the submission, and will not make any alteration, other than as allowed by this license, to your submission.

I confirm the license above

Discard
Save
Save for later
Deposit

## 8.3.2 Delete item

- [Target Audience](#)(see page 953)
- [Process Overview](#)(see page 953)
- [Item Delete Process](#)(see page 953)

### 8.3.2.1 Target Audience

Content Submitters

Community Administrators

System Administrators

### 8.3.2.2 Process Overview

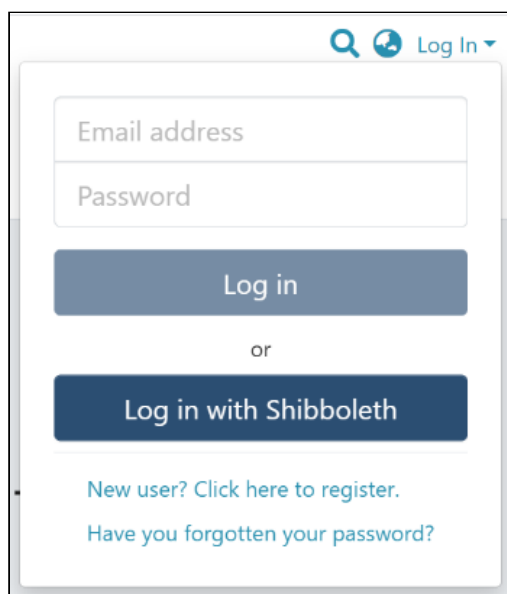
As the name suggests, the Permanently Delete option is exercised when the authorized user(s) wants to permanently delete any item (Metadata + bitstreams) from the repository.

Apart from permanently deleting an item, options like “Withdraw item from repository” and “Make item Private” can temporarily help disable the content access.

### 8.3.2.3 Item Delete Process

Step 1: Login using your credentials





The image shows a login form with the following elements:

- Search and user icons with a "Log In" dropdown menu.
- An "Email address" input field.
- A "Password" input field.
- A blue "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A dark blue "Log in with Shibboleth" button.
- Two links: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?"

Step 2: Go to the target Item using a convenient method i.e.

1. Using search & filters options
2. Browsing through Communities & Collections
3. Browsing using Metadata elements listed under the Browse menu

Step 3: Click on the “Edit” button as highlighted on the screen below. This button will appear to the user having edit rights on the target item.



The image shows a DSpace item page for "95% of existing ocean climates could disappear by 2100". The breadcrumb trail is "Home • my\_community • my\_collection2 • 95% of existing ocean climates could disappear by 2100". The page title is "95% of existing ocean climates could disappear by 2100". There is a thumbnail image of a building. The "Files" section lists two files: "95% of existing ocean climates could disappear by 2100.txt (7.53 KB)" and "c28143a7-0e7f-4100-ad26-f82358405841.jpg (478.6 KB)". The "Abstract" and "Description" sections contain text about Canada's oceans and climate change. In the top right corner, there are two buttons: a question mark icon and an edit icon (pencil), which is highlighted with a red dashed box.

Step 4: Click the “Permanently Delete” Button to delete the item.

Step 5: Click on the Delete button on the confirmation screen. Should you want to continue with deletion, click on cancel to cancel the Permanent deletion of the item from DSpace.

### 8.3.3 Edit Item

- [Audience](#)(see page 955)
- [Edit Item Overview](#)(see page 955)
  - [Status tab](#)(see page 955)
  - [Bitstreams tab](#)(see page 956)
  - [Metadata tab](#)(see page 956)
  - [Relationships tab](#)(see page 957)
  - [Version History Tab](#)(see page 957)

### 8.3.3.1 Audience

Content Submitters

Community Administrators

System Administrators

### 8.3.3.2 Edit Item Overview

The Edit Item process enables authorized users to edit various properties of items deposited in DSpace. Edit item serves the following purposes, each contained in different tabs within the Edit Item form.

Status tab

[Home](#) / [Univ X Top](#) / [Psychology](#) / [Psychology Colloquia](#) / [Alzheimer's Disease](#) / [Edit Item](#)

## Edit Item

Status
Bitstreams
Metadata
Relationships
Version History
Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID:	03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da
Handle:	10673/1285
Last Modified:	2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000
Item Page:	<a href="/items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da">/items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da</a>

Edit item's authorization policies	<input type="button" value="Authorizations..."/>
Manage mapped collections	<input type="button" value="Mapped collections"/>
Withdraw item from the repository	<input type="button" value="Withdraw..."/>
Make item private	<input type="button" value="Make it private..."/>
Completely expunge item	<input type="button" value="Permanently delete"/>
Move item to another collection	<input type="button" value="Move..."/>

Update authorization policies

Managing mapped collections

Update item status (Withdrawn/Private/Expunge)

Move item to another collection









Bitstreams tab(see page 972)

Home / Univ X Top / Psychology / Psychology Colloquia / Alzheimer's Disease / Edit Item

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Upload Discard Save

Name	Description	Format	Actions
<b>BUNDLE: LICENSE</b>			
license.txt		License	   
<b>BUNDLE: ORIGINAL</b>			
lcco_d.pdf		Adobe PDF	   

Cancel Discard Save

Add or remove licenses or other bitstreams (i.e. files) attached to item






















Edit metadata associated with the bitstreams, including filename, file format and file description

Metadata tab(see page 980)

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Discard Save

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Authorized, Not		  
dc.date.accessioned	2020-05-19T12:02:18Z		  
dc.date.available	2020-05-19T12:02:18Z		  
dc.date.issued	2015-05-19		  
dc.description	desc		  
dc.description.abstract	Abstract		  
dc.description.provenance	Made available in DSpace on 2020-05-19T12:02:18Z (GMT). No. of bitstreams: 1 lcco_d.pdf: 596276 bytes, checksum: a67e2e0b94428b3d-c49-c96a2bfd458b (MD5) Previous issue date:	en	  

Add or delete metadata fields (i.e. elements added to Item) or edit values in existing fields. See further detail below.

**Relationships tab**(see page 989)

Status
Bitstreams
Metadata
Relationships
Version History
Collection Mapper

X Discard
Save

**Publications** + Add

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

Publication

Development of an open technology sensor suite for assisted living: a student-led research project  
(Royal Society Publishing, 17/06/16) Manton, James ; Bonner, Oliver ; Amjad, Omar A ; Mair, Philip ; Miele, Isabella ; Wang

X
↻

**Research Projects** + Add

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

Research Project

EP/L015889/1

X
↻

Add or delete relationships with other items or editing existing relationship with items. See further details below.

**Version History Tab**

Status
Bitstreams
Metadata
Relationships
Version History
Collection Mapper

Editing or adding new versions is not yet possible in this user interface.

There are no other versions for this item yet.

Cancel

**Create and manage item versions in DSpace.**

### 8.3.3.3 Authorizations (Manage access to an item)

- [Overview](#)(see page 958)
- [Add Authorization Policy](#)(see page 960)
- [Manage Policy](#)(see page 962)
- [Delete Policy](#)(see page 965)

#### Overview

Step 1: Login using your credentials

Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search an item
2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click the "Edit" button on the item title's right-hand side.

Step 3: Click the "Authorizations" button under the "Status" tab to manage the Item's authorization policies.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da  
 Handle: 10673/1285  
 Last Modified: 2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000  
 Item Page: /items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da

Edit item's authorization policies [Authorizations...](#)

Manage mapped collections [Mapped collections](#)

Withdraw item from the repository [Withdraw...](#)

Make item private [Make it private...](#)

Completely expunge item [Permanently delete](#)

Move item to another collection [Move...](#)

[Cancel](#)

Users can create different policies for both Item and bitstreams. These are:

1. Managing ADD/REMOVE/READ/WRITE policies for an item
2. Managing READ/WRITE policies for a bitstream

### Add Authorization Policy

Step 1: Click the "Add" button to create a new resource policy for the Item.

The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for editing an item. The breadcrumb trail is: Home / Publications / Publications 2 / A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes / Edit Item. A blue informational box explains that items are containers of bundles, and bundles are containers of bitstreams, with different policy types for each. Below this is a table titled 'Policies for Item e3fd4d54-5c9b-48e2-b004-f728efaea82e'. The table has columns for ID, Name, type, Action, EPerson, Group, Start Date, End Date, and Edit. One policy is listed with ID 3431, type TYPE\_INHERITED, and Action READ. The '+ Add' button is highlighted with a dashed blue box.

ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/> 3431		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

Step 2: Users can populate information on the "Create new resource policy" page about the policy and click on the "submit" button. Please see the description of each field followed by the below screenshot.

Home / Publications / Publications 2 / A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes / Edit Item

## Create new resource policy for A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes

Name **1**

Description **2**

Select the policy type \* **3**

Select the action type \* **4**

Start Date **5** End Date

Start Date   End Date

The person or group that will be granted the permission **6**

**7**

Metadata    **8**

Now showing 1 - 5 of 129

ID	Name	Action
7cfb9fdd-dc80-48d1-97c5-cdab1b0a3d82	a a	<b>9</b> <input type="button" value="Select"/>
629ab955-2030-4714-a58c-f81e5064cacc	Adeena M K	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
e7cd0aae-ed4a-40a4-8b05-21d9e799a360	Alan Salgado	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
26f1cfe4-3927-4166-9e10-64cae16f30ca	Alejandra Tero	<input type="button" value="Select"/>
babbc343-e603-4428-be4b-062f8d9a6007	Alessandra Bianchi	<input type="button" value="Select"/>

« **1** 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 ... 26 »

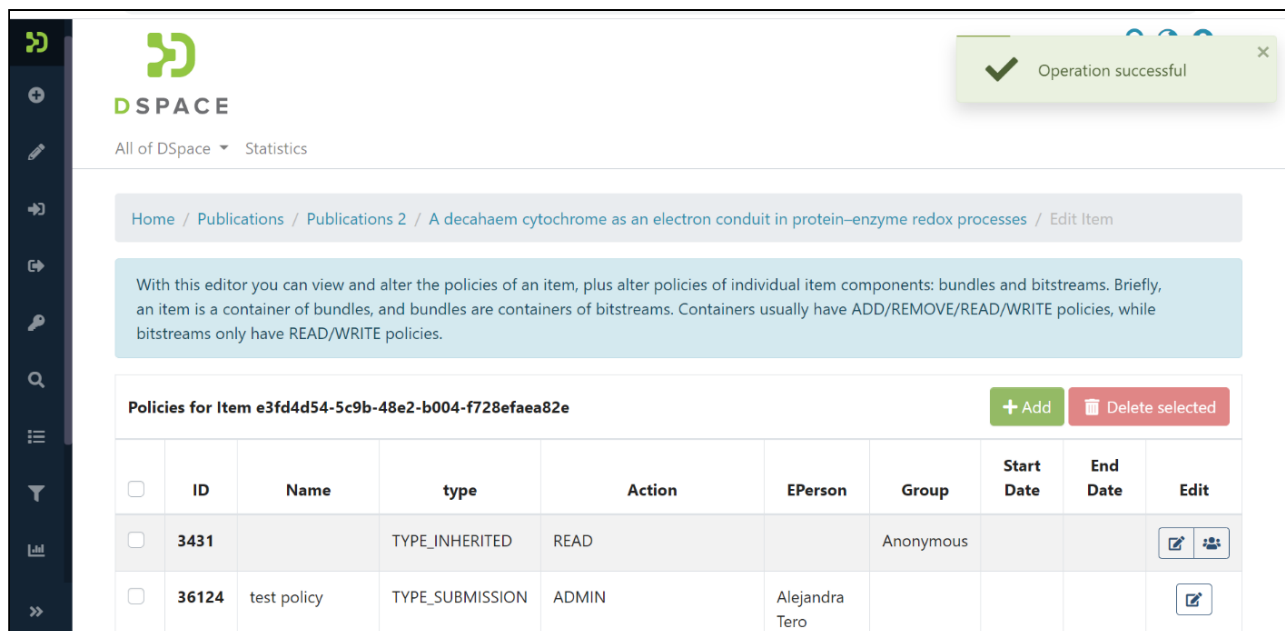
**10**

- Name:** Enter Policy name.
- Description:** Enter the Policy description for future reference and understanding of other users.






3. **Select the policy type:** The user can select one of the following policy types:
  - a. TYPE\_SUBMISSION: a policy in place during the submission
  - b. TYPE\_WORKFLOW: a policy in place during the approval workflow
  - c. TYPE\_INHERITED: a policy that has been inherited from a container (the collection)
  - d. TYPE\_CUSTOM: a policy defined by the user during the submission or workflow phase
  - e. null: if the information is not available
4. **Select the action type:** The user can select one of the following actions from the drop-down list:
  - a. READ
  - b. WRITE
  - c. ADD
  - d. REMOVE
  - e. ADMIN
  - f. DELETE
  - g. WITHDRAWN\_READ
  - h. DEFAULT\_BITSTREAM\_READ
  - i. DEFAULT\_ITEM\_READ
5. **Start date – end date:** The user can select a start date and end date for using the policy, should they want to apply it for a fixed period.
6. **The eperson or group granted the permission is the list of users/groups** granted authorization under the policy.
7. **Search for an ePerson / Search for a group:** Click on the "ePerson" or "group" to search for the entity.
8. **Search field:** Enter keywords for searching the ePerson/Group.
9. **ePerson/Group list:** Click on the select button against the user/group you want to add to the policy
10. **Submit/Cancel button:** Click on the "Submit" button to complete policy creation or click on the Cancel button to cancel the entire process.

As shown below, users will see a success prompt upon the policy creation and be back on the Manage Policies screen.



The screenshot shows the DSpace interface with a success message at the top right: "Operation successful". Below the message, the breadcrumb trail is: Home / Publications / Publications 2 / A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes / Edit Item. A blue informational box states: "With this editor you can view and alter the policies of an item, plus alter policies of individual item components: bundles and bitstreams. Briefly, an item is a container of bundles, and bundles are containers of bitstreams. Containers usually have ADD/REMOVE/READ/WRITE policies, while bitstreams only have READ/WRITE policies." Below this is a table titled "Policies for Item e3fd4d54-5c9b-48e2-b004-f728efaea82e". The table has columns for ID, Name, type, Action, EPerson, Group, Start Date, End Date, and Edit. There are two rows of policies listed.



<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	3431		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			 
<input type="checkbox"/>	36124	test policy	TYPE_SUBMISSION	ADMIN	Alejandra Tero				

## Manage Policy

Step 1: Click on the Edit policy icon appearing against each policy to update it.

The user group button next to the Edit policy icon will take users to the user group management. Please refer concerned section for more details.

The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for editing item policies. The breadcrumb trail is: Home / Publications / Publications 2 / A decahaem cytochrome as an electron conduit in protein–enzyme redox processes / Edit Item. A light blue informational box states: "With this editor you can view and alter the policies of an item, plus alter policies of individual item components: bundles and bitstreams. Briefly, an item is a container of bundles, and bundles are containers of bitstreams. Containers usually have ADD/REMOVE/READ/WRITE policies, while bitstreams only have READ/WRITE policies." Below this is a table titled "Policies for Item e3fd4d54-5c9b-48e2-b004-f728efaea82e". The table has columns: ID, Name, type, Action, EPerson, Group, Start Date, End Date, and Edit. A single row is visible with ID 3431, type TYPE\_INHERITED, Action READ, and Group Anonymous. The 'Edit' column for this row contains a pencil icon and a user group icon, which is highlighted with a dashed blue box. Above the table are buttons for "+ Add" and "Delete selected".

	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	3431		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			 

Step 2: Update policy information on the "Edit resource policy" page and click on the "Submit" button. Please see the description of each field appearing on the "Edit resource policy" page after the screenshot.

Home / Publications / Publications 2 / Room-temperature spin-orbit torque in NiMnSb / Edit Item

## Edit resource policy 3299

Name **1**

Description **2**

Select the policy type \* **3**

Select the action type \* **4**

Start Date **5** End Date

The eperson or group that will be granted the permission **6**

Cancel Submit

1. **Name:** Enter Policy name.
2. **Description:** Enter the Policy description for future reference and understanding of other users.
3. **Select the policy type:** The user can select one of the following policy types:
  - a. TYPE\_SUBMISSION: a policy in place during the submission
  - b. TYPE\_WORKFLOW: a policy in place during the approval workflow
  - c. TYPE\_INHERITED: a policy that has been inherited from a container (the collection)
  - d. TYPE\_CUSTOM: a policy defined by the user during the submission or workflow phase
  - e. null: if the information is not available
4. **Select the action type:** The user can select one of the following actions from the drop-down list:
  - a. READ
  - b. WRITE
  - c. ADD
  - d. REMOVE
  - e. ADMIN
  - f. DELETE
  - g. WITHDRAWN\_READ
  - h. DEFAULT\_BITSTREAM\_READ
  - i. DEFAULT\_ITEM\_READ
5. **Start date – end date:** The user can select a start date and end date for using the policy, should they want to apply it for a fixed period.

6. **The eperson or group granted the permission is the** list of users/groups granted authorization under the policy.
7. **Search for an ePerson / Search for a group:** Click on the "ePerson" or "group" to search for the entity.
8. **Search field:** Enter keywords for searching the ePerson/Group.
9. **ePerson/Group list:** Click on the select button against the user/group you want to add to the policy
10. **Submit/Cancel button:** Click on the "Submit" button to complete policy creation or click on the Cancel button to cancel the entire process.

As shown below, users will see a success prompt upon the policy creation and be back on the Manage Policies screen.

Home / Publications / Publications 2 / Room-temperature spin-orbit torque in NiMnSb / Edit Item

With this editor you can view and alter the policies of an item, plus alter policies of individual item components: bundles and bitstreams. Briefly, an item is a container of bundles, and bundles are containers of bitstreams. Containers usually have ADD/REMOVE/READ/WRITE policies, while bitstreams only have READ/WRITE policies.

**Policies for Item 2d48f798-857a-48aa-938a-e64648652be5** + Add Delete selected

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	3299		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	36214	test policy	TYPE_SUBMISSION	WRITE	Alejandra Tero				

### Delete Policy

Step 1: Click on the check box on the left-hand side of each policy, and the "Delete Selected" button will be activated.

DSpace interface showing the 'Policies for Item' table. The selected policy is:

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	3299		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	36214	test policy	TYPE_SUBMISSION	WRITE	Alejandra Tero				

Step 2: Click the "Delete selected" button to delete the policy. Please note that deleted policy is irrecoverable. You'll see success prompt upon deletion of the selected policy.

DSpace interface showing the 'Policies for Item' table after deletion. A success message is displayed: **Operation successful**. The selected policy is:

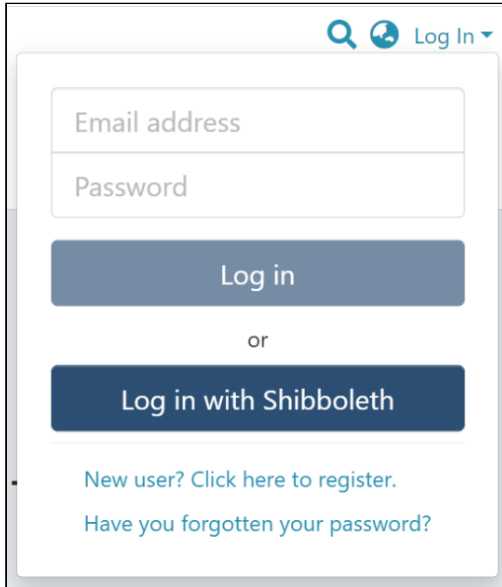
<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	3431		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	36124	test policy	TYPE_SUBMISSION	ADMIN	Alejandra Tero				

### 8.3.3.4 Collection Mapper

- [Manage mapped items to collections](#)(see page 966)
- [Manage Mapped Collections](#)(see page 968)
- [Map new collections](#)(see page 970)

## Manage mapped items to collections

### Step 1: Login using your credentials

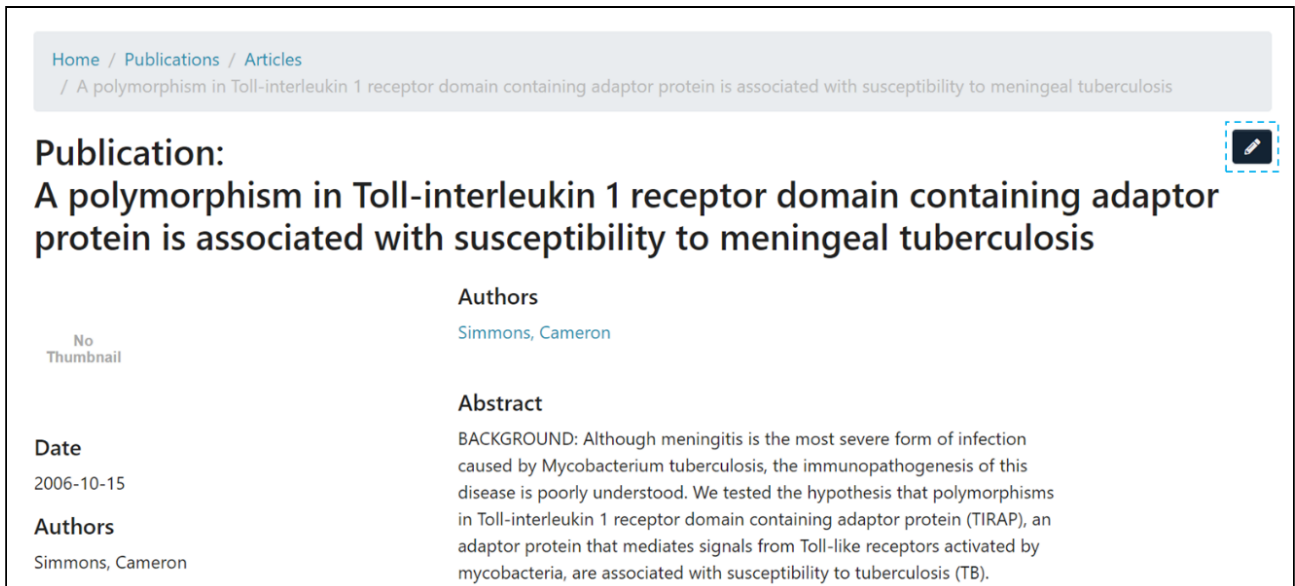


### Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search an item
2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click the "Edit" button on the item title's right-hand side.



### Step 3: Click the "Collection Mapper" tab to move to the section.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History **Collection Mapper**

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da  
Handle: 10673/1285  
Last Modified: 2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000  
Item Page: </items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da>

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository

Make item private

Completely expunge item

Move item to another collection

*Users can perform multiple functions in the Collection Mapper tab. These are:*

1. Manage existing collections mapped to the Item
2. Map fresh collections to the Item

### Manage Mapped Collections

Step 1: If you want to delete an existing collection mapped with the Item, click the checkbox on the left of the collection name to select it.

Home / Publications / Articles  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis  
 / Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

	Title
<input type="checkbox"/>	Rapid DSpace

Cancel Remove item's mapping for selected collections

Cancel

The "Remove item's mapping for selected collections" button will activate upon selecting the collection.

**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "Alzheimer's Disease"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

	Title
<input type="checkbox"/>	Rapid DSpace

Cancel Remove item's mapping for selected collections

Cancel

Step 2: Click on "Remove item's mapping for selected collections" to unmap selected collection(s) or click "Cancel" to cancel the operation.



Home / Publications / Articles  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis  
 / Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

	Title
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Rapid DSpace

Cancel Remove item's mapping for selected collections

Cancel

A prompt confirming successful unmapping of the collection will appear, and the selected collection will disappear from the list in the "Browse mapped collections" tab.

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

No collections to show

Cancel Remove item's mapping for selected collections

Cancel

✓ **Removal of mapping completed**  
 Successfully removed mapping of item to 1 collections.

#### Map new collections

Step 1: Click on the "Map new collections" tab to map a fresh collection with the Item.

Home / Publications / Articles  
/ A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis  
/ Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

Please enter a query to search

Cancel

Step 2: Enter the name of the collection you want to map with this Item and click on the “Search” button.

Home / Publications / Articles  
/ A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis  
/ Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

Please enter a query to search

Cancel

Step 3: Click the checkbox on the left of target collections to select them. Click the “Map item to selected collections” button to complete mapping, or use the “Cancel” button to cancel the operation.

Home / Publications / Articles  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis  
 / Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

Browse mapped collections Map new collections

rapid dspace Search


Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

	Title
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Rapid DSpace

Cancel Map item to selected collections

Cancel

A success prompt confirming collection mapping will appear. The selected collection will appear under the “Browse mapped collections” tab.



All of DSpace ▾ Statistics

**Mapping completed**  
 Successfully mapped item to 1 collections.

Home / Publications / Articles  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis  
 / Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

### Item Mapper - Map Item to Collections

Item: "A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis"

This is the item mapper tool that allows administrators to map this item to other collections. You can search for collections and map them, or browse the list of collections the item is currently mapped to.

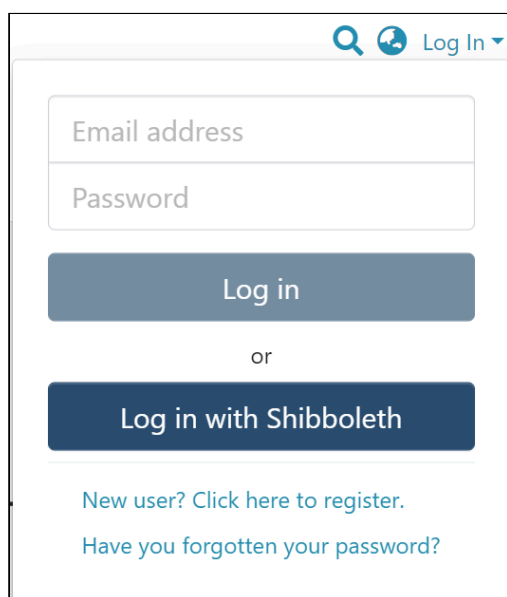
Browse mapped collections Map new collections

### 8.3.3.5 Edit Bitstream

- [Edit Bitstream Process](#)(see page 972)
- [Add a Bitstream or Bundle in an item](#)(see page 975)
- [Edit a Bitstream or Bundle in an item](#)(see page 978)

#### Edit Bitstream Process

##### Step 1: Login using your credentials

A screenshot of a web login form. At the top right, there is a search icon, a globe icon, and a 'Log In' dropdown menu. Below this are two input fields: 'Email address' and 'Password'. A blue 'Log in' button is positioned below the password field. Underneath the button is the word 'or'. Below that is a dark blue button labeled 'Log in with Shibboleth'. At the bottom of the form, there are two links: 'New user? Click here to register.' and 'Have you forgotten your password?'.

##### Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search for an item
2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button appearing on the right-hand side of the item title.

Home / Publications / Articles  
/ A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

**Publication:**  
**A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis**

No Thumbnail

**Authors**  
Simmons, Cameron

**Abstract**  
BACKGROUND: Although meningitis is the most severe form of infection caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis, the immunopathogenesis of this disease is poorly understood. We tested the hypothesis that polymorphisms in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein (TIRAP), an adaptor protein that mediates signals from Toll-like receptors activated by mycobacteria, are associated with susceptibility to tuberculosis (TB).

**Date**  
2006-10-15

**Authors**  
Simmons, Cameron

Step 3: Click on the “Bitstreams” tab to edit the metadata.

**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da  
Handle: 10673/1285  
Last Modified: 2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000  
Item Page: </items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da>

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository

Make item private

Completely expunge item

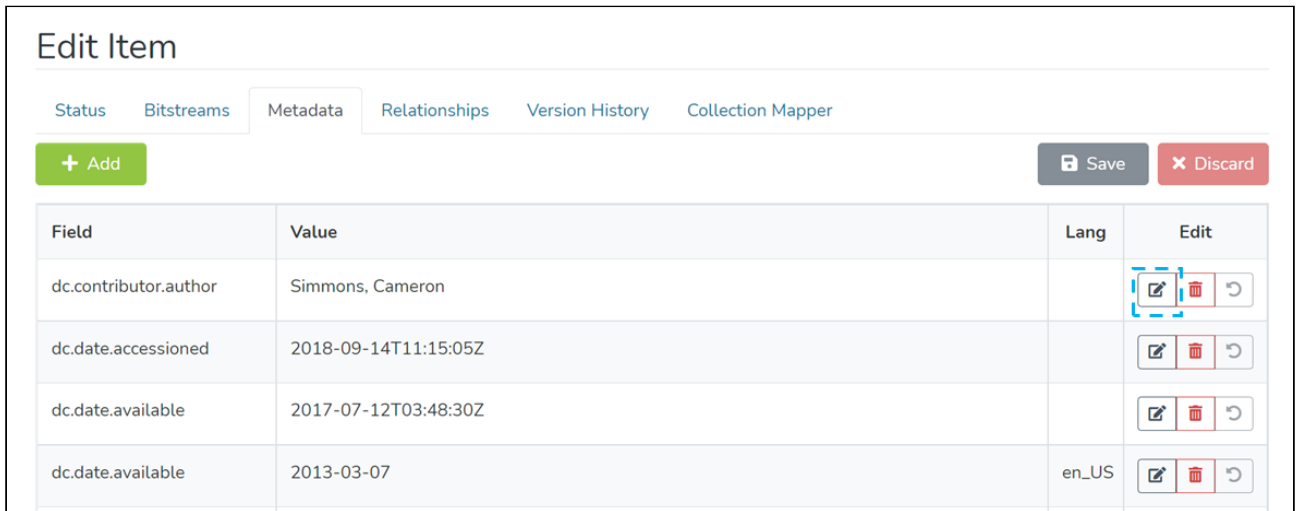
Move item to another collection

Users can perform multiple functions in the bitstream tab. These are:

1. Adding a bitstream or bundle in an item
2. Updating or deleting an existing bundle in an item
3. Update/delete/add bitstream(s) in an existing bundle

Add a Bitstream or Bundle in an item













Step 1: Click on the “Upload” button to upload a bitstream in existing bundles or create a new bundle to add a bitstream.



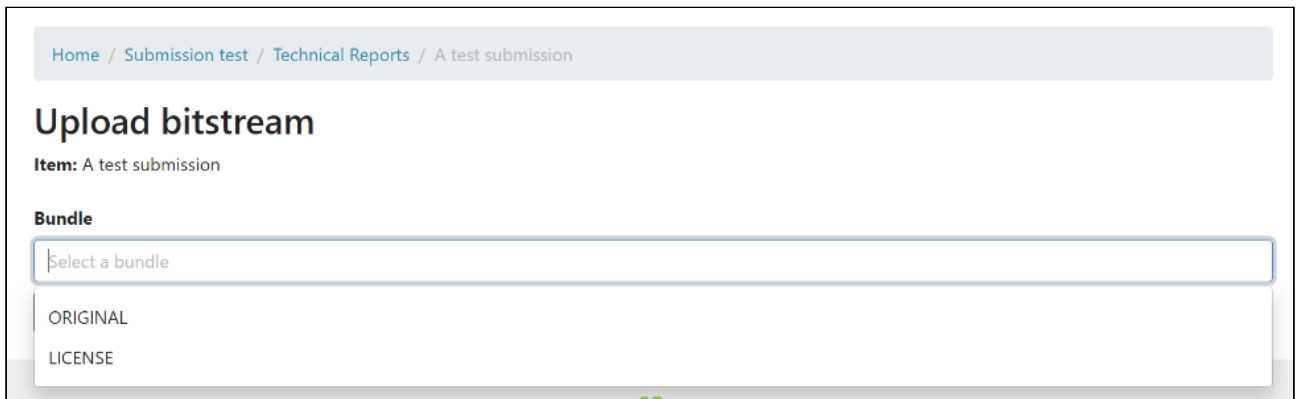
**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Simmons, Cameron		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-09-14T11:15:05Z		  
dc.date.available	2017-07-12T03:48:30Z		  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  

Step 2: Enter the bundle name or select existing names appearing in the dropdown list.



Home / Submission test / Technical Reports / A test submission

## Upload bitstream

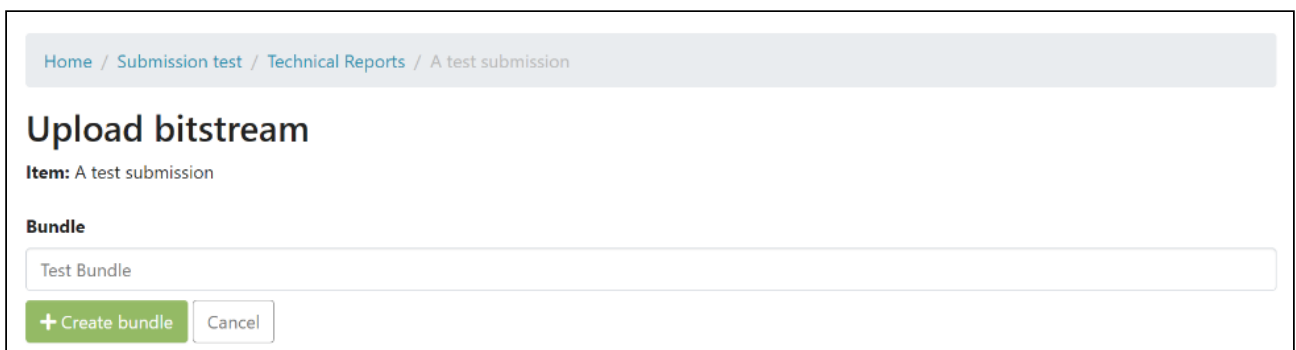
Item: A test submission

**Bundle**

Select a bundle

- ORIGINAL
- LICENSE

Step 3: Click on the “Create bundle” button to create a bundle or click on “Cancel” to cancel the operation.



Home / Submission test / Technical Reports / A test submission

## Upload bitstream

Item: A test submission

**Bundle**

Test Bundle

+ Create bundle Cancel

Step 4: Drag and drop the bitstream(s) you want to attach to the bundle, or you can click on the “browse” link appearing in the file upload section.

Home / Submission test / Technical Reports / A test submission

## Upload bitstream

Item: A test submission

**Bundle**

Test Bundle

Drop a file to upload , or [browse](#)

Cancel

Step 5: After a successful bitstream(s) upload, the user can add more details about the bitstream on the next screen. Click on the “Save” button at the bottom of the page to save details, or click the “Cancel” button to discard updates.

Below is the description of various fields appearing on this page

1. **Primary bitstream:** Click on this button to make the attached bitstream the primary bitstream in the Item. Thumbnail generated for the Item will be the first image of the primary bitstream.
2. The default value appearing in this field is the attachment’s filename. However, users can replace it with the value of their choice.
3. **Description:** Users add a description of the attachment in this field.
4. **Embargo until date:** Users can select a future date to restrict public access to the attachment. Additionally, users can grant access to a specific set of users by selecting user groups.
5. **Selected format:** If the file extension of the uploaded attachment exists in the DSpace’s bitstream registry, the user will see the registered value for extension in this field. Users can change the value by selecting another one using the dropdown.

DSpace logo and navigation icons at the top right.

All of DSpace ▾

**08.12027.pdf (21.01 MB)**

No Thumbnail

1  Primary bitstream

2

3

Embargo until specific date

4

Selected Format

5

Cancel

After clicking the “Save” button, the user will be redirected to the bitstream tab. A prompt confirming success or failure will appear.

DSpace logo and navigation icons at the top right.

All of DSpace ▾ Statistics

Home / Submission test / Technical Reports / A test submission / Edit Item

**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Loading bitstreams...

• • •

**Bitstream saved**  
Your changes to this bitstream were saved.



## Edit a Bitstream or Bundle in an item

Step 1: Click on a bitstream and drag it above or below another bitstream(s) in the bundle to change the bitstream's sequence.

Home / Publications / Books / Pestering Humans While They Are Working: An Orange Cat's Tale / Edit Item

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Upload Discard Save

Name	Description	Format	Actions
<b>BUNDLE: ORIGINAL</b>			
61966689567_718AD104-5E41-412F-9704-8E7ADBBA52B.jpeg		JPEG	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]
IMG_0025.jpeg		JPEG	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]
<b>BUNDLE: LICENSE</b>			
license.txt		License	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]

Step 2: Apart from adjusting the bitstream's sequence in a bundle, below are other options available:

1. **Download Bitstream:** Click on this button to download the attachment on the local device.
2. **Edit Bitstream:** Click on the "Edit bitstream" button to edit details. More details are given in the following steps.
3. **Delete Bitstream:** Click on the Delete Bitstream button to delete bitstream from the bundle.

Upload Discard Save

Name	Description	Format	Actions
<b>BUNDLE: ORIGINAL</b>			
61966689567_718AD104-5E41-412F-9704-8E7ADBBA52B.jpeg		JPEG	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]
IMG_0025.jpeg		JPEG	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]
<b>BUNDLE: LICENSE</b>			
license.txt		License	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]

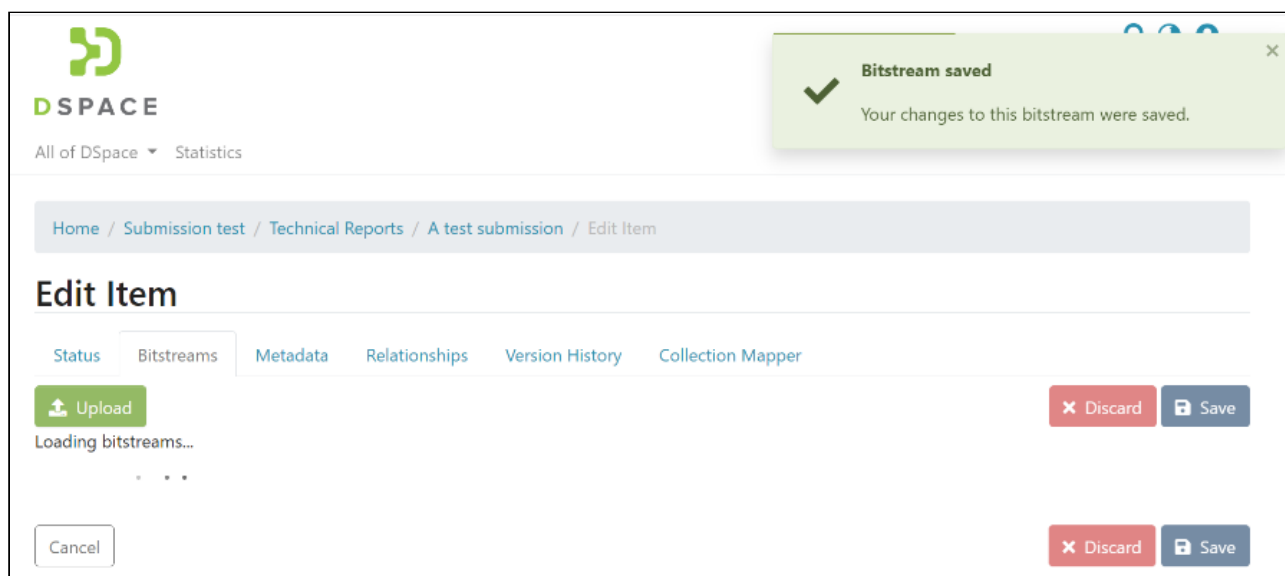
Cancel Discard Save

Step 3: Click on the Edit button shown on the screen above to edit the bitstream details. Below is the description of various fields appearing on this form

1. **Primary bitstream:** Click on this button to convert the bitstream to the primary bitstream. Thumbnail generated for the Item will be the first image of the primary bitstream.
2. **Filename:** The default value appearing in this field is the attachment’s filename. Users can replace it with the value of their choice.
3. **Description:** Users add a description of the attachment in this field.
4. **Embargo until date:** Users can select a future date to restrict public access to the attachment. Additionally, users can grant access to a specific set of users by selecting user groups.
5. **Selected format:** If the file extension of the uploaded attachment exists in the DSpace’s bitstream registry, the user will see the registered value for extension in this field. Users can change the value by selecting another one using the dropdown.

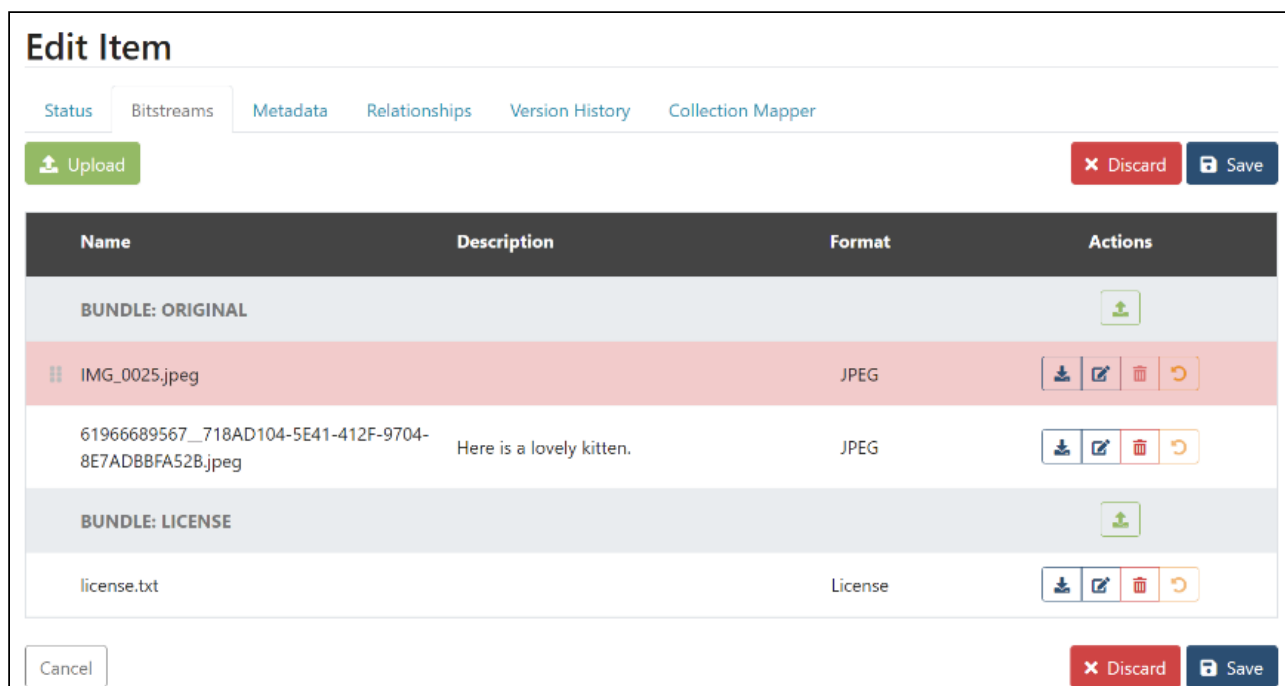
The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for editing a bitstream. At the top left is the DSpace logo and a dropdown menu set to 'All of DSpace'. The main content area displays the bitstream title '08.12027.pdf (21.01 MB)' and a 'No Thumbnail' placeholder. To the right of the title is a blue button with the number '1' and a toggle switch labeled 'Primary bitstream'. Below this is a text input field for 'Filename \*' containing '08.12027.pdf', with a blue '2' next to it. Underneath is a large text area for 'Description' with a blue '3' next to it. Below the description is a date input field for 'Embargo until specific date' with a blue '4' next to it. At the bottom is a dropdown menu for 'Selected Format' showing 'Adobe PDF' with a blue '5' next to it. At the bottom right are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons, with 'Save' being highlighted in blue.

After clicking the “Save” button, the user will be redirected to the bitstream tab. A prompt confirming success or failure will appear.



Step 4: Click on the Delete button to delete a bitstream. The attachment you want to delete will be highlighted in the red background for confirmation.

Click on the “Save” button appearing below the bitstreams list to continue with the deletion. Otherwise, click on the “Discard” button to cancel the process.



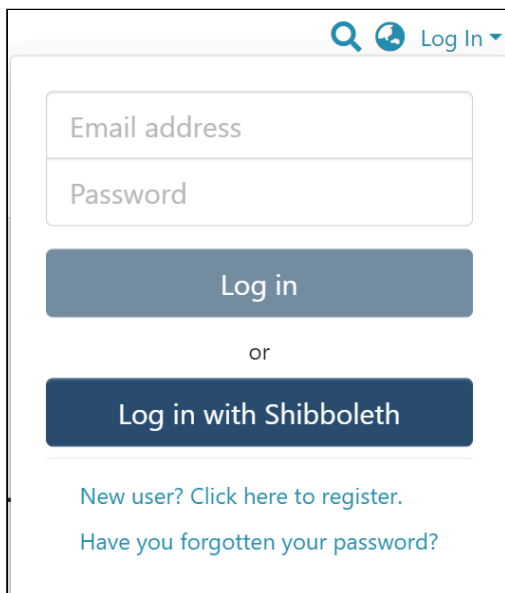
### 8.3.3.6 Edit Metadata

- [Edit Metadata Process](#)(see page 981)
- [Add a metadata field](#)(see page 983)

- [Edit an existing metadata field](#)(see page 985)
- [Delete an existing metadata field](#)(see page 988)

## Edit Metadata Process

### Step 1: Login using your credentials

A screenshot of a web login form. At the top right, there is a search icon, a globe icon, and a "Log In" dropdown menu. Below this are two input fields: "Email address" and "Password". Under the "Password" field is a blue "Log in" button. Below the button is the word "or". Underneath is a dark blue button labeled "Log in with Shibboleth". At the bottom, there are two links: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?".

Search Log In

Email address

Password

Log in

or

Log in with Shibboleth

[New user? Click here to register.](#)

[Have you forgotten your password?](#)

### Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search for an item
2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button appearing on the right-hand side of the item title.

Home / Publications / Articles  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

**Publication:**  
**A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis**

**Authors**  
 Simmons, Cameron

**Date**  
 2006-10-15

**Authors**  
 Simmons, Cameron






















**Abstract**  
 BACKGROUND: Although meningitis is the most severe form of infection caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis, the immunopathogenesis of this disease is poorly understood. We tested the hypothesis that polymorphisms in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein (TIRAP), an adaptor protein that mediates signals from Toll-like receptors activated by mycobacteria, are associated with susceptibility to tuberculosis (TB).

Step 3: Click on the “Metadata” tab to edit the metadata.

**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Discard Save













Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Authorized, Not		  
dc.date.accessioned	2020-05-19T12:02:18Z		  
dc.date.available	2020-05-19T12:02:18Z		  
dc.date.issued	2015-05-19		  
dc.description	desc		  
dc.description.abstract	Abstract		  
dc.description.provenance	Made available in DSpace on 2020-05-19T12:02:18Z (GMT). No. of bitstreams: 1 lcco_d.pdf: 596276 bytes, checksum: a67e2e0b94428b3dc49c96a2bfed458b (MD5) Previous issue date:	en	  

Step 4: Users can perform multiple actions in the Edit Metadata section, which are listed after the screenshot.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

**+ Add** **1** **Save** **Discard**

Field <b>2</b>	Value	Lang	<b>3</b> Edit
dc.contributor.author	Simmons, Cameron		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-09-14T11:15:05Z		  
dc.date.available	2017-07-12T03:48:30Z		  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  

- Add:** Button used for adding new metadata elements in the existing Item.
- Metadata fields:** The fields column shows the metadata element's value appearing in the "Value" column.
- Edit:** This panel contains various options to update the specific metadata field. They are
  - Edit value – Users click on this button to edit the existing metadata value
  - Delete metadata field – Click on this button for deleting the metadata field from the Item
  - Undo changes – Click on this button for undo changes made in the metadata field













### Add a metadata field

Step 1: Click on the "Add" button to add a metadata field.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

**+ Add** **Save** **Discard**

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Simmons, Cameron		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-09-14T11:15:05Z		  
dc.date.available	2017-07-12T03:48:30Z		  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  

Step 2: Upon typing a few characters of the metadata element, users will notice a drop-down list showing metadata elements matching the entered value. Users can select the appropriate metadata element from the drop-down list.

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
contri			✓ ✕ ↺
dcterms.contributor			✕ ↺
journal.contributor.editor			✕ ↺
person.contributor.other			✕ ↺
project.contributor.author			✕ ↺

Step 3: After selecting the required metadata element, enter the metadata value in the “Value” field and the ISO code of the language under the Lang field. For example, enter "en" for English.

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard













Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Doe, John	en	✓ ✕ ↺
creativeworkseries.issn	1945-7774		✎ ✕ ↺
dc.contributor.author	Archuleta, Kristy L.		✎ ✕ ↺
dc.date.accessioned	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		✎ ✕ ↺

Step 4: Click on the “Complete” button as highlighted below to update the field.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

[+ Add](#) [Save](#) [Discard](#)

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Doe, John	en	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   
creativeworkseries.issn	1945-7774		  
dc.contributor.author	Archuleta, Kristy L.		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		  

Step 5: Click on the “Save” button to continue saving changes or “Discard” to cancel changes made in the metadata fields. A success prompt confirming Metadata updates will appear as shown below.










DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Kurukshetra mlb • Journal  
 • Young People's Perceptions towards Librarians: An Exploratory Study of Students of Five Senior High Schools in Ghana  
 • Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

[+ Add](#) [Save](#) [Discard](#)

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Reuben		  
dc.contributor.author	Abban, Samuel		  
dc.date.accessioned	2021-06-23T15:56:39Z		  

**Metadata saved**

Your changes to this item's metadata were saved.

### Edit an existing metadata field













Step 1: Click on the “Edit” button to edit an existing metadata field.



### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard













Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Simmons, Cameron		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-09-14T11:15:05Z		  
dc.date.available	2017-07-12T03:48:30Z		  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  

Step 2: The metadata field becomes editable after clicking the “Edit” button to edit the metadata field element, value, and language.

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
<u>creativeworkseries.isbn</u>	<input type="text" value="1945-7774"/>	<input type="text"/>	  
dc.contributor.author	Archuleta, Kristy L.		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		  
dc.date.available	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		  

Step 3: Click on the “Complete” button as highlighted in the screenshot below to finish the update.

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
<u>creativeworkseries.issn</u>	1945-7774		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
dc.contributor.author	Archuleta, Kristy L.		
dc.date.accessioned	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		
dc.date.available	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		

Note: image20 and image21 seem identical(see page 980)

The metadata field will highlight the successful addition of the metadata, as shown in the screenshot below. Click on the undo button if you want to undo the addition of the metadata field.

### Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard
















Field	Value	Lang	Edit
creativeworkseries.issn	1945-44554		
dc.contributor.author	Archuleta, Kristy L.		
dc.date.accessioned	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		
dc.date.available	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		
dc.date.issued	2016		

Step 4: Click on the “Save” button to continue saving changes or “Discard” to cancel changes made in the metadata fields. A success prompt confirming Metadata updates will appear as shown below.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Simmons, Cameron		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-09-14T11:15:05Z		  
dc.date.available	2017-07-12T03:48:30Z		  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  













Delete an existing metadata field

Step 1: Click on the “Delete” button to initiate the metadata field deletion.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

+ Add Save Discard

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Simmons, Cameron		  
dc.date.accessioned	2018-09-14T11:15:05Z		  
dc.date.available	2017-07-12T03:48:30Z		  
dc.date.available	2013-03-07	en_US	  

Step 2: The deleted metadata field will be highlighted in red.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

[+ Add](#) [Save](#) [Discard](#)

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
creativeworkseries.issn	1945-44554		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>
dc.contributor.author	Archuleta, Kristy L.		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>
dc.date.accessioned	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>
dc.date.available	2018-10-31T17:25:32Z		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>
dc.date.issued	2016		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>

Step 3: Click on the “Save” button to continue saving changes or “Discard” to cancel changes made in the metadata fields. A success prompt confirming Metadata updates will appear as shown below.

DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace

Home • Kurukshetra mlb • Journal  
 • Young People's Perceptions t ceptions towards Libr ds Librarians: An Explor arians: An Exploratory Study of Students of Five Senior High Schools in Ghana  
 • Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams **Metadata** Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

[+ Add](#) [Save](#) [Discard](#)

Field	Value	Lang	Edit
dc.contributor.author	Reuben		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>
dc.contributor.author	Abban, Samuel		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>
dc.date.accessioned	2021-06-23T15:56:39Z		<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">Refresh</a>

**Metadata saved**

Your changes to this item's metadata were saved.

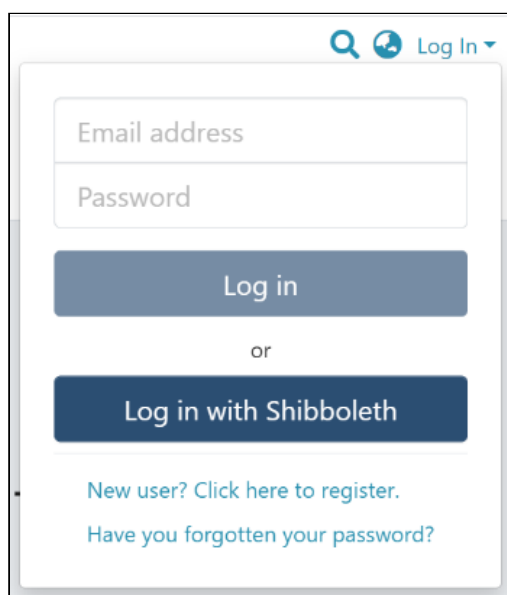
### 8.3.3.7 Edit Relationship

- [Relationship Management](#)(see page 989)
- [Add Relationships with other items](#)(see page 991)
- [Delete a Relationship](#)(see page 994)

## Relationship Management

Entity-relationship is a new concept introduced in the DSpace version 7, helping authorized users logically link two or more items by defining relationships among them. A few good examples are the Relationship between an article & Author, a Journal and Journal Article, Organization Unit and Individuals in the unit, etc.

### Step 1: Login using your credentials



### Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, which are listed below

1. Finding an item using search functionalities of the DSpace
2. Reaching an item by browsing communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button appearing towards the right-hand side of the item title.



Step 3: Click on the “Relationships” tab.

**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams Metadata **Relationships** Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 1b19bcc0-4f83-446d-95b7-ec0c806d1578  
 Handle: 10673/292  
 Last Modified: Wed Apr 06 2022 20:40:50 GMT+0530 (India Standard Time)  
 Item Page: /entities/person/1b19bcc0-4f83-446d-95b7-ec0c806d1578

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository

Make item non-discoverable

Add Relationships with other items

Step 1: Click on the “Add” button next to the relationship type to map Item (s) under each relationship type. For example, click on the “Add” button next to Publications to add an item as a related publication.

**Edit Item**

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Publications

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

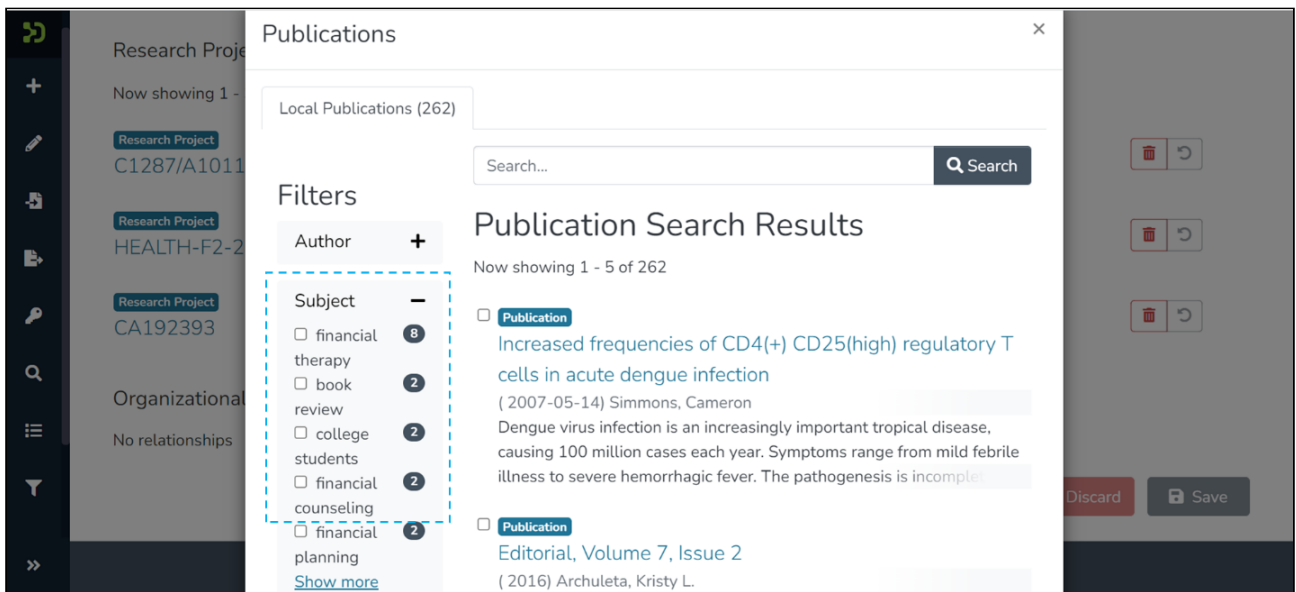
**Publication**  
 Age- and tumor subtype-specific breast cancer risk estimates for CHEK2\*1100delC carriers  
 (American Society of Clinical Oncology, 2016) Schmidt, Marjanka K ; Hogervorst, Frans ; van, Hien Richard ; Cornelissen, S

Research Projects

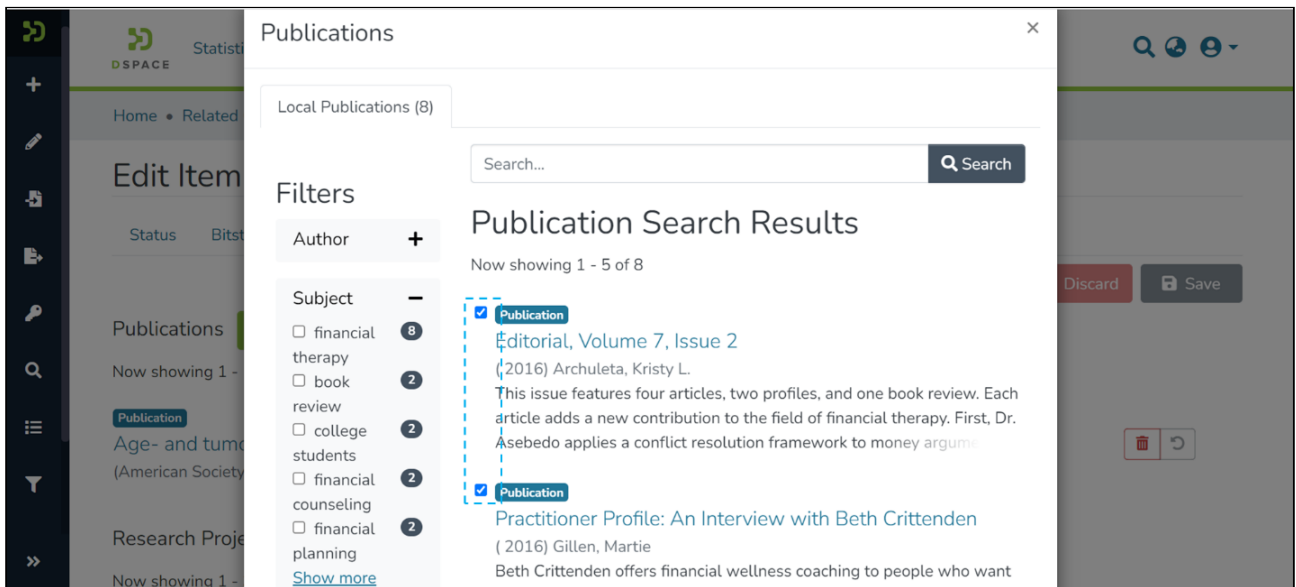
Now showing 1 - 3 of 3

**Research Project**  
 C1287/A10118

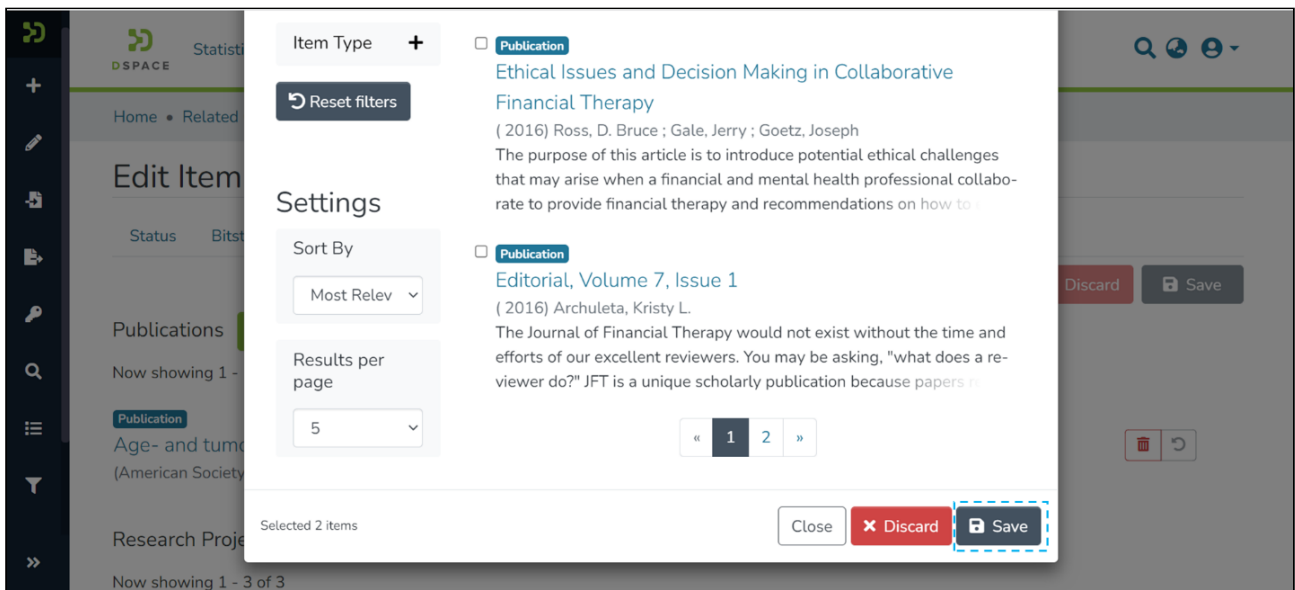
Step 2: Identify target items for addition using Filters and Search functions. Please note that process is identical to the advanced search process.



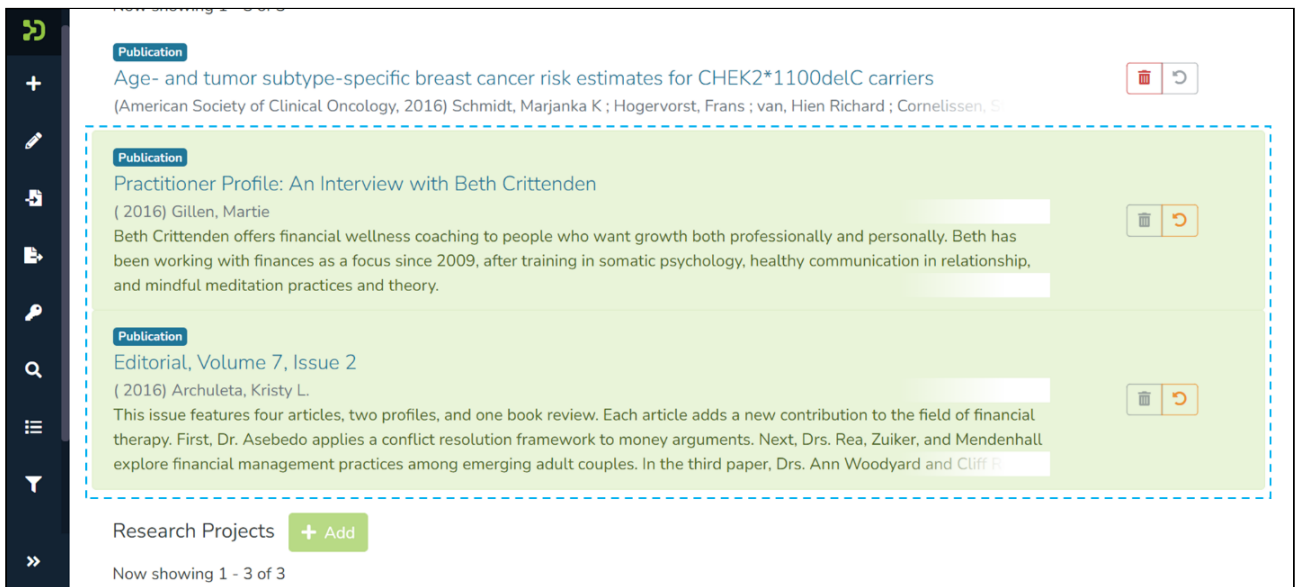
Step 3: Click checkboxes appearing on the left-hand side of each Item to select them for the Relationship.



Step 4: Scroll down to the bottom of the screen and click on the “Save” button to complete the process.



The application will redirect users to the source item’s relationship tab, highlighting newly added items for easy identification.



Step 5: Click on the “Save” button to confirm the item addition under the selected relationship type or click “Discard” to undo the addition.

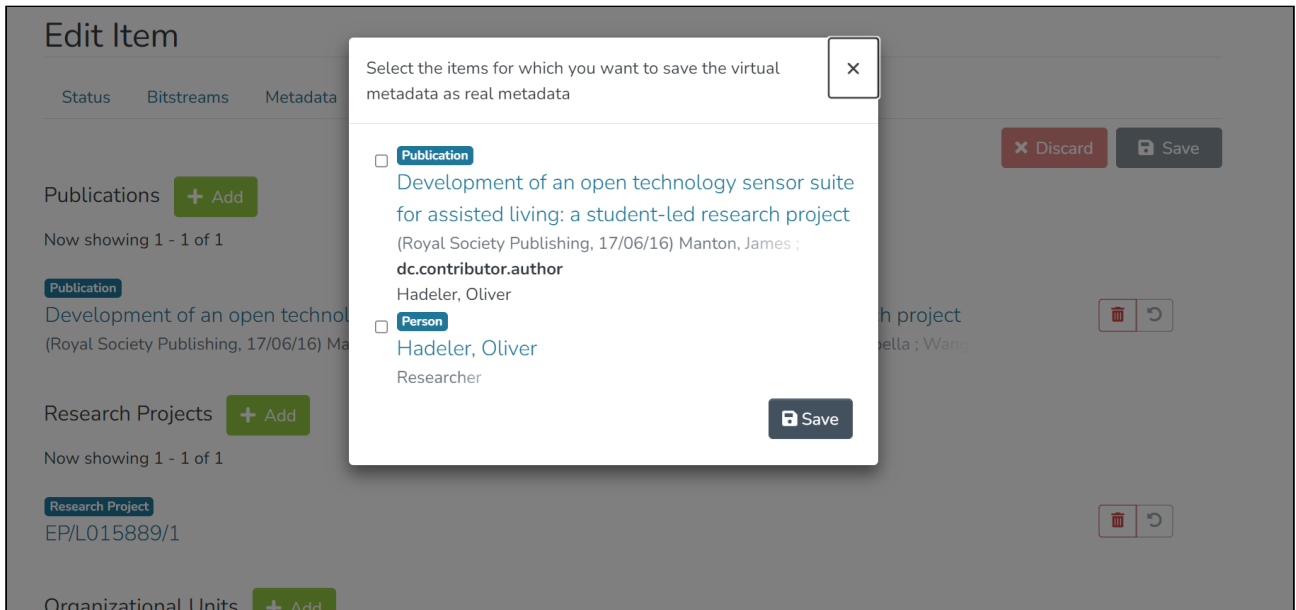


Users will see a prompt confirming the successful mapping of items under the selected relationship type.

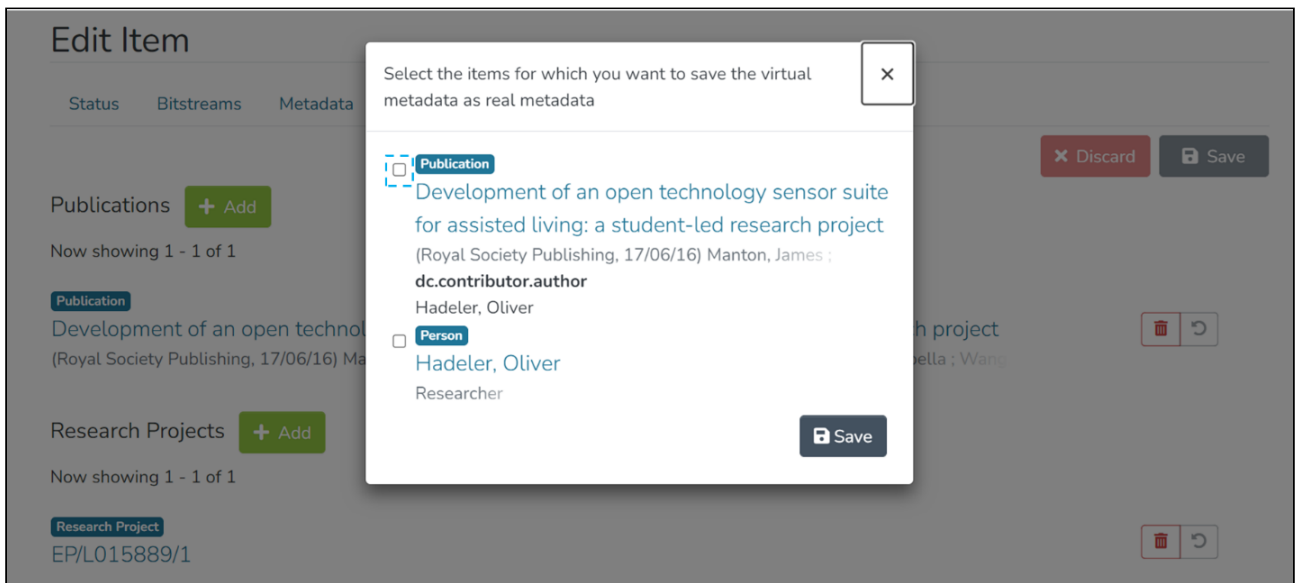
### Delete a Relationship

Step 1: Click on the “delete” button appearing a bitstream and drag it above or below another bitstream(s) in the bundle to change the bitstream’s sequence.

Step 2: A prompt showing items concerning the selected Item will appear in the prompt. Click the checkbox appearing next to items. Please refer screenshots below for a better understanding.

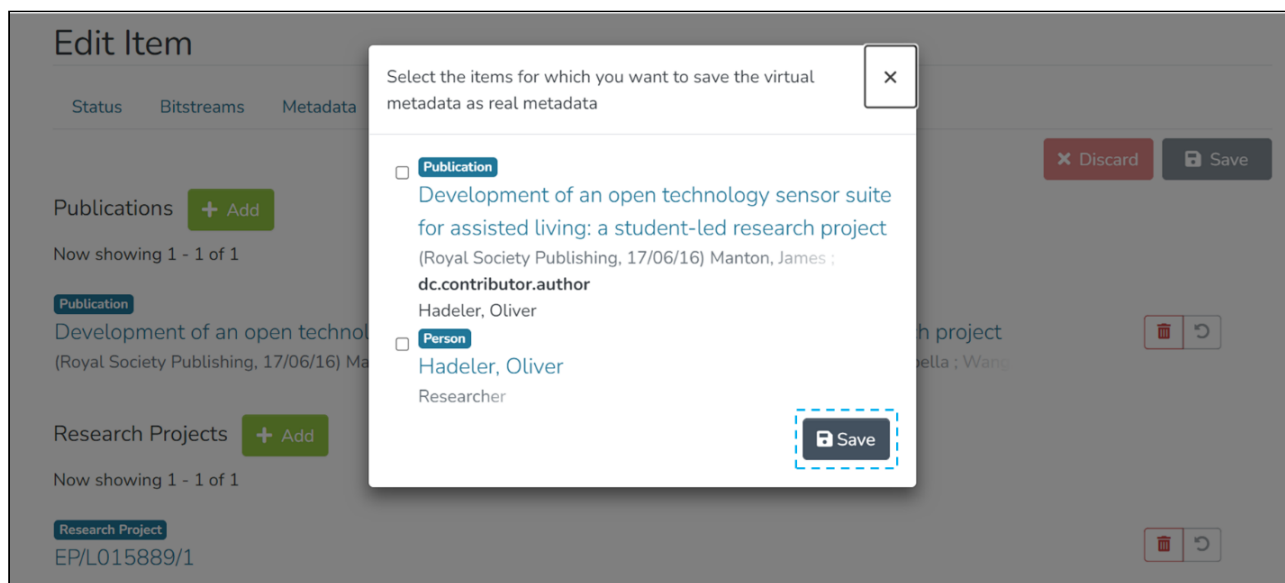


### List of items concerning the selected Item.



### Click on the checkbox highlighted before the Item

Step 3: Click the “Save” button to complete the selection process and go back to the Relationship tab of the source item.



Step 4: Click on the “Save” button to confirm the deletion under the selected relationship type or click “Discard” to undo the action. Users will see a prompt confirming the successful deletion of items under the selected relationship type.

### 8.3.3.8 Make an Item Private

- [Audience](#)(see page 996)
- [Make Item private](#)(see page 996)

Audience

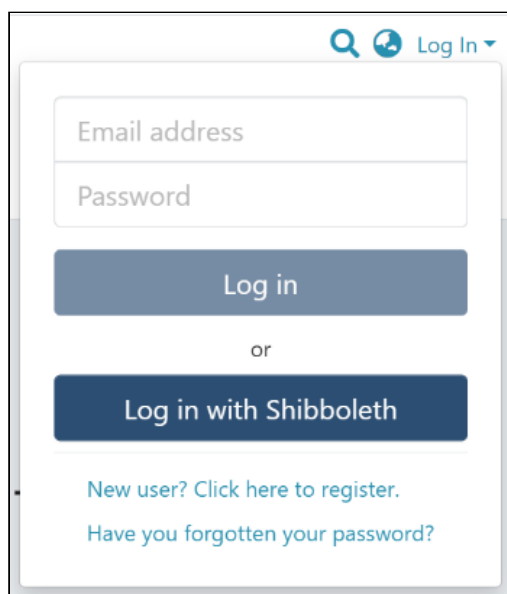
Content Submitters

Community Administrators

System Administrators

Make Item private

**Step 1:** Login using your DSpace credentials



The image shows a login form with the following elements:

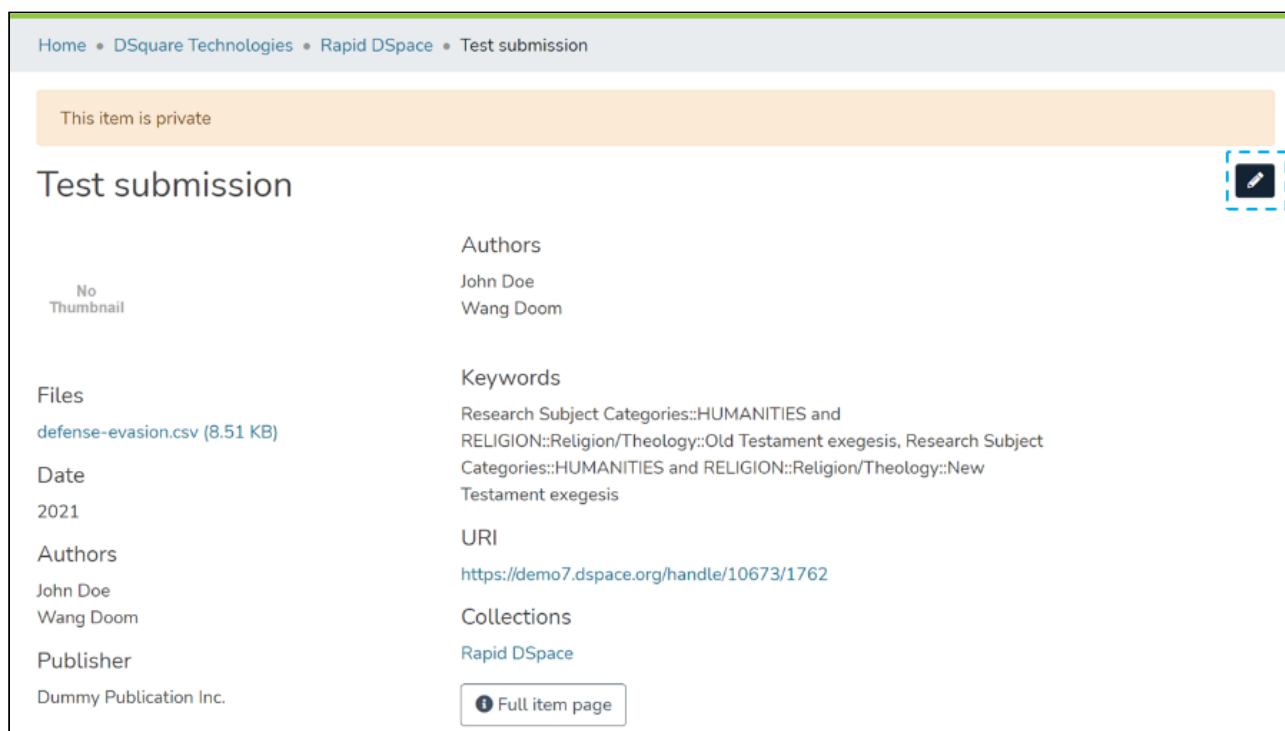
- Search icon, globe icon, and "Log In" dropdown menu at the top right.
- Input field for "Email address".
- Input field for "Password".
- "Log in" button.
- "or" separator.
- "Log in with Shibboleth" button.
- Links: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?"

**Step 2:** Go to the item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search an item
2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

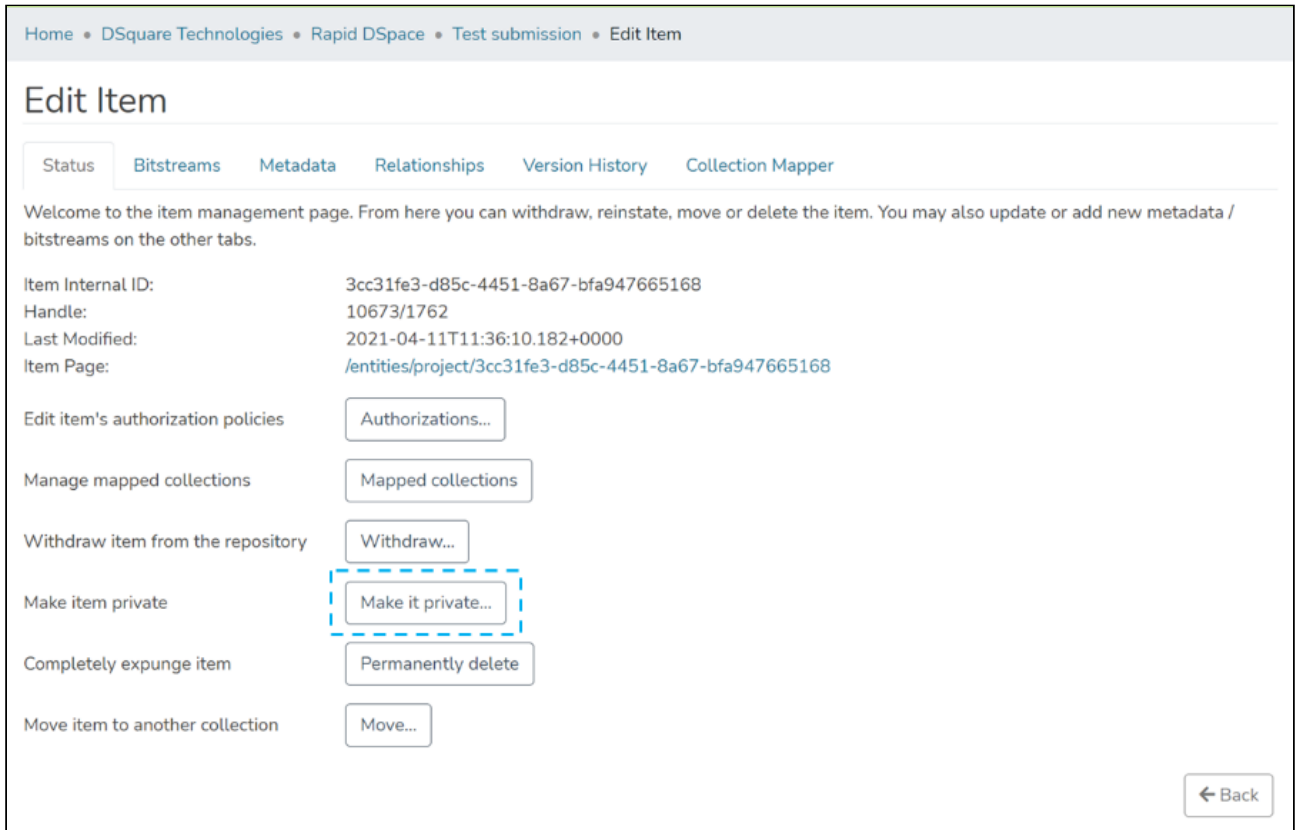
Click on the “Edit” button appearing towards the right-hand side of the item title.



The image shows a DSpace item page for "Test submission". The breadcrumb trail is: Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission. A message states "This item is private". The item title "Test submission" has an "Edit" button (pencil icon) next to it. The page displays the following metadata:

Field	Value
Thumbnail	No Thumbnail
Authors	John Doe Wang Doom
Files	defense-evasion.csv (8.51 KB)
Date	2021
Authors	John Doe Wang Doom
Publisher	Dummy Publication Inc.
Keywords	Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::Old Testament exegesis, Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::New Testament exegesis
URI	<a href="https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762">https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762</a>
Collections	Rapid DSpace
Buttons	<a href="#">Full item page</a>

**Step 3:** Click on the “Make it private” button under the “Status” tab to make the selected Item private.



Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission • Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 3cc31fe3-d85c-4451-8a67-bfa947665168  
Handle: 10673/1762  
Last Modified: 2021-04-11T11:36:10.182+0000  
Item Page: /entities/project/3cc31fe3-d85c-4451-8a67-bfa947665168

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository

Make item private

Completely expunge item

Move item to another collection

**Step 4:** Click on the “Make it Private” button to make the selected Item private or click the “Cancel” button to cancel the operation.

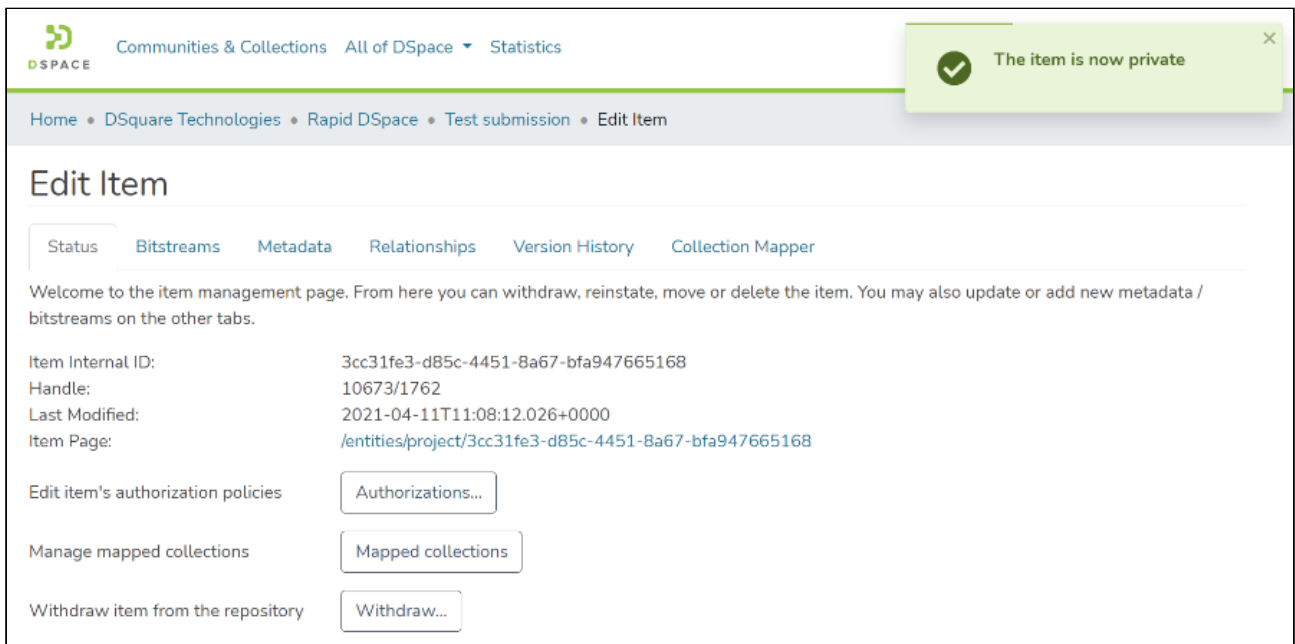
Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission • Edit Item

## Make item private: 10673/1762

Are you sure this item should be made private in the archive?

Field	Value	Language
dc.contributor.author	John Doe	
dc.contributor.author	Wang Doom	
dc.date.accessioned	2021-04-11T09:11:26Z	
dc.date.available	2021-04-11T09:11:26Z	
dc.date.issued	2021	
dc.description.provenance	Made available in DSpace on 2021-04-11T09:11:26Z (GMT). No. of bitstreams: 1 defense-evasion.csv: 8714 bytes, checksum: 1c0263c69975d05b0d58d42459d39292 (MD5) Previous issue date: 2021	en
dc.identifier.uri	<a href="https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762">https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762</a>	
dc.language.iso	en	
dc.publisher	Dummy Publication Inc.	
dc.subject	Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::Old Testament exegesis	
dc.subject	Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::New Testament exegesis	
dc.title	Test submission	
dc.type	Book	
dspace.entity.type	project	

**Step 5:** You will see a success prompt confirming that the Item is private, as shown below.



The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for editing an item. At the top left is the DSPACE logo and navigation links: "Communities & Collections", "All of DSpace", and "Statistics". A green notification box in the top right corner displays a checkmark and the text "The item is now private". Below the navigation is a breadcrumb trail: "Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission • Edit Item". The main heading is "Edit Item", followed by tabs for "Status", "Bitstreams", "Metadata", "Relationships", "Version History", and "Collection Mapper". A welcome message states: "Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs." The item details are as follows:

Item Internal ID:	3cc31fe3-d85c-4451-8a67-bfa947665168
Handle:	10673/1762
Last Modified:	2021-04-11T11:08:12.026+0000
Item Page:	/entities/project/3cc31fe3-d85c-4451-8a67-bfa947665168

Below the details are three action buttons:

- "Edit item's authorization policies" with an "Authorizations..." button.
- "Manage mapped collections" with a "Mapped collections" button.
- "Withdraw item from the repository" with a "Withdraw..." button.

**Step 6:** You will notice that the Item will appear with a “Private” tag.

Home • Search

# Rapid DSpace

Permanent URI for this collection <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1668>

It's an economical DSpace hosting service that enable institution with limited budget and resources to go

## News

TNHD going live with Rapid DSpace

---

### Browse

Recent Submissions	By Title	By Issue Date	By Author	By Subject
--------------------	----------	---------------	-----------	------------

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

**Private**

Search Results

### Test submission

(Dummy Publication Inc., 2021) John Doe ; Wang Doom

### 8.3.3.9 Move an Item

- [Audience](#)(see page 1001)
- [Move an item](#)(see page 1001)

Audience

Content Submitters

Community Administrators

System Administrators

Move an item

**Step 1:** Login using your credentials



**Step 2:** Go to the item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search an item
2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button appearing on the right-hand side of the item title.

**Step 3:** Click on the “Status” tab and click the “Move” button.

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da  
 Handle: 10673/1285  
 Last Modified: 2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000  
 Item Page: </items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da>

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository

Make item private

Completely expunge item

Move item to another collection

#### Step 4: Understanding the Move item page

**The field for entering the collection name:** Enter the target collection name to move the item or select the collection from the drop-down list, as demonstrated in the following step.

1. **Inherit policies:** Click on this check box to update the item's policies according to the collection's policies.
2. **Move:** Click the "Move" button to complete the operation.
3. **Cancel:** Click the "Cancel" button to cancel the operation.

Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission • Edit Item

## Move item: 10673/1762

Select the collection you wish to move this item to. To narrow down the list of displayed collections, you can enter a search query in the box.

Enter a search query to look for collections

Inherit policies

Inherit the default policies of the destination collection

**Step 5:** Click on the Collection name and type the target collection name to move the item or scroll the collection list to identify the appropriate collection.

DSpace Communities & Collections Statistics All of DSpace ▾

Home • Memorix • Aanwinsten • Aanwinst 2 (JP2) • Edit Item

## Move item: 10673/1232

Select the collection you wish to move this item to. To narrow down the list of displayed collections, you can enter a search query in the box.

Search for a collection

Search for a collection

- Memorix  
Aanwinsten
- Submission test  
1-step Workflow collection
- Submission test  
3-step Workflow collection | سير العمل
- CIESAS Audiovisual  
Antropología médica
- Submission test  
API 2 Journal
- Documentos Seccion 1  
Archivos PDF  
1
- CICT

Inherit policies

Inherit the default policies of the destination collection

← Back Save Discard

**Step 6:** Click on the “Move” button after selecting the target collection.

Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission • Edit Item

## Move item: 10673/1762

Select the collection you wish to move this item to. To narrow down the list of displayed collections, you can enter a search query in the box.

194492005

Inherit policies

Inherit the default policies of the destination collection

Move Cancel

**Step 7:** The item will move to the target collection upon completing the operation.

### 8.3.3.10 Reinststate an item

Step 1: Login using the DSpace credentials

Step 2: Users can go to the item they want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, which are listed below

1. Finding an item using search functionalities of the DSpace
2. Getting an item by browsing communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button on the right-hand side of the item title.

Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission

This item is private

## Test submission

No Thumbnail	<b>Authors</b> John Doe Wang Doom
<b>Files</b> <a href="#">defense-evasion.csv (8.51 KB)</a>	<b>Keywords</b> Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::Old Testament exegesis, Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::New Testament exegesis
<b>Date</b> 2021	<b>URI</b> <a href="https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762">https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762</a>
<b>Authors</b> John Doe Wang Doom	<b>Collections</b> Rapid DSpace
<b>Publisher</b> Dummy Publication Inc.	<a href="#">Full item page</a>

Step 3: Click the “Reinstate” button under the “Status” tab to reinstate the item into the archive.

The screenshot displays the 'Edit Item' interface in DSpace. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, 'Communities & Collections', and 'All of DSpace'. Below this is a breadcrumb trail: 'Home • MyDSpace'. The main heading is 'Edit Item', followed by a series of tabs: 'Status', 'Bitstreams', 'Metadata', 'Relationships', 'Version History', and 'Collection Mapper'. A welcome message states: 'Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.'

Item details are listed as follows:


- Item Internal ID: 8ae0dacc-a334-43d9-8d7b-9f4b2bf0641b
- Handle: 10673/1121
- Last Modified: 2021-04-18T05:21:03.001+0000
- Item Page: /items/8ae0dacc-a334-43d9-8d7b-9f4b2bf0641b




Management actions are listed on the right side of the page:

- Edit item's authorization policies: Authorizations...
- Manage mapped collections: Mapped collections
- Reinstate item into the repository: Reinstate... (highlighted with a dashed blue box)
- Make item private: Make it private...
- Completely expunge item: Permanently delete
- Move item to another collection: Move...

A '← Back' button is located at the bottom right of the page.

Step 4: Click the “Reinstate” button to reinstate the item or click the “Cancel” button to cancel the operation.


Communities & Collections All of DSpace ▾

Home • MyDSpace

## Reinstate item: 10673/1121

Are you sure this item should be reinstated to the archive?

Field	Value	Language
dc.contributor.author	John Doe	
dc.date.accessioned	2021-04-18T05:16:31Z	
dc.date.available	2021-04-18T05:16:31Z	
dc.date.issued	2021-04-18	
dc.description.abstract	Abstract added for <b>testing</b> purpose.	
dc.description.provenance	Made available in DSpace on 2021-04-18T05:16:31Z (GMT). No. of bitstreams: 1 author look up issue.png: 98081 bytes, checksum: 4eb0f156eb56c69d3be81f7561057ecd (MD5) Previous issue date: 2021-04-18	en
dc.description.provenance	Item withdrawn by Demo Site Administrator (dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com) on 2021-04-18T05:21:02Z Item was in collections: Rapid DSpace (ID: dc3d119f-de21-4caf-bfd4-e8b106ccee29) No. of bitstreams: 1 author look up issue.png: 98081 bytes, checksum: 4eb0f156eb56c69d3be81f7561057ecd (MD5)	en
dc.identifier.uri	<a href="https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1121">https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1121</a>	
dc.language.iso	en	
dc.publisher	Dummy Publication Inc.	
dc.subject	Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::New Testament exegesis	
dc.title	Article for testing purposes	
dc.title.alternative	Alternate title for testing purposes	
dc.type	Book	

Step 5: Users will see a success prompt confirming the item reinstate, as shown below.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • MyDSpace

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 8ae0dacd-a334-43d9-8d7b-9f4b2bf0641b  
 Handle: 10673/1121  
 Last Modified: 2021-04-18T05:28:53.778+0000  
 Item Page: /items/8ae0dacd-a334-43d9-8d7b-9f4b2bf0641b

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository

Make item private

Completely expunge item

Step 6: Users will notice that the “Withdrawn” tag appearing earlier on top of the item does not appear anymore.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace Statistics

Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace

## Rapid DSpace

Permanent URI for this collection <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1120>

Collection for User manual and Application Testing purposes.

Browse

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

Item

Article for testing purposes  
 (Dummy Publication Inc., 2021-04-18) John Doe  
 Abstract added for testing purpose.

### 8.3.3.11 Versioned Item

- Audience(see page 1010)
- Create a version(see page 1010)
  - Few important facts(see page 1012)
- Access Item's versions(see page 1014)



- [Additional information for the version creator](#)(see page 1015)

DSpace provides version creation and version management functionality. This functionality enables authorized users to create multiple versions of an item to manage changes in its metadata and attachment while keeping track of differences between two versions. Users can also roll back to the previous version.

Audience

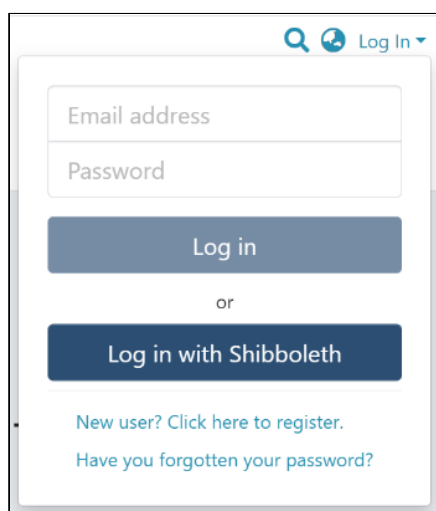
Content Submitters

Community Administrators

System Administrators

Create a version

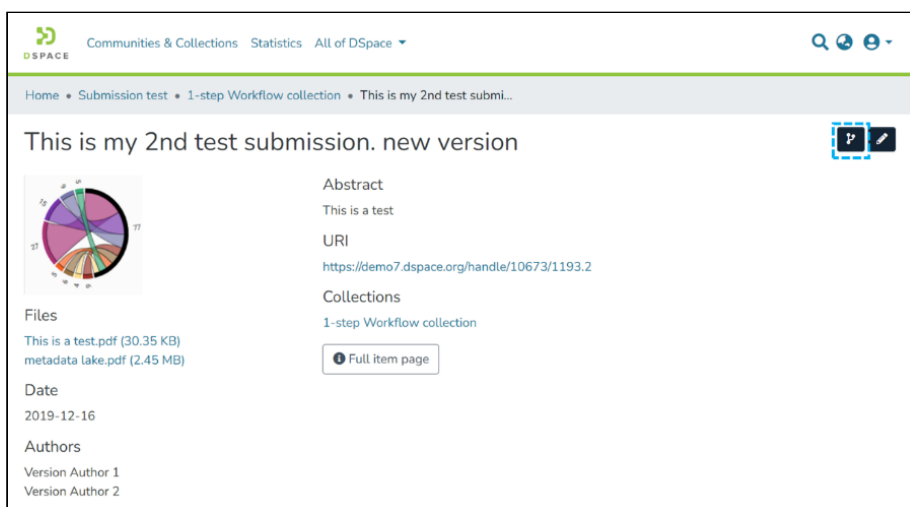
Step 1: Login using the DSpace credentials

A screenshot of the DSpace login interface. At the top right, there is a search icon, a user icon, and a 'Log In' dropdown menu. Below this, there are two input fields: 'Email address' and 'Password'. A blue 'Log in' button is positioned below the password field. Underneath the button is the word 'or'. Below 'or' is a dark blue button labeled 'Log in with Shibboleth'. At the bottom of the form, there are two links: 'New user? Click here to register.' and 'Have you forgotten your password?'.

Step 2: Users can reach an item to create a version through various methods, which are listed below

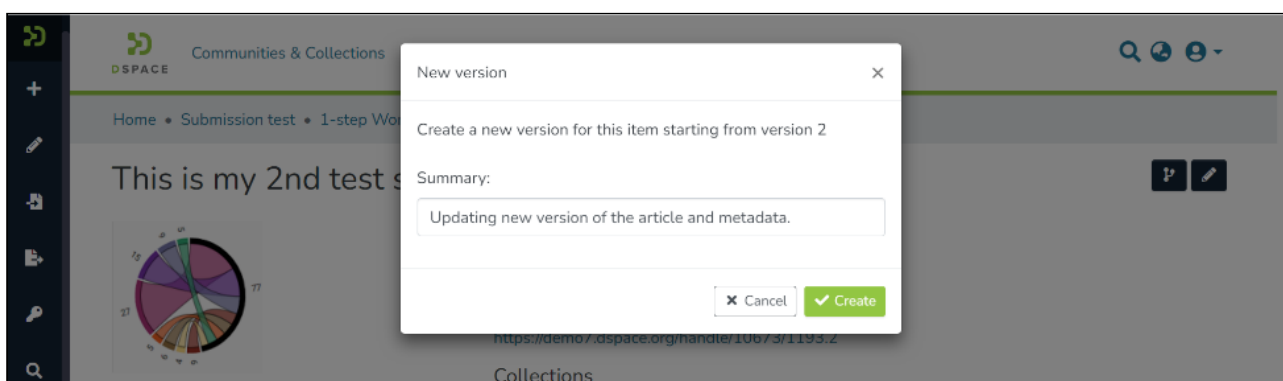
1. Finding an item using search functionalities of the DSpace
2. Reaching an item by browsing communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Step 3: Users will see the “Create Version” button on the item detail page highlighted below. Click it to create a new version of an item.

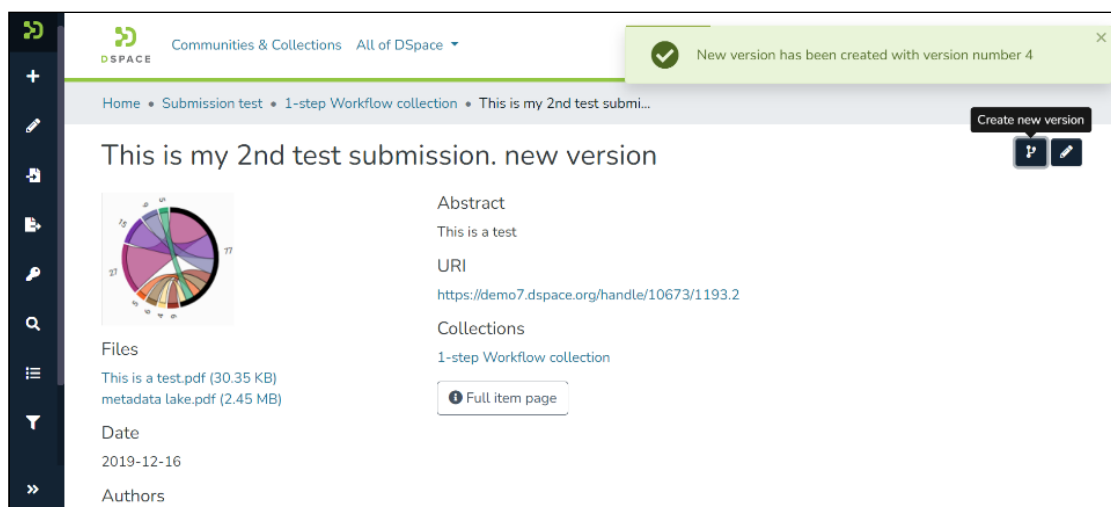


Step 4: After clicking the “Create Version” button, users will see a prompt seeking a summary of the new version. Please enter a summary of changes users will make in the latest version.

Later, this summary plays an essential role in tracking changes made in the version that helps the broader user group and auditors.



Step 5: Users will see a success prompt confirming a new version creation, as shown below. A page similar to the item submission process will appear with the item’s existing metadata and attachments in an editable mode.



Step 6: Users can update required metadata and attachments on this page the same way they would have done during the item submission process.

#### Few important facts

- Users can update and add new metadata during the version update process
- Like the metadata, one can also update attachments by updating/removing existing attachments and adding new ones.
- It's possible to assign a new collection to the latest version. However, it does not change the storage location of the old version.
- Suppose the collection where the latest version needs to be stored has approval workflows assigned. The newest version will be published after necessary approvals.
- Users can save the draft version during updates and pick it up from their workspace to complete later.



Step 7: Click on the “Deposit” button to complete the version creation process. Apart from clicking the “Deposit” button, users can perform the following actions during the version creation:

- **Discard:** Click this button to cancel the version creation process.
- **Save:** Keep saving the updates intermittently and continue updating version details.
- **Save for later:** Save the progress and pick up the item from the workspace later to complete the version creation.

As briefed above, if the target collection has the approval workflow assigned to it, then the latest version will appear to users having an approval role for acceptance. However, if no workflow is set to the collection, the new version will be published for public access.

## Access Item’s versions

Step 1: Users can reach an item through various methods, which are listed below

1. Finding an item using search functionalities of the DSpace
2. Reaching an item by browsing communities and collections

Step 2: Users can scroll down the item details page to see its version history, as illustrated below. Version history table shows the following details:

- **Version:** The version number of the item. The illustration shows that the selected version has \* next to it.
- **Date:** Version creation date and time as per the server.
- **Summary:** Summary added by the user during version creation.

The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for an item. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, "Communities & Collections", "Statistics", and "All of DSpace". On the right, there are search and login icons. Below the navigation bar, a breadcrumb trail reads: "Home • Submission test • 1-step Workflow collection • This is my 2nd test submi...".

The main content area displays the item title: "This is my 2nd test submission. new version". To the left of the main content, there is a circular progress indicator and a "Files" section listing two files: "This is a test.pdf (30.35 KB)" and "metadata lake.pdf (2.45 MB)". Below the files, the "Date" is listed as "2019-12-16" and "Authors" as "Version Author 1" and "Version Author 2".

To the right of the main content, there is an "Abstract" section with the text "This is a test", a "URI" section with the URL "https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1193.2", and a "Collections" section listing "1-step Workflow collection". A "Full item page" button is located below the collections section.

The "Version History" section is highlighted with a blue dashed border. It contains a notification: "You are currently viewing version 2 of the item." Below this, a table shows the version history:

Version	Date	Summary
2 *	2022-01-23 14:15:58	version test
1	2022-01-04 09:32:57	

Below the table, there is a note: "\* Selected version".

At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with the text: "DSpace software copyright © 2002-2022 LYRISIS" and links for "Cookie settings", "Privacy policy", and "End User Agreement".

Step 3: The item details page shows information from the latest version. Users can click on the previous version id to see it.

### Additional information for the version creator

*In addition to the above details, the version creator will see the following information related to versioning.*

- **The version in the approval workflow:** If a version is unpublished due to pending approval, then the “Workflow Item” tag will appear next to such versions. These versions are not visible to all users.
- **Alert about the latest version:** An alert confirms the page is not the newest version, and a link to the newest version appears at the top of the page.

The screenshot shows a DSpace item details page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, 'Communities & Collections', 'Statistics', and 'All of DSpace'. Below this is a breadcrumb trail: 'Home • Submission test • 1-step Workflow collection • This is my 2nd test submi...'. A blue dashed box highlights an orange alert message: 'This is not the latest version of this item. The latest version can be found here.' Below the alert, the item title is 'This is my 2nd test submission. new version'. The page displays an abstract, URI, collections, and files. A 'Version History' section is visible, showing a table of versions. The table has columns for Version, Editor, Date, and Summary. Version 4 is highlighted with a blue dashed box and labeled 'Workflow Item'. Version 2 is marked with an asterisk, and version 1 is the selected version.

**Version History**

You are currently viewing version 2 of the item.

Now showing 1 - 3 of 3

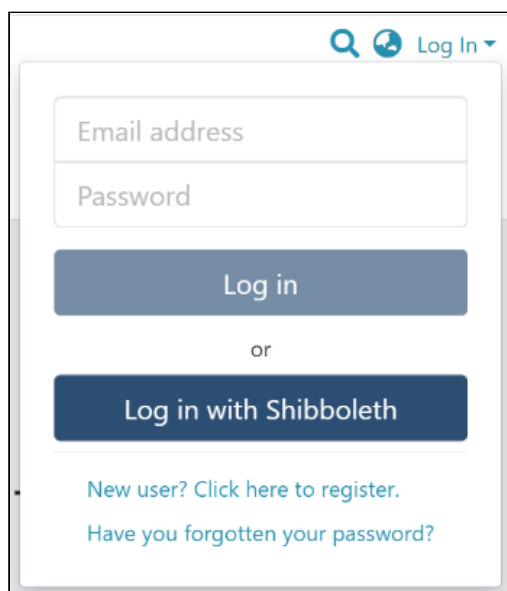
Version	Editor	Date	Summary
4 <b>Workflow Item</b>	DSpace Admin	2022-01-23 15:12:59	Updating new version of the article and metadata.
2 *	DSpace Admin	2022-01-23 14:15:58	version test
1	Demo Community Administrator	2022-01-04 09:32:57	

\* Selected version

DSpace software copyright © 2002-2022 LYRISIS  
[Cookie settings](#) [Privacy policy](#) [End User Agreement](#)

### 8.3.3.12 Withdraw an item

Step 1: Login using the DSpace credentials



The image shows a login form with the following elements:

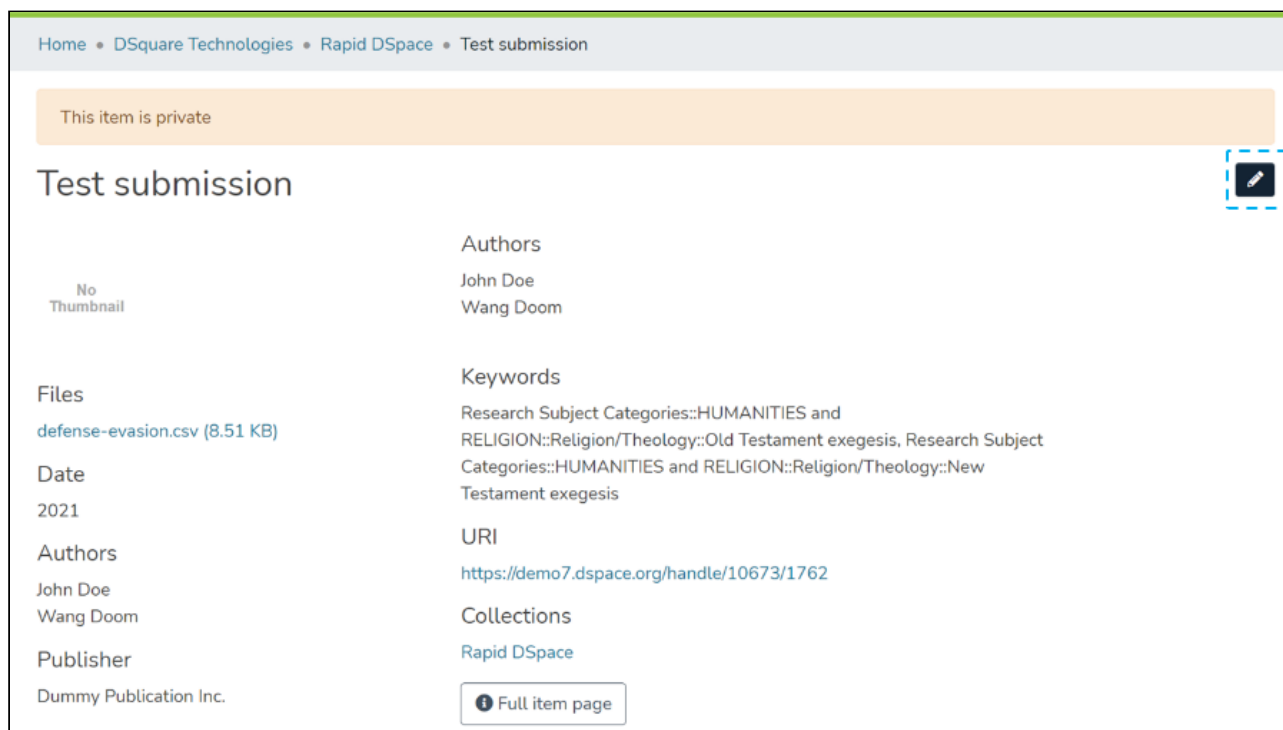
- Search icon and "Log In" dropdown menu at the top right.
- Input field for "Email address".
- Input field for "Password".
- Dark blue "Log in" button.
- Text "or" centered below the button.
- Dark blue "Log in with Shibboleth" button.
- Links: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?"

Step 2: Users can go to the item they want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, which are listed below

1. Finding an item using search functionalities of the DSpace
2. Reaching an item by browsing communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button on the right-hand side of the item title.



The image shows a DSpace item page for "Test submission". The breadcrumb trail is: Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission. A message at the top states "This item is private". The item title "Test submission" has an "Edit" button (pencil icon) on the right. The page displays the following metadata:

- No Thumbnail**
- Authors:** John Doe, Wang Doom
- Files:** defense-evasion.csv (8.51 KB)
- Date:** 2021
- Authors:** John Doe, Wang Doom
- Publisher:** Dummy Publication Inc.
- Keywords:** Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::Old Testament exegesis, Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::New Testament exegesis
- URI:** <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1762>
- Collections:** Rapid DSpace
- Full item page** button

Step 3: Click the “Withdraw” button under the “Status” tab to withdraw the item from the archive.

Home • DSquare Technologies • Rapid DSpace • Test submission • Edit Item

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 3cc31fe3-d85c-4451-8a67-bfa947665168  
Handle: 10673/1762  
Last Modified: 2021-04-11T11:36:10.182+0000  
Item Page: </entities/project/3cc31fe3-d85c-4451-8a67-bfa947665168>

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Withdraw item from the repository


Make item private




Completely expunge item

Move item to another collection

Step 4: Click on the “Withdraw” button to withdraw the item or click the “Cancel” button to cancel the operation.




Communities & Collections All of DSpace ▾

---

Home »
MyDSpace

## Withdraw item: 10673/1121

Are you sure this item should be withdrawn from the archive?

Field	Value	Language
dc.contributor.author	John Doe	
dc.date.accessioned	2021-04-18T05:16:31Z	
dc.date.available	2021-04-18T05:16:31Z	
dc.date.issued	2021-04-18	
dc.description.abstract	Abstract added for <b>testing</b> purpose.	
dc.description.provenance	Made available in DSpace on 2021-04-18T05:16:31Z (GMT). No. of bitstreams: 1 author look up issue.png: 98081 bytes, checksum: 4eb0f156eb56c69d3be81f7561057ecd (MD5) Previous issue date: 2021-04-18	en
dc.identifier.uri	<a href="https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1121">https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1121</a>	
dc.language.iso	en	
dc.publisher	Dummy Publication Inc.	
dc.subject	Research Subject Categories::HUMANITIES and RELIGION::Religion/Theology::New Testament exegesis	
dc.title	Article for testing purposes	
dc.title.alternative	Alternate title for testing purposes	
dc.type	Book	

Step 5: Users will see a success prompt confirming the item withdrawal, as shown below.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • MyDSpace

## Edit Item

Status Bitstreams Metadata Relationships Version History Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID: 8ae0dacd-a334-43d9-8d7b-9f4b2bf0641b  
 Handle: 10673/1121  
 Last Modified: 2021-04-18T05:21:03.001+0000  
 Item Page: /items/8ae0dacd-a334-43d9-8d7b-9f4b2bf0641b

Edit item's authorization policies

Manage mapped collections

Reinstate item into the repository

Make item private

Completely expunge item

Step 6: Users will notice that the item will appear with a “Withdrawn” tag.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • MyDSpace

## Rapid DSpace

Permanent URI for this collection <https://demo7.dspace.org/handle/10673/1120>

Collection for User manual and Application Testing purposes.

Browse

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

**Withdrawn**

Item

[Article for testing purposes](#)  
 (Dummy Publication Inc., 2021-04-18) John Doe  
 Abstract added for testing purpose.

### 8.3.4 Embargo an item

“Embargo an item” helps restrict the Item’s attachment’s access until a future date. A user can embargo an item while submitting it or later by editing it. Both methods to embargo an item are explained below.

- [Audience](#)(see page 1020)

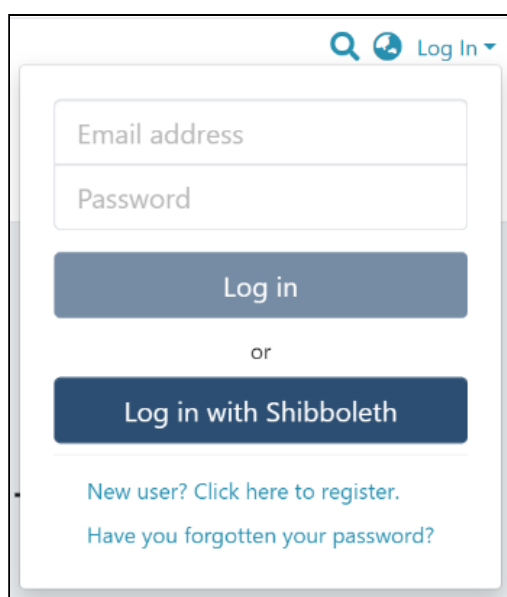
- [Embargo an item during the item submission](#)(see page 1020)
- [Embargo an item via edit item](#)(see page 1026)

#### 8.3.4.1 Audience

1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator
3. Collection Administrator
4. Item Administrator/submitter

#### 8.3.4.2 Embargo an item during the item submission

Step 1: Login using your credentials



Search Log In

Email address

Password

Log in

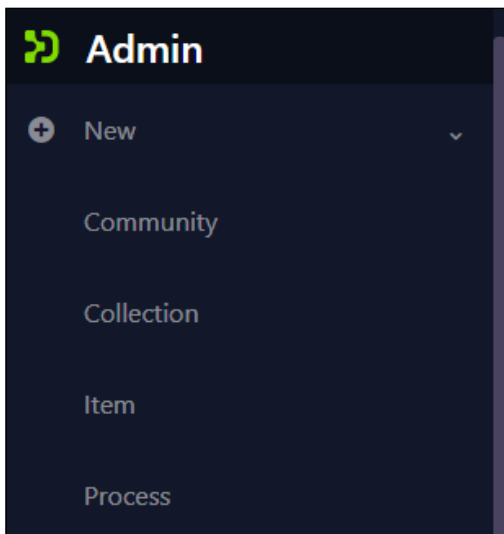
or

Log in with Shibboleth

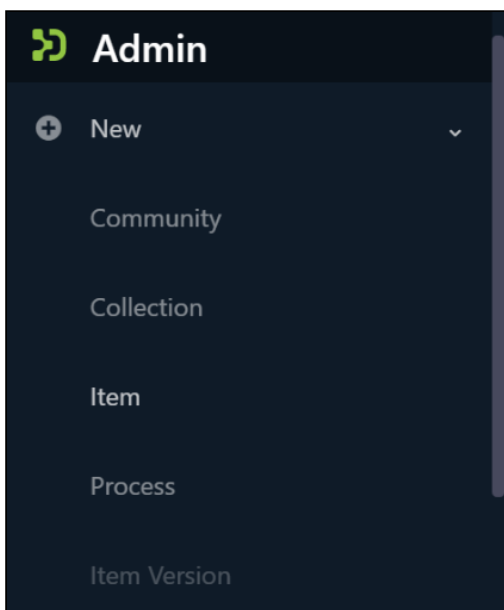
[New user? Click here to register.](#)

[Have you forgotten your password?](#)

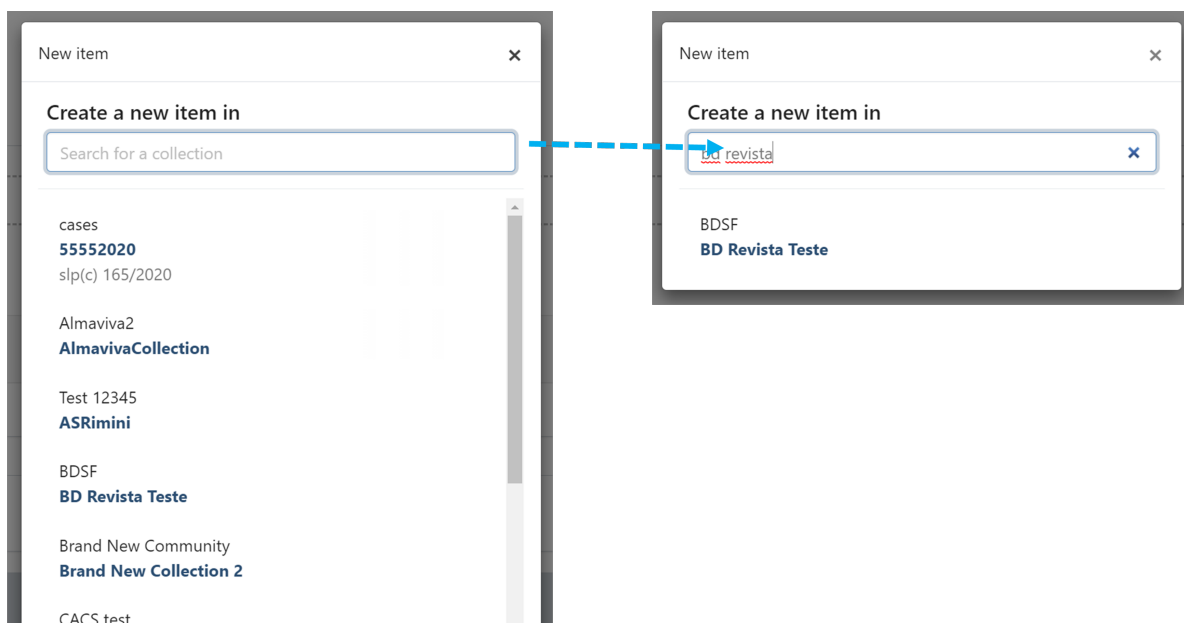
Step 2: Roll over the cursor on the “+” sign.



Step 3: Click on “New” and click on “item” to proceed further in the Item addition process

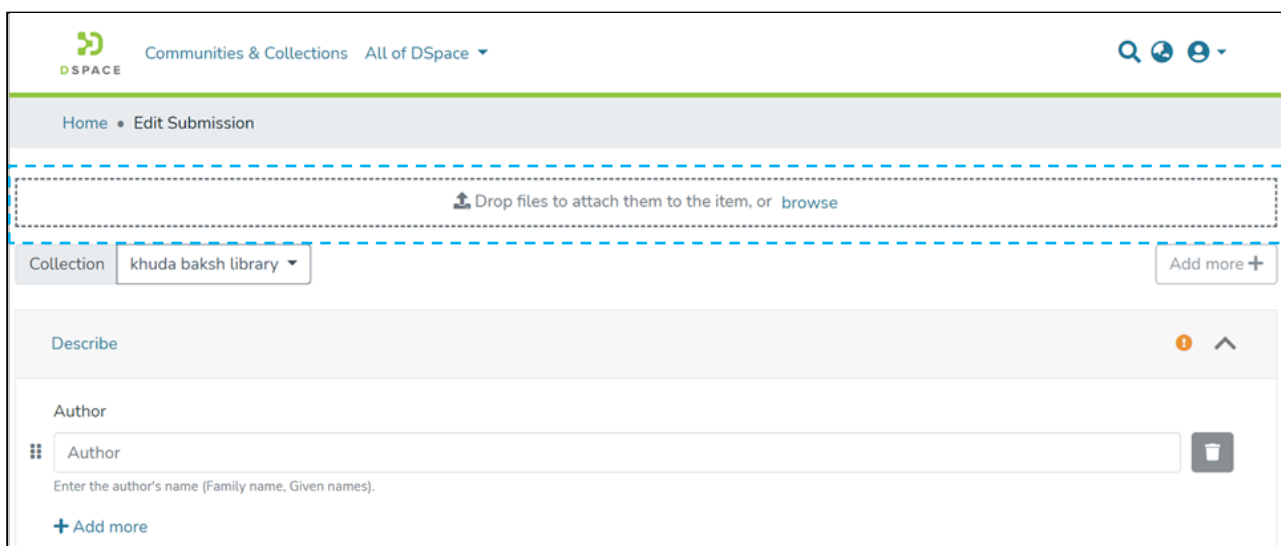


Step 4: A popup window with a collection list will appear. The user can select the target collection by typing its name or scrolling down the collection list. Then, click on the collection to initiate item submission.



Step 5: Users will see the item submission form after selecting the target collection. The first step is to upload attachment(s) in the Item. In DSpace terminology, an attachment is known as a “bitstream.”

Click on the “browse” link to upload attachment(s). Users can upload multiple files by selecting them together or dragging them into the space.



A progress bar showing bitstream upload progress will appear, as demonstrated in the illustration below. In addition, after a successful bitstream upload, a prompt confirming success or failure will appear.

The screenshot shows the DSpace submission interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, "Communities & Collections", and "All of DSpace". Below this is a breadcrumb trail: "Home • Edit Submission". A dashed box highlights a file in the queue: "Queue length: 1 | kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_generation\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf" with a "Processing..." status and a trash icon. Below the queue, there is a "Collection" dropdown menu set to "khuda baksh library" and an "Add more +" button. The "Describe" section is visible, featuring an "Author" label, a text input field containing "Author", and a trash icon. A note below the input field reads: "Enter the author's name (Family name, Given names)." and there is a "+ Add more" button.

### Bitstream upload in progress

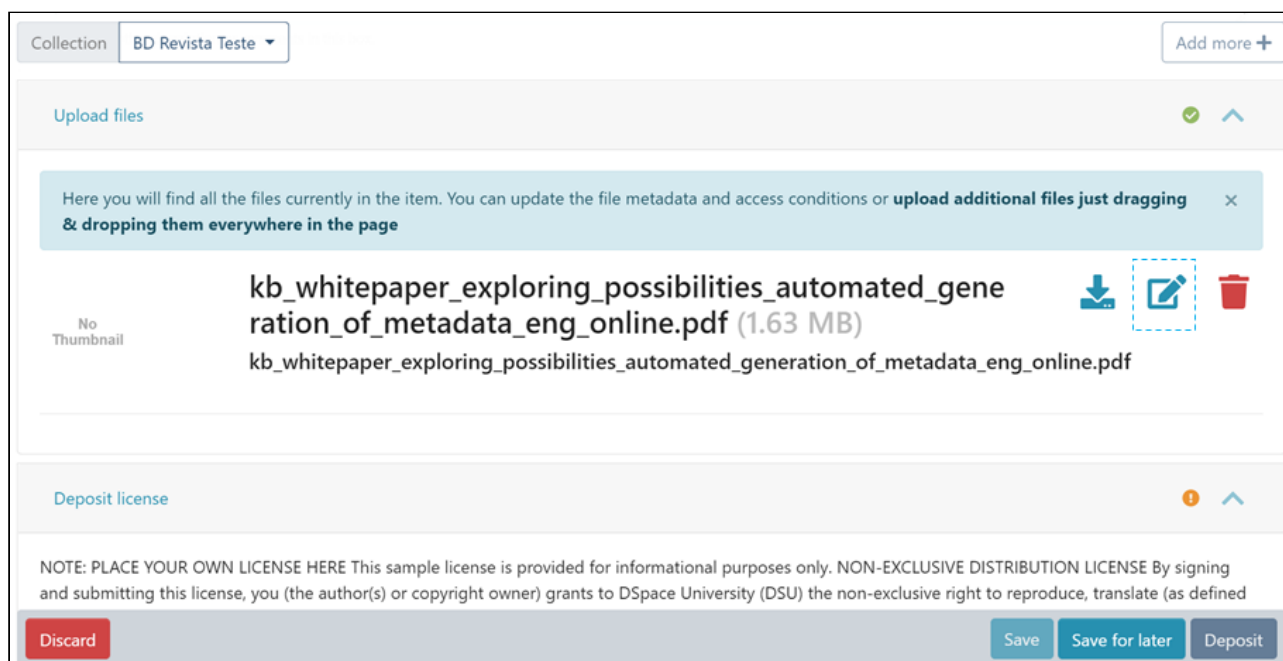
This screenshot shows the DSpace submission interface after a successful upload. A green notification banner at the top right displays a checkmark and the text "Upload successful". The breadcrumb trail remains "Home • Edit Submission". A dashed box highlights a drop zone with the text: "Drop files to attach them to the item, or browse". Below this, the "Collection" dropdown is still set to "khuda baksh library" with an "Add more +" button. The "Describe" section is identical to the previous screenshot, with the "Author" field containing "Author" and a note: "Enter the author's name (Family name, Given names)." and a "+ Add more" button.

### Bitstream Upload Successful

Step 6: After uploading bitstream, the next step is to describe the Item by adding metadata.

Please refer **Add Item** process for detailed documentation on populating information in the metadata fields.

Step 7: Click on the edit button against any attachment to add embargo policy.



Collection: BD Revista Teste

Upload files

Here you will find all the files currently in the item. You can update the file metadata and access conditions or **upload additional files just dragging & dropping them everywhere in the page**

No Thumbnail

**kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_generation\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf (1.63 MB)**

kb\_whitepaper\_exploring\_possibilities\_automated\_generation\_of\_metadata\_eng\_online.pdf

Deposit license

NOTE: PLACE YOUR OWN LICENSE HERE This sample license is provided for informational purposes only. NON-EXCLUSIVE DISTRIBUTION LICENSE By signing and submitting this license, you (the author(s) or copyright owner) grants to DSpace University (DSU) the non-exclusive right to reproduce, translate (as defined

Discard Save Save for later Deposit

Step 8: Users can apply multiple policies on an attachment, and there are various available options. Click on the dropdown list under the “Access condition” type and select embargo, as highlighted in the screenshot below.

After selecting embargo in the dropdown list, the “Grant access from” date field will be activated. Next, users can choose the future date, after which the attachment should be accessible to the larger set of DSpace users.

Upload files ✓ ^

Here you will find all the files currently in the item. You can update the file metadata and access conditions or **upload additional files just dragging & dropping them everywhere in the page** ×

**No Thumbnail Available**

### Test document for uploading purposes.pdf (41.21 KB) 📁 ⛔ 🗑

Title \*

Enter the name of the file.

Description

Description

Enter a description for the file

[+ Add more](#)

Access condition type

Grant access from \*   Grant access until \*

[+ Add more](#)

Users can add multiple policies to the attachment by clicking the “Add more” link. For example, a user can define an embargo on an item until a future date. Likewise, a lease policy can keep the attachment open access until another date in the future.

Step 9: After updating all information, the submitter clicks on the “I confirm the license above” checkbox to accept the repository’s license.



Collection: BD Revista Teste

Deposit license

NOTE: PLACE YOUR OWN LICENSE HERE This sample license is provided for informational purposes only. NON-EXCLUSIVE DISTRIBUTION LICENSE By signing and submitting this license, you (the author(s) or copyright owner) grants to DSpace University (DSU) the non-exclusive right to reproduce, translate (as defined below), and/or distribute your submission (including the abstract) worldwide in print and electronic format and in any medium, including but not limited to audio or video. You agree that DSU may, without changing the content, translate the submission to any medium or format for the purpose of preservation. You also agree that DSU may keep more than one copy of this submission for purposes of security, back-up and preservation. You represent that the submission is your original work, and that you have the right to grant the rights contained in this license. You also represent that your submission does not, to the best of your knowledge, infringe upon anyone's copyright. If the submission contains material for which you do not hold copyright, you represent that you have obtained the unrestricted permission of the copyright owner to grant DSU the rights required by this license, and that such third-party owned material is clearly identified and acknowledged within the text or content of the submission. IF THE SUBMISSION IS BASED UPON WORK THAT HAS BEEN SPONSORED OR SUPPORTED BY AN AGENCY OR ORGANIZATION OTHER THAN DSU, YOU REPRESENT THAT YOU HAVE FULFILLED ANY RIGHT OF REVIEW OR OTHER OBLIGATIONS REQUIRED BY SUCH CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT. DSU will clearly identify your name(s) as the author(s) or owner(s) of the submission, and will not make any alteration, other than as allowed by this license, to your submission.

I confirm the license above

Buttons: Discard, Save, Save for later, Deposit

Step 10: Click on the “Deposit” button to submit the Item in DSpace. Users will get to see a confirmation prompt upon successful submission of the Item.

### 8.3.4.3 Embargo an item via edit item

Step 1: Login using your credentials

Search, Log In

Email address

Password

Log in

or

Log in with Shibboleth

[New user? Click here to register.](#)

[Have you forgotten your password?](#)

Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search an item

2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item

Click on the “Edit” button appearing on the right-hand side of the item title.

[Home](#) / [Publications](#) / [Articles](#)  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

**Publication:**

## A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

No  
Thumbnail

**Date**  
2006-10-15

**Authors**  
Simmons, Cameron

**Authors**  
[Simmons, Cameron](#)

**Abstract**  
BACKGROUND: Although meningitis is the most severe form of infection caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis, the immunopathogenesis of this disease is poorly understood. We tested the hypothesis that polymorphisms in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein (TIRAP), an adaptor protein that mediates signals from Toll-like receptors activated by mycobacteria, are associated with susceptibility to tuberculosis (TB).



Step 3: Click on the “Authorizations” button under the “Status” tab to continue with adding the embargo policy.

### Edit Item

Status

Bitstreams

Metadata

Relationships

Version History

Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID:	03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da
Handle:	10673/1285
Last Modified:	2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000
Item Page:	<a href="/items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da">/items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da</a>
Edit item's authorization policies	<input type="button" value="Authorizations..."/>
Manage mapped collections	<input type="button" value="Mapped collections"/>
Withdraw item from the repository	<input type="button" value="Withdraw..."/>
Make item private	<input type="button" value="Make it private..."/>
Completely expunge item	<input type="button" value="Permanently delete"/>
Move item to another collection	<input type="button" value="Move..."/>
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Step 4: The user will see multiple options against each attachment as explained below:

1. **Download Bitstream:** Click on this button to download the attachment on your local device for view.
2. **Edit Bitstream:** Click on the “Edit bitstream” button for editing details. Explained in the next step
3. **Delete Bitstream:** Click on the “Delete Bitstream” button to delete bitstream from the bundle.

Click on the “edit bitstream” button to embargo the attachment.

Name	Description	Format	Actions
<b>BUNDLE: ORIGINAL</b>			
61966689567_718AD104-5E41-412F-9704-8E7ADBBFA52B.jpeg		JPEG	1 2 3 Download Edit Delete Refresh
IMG_0025.jpeg		JPEG	Download Edit Delete Refresh
<b>BUNDLE: LICENSE</b>			
license.txt		License	Download Edit Delete Refresh

Step 5: Click on “Edit bitstream’s Policies” to continue with the embargo process.

Screen Shot 2021-01-24 at 1.25.17 PM.png (370.22 KB)

Filename \*   Primary bitstream

Description





Selected Format

[Edit bitstream's Policies](#)

Step 6: Click on the “Add” button to create the custom embargo policy for the attachment.

Home

Policies for Bitstream de06249f-0584-42a6-b3c7-6eebf2e4408f + Add Delete selected

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	19545		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			 
<input type="checkbox"/>	47256	Custom Embargo policy	TYPE_CUSTOM	READ		Administrator		2021-07-22	 

[← Back](#)

Step 7: Enter details for creating the embargo policy on this form and perform the following actions:

1. Select 'TYPE\_CUSTOM' under 'Select the policy type' dropdown menu
2. Select 'READ' under the 'Select the action type' dropdown list.
3. Select a future date under the End Date to determine when the embargo will end.
4. Select E-Person or a User group
5. Click on Save to create the policy

Home

Create new resource policy for Screen Shot 2021-01-24 at 1.25.17 PM.png

Name

Description

Select the policy type \* **1**

Select the action type \* **2**

Start Date End Date **3**

The eperson or group that will be granted the permission

Detailed documentation on various possibilities on this form is available under ‘Edit Bitstream’ user documentation.

Users will see a success prompt upon creating the policy and will be redirected to the bitstream policy page.

### 8.3.5 Lease an item

“Lease an item” helps restrict the Item’s attachment’s access after a future date. A user can lease an item during the submission or later by editing it. Both methods to lease an item are explained below.

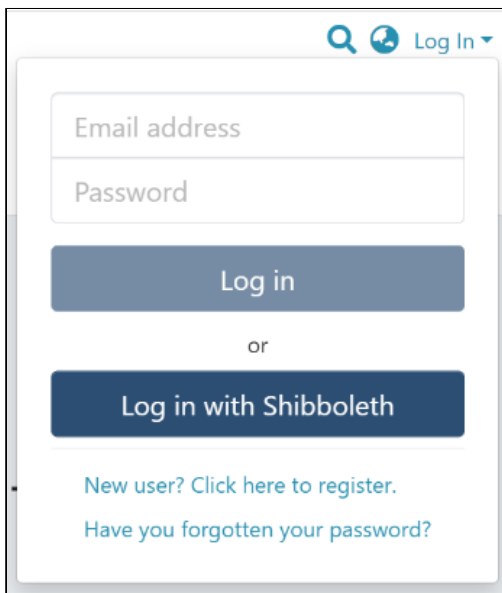
- [Audience](#)(see page 1031)
- [Lease an item during the item submission](#)(see page 1031)
- [Lease an item via edit item](#)(see page 1036)

### 8.3.5.1 Audience

1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator
3. Collection Administrator
4. Item Administrator/submitter

### 8.3.5.2 Lease an item during the item submission

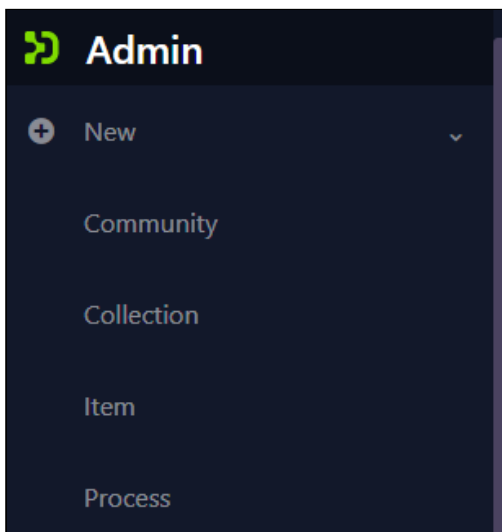
Step 1: Login using your credentials



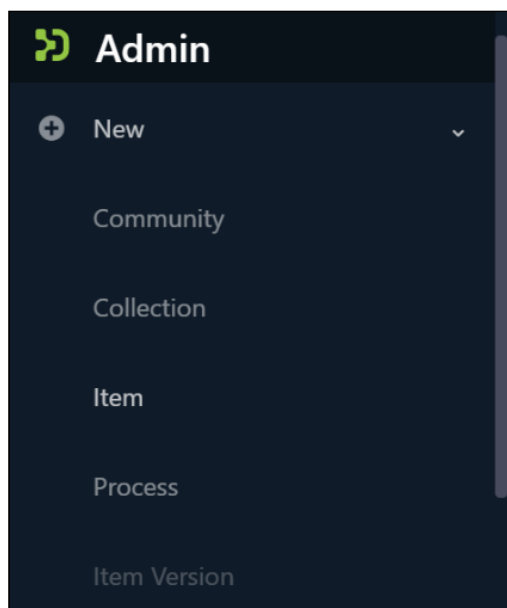
The screenshot shows a login form with the following elements:

- Search and user icons at the top right, followed by a "Log In" button with a dropdown arrow.
- An "Email address" input field.
- A "Password" input field.
- A "Log in" button.
- The word "or" centered below the button.
- A "Log in with Shibboleth" button.
- Two links at the bottom: "New user? Click here to register." and "Have you forgotten your password?"

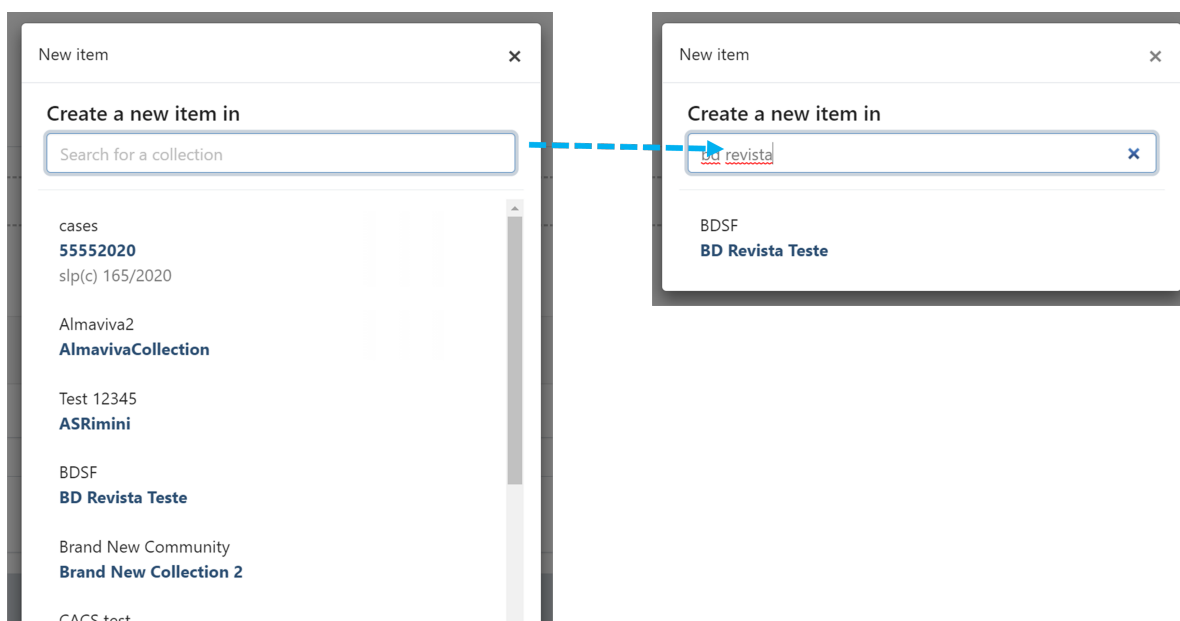
Step 2: Roll over the cursor on the “+” sign.



Step 3: Click on “New” and click on “item” to proceed further in the Item addition process

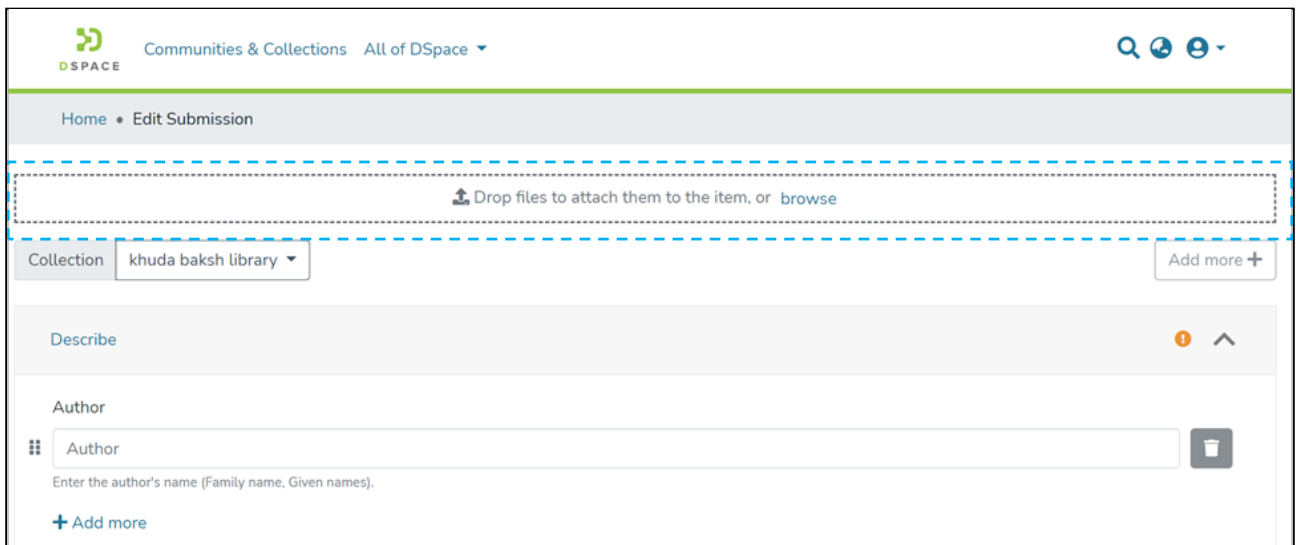


Step 4: A popup window with a collection list will appear. The user can select the target collection by typing its name or scrolling down the collection list. Then, click on the collection to initiate item submission.

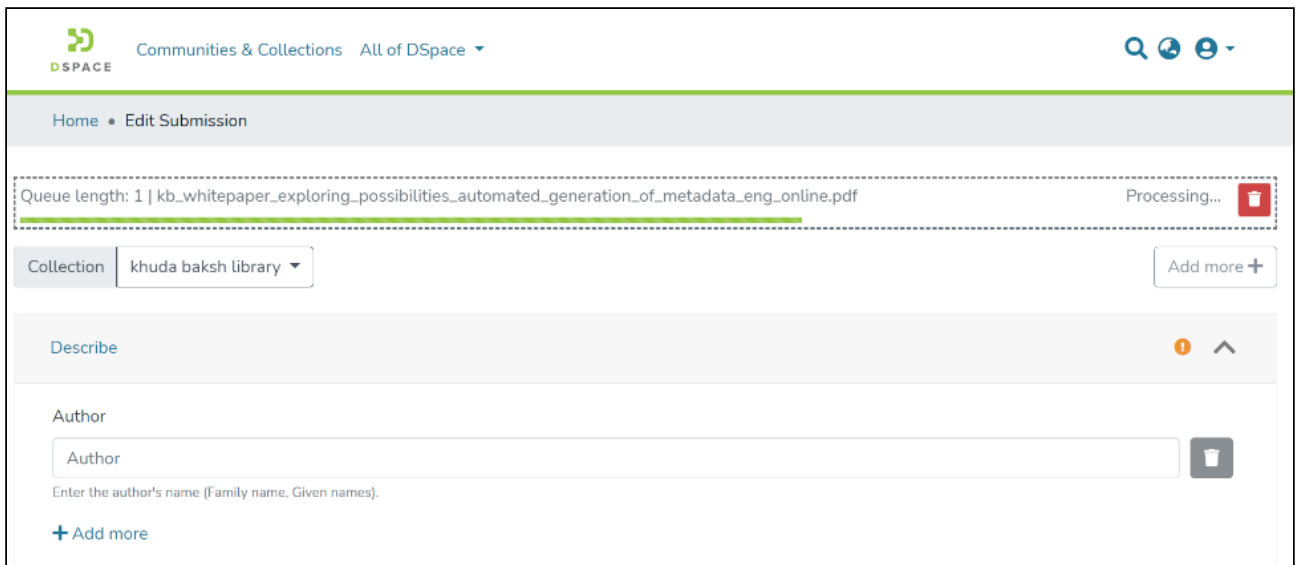


Step 5: Users will see the item submission form after selecting the target collection. The first step is to upload attachment(s) in the Item. In DSpace terminology, an attachment is known as a “bitstream.”

Click on the “browse” link to upload attachment(s). Users can upload multiple files by selecting them together or dragging them into the space.

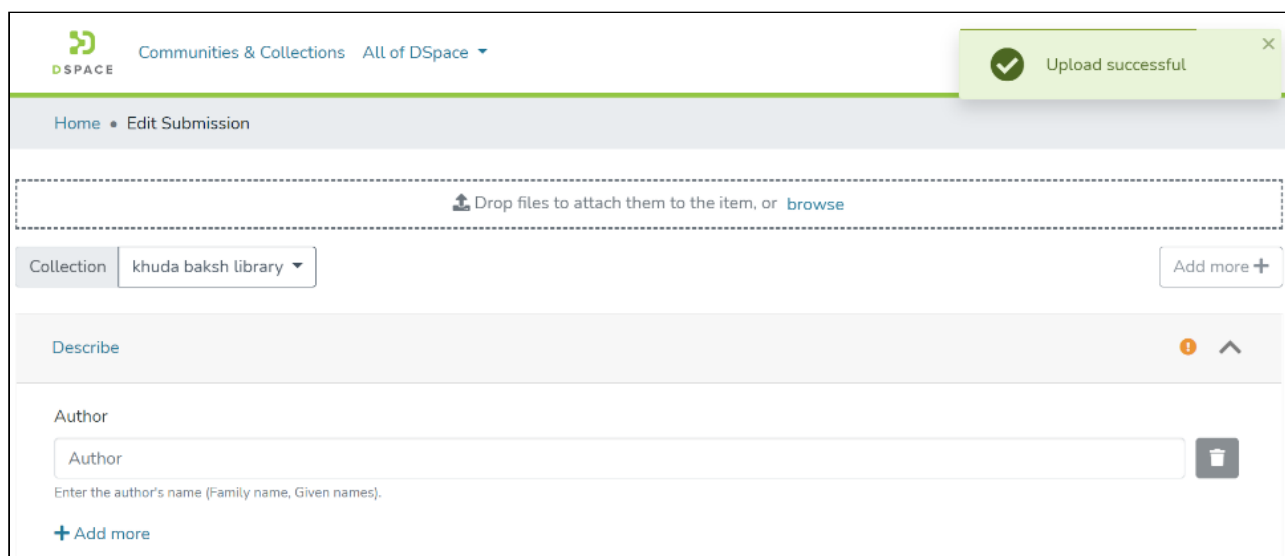


A progress bar showing bitstream upload progress will appear, as demonstrated in the illustration below. In addition, after a successful bitstream upload, a prompt confirming success or failure will appear.



### Bitstream upload in progress



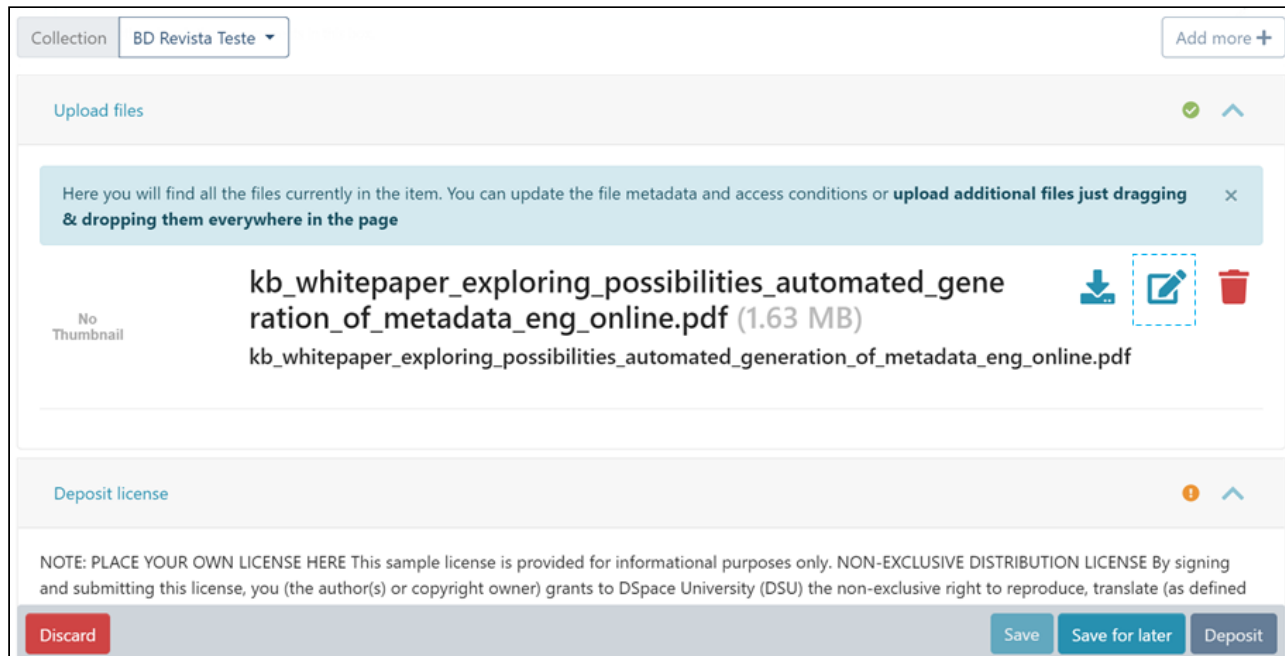


### Bitstream Upload Successful

Step 6: After uploading bitstream, the next step is to describe the Item by adding metadata.

Please refer **Add Item** process for detailed documentation on populating information in the metadata fields.

Step 7: Click on the “edit” button against any attachment to lease it.



Step 8: Users can apply multiple policies on an attachment from available options. Click on the dropdown list under the “Access condition” and select lease, as highlighted in the screenshot below.

After selecting the lease, the “Grant access until” date field will be activated. Next, choose the future date, after which the attachment should be restricted to the larger set of DSpace users.

Upload files ✓ ↑

Here you will find all the files currently in the item. You can update the file metadata and access conditions or **upload additional files just dragging & dropping them everywhere in the page** ✕

**No Thumbnail Available**

### Test document for uploading purposes.pdf (41.21 KB) 📄 🚫 🗑️

Title \*

Enter the name of the file.

Description

Description

Enter a description for the file

[+ Add more](#)

Access condition type

Grant access from \* Grant access until \*

[+ Add more](#)

Users can add multiple policies to the attachment by clicking the “Add more” link. For example, a user can define a lease on an item until a future date. And after that date, another policy can be defined for the next period.

Step 9: After updating all information, the submitter clicks on the “I confirm the license above” checkbox to accept the repository’s license.

Collection: BD Revista Teste

Deposit license

NOTE: PLACE YOUR OWN LICENSE HERE This sample license is provided for informational purposes only. NON-EXCLUSIVE DISTRIBUTION LICENSE By signing and submitting this license, you (the author(s) or copyright owner) grants to DSpace University (DSU) the non-exclusive right to reproduce, translate (as defined below), and/or distribute your submission (including the abstract) worldwide in print and electronic format and in any medium, including but not limited to audio or video. You agree that DSU may, without changing the content, translate the submission to any medium or format for the purpose of preservation. You also agree that DSU may keep more than one copy of this submission for purposes of security, back-up and preservation. You represent that the submission is your original work, and that you have the right to grant the rights contained in this license. You also represent that your submission does not, to the best of your knowledge, infringe upon anyone's copyright. If the submission contains material for which you do not hold copyright, you represent that you have obtained the unrestricted permission of the copyright owner to grant DSU the rights required by this license, and that such third-party owned material is clearly identified and acknowledged within the text or content of the submission. IF THE SUBMISSION IS BASED UPON WORK THAT HAS BEEN SPONSORED OR SUPPORTED BY AN AGENCY OR ORGANIZATION OTHER THAN DSU, YOU REPRESENT THAT YOU HAVE FULFILLED ANY RIGHT OF REVIEW OR OTHER OBLIGATIONS REQUIRED BY SUCH CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT. DSU will clearly identify your name(s) as the author(s) or owner(s) of the submission, and will not make any alteration, other than as allowed by this license, to your submission.

I confirm the license above

Buttons: Discard, Save, Save for later, Deposit

Step 10: Click on the “Deposit” button to submit the Item in DSpace. Users will get to see a confirmation prompt upon successful submission of the Item.

### 8.3.5.3 Lease an item via edit item

Step 1: Login using your credentials

Search icon, Log In

Email address

Password

Log in

or

Log in with Shibboleth

New user? [Click here to register.](#)

[Have you forgotten your password?](#)

Step 2: Go to the Item you want to edit

Users can reach an item through multiple methods, as listed below:

1. Search an item

2. Browse communities and collections
3. Finding an item in the Administration section at Edit > Item
4. Click the “Edit” button on the right side of the item title.

[Home](#) / [Publications](#) / [Articles](#)  
 / A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

**Publication:**

## A polymorphism in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein is associated with susceptibility to meningeal tuberculosis

No Thumbnail

**Date**  
2006-10-15

**Authors**  
Simmons, Cameron

**Authors**  
Simmons, Cameron

**Abstract**  
BACKGROUND: Although meningitis is the most severe form of infection caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis, the immunopathogenesis of this disease is poorly understood. We tested the hypothesis that polymorphisms in Toll-interleukin 1 receptor domain containing adaptor protein (TIRAP), an adaptor protein that mediates signals from Toll-like receptors activated by mycobacteria, are associated with susceptibility to tuberculosis (TB).

Step 3: Click on the “Authorizations” button under the “Status” tab to continue with leasing attachment(s).

### Edit Item

Status

Bitstreams

Metadata

Relationships

Version History

Collection Mapper

Welcome to the item management page. From here you can withdraw, reinstate, move or delete the item. You may also update or add new metadata / bitstreams on the other tabs.

Item Internal ID:	03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da
Handle:	10673/1285
Last Modified:	2021-03-07T12:09:08.717+0000
Item Page:	<a href="/items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da">/items/03324000-900a-40c6-b2c1-9dbbb4dbc9da</a>
Edit item's authorization policies	<input type="button" value="Authorizations..."/>
Manage mapped collections	<input type="button" value="Mapped collections"/>
Withdraw item from the repository	<input type="button" value="Withdraw..."/>
Make item private	<input type="button" value="Make it private..."/>
Completely expunge item	<input type="button" value="Permanently delete"/>
Move item to another collection	<input type="button" value="Move..."/>
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Step 4: The user will see multiple options against each attachment as explained below:

1. **Download Bitstream:** Click on this button to download the attachment on your local device for view.
2. **Edit Bitstream:** Click on the “Edit bitstream” button for editing details. Explained in the next step
3. **Delete Bitstream:** Click on the “Delete Bitstream” button to delete bitstream from the bundle.

Click on the “edit bitstream” button to lease the attachment.

Name	Description	Format	Actions
<b>BUNDLE: ORIGINAL</b>			
61966689567_718AD104-5E41-412F-9704-8E7ADBBFA52B.jpeg		JPEG	1 2 3 [Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]
IMG_0025.jpeg		JPEG	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]
<b>BUNDLE: LICENSE</b>			
license.txt		License	[Download] [Edit] [Delete] [Refresh]

Step 5: Click on “Edit bitstream’s Policies” to continue the leasing process.

Screen Shot 2021-01-24 at 1.25.17 PM.png (370.22 KB)

Filename \*   Primary bitstream

Description





Selected Format

[Edit bitstream's Policies](#)

Step 6: Click on the “Add” button to create the custom lease policy for the attachment.

Home

Policies for Bitstream de06249f-0584-42a6-b3c7-6eebf2e4408f + Add Delete selected

<input type="checkbox"/>	ID	Name	type	Action	EPerson	Group	Start Date	End Date	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	19545		TYPE_INHERITED	READ		Anonymous			 
<input type="checkbox"/>	47256	Custom Embargo policy	TYPE_CUSTOM	READ		Administrator		2021-07-22	 

← Back

Step 7: Enter details for creating the lease policy on this form and perform the following actions:

1. Select 'TYPE\_CUSTOM' under 'Select the policy type' dropdown menu
2. Select 'READ' under the 'Select the action type' dropdown list.
3. Select a future date under the End Date to determine when the embargo will end.
4. Select E-Person or a User group
5. Click on Save to create the policy

Home

Create new resource policy for Screen Shot 2021-01-24 at 1.25.17 PM.png

Name

Description

Select the policy type \* **1**

Select the action type \* **2**

Start Date   End Date **3**

The person or group that will be granted the permission

**4**

**5**

Detailed documentation on various possibilities on this form is available under 'Edit Bitstream' user documentation.

Users will see a success prompt upon creating the policy and be redirected to the bitstream policy page.

## 8.4 DSpace 7 Demo Quick Start

Front end

<https://demo7.dspace.org/home>

OAI-PMH

<https://api7.dspace.org/server/oai/request?verb=Identify>

REST-API

<https://api7.dspace.org/server/#/server/api>

SWORD v1

<https://api7.dspace.org/server/sword/servicedocument>

SWORD v2

<https://api7.dspace.org/server/swordv2/servicedocument>

Media viewer (video and image), IIF Mirador player are disabled on Demo

Creative Commons licenses are not enabled on Demo

## 8.4.1 DSpace 6 Demo (for comparison)

Front end

<https://demo.dspace.org/>

<https://demo.dspace.org/xmlui/>

OAI-PMH

<https://demo.dspace.org/oai/request?verb=Identify>

REST-API

<https://demo.dspace.org/rest>

SWORD v1

<https://demo.dspace.org/xmlui/sword/servicedocument><sup>720</sup>

SWORD v2

<https://demo.dspace.org/xmlui/swordv2/servicedocument><sup>721</sup>

Browse thumbnails are disabled

## 8.5 Management sidebar

Many of the administrative functions can be accessed from the Management sidebar. This list maps the menu to more detailed information.

- [New](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Community](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Collection](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Add item](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Process](#)(see page 1042)
- [Edit](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Community](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Collection](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Item](#)(see page 1042)
- [Import](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Metadata](#)(see page 1042)
- [Export](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Metadata](#)(see page 1042)

---

<sup>720</sup> <https://demo.dspace.org/sword/servicedocument>

<sup>721</sup> <https://demo.dspace.org/swordv2/servicedocument>



- [Access Control](#)(see page 1042)
  - [People](#)(see page 1042)
  - [Groups](#)(see page 1042)
- [Admin Search](#)(see page 1042)
- [Registries](#)(see page 1043)
  - [Metadata](#)(see page 1043)
  - [Format](#)(see page 1043)
- [Curation Task](#)(see page 1043)
- [Processes](#)(see page 1043)
- [Administer Workflow](#)(see page 1043)
- [Health](#)(see page 1043)

## 8.5.1 New

Quickly create or edit objects from anywhere in the system. Either browse to the object first, or search for it using the Admin sidebar. - [Release Notes](#)(see page 28)

### 8.5.1.1 Community

### 8.5.1.2 Collection

### 8.5.1.3 Add item

### 8.5.1.4 Process

Processes UI ([video](#)<sup>722</sup>) allows Administrators to run backend scripts/processes while monitoring their progress & completion. - [Release Notes](#)(see page 28)

See [Command Line Operations](#)(see page 608) for more detail about these commands.

## 8.5.2 Edit

- Quickly create or edit objects from anywhere in the system. Either browse to the object first, or search for it using the Admin sidebar.
- Bitstream Editing ([video](#)<sup>723</sup>) has a drag-and-drop interface for re-ordering bitstreams and makes adding and editing bitstreams more intuitive.
- Metadata Editing ([video](#)<sup>724</sup>) introduces suggest-as-you-type for field name selection of new metadata. - [Release Notes](#)(see page 28)

### 8.5.2.1 Community

- [Edit](#)(see page 933)
- [Delete](#)(see page 930)

---

722 <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vcsWkQONkY>

723 <https://youtu.be/s1msEKK0f68>

724 <https://youtu.be/6KVB2ugUgjI>

### 8.5.2.2 Collection

- [Edit](#)(see page 900)
- [Delete](#)(see page 897)

### 8.5.2.3 Item

- [Edit](#)(see page 955)
- [Delete](#)(see page 953)

## 8.5.3 Import

You can drop or browse CSV files that contain batch metadata operations on files. When "Validate Only" selected, the uploaded CSV will be validated. You will receive a report of detected changes, but no changes will be saved.

### 8.5.3.1 Metadata

## 8.5.4 Export

### 8.5.4.1 Metadata

## 8.5.5 Access Control

Login As (Impersonate) another account allows Administrators to debug issues that a specific user is seeing, or do some work on behalf of that user. (Login as an Admin, Click "Access Control" in sidebar, Click "People". Search for the user account & edit it. Click the "Impersonate EPerson" button. You will be authenticated as that user until you click "Stop Impersonating EPerson" in the upper right.) - [Release Notes](#)(see page 28)

### 8.5.5.1 People

### 8.5.5.2 Groups

## 8.5.6 Admin Search

Administrative Search ([video](#)<sup>725</sup>) combines retrieval of withdrawn items and private items, together with a series of quick action buttons. - [Release Notes](#)(see page 28)

---

<sup>725</sup><https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JV8Rb-9cByo&t=1s>

## 8.5.7 Registries

### 8.5.7.1 Metadata

### 8.5.7.2 Format

## 8.5.8 Curation Task

## 8.5.9 Processes

Processes UI ([video<sup>726</sup>](#)) allows Administrators to run backend scripts/processes while monitoring their progress & completion. - [Release Notes\(see page 28\)](#)

See [Command Line Operations\(see page 608\)](#) for more detail about these commands.

## 8.5.10 Administer Workflow

Administer Active Workflows ([video<sup>727</sup>](#)) allows Administrators to see every submission that is currently in the workflow approval process. - [Release Notes\(see page 28\)](#)

## 8.5.11 Health

**Admin "Health" menu provides basic control panel functionality** (*based on 6.x Control Panel*). When logged in as an Administrator, select "Health" from the side menu. You'll see a "Status" tab which provides useful information about the status of the DSpace backend, and an "Info" tab which provides an overview of backend configurations and Java information. - [Release Notes\(see page 28\)](#)

## 8.6 Menus

- [Communities & Collections\(see page 1044\)](#)
- [All of DSpace\(see page 1044\)](#)
  - [By Issue Date\(see page 1044\)](#)
  - [By Author\(see page 1044\)](#)
  - [By Title\(see page 1044\)](#)
  - [By Subject\(see page 1044\)](#)
- [Statistics\(see page 1044\)](#)
- [Search box\(see page 1045\)](#)
- [Language\(see page 1045\)](#)
- [Log In\(see page 1045\)](#)
  - [Profile\(see page 1045\)](#)
  - [MyDSpace\(see page 1045\)](#)

---

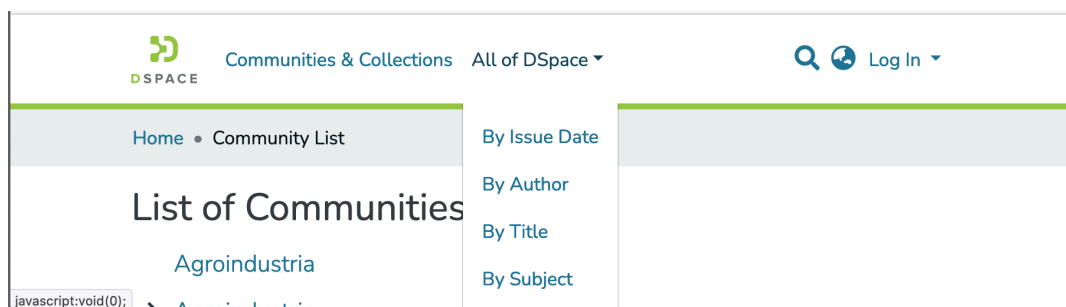
<sup>726</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vcsWkQONkY>

<sup>727</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CjH8VS2WDJE>

## 8.6.1 Communities & Collections

This is an alphabetical and hierarchical list of communities in the repository. Communities may contain sub-communities and collections. Use the left chevrons to expand the hierarchy.

## 8.6.2 All of DSpace



Browse by Issue Date, Author, Title, or Subject. Use the gear icon to set the sorting and number of results per page.

### 8.6.2.1 By Issue Date

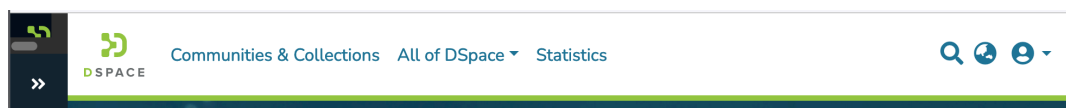
### 8.6.2.2 By Author

### 8.6.2.3 By Title

### 8.6.2.4 By Subject

## 8.6.3 Statistics

(Once logged in with correct access)



On the Home page, this lists the 10 items with most visits to the item page. (This does not count the downloads of the files contained in the item.)

On a Community page, this lists the total cumulative visits to the community's main page (not all the collections and items that community contains), visits to the community main page broken out by month for the past 7 months, and by top cumulative country and city views.

On a Collection page, this lists the total cumulative visits to the collection's main page (not all the items that collection contains), visits to the collection page broken out by month for the past 7 months, and by top cumulative country and city views.

On an Item page, this lists the total cumulative visits to the item page, (This does not count the downloads of the files contained in the item.), visits to that page broken out by month for the past 7 months, and by top cumulative country and city views.

## 8.6.4 Search box

Use this search box to retrieve search results that can be further refined by search filters, such as date, subject, author, and item type.

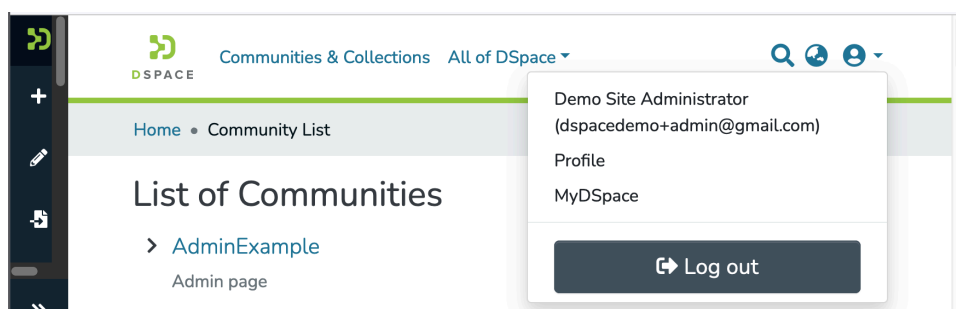
See [Search - Advanced](#)(see page 1061) for tips for creating Boolean searches.

## 8.6.5 Language

Choose your preferred supported language for the DSpace system. Repository files and metadata will be in their source language.

## 8.6.6 Log In

(Once logged in)



### 8.6.6.1 Profile

If enabled in the repository, one can set up a [Researcher Profile](#)(see page 443).

One can reset their password and view your group memberships.

### 8.6.6.2 MyDSpace

View or edit your submissions:

- Items that you are preparing (Status=Workspace),
- Items that are in the approval process (Status=Workflow),
- Items that have been approved and completed (Status=Archived).

## 8.7 Registry management

Info for repository managers, covering topics such as metadata registry management and format registry management.

- [Metadata Registry Management](#)(see page 1047)

## 8.7.1 Metadata Registry Management

The metadata registry maintains a list of various metadata schemas in DSpace. These metadata schemas consist of different metadata elements. However, DSpace requires the qualified Dublin Core schema.

- [Audience](#)(see page 1047)
- [Create Metadata Registry](#)(see page 1047)
- [Metadata Registry Management](#)(see page 1052)
- [Delete Metadata Schema](#)(see page 1055)

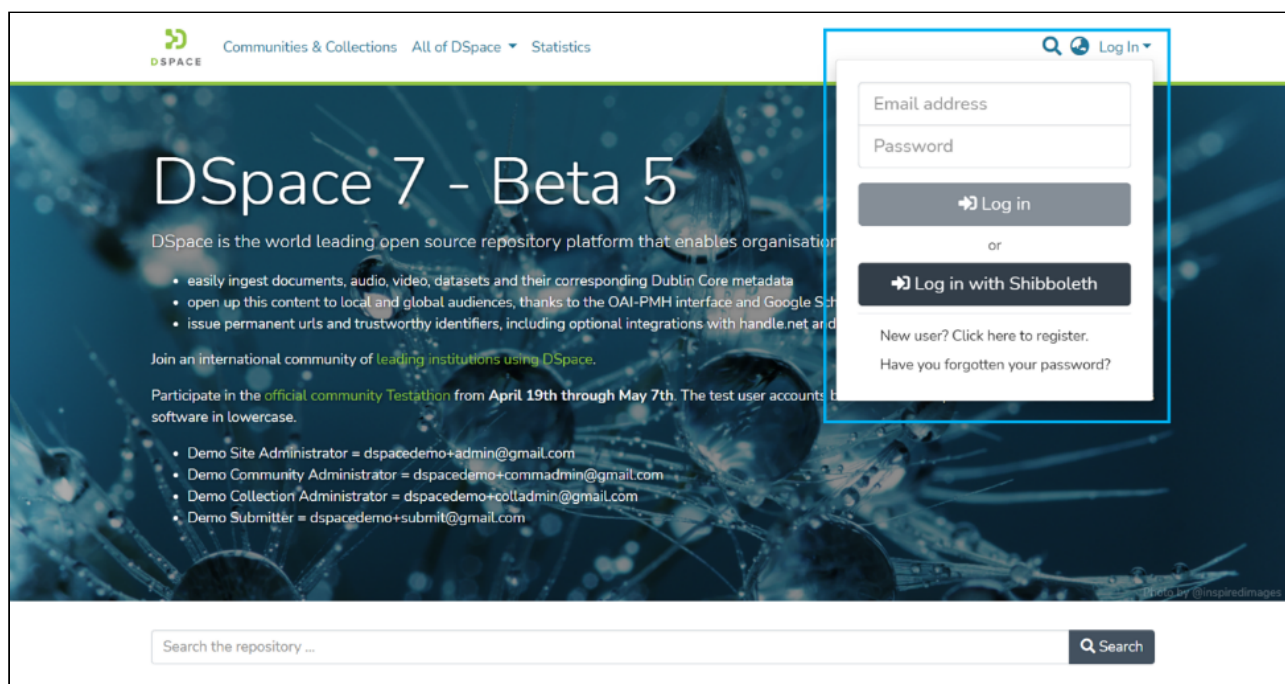
### 8.7.1.1 Audience

1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator

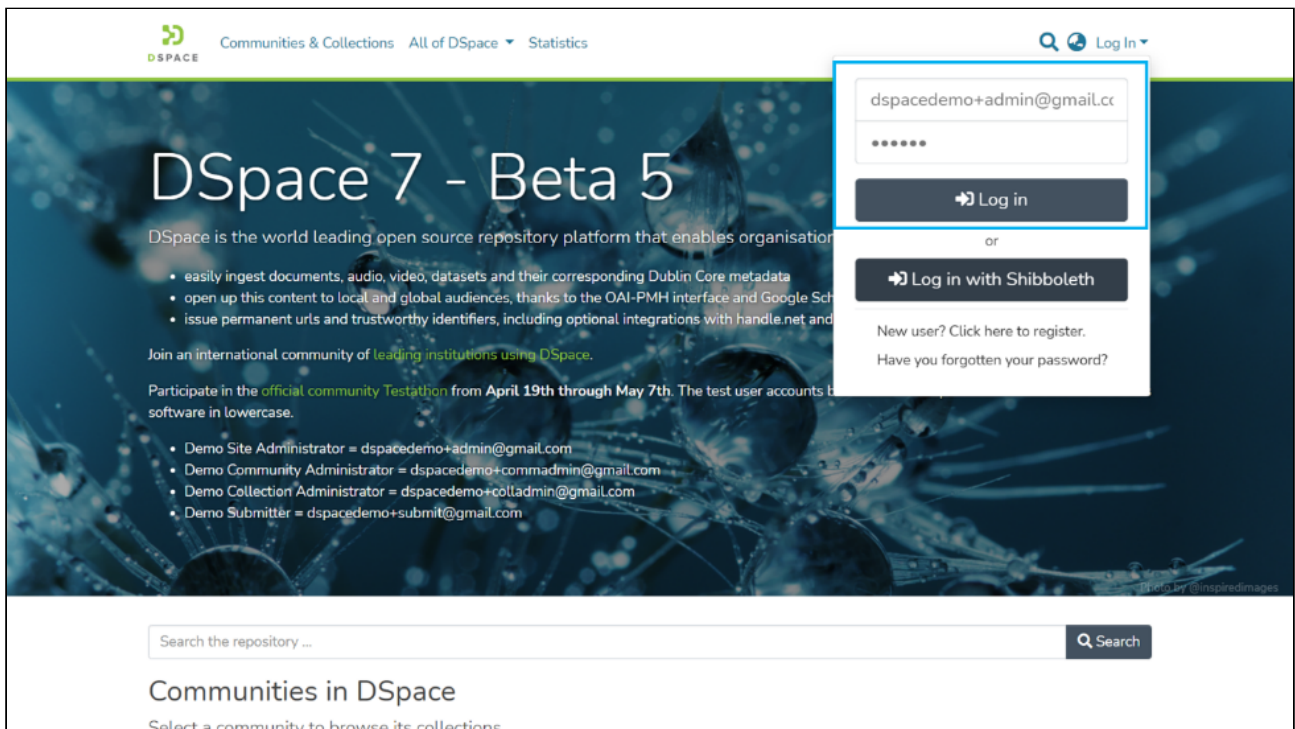
### 8.7.1.2 Create Metadata Registry

This process is for System and Community Administrator user profiles.

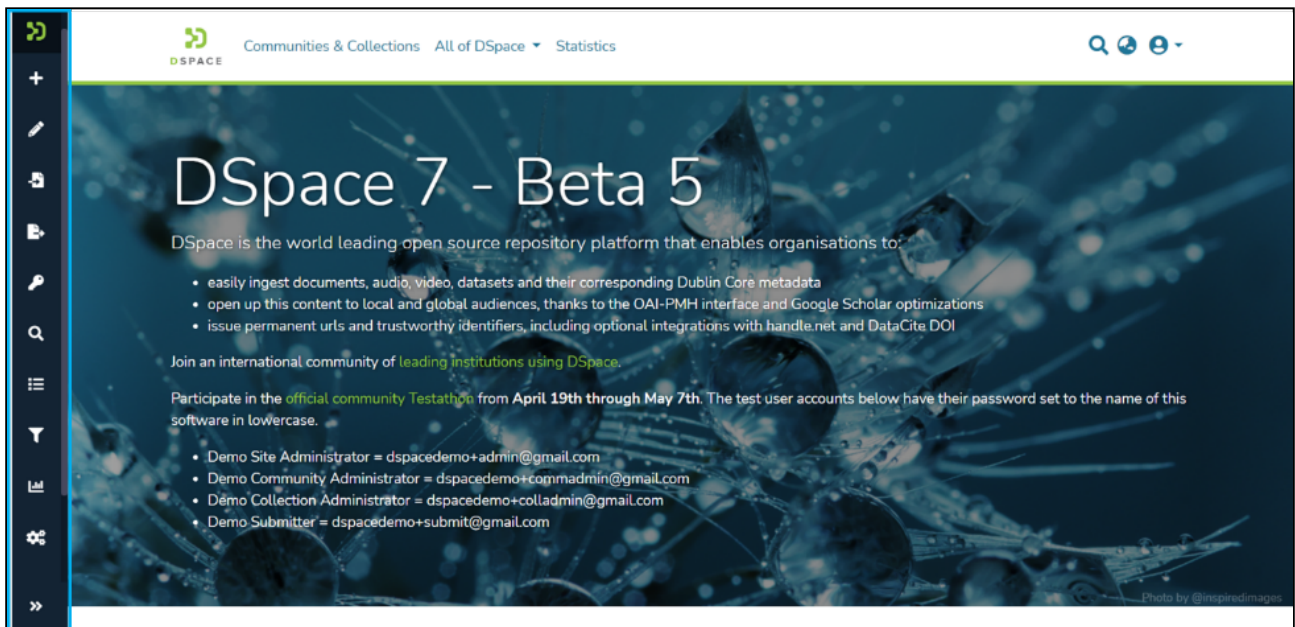
Step 1: Click on the “Log In” link appearing at the top right corner of the DSpace home page, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated in the below screen.



Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the login button for logging in to DSpace.



Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown in the below illustration.



Step 4: Roll over your cursor over the administration menu and click on Registries. Click on Metadata to go to the Metadata Registries.

**Management**

- + New
- Edit
- Import
- Export
- Access Control
- Admin Search
- Registries
  - Metadata
  - Format
- Unpin sidebar

DSpace 7 - Beta 5

DSpace is the world leading open source repository platform that enables organisations to:

- easily ingest documents, audio, video, datasets and their corresponding Dublin Core metadata
- open up this content to local and global audiences, thanks to the OAI-PMH interface and Google Scholar optimizations
- issue permanent urls and trustworthy identifiers, including optional integrations with handle.net and DataCite DOI

Join an international community of leading institutions using DSpace.

Participate in the official community Testathon from April 19th through May 7th. The test user accounts below have their password set to the name of this software in lowercase.

- Demo Site Administrator = dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com
- Demo Community Administrator = dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com
- Demo Collection Administrator = dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com
- Demo Submitter = dspacedemo+submit@gmail.com

Step 5: Enter the value of your choice in the 'Namespace' field and the short value in the 'Name' field.

Home • Metadata registry

## Metadata Registry

The metadata registry maintains a list of all metadata fields available in the repository. These fields may be divided amongst multiple schemas. However, DSpace requires the qualified Dublin Core schema.

### Create metadata schema

Namespace \*

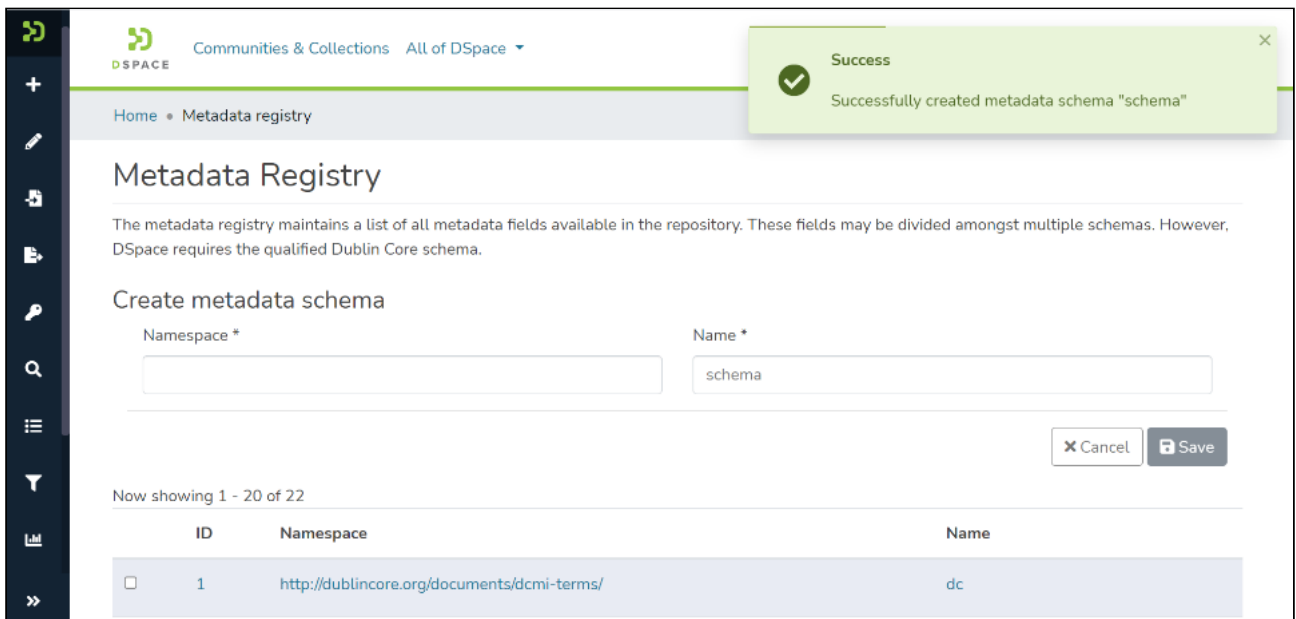
Name \*

Now showing 1 - 20 of 22

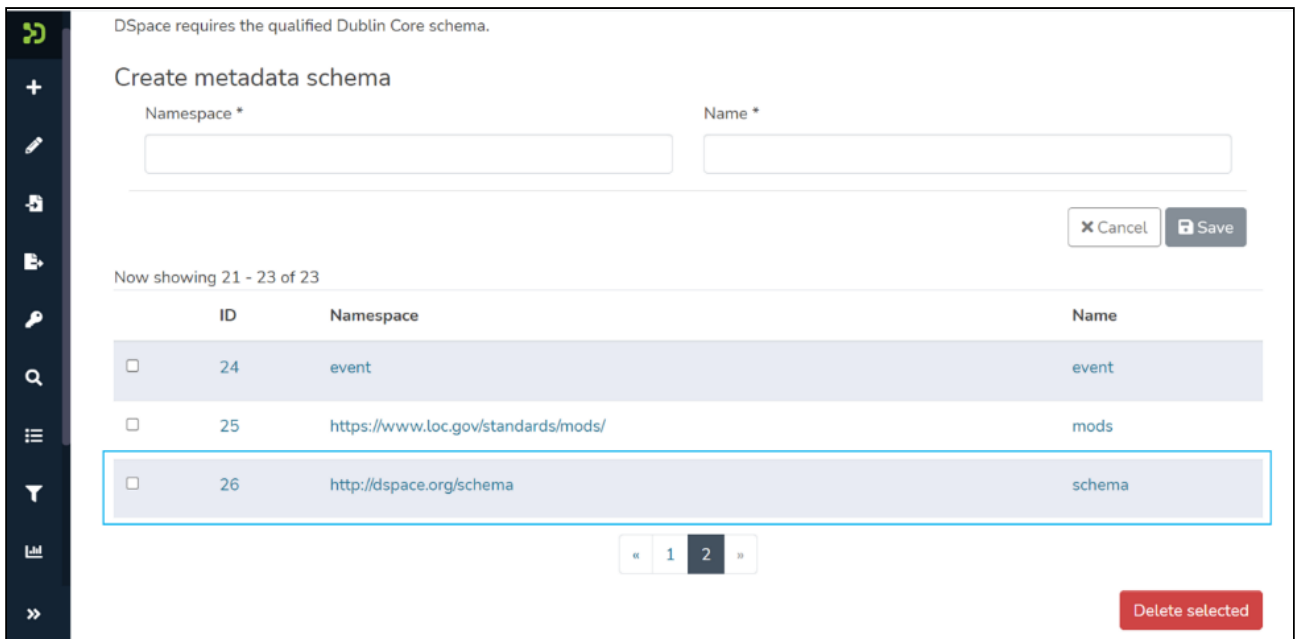
ID	Namespace	Name	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="http://dublincore.org/documents/dcmi-terms/">http://dublincore.org/documents/dcmi-terms/</a>	dc

Step 6: Click on the Save button to create a Metadata schema. A success prompt will appear upon metadata schema creation in the DSpace.





Step 7: Scroll down the list to see the schema added. Click on the namespace or name value to access the metadata schema.



Step 8: Enter desired values in 'Element,' 'Qualifier,' and 'scope note.'

1. **Element** is the primary value in the metadata schema. For example, suppose the date is required to be added as a metadata element. In that case, the element's value can be the date.
2. **Qualifier** – Use the Qualifier to segregate the metadata element further. For example, suppose you want to add multiple dates under an element. In that case, users can add various qualifiers for each date type. For example, there can be a content listing date, content de-listing date, and other types of dates.
3. **Scope Note** – Users can enter the definition of the metadata element created to benefit other users.

The screenshot shows the 'Create metadata field' form in the DSpace interface. The breadcrumb trail is 'Home • Metadata registry • Metadata schema'. The title is 'Metadata Schema: "schema"'. Below the title, it says 'This is the metadata schema for "http://dspace.org/schema"'. The form has three input fields: 'Element \*' with the value 'date', 'Qualifier' with the value 'listing', and 'Scope Note' with the value 'Listing date of the entity'. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

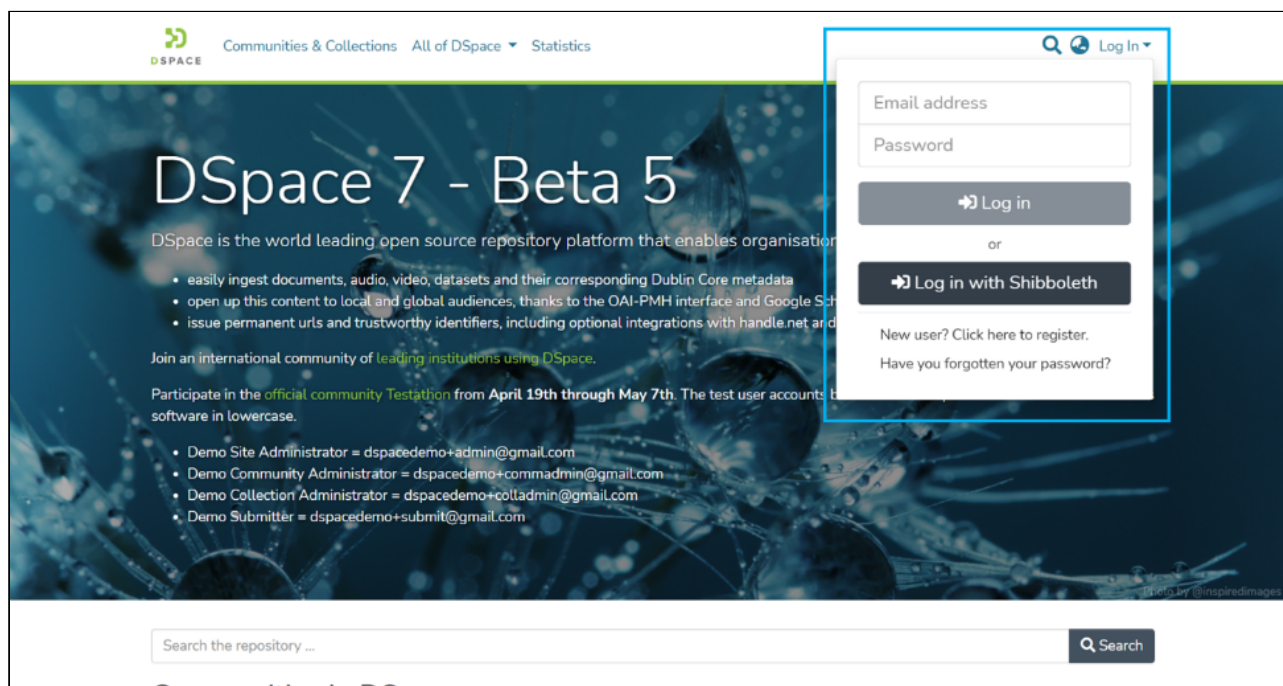
Step 9: Click on the Save button to add an element to the selected metadata schema. You will see a confirmation prompt upon the successful addition of the element.

The screenshot shows the same 'Create metadata field' form, but now with a success message. A green notification box at the top right says 'Success' and 'Successfully created metadata field "date.listing"'. The form fields are now empty. Below the form, there is a section titled 'Schema metadata fields' which shows 'Now showing 1 - 1 of 1'. The 'Save' button is highlighted in a darker shade, indicating it was just used.

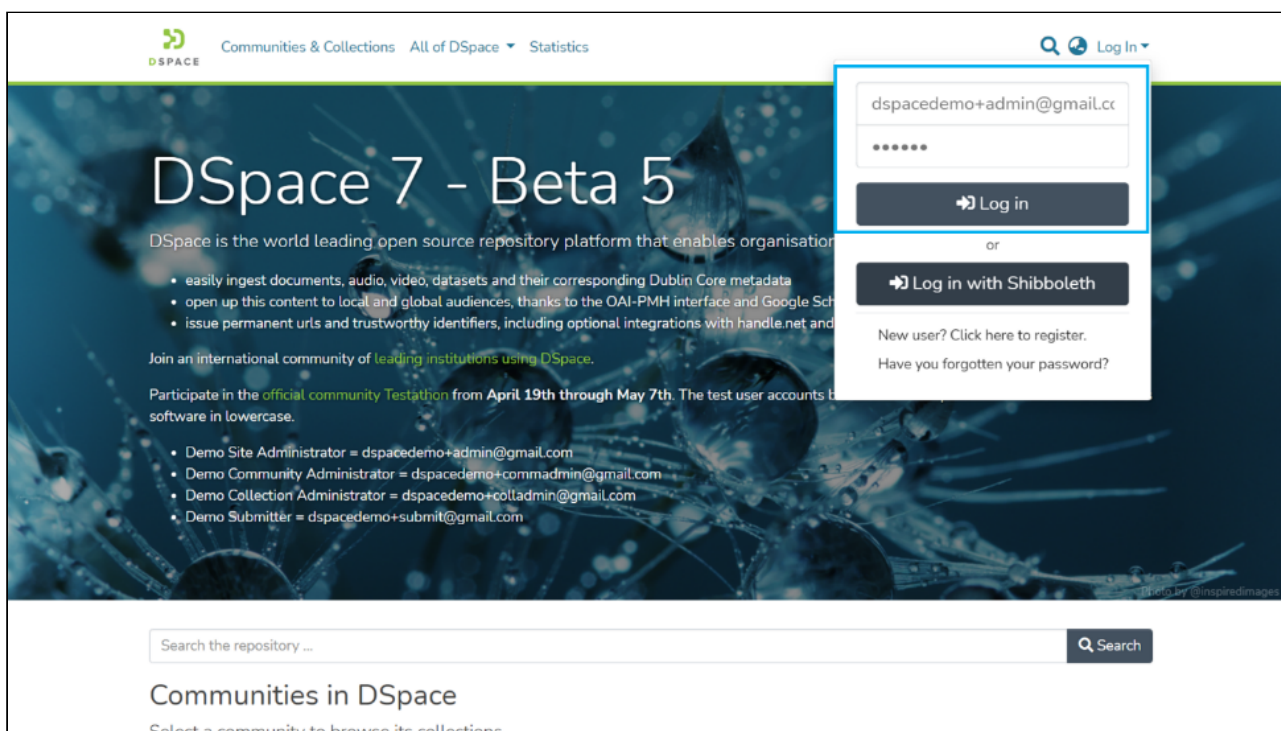
### 8.7.1.3 Metadata Registry Management

This process is for System and Community Administrator user profiles. Under metadata registry management, users can update or delete metadata elements or metadata registries.

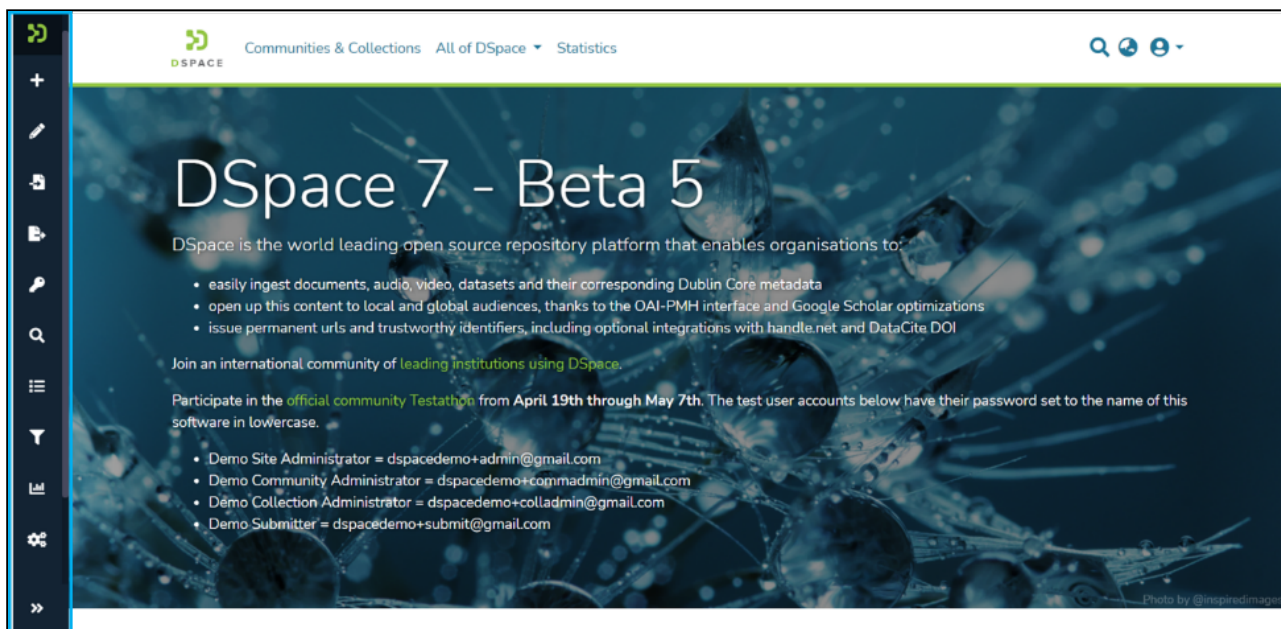
Step 1: Go to the home page of DSpace and click on the “Log In” link appearing at the top right corner of the screen, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated in the below screen.



Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the login button for logging in to DSpace.



Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown in the below illustration.



Step 4: Roll over your cursor over the administration menu and click on Registries. Click on Metadata to go to the Metadata Registries.

**Management**

- + New
- Edit
- Import
- Export
- Access Control
- Admin Search
- Registries
- Metadata**
- Format

DSpace 7 - Beta 5

DSpace is the world leading open source repository platform that enables organisations to:

- easily ingest documents, audio, video, datasets and their corresponding Dublin Core metadata
- open up this content to local and global audiences, thanks to the OAI-PMH interface and Google Scholar optimizations
- issue permanent urls and trustworthy identifiers, including optional integrations with handle.net and DataCite DOI

Join an international community of leading institutions using DSpace.

Participate in the official community Testathon from April 19th through May 7th. The test user accounts below have their password set to the name of this software in lowercase.

- Demo Site Administrator = dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com
- Demo Community Administrator = dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com
- Demo Collection Administrator = dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com
- Demo Submitter = dspacedemo+submit@gmail.com

Step 5: Click on the namespace or name of the Metadata schema you want to edit.

DSpace requires the qualified Dublin Core schema.

### Create metadata schema

Namespace \*  Name \*

Now showing 21 - 23 of 23

ID	Namespace	Name
<input type="checkbox"/> 24	event	event
<input type="checkbox"/> 25	https://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/	mods
<input type="checkbox"/> 26	http://dspace.org/schema	schema

« 1 2 »

Step 6: Click on the metadata element you want to edit. Upon clicking the target element, its values will be populated in the corresponding fields under the Edit Metadata fields section, as shown below.

**Metadata Schema: "schema"**

This is the metadata schema for "http://dspace.org/schema".

**Edit metadata field**

Element \*  Qualifier

Scope Note

**Schema metadata fields**

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

Field	Scope Note
<input type="checkbox"/> schema.date.listing	Listing date of the entity

Step 7: Update the value under the target field(s) and click on the ‘Save’ button to save them. A success prompt will appear upon successful update. In addition, an updated metadata element will appear in the metadata schema.

**Metadata Schema: "schema"**

This is the metadata schema for "http://dspace.org/schema".

**Create metadata field**

Element \*  Qualifier

Scope Note

**Schema metadata fields**

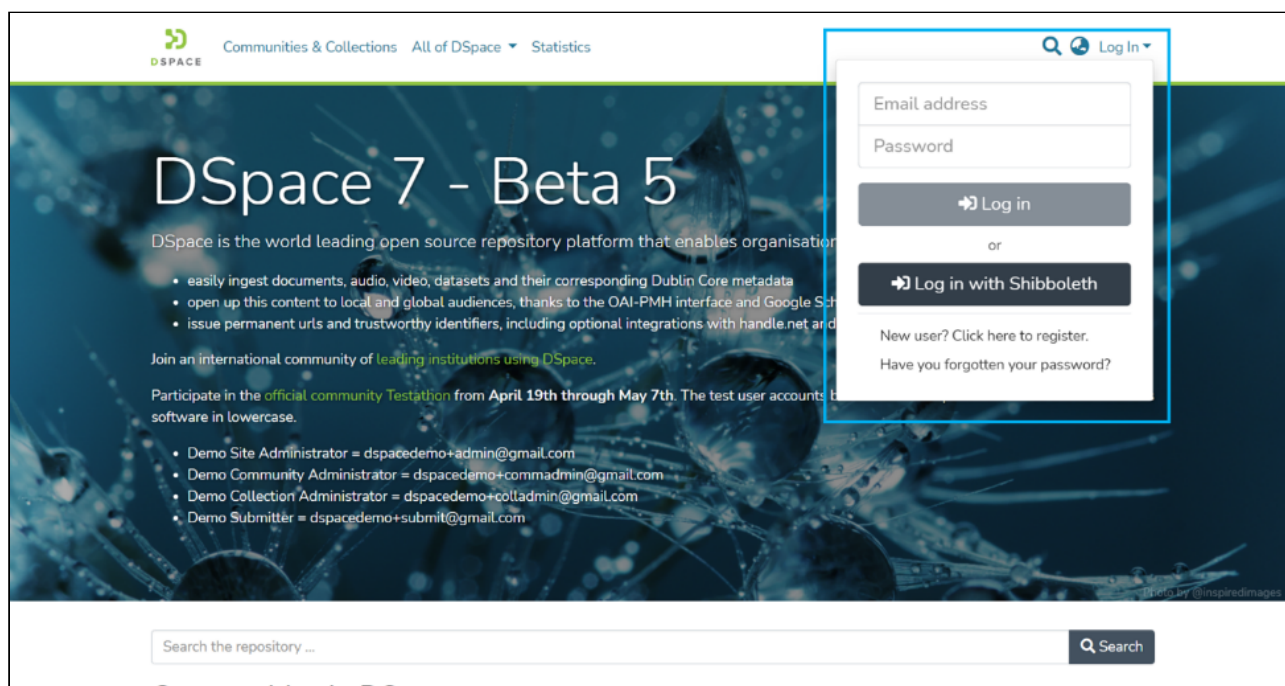
Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

Success  
Successfully edited metadata field "date.listing"

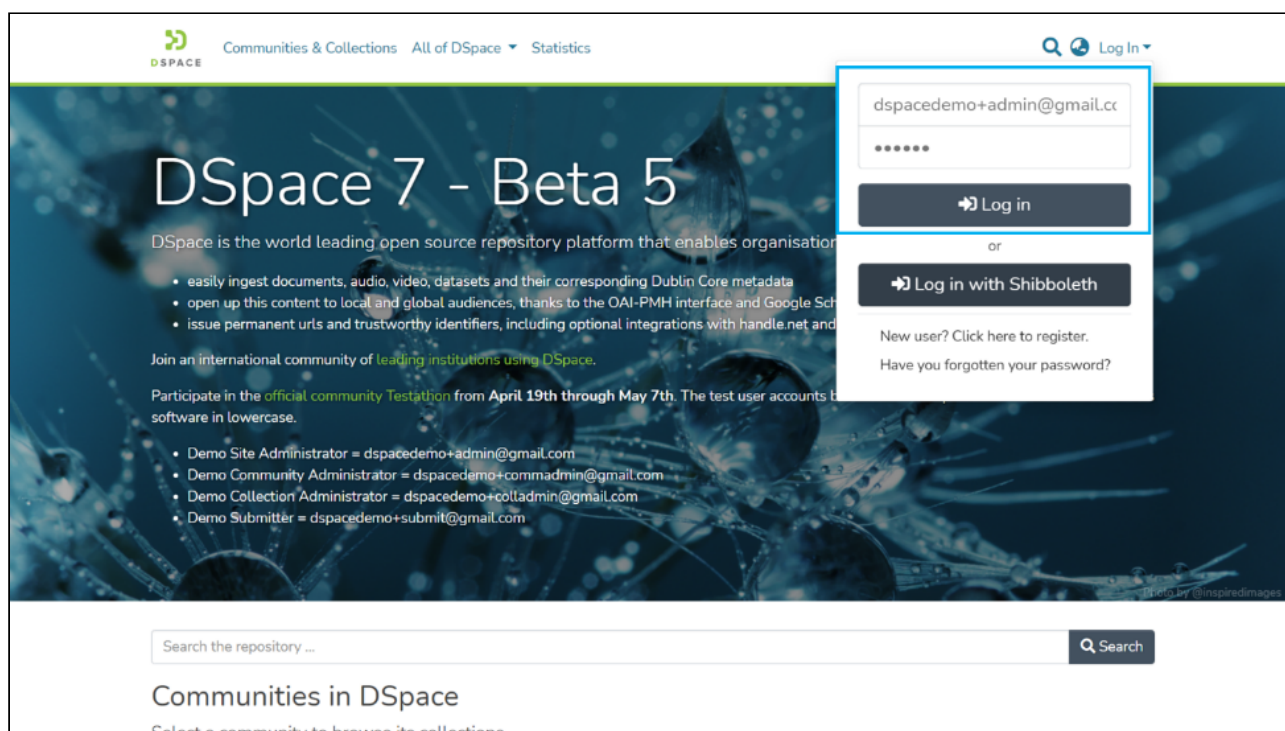
Home > Metadata registry > Metadata schema

#### 8.7.1.4 Delete Metadata Schema

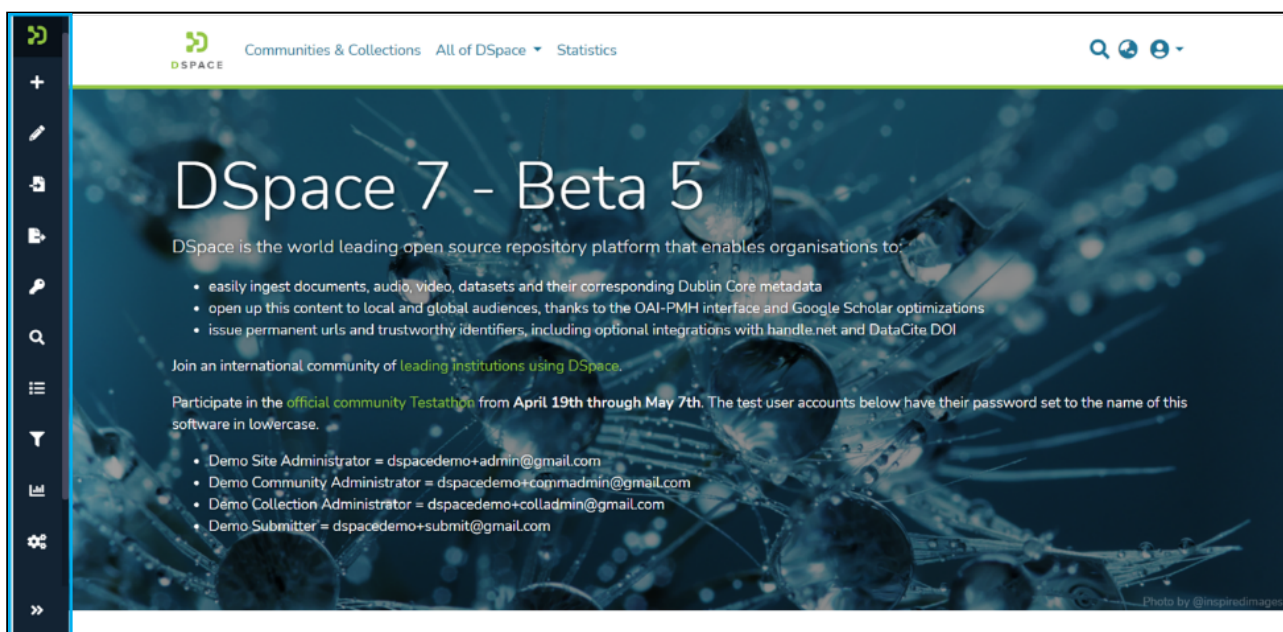
Step 1: Go to the home page of DSpace and click on the “Log In” link appearing at the top right corner of the screen, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated in the below screen.



Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the login button for logging in to DSpace.



Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown in the below illustration.



Step 4: Roll over your cursor over the administration menu and click on Registries. Click on Metadata to go to the Metadata Registries.



Step 5: Click on the namespace or name of the Metadata schema under which you want to delete an element.



DSpace requires the qualified Dublin Core schema.

### Create metadata schema

Namespace \*  Name \*

Now showing 21 - 23 of 23

	ID	Namespace	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	24	event	event
<input type="checkbox"/>	25	https://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/	mods
<input type="checkbox"/>	26	http://dspace.org/schema	schema

« 1 2 »

Step 6: Click on the checkbox appearing on the left of the metadata element you want to delete.

### Create metadata field

Element \*  Qualifier

Scope Note

### Schema metadata fields

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

	Field	Scope Note
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	schema.date.listing	Listing date of the entity

Step 7: Click on the 'Delete selected' button appearing in red at the bottom of the page. Upon successful deletion of the element, you will see a prompt confirming deletion of the field.

**Metadata Schema: "schema"**

This is the metadata schema for "http://dspace.org/schema".

**Create metadata field**

Element \*  Qualifier

Scope Note

**Schema metadata fields**

No metadata fields to show.

**Success**

Successfully deleted 1 metadata fields

Step 8: To delete the entire metadata schema, click on the checkbox appearing on the left of the target metadata schema(s).

**Create metadata schema**

Namespace \*  Name \*

Now showing 21 - 23 of 23

	ID	Namespace	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	24	event	event
<input type="checkbox"/>	25	https://www.loc.gov/standards/mods/	mods
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	26	http://dspace.org/schema	schema

« 1 2 »

Step 9: Click on the 'Delete selected' button appearing in red at the bottom of the page. Upon successful deletion of the element, you will see a prompt confirming deletion of the field.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • Metadata registry

## Metadata Registry

The metadata registry maintains a list of all metadata fields available in the repository. These fields may be divided amongst multiple schemas. However, DSpace requires the qualified Dublin Core schema.

### Create metadata schema

Namespace \*

Name \*

Now showing 21 - 23 of 23

ID	Namespace	Name
<input type="checkbox"/> 24	event	event

## 8.8 Request-a-copy

### 8.8.1 Scope

Covering the use of the request-a-copy feature which allows users to request bitstreams which are under embargo. This information does not cover how to activate or de-activate the feature.

#### 8.8.1.1 Use Case

The repository manager wants to be able to advise their depositors on the existence of the feature, that they should be prepared to receive requests.

#### 8.8.1.2 Audience

Repository managers, anonymous users, submitters

### 8.8.2 Feature description

If the file(s) (ie bitstreams) in a deposit are under embargo, they will not be available for users to download directly. However, users can send the depositor a request for the file(s) through DSpace, by double-clicking on a filename hyperlink and completing the form. DSpace sends the details of the request to the depositor by email. The depositor is offered the option to agree or decline to the request. If the depositor then uses the link in the email and the form it opens in DSpace to transmit their agreement to the request, the system will attempt to email the file(s) to the user.

### 8.8.2.1 Known limitation

Of course some files are too large for many email servers to cope with. For example files over 150 MB have been impossible for some systems to send.

## 8.9 Search - Advanced

Advanced Search (including boolean options) is already supported in the DSpace 7 search page. Boolean keywords can be used, and you can also specify to search within specific fields by name. Some examples:

- *Basic searching:* Searching `test power` will return results with both these words in them (this is equivalent to an "AND" boolean search). E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=test%20power>
- *Boolean searching options*
  - Searching `test AND power` will return results with both these words in them. E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=test%20AND%20power>
  - Searching `test OR power` will return results with either of these words in them. E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=test%20OR%20power>
  - Searching `test NOT power` will return results with "test" but not including "power". E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=test%20NOT%20power>
- *Phrase searching:* Searching `"test power"` (in quotes) will return results with the exact phrase "test power" in them. E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=%22test%20power%22>
- *Searching within specific fields*
  - Searching `dc.title:test` will only return results where the `dc.title` includes "test". E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.title:test>
  - Searching `dc.title:test AND dc.description.abstract:green` will only return results where the `dc.title` field includes "test" and the `dc.description.abstract` field returns "green". E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.title:test%20and%20dc.description.abstract:green>
- *Wildcard searching:*
  - Searching `test pow*` will return results including "test" and any word starting with "pow". E.g. [https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=test%20pow\\*](https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=test%20pow*)
  - Searching `dc.description.abstract:*` will return results that include the "dc.description.abstract" metadata field (with any value in it). E.g. [https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.description:\\*](https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.description:*)
- *Range searching:*
  - Searching `dc.date.issued:[1999 TO 2003]` will return results that have a "dc.date.issued" metadata field that has a date between 1999 and 2003 (inclusive). E.g. <https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.date.issued:%5B1999%20TO%202003%5D>
  - Searching `dc.date.issued:[2010 TO *]` will return results that have a "dc.date.issued" metadata field that has a date after (or including) 2010. E.g. [https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.date.issued:%5B2010%20TO%20\\*%5D](https://demo7.dspace.org/search?query=dc.date.issued:%5B2010%20TO%20*%5D)
- *Special characters:* Some characters have special meaning in searches, e.g. colon (:), asterisk (\*), boolean operators, etc. If you need to search for these characters exactly, surround them with double quotes.
  - Searching `"test:power"` will search for that string *exactly* (including the colon character). (NOTE: Without the quotes, DSpace would attempt to perform "Searching within specific fields" (see above) as the colon is a special character.)

DSpace supports all Solr search syntax options, as all searches in DSpace are sent directly to Solr. For more examples, see the [Solr documentation for the "Specifying Terms for the Standard Query Parser"](#)<sup>728</sup>.

## 8.10 Submitter actions

Documentation for submitters.

## 8.11 User management

Documentation for repository managers.

- [Add or Manage an E-Person](#)(see page 1062)
- [Create or manage a user group](#)(see page 1083)

### 8.11.1 Add or Manage an E-Person

An E Person is a user in DSpace who can be assigned various rights to perform activities or manage content access in the repository.

This section provides details about various methods to create or update an E Person in DSpace. For example, DSpace allows users to self-register. In addition, users with administrative rights can create and update E Person in the system. Both methods are explained in the latter part of this document.

- [Audience](#)(see page 1062)
- [Add E Person – Self Registration](#)(see page 1062)
- [Add E Person – Registration by Administrator](#)(see page 1065)
- [Update an Eperson](#)(see page 1072)
  - [Update an Eperson – Update details & Manage Log in](#)(see page 1072)
  - [Update an Eperson – Manage user groups membership](#)(see page 1077)
  - [Update an Eperson – Delete Eperson](#)(see page 1081)

#### 8.11.1.1 Audience

1. Repository Administrator
2. Community Administrator
3. Collection Administrator
4. Base User

#### 8.11.1.2 Add E Person – Self Registration

Step 1: Go to DSpace's home page and click on the "Log In" link appearing at the top right corner of the screen, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated below screen.

---

<sup>728</sup> <https://solr.apache.org/guide/solr/latest/query-guide/standard-query-parser.html#specifying-terms-for-the-standard-query-parser>

DSpace 7 - Beta 5

DSpace is the world leading open source repository platform that enables organisations to:

- easily ingest documents, audio, video, datasets and their corresponding Dublin Core metadata
- open up this content to local and global audiences, thanks to the OAI-PMH interface and Google Scholar
- issue permanent urls and trustworthy identifiers, including optional integrations with handle.net and

Join an international community of [leading institutions using DSpace](#).

Participate in the [official community Testathon](#) from April 19th through May 7th. The test user accounts to be used are in lowercase.

- Demo Site Administrator = [dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com)
- Demo Community Administrator = [dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com)
- Demo Collection Administrator = [dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com)
- Demo Submitter = [dspacedemo+submit@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+submit@gmail.com)

Search the repository ...

Step 2: Click on the New User to add an E Person in DSpace.

DSpace 7 - Beta 5

DSpace is the world leading open source repository platform that enables organisations to:

- easily ingest documents, audio, video, datasets and their corresponding Dublin Core metadata
- open up this content to local and global audiences, thanks to the OAI-PMH interface and Google Scholar
- issue permanent urls and trustworthy identifiers, including optional integrations with handle.net and

Join an international community of [leading institutions using DSpace](#).

Participate in the [official community Testathon](#) from April 19th through May 7th. The test user accounts to be used are in lowercase.

- Demo Site Administrator = [dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com)
- Demo Community Administrator = [dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com)
- Demo Collection Administrator = [dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com](mailto:dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com)

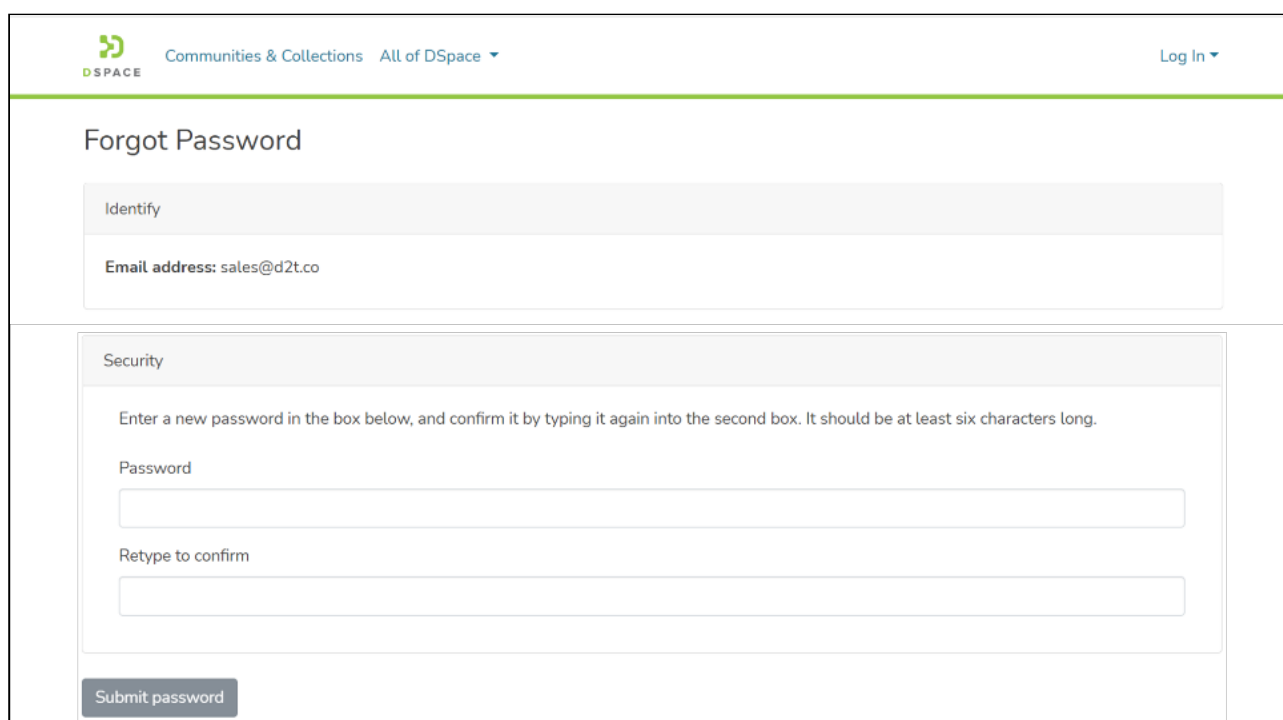
Search the repository ...

Step 3: Enter the user's Email ID who needs to be registered as E Person in DSpace and click on the Register button.

Step 4: After clicking the register button, an email will be sent to the user's email id, and the user will be redirected to the home page. This E Mail will go from the communication mail ID registered in the DSpace instance.

Step 5: Click on the unique registration link received in the email to continue with the registration process. Suppose your email client or server security settings do not show hyperlinks. In that case, you can copy the link and paste it into your browser.

Step 6: Enter a password of your choice and re-enter the same password. Followed by this, click on the “Submit Password” button to complete the registration process.



DSpace 7.x Documentation – DSpace 7.x Documentation

Communities & Collections All of DSpace ▾ Log In ▾

## Forgot Password

Identify

Email address: sales@d2t.co

Security

Enter a new password in the box below, and confirm it by typing it again into the second box. It should be at least six characters long.

Password

Retype to confirm

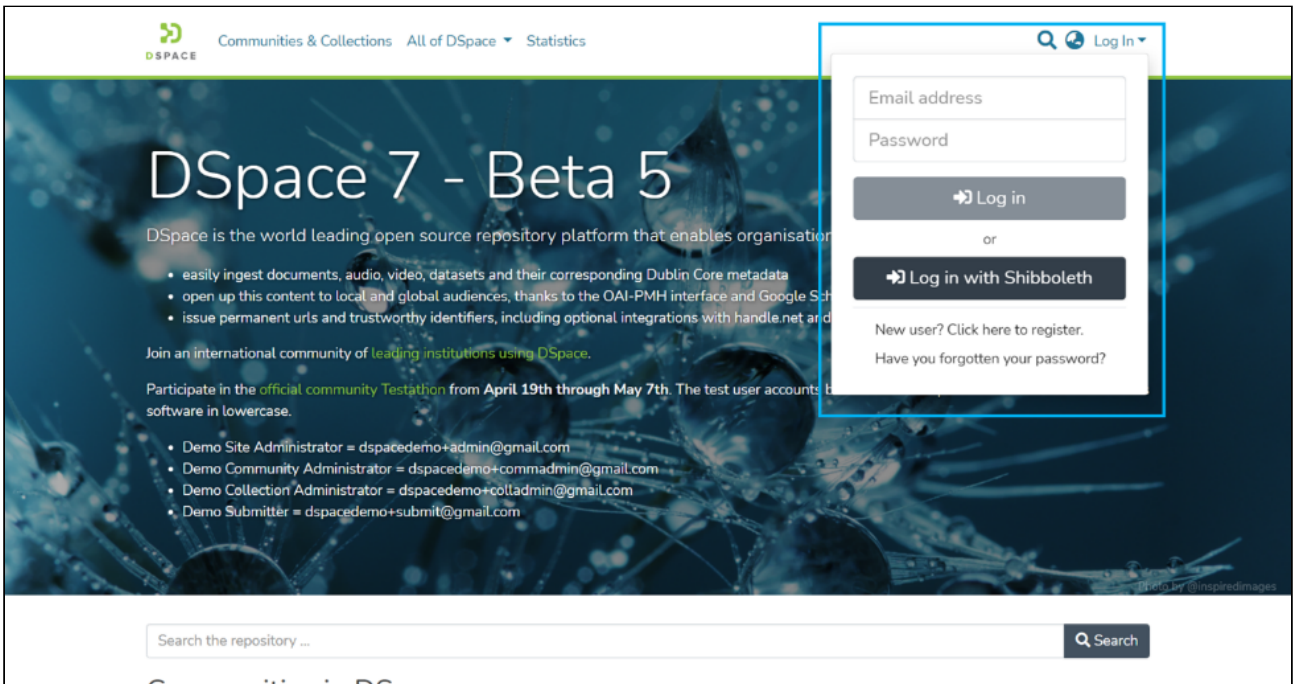
Submit password

### 8.11.1.3 Add E Person – Registration by Administrator

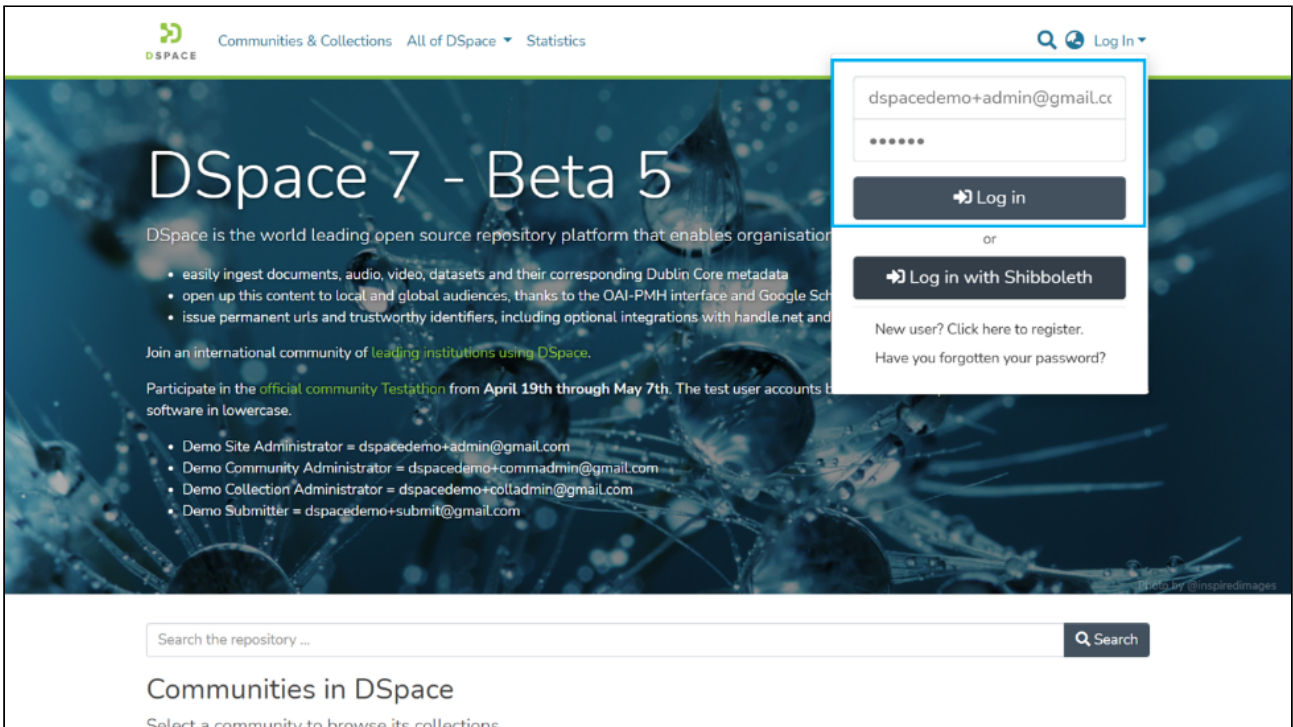
This process is for the user having System, Community, and Collection Administrator rights. Only users with these rights can manage E People.

Step 1: Go to DSpace’s home page and click on the “Log In” link appearing at the top right corner of the screen, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated below screen.

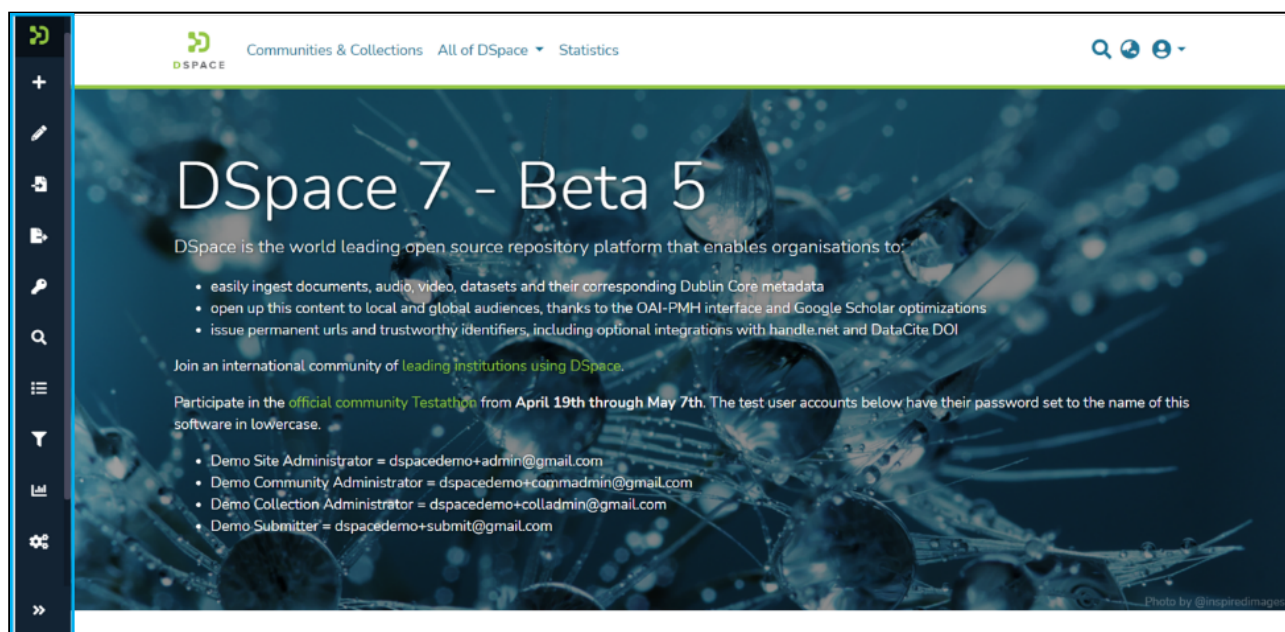




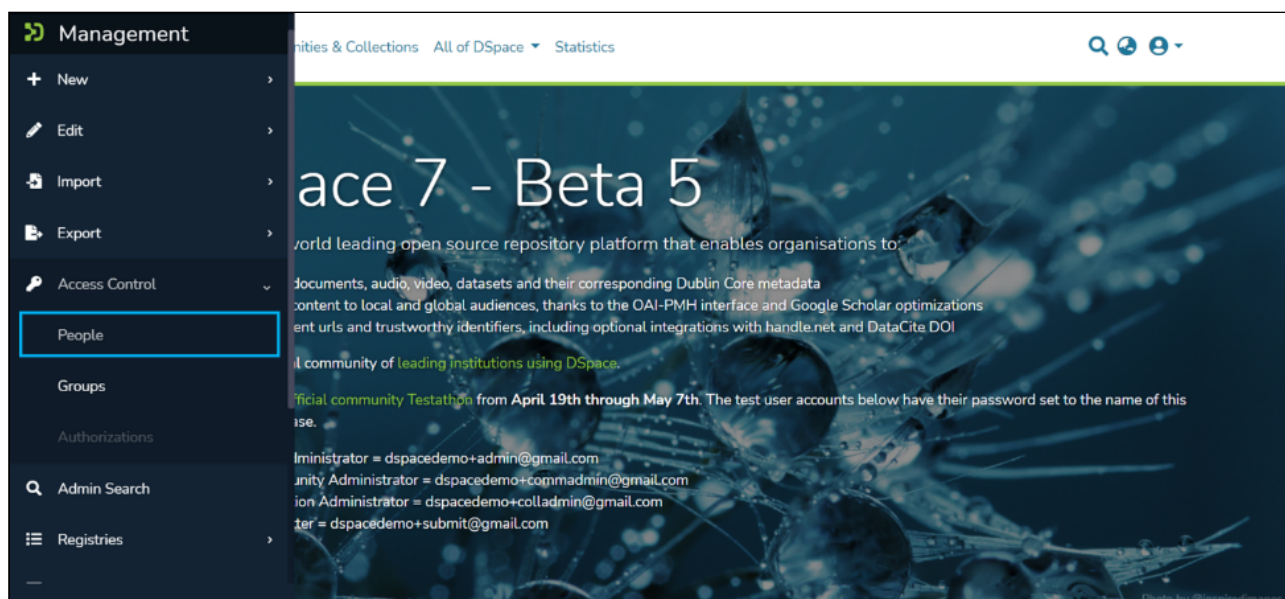
Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the login button for logging in to DSpace



Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown below illustration.













Step 4: Rollover your cursor over the administration menu and click on Access control. Click on the People link to go to the EPeople module.



Step 5: Click on the “Add EPerson” button for initiating the E-Person creation process.

The screenshot shows the DSpace EPeople management interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, "Communities & Collections", and "All of DSpace". Below this, a breadcrumb trail reads "Home » EPeople". The main heading is "EPeople", and a green button labeled "+ Add EPerson" is visible in the top right corner. A search bar is present with a dropdown menu set to "Metadata" and a search input field containing "Search people...". Below the search bar, it says "Now showing 1 - 5 of 14". A table lists five users with columns for ID, Name, E-mail (exact), and Edit. The table data is as follows:

ID	Name	E-mail (exact)	Edit
a1a67162-6756-4dcc-98a6-33bcaa4d1be6	Demo Accept/Reject/Edit Metadata Step	dspacedemo+acceptrejectedit@gmail.com	 
a7a17d82-c812-494d-a1a7-43ef88f49eb9	Demo Accept/Reject Step	dspacedemo+acceptreject@gmail.com	 
b08d985d-b824-444b-bc6e-56209de5c1cc	Demo Collection Administrator	dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com	 
674d8122-b3f2-4554-a19f-207bd5b01c0b	Demo Community Administrator	dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com	 
4128ab4f-deae-4175-b0d5-846380edb08f	Demo Edit Metadata Step	dspacedemo+edit@gmail.com	 

At the bottom of the table, there is a pagination control showing "1 2 3" with "1" selected.

Step 6: Enter “First Name”, “Last Name,” and “E-Mail”. Select the “Can log in” check box for enabling id to login into the DSpace.

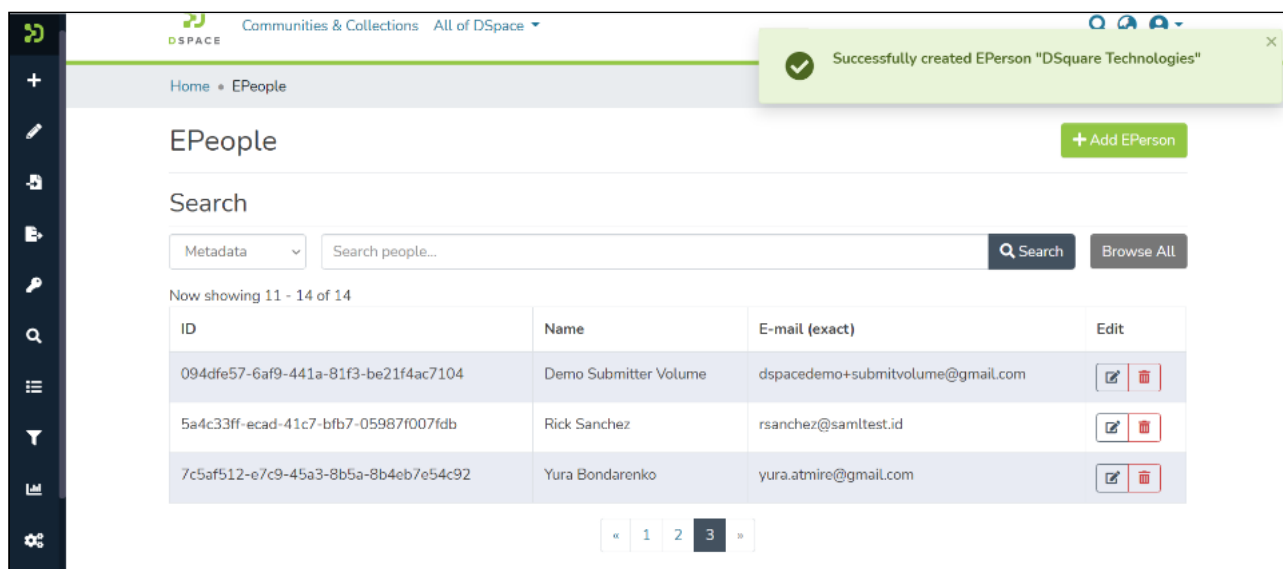
The screenshot shows the "Create EPerson" form in the DSpace EPeople management interface. The breadcrumb trail is "Home » EPeople". The form has the following fields and options:

- First name \***: Text input field containing "DSquare".
- Last name \***: Text input field containing "Technologies".
- E-mail \***: Text input field containing "sales@d2t.co".
- Can log in
- Requires certificate

At the bottom of the form, there are five buttons: "Back", "Reset password", "Impersonate EPerson", "Save", and "Delete EPerson". The "Save" button is highlighted in a darker color, indicating it is active.

Step 7: Upon populating values in mandatory fields “Save” button will get activated. Click on the Save button to complete the process.

Step 8: Upon successfully adding EPerson in DSpace, you will see a success prompt on the screen.

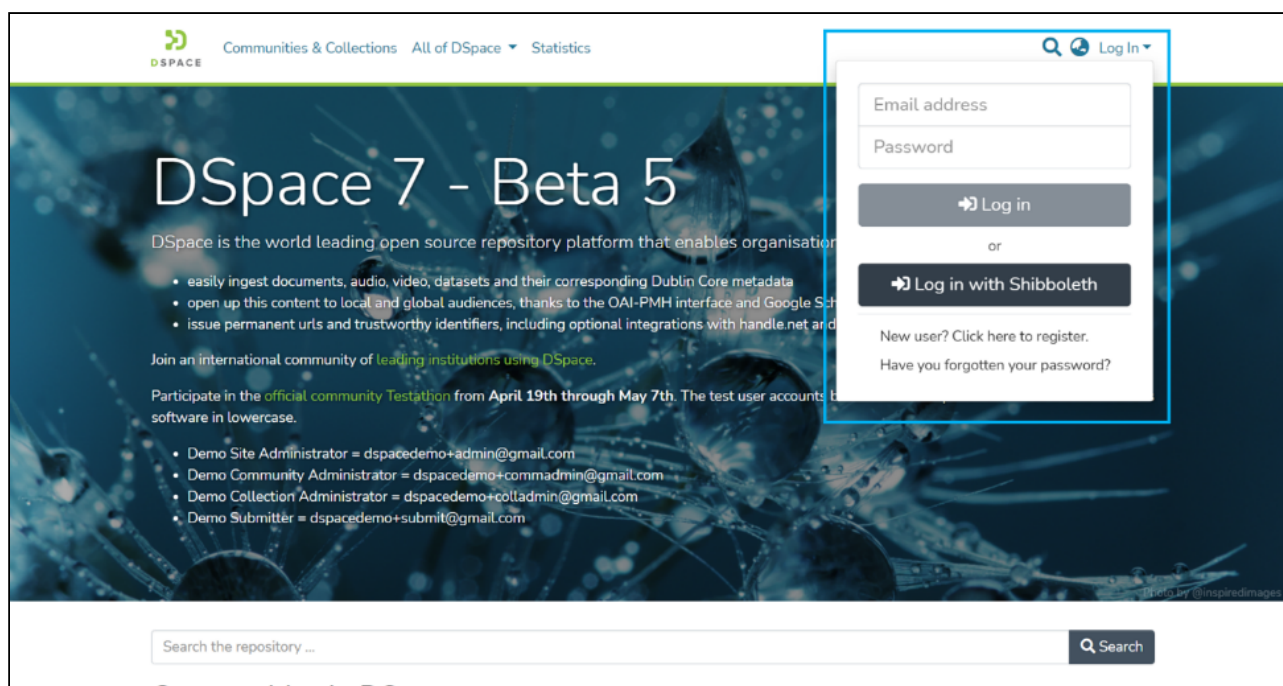


The screenshot shows the DSpace interface with a success message: "Successfully created EPerson 'DSquare Technologies'". Below the message, the "EPeople" page is displayed, featuring a search bar and a table of users. The table has columns for ID, Name, E-mail (exact), and Edit. The current page shows 11 of 14 users.

ID	Name	E-mail (exact)	Edit
094dfe57-6af9-441a-81f3-be21f4ac7104	Demo Submitter Volume	dspacedemo+submitvolume@gmail.com	<a href="#">✎</a> <a href="#">✖</a>
5a4c33ff-ecad-41c7-bfb7-05987f007fdb	Rick Sanchez	rsanchez@samltest.id	<a href="#">✎</a> <a href="#">✖</a>
7c5af512-e7c9-45a3-8b5a-8b4eb7e54c92	Yura Bondarenko	yura.atmire@gmail.com	<a href="#">✎</a> <a href="#">✖</a>

Step 9: The administrator can inform the user to generate its password using forgot password mechanism. The same is explained in the following steps.

Step 10: The user to go to the home page of DSpace and click on the “Log In” link appearing at the top right corner of the screen and pop up will open, as illustrated below screen.



The screenshot shows the DSpace 7 - Beta 5 home page. A login popup is visible in the top right corner, containing the following elements:

- Email address input field
- Password input field
- Log In button
- or
- Log in with Shibboleth button
- New user? Click here to register.
- Have you forgotten your password?

The background of the page features the text "DSpace 7 - Beta 5" and a list of features:

- easily ingest documents, audio, video, datasets and their corresponding Dublin Core metadata
- open up this content to local and global audiences, thanks to the OAI-PMH interface and Google Scholar
- issue permanent urls and trustworthy identifiers, including optional integrations with handle.net and

Below the features, there is a section for "Join an international community of leading institutions using DSpace." and a "Participate in the official community Testathon from April 19th through May 7th. The test user accounts for software in lowercase." followed by a list of demo user accounts:

- Demo Site Administrator = dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com
- Demo Community Administrator = dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com
- Demo Collection Administrator = dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com
- Demo Submitter = dspacedemo+submit@gmail.com

Step 11: Click on the “Have you forgotten your password?” password link reset page.

The screenshot shows the DSpace 7 - Beta 5 homepage. A modal form is overlaid on the right side of the page. The form contains the following elements:

- Input field for "Email address"
- Input field for "Password"
- "Log in" button with a right-pointing arrow
- "or" text separator
- "Log in with Shibboleth" button with a right-pointing arrow
- Link: "New user? Click here to register"
- Link: "Have you forgotten your password?" (highlighted with a blue box)

The background of the page features the DSpace logo, navigation links ("Communities & Collections", "All of DSpace", "Statistics"), and a search icon. The main heading is "DSpace 7 - Beta 5". Below the heading, there is a brief description of DSpace and a list of features:

- easily ingest documents, audio, video, datasets and their corresponding Dublin Core metadata
- open up this content to local and global audiences, thanks to the OAI-PMH interface and Google Scholar
- issue permanent urls and trustworthy identifiers, including optional integrations with handle.net and

Additional information includes a link to join an international community and details about a "community Testathon" from April 19th through May 7th. A list of demo user accounts is provided at the bottom:

- Demo Site Administrator = dspacedemo+admin@gmail.com
- Demo Community Administrator = dspacedemo+commadmin@gmail.com
- Demo Collection Administrator = dspacedemo+colladmin@gmail.com
- Demo Submitter = dspacedemo+submit@gmail.com

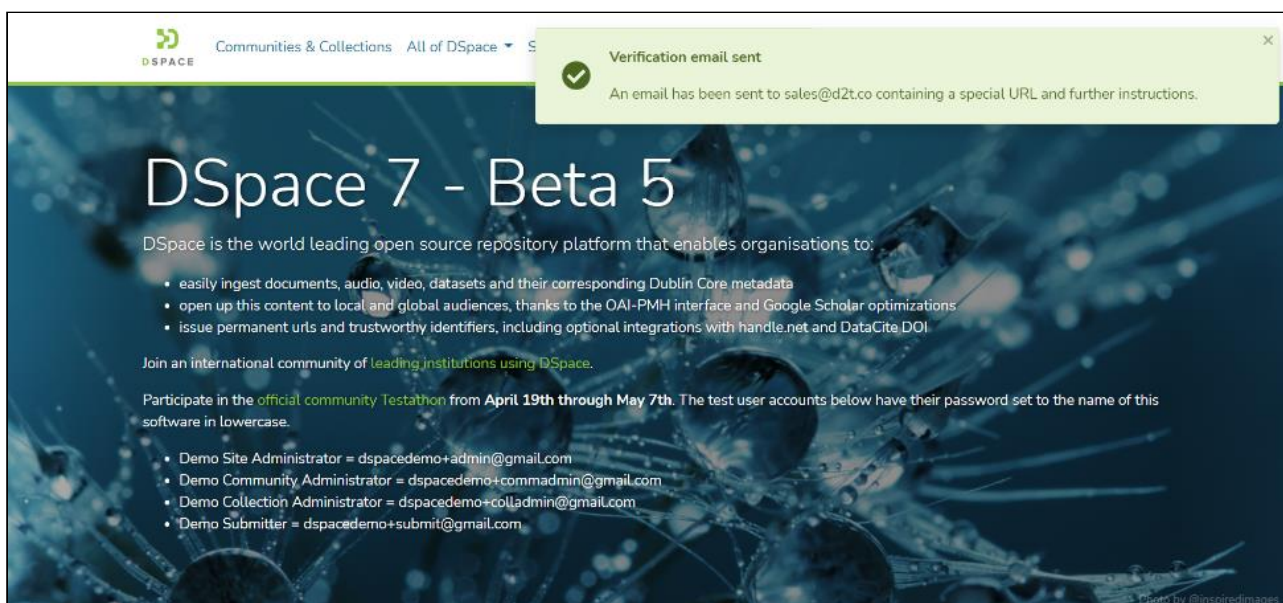
Step 12: Enter the Email ID used for Eperson creation in the DSpace and click on the “Save” button.

The screenshot shows the "Forgot Password" form. The form is titled "Forgot Password" and includes the following elements:

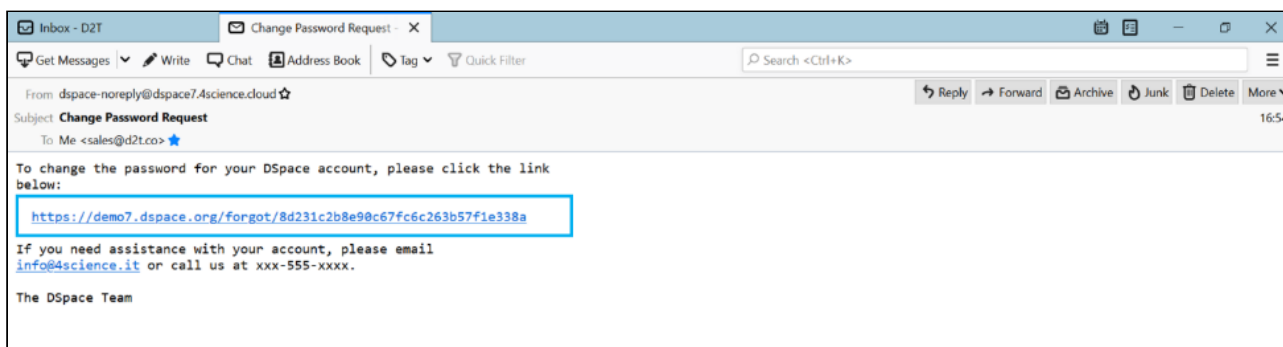
- Instruction: "Enter Register an account to subscribe to collections for email updates, and submit new items to DSpace."
- Label: "Email Address \*
- Input field for the email address
- Text: "This address will be verified and used as your login name."
- "Save" button

The page header includes the DSpace logo, navigation links ("Communities & Collections", "All of DSpace"), and a search icon.

Step 13: A prompt confirming a password reset link dispatch to the registered email id will appear and the user will be redirected to the home page. This E Mail will go from the communication mail ID registered in the DSpace instance.



Step 14: Click on the unique registration link received in the email to continue the password reset process. Suppose the user’s email client or server security settings do not show hyperlinks. In that case, the user can copy the link and paste it into its browser.



Step 15: Enter a password of your choice and re-enter the same password. Followed by this, click on the “Submit Password” button to complete the password generation process.

DSpace  
Communities & Collections All of DSpace ▾ Log In ▾

## Forgot Password

Identify

Email address: sales@d2t.co

Security

Enter a new password in the box below, and confirm it by typing it again into the second box. It should be at least six characters long.

Password

Retype to confirm

Submit password

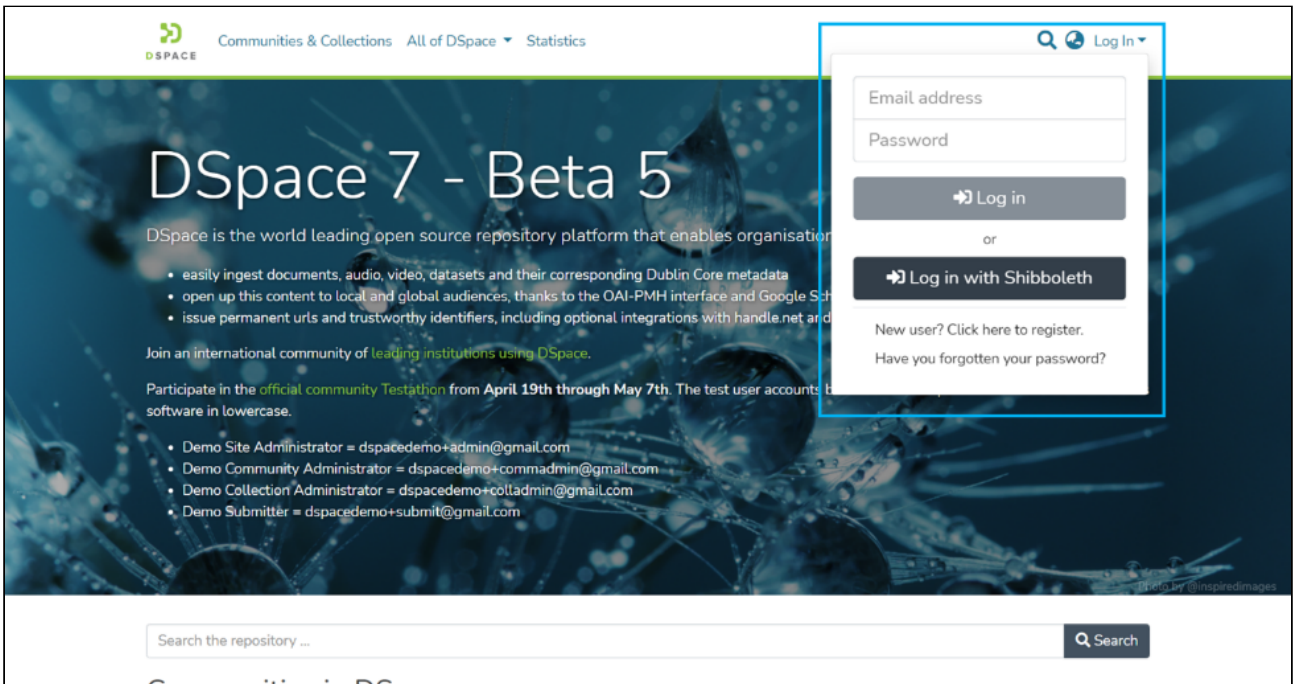
### 8.11.1.4 Update an Eperson

Eperson updates can be performed by users having System, Community, and Collection Administrator rights. These users can perform the following activities:

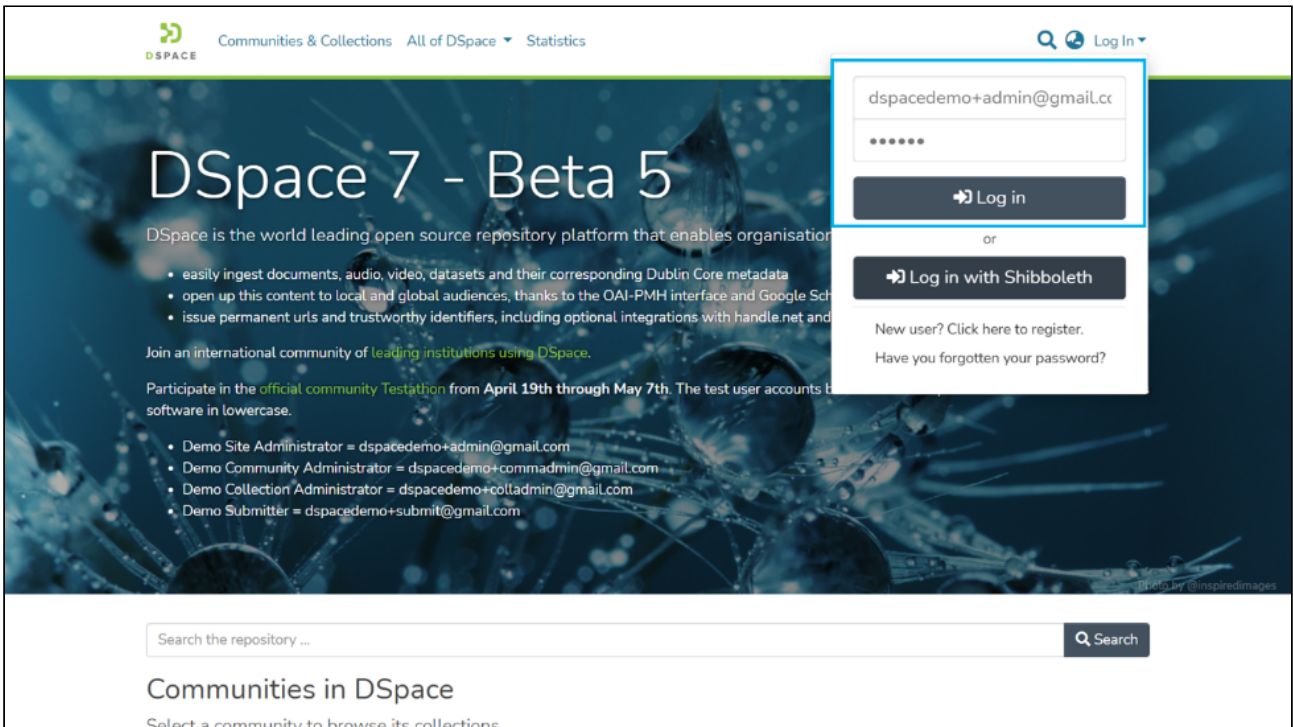
1. Update Eperson details
2. Manage Eperson Log in
3. Impersonate Eperson
4. Manage user groups membership
5. Delete Eperson from DSpace

Update an Eperson – Update details & Manage Log in

Step 1: Go to DSpace's home page and click on the "Log In" link appearing at the top right corner of the screen, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated below screen.

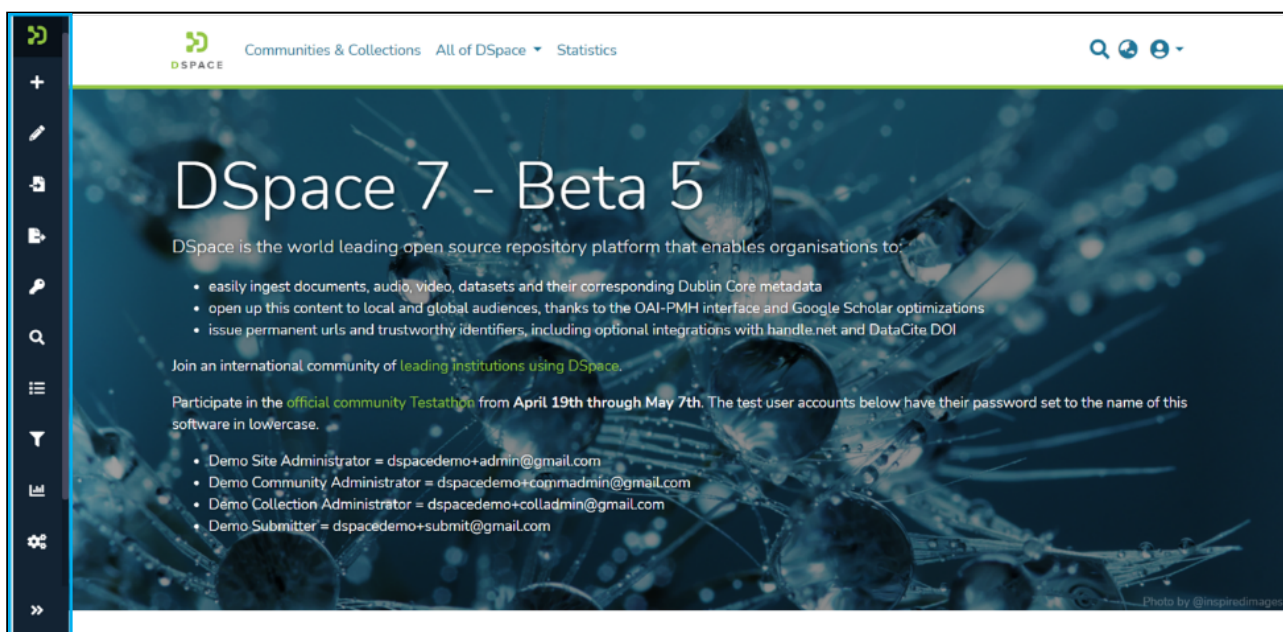


Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the login button for logging in to DSpace.

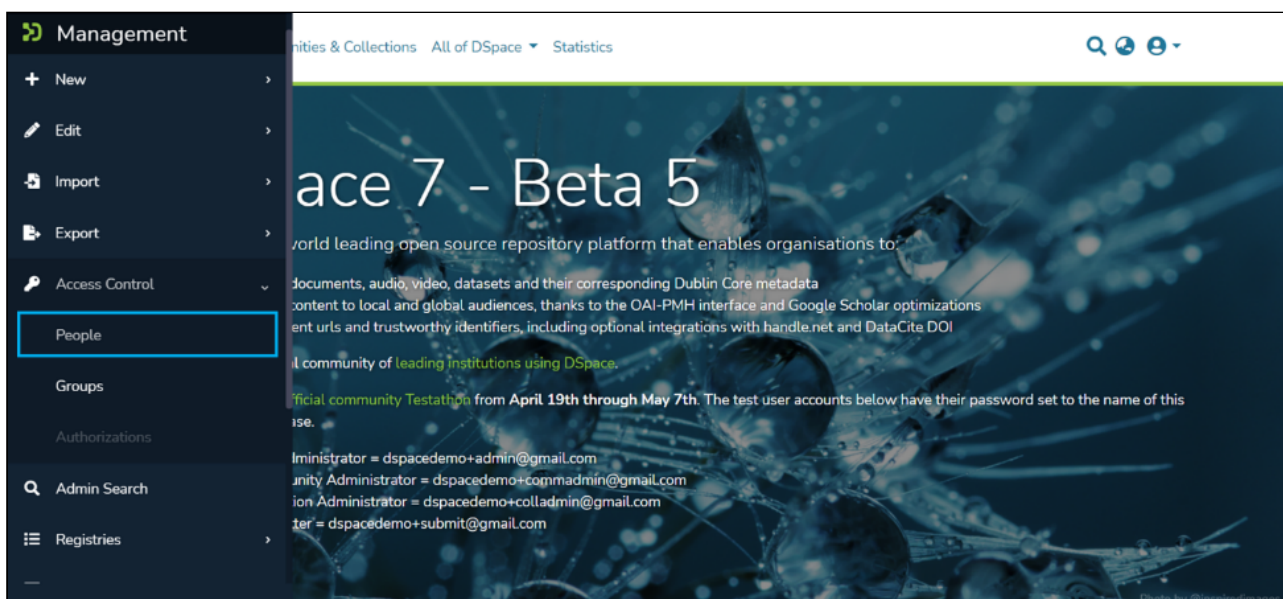


Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown below illustration.





Step 4: Rollover your cursor over the administration menu and click on Access control. Click on the People link to go to the EPeople module.

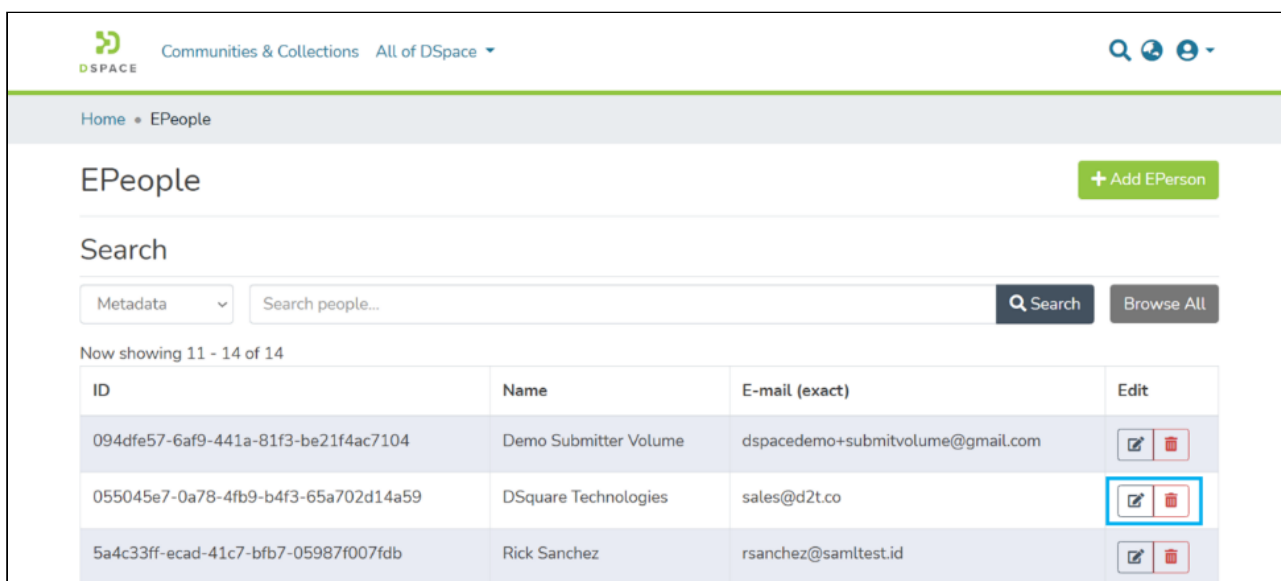


Step 5: Scroll or search the eperson's name in the epeople list.







Step 6: Epeople table has the following elements:

- ID – Unique ID generated in DSpace for each Eperson
- Name – Full name of Eperson as entered during registration
- Email – Email id used for registering user

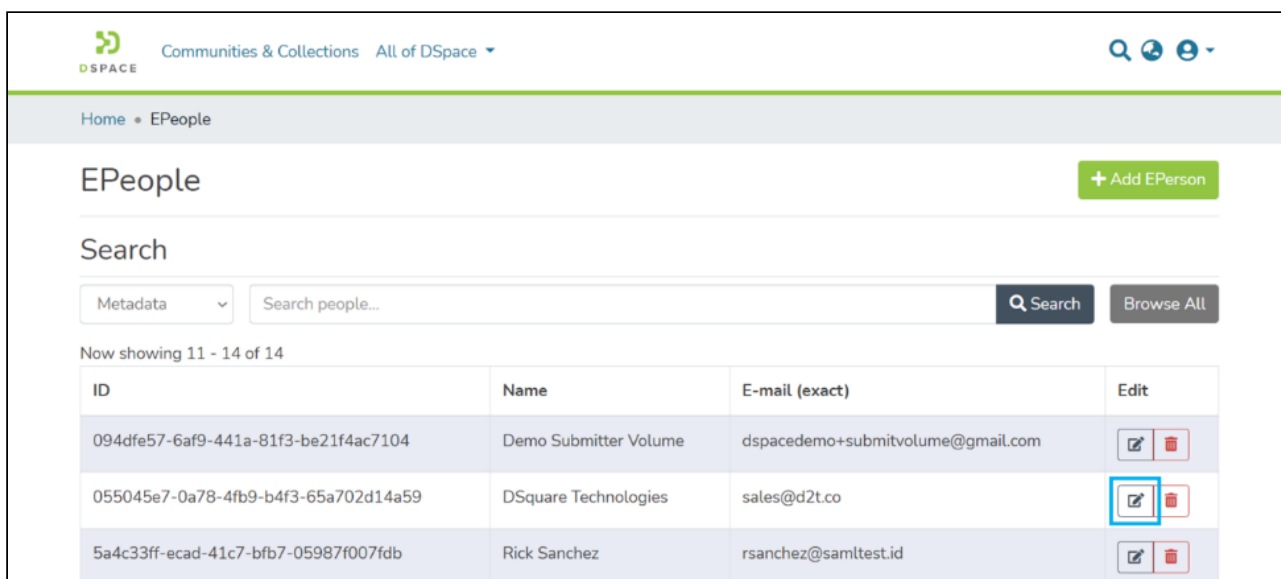
- **Edit** – Buttons showing various actions available for Eperson management. It has “Edit” and “Delete” buttons. Click on the “Edit” button if you want to edit details of the Eperson, or click on the “Delete” button if you want to delete Eperson from DSpace permanently.



The screenshot shows the DSpace EPeople management interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo and 'Communities & Collections All of DSpace'. Below this is a breadcrumb trail 'Home • EPeople' and a '+ Add EPerson' button. A search bar is present with a 'Metadata' dropdown and a 'Search people...' input field. Below the search bar, it says 'Now showing 11 - 14 of 14'. A table lists three EPersons:

ID	Name	E-mail (exact)	Edit
094dfe57-6af9-441a-81f3-be21f4ac7104	Demo Submitter Volume	dspacedemo+submitvolume@gmail.com	 
055045e7-0a78-4fb9-b4f3-65a702d14a59	DSquare Technologies	sales@d2t.co	 
5a4c33ff-ecad-41c7-bfb7-05987f007fdb	Rick Sanchez	rsanchez@samltest.id	 

Step 7: Click on the “Edit” button to continue with Eperson editing.



This screenshot is identical to the previous one, showing the DSpace EPeople management interface. The 'Edit' button for the 'DSquare Technologies' entry is highlighted with a blue box.

Step 8: You can make the following updates on the Edit Eperson page

1. **Update Eperson details** – You can update First Name, Last Name, and Email ID as the user’s identification details.
2. **Enable/Disable User Login** – Uncheck this option to disable the user’s login into the DSpace without deleting it. This option is helpful for scenarios where users need to be disabled from logging in and performing specific actions temporarily.
3. **Requires Certificate** – Configure this option if a certificate is to be used for the login.

4. Reset Password – Password can be reset for Eperson using this option. A Password field should be present for utilizing this option.
5. Impersonate Eperson – The user with rights to Impersonate EPerson can impersonate the selected Eperson and perform all activities that the Eperson is entitled to.
6. Delete Eperson – Using this option, Eperson can be deleted permanently from DSpace
7. Update User group(s) – This button allows the administrator to add selected Eperson to multiple user groups.

You can make options # 1 to 3 and click on Save for updating the Eperson record.

DSpace 7.x Documentation – DSpace 7.x Documentation

Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • EPeople

## EPeople

### Edit EPerson

1 First name \*  
DSquare

Last name \*  
Technologies

E-mail \*  
sales@d2t.co

2  Can log in

3  Requires certificate

4 Back 5 Reset password 6 Impersonate EPerson 7 Save 8 Delete EPerson

Member of these groups:

8 This EPerson is not a member of any groups  
Add to groups

Step 9: Upon successful execution of the update, you will notice a success prompt on the screen.

The screenshot shows the DSpace EPeople management page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo and the text "Communities & Collections All of DSpace". A green notification banner at the top right says "Successfully edited EPerson 'DSquare Technologies'". Below the navigation bar, the page title is "EPeople" with a "+ Add EPerson" button. A search bar is present with a dropdown menu set to "Metadata" and a search input field containing "Search people...". Below the search bar, it says "Now showing 11 - 12 of 12". A table lists two EPersons:

ID	Name	E-mail (exact)	Edit
99179142-c018-493d-a237-1338b5456e59	Demo Submitter Person	dspacedemo+submitperson@gmail.com	
5d3464b7-dd81-4f02-9d63-1fd63da7e3c7	DSquare Technologies	sales@d2t.co	

At the bottom of the table, there are pagination controls showing "« 1 2 3 »".

### Update an Eperson – Manage user groups membership

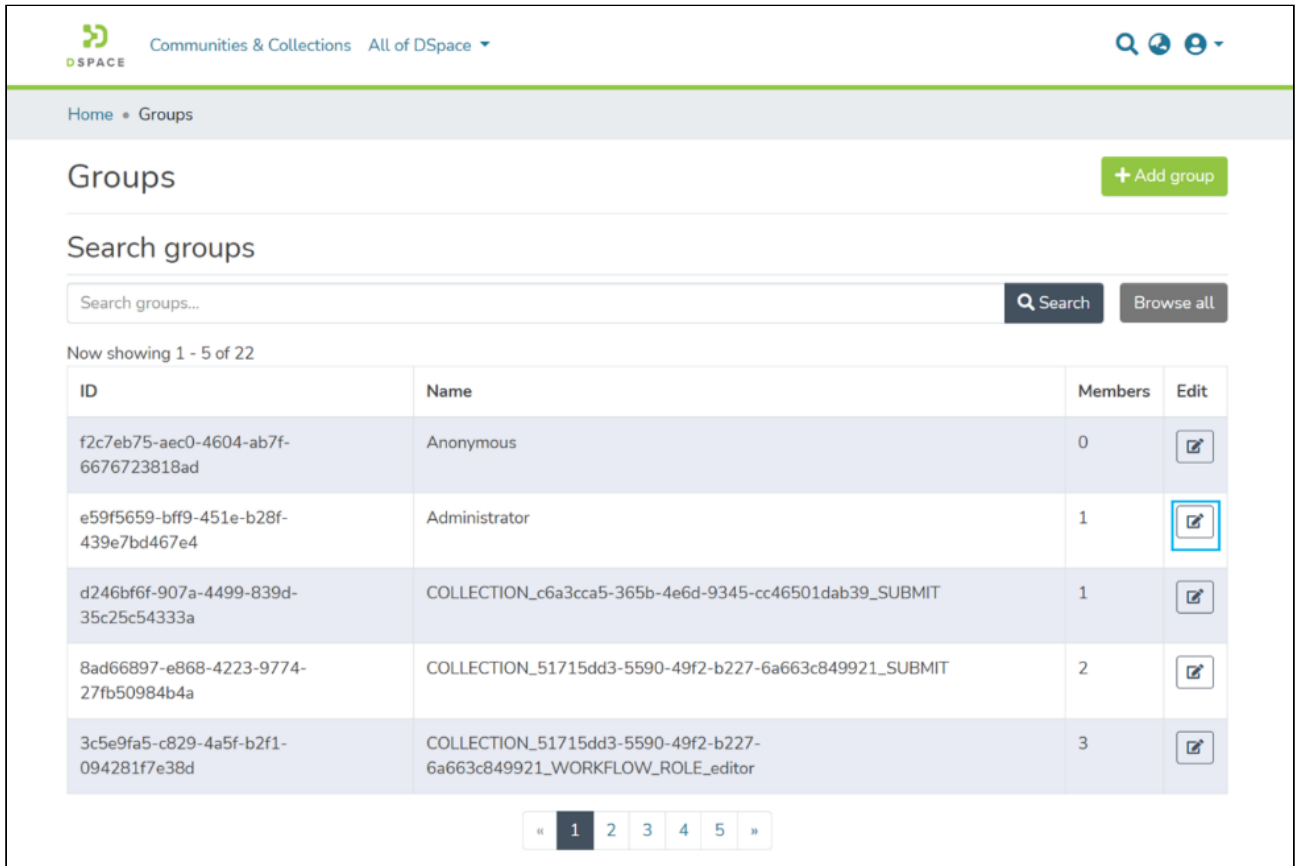
Step 10: Click on the “Add to group” button to initiate the process of adding selected Eperson to a user group.

The screenshot shows the "Edit EPerson" form in DSpace. The form includes the following fields:






- First name \*: DSquare
- Last name \*: Technologies
- E-mail \*: sales@d2t.co
- Can log in
- Requires certificate

At the bottom of the form, there are several buttons: "Back", "Reset password", "Impersonate EPerson", "Save", and "Delete EPerson". Below the form, it says "Member of these groups:" and a message box states "This EPerson is not a member of any groups" with an "Add to groups" button highlighted by a blue box.

Step 11: Please click on the “Edit” button next to the user group you want to select for this Eperson.



The screenshot shows the DSpace interface for managing groups. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, 'Communities & Collections', and 'All of DSpace'. Below this is a breadcrumb trail 'Home • Groups' and a '+ Add group' button. A search bar is present with the placeholder text 'Search groups...' and buttons for 'Search' and 'Browse all'. Below the search bar, it says 'Now showing 1 - 5 of 22'. A table lists five groups with columns for ID, Name, Members, and Edit. The 'Administrator' group is highlighted with a blue box around its 'Edit' button.

ID	Name	Members	Edit
f2c7eb75-aec0-4604-ab7f-6676723818ad	Anonymous	0	
e59f5659-bff9-451e-b28f-439e7bd467e4	Administrator	1	
d246bf6f-907a-4499-839d-35c25c54333a	COLLECTION_c6a3cca5-365b-4e6d-9345-cc46501dab39_SUBMIT	1	
8ad66897-e868-4223-9774-27fb50984b4a	COLLECTION_51715dd3-5590-49f2-b227-6a663c849921_SUBMIT	2	
3c5e9fa5-c829-4a5f-b2f1-094281f7e38d	COLLECTION_51715dd3-5590-49f2-b227-6a663c849921_WORKFLOW_ROLE_editor	3	

« 1 2 3 4 5 »

Step 12: Enter the eperson’s name or any other metadata value in the search field to find the target user.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • Edit Group

## Edit group

This group is permanent, so it can't be edited or deleted. You can still add and remove group members using this page.

Group name \*

Description

← Back Save Delete Group

### EPeople

Add EPeople

Metadata dsquare Search Browse All

Step 13: You will see Epeople appearing as a result of a search made. Click on the + button appearing next to Eperson you want to add to this group.

Home » Edit Group

## Edit group

This group is permanent, so it can't be edited or deleted. You can still add and remove group members using this page.

Group name \*

Description

### EPeople

#### Add EPeople

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

ID	Name	Remove / Add
5d3464b7-dd81-4f02-9d63-1fd63da7e3c7	DSquare Technologies	<input type="button" value="+"/>

#### Current Members

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

ID	Name	Remove / Add
335647b6-8a52-4ecb-a8c1-7ebabb199bda	Demo Site Administrator	<input type="button" value="🗑"/>

Step 14: Upon successfully adding Eperson to the group, a success prompt will appear on the screen, and Eperson will appear in the Current Members list of the group.

Successfully added member: "DSquare Technologies"

#### Current Members

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

ID	Name	Remove / Add
335647b6-8a52-4ecb-a8c1-7ebabb199bda	Demo Site Administrator	<input type="button" value="🗑"/>
5d3464b7-dd81-4f02-9d63-1fd63da7e3c7	DSquare Technologies	<input type="button" value="🗑"/>

Step 15: You will see this group on the profile page of Eperson as well.

DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home » EPeople

## EPeople

### Edit EPerson

First name \*

Last name \*

E-mail \*

Can log in

Requires certificate

[← Back](#) [Reset password](#) [Save](#) [Delete EPerson](#)

Member of these groups:

Now showing 1 - 1 of 1

ID	Name
e59f5659-bff9-451e-b28f-439e7bd467e4	Administrator

### Update an Eperson – Delete Eperson

Step 16: Click the “Delete Eperson” button if you want to delete Eperson from DSpace permanently.



DSpace Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • EPeople

## EPeople

### Edit EPerson

First name \*  
DSquare

Last name \*  
Technologies

E-mail \*  
sales@d2t.co

Can log in  
 Requires certificate

[← Back](#) [Reset password](#) [Impersonate EPerson](#) [Save](#) [Delete EPerson](#)

Step 17: DSpace will show you a confirmation prompt to re-confirm your decision of deleting the selected Eperson. Click on “Delete” if you want to continue with the deletion, or click on “Cancel” if you want to cancel the deletion.

### Edit EPerson

First name \*  
DSquare

Last name \*  
Technologies

E-mail \*  
sales@d2t.co

Can log in  
 Requires certificate

[← Back](#) [Reset password](#) [Impersonate EPerson](#) [Save](#) [Delete EPerson](#)

Member of these groups:

This EPerson is not a member of any groups  
[Add to groups](#)

Delete EPerson "DSquare Technologies"

Are you sure you want to delete EPerson "DSquare Technologies"

[Cancel](#) [Delete](#)

Step 18: Successful deletion of the user will be confirmed by displaying a success promptly. You will be redirected to the Epeople page.

DSpace 7.x Documentation – DSpace 7.x Documentation

Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home » EPeople

Successfully deleted EPerson "DSquare Technologies"

EPeople [+ Add EPerson](#)

Search

Metadata Search people... Search Browse All

Now showing 11 - 11 of 11

ID	Name	E-mail (exact)	Edit
99179142-c018-493d-a237-1338b5456e59	Demo Submitter Person	dspacedemo+submitperson@gmail.com	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

« 1 2 3 »

## 8.11.2 Create or manage a user group

User groups in DSpace are meant for creating a group of E-People. These groups can be assigned access rights to allow users to perform multiple activities or manage content access in the repository.

This section provides steps to add or update a User group in the application.

- [Audience](#)(see page 1083)
- [Add a user group](#)(see page 1083)
- [Manage a user group](#)(see page 1088)
  - [Update group details](#)(see page 1088)
  - [Delete Group](#)(see page 1094)
  - [Add/Manage EPeople](#)(see page 1095)
  - [Add/Manage subgroups](#)(see page 1097)

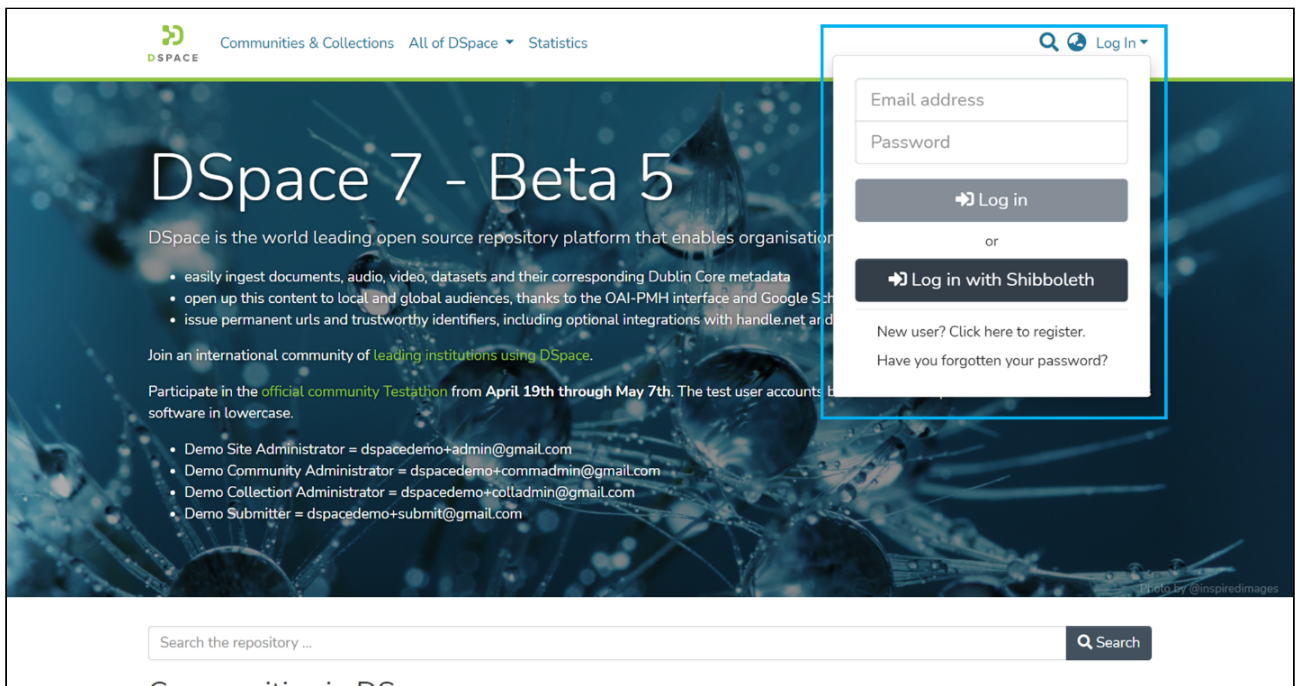
### 8.11.2.1 Audience

- Repository Administrator
- Community Administrator

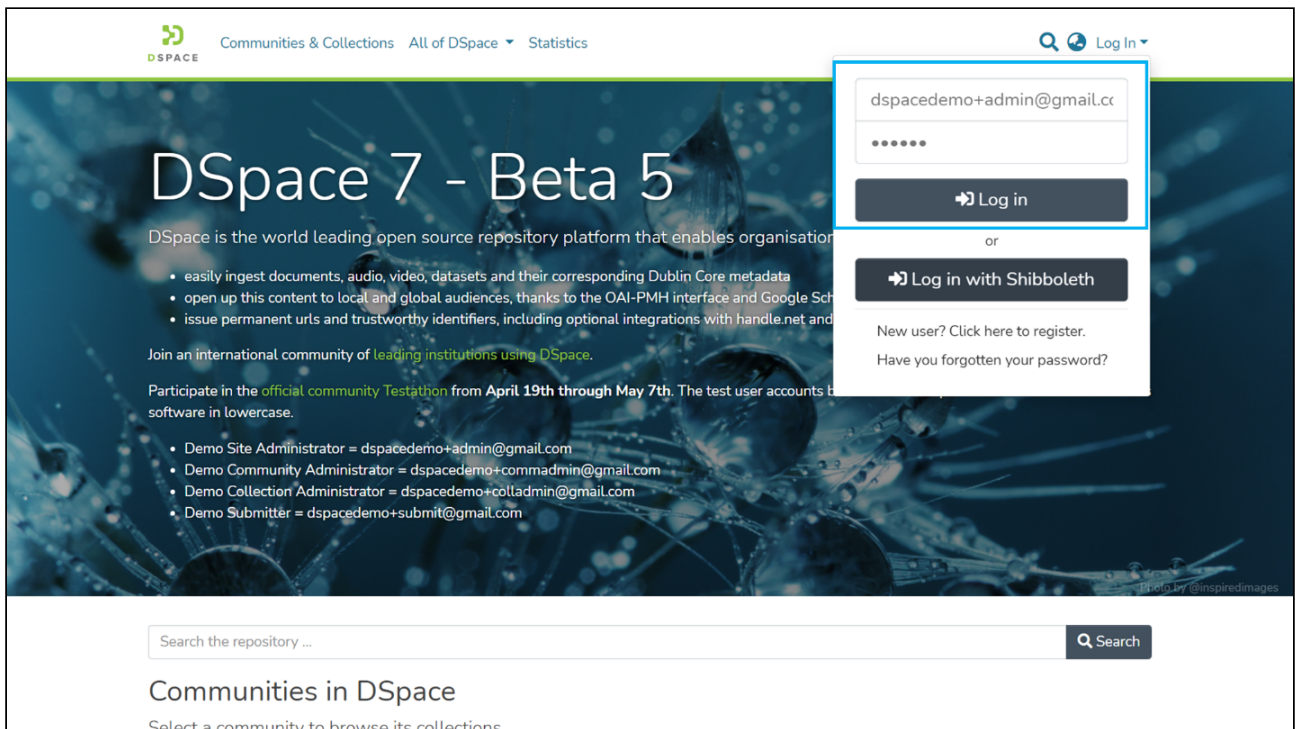
### 8.11.2.2 Add a user group

This process is for users having System and Community Administrator rights. As these user profiles can add and manage E People.

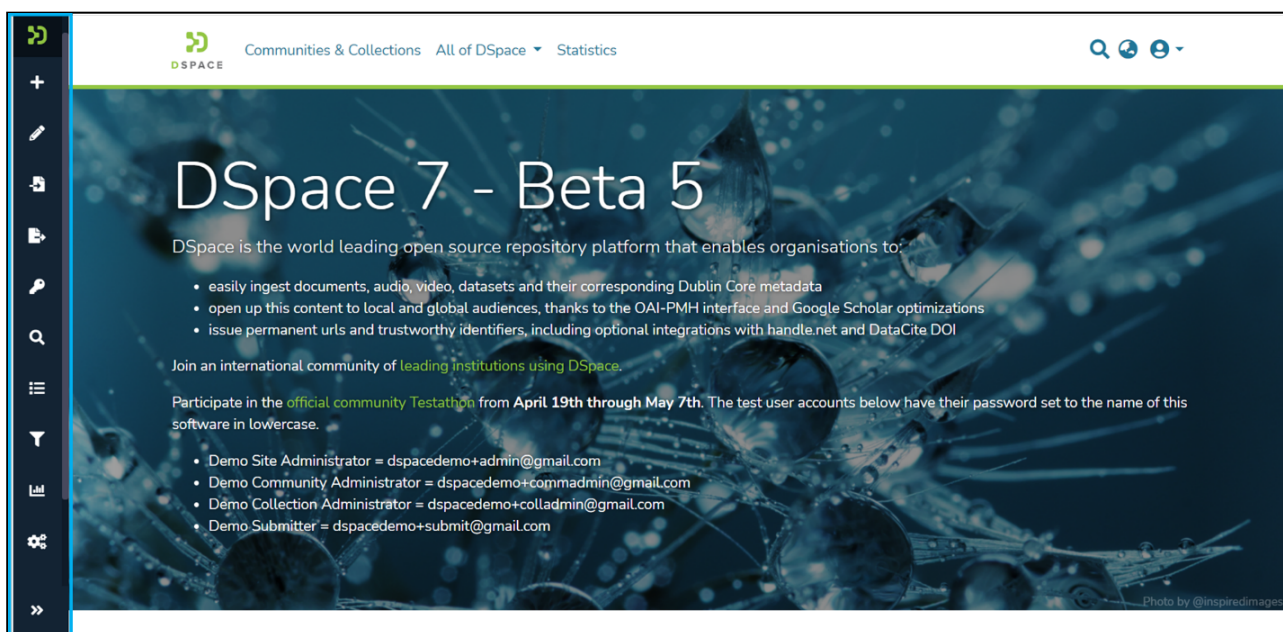
Step 1: Click on the "Log In" link at the top right corner of the DSpace's homepage, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated below the screen.



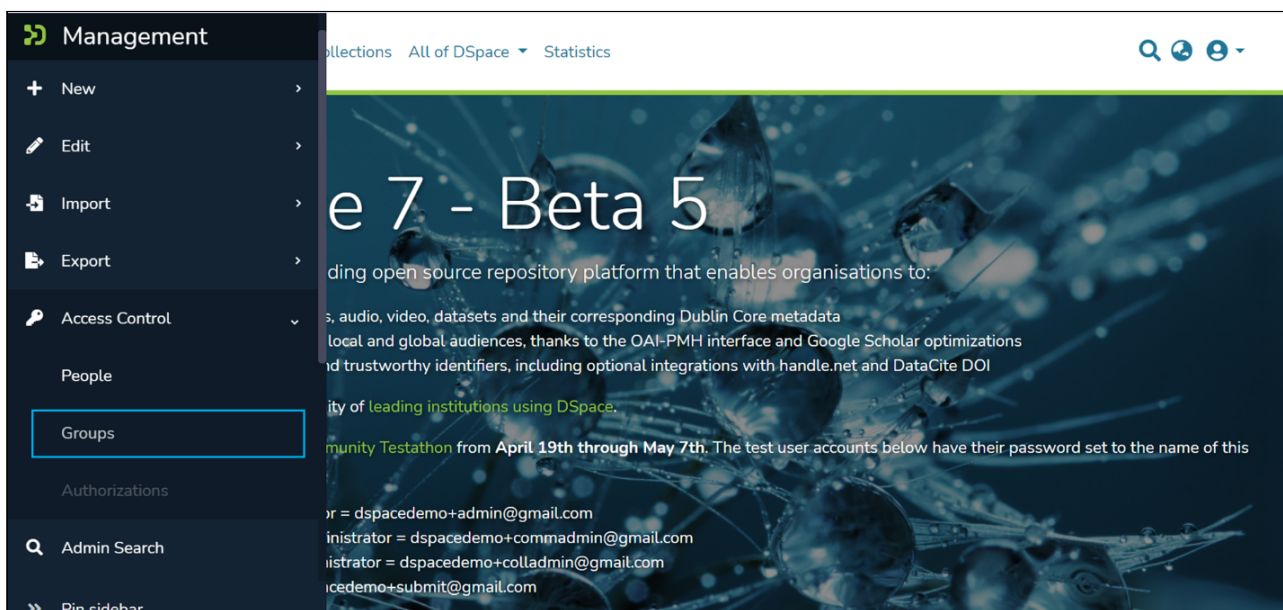
Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the "Log in" button to enter into DSpace.



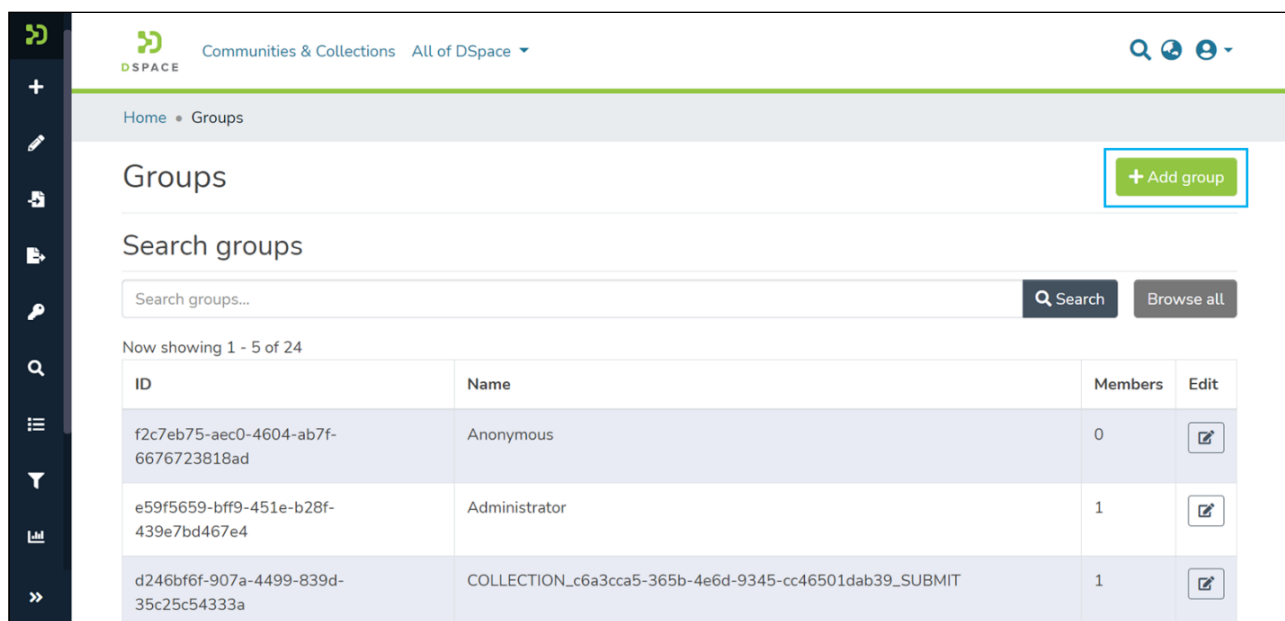
Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown in the below illustration.



Step 4: Rollover your cursor over the administration menu, click on "Access Control," and click on the "Groups" link.



Step 5: Click on the "Add Group" button to create a Group.



Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • Groups

## Groups

[+ Add group](#)

### Search groups

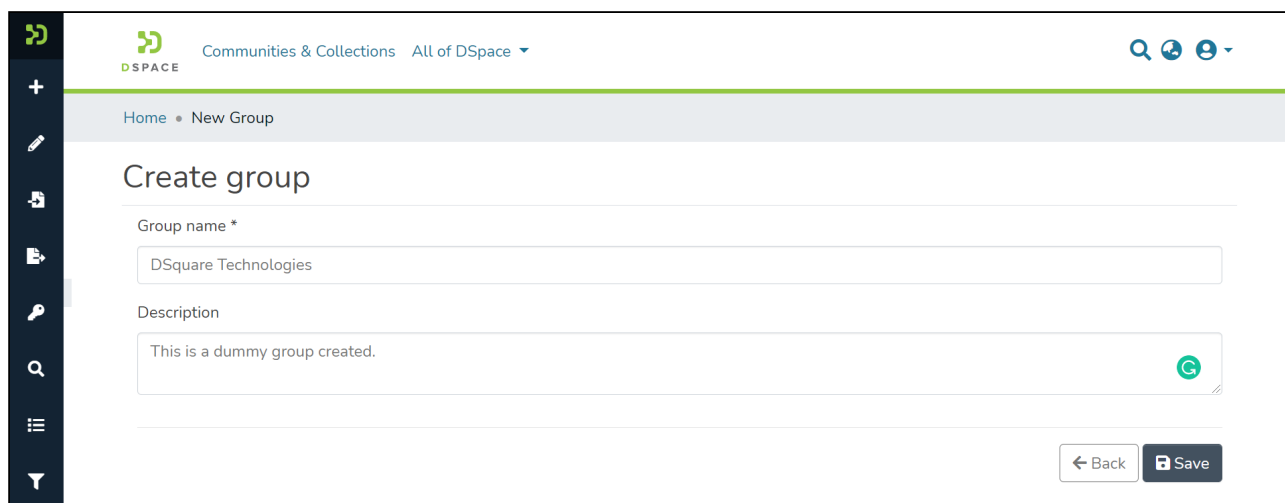
Search groups...

Now showing 1 - 5 of 24

ID	Name	Members	Edit
f2c7eb75-aec0-4604-ab7f-6676723818ad	Anonymous	0	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
e59f5659-bff9-451e-b28f-439e7bd467e4	Administrator	1	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
d246bf6f-907a-4499-839d-35c25c54333a	COLLECTION_c6a3cca5-365b-4e6d-9345-cc46501dab39_SUBMIT	1	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

Step 6: The "Group Name" is compulsory. To benefit a broader user base, a description of the Group is a good practice.

The "Save" button will get activated upon entering the group name.



Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • New Group

## Create group

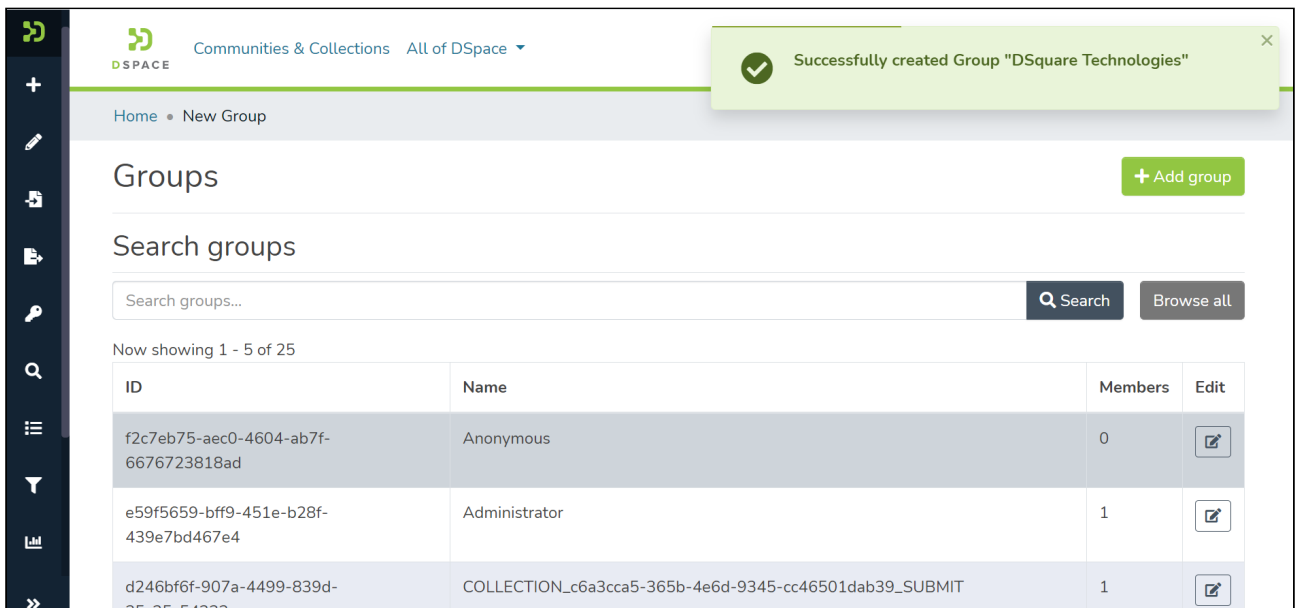
Group name \*

DSquare Technologies

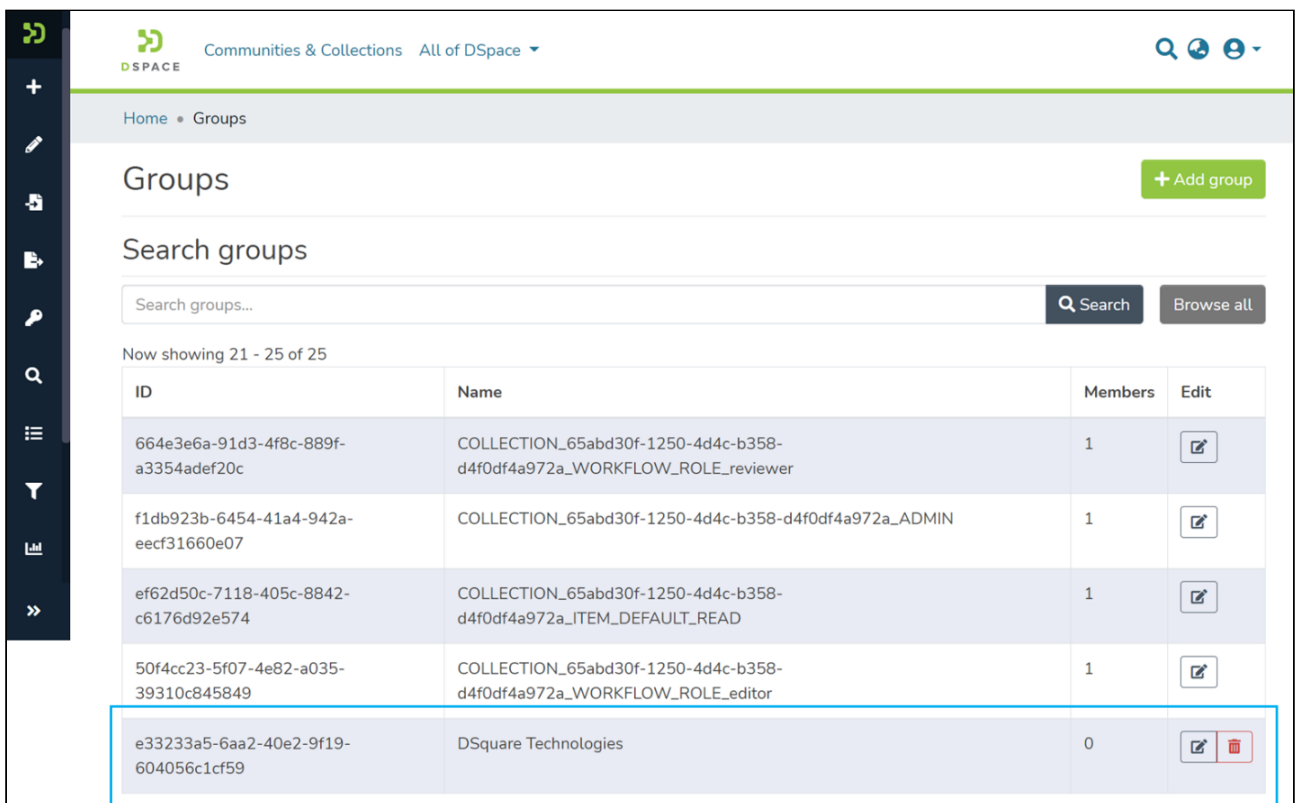
Description

This is a dummy group created.

Step 7: Upon successfully adding Group in DSpace, you will see a success prompt on the screen.



Step 8: The Group created will appear in the Group's list as highlighted below.



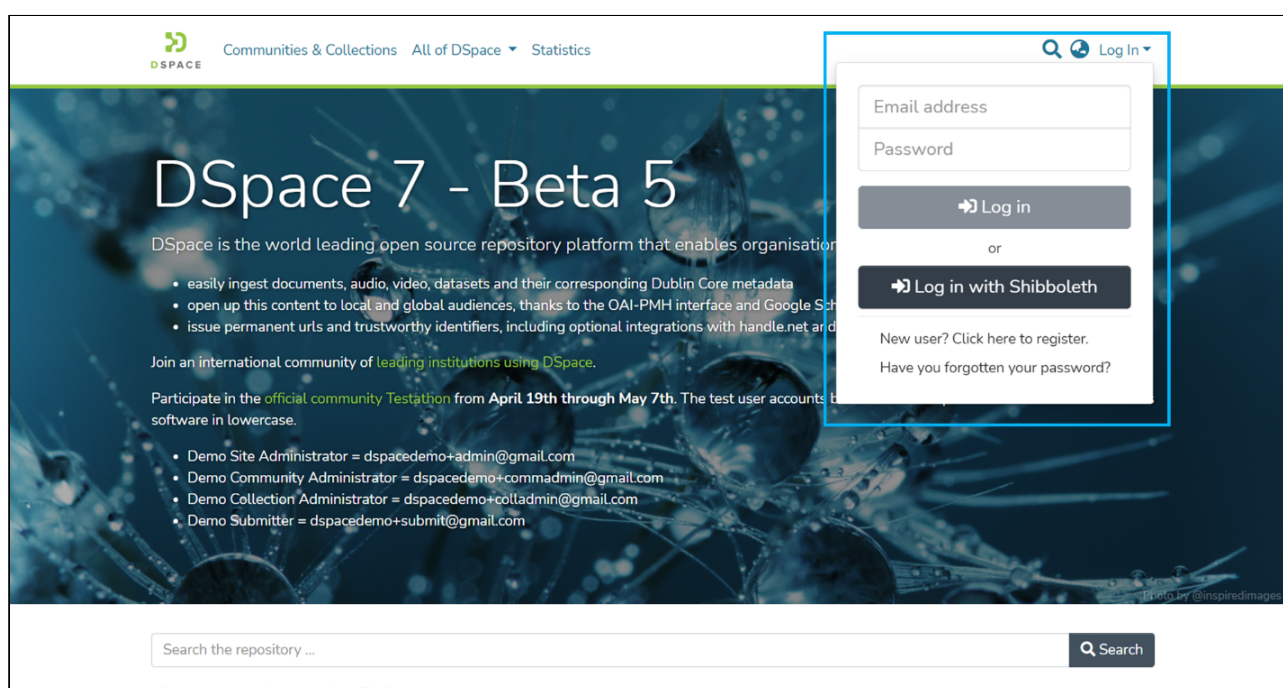
### 8.11.2.3 Manage a user group

The System, Community, and Collection administrator profiles can update user group(s). These users can perform the following activities:

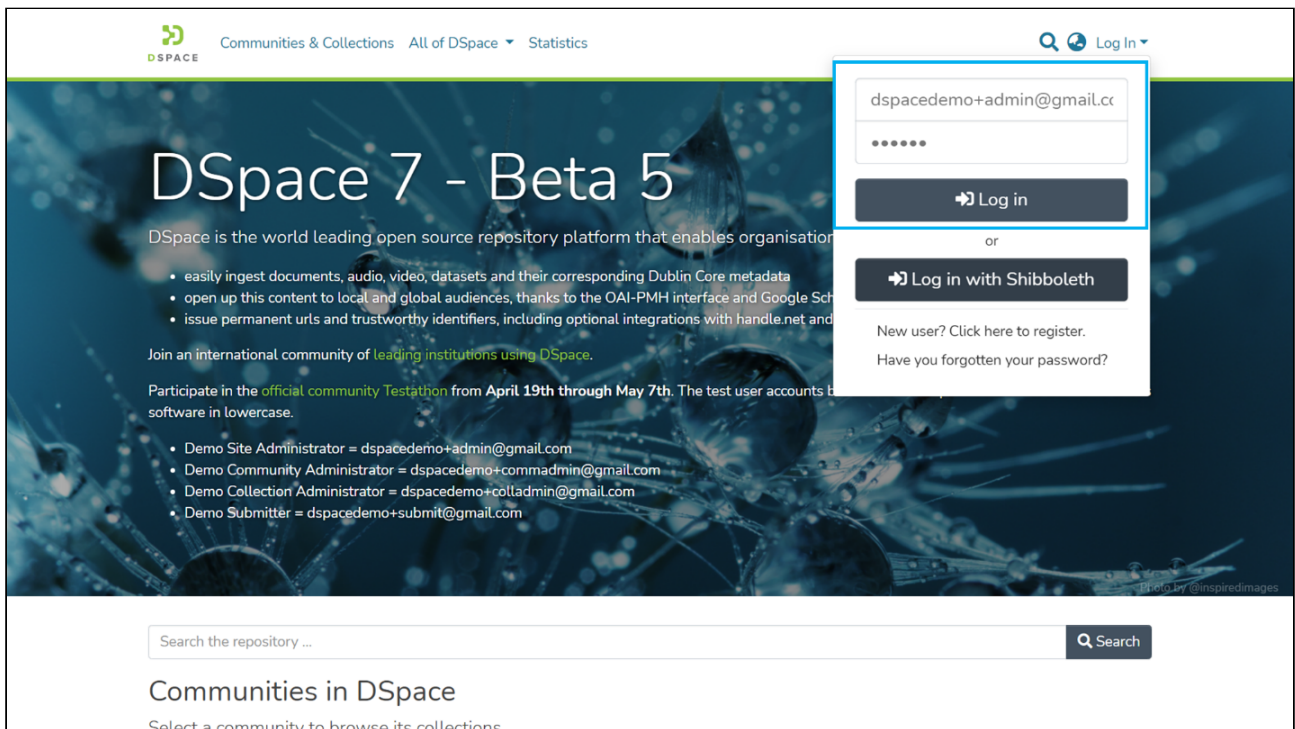
- Update group details
- Delete group
- Add/remove E-people
- Add/Remove Subgroups

#### Update group details

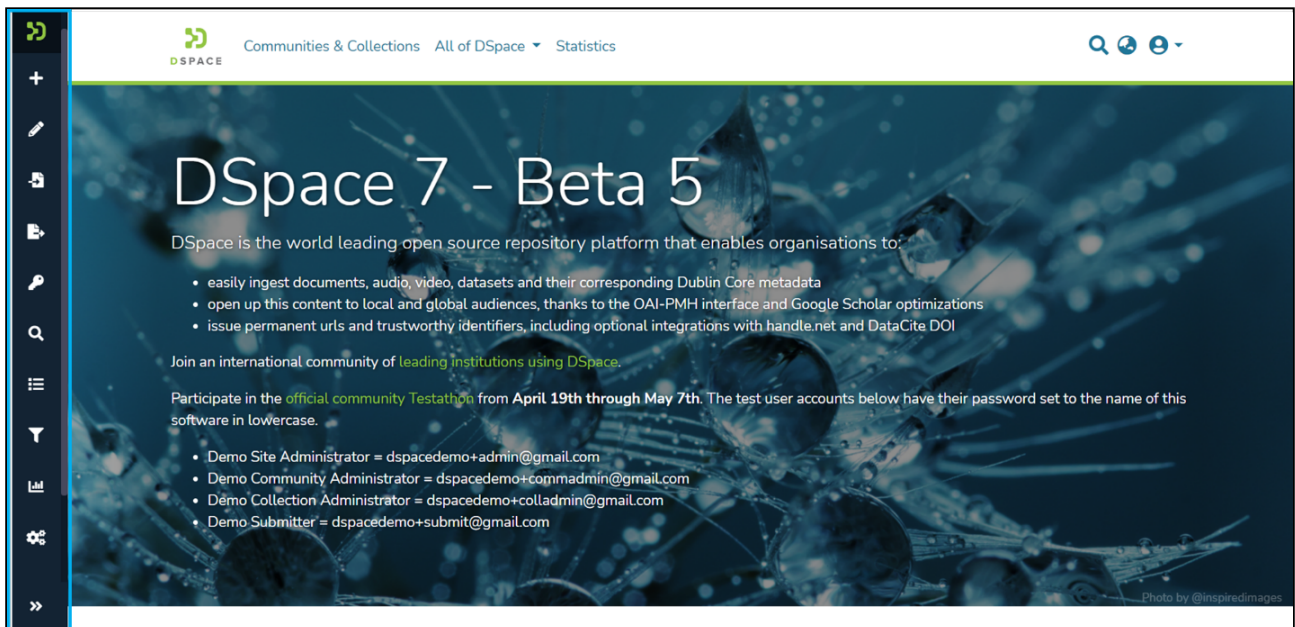
Step 1: Click on the "Log In" link at the top right corner of the DSpace's homepage, and the pop-up will open, as illustrated below the screen.



Step 2: Enter your user id and password and click on the "Log in" button to enter into DSpace.

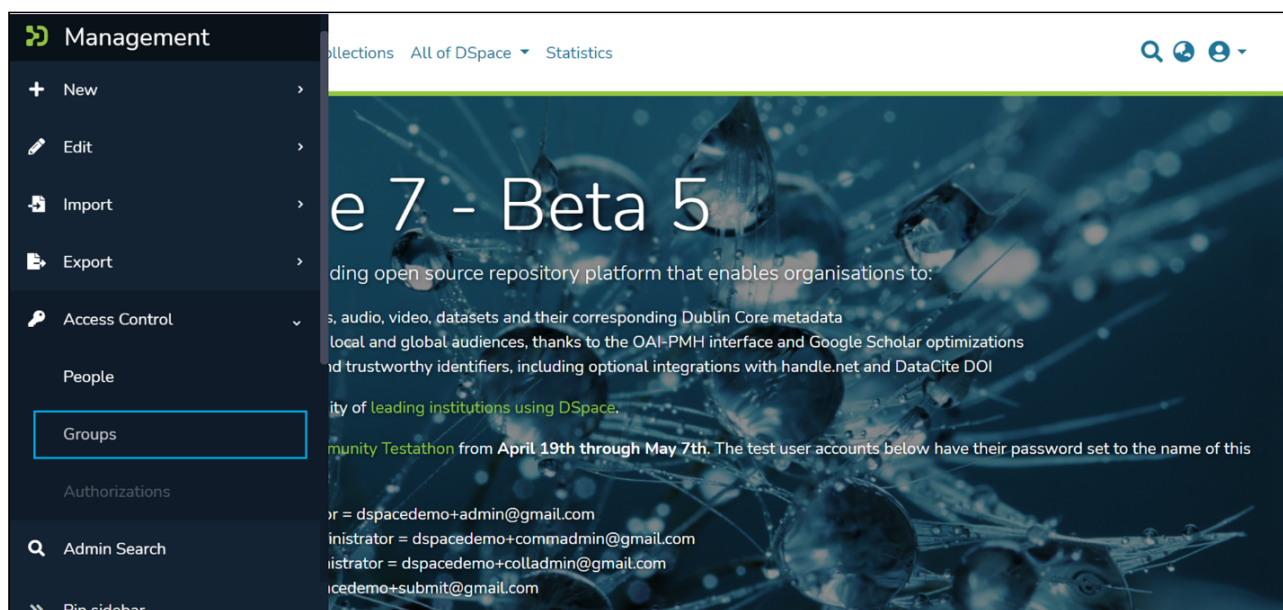


Step 3: Users with administrative rights will see the admin menu on the left-hand side of the screen, as shown in the below illustration.



Step 4: Rollover your cursor over the administration menu, click on "Access Control," and click on the "Groups" link.







Step 5: Users can find the Group required to be edited or deleted by scrolling down the Groups list or entering Group's metadata in the search field on the group page. Please see the illustration below showing an example.

The user group table shows the following details

- **ID:** Unique ID generated in DSpace for each Group
- **Name:** Name of Group as entered during group creation
- **Members:** A count of Epeople were added to the Group as members.

The screenshot displays the DSpace Groups management interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo, 'Communities & Collections', and 'All of DSpace'. Below this, a breadcrumb trail shows 'Home > Groups'. The main heading is 'Groups', with an '+ Add group' button to the right. A search bar contains the text 'dsquare', with 'Search' and 'Browse all' buttons. Below the search bar, it says 'Now showing 1 - 1 of 1'. A table lists the search results:



ID	Name	Members	Edit
e33233a5-6aa2-40e2-9f19-604056c1cf59	DSquare Technologies	0	 

At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with the text: 'DSpace software copyright © 2002-2021 LYRISIS', 'Cookie settings', 'Privacy policy', and 'End User Agreement'.

Step 6: Click on the

1. "Edit" button in the Edit column to edit the Group.
2. "Delete" button to delete the Group from DSpace permanently.

The screenshot shows the DSpace Groups management interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with the DSpace logo and 'Communities & Collections All of DSpace'. Below this is a breadcrumb trail 'Home • Groups'. The main heading is 'Groups' with a '+ Add group' button. A search bar contains 'dsquare' and has 'Search' and 'Browse all' buttons. Below the search bar, it says 'Now showing 1 - 1 of 1'. A table lists the group details:

ID	Name	Members	Edit
e33233a5-6aa2-40e2-9f19-604056c1cf59	DSquare Technologies	0	 

The 'Edit' column for the group 'DSquare Technologies' is highlighted with a red box, indicating the focus of the step.

At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with the text: 'DSpace software copyright © 2002-2021 LYRISIS' and links for 'Cookie settings', 'Privacy policy', and 'End User Agreement'.

Step 7: You can make the following updates on the Edit group page

1. **Update group details:** Update the Group name and description.
2. **Delete Group:** Permanently delete the Group from DSpace.
3. **Add/Manage People:** Add Epeople to the Group using the search and browse function. Or delete existing group members using the delete option.
4. **Add/Manage subgroups:** Add existing groups as subgroups using the search and browse function. Or delete existing subgroups using the delete option.

DSpace 7.x Documentation – DSpace 7.x Documentation

Communities & Collections All of DSpace

Home • Edit Group

## Edit group

1 Group name \*

DSquare Technologies

Description

This is a dummy group.

2

← Back Save Delete Group

### EPeople

3 Add EPeople

Metadata Search Browse All

Current Members

No members in group yet, search and add.

### Groups

4 Add Subgroup

Search Browse All

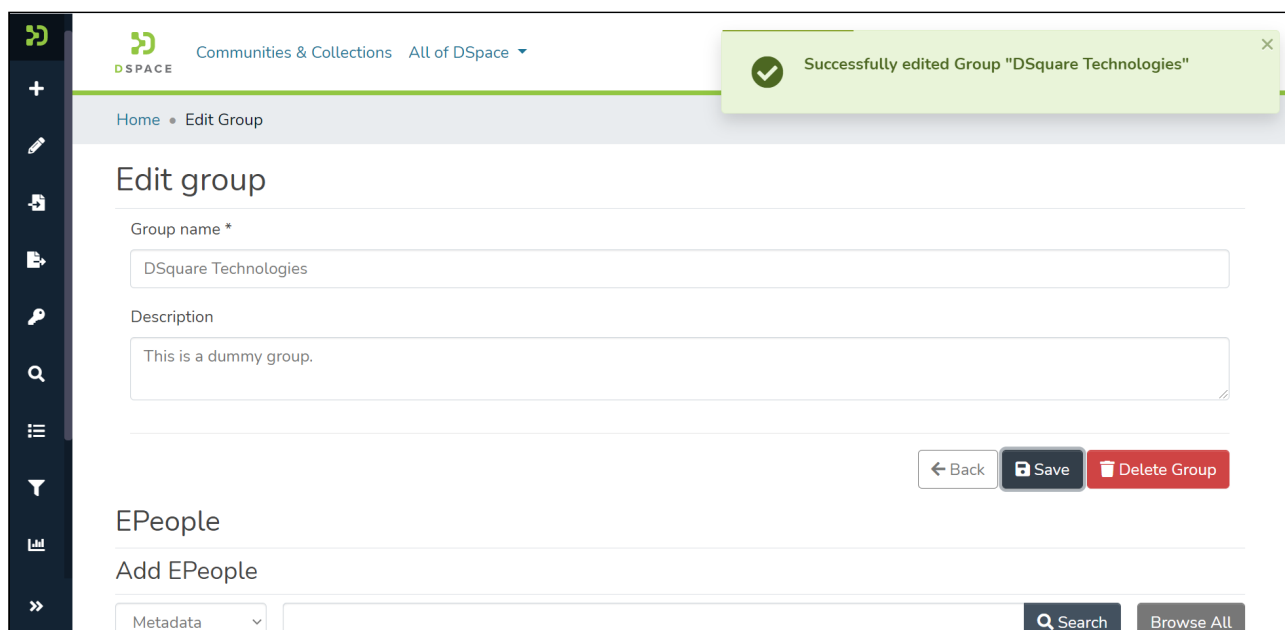
Current Subgroups

No subgroups in group yet.

DSpace software copyright © 2002-2021 LYRASIS  
Cookie settings Privacy policy End User Agreement

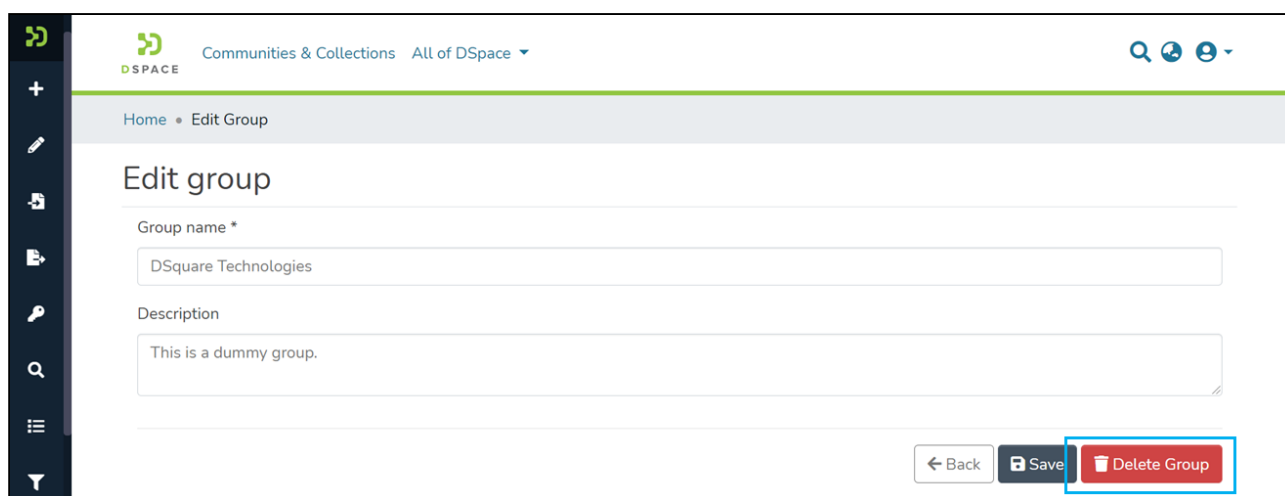
Step 8: Update the group name and description to update the group details and click on the "Save" button.

Step 9: A success prompt will appear, confirming a successful update as displayed below.



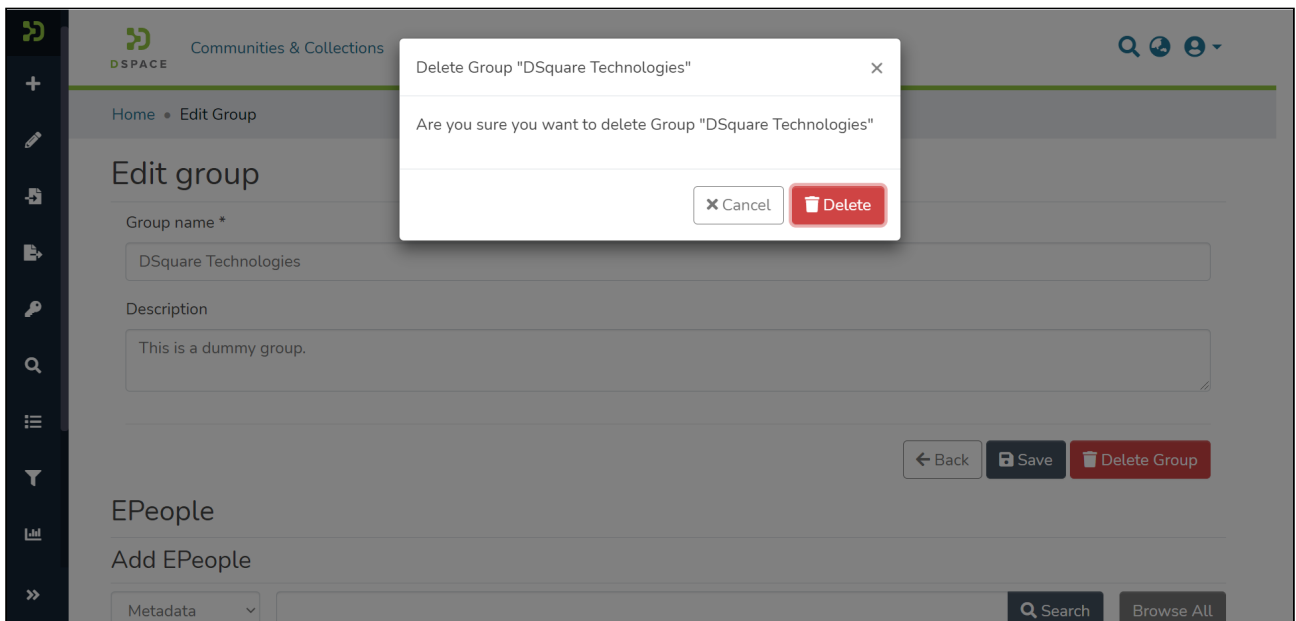
## Delete Group

Step 10: Click on the "Delete Group" button to permanently delete the Group from DSpace.

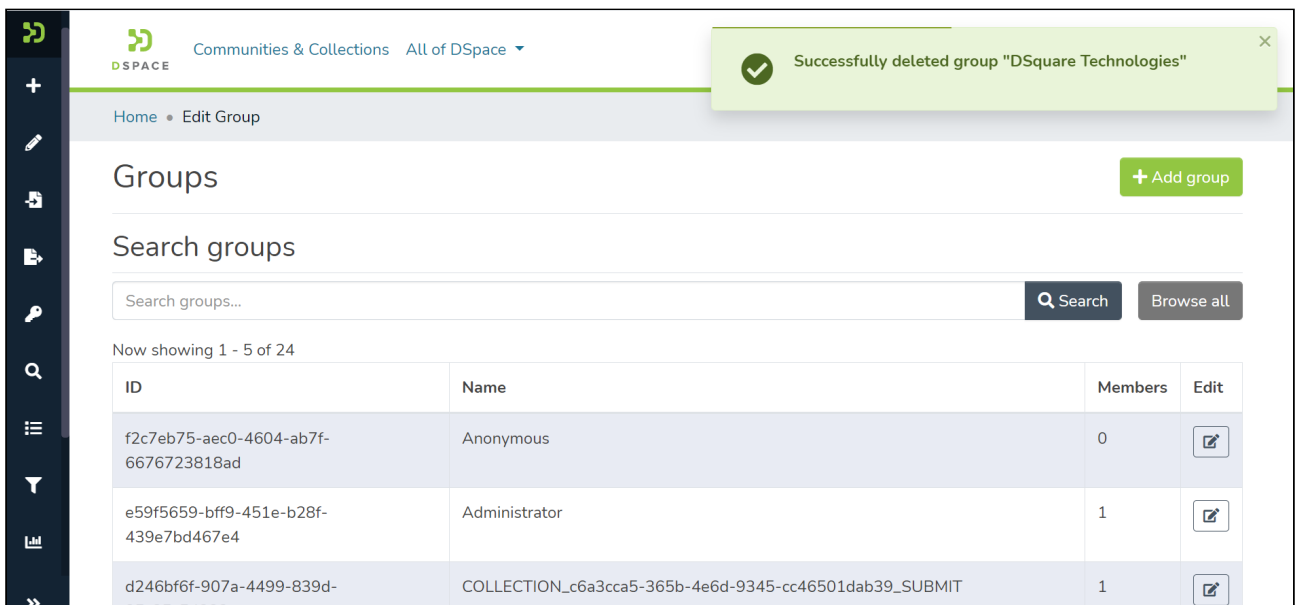


Step 11: DSpace will show you a confirmation prompt to re-assess your decision of deleting the Group. Click on "Delete" if you want to continue, or click "Cancel" to return.

Please note that the Group, once deleted, can not be recovered.

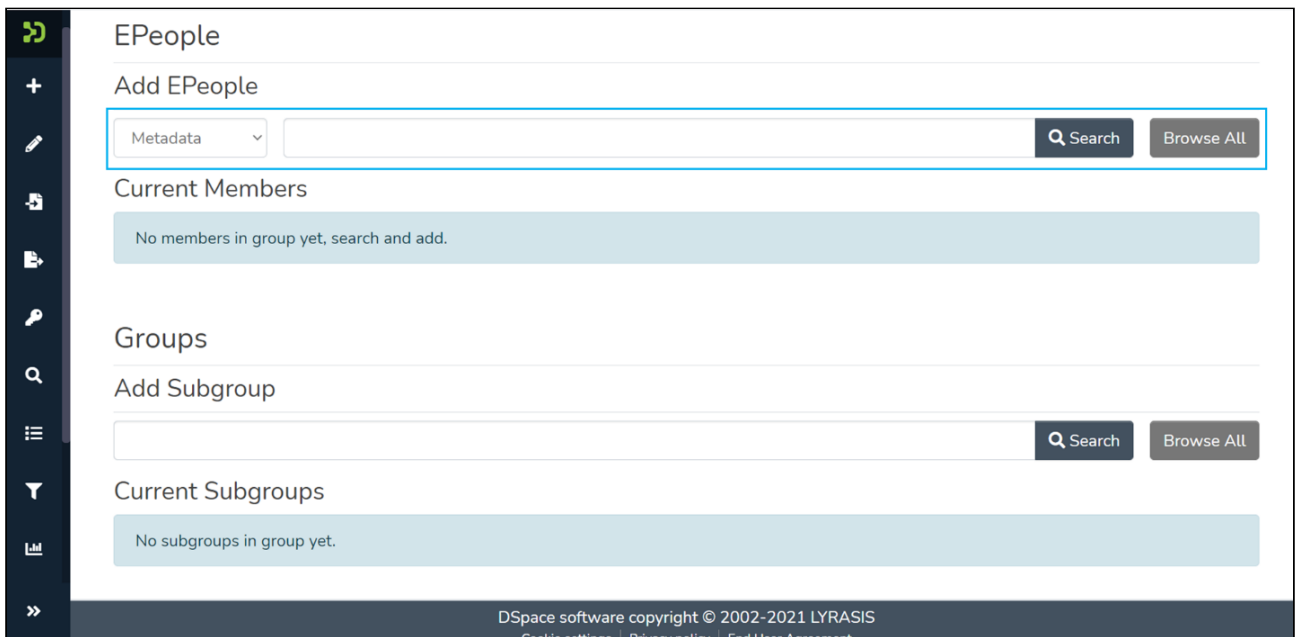


Step 12: Users will see a success prompt confirming the user group deletion, as demonstrated below.

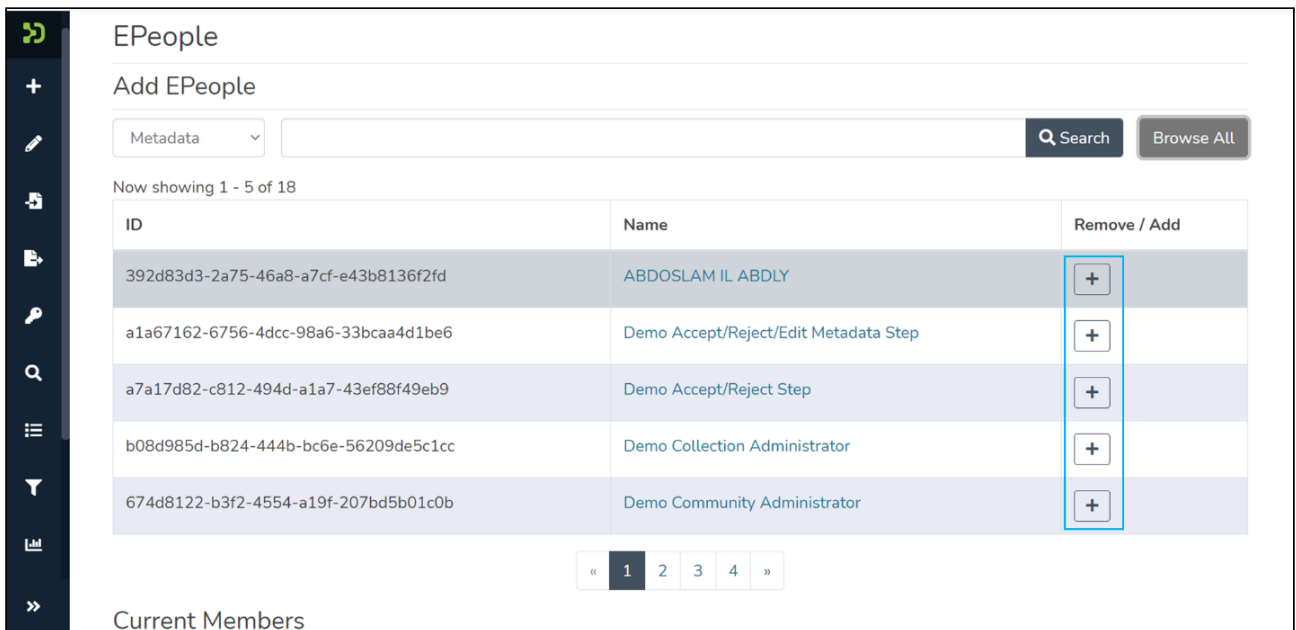


### Add/Manage EPeople

Step 13: Scroll down to the Epeople section to find the user(s). Use metadata values to search Epeople and click the "Search" button, or click the "Browse All" button to list EPeople.



Step 14: Click on the add button '+' next to each user name to add that user as a group member.



Step 15: A prompt will appear confirming the addition of users to the Group. As illustrated below, the "Delete" button will appear next to the user names.

The screenshot shows the 'EPeople' management interface. At the top, there are two green success prompts: 'Successfully added member: "Demo Collection Administrator"' and 'Successfully added member: "Demo Community Administrator"'. Below these, the 'Add EPeople' section includes a 'Metadata' dropdown and search buttons. The main area displays a table of 'Current Members' with the following data:

ID	Name	Remove / Add
392d83d3-2a75-46a8-a7cf-e43b8136f2fd	ABDOSLAM IL ABDLY	+
a1a67162-6756-4dcc-98a6-33bcaa4d1be6	Demo Accept/Reject/Edit Metadata Step	+
a7a17d82-c812-494d-a1a7-43ef88f49eb9	Demo Accept/Reject Step	+
b08d985d-b824-444b-bc6e-56209de5c1cc	Demo Collection Administrator	🗑️
674d8122-b3f2-4554-a19f-207bd5b01c0b	Demo Community Administrator	🗑️

At the bottom, there is a pagination control showing '1 2 3 4' and the text 'Current Members'.

**Success prompt confirming user added as members**

The screenshot shows the 'Current Members' section of the interface. It displays a table with two members, where the 'Remove / Add' column is highlighted with a blue box:

ID	Name	Remove / Add
b08d985d-b824-444b-bc6e-56209de5c1cc	Demo Collection Administrator	🗑️
674d8122-b3f2-4554-a19f-207bd5b01c0b	Demo Community Administrator	🗑️

Below the table, the 'Groups' section is visible, including an 'Add Subgroup' search bar and a message: 'No subgroups in group yet.'

**Users appearing as Members under the Current Members section**

**Add/Manage subgroups**

Step 16: Scroll down to the Group section to find the Group (s). Enter a group name and click the "Search" button, or click the "Browse All" button to list groups.



The screenshot shows the 'Current Members' section with a table of two members. Below it is the 'Groups' section with an 'Add Subgroup' search bar and a 'Current Subgroups' section that is currently empty.

ID	Name	Remove / Add
b08d985d-b824-444b-bc6e-56209de5c1cc	Demo Collection Administrator	
674d8122-b3f2-4554-a19f-207bd5b01c0b	Demo Community Administrator	

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

Groups

Add Subgroup

Search [ ] Browse All

Current Subgroups

No subgroups in group yet.

DSpace software copyright © 2002-2021 LYRASIS  
[Cookie settings](#) | [Privacy policy](#) | [End User Agreement](#)

Step 17: Click on the add button '+' next to each group name to add it as a sub-group.

The screenshot shows the 'Groups' section with an 'Add Subgroup' search bar. Below it is a table of 25 groups. The '+' buttons in the 'Remove / Add' column are highlighted with a blue box.

ID	Name	Remove / Add
f2c7eb75-aec0-4604-ab7f-6676723818ad	Anonymous	
e59f5659-bff9-451e-b28f-439e7bd467e4	Administrator	
d246bf6f-907a-4499-839d-35c25c54333a	COLLECTION_c6a3cca5-365b-4e6d-9345-cc46501dab39_SUBMIT	
8ad66897-e868-4223-9774-27fb50984b4a	COLLECTION_51715dd3-5590-49f2-b227-6a663c849921_SUBMIT	
3c5e9fa5-c829-4a5f-b2f1-094281f7e38d	COLLECTION_51715dd3-5590-49f2-b227-6a663c849921_WORKFLOW_ROLE_editor	

Now showing 1 - 5 of 25

Groups

Add Subgroup

Search [ ] Browse All

Step 18: A prompt will appear to confirm a subgroup in the Group. As illustrated below, the "Delete" button will appear next to the group names.

Groups

Add Subgroup

Now showing 1 - 5 of 25

ID	Name	Add
f2c7eb75-aec0-4604-ab7f-6676723818ad	Anonymous	
e59f5659-bff9-451e-b28f-439e7bd467e4	Administrator	
d246bf6f-907a-4499-839d-35c25c54333a	COLLECTION_c6a3cca5-365b-4e6d-9345-cc46501dab39_SUBMIT	
8ad66897-e868-4223-9774-27fb50984b4a	COLLECTION_51715dd3-5590-49f2-b227-6a663c849921_SUBMIT	
3c5e9fa5-c829-4a5f-b2f1-094281f7e38d	COLLECTION_51715dd3-5590-49f2-b227-6a663c849921_WORKFLOW_ROLE_editor	

Successfully added subgroup: "Anonymous"

Successfully added subgroup: "Administrator"

**Success prompt confirming groups added as subgroups**

Current Subgroups

Now showing 1 - 2 of 2

ID	Name	Remove / Add
e59f5659-bff9-451e-b28f-439e7bd467e4	Administrator	
f2c7eb75-aec0-4604-ab7f-6676723818ad	Anonymous	

« 1 2 3 4 5 »

DSpace software copyright © 2002-2021 LYRISIS  
[Cookie settings](#) | [Privacy policy](#) | [End User Agreement](#)

**Groups appearing as subgroups under the Current Subgroups section**